NOTICE OF INCORPORATION

United States Legal Document

☞ All citizens and residents are hereby advised that this is a legally binding document duly incorporated by reference and that failure to comply with such requirements as hereby detailed within may subject you to criminal or civil penalties under the law. Ignorance of the law shall not excuse noncompliance and it is the responsibility of the citizens to inform themselves as to the laws that are enacted in the United States of America and in the states and cities contained therein. ☜

⁂

ASME A17.1, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, 2007 Edition, as required by States and Municipalities, including Arizona, Texas, Vermont, Wisconsin, Nevada, Colorado, et. alia.

ASME A17.1-2007/CSA B44-07
(Revision of ASME A17.1-2004 and CSA B44-04)

Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators

Includes Requirements for Elevators, Escalators, Dumbwaiters, Moving Walks, Material Lifts, and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices

AN AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARD

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers

CANADIAN STANDARDS ASSOCIATION

Date of Issuance: April 6, 2007

This edition of the Code is being issued with an automatic addenda subscription service. The use of an addenda allows revisions made in response to public review comments or committee actions to be published on a regular basis; revisions published in addenda will become effective 6 months after the Date of Issuance of the addenda unless noted otherwise within a given addenda. The next edition of this Code is scheduled for publication in 2010.

ASME issues written replies to inquiries concerning interpretations of technical aspects of this Code. The interpretations will be included with each edition and subsequent addenda. Interpretations are also published on the ASME Web site under the Committee Pages at http://cstools.asme.org as they are issued.

Inquiries should be addressed to the American Society of Mechanical Engineers or Canadian Standards Association.

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990

CONTENTS

ASME Foreword		viii
ASME Committee Roster		xii
CSA Committees		xvi
ASME Preface		xviii
CSA Preface		xxi
Summary of Changes		xxii
Part 1	**General**	1
1.1	Scope	1
1.2	Purpose and Exceptions	2
1.3	Definitions	2
Part 2	**Electric Elevators**	17
2.1	Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures	17
2.2	Pits	19
2.3	Location and Guarding of Counterweights	21
2.4	Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights	22
2.5	Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances	24
2.6	Protection of Space Below Hoistways	25
2.7	Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms	25
2.8	Equipment in Hoistways, Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms	33
2.9	Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations	34
2.10	Guarding of Equipment and Standard Railing	36
2.11	Protection of Hoistway Openings	37
2.12	Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches	45
2.13	Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors	49
2.14	Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination	51
2.15	Car Frames and Platforms	59
2.16	Capacity and Loading	63
2.17	Car and Counterweight Safeties	67
2.18	Speed Governors	71
2.19	Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection	74
2.20	Suspension Ropes and Their Connections	75
2.21	Counterweights	81
2.22	Buffers and Bumpers	83
2.23	Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings	85
2.24	Driving Machines and Sheaves	94
2.25	Terminal Stopping Devices	96
2.26	Operating Devices and Control Equipment	98
2.27	Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices	109
2.28	Layout Drawings	118
2.29	Identification	118
Part 3	**Hydraulic Elevators**	120
3.1	Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures	120
3.2	Pits	120

3.3	Location and Guarding of Counterweights	120
3.4	Bottom and Top Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights	120
3.5	Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances	122
3.6	Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway	122
3.7	Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms	122
3.8	Electrical Equipment, Wiring, Pipes, and Ducts in Hoistway, Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms	123
3.9	Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations	123
3.10	Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment	123
3.11	Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings	123
3.12	Hoistway Door Locking Devices, Car Door or Gate Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches	123
3.13	Power Operation, Power Opening, and Power Closing of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors or Gates	123
3.14	Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination	123
3.15	Car Frames and Platforms	123
3.16	Capacity and Loading	124
3.17	Car Safeties, Counterweight Safeties, Plunger Gripper, and Governors	124
3.18	Hydraulic Jacks	126
3.19	Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings	129
3.20	Ropes and Rope Connections	131
3.21	Counterweights	131
3.22	Buffers and Bumpers	132
3.23	Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings	132
3.24	Hydraulic Machines and Tanks	132
3.25	Terminal Stopping Devices	133
3.26	Operating Devices and Control Equipment	134
3.27	Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices	136
3.28	Layout Data	136
3.29	Identification	137
Part 4	**Elevators With Other Types of Driving Machines**	138
4.1	Rack-and-Pinion Elevators	138
4.2	Screw-Column Elevators	140
4.3	Hand Elevators	144
Part 5	**Special Application Elevators**	147
5.1	Inclined Elevators	147
5.2	Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators	153
5.3	Private Residence Elevators	158
5.4	Private Residence Inclined Elevators	165
5.5	Power Sidewalk Elevators	169
5.6	Rooftop Elevators	173
5.7	Special Purpose Personnel Elevators	177
5.8	Shipboard Elevators	182
5.9	Mine Elevators	183
5.10	Elevators Used for Construction	186
Part 6	**Escalators and Moving Walks**	192
6.1	Escalators	192
6.2	Moving Walks	204
Part 7	**Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts**	215
7.1	Power and Hand Dumbwaiters Without Automatic Transfer Devices	215

7.2	Electric and Hand Dumbwaiters Without Automatic Transfer Devices	219
7.3	Hydraulic Dumbwaiters Without Automatic Transfer Devices	225
7.4	Material Lifts Without Automatic Transfer Devices	227
7.5	Electric Material Lifts Without Automatic Transfer Devices	230
7.6	Hydraulic Material Lifts Without Automatic Transfer Devices	236
7.7	Automatic Transfer Devices	236
7.8	Power Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices	237
7.9	Electric Material Lifts With Automatic Transfer Devices	237
7.10	Hydraulic Material Lifts With Automatic Transfer Devices	239
7.11	Material Lifts With Obscured Transfer Devices	239
Part 8	**General Requirements**	240
8.1	Security	240
8.2	Design Data and Formulas	241
8.3	Engineering Tests, Type Tests, and Certification	259
8.4	Elevator Safety Requirements for Seismic Risk Zone 2 or Greater	267
8.5	Escalator and Moving Walk Safety Requirement for Seismic Risk Zone 2 or Greater	287
8.6	Maintenance, Repair, and Replacement	288
8.7	Alterations	302
8.8	Welding	316
8.9	Code Data Plate	317
8.10	Acceptance Inspections and Tests	317
8.11	Periodic Inspections and Tests	332
8.12	Flood Resistances	343
Part 9	**Reference Codes, Standards, and Specifications**	344
9.1	Reference Documents	345
9.2	Procurement Information	351
Figures		
2.16.1.1	Inside Net Platform Areas for Passenger Elevators	63
2.20.9.4	Tapered Rope Sockets	78
2.20.9.5	Wedge Rope Sockets	78
2.23.3	Elevator Guide Rails	86
2.23.4.1-1	Maximum Weight of a Car With Rated Load or of Counterweight With Safety Device for a Pair of Guide Rails as Specified in 2.23.4.1	88
2.23.4.1-2	Minimum Moment of Inertia About *x-x* Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement	89
2.27.3.1.6(h)	Visual Signal	112
2.27.3.3.7	Panel Layout	115
2.27.7.1	Phase I Emergency Recall Operation Instructions	117
2.27.7.2	Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation	118
2.27.9	Elevator Corridor Call Station Pictograph	119
5.1.17.3	Vertical and Horizontal Components of Velocity	151
6.1.3.3.10	Dimensions	194
6.1.6.9.1	Caution Sign	202
8.2.1.2	Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators	242
8.2.2.5.1	Turning Moment Based on Class of Loading	244
8.2.4	Gravity Stopping Distances	246
8.2.5	Maximum Governor Tripping Speeds	247
8.2.6	Stopping Distances for Type B Car and Counterweight Safeties	249
8.2.7	Minimum Factors of Safety of Suspension Wire Ropes of Power Passenger and Freight Elevators	252
8.2.8.1.1	Allowable Gross Loads	254
8.2.9.1.3	Load Distribution	257

8.4.3.1.3	Arc of Contact	268
8.4.8.2-1	12 kg/m (8 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	270
8.4.8.2-2	16.5 kg/m (11 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	271
8.4.8.2-3	18 kg/m (12 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	272
8.4.8.2-4	22.5 kg/m (15 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	273
8.4.8.2-5	27.5 kg/m (18.5 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	274
8.4.8.2-6	33.5 kg/m (22.5 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	275
8.4.8.2-7	44.5 kg/m (30 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing	276
8.4.8.2-8	Car and Counterweight Load Factor	277
8.4.8.9	Guide-Rail Axes	280
8.4.10.1.1	Earthquake Elevator Equipment Requirements Diagrammatic Representation	281
8.4.10.1.3	Earthquake Emergency Operation Diagrammatic Representation	283
8.11.4.2.19(e)		342

Tables

2.4.2.2	Minimum Bottom Runby for Counterweight Elevators With Spring Buffers or Solid Bumpers and Rheostatic Control or Single-Speed AC Control	23
2.15.10.1	Maximum Allowable Stresses in Car Frame and Platform Members and Connections, for Steels Specified in 2.15.6.2.1 and 2.15.6.2.2	62
2.16.1.1	Maximum Inside Net Platform Areas for the Various Rated Loads	64
2.17.3	Maximum and Minimum Stopping Distances for Type B Car Safeties With Rated Load and Type B Counterweight Safeties	68
2.18.2.1	Maximum Car Speeds at Which Speed Governor Trips and Governor Overspeed Switch Operates	72
2.18.7.4	Multiplier for Determining Governor Sheave Pitch Diameter	73
2.20.3	Minimum Factors of Safety for Suspension Wire Ropes	76
2.20.9.4.5	Relation of Rope Diameter to Diameter of the Small Socket Hole	78
2.22.3.1	Minimum Spring Buffer Stroke	83
2.22.4.1	Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes	84
2.23.3	T-Section Guide-Rail Dimensions	87
2.23.4.2	Load Multiplying Factor for Duplex Safeties	92
2.23.4.3.1	Guide Rails for Counterweight Without Safeties	93
2.23.4.3.3	Intermediate Tie Brackets	93
2.23.7.2.1	Minimum Thickness of Fishplates and Minimum Diameter of Fastening Bolts	94
2.23.10.2	Minimum Size of Rail-Fastening Bolts	94
2.26.4.3.2	SIL for Electrical Protective Devices and Other Electrical Safety Functions	104
2.26.12.1	Symbol Identification	108
4.1.9.1	Maximum and Minimum Stopping Distances for Rack-and-Pinion Safeties With Rated Load	140
5.1.14.2	Minimum and Maximum Stopping Distances at Given Angles From Horizontal	150
5.1.17.2	Spring Buffer Stroke	151
5.1.17.4.4	Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes at Given Angle From Horizontal	152
6.2.3.7	Treadway Width	207
6.2.4	Treadway Speed	209
7.2.6.4	Factors of Safety for Wire Rope and Chains	222
7.2.8.1	Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes	223
7.2.8.2	Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes	223
7.4.3	Type B Material Lifts	228
7.9.2.13	Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes	238
7.9.2.14	Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes	238
8.4.8.7	Stresses and Deflections of Guide-Rail Brackets and Supports	279
8.4.11.3	Pipe Support Spacing	284

8.4.12.2.2 Maximum Allowable Deflection 287
8.11.2.1.3(cc)(1) Wire Suspension and Compensation Ropes 334
8.11.2.1.3(cc)(3) 335
8.11.2.3.4 Brake Test Loads 337

Nonmandatory Appendices

A Control System 353
B Door Landing and Unlocking Zones 355
C Location of Top Emergency Exit 356
D Rated Load and Capacity Plates for Passenger Elevators 357
E CSA B44 Elevator Requirements for Persons With Physical Disabilities 358
F Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection 366
G Top of Car Clearance (3.4.4) 370
H Private Residence Elevator Guarding (5.3.1.6.2) 372
I Escalator and Moving Walk Diagrams 373
J Relationship of Pit Ladder to Hoistway Door Unlocking Means 379
K Beveling and Clearance Requirements (7.4.7.4) 380
L Index of Alteration Requirements for Electric Elevators, Hydraulic Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks 381
M Inertia Application for Type A Safety Device Location of Test Weight [8.10.2.2.2(bb)(2)] 386
N Recommended Inspection and Test Intervals in "Months" 387
P Plunger Gripper Stopping Distances 389
Q Explanatory Figures for the Definitions of Elevator Machinery Space, Machine Room, Control Space, Control Room, Remote Machine Room, or Remote Control Room 390
R Inspection Operation and Hoistway Access Switch Operation Hierarchy 393

Index 395

(07)

ASME FOREWORD

The first edition of this Code was published in January 1921. It was prepared by an American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) Committee on Protection of Industrial Workers with the assistance of representatives of a number of interests including manufacturers, insurance carriers, regulatory bodies, and technical societies.

Subsequently, ASME requested the American Engineering Standards Committee (AESC) to authorize the organization of a Sectional Committee to undertake this revision. They acted favorably on this request, and in January 1922, assigned sponsorship for the project jointly to the American Institute of Architects, the National Bureau of Standards, and ASME, all three of whom had taken an active part in the preparation of the first edition of the Code.

The organization meeting of the Sectional Committee A17 was held in November 1922. A number of meetings of the Committee were held during the next two years and in July 1925, a revision of the 1921 Code was completed, approved by the AESC, and published as an American Standard.

Subsequent to the publication of the 1925 revision of the Code, the necessity for development research on the design and construction of car safeties and oil buffers and for the development of test specifications for various parts of elevator equipment was realized.

As a result, a Subcommittee on Research, Recommendations, and Interpretations was appointed in 1926. This subcommittee held regular meetings thereafter until interrupted by the war in 1940, and carried on an extensive test program at the National Bureau of Standards in connection with oil buffers and car safeties. Subsequent to the war, the name of this subcommittee was changed to "Executive Committee for the Elevator Safety Code."

The information gained as a result of these tests, together with the developments that had occurred in the design of the equipment as a result of installations made in very tall buildings, prompted the Sectional Committee to prepare and issue the third edition of the Code in 1931. The third edition was approved by the Sectional Committee in February 1931, and subsequently by the sponsors and by the American Standards Association (formerly the AESC) in July 1931.

Further experience and developments in the design of elevator equipment, led the Sectional Committee, in line with its policy of revising the Code periodically, to prepare the fourth edition in 1937, which was approved by the sponsors and by the American Standards Association (ASA) in July 1937.

A fifth edition of the Code was well under way in 1940 when it was necessary to suspend the work due to the Second World War. However, a number of the revisions already agreed upon by the Sectional Committee and approved by the sponsors and by the ASA in April 1942, were issued as a supplement to the 1937 edition. They were subsequently incorporated in a reprint of the 1937 edition in 1945. In response to public demand, requirements for private residence elevators were also issued in a separate supplement, ASA A17.1.5-1953, and incorporated into the Code as Part V in the 1955 edition.

The Sectional Committee reinitiated consideration of the fifth edition of the Code in 1946. Due to the considerable period which had elapsed since the fourth revision in 1937, and to the very extensive developments in the elevator art, the committee decided that the Code should be completely rewritten and brought up to date.

Special subcommittees were appointed to prepare the revisions of the various requirements. The membership of each subcommittee consisted of persons especially familiar with the requirements to be covered by that subcommittee. Fifteen subcommittees were set up with a total membership of over 150 persons. The membership of these subcommittees was not confined to members of the Sectional Committee. It also included other persons having expert knowledge of the subjects under consideration by the subcommittees. These subcommittees and their personnel were listed in the 1955 edition of the Code.

The drafts prepared by these subcommittees were widely circulated to interested groups for comment. After review of the comments and correlation of the drafts, the fifth edition of the Code was approved by the Sectional Committee, subsequently by the sponsors, and by the ASA in June 1955.

In December 1957, a Supplement to the Code listing a number of revisions was approved by the ASA and published by ASME.

A sixth edition was published in 1960 which incorporated the revisions contained in the 1957 Supplement as well as approximately 96 revisions which were approved by the Sectional Committee in March 1960.

In 1958 the scope of the A17 Code was enlarged to include moving walks. The membership of the Sectional Committee was expanded to include manufacturers whose primary interest in the Committee was the development of rules and regulations on moving walks. A subcommittee prepared a Safety Code for Moving Walks which was approved by the Sectional Committee, the sponsors, and by the ASA on March 20, 1962. This Code was published as Part XIII of the A17.1 Code, and was designated ASA A17.1.13-1962.

During 1962 and 1963, 38 additional changes to Parts I through XII of A17.1 were approved by the Sectional Committee, the sponsors, and the ASA, and were published as the 1963 Supplement to the 1960 edition of the Code.

A seventh edition was published in 1965 which incorporated the rules of the Safety Code for Moving Walks, ASA A17.1.13-1962, as Part XIII, the revisions covered by the 1963 Supplement as well as approximately 90 other revisions approved by the Sectional Committee, the sponsors, and the ASA. The title of the Code was also changed to the American Standard Safety Code for Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

On August 24, 1966, the American Standards Association was reconstituted as the United States of America Standards Institute. The designation of standards approved as American Standards was changed to USA Standards. There was no change in the index identification or the technical content of the standards. At the same time, the ASA Sectional Committee, A17 on A Safety Code for Elevators, was changed to the USA Standards Committee, A17 on A Safety Code for Elevators. Four supplements to this edition were published from 1967 through 1970.

The United States of America Standards Institute later changed its name to American National Standards Institute, Incorporated (ANSI) on October 6, 1969. At the time that the new name became effective, the designation USA Standard was changed to American National Standard and the name of committees changed from USA Standards Committees to American National Standards Committees. The alphabetical designation of standard documents was changed from USA to ANSI.

The eighth edition of the Code (1971) incorporated the revisions covered by the four supplements and an additional 94 revisions. Seven supplements were issued from 1972 through 1976. Part XIV covering Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters with Automatic Transfer Devices was added in supplement ANSI A17.1d-1975.

The ninth edition of the Code (1978) incorporated 75 revisions in addition to those covered by the previous supplements. Part XV covering Special Purpose Personnel Elevators was added and the Reference Codes, Standards, and Specifications were moved from the Preface to a new Part XVI. Two supplements to this edition were issued in 1979 and 1980.

The tenth edition of the Code (1981) incorporated the revisions covered by Supplements ANSI A17.1a-1979 and ANSI A17.1b-1980, as well as the following new material: Part XVII, Inclined Elevators; Appendix F, Seismic Regulations; and Appendix G, Recommended Practice for Accelerating Moving Walks. Rule 211.3 and Part V were also completely revised, with the Private Residence Inclined Lifts moved to Part XVIII. Numerous other revisions and additions were also included which were approved since the time of the 1980 supplement.

The tenth edition of the Code was approved by the A17 Standards Committee. Since that time, the committee was reorganized in accordance with the ANSI Accredited Organization Method under the sponsorship of ASME. With this reorganization, the National Bureau of Standards and the American Institute of Architects relinquished their roles as cosecretariats. The Standards, Conference, and Executive Committees were also restructured as the Main Committee and the National Interest Review Committee, with the Working Committees (subcommittees) continuing to operate as before.

This reorganization also prompted a change in the title of the Code to the ANSI/ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. The title was also shortened for convenience, and it should not be construed that the Code no longer covers dumbwaiters, moving walks, or the other equipment included within the Scope of the Code.

Two supplements to the 1981 edition were issued: ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1982 and ANSI/ASME A17.1b-1983. The 1982 supplement included a new Part XIX covering Elevators Used for Construction. In the 1983 supplement, the requirements for Private Residence Inclined Lifts in Part XVIII were expanded and incorporated into a new Part XXI covering Private Residence Inclined Stairway Chairlifts and Inclined and Vertical Wheelchair Lifts. Part XX was added to cover these same devices installed in buildings other than private residences. Requirements for Screw Column Elevators were also added and designated as Part XVIII.

The eleventh edition of the Code (1984) incorporated the changes made in the 1982 and 1983 supplements, as well as additional revisions.

The eleventh edition was updated with five supplements which were issued approximately every 6 months in 1985 through the spring of 1987. Appendix I (since redesignated as Appendix E) was added in ANSI/ASME A17.1a-1985. Requirements for rack and pinion elevators were added in ANSI/ASME A17.1c-1986, designated as Part XVI. The previous Part XVI (Reference Codes, Standards, and Specifications) was moved to Section 4 of the Introduction. In ANSI/ASME A17.1d-1986, the requirements for sidewalk elevators in Part IV, and alterations in Part XII, were completely revised.

The twelfth edition of the Code incorporated the changes made in supplements A17.1a-1985 through A17.1e-1987, as well as additional revisions. Among these changes was a complete revision of the requirements for dumbwaiters in Part VII. The format of the Code was also changed editorially to incorporate Exceptions into the body of the Rules.

The thirteenth edition of the Code incorporated the changes made in A17.1a-1988 and A17.1b-1989 as well as additional revisions. Part XXII, Shipboard Elevators, was added in A17.1b-1989. Part XXIII, Rooftop Elevators, appeared for the first time in this edition.

The fourteenth edition of the Code incorporates the changes made in A17.1a-1991 and A17.1b-1992 as well as the revisions shown in the Summary of Changes. Safety requirements for seismic risk zone 3 and greater were moved from Appendix F into new Part XXIV, Elevator Safety Requirements for Seismic Risk Zone 2 or Greater. Requirements for seismic risk zone 2 were added to Part XXIV.

The fifteenth edition of the Code incorporates the changes made in A17.1a-1994 and A17.1b-1995 as well as the revisions shown in the Summary of Changes. Part XXV, Limited Use/Limited Application Elevators, was added in A17.1b-1995. The rules in Part III have been harmonized with the CAN/CSA B44, Elevator Safety Standard, Sections 4 and 11, and Appendix G4.

The sixteenth edition of the Code incorporates changes made in A17.1a-1997 through A17.1d-2000. Requirements for Mine Elevators have also been added in Section 5.9 of this edition. In addition, the entire Code was reformatted to incorporate a decimal numbering system. For this edition of the Code cross-reference tables have been provided in order to facilitate the correlation between requirements from the fifteenth edition of the Code to the renumbered requirements of the sixteenth edition and vice versa. It is also noted, that this edition of A17.1 was the result of a joint effort between the ASME A17 Elevator and Escalator Committee and the CSA B44 Technical Committee to harmonize requirements between the ASME A17.1, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, and the CSA B44, Safety Code for Elevators.

The seventeenth edition of the Code incorporates changes made in A17.1a-2002 and A17.1b-2003. Additionally, in Sections 8.10 and 8.11, cross-references have been updated to reflect ASME A17.2-2001, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

This eighteenth edition of the Code is a fully bi-national standard. All former deviations between the ASME A17.1 Code and the CSA B44 Code have been fully addressed within this one Code. Additionally, this edition incorporates revisions to address the advancement of technologies used in the design and construction of elevator equipment which has enabled the installation of the equipment in other than traditional locations such as machine rooms. New requirements have also been added to address programmable electronic systems in safety-related applications of elevators.

The following is a complete list of past editions and supplements to the Code that have been published and the dates when they received final approval. The dates of issuance are also included for the documents published since 1974, and the dates on which they became effective are included for those published since 1978.

Editions and Supplements		Approved	Issued	Effective
First Edition	1921	January 1921	...	...
Second Edition	A17–1925	April 1925	...	...
Third Edition	ASA A17–1931	July 1931	...	...
Fourth Edition	ASA A17.1–1937	July 1937	...	...
Supplements	ASA A17.3–1942	April 1942	...	...
	ASA A17.1.5–1953	June 9, 1953	...	...
Fifth Edition	ASA A17.1–1955	June 15, 1955	...	...
Supplements	ASA A17.1a–1957	December 10, 1957	...	...
Sixth Edition	ASA A17.1–1960	August 29, 1960	...	...
Supplements	ASA A17.1.13–1962	March 20, 1962	...	...
	ASA A17.1a–1963	August 16, 1963	...	...
Seventh Edition	ASA A17.1–1965	July 29, 1965	...	...
Supplements	USAS A17.1a–1967	July 7, 1967	...	...
	USAS A17.1b–1968	December 11, 1968	...	...
	USAS A17.1c–1969	May 6, 1969	...	...
	ANSI A17.1d–1970	March 2, 1970	...	...
Eighth Edition	ANSI A17.1–1971	July 27, 1971	...	...
Supplements	ANSI A17.1a–1972	February 16, 1972	...	...
	ANSI A17.1b–1973	October 11, 1973	...	...
	ANSI A17.1c–1974	April 26, 1974	September 15, 1974	...
	ANSI A17.1d–1975	February 26, 1975	October 31, 1975	...
	ANSI A17.1e–1975	March 26, 1975	October 31, 1975	...

Editions and Supplements		Approved	Issued	Effective	
	ANSI A17.1f–1975	April 2, 1975	October 31, 1975	...	(ED)
	ANSI A17.1g–1976	August 12, 1976	November 30, 1976	...	
Ninth Edition	ANSI A17.1–1978	May 4, 1978	June 15, 1978	September 15, 1978	
Supplements	ANSI A17.1a–1979	February 5, 1979	March 30, 1979	June 30, 1979	
	ANSI A17.1b–1980	March 20, 1980	May 15, 1980	August 15, 1980	
Tenth Edition	ANSI/ASME A17.1–1981	September 8, 1981	October 22, 1981	April 22, 1982	
Supplements	ANSI/ASME A17.1a–1982	October 5, 1982	November 30, 1982	May 30, 1983	
	ANSI/ASME A17.1b–1983	October 24, 1983	December 23, 1983	June 23, 1984	
Eleventh Edition	ANSI/ASME A17.1–1984	August 16, 1984	September 16, 1984	March 16, 1985	
Supplements	ANSI/ASME A17.1a–1985	February 27, 1985	April 15, 1985	October 15, 1985	
	ANSI/ASME A17.1b–1985	August 6, 1985	October 15, 1985	April 15, 1986	
	ANSI/ASME A17.1c–1986	March 5, 1986	April 30, 1986	October 31, 1986	
	ANSI/ASME A17.1d–1986	September 8, 1986	November 30, 1986	May 31, 1987	
	ANSI/ASME A17.1e–1987	February 18, 1987	April 30, 1987	October 30, 1987	
Twelfth Edition	ASME/ANSI A17.1–1987	October 20, 1987	January 15, 1988	July 16,1988	
Supplements	ASME/ANSI A17.1a–1988	October 6, 1988	November 15, 1988	May 16, 1989	
	ASME/ANSI A17.1b–1989	November 10, 1989	November 30, 1989	May 31, 1990	
Thirteenth Edition	ASME A17.1–1990	October 8, 1990	February 8, 1991	August 9, 1991	
Supplements	ASME A17.1a–1991	October 21, 1991	February 28, 1992	August 29, 1992	
	ASME A17.1b–1992	October 28, 1992	December 29, 1992	June 30, 1993	
Fourteenth Edition	ASME A17.1–1993	October 18, 1993	December 31, 1993	July 1, 1994	
Supplements	ASME A17.1a–1994	August 17, 1994	December 31, 1994	July 1, 1995	
	ASME A17.1b–1995	October 5, 1995	January 31, 1996	August 1, 1996	
Fifteenth Edition	ASME A17.1–1996	October 3, 1996	December 31, 1996	July 1, 1997	
Supplements	ASME A17.1a–1997	January 8, 1998	February 27, 1998	August 28, 1998	
	ASME A17.1b–1998	November 13, 1998	February 19, 1999	August 20, 1999	
	ASME A17.1c–1999	May 13, 1999	June 30, 1999	December 31, 1999	
	ASME A17.1d–2000	October 12, 2000	November 30, 2000	January 31, 2001	
Sixteenth Edition	ASME A17.1–2000	October 16, 2000	March 23, 2001	March 23, 2002	
Supplements	ASME A17.1a–2002	February 26, 2002	April 4, 2002	October 4, 2002	
	ASME A17.1b–2003	April 10, 2003	May 30, 2003	November 30, 2003	
Seventeenth Edition	ASME A17.1–2004	January 14, 2004	April 30, 2004	October 31, 2004	
Supplements	ASME A17.1a–2005	March 18, 2005	April 29, 2005	October 29, 2005	
	ASME A17.1S–2005	March 23, 2005	August 12, 2005	February 12, 2006	
Eighteenth Edition	ASME A17.1–2007/CSA B44-07	February 20, 2007	April 6, 2007	October 6, 2007	

ASME A17 ELEVATOR AND ESCALATOR COMMITTEE

(May 2007)

STANDARDS COMMITTEE

J. W. Coaker, *Chair*
H. E. Peelle III, *Vice Chair*
N. B. Martin, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
E. V. Baker, NEIEP
R. E. Baxter, Richard E. Baxter and Associates, LLC
L. Bialy, Otis Elevator Co.
N. Marchitto, *Alternate,* Otis Elevator Co.
J. R. Brooks, North Carolina Department of Labor
W. C. Burklund, Kone, Inc.
J. W. Coaker, Coaker & Co., PC
E. A. Donoghue, Edward A. Donoghue Associates, Inc.
R. E. Droste, Consultant
J. A. Filippone, Port Authority of New York and New Jersey
J. H. Humphrey, *Alternate,* Port Authority of New York and New Jersey
C. C. Fox, Rainbow Security Control Ltd.
G. W. Gibson, George W. Gibson and Associates, Inc.
R. A. Gregory, Vertex Corp.
A. P. Juhasz, Kone, Inc.
L. C. Kanicki, Elevator Subcode Official Township of Burlington, NJ
G. A. Kappenhagen, Schindler Elevator Corp.
J. W. Koshak, Thyssen Krupp Elevator Co.
H. Simpkins, *Alternate,* Thyssen Krupp Elevator Co.
K. S. Lloyd, Abell Elevator International
S. K. Lloyd, *Alternate,* Abell Elevator International
N. B. Martin, Chief Elevator Insp. State of Ohio
Z. R. McCain, Jr., McCain Engineering Associates, Inc.
M. V. Farinola, *Alternate,* MV Farinola, Inc.
D. McColl, Otis Canada, Inc.
H. E. Peelle III, The Peelle Co., Ltd.
S. P. Reynolds, *Alternate,* The Peelle Co., Ltd.
R. L. Phillips, Georgia Department of Labor
A. Rehman, Schindler Elevator Corp.
V. P. Robibero, Schindler Elevator Corp.
C. W. Rogler, State of Michigan
R. L. Seymour, Robert L. Seymour and Associates, Inc.
R. S. Seymour, *Alternate,* Robert L. Seymour and Associates, Inc.
D. L. Steel, David L. Steel Escalators
D. L. Turner, Davis L. Turner & Associates
R. S. Caporale, *Alternate,* Elevator World, Inc.
A. H. Verschell, Consulting Engineer
C. E. Vlahovic, TSSA
R. Haddaller, *Alternate,* TSSA
D. M. Winkle, IUEC Local #14
D. A. Witham, GAL Manufacturing

Honorary Members

L. J. Blaiotta
W. E. Chamberlain
B. J. Fanguy
W. J. Figiel
H. E. Godwin, Jr.
C. E. Hempel
C. L. Kort
A. A. Mascone
J. McAulay, Jr.
E. M. Philpot
R. L. Rogers
R. W. Young
L. E. White

Regulatory Advisory Council

L. C. Kanicki, *Chair*
N. B. Martin, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Staff Secretary*
J. R. Runyan, *Secretary*
G. Antona
J. R. Brooks
J. H. Burpee
P. Caploon
N. C. Dimitruck
A. N. Griffin
R. F. Hadaller
S. J. Hickory
I. D. Jay
M. J. Mellon, Jr.
J. L. Meyer
K. P. Morse
M. E. Pedersen
J. P. Roche
C. W. Rogler
D. M. Stanlaske
S. F. Stout
L. M. Taylor
C. D. Wagner
W. C. Watson
W. J. Witt

NATIONAL INTEREST REVIEW COMMITTEE

J. P. Andrew
G. Antona
T. D. Barkand
M. L. Blankenship
R. J. Blatz
J. E. Brannon
M. T. Brierley
J. A. Caluori
M. A. Chavez
H. J. Clifford
R. F. Dieter
B. Faerber
J. G. Gerk
L. A. Giovannetti
N. R. Herchell
J. E. Herwig
J. Inglis
F. A. Kilian
M. L. Lane
W. R. Larsen
B. H. Larson
M. R. Liberatore
M. A. Malek
J. J. Mancuso
C. C. Mann
N. E. Marchitto
J. J. Marcusky
J. L. Meyer
T. S. Mowrey
F. G. Newman
J. J. O'Donoghue
M. J. Pfeiffer
M. Poulin
P. M. Puno
L. S. Rigby
R. D. Schloss
S. Shanes
D. A. Swerrie

B44.1/A17.5 ELEVATOR AND ESCALATOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT COMMITTEE

J. H. Shull, *Chair*
M. L. Hite, *Vice Chair*
T. J. Tulshi, *Secretary*
P. D. Barnhart
J. W. Blain
A. D. Brown
J. D. Busse
J. Caldwell
I. D. Jay
R. MacKenzie
P. F. McDermott
M. Mihai
A. Rehman
J. P. Rennekamp
V. M. Todt
J. L. Della Porta, *Alternate*
J. M. Weber, *Alternate*

CODE COORDINATION COMMITTEE

E. A. Donoghue, *Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
L. Bialy
R. Bukowski
P. Caploon
R. Cote
G. W. Gibson
G. A. Gress
G. A. Kappenhagen
J. W. Koshak
E. D. Kuligowski
K. Paarlberg
R. D. Weber

DUMBWAITER AND ATD COMMITTEE

J. B. Peskuski, *Chair*
R. Mohamed, *Secretary*
R. Dolan
E. A. Donoghue
R. A. Gregory
M. J. Holat
K. Holdcraft
R. Kremer
B. P. McCune
C. Milley
H. E. Peelle, Jr.

EARTHQUAKE SAFETY COMMITTEE

G. W. Gibson, *Chair*
J. Smith, *Vice Chair*
E. S. Cho, *Secretary*
B. Blackaby
R. E. Droste
R. E. Fleming
W. C. Ribeiro
J. K. Ruth
W. C. Schadrack
A. J. Schiff
A. J. Shelton
D. A. Kalgren, *Alternate*

EDITORIAL COMMITTEE

E. A. Donoghue, *Chair*
D. McColl, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
J. A. Filippone
C. E. Vlahovic

ELECTRICAL COMMITTEE

A. P. Juhasz, *Chair*
J. D. Busse, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
T. D. Barkand
P. D. Barnhart
S. H. Benjamin
B. Blackaby
J. W. Blain
J. Caldwell
F. J. Christensen
J. P. Donnelly
R. E. Droste
R. Elias
S. E. Fisher
G. Henry
Y. C. Ho
N. E. Marchitto
P. F. McDermott
T. Moskal
A. L. Peck
D. K. Prince
P. M. Puno
V. P. Robibero
M. Stergulc
M. Yonemoto
D. Alley, *Alternate*
R. L. Frazier, *Alternate*
S. H. Grainer, *Alternate*
R. F. Hadaller, *Alternate*
D. Henderson, *Alternate*
M. Mihai, *Alternate*
T. H. Nguyen, *Alternate*
J. P. Rennekamp, *Alternate*
J. M. Weber, *Alternate*

ELEVATORS USED FOR CONSTRUCTION COMMITTEE

N. B. Martin, *Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
R. E. Baxter
E. A. Donoghue
C. C. Fox
J. R. Quackenbush
C. W. Rogler

EMERGENCY OPERATIONS COMMITTEE

M. Martin, *Chair*
R. Mohamed, *Secretary*
J. Beamish
D. R. Beste
M. T. Brierley
M. W. Bunker, Jr.
P. Caploon
D. Cook
E. A. Donoghue
B. R. Fraser
D. Henderson
S. R. James
C. Koenig
J. Latham
D. McColl
C. H. Murphy
T. F. Norton
J. J. O'Donoghue
R. L. O'Neill
D. K. Prince
A. Rehman
L. F. Richardson
R. L. Seymour
M. Tevyaw
D. J. Winslow
D. A. Witham
J. C. Carlson, *Alternate*
R. F. Hadaller, *Alternate*
H. Ickes, *Alternate*
J. K. O'Donnell, *Alternate*
R. J. Roux, *Alternate*
J. Varon, *Alternate*

ESCALATOR AND MOVING WALK COMMITTEE

D. L. Steel, *Chair*
D. L. Turner, *Vice Chair*
R. Mohamed, *Secretary*
K. A. Apperson
P. E. Burge
D. R. Evans
J. Filippone
J. G. Gerk
R. A. Glanzmann
P. L. Hackett
K. Harris
H. A. Hausmann
J. A. Kinahan
C. Milley
T. G. Moskal
T. R. Nurnberg
D. E. Rush
K. J. Smith
P. J. Welch
A. D. Clarke, Jr., *Alternate*
R. E. Creak, *Alternate*
K. G. Hamby, *Alternate*
A. Rehman, *Alternate*
J. E. Tyler, *Alternate*
P. Velasquez, Jr., *Alternate*

EVACUATION GUIDE COMMITTEE

D. L. Turner, *Chair*
R. S. Seymour, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
D. Cook
E. A. Donoghue
R. E. Fleming
C. C. Fox
J. L. Meyer
J. O'Donoghue

EXISTING INSTALLATIONS COMMITTEE

D. B. Labrecque, *Chair*
E. S. Cho, *Secretary*
R. E. Baxter
J. Bera
M. L. Blankenship
W. C. Burklund
J. H. Butler
J. D. Carlisle, Jr.
E. A. Donoghue
C. J. Duke
A. T. Gazzaniga
R. A. Gregory
J. A. Jaudes
A. P. Jolly
R. Kremer
B. H. Larson
R. Lauch
K. S. Lloyd, Jr.
G. M. Losey
Z. R. McCain, Jr.
D. McColl
P. McPartland
N. R. Mistry
G. Nyborg III
R. L. Phillips
S. A. Quinn
T. Quinn
J. S. Rearick
A. J. Saxer
G. Stiffler
P. J. Welch
L. E. White
R. D. Cary, *Alternate*

HAND AND SIDEWALK ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

R. S. Caporale, *Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
V. G. Bahna
E. A. Donoghue
G. Greenberg
H. J. Macuga
N. J. Montesano
G. West
J. P. Merkel, *Alternate*

HOISTWAY COMMITTEE

L. M. Capuano, *Chair*
D. McColl, *Vice Chair*
R. Mohamed, *Secretary*
L. Bialy
L. J. Blaiotta
D. S. Boucher
F. R. Cooper
E. A. Donoghue
G. W. Gibson
H. J. Gruszynski
R. F. Hadaller
J. L. Harding
M. E. Jagoditz
J. R. Johnson
D. Kaczmarek
D. P. Kraft
H. E. Peelle III
R. L. Phillips
R. Quinlan
F. Regalado
A. Rehman
S. P. Reynolds
H. Simpkins
S. W. Smith
D. A. Witham
A. S. Conkling, *Alternate*
M. P. Lamb, *Alternate*
R. K. Leckman, *Alternate*
G. L. Nuschler, *Alternate*
M. Tevyaw, *Alternate*
K. Uerling, *Alternate*
J. Varon, *Alternate*

HYDRAULIC COMMITTEE

G. A. Kappenhagen, *Chair*
M. G. Miller, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
L. Bialy
P. E. Burge
C. C. Fox
R. F. Hadaller
H. A. Hammerstrom
C. B. Jackson
A. Jahn
D. McColl
T. S. Mowrey
L. S. Rigby
C. W. Rogler
J. N. Rouse III
W. M. Shrum, Jr.
H. Simpkins
D. B. Spaethe
J. Strzelec
J. A. Kennedy, *Alternate*
J. W. Koshak, *Alternate*
A. M. McClement, *Alternate*
S. S. Pearson, *Alternate*
A. Rehman, *Alternate*
K. Rice, *Alternate*
J. L. Shrum, *Alternate*

INCLINED ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

A. H. Verschell, *Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
J. R. Carrick
R. Elias
T. L. Pope

INSPECTIONS COMMITTEE

K. S. Lloyd, Jr., *Chair*
W. F. Barkman, *Vice Chair*
R. Mohamed, *Secretary*
G. Antona
C. Archer
R. E. Baxter
M. L. Blankenship
J. R. Brooks
J. W. Coaker
C. E. Cunningham
E. A. Donoghue
M. V. Farinola
J. A. Filippone
H. S. Frank
R. F. Hadaller
J. T. Herrity
L. C. Kanicki
J. J. Knolmajer
N. B. Martin
Z. R. McCain, Jr.
J. S. Rearick
C. W. Rogler
J. D. Rosenberger
R. D. Schloss
R. S. Seymour
W. M. Snyder
D. M. Stanlaske
J. Strzelec
M. Tevyaw
J. A. Kennedy, *Alternate*
S. K. Lloyd, *Alternate*
D. McLellan, *Alternate*

INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS COMMITTEE

G. W. Gibson, *Chair*
L. Bialy, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
V. Q. Bates
B. Blackaby
R. S. Caporale
E. A. Donoghue
R. E. Droste
G. L. Harmon
A. P. Juhasz
G. A. Kappenhagen
J. W. Koshak
V. P. Robibero
D. M. Stanlaske
J. Strzelec
D. L. Turner
T. Derwinski, *Alternate*
D. R. Evans, *Alternate*

LIMITED-USE/LIMITED-APPLICATION ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

R. E. Baxter, *Chair*
D. C. Balmer, *Vice Chair*
C. S. Bradley, *Secretary*
P. M. Bass
K. Brinkman
R. G. Buonora
P. Chance
E. A. Donoghue
C. C. Fox
F. J. Giampa
E. J. Matot II
M. L. McDonald
W. M. McKinley
C. H. Murphy
R. Murphy
S. Z. Sanossian
M. W. Schumacher
R. D. Stephens
A. H. Verschell
R. B. Weber
D. M. Winkle
G. L. Harmon, *Alternate*
J. L. Mickel, *Alternate*

MAINTENANCE, REPAIR, AND REPLACEMENT COMMITTEE

Z. R. McCain, Jr., *Chair*
R. A. Gregory, *Vice Chair*
E. S. Cho, *Secretary*
R. E. Baxter
M. L. Blankenship
J. J. DeLorenzi
E. A. Donoghue
C. J. Duke
M. V. Farinola
J. A. Filippone
S. P. Greene
R. F. Hadaller
R. E. Haukeness
A. S. Hopkirk
J. E. Jaster
J. A. Jaudes
R. Kremer
D. B. Labrecque
B. H. Larson
K. S. Lloyd, Jr.
G. M. Losey
D. McColl
N. R. Mistry
R. C. Morrical
J. Murphy
W. B. Pletch
J. R. Quackenbush
T. Quinn
J. S. Rearick
A. Rehman
V. P. Robibero
A. Saxer
R. D. Schloss
J. Strzelec
R. Lauch, *Alternate*

MECHANICAL DESIGN COMMITTEE

G. W. Gibson, *Chair*
L. Bialy, *Vice Chair*
D. L. Turner, *Vice Chair*
E. S. Cho, *Secretary*
E. V. Baker
R. J. Bolen
R. E. Fleming
C. C. Fox
H. S. Frank
R. F. Hadaller
D. Kaczmarek
D. A. Kalgren
K. Konyar
J. W. Koshak
M. P. Lamb
M. L. Lane
D. McColl
T. G. Moskal
A. Rehman
W. C. Ribeiro
H. Simpkins
C. E. Vlahovic
S. P. Wurth
R. E. Creak, *Alternate*
M. E. Jagoditz, *Alternate*
D. P. Kraft, *Alternate*
R. Kremer, *Alternate*

MINE ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

T. D. Barkand, *Chair*
E. S. Cho, *Secretary*
C. D. Barchet
R. M. Bates
W. M. Dietz
P. E. Fernatt
M. G. Kalich
J. B. Ketchem
D. C. Lewetag
A. L. Martin
N. B. Martin
G. L. Miller
H. E. Newcomb
A. J. Saxer
D. J. Shook
R. L. Sidwell
J. K. Taylor

NEW TECHNOLOGY COMMITTEE

J. W. Coaker, *Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
M. H. Bayyari
L. Bialy
A. D. Brown
A. D. Byram
R. S. Caporale
L. M. Capuano
E. A. Donoghue
R. E. Droste
G. W. Gibson
A. N. Griffin
I. D. Jay
A. P. Juhasz
L. C. Kanicki
R. M. Kennedy
J. W. Koshak
G. W. Kosinski
R. H. Laney
K. S. Lloyd, Jr.
D. McColl
M. Pedram
V. P. Robibero
D. M. Stanlaske
T. J. Tulshi
D. L. Turner
C. E. Vlahovic
R. E. Baxter, *Alternate*

RACK AND PINION AND SPECIAL PURPOSE PERSONNEL ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

A. J. Marchant, *Chair*
P. E. Borders, *Vice Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
B. E. Cassity
G. A. Cox
D. F. Grund
S. Harris
J. A. Harrison
R. E. Haukeness
B. L. O'Neill
P. J. Welch
K. M. Harrison, *Alternate*

RESIDENCE ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

A. H. Verschell, *Chair*
P. M. Bass, *Vice Chair*
C. S. Bradley, *Secretary*
D. C. Balmer
R. E. Baxter
K. Brinkman
R. G. Buonora
P. Chance
D. J. DeGere
P. Edwards
R. Elias
F. J. Giampa
F. M. Hoch
M. J. Holat
S. D. Holat
M. L. McDonald
W. M. McKinley
W. M. Middleton
R. Murphy
R. L. Phillips
T. L. Pope
R. D. Stephens
G. L. Harmon, *Alternate*
J. C. Lund, *Alternate*
J. L. Mickel, *Alternate*
J. B. Peskuski, *Alternate*

SHIPBOARD ELEVATOR COMMITTEE

M. R. Tilyou, *Chair*
G. A. Burdeshaw, *Secretary*
E. J. Crawford
W. D. George
T. J. Ingram
R. Wagner

CSA B44 COMMITTEE ON THE ELEVATOR SAFETY CODE

TECHNICAL COMMITTEE

R. Hadaller, *Chair,* Technical Standards and Safety Authority, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
D. McColl, *Vice Chair,* Otis Canada, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
T. Tulshi, *Project Manager,* Canadian Standards Association, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
T. Baik, Toronto Transit Commission, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
S. Bornstein, KONE Inc., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
A. Byram, New Brunswick Department of Public Safety, Saint John, New Brunswick, Canada
R. Cavan, Human Resources and Social Development Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
D. Cook, Coquitlam, British Columbia, Canada
D. Eastman, Government of Newfoundland and Labrador, St. John's, Newfoundland, Canada
A. Griffin, Alberta Municipal Affairs, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada
A. Hopkirk, Canadian Elevator Contractors Association, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
U. Huskic, Fujitec Canada Inc., Richmond Hill, Ontario, Canada
L. Janssens, Saskatchewan Corrections and Public Safety, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada
I. Jay, British Columbia Safety Authority (BCSA), New Westminster, British Columbia, Canada
K. Jenkins KJA Consultants Inc., Montréal, Québec, Canada
F. Kassem, CNIM Canada Inc., Montréal, Québec, Canada
I. Kennedy, Brighton, Ontario, Canada
R. Kennedy, Nova Scotia Department of Environment and Labour, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada
E. MacArthur, Prince Edward Island Department of Community and Cultural Affairs, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island, Canada
A. Marchant, Alimak Hek, Inc., Bridgeport, Connecticut, USA
R. Marion, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, Northwest Territories, Canada
R. Marsiglio, H. H. Angus & Associates Ltd., Don Mills, Ontario, Canada
L. Martineau, STM (Montréal Transport Society), Montréal, Québec, Canada
A. McGregor, Rooney, Irving & Associates Ltd., Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
B. McIntyre, IUEC Local No. 50, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
S. Mercier, Régie du bâtiment du Québec, Montréal, Québec, Canada
M. Pedram, ThyssenKrupp Northern Elevator Corp., Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
H. Peelle, The Peelle Company Limited, Brampton, Ontario, Canada
A. Rehman, Schindler Elevator Corporation, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
T. Rieger, Manitoba Department of Labour and Immigration, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada
J. Rooney, Priestman, Neilson & Associates Ltd., Kanata, Ontario, Canada
R. Scharfe, Public Works and Government Services Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
B. Virk, Unitech Elevator Company, Pickering, Ontario, Canada
P. Yau, Public Works and Government Services Canada, Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Associate Members

G. Befekadu, Oil Lift Systems Inc., Ayr, Ontario, Canada
L. Bialy, Otis Elevator Company, Farmington, Connecticut, USA
B. Blackaby, Otis Elevator Company, Farmington, Connecticut, USA
M. Brierley, Coldwater, Ontario, Canada
A. Brown, KONE Inc., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
E. Donoghue, Edward A. Donoghue Associates Incorporated, Salem, New York, USA
R. Droste, Avon, Connecticut, USA
G. Gibson, George W. Gibson & Associates Inc., Sedona, Arizona, USA
P. Girouard, Plafolift Inc., Warwick, Québec, Canada
G. Kappenhagen, Schindler Elevator Corporation, Morristown, New Jersey, USA
J. Koshak, ThyssenKrupp Elevator, Collierville, Tennessee, USA
M. Liberatore, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada
I. Mercer, Government of Newfoundland and Labrador, St. John's, Newfoundland, Canada
A. Reistetter, National Elevator & Escalator Association, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
E. Sopeju, Underwriters' Laboratories of Canada, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
D. Walton, Eastern Elevator Inc., Bowmanville, Ontario, Canada
D. Warne, Alberta Elevating Devices and Amusement Rides Safety Association, Calgary, Alberta, Canada
E. Zebedee, Government of Nunavut Community and Government Services, Iqaluit, Nunavut, Canada

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE

T. Tulshi, *Project Manager,* Canadian Standards Association, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
S. Bornstein, KONE Inc., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
R. Hadaller, Technical Standards & Safety Authority, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
L. Janssens, Saskatchewan Corrections and Public Safety, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada
I. Jay, British Columbia Safety Authority (BCSA), New Westminster, British Columbia, Canada
R. Kennedy, Nova Scotia Department of Environment and Labour, Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada
D. McColl, Otis Canada, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
S. Mercier, Régie du bâtiment du Québec, Montréal, Québec, Canada
M. Pedram, ThyssenKrupp Northern Elevator Corp., Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
A. Rehman, Schindler Elevator Corporation, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada

CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 JOINT COMMITTEE ON ELEVATOR AND ESCALATOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

J. Shull, *Chair,* Otis Elevator Company, Farmington, Connecticut, USA
M. Hite, *Vice Chair,* KONE Inc., McKinney, Texas, USA
T. Tulshi, *Project Manager,* Canadian Standards Association, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
P. Barnhart, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Research Triangle Park, North Carolina, USA
J. Blain, Schindler Elevator Corporation, Morristown, New Jersey, USA
A. Brown, KONE Inc., Toronto, Ontario, Canada
J. Busse, Fujitec America Incorporated, Lebanon, Ohio, USA
J. Caldwell, ThyssenKrupp Elevator, Middleton, Tennessee, USA
J. Della Porta, Otis Elevator Company, Farmington, Connecticut, USA
I. Jay, British Columbia Safety Authority (BCSA), New Westminster, British Columbia, Canada
R. MacKenzie, CSA International, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
P. McDermott, Technical Standards & Safety Authority, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
M. Mihai, Technical Standards & Safety Authority, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
A. Rehman, Schindler Elevator Corporation, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
J. Rennekamp, Fujitec America Incorporated, Lebanon, Ohio, USA
V. Todt, Elevator Constructors, St. Louis, Missouri, USA
J. Weber, KONE Inc., Moline, Illinois, USA

TASK FORCE ON THE NATIONAL BUILDING CODE OF CANADA FOR THE CSA B44 TECHNICAL COMMITTEE ON THE ELEVATOR SAFETY CODE

A. Rehman, *Chair,* Schindler Elevator Corporation, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
M. Brierley, Coldwater, Ontario, Canada
R. Cavan, Human Resources and Social Development Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
C. Frechette, National Research Council Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
R. Hadaller, Technical Standards & Safety Authority, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
I. Kennedy, Brighton, Ontario, Canada
D. McColl, Otis Canada, Inc., Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
S. Mercier, Régie du bâtiment du Québec, Montréal, Québec, Canada
C. Nicol, The Toronto Advocacy Committee of the CNIB, Toronto, Ontario, Canada
S. Reynolds, The Peelle Company Limited, Brampton, Ontario, Canada
E. Sopeju, Underwriters' Laboratories of Canada, Scarborough, Ontario, Canada
C. Taraschuk, National Research Council Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada
T. Tulshi, Canadian Standards Association, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada

ASME PREFACE

GENERAL

This Code is one of the numerous codes and standards developed and published by The American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) under the general auspices of the American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI).

The Code is intended to serve as the basis for the design construction, installation, operation, testing, inspection, maintenance, alteration, and repair of elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, moving walks, and material lifts.

Safety codes and standards are intended to enhance public health and safety. Revisions result from committee consideration of factors such as technological advances, new data, and changing environmental and industry needs. Revisions do not imply that previous editions were inadequate.

This Code applies to new installations only, except Part 1, and 5.10, 8.1, 8.6, 8.7, 8.8, 8.9, 8.10, and 8.11, which apply to both new and existing installations. Also, see ASME A17.3, Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators, for further requirements.

The following conditions are not addressed in this Code:

(a) assignment of the responsibility for compliance to any particular party.

(b) establishment of a frequency for periodic inspections and tests. See Nonmandatory Appendix N for recommended inspections and test intervals.

(c) assignment of responsibility for persons authorized to make and witness inspections and tests.

APPLICATION OF REQUIREMENTS TO NEW TECHNOLOGY

With the advent of new technologies, materials, and processes in the mechanical, structural, electronic, and optic fields, and the analytical capabilities now available, the need for flexibility to introduce products into the marketplace using these technical developments is desirable. Previous editions of ASME A 17.1 had long-standing provisions, in Section 1.2, that suggested that Authorities Having Jurisdiction should recognize safety equivalent to that required by the Codes. This edition of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 recognizes ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 provides a structured method for establishing the safety of designs and products and that compliance with ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 is equivalent to compliance with the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

FORM AND ARRANGEMENT

This Code consists of parts and sections, each covering a specific subject so as to facilitate reference to the requirements.

The Foreword, Preface, Notes, and Appendices that are included in this document, and the Interpretations that are provided as a separate booklet are not part of this American National Standard. They are advisory in nature and are intended for clarification only.

In this edition, the revisions that are appearing for the first time are identified by (07). Where editorial changes have been made, they are identified by (ED). See also Summary of Changes.

METRIC (SI) UNITS

This edition of the Code uses hard metric (SI) units wherever practical. The acceptable equivalent imperial units are shown in parentheses. Information on the usage of SI units and conversion to imperial units is contained in IEEE/ASTM SI 10-1997 Standard for the Use of the International System of Units (SI): The Modern Metric System, ASME Guide SI-1, Orientation and Guide for Use of SI (Metric) Units, or CAN/CSA-Z234.1, Canadian Metric Practice Guide.

Tables related to speed and load use the hard metric and hard imperial units in common practice, even though they are not exactly equivalent (e.g., see Table 2.22.4.1, Minimum Buffer Strokes). The tabular values have been derived using 8.2.1 formulas and the metric and imperial values for buffer strokes, safety stopping distances, etc., are therefore not equivalent.

ASME ELEVATOR PUBLICATIONS

The following ASME publications are of special interest to users of this Code. For prices and availability, contact:

ASME Order Department
22 Law Drive
Box 2300
Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300
Tel: 800-843-2763
Fax: 973-882-1717
E-Mail: infocentral@asme.org
ASME Website: www.asme.org/catalog

ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks. This Guide gives detailed procedures for the inspection and testing of elevators, escalators, and moving walks required to conform to the Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, A17.1–1955 and later editions and the Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators, A17.3. Subsections are arranged to focus on routine and periodic inspection requirements, as well as acceptance criteria.

ASME A17.3 Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators. This Code covers retroactive requirements for existing elevators and escalators. The purpose of this Code is to establish minimum requirements that will provide a reasonable degree of safety for the general public. While many of these requirements will also increase the degree of safety for the elevator mechanic and inspector, this area has not been specifically addressed at this time.

ASME A17 CD-ROM for Elevators and Escalators. This CD-ROM contains the ASME A17.1, A17.2, and A17.3 standards. In addition, it contains the published interpretations applicable to these standards.

ASME A17.4 Guide for Emergency Personnel. This guide for emergency personnel (fire, police, etc.), building owners, lessees, and building operating managers explains the proper procedures to be used for the safe removal of passengers from stalled cars.

CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 Elevator and Escalator Electrical Equipment. This Code contains requirements for obtaining, labeling, and listing electrical equipment for elevators, escalators, moving walks, dumbwaiters, material lifts, platform lifts, and stairway lifts.

ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7 Performance-Based Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. This American National Standard performance-based safety code covers the design, construction, installation, operation, testing, maintenance, alteration, and repair of elevators, dumbwaiters, escalators, moving walks, and material lifts.

Published Interpretations. Interpretations of the various A17 standards are published periodically.

Interpretations of A17.1 and A17.2 approved by the A17 Committee from June 14, 1972 through June 1979, were published in a separate book in 1980.

Starting with the 1981 edition of the Code, interpretations are published with each new edition and supplement of the applicable standard. A compilation of Interpretations Nos. 2-13 (June 1979–May 1989) has also been published by ASME. A compilation of all interpretations can also be obtained through the A17 CD-ROM.

Handbook on A17.1/B44 Safety Code. This handbook augments the A17.1/B44 Code with commentary, diagrams, and illustrations that are intended to explain the requirements of the A17.1/B44 Code.

The commentary contained in the Handbook is the opinion of the author and has not been approved by the A17 Committee or the B44 Technical Committee.

QEI-1 Standard for the Qualification of Elevator Inspectors. This Standard covers requirements for the qualification and duties of inspectors and inspection supervisors engaged in the inspection and testing of equipment within the scope of the A17.1/B44 Code. It also includes requirements for the accreditation of organizations that certify inspectors and inspection supervisors as meeting the QEI criteria.

ASME A18.1 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts. This safety Standard covers the design, construction, installation, operation, inspection, testing, maintenance, and repair of inclined stairway chairlifts and inclined and vertical platform lifts intended for transportation of a mobility impaired person only.

CORRESPONDENCE WITH A17 COMMITTEE

ASME codes and standards are developed and maintained with the intent to represent the consensus of concerned interests. As such, users of this and other ASME A17 codes and standards may interact with the committee by requesting interpretations, proposing revisions, and attending committee meetings. Correspondence should be addressed to:

Secretary, A17 Standards Committee
The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016
E-mail: infocentral@asme.org

All correspondence to the Committee must include the individual's name and post office address in case the Committee needs to request further information.

Proposing Revisions. Revisions are made periodically to the Code to incorporate changes that appear necessary or desirable, as demonstrated by the experience gained from the application of the procedures, and in order to conform to developments in the elevator art. Approved revisions will be published periodically.

The Committee welcomes proposals for revisions to this Code. Such proposals should be as specific as possible: citing the Section number(s), the proposed wording, and a detailed description of the reasons for the proposal including any pertinent documentation.

Requesting Interpretations. On request, the A17 Committee will render an interpretation of any requirement of the Code. Interpretations can only be rendered in response to a written request sent to the Secretary of the Standards Committee.

The request for interpretation should be clear and unambiguous. It is further recommended that the inquirer submit his request utilizing the following format:

Abbreviations Used in This Code

Abbreviation	Unit	Abbreviation	Unit
A	Ampere	lb	pound (mass)
°C	degree Celsius	lbf	pound (force)
deg	degree (angle)	lx	lux
°F	degree Fahrenheit	m	meter
ft/min	foot per minute	m^2	square meter
ft/s	foot per second	m^3	cubic meter
ft	foot	mA	milliampere
fc	footcandle	m/s	meter per second
ft^2	square foot	m/s^2	meter per second per second
ft^3	cubic foot	mm	millimeter
ft/s^2	foot per second per second	mm^2	square millimeter
h	hour	mm^3	cubic millimeter
Hz	hertz	MPa	megapascal
in.	inch	N	Newton
$in.^2$	square inch	psi	pound per square inch
$in.^3$	cubic inch	s	second
kg	kilogram	SIL	Safety Integrity Level
kPa	kilopascal	V	volt

Subject: Cite the applicable Section number(s) and a concise description.

Edition: Cite the applicable edition and supplement of the Code for which the interpretation is being requested.

Question: Phrase the question as a request for an interpretation of a specific requirement suitable for general understanding and use, not as a request for an approval of a proprietary design or situation. The question shall be phrased, where possible, to permit a specific "yes" or "no" answer. The inquirer may also include any plans or drawings that are necessary to explain the question; however, they should not contain proprietary names or information.

Requests that are not in this format will be rewritten in this format by the Committee prior to being answered, which may inadvertently change the intent of the original request.

ASME procedures provide for reconsideration of any interpretation when or if additional information that might affect an interpretation is available. Further, persons aggrieved by an interpretation may appeal to the cognizant ASME committee or subcommittee. ASME does not "approve," "certify," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity.

Attending Committee Meetings. The A17 Standards Committee and the various Working Committees regularly hold meetings all of which are open to the public. Persons wishing to attend any meeting should contact the Secretary of the Standards Committee.

CSA PREFACE

This is the first edition of ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*. It replaces the previous editions of CSA B44, published in 2004, 2000, 1994, 1990, 1985, 1975, 1971, 1966, 1960, and 1938.

This Code is the result of a joint effort by the CSA B44 Technical Committee on the Elevator Safety Code and the ASME A17 Committee on Elevators and Escalators to harmonize the provisions of CSA B44 and ASME A17.1. This edition of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 consists of the complete ASME A17.1 Code, with additional requirements applicable only in Canadian jurisdictions. These Canadian requirements are prefaced in the body of the Code by the following: "In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC. . ."

CSA B44 was originally developed to facilitate the implementation of uniform legislation across Canada and to replace the existing legislation, which had proved inadequate for prevailing elevator practices. The primary purpose of the Code is to establish minimum requirements, suitable for adoption by regulatory authorities throughout Canada, for the design, installation, and maintenance of elevators, escalators, dumbwaiters, moving walks, and material lifts. It is also intended as a standard reference for architects, consulting engineers, elevator manufacturers, and building owners.

This Code is considered suitable for use for conformity assessment within the stated scope of the Code.

This Code was prepared for use in Canada by the CSA Technical Committee on the Elevator Safety Code under the jurisdiction of the CSA Strategic Steering Committee on Mechanical Industrial Equipment Safety. It has been formally approved by the CSA Technical Committee.

February 2007

NOTES:

(1) Use of the singular does not exclude the plural (and vice versa) when the sense allows.

(2) Although the intended primary application of this Code is stated in its Scope, it is important to note that it remains the responsibility of the users of the Code to judge its suitability for their particular purpose.

(3) This publication was developed by consensus, which is defined by *CSA Policy governing standardization — Code of good practice for standardization* as "substantial agreement. Consensus implies much more than a simple majority, but not necessarily unanimity." It is consistent with this definition that a member may be included in the Technical Committee list and yet not be in full agreement with all clauses of this publication.

(4) CSA Codes and Standards are subject to periodic review, and suggestions for their improvement will be referred to the appropriate committee.

(5) All enquiries regarding this Code, including requests for interpretation, should be addressed to Canadian Standards Association, 5060 Spectrum Way, Suite 100, Mississauga, Ontario, Canada L4W 5N6. Requests for interpretation should

(a) define the problem, making reference to the specific clause, and, where appropriate, include an illustrative sketch

(b) provide an explanation of circumstances surrounding the actual field condition

(c) be phrased where possible to permit a specific "yes" or "no" answer.

Committee interpretations are processed in accordance with the CSA Directives and guidelines governing standardization and are published in CSA's periodical *Info Update*, which is available on the CSA Web site at www.csa.ca.

ASME A17.1-2007/CSA B44-07
SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Following approval by the ASME A17 Elevator and Escalator Committee, and after public review, ASME A17.1-2007/CSA B44-07 was approved by the American National Standards Institute on February 20, 2007. It was issued on April 6, 2007, and is effective as of October 6, 2007.

ASME A17.1-2007/CSA B44-07 incorporates the revisions and editorial changes made in ASME A17.1a–2005 and ASME A17.1S–2005, as well as additional revisions and editorial changes. Revisions are identified by a margin note, **(07)**. Changes made to correct errors, as well as other new editorial changes, are identified by **(ED)**. Revisions introduced in ASME A17.1S–2005 are indicated by **(05S)**. Revision designators will remain on the pages up to the publication of the next edition of the Code. The **(ED)** designators will appear only when the editorial changes are introduced. The following is a summary of the latest revisions and changes:

Page	*Location*	*Change*
viii–xii	ASME Foreword	Revised
xix–xxi	ASME Preface	Revised
xxii	CSA Preface	Added
1	1.1.1	Revised
	1.1.2	(1) Subparagraph (d) revised (2) Subparagraphs (v) and (w) editorially revised (3) New subparagraph (x) added
2–16	Section 1.2	Revised in its entirety
	Section 1.3	(1) Definition of *alteration, as part of an; electrical/electronic/programmable electronic system (E/E/PES); electrical/electronic/programmable electronic (E/E/PE); escalator, skirt, dynamic; fire barrier; fire-protection rating; machine, driving: chain-hydraulic drive machine; manually (manual) reset, elevator; mode of operation*; and *safety integrity level (SIL)* added (2) Definition of *elevator observation; entrance, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift; entrance hardware, assembly; fire-resistance rating; fire-resistive construction*; and *leveling device, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift* revised (3) Definition of *clearance, top car, electronic elevators* and *control system* editorially revised (4) Definition of *fire endurance* and *travel* deleted
17	2.1.1.1.2	First paragraph revised

Page	*Location*	*Change*
18	2.1.2.3(c)	Editorially revised
19, 20	2.1.6.2	Revised in its entirety
	2.2.2.5	Revised
	2.2.4	Revised in its entirety
21	2.2.8	Second sentence added
	2.3.3.1	Revised
23	2.4.6.2(d)(1)	Editorially revised
	2.4.6.2(e)	Editorially revised
25	2.7.1.1.2	Editorially revised
26	2.7.1.3.1	Revised and Note added
28	2.7.5.1.2(e)	Second sentence editorially revised
29	2.7.5.2.1	Revised in its entirety
	2.7.5.3	Editorially revised
31	2.7.6.3.4(a)	Editorially revised
32	2.7.8.1	Revised
33	2.8.2.2	Revised
34	2.8.3.3.2	Paragraph revised
	2.8.3.3.4	Revised in its entirety
37	2.11.1.3	Editorially revised
	2.11.1.4	Last sentence revised
43	2.11.14.1(a)	Editorially revised
44	2.11.15.1	Title and paragraph revised
	2.11.15.1.1(d)	Added
	2.11.15.1.2	Revised in its entirety
	2.11.15.1.3	Added
	2.11.15.1.4	Added
	2.11.15.2	Title and first paragraph revised
45	2.11.19	Revised
	2.11.19.2	Editorially revised
	2.12.2.4.1	Editorially revised
46	2.12.2.4.6	Deleted and replaced by previously designated 2.12.2.4.7
	2.12.3.1(a)	Editorially revised
	2.12.3.1(b)	Editorially revised
47	2.12.3.4.5	Deleted and replaced by previously designated 2.12.3.4.6
48	2.12.6.2.4	Revised
	2.12.7.3.2	Revised

Page	*Location*	*Change*
54	2.14.2.1.1	Editorially revised
	2.14.2.1.2	Revised
	2.14.2.1.3	Editorially revised
59	2.14.7.1.3(a)	Revised
	2.14.7.1.4	Revised
71	2.18.4.2	Editorially revised
74	2.19.1.2(a)(1)(b)	Revised
	2.19.2.2(a)(1)(b)	Revised
82, 83	2.21.4	Third paragraph revised
	2.21.4.1	Revised
	2.21.4.2	Revised in its entirety
85	2.22.4.10.3	Editorially revised
88	Fig. 2.23.4.1-1	For 10 000 kg, parenthetical conversion value editorially corrected
89–92	Fig. 2.23.4.1-2	For 10 000 kg, parenthetical conversion value editorially corrected
99	2.26.1.4.1(d)(1)	Revised
103	2.26.2.38	Added
	2.26.4.2	Revised
	2.26.4.3	Revised in its entirety
	2.26.5	Subparagraphs (a) and (b) revised
104, 105	Table 2.26.4.3.2	Added
106, 107	2.26.8.2	Revised in its entirety
	2.26.9.3	First paragraph revised
	2.26.9.3(c)	Editorially revised
	2.26.9.4	Revised in its entirety
	2.26.9.5	Editorially revised
	2.26.9.5.1	Revised in its entirety
	2.26.9.5.2	Revised
	2.26.9.5.3	Revised
	2.26.9.5.4	Revised
	2.26.9.6	Editorially revised
	2.26.9.6.1	Revised in its entirety
109	Section 2.27	Note revised
	2.27.1.1.1	Revised
	2.27.1.1.2	Revised
	2.27.1.1.4	Revised
110	2.27.1.2(d)	Editorially revised

Page	*Location*	*Change*
	2.27.3	Revised in its entirety
	2.27.3.1.1	First paragraph revised
	2.27.3.1.2	Revised
111	2.27.3.1.6(i)	Second sentence corrected by errata
	2.27.3.1.6(l)	Revised in its entirety
112	Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)	Revised
	2.27.3.1.6(n)	Added
	2.27.3.2.2	Revised in its entirety
	2.27.3.2.3(b)	Revised
	2.27.3.2.3(c)	Revised
	2.27.3.2.3(d)	Editorially revised
	2.27.3.2.4(b)	Editorially revised
113, 114	2.27.3.3	Revised in its entirety
	2.27.3.3.1(c)	Revised
	2.27.3.3.1(h)	Last sentence added
	2.27.3.3.1(i)	Revised
	2.27.3.3.1(k)	Revised
	2.27.3.3.1(m)	Revised and Note added
	2.27.3.3.1(n)	Added
	2.27.3.3.2	Revised
	2.27.3.3.4	Revised
115, 116	2.27.3.4	Revised in its entirety
	2.27.3.5	Revised in its entirety
	2.27.4(a)	Editorially revised
	2.27.4.2	Last sentence of fourth paragraph corrected by errata
	2.27.5.2(a)	Revised
117	2.27.8	Revised in its entirety
119	Fig. 2.27.9	Revised
122	Section 3.7	Subparagraphs 3.7.1.1 through 3.7.1.9 corrected by errata
123	Section 3.14	Revised
124	Section 3.17	Title revised
125	3.17.1.3	Editorially revised
	3.17.3.2.2(b)	Revised
	3.17.3.6.2	Revised
126	3.17.4	Added
128	3.18.6	Added

Page	*Location*	*Change*
129	3.19.3.1	Revised
133	3.25.2.2	Title and paragraph revised
	3.25.2.2.1	Revised
	3.25.2.3	Added
	3.25.2.4	Added
	3.25.2.4.1	Added
135	3.26.6.2	Revised in its entirety
	3.26.6.3	Added
	3.26.6.4	Added
136	3.27.1	Last sentence added
	3.27.2	Second paragraph revised
138	4.1.2.2	Revised in its entirety
139	4.1.9.1	Revised in its entirety
144	4.3.4	Second paragraph editorially revised
146	4.3.15	First and third paragraphs editorially revised
147	Part 5	In Scope, subparagraphs (g) and (i) revised
148	5.1.8.1	Revised
153, 154	5.2.1.1.2	Revised in its entirety
	5.2.1.4.2	Revised in its entirety
	5.2.1.7	Title and paragraph revised in its entirety
	5.2.1.8	Title and paragraph revised
	5.2.1.12	First paragraph revised
155	5.2.1.13	Title and paragraph revised in its entirety
157, 158	5.2.1.27	Revised
	5.2.2	Revised in its entirety
	5.3.1.1	Revised
	5.3.1.1.1	Revised in its entirety
	5.3.1.1.2	Revised in its entirety
159	5.3.1.7.1	Revised
	5.3.1.7.8	Added
	5.3.1.7.9	Added
160	5.3.1.8.1(d)	Revised in its entirety
	5.3.1.8.2(a)	Revised
162	5.3.1.16.2(a)	Subsubparagraphs (7) and (8) added
163	5.3.1.16.2(j)	Added
	5.3.1.16.5	Added

Page	*Location*	*Change*
164	5.3.1.18.2	(1) Subparagraph (c) revised (2) New subparagraph (d) added, and previous (d) redesignated as (e)
	5.3.1.18.4(b)	Revised
165	5.3.2.2.1	Revised
	5.3.2.3	Revised
169	5.4.15.5.2	Revised
173	5.5.1.26	Editorially revised
174	5.6.1.4(d)	Editorially revised
176	5.6.1.25.3	First paragraph editorially revised
177	Section 5.7	First paragraph revised
182	5.8.1.1	First sentence revised
	5.8.1.2	First sentence revised
183	Section 5.9	First paragraph revised
185	5.9.14.1(a)	Second sentence revised
	5.9.14.1(b)	Revised
	5.9.14.1(c)	Revised
186	5.9.17.6	Editorially revised
192	6.1.3.3.1(a)(1)	Revised
	6.1.3.3.1(a)(2)	Revised
194	6.1.3.3.9(c)(2)	Editorially revised
195, 196	6.1.3.5.6	Both paragraphs revised
198	6.1.6	Requirement 6.1.6.7 deleted
199	6.1.6.3	Editorially revised
	6.1.6.3.1(a)	Revised
203, 204	6.1.6.11(b)	Revised
	6.1.7.3.2	Revised
	6.1.7.4.2	Revised
	6.1.8.1	Revised in its entirety
	6.1.8.2	Revised in its entirety
210	6.2.6.3.1(a)	Revised
213	6.2.6.10(b)	Revised
	6.2.7.3.2	Revised
214	6.2.7.4.2	Revised
	6.2.8.1	Revised in its entirety
	6.2.8.2	Revised in its entirety
215, 216	Part 7	In Scope, second paragraph added
	Section 7.1	Second paragraph deleted

Page	*Location*	*Change*
	7.1.1.2	Revised
	7.1.4.3	Added
218	7.1.12.1.1	Subparagraphs (b) and (c) editorially revised
219	7.1.12.4	Revised in its entirety
	Section 7.2	Second sentence deleted
221	7.2.2.8	Revised in its entirety
	7.2.3.3.1	Revised
224	7.2.12.4	Revised
	7.2.12.4.3	Added
	7.2.12.10	Revised in its entirety
225	Section 7.3	Second sentence deleted
226	7.3.11.5.2	Revised
227	7.4.2	Revised in its entirety
	7.4.5	Revised in its entirety
228	Table 7.4.3	Under Clearances, last entry revised
229	7.4.9	Revised
	7.4.11	Revised
	7.4.12	Revised
232	7.5.3.4	Revised in its entirety
237	7.9.1.1	Revised
240, 241	8.1.1	Revised in its entirety
	8.1.2	Revised in its entirety
	8.1.3	Revised in its entirety
	8.1.4	(1) First paragraph revised (2) Note (d) added
259	Section 8.3	Subparagraph (a)(4) editorially revised
265	8.3.7.3	Editorially revised
270	Fig. 8.4.8.2-1	Revised
271	Fig. 8.4.8.2-2	Revised
272	Fig. 8.4.8.2-3	Revised
273	Fig. 8.4.8.2-4	Revised
274	Fig. 8.4.8.2-5	Revised
275	Fig. 8.4.8.2-6	Revised
276	Fig. 8.4.8.2-7	Revised
282	8.4.11.2	Revised in its entirety
287	8.4.13.2	Revised in its entirety
288, 289	Section 8.6	Revised

Page	*Location*	*Change*
	8.6.1.2.1(a)(1)(f)	Added
	8.6.1.2.1(e)	Added
	8.6.1.2.1(f)	Added
	8.6.1.4.1(d)	Editorially revised
290	8.6.1.6.3(d)	Revised and Note added
292	8.6.3.7.2	Second paragraph revised
	8.6.4.1.3	Revised
294	8.6.4.18	Added
299	8.6.12	Added
302, 303	8.7.1.7	Second sentence added
	8.7.1.8	Second sentence added
	8.7.2.1.3	Editorially revised
	8.7.2.1.4	Editorially revised
	8.7.2.7.6	Editorially revised
	8.7.2.7.7	Editorially revised
306	8.7.2.15.2	Revised in its entirety
	8.7.2.17	Title editorially revised
	8.7.2.17.1	Title and paragraphs editorially revised
307	8.7.2.17.2(b)(5)	Editorially revised
308	8.7.2.23	Revised in its entirety
	8.7.2.25.1(a)	Editorially revised
	8.7.2.25.2(a)	Editorially revised
	8.7.2.25.2(b)	Editorially revised
309	8.7.2.27.6	First paragraph revised
	8.7.2.27.8	Added
310	8.7.3.15.3	Editorially revised
311	8.7.3.19	Editorially revised
	8.7.3.22	Title editorially revised
	8.7.3.22.1	First paragraph and subparagraphs (b), (c), and (e) editorially revised
	8.7.3.23.1	Revised
312	8.7.3.23.2	Revised
	8.7.3.23.3	Revised
313	8.7.3.31.11	Added
	8.7.4.3.7	Title and paragraphs editorially revised
314	8.7.6.1.1	Revised in its entirety
315	8.7.6.1.5	Revised in its entirety

Page	*Location*	*Change*
	8.7.6.1.9	Third paragraph deleted
	8.7.6.2.1	Revised
317	8.9.2	Revised
	8.10.1.4	Added
318–323	8.10.2.2.1(j)(1)	Revised
	8.10.2.2.1(j)(2)	Revised
	8.10.2.2.2	Revised in its entirety
	8.10.2.2.3	Subparagraphs (v), (w)(3), and (bb)(3) revised (2) Subparagraphs (ee) through (ii) added
	8.10.2.2.4	Subparagraphs (l) through (o) added
	8.10.2.2.5	(1) Subparagraphs (f) and (h)(3) revised (2) Subparagraphs (k) through (p) added
	8.10.2.2.7	Added
	8.10.2.2.8	Added
	8.10.2.3.2(n)	Editorially revised
324–330	8.10.3.2.1	Subparagraphs (v) through (x) added
	8.10.3.2.2	Revised in its entirety
	8.10.3.2.3	Revised in its entirety
	8.10.3.2.4	Revised in its entirety
	8.10.3.2.5	Revised in its entirety
	8.10.3.2.7	Added
	8.10.3.3.2	Subparagraphs (p) and (q) revised
	8.10.4.1.1	(1) Subparagraph (c)(1)(7) added (2) Subparagraph (i) revised (3) Subparagraph (j)(5) deleted (4) Subparagraph (s)(2) revised (5) Subparagraph (t)(6) revised
	8.10.4.1.2	Subparagraphs (d)(3)(b), (d)(6), and (v) added
331	8.10.5.2	Title and first paragraph revised
333–335	8.11.1.6	Title and paragraph revised
	8.11.1.7	Added
	8.11.2.1.1	Subparagraphs (v) through (x) added
	8.11.2.1.2	Revised in its entirety
	8.11.2.1.3	Subparagraphs (ee) through (ii) added
	8.11.2.1.4	Subparagraphs (m) through (o) added
	8.11.2.1.5	Subparagraphs (k) through (p) added
	8.11.2.1.7	Added
336, 337	8.11.2.2.2(a)	Editorially revised

Page	Location	Change
	8.11.2.2.6	Editorially revised
	8.11.2.2.10	Added
	8.11.2.2.11	Added
	8.11.2.3.1	Last paragraph deleted
	8.11.2.3.2	Subparagraph (c) added
	8.11.2.3.3	Subparagraph (e) deleted
338–340	8.11.3.1.1	(1) Subparagraphs (d), (e), and (q) revised (2) Subparagraphs (v) through (x) added
	8.11.3.1.2	Revised in its entirety
	8.11.3.1.3	Revised in its entirety
	8.11.3.1.4	Subparagraphs (l) through (n) added
	8.11.3.1.5	(1) Subparagraphs (b) and (h) revised (2) Subparagraph (k) redesignated as (j) (3) New subparagraphs (k) through (p) added
	8.11.3.1.7	Added
	8.11.3.2.2	Title revised
	8.11.3.2.3	Subparagraphs (a), (f), and (h) revised
	8.11.3.2.4	Revised
	8.11.3.3.1	Revised
	8.11.3.4.5	Added
	8.11.4.1	(1) Subparagraphs (j), (m), and (s) revised (2) Subparagraphs (t) and (u) deleted (3) Subparagraph (v) redesignated as (t)
341	8.11.4.2.13	Second paragraph added
342	8.11.5.2	Title and first paragraph revised
345–350	Section 9.1	Editorially revised
351, 352	Section 9.2	Address for GSA updated
358–365	Nonmandatory Appendix E	Revised in its entirety
379	Nonmandatory Appendix J	Deleted and replaced with new Appendix
381–385	Nonmandatory Appendix L	Revised

SPECIAL NOTE:

The interpretations to ASME A17.1 issued between July 2004 through June 2006 follow the last page of this edition as a separate supplement, Interpretation No. 28.

SAFETY CODE FOR ELEVATORS AND ESCALATORS

Part 1
General

SECTION 1.1
SCOPE

(07) **1.1.1 Equipment Covered by this Code**

This Code covers the design, construction, operation, inspection, testing, maintenance, alteration, and repair of the following equipment and its associated parts, rooms, spaces, and hoistways, where located in or adjacent to a building or structure (see 1.2):

(a) hoisting and lowering mechanisms, equipped with a car, that move between two or more landings. This equipment includes, but is not limited to elevators (see 1.3).

(b) power-driven stairways and walkways for carrying persons between landings. This equipment includes, but is not limited to escalators and moving walks (see 1.3).

(c) hoisting and lowering mechanisms equipped with a car that serves two or more landings and is restricted to the carrying of material by its limited size or limited access to the car. This equipment includes, but is not limited to dumbwaiters and material lifts (see 1.3).

(07) **1.1.2 Equipment Not Covered by this Code**
(ED)

Equipment not covered by this Code includes, but is not limited to, the following:

(a) personnel hoists within the scope of ANSI A10.4 and CSA-Z185

(b) material hoists within the scope of ANSI A10.5 and CSA-Z256

(c) platform lifts and stairway chairlifts within the scope of ASME A18.1, CSA B355, and CSA B613

(d) manlifts within the scope of ASME A90.1 and CSA B311, and in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC Special Purpose Personnel Elevators (ASME A17.1, Section 5.7)

(e) mobile scaffolds and towers; platforms within the scope of ANSI/SIA A92 and CSA-B354

(f) powered platform and equipment for exterior and interior building maintenance within the scope of ASME A120.1 and CSA-Z271

(g) conveyors and related equipment within the scope of ASME B20.1

(h) cranes, derricks, hoists, hooks, jacks, and slings within the scope of ASME B30, CSA Z150, CSA B167, CSA Z202, and CSA Z248

(i) industrial trucks within the scope of ASME B56 and CSA B335

(j) portable equipment, except for portable escalators, that are covered by 6.1

(k) tiering or piling machines used to move material to and from storage located and operating entirely within one story

(l) equipment for feeding or positioning material at machine tools, printing presses, etc.

(m) skip or furnace hoists

(n) wharf ramps

(o) amusement devices

(p) stage and orchestra lifts

(q) lift bridges

(r) railroad car lifts and dumpers

(s) mechanized parking garage equipment

(t) line jacks, false cars, shafters, moving platforms, and similar equipment used for installing an elevator

(u) platform elevators installed in a ship or offshore drilling rig and used for the purpose of loading and unloading cargo, equipment, and personnel

(v) dock levelers (freight platform lifts) having a rise of 500 mm (20 in.) or less

(w) in Canadian jurisdictions, devices having a rise of 2 000 mm (79 in.) or less and used only for the transfer of materials or equipment

(x) in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, mine elevators within the scope of 5.9

1.1.3 Application of Parts

This Code applies to new installations only, except Part 1, and 5.10, 8.1, 8.6, 8.7, 8.8, 8.9, 8.10, and 8.11, that apply to both new and existing installations.

1.1.4 Effective Date

The requirements of this edition and subsequent addenda to the Code are effective as of the date noted on the copyright page of this document. The authority having jurisdiction will establish the effective date for their local regulations.

(07)

SECTION 1.2
PURPOSE AND EXCEPTIONS

1.2.1 Purpose

The purpose of this Code is to provide for the safety of life and limb, and to promote the public welfare. Compliance with this Code shall be achieved by

(a) conformance with the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44; or

(b) conformance with some of the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and for systems, subsystems, components, or functions that do not conform with certain requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44, conform with the applicable requirements in ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7; or

(c) conformance with the requirements in ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7

1.2.2 Exceptions to ASME A17.1

The provisions of this Code are not intended to prevent the use of systems, methods, or devices of equivalent or superior quality, strength, fire resistance, effectiveness, durability, and safety to those prescribed by this Code, provided that there is technical documentation to demonstrate the equivalency of the system, method, or device.

1.2.2.1 The specific requirements of this Code shall be permitted to be modified by the authority having jurisdiction based upon technical documentation or physical performance verification to allow alternative arrangements that will assure safety equivalent to that which would be provided by conformance to the corresponding requirements of this Code.

1.2.2.2 This Code contains requirements that are also covered in the National Building Code of Canada (NBCC). Reference to the NBCC is recognition that said requirements are not within the scope of this Code in Canada.

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the use of the NBCC is not intended.

1.2.2.3 Exceptions shall be based on the requirements of 1.2.2.1.

(07)
(05S)

SECTION 1.3
DEFINITIONS

Section 1.3 defines various terms used in this Code. In addition, some nomenclature and terminology used in the elevator industry and other ASME publications are defined.

access switch: see *hoistway access switch.*

alteration: any change to equipment, including its parts, components, and/or subsystems, other than maintenance, repair, or replacement.

alteration, as part of an: a repair or replacement that is included with other work that is classified as an alteration.

alternate level: a floor level identified by the building code or fire authority, other than the designated level.

annunciator, car: an electrical device in the car that indicates visually the landings at which an elevator landing signal registering device has been actuated.

applied frame entrance: a wraparound or partial addition to an existing entrance frame used to improve the appearance or to provide the required clearances.

approved: acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

authority having jurisdiction: the organization, office, or individual responsible for enforcement of this Code. Where compliance with this Code has been mandated by legislation or regulation, the "authority having jurisdiction" is the regulatory authority (see *regulatory authority*).

authorized personnel: persons who have been instructed in the operation of the equipment and designated by the owner to use the equipment.

automatic transfer device: a power-operated mechanism that automatically moves a load consisting of a cart, tote box, pallet, wheeled vehicle, box, or other similar object from and/or to the car.

auxiliary power lowering device: an alternatively powered auxiliary control system that will, upon failure of the main power supply, allow a hydraulic elevator to descend to a lower landing.

brake, driving machine, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: an electromechanically or electrohydraulically released spring, or gravity applied device, that is part of the electric driving machine of the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift used to apply a controlled force at a braking surface to hold or retard the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift. See Nonmandatory Appendix F.

electrohydraulically released: a means of release in which an electric current applied to a solenoid valve or the motor of a hydraulic pump directs pressurized hydraulic fluid to an actuator (such as a hydraulic jack) that overcomes a resisting force (such as a spring) as long as the electric current flows.

electromechanically released: a means of release in which an electric current applied to an actuator (such as a solenoid) causes an electromagnetic force that overcomes a resisting force (such as a spring) as long as the electric current flows.

brake, driving machine, escalator, or moving walk: an electromechanical device that is part of the electric driving machine of the escalator or moving walk, used to apply a controlled force to a braking surface to stop and hold the escalator/moving walk system.

braking, electrically assisted: retardation of the elevator, assisted by energy generated by the driving-machine motor. See Nonmandatory Appendix F.

brake, emergency: a mechanical device independent of the braking system used to retard or stop an elevator should the car overspeed or move in an unintended manner. Such devices include, but are not limited to, those that apply braking force on one or more of the following:

(a) car rails
(b) counterweight rails
(c) suspension or compensation ropes
(d) drive sheaves
(e) brake drums

For further information, see Nonmandatory Appendix F.

brake, main drive shaft, escalator and moving walk: a device located on the main drive shaft of the escalator or moving walk used to apply a controlled force to the braking surface to stop and hold the escalator or moving walk system.

braking system: driving-machine brake alone, or in combination with electrically assisted braking, that operates to slow down and stop the elevator. See Nonmandatory Appendix F.

buffer: a device designed to stop a descending car or counterweight beyond its normal limit of travel by storing or by absorbing and dissipating the kinetic energy of the car or counterweight.

oil buffer: a buffer using oil as a medium, that absorbs and dissipates the kinetic energy of the descending car or counterweight.

gas spring-return oil buffer: an oil buffer utilizing the pressure of a compressed gas to return the buffer plunger or piston to its fully extended position.

mechanical spring-return oil buffer: an oil buffer utilizing the force of the compressed mechanical spring or springs to return the buffer plunger or piston to its fully extended position.

oil buffer stroke: the oil-displacing movement of the buffer plunger or piston, excluding the travel of the buffer plunger accelerating device.

spring buffer: a buffer utilizing one or more springs to cushion the impact force of the descending car or counterweight.

spring buffer load rating: the load required to compress the spring buffer an amount equal to its stroke.

spring buffer stroke: the distance the contact end of the spring can move under a compressive load until all coils are essentially in contact or until a fixed stop is reached.

building code: an ordinance that sets forth requirements for building design and construction, or where such an ordinance has not been enacted, one of the following model codes:

(a) International Building Code (IBC)
(b) Building Construction and Safety Code (NFPA 5000)
(c) National Building Code of Canada (NBCC)

NOTE: Local regulations or laws take precedence. In the absence of local regulation a model building code is applicable.

bumper: a device, other than an oil or spring buffer, designed to stop a descending car or counterweight beyond its normal limit of travel by absorbing the impact.

cable, traveling: see *traveling cable.*

capacity: see *rated load.*

car door interlock: a device having two related and interdependent functions, which are

(a) to prevent the operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the car door is locked in the closed position

(b) to prevent the opening of the car door from inside the car unless the car is within the landing zone and is either stopped or being stopped

car door or gate, power-closed: a door or gate that is closed by a door or gate power operator.

car door or gate electric contact: an electrical device, the function of which is to prevent operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the car door or gate is in the closed position.

car door or gate power closer: a device or assembly of devices that closes a manually opened car door or gate by power other than hand, gravity, springs, or the movement of the car.

car, dumbwaiter, material lift: the load-carrying unit that includes a platform or transfer device and may include an enclosure and/or car frame.

car, elevator: the load-carrying unit including its platform, car frame, enclosure, and car door or gate.

car enclosure: the top and the walls of the car resting on and attached to the car platform.

car frame: the supporting frame to which the car platform, upper and lower sets of guide shoes, car safety, and the hoisting ropes or hoisting-rope sheaves, or the plunger or cylinder of a direct-acting elevator, are attached.

car frame, overslung: a car frame to which the hoisting rope fastenings or hoisting-rope sheaves are attached to the crosshead or top member of the car frame.

car frame, sub-post: a car frame all of whose members are located below the car platform.

car frame, underslung: a car frame to which the hoisting-rope fastenings or hoisting-rope sheaves are attached at or below the car platform.

car platform: the structure that forms the floor of the car and that directly supports the load.

car platform, laminated: a self-supporting platform constructed of plywood, with a bonded steel sheet facing on both top and bottom surfaces.

car platform frame: a structural frame, composed of interconnecting members, that supports the car platform floor.

car top access panel: a car top access panel is similar in design to a car top emergency exit panel. Used on mine elevators to permit frequent inspection of mine elevator hoistways for damage caused by environmental conditions. Such panels are openable without the use of tools or keys.

NOTE: Subject to the modifications specified in 5.9.14.1(c).

ceramic permanent magnet: a magnet of the type that has a force that does not deteriorate with time.

certified: see *listed/certified.*

certifying organization: an approved or accredited, independent organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed/certified equipment or material and whose listing/certification states whether that equipment meets appropriate standards or has been tested and found suitable for use in a specified manner.

NOTE: For the purpose of this definition, *accredited* means that an organization has been evaluated and approved by an Authorized Agency to operate a Certification/Listing program, and is designated as such in a publication of the Authorized Agency.

chain, suspension (hoisting): chain used to raise and lower a dumbwaiter or material lift car or its counterweight.

chassis: that portion of an inclined elevator that serves as a car frame with weight-bearing guide rollers.

clearance, bottom car: the clear vertical distance from the pit floor to the lowest structural or mechanical part, equipment, or device installed beneath the car platform, except guide shoes or rollers, safety jaw assemblies, and platform or guards, when the car rests on its fully compressed buffers.

clearance, top car, electric elevators: the shortest vertical distance between the top of the car crosshead, or between the top of the car where no crosshead is provided, and the nearest part of the overhead structure or any other obstruction when the car floor is level with the top terminal landing.

clearance, top car, hydraulic elevators: the shortest vertical distance within the hoistway between the horizontal plane described by the top of the car enclosure and the horizontal plane described by the lowest part of the overhead structure or other obstruction when the car floor is level with the top terminal landing.

clearance, top car, inclined elevators: the shortest distance in the direction of travel between the upwardmost portion of the chassis (car frame) and the nearest obstruction when the car is level with the top terminal landing.

clearance, top counterweight: the shortest vertical distance between any part of the counterweight structure and the nearest part of the overhead structure or any other obstruction when the car floor is level with the bottom terminal landing.

comb, escalator and moving walk: the toothed portion of a combplate designed to mesh with a grooved step, pallet, or treadway surface.

combplate, escalator and moving walk: that portion of the landing adjacent to the step, pallet, or treadway consisting of one or more plates to which the combs are fastened.

compensating rope sheave switch: a device that automatically causes the electric power to be removed from the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift driving-machine motor and brake when the compensating sheave approaches its upper or lower limit of travel.

compensation means: wire rope, chain, or other mechanical means used to counterbalance, or partially counterbalance, the weight of the suspension ropes.

component rated pressure: the pressure to which a hydraulic component can be subjected.

control, motion: that portion of a control system that governs the acceleration, speed, retardation, and stopping of the moving member.

control, AC motor: a motion control that uses an alternating current motor to drive the machine.

control, AC motor, DC injection: a motion control for an AC motor that produces retardation torque by injecting a DC current into either a stator winding of the motor or a separate eddy-current brake.

control, single speed AC: a motion control for an AC motor that has a single synchronous speed.

control, two speed AC: a motion control for an AC motor that has two different synchronous speeds by connecting the motor windings so as to obtain a different number of poles.

control, variable voltage, variable frequency (VVVF): a motion control that changes the magnitude and frequency of the voltage applied to the motor.

control, variable voltage AC (VVAC): a motion control for an AC motor that varies the amount and direction of output torque by controlling the magnitude and phase sequence of the voltage to the motor.

control, DC motor: a motion control that uses a DC motor to drive the machine.

control, dual bridge thyristor converter: a motion control for a DC motor that supplies the armature with variable voltage of either polarity, and is capable of current flow in both directions.

control, generator field: a motion control that is accomplished by the use of an individual generator for each driving-machine motor wherein the voltage applied to the motor armature is adjusted by varying the strength and direction of the generator field current.

control, multivoltage: a motion control that is accomplished by impressing successively on the armature of the driving-machine motor a number of substantially fixed voltages such as may be obtained from multicommutator generators common to a group of elevators.

control, rheostatic: a motion control that is accomplished by varying resistance and/or reactance in the armature and/or field circuit of the driving-machine motor.

control, single bridge thyristor converter: a motion control for a DC motor that supplies the armature with variable voltage of fixed polarity. The field is reversed to control direction and to cause regeneration.

control, electrohydraulic: a motion control in which the acceleration, speed, retardation, and stopping are governed by varying fluid flow to the hydraulic jack.

control, static: a motion control in which control functions are performed by solid-state devices.

control, operation: that portion of a control system that initiates the starting, stopping, and direction of motion, in response to a signal from an operating device.

operation, automatic: operation control wherein the starting of the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car is effected in response to the momentary actuation of operating devices at the landing, and/or of operating devices in the car identified with the landings, and/or in response to an automatic starting mechanism, and wherein the car is stopped automatically at the landings.

operation, group automatic: automatic operation of two or more nonattendant elevators equipped with power-operated car and hoistway doors. The operation of the cars is coordinated by a supervisory control system including automatic dispatching means whereby selected cars at designated dispatching points automatically close their doors and proceed on their trips in a regulated manner. It includes one button in each car for each floor served and "UP" and "DOWN" buttons at each landing (single buttons at terminal landings). The stops set up by the momentary actuation of the car buttons are made automatically in succession as a car reaches the corresponding landing, irrespective of its direction of travel or the sequence in which the buttons are actuated. The stops set up by the momentary actuation of the landing buttons may be accomplished by any elevator in the group, and are made automatically by the first available car that approaches the landing in the corresponding direction.

operation, nonselective collective automatic: automatic operation by means of one button in the car for each landing served and one button at each landing, wherein all stops registered by the momentary actuation of landing or car buttons are made irrespective of the number of buttons actuated or of the sequence in which the buttons are actuated. With this type of operation, the car stops at all landings for which buttons have been actuated, making the stops in the order in which the landings are reached after the buttons have been actuated, but irrespective of its direction of travel.

operation, selective collective automatic: automatic operation by means of one button in the car for each landing served and by "UP" and "DOWN" buttons at the landings, wherein all stops registered by the momentary actuation of the car buttons are made as defined under nonselective collective automatic operation, but wherein the stops registered by the momentary actuation of the landing buttons are made in the order in which the landings are reached in each direction of travel after the buttons have been actuated. With this type of operation, all "UP" landing calls are answered when the car is traveling in the up direction and all "DOWN" landing calls are answered when the car is traveling in the down direction, except in the case of the uppermost or lowermost calls, that are answered as soon as they are reached, irrespective of the direction of travel of the car.

operation, single automatic: automatic operation by means of one button in the car for each landing served and one button at each landing, so arranged that if any car or landing button has been actuated the actuation of any other car or landing operating button will have no effect on the operation of the car until the response to the first button has been completed.

operation, car switch: operation control wherein the movement and direction of travel of the car are directly and solely under the control of the attendant by means of a manually operated car switch or of continuous-pressure buttons in the car.

operation, car switch automatic floor-stop: operation in which the stop is initiated by the attendant from within the car with a definite reference to the landing at which it is desired to stop, after which the slowing down and stopping of the elevator is effected automatically.

operation, continuous-pressure: operation control by means of buttons or switches in the car and at the landings, any one of which may be used to control the movement of the car as long as the button or switch is manually maintained in the actuating position.

operation, preregister: operation control in which signals to stop are registered in advance by buttons in the car and at the landings. At the proper point in the car travel, the attendant in the car is notified by a signal, visual, audible, or otherwise, to initiate the stop, after which the landing stop is automatic.

operation, signal: operation control by means of single buttons or switches (or both) in the car, and "UP" or "DOWN" direction buttons (or both) at the landings, by which predetermined landing stops may be set up or registered for an elevator or for a group of elevators. The stops set up by the momentary actuation of the car buttons are made automatically in succession as the car reaches those landings, irrespective of its direction of travel or the sequence in which the buttons are actuated. The stops set up by the momentary actuation of the "UP" and "DOWN" buttons at the landing are made automatically by the first available car in the group approaching the landings in the corresponding direction, irrespective of the sequence in which the buttons are actuated. With this type of operation, the car can be started only by means of a starting switch or button in the car.

(05S) **control room, elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift:** an enclosed control space outside the hoistway, intended for full bodily entry, that contains the motor controller. The room could also contain electrical and/or mechanical equipment used directly in connection with the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift but not the electric driving machine or the hydraulic machine. (See Nonmandatory Appendix Q.)

(05S) **control space, elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift:** a space inside or outside the hoistway, intended to be accessed with or without full bodily entry, that contains the motor controller. This space could also contain electrical and/or mechanical equipment used directly in connection with the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift but not the electric driving machine or the hydraulic machine. (See Nonmandatory Appendix Q.)

NOTE: See 2.7.6.3.2 for an exception regarding the location of a motor controller.

control system: the overall system governing the starting, stopping, direction of motion, acceleration, speed, and retardation of the moving member. See Nonmandatory Appendix A.

controller: a device or group of devices that serves to control in a predetermined manner the apparatus to which it is connected.

controller, motion: an operative unit comprising a device or group of devices for actuating the moving member.

controller, motor: the operative units of a motion control system comprising the starter devices and power conversion equipment required to drive an electric motor.

controller, operation: an operative unit comprising a device or group of devices for actuating the motion control.

deck, escalator: see *escalator deck.*

designated attendant: where elevator operation is controlled solely by authorized personnel (attendant service, independent, hospital service, and other similar operations).

designated level: the main floor or other floor level that best serves the needs of emergency personnel for firefighting or rescue purposes identified by the building code or fire authority.

dispatching device, elevator automatic: a device, the principal function of which is to either

(a) operate a signal in the car to indicate when the car should leave a designated landing, or

(b) actuate its starting mechanism when the car is at a designated landing

displacement switch: a device actuated by the displacement of the counterweight, at any point in the hoistway, to provide a signal that the counterweight has moved from its normal lane of travel or has left its guide rails.

door: the movable portion(s) of an entrance that closes the openings. It consists of one or more solid face panels that are permitted to be equipped with a vision panel.

door, horizontally sliding: a door that moves horizontally.

center-opening: a horizontally sliding door consisting of two panels, so arranged to open away from each other.

center-opening, multiple-speed: a horizontally sliding door consisting of more than two panels, so arranged that the panels or groups of panels open away from each other.

door, folding: a hinged door consisting of two or more panels that fold and move horizontally.

multiple-speed: a horizontally sliding door with two or more panels, so arranged to open away from one side.

single-speed: a one-panel horizontally sliding door.

door or gate, manually operated: a door or gate that is opened and closed by hand.

door or gate, power-operated: a door or gate that is opened and closed by a door or gate power-operator.

door or gate, self-closing: a manually opened door or gate that closes when released.

door, swinging: a door that pivots around a vertical axis.

door, vertically sliding: a counterweighted or counterbalanced door consisting of one or more panels that move vertically to open or close.

door, vertically sliding sequence operation: where the opening and closing relationship of the car and hoistway doors do not occur simultaneously.

door, biparting: a vertically sliding door consisting of two or more sections, so arranged that the sections or groups of sections open away from each other.

door, wraparound: a horizontally sliding door that bends around a car enclosure.

door locked out of service: a hoistway entrance in which the door is mechanically locked by means other than the interlock to prevent the door being opened from the car side without keys or special equipment.

door or gate closer: a device that closes a door or gate by means of a spring or gravity.

door or gate electric contact: an electrical device, the function of which is to prevent operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the door or gate is in the closed position.

door or gate power operator: a device or assembly of devices that opens a hoistway door(s) and/or a car door or car gate by power other than hand, gravity, springs, or the movement of the car; and that closes them by power other than hand, gravity, or the movement of the car.

driving machine: see *machine, driving.*

dumbwaiter: a hoisting and lowering mechanism equipped with a car of limited size that moves in guide rails and serves two or more landings that is used exclusively for carrying materials, and is classified by the following types.

dumbwaiter, hand: a dumbwaiter utilizing manual energy to move the car.

dumbwaiter, power: a dumbwaiter utilizing energy other than gravitational or manual to move the car.

dumbwaiter, electric: a power dumbwaiter where the energy is applied by means of an electric driving machine.

dumbwaiter, hydraulic: a power dumbwaiter where the energy is applied, by means of a liquid under pressure, in a cylinder equipped with a plunger or piston.

dumbwaiter, direct-plunger hydraulic: a hydraulic dumbwaiter having a plunger or cylinder directly attached to the car frame or platform.

dumbwaiter, electrohydraulic: a direct-plunger dumbwaiter where liquid is pumped under pressure directly into the cylinder by a pump driven by an electric motor.

dumbwaiter, maintained-pressure hydraulic: a direct-plunger dumbwaiter where liquid under pressure is available at all times for transfer into the cylinder.

dumbwaiter, roped-hydraulic: a hydraulic dumbwaiter having its piston connected to the car with wire rope.

dumbwaiter, undercounter: a dumbwaiter that has its top terminal landing located underneath a counter.

earthquake protective devices: a device or group of devices that serve to regulate the operation of an elevator or group of elevators in a predetermined manner during or after an earthquake.

electrical/electronic/programmable electronic system (E/E/PES): a system for control, protection, or monitoring based on one or more electrical/electronic/programmable electronic devices, including all elements of the system such as power supplies, sensors and other input devices, data highways and other communication paths, and actuators and other output devices.

electrical/electronic/programmable electronic(E/E/PE): based on electrical (E), and/or electronic (E), and/or programmable electronic (PE) technology.

NOTE: The term is intended to cover any and all devices or systems operating on electrical principles.

EXAMPLE: Electrical/electronic/programmable electronic devices include

(a) electromechanical devices (electrical)

(b) solid-state nonprogrammable electronic devices (electronic)

(c) electronic devices based on computer technology (programmable electronic)

elevator: a hoisting and lowering mechanism, equipped with a car, that moves within guides and serves two or more landings and is classified by the following types

NOTE: See 1.1.2, Equipment Not Covered by this Code.

elevator, freight: an elevator used primarily for carrying freight and on which only the operator and the persons necessary for unloading and loading the freight are permitted to ride.

NOTE (elevator, freight): Its use is subject to the modifications specified in 2.16.

elevator, hand: an elevator utilizing manual energy to move the car.

elevator, inclined: an elevator that travels at an angle of inclination of 70 deg or less from the horizontal.

elevator, mine: an elevator installed in the mine hoistway, used to provide access to the mine for personnel, materials, equipment, and supplies. To meet the requirements of a mine elevator, the components must be designed and installed in conformance to Part 2 of this Code, except as modified in 5.9. Mine elevators are similar to electric passenger elevators but are modified to operate in the mine environment.

elevator, multicompartment: an elevator having two or more compartments located one above the other.

elevator, observation: an elevator that permits exterior viewing by passengers while the car is traveling.

elevator, passenger: an elevator used primarily to carry persons other than the operator and persons necessary for loading and unloading.

elevator, power: an elevator utilizing energy other than gravitational or manual to move the car.

elevator, electric: a power elevator where the energy is applied by means of an electric driving machine.

elevator, hydraulic: a power elevator in which the energy is applied, by means of a liquid under pressure, in a hydraulic jack.

elevator, direct-acting hydraulic: a hydraulic elevator in which the energy is applied by a direct hydraulic driving machine.

elevator, electrohydraulic: a hydraulic elevator in which liquid under pressure is supplied by a hydraulic machine.

elevator, maintained-pressure hydraulic: a direct-acting hydraulic elevator in which liquid under pressure is available at all times for transfer into the hydraulic jack.

elevator, roped-hydraulic: a hydraulic elevator in which the energy is applied by a roped-hydraulic driving machine.

elevator, limited-use/limited-application: a power passenger elevator in which the use and application is limited by size, capacity, speed, and rise.

elevator, private residence: a power passenger elevator that is limited in size, capacity, rise, and speed, and is installed in a private residence or in a multiple dwelling as a means of access to a private residence.

elevator, rack-and-pinion: a power elevator with or without a counterweight that is supported, raised, and lowered by a motor or motors that drive a pinion or pinions on a stationary rack mounted in the hoistway.

elevator, rooftop: a power passenger or freight elevator operating between a landing at roof level and landings below. It opens onto the exterior roof level of a building through a horizontal opening.

elevator, screw column: a power elevator having an uncounterweighted car that is supported, raised, and lowered by means of a screw thread.

elevator, shipboard: lifting equipment installed in ships, in offshore drilling rigs, or offshore oil production platforms for the purpose of transporting personnel, maintenance equipment, and ship stores that serves defined landing levels; comprised of an enclosed car running between rigid guides, the dimensions and means of construction of which permit the access of persons.

elevator, sidewalk: an elevator of the freight type operating between a landing in a sidewalk or other exterior area and floors below the sidewalk or grade level. It opens onto the exterior area through a horizontal opening.

elevator, special purpose personnel: an elevator that is limited in size, capacity, and speed, and permanently installed in structures such as grain elevators, radio antenna, bridge towers, underground facilities, dams, power plants, and similar structures to provide vertical transportation of authorized personnel and their tools and equipment only.

elevator, used for construction: an elevator being used temporarily, only for construction purposes.

elevator personnel: persons who have been trained in the construction, maintenance, repair, inspection, or testing of equipment.

emergency personnel: persons who have been trained in the operation of emergency or standby power and firefighters' emergency operation or emergency evacuation.

emergency signal device: a device that can be operated from within the elevator car to inform persons outside the hoistway that help is required.

emergency stop switch: a device located as required and readily accessible for operation, that, when manually operated, causes the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake of an electric elevator; or from the electrically operated valves and pump motor of a hydraulic elevator; or of a dumbwaiter; or of a material lift.

endurance limit of a component: the maximum stress that can be alternated or reversed within specified limits without producing fracture of the component material.

enforcing authority: see *authority having jurisdiction* and *regulatory authority.*

engineering test: a test carried out by or witnessed by a registered or licensed professional engineer, testing laboratory, or certifying organization to ensure conformance to Code requirements.

entrance assembly, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: the protective assembly that closes the hoistway openings normally used for loading and unloading, including the door panel(s), gate(s), transom panel, fixed side panel, gibs/guides, sill/sill structure, header, frame, and entrance hardware assembly, if provided.

entrance assembly, horizontally sliding type: an entrance assembly in which the door(s) slides horizontally.

entrance assembly, swinging type: an entrance assembly in which the door(s) swings around vertical hinges.

entrance assembly, vertically sliding type: an entrance assembly in which the door(s) slides vertically.

entrance frame, applied: see *applied frame entrance.*

entrance hardware assembly: the track(s), hangers, drive arms, pendant bolts, chains, belts, cables, sheaves, pulleys, hinges, vertically sliding guide shoes, and related hardware that are necessary to suspend and maintain the position of the doors within the entrance assembly.

escalator: power-driven, inclined, continuous stairway used for raising or lowering passengers.

escalator, conventional: an escalator on which the running gear is driven by a single drive shaft at a terminal.

escalator, modular: an escalator on which the running gear along the incline is driven by one or more drive units.

escalator deck: the transverse members of the balustrade, having an interior or exterior section, or both. A high deck is located immediately below the handrail stand. A low deck is located immediately above the skirt panel.

escalator molding: the connecting means between the various portions of the balustrade.

escalator newel: the balustrade termination at the landing.

escalator newel base: the panel located immediately under the newel.

escalator panel, exterior: the panel enclosing the exterior side of the balustrade.

escalator panel, interior: the panel located between the skirt and the escalator high deck or the handrail stand.

escalator skirt: the fixed, vertical panels located immediately adjacent to the steps.

escalator skirt cover, dynamic: the stationary cover that protects the interface between the dynamic skirt panel and the escalator balustrade.

escalator skirt, dynamic: see *skirt panel, dynamic.*

escalator wellway: an opening in a floor provided for escalator installation between two levels of a building.

escalators, tandem operation: escalators used in series with common intermediate landings.

factor of safety: the ratio of the ultimate strength to the working stress of a member under maximum static loading, unless otherwise specified in a particular requirement.

fail safe: a characteristic of a system or its elements whereby any failure or malfunction affecting safety will cause the system to revert to a state that is known to be safe.

fire barrier: a fire-resistance-rated vertical or horizontal assembly of material designed to restrict the spread of fire in which the openings are protected.

fire-protection rating: a designation indicating the duration of the fire test exposure to which a fire door assembly (entrance) was exposed and for which it met all the acceptance criteria as determined in accordance with a recognized fire test standard. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes.

fire-resistance rating: a designation indicating the duration of the fire test exposure to which components of building construction (walls, floors, roofs, beams, and columns) are exposed and for which it met all the acceptance criteria as determined in accordance with a recognized fire test standard. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes.

fire-resistive construction: a method of construction that prevents or retards the passage of hot gases or flames, specified by the building code.

fixed side panel: a panel used to close a hoistway enclosure opening on the side of a hoistway entrance.

flat steps: the distance, expressed in step lengths, that the leading edge of the escalator step travels after emerging from the comb before moving vertically.

gate: the moveable portion(s) of an entrance that closes the opening. A gate has through openings.

horizontally sliding collapsible gate: a series of horizontally sliding vertical members, joined by a scissors-like linkage that allows the assembly to collapse.

horizontally sliding noncollapsible gate: a noncollapsible assembly consisting of one or more sections that slide horizontally.

vertically sliding gate: a counterweighted or counterbalanced assembly, consisting of one or more sections that move vertically to open or close.

gate, semiautomatic: a gate that is opened manually and that is closed automatically as the car leaves the landing.

governor: see *speed governor.*

governor pull-through tension (force): the magnitude of the tensile load developed in the moving governor rope after the governor rope retarding means is actuated.

governor rope retarding means: a mechanical means of developing a sufficient force in the governor rope to activate the car or counterweight safeties or to trip the governor rope releasing carrier, where used. Such mechanical means include, but are not limited to, rope-gripping jaws, clutch mechanisms, and traction arrangements.

handrail stand: the uppermost portion of the balustrade that supports and guides the handrail.

hoistway (shaft), elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: an opening through a building or structure for the travel of elevators, dumbwaiters, or material lifts, extending from the pit floor to the roof or floor above.

hoistway, blind: the portion of a hoistway where hoistway entrances are not provided.

hoistway, multiple: a hoistway with more than one elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift.

hoistway, single: a hoistway with a single elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift.

hoistway, mine: The area within a mine shaft, and its aboveground structure required for the elevator equipment, associated supports, and operations, including a minimum of 450 mm (18 in.) around same.

hoistway access switch: a switch, located at a landing, the function of which is to permit operation of the car with the hoistway door at this landing and the car door or gate open, in order to permit access to the top of the car or to the pit.

hoistway door: see *door.*

hoistway door electric contact: see *door or gate electric contact.*

hoistway door or gate locking device: a device that secures a hoistway door or gate in the closed position and prevents it from being opened from the landing side except under certain specified conditions.

hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contact: a combination mechanical and electrical device with two related, but entirely independent functions, that are *(a)* to prevent operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the hoistway door is in the closed position

(b) to lock the hoistway door in the closed position and prevent it from being opened from the landing side unless the car is within the landing zone

NOTE: As there is no positive mechanical connection between the electric contact and the door locking mechanism, this device ensures only that the door will be closed, but not necessarily locked, when the car leaves the landing. Should the lock mechanism fail to operate as intended when released by a stationary or retiring car-cam device, the door can be opened from the landing side even though the car is not at the landing. If operated by a stationary car-cam device, it does not prevent opening the door from the landing side as the car passes the floor.

hoistway door interlock: a device having two related and interdependent functions, that are

(a) to prevent the operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device unless the hoistway door is locked in the closed position

(b) to prevent the opening of the hoistway door from the landing side unless the car is within the landing zone and is either stopped or being stopped

hoistway door interlock retiring cam device: a device that consists of a retractable cam and its actuating mechanism and that is entirely independent of the car door or hoistway door power operator.

hoistway gate separate mechanical lock: a mechanical device the function of which is to lock a hoistway gate in the closed position after the car leaves a landing and prevent the gate from being opened from the landing side unless the car is within the landing zone.

hoistway enclosure: the fixed structure, consisting of vertical walls or partitions, that isolates the hoistway from all other areas or from an adjacent hoistway and in which entrances are installed.

hoistway gate: usually a counterweighted (counterbalanced) assembly, consisting of one or more sections that are guided in the vertical direction to open or close. The gate may be of wood or metal construction. Wood gates may consist of either horizontal or vertical slats. Metal gates are usually constructed of perforated or expanded metal.

hospital service: a special case of operation by a designated attendant used only for medical emergencies.

hydraulic jack: a unit consisting of a cylinder equipped with a plunger (ram) or piston, that applies the energy provided by a liquid under pressure.

hydraulic machine: a unit consisting of pump, motor, valves, and associated internal piping, that converts electrical energy and supplies it as a liquid under pressure.

in-car stop switch: a device located in the car and accessible for operation by elevator personnel only, that, when manually operated, causes the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake of an electric elevator or from the electrically operated valves and pump motor of a hydraulic elevator.

inclined elevator: see *elevator, inclined.*

installation: a complete elevator, dumbwaiter, escalator, material lift, or moving walk, including its hoistway, hoistway enclosures and related construction, and all machinery and equipment necessary for its operation.

installation, existing: an installation that has been completed or is under construction prior to the effective date of this Code.

installation, new: any installation not classified as an existing installation by definition, or an existing elevator, dumbwaiter, escalator, material lift, inclined lift, or moving walk moved to a new location subsequent to the effective date of this Code.

interlock: see *car door interlock* and *hoistway door interlock.*

labeled/marked: equipment or material to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an approved or accredited independent certifying organization, concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled/marked equipment or material, and by whose labeling/marking the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

NOTE: For the purpose of this definition, *accredited* means that an organization has been evaluated and approved by an Authorized Agency to operate a Certification/Listing program, and is designated as such in a publication of the Authorized Agency.

landing, dumbwaiter: that portion of a floor, balcony, platform, or landing door used to discharge and receive materials.

landing, elevator or material lift: that portion of a floor, balcony, or platform used to receive and discharge passengers or freight.

landing, bottom terminal: the lowest landing served by the elevator or material lift that is equipped with a hoistway entrance.

landing, top terminal: the highest landing served by the elevator or material lift that is equipped with a hoistway entrance.

landing, escalator or moving walk: the stationary area at the entrance to or exit from an escalator, a moving walk, or moving walk system.

landing, lower, escalator: that landing of least elevation of the two landings.

landing, lower, moving walk: that landing of least elevation of the two landings. On moving walks where the two landings are of equal elevation, the lower landing is that landing designated by the manufacturer.

landing, upper, escalator: that landing of greatest elevation of the two landings.

landing, upper, moving walk: that landing of greatest elevation of the two landings. On moving walks where the two landings are of equal elevation, the upper landing is that landing designated by the manufacturer.

landing, next available: the first landing in the direction of travel that the elevator is electrically and mechanically capable of serving with a normal slowdown and stop.

landing zone: a zone extending from a point 450 mm (18 in.) below a landing to a point 450 mm (18 in.) above the landing.

left, right convention: left and right designations of escalator and moving walk components are determined by facing the equipment at the lower landing.

leveling: controlled car movement toward the landing, within the leveling zone, by means of a leveling device, that vertically aligns the car platform sill relative to the hoistway landing sill to attain a predetermined accuracy.

leveling device, elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car: the portion of a motion control system comprised of a device or group of devices that, either automatically or under control of the operator, initiates leveling, and automatically stops the car at the landing.

leveling device, anticreep: a leveling device used on hydraulic elevators to correct automatically a change in car level caused by leakage or contraction of fluid in the hydraulic system.

leveling device, inching: a leveling device that is controlled by the operator by means of continuous-pressure switches.

leveling device, one-way automatic: a device that corrects the car level only in case of under-run of the car, but will not maintain the level during loading and unloading.

leveling device, two-way automatic maintaining: a device that corrects the car level on both under-run and over-run, and maintains the level during loading and unloading.

leveling device, two-way automatic nonmaintaining: a device that corrects the car level on both under-run and over-run, but will not maintain the level during loading and unloading.

leveling zone: the limited distance above or below an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift landing within which the leveling device is permitted to cause movement of the car toward the landing.

listed/certified: equipment or materials accepted for inclusion in a publication by a certifying organization.

NOTE: The means for identifying *listed/certified* equipment may vary for each organization concerned with product evaluation, some of which do not recognize equipment as listed/certified unless it is also labeled/marked. The authority having jurisdiction utilizes the system employed by the listing/certifying organization to identify a listed/certified product.

load, dynamic: the load applied as a result of acceleration or deceleration.

load, impact: a suddenly applied load.

load, static: the load applied as a result of the weight.

lower landing, escalator: see *landing, lower, escalator.*

lower landing, moving walk: see *landing, lower, moving walk.*

machine, driving: the power unit that applies the energy necessary to drive an elevator or other equipment covered by the scope of this Code.

driving machine, electric: a driving machine in which the energy is applied by an electric motor. It includes the motor, driving-machine brake, and the driving sheave or drum, together with its connecting gearing, belt, or chain, if any. See Nonmandatory Appendix F.

driving machine, direct: an electric driving machine, the motor of which is directly connected mechanically to the driving sheave, drum, or shaft without the use of belts or chains, either with or without intermediate gears.

geared driving machine: a direct driving machine in which the energy is transmitted from the motor to the driving sheave, drum, or shaft through gearing.

winding drum machine: a geared driving machine in which the suspension ropes are fastened to and wind on a drum.

traction machine: a direct driving machine in which the motion of a car is obtained through friction between the suspension ropes and a traction sheave.

geared traction machine: a geared-drive traction machine.

gearless traction machine: a traction machine, without intermediate gearing, that has the traction sheave and the brake drum mounted directly on the motor shaft.

worm-geared machine: a direct driving machine in which the energy from the motor is transmitted to the driving sheave or drum through worm gearing.

driving machine, indirect: an electric driving machine, the motor of which is connected indirectly to the driving sheave, drum, gear reducer, or shaft by means of a belt drive or chain drive.

belt driving machine: an indirect driving machine equipped with a belt system as the connecting means.

chain driving machine: an indirect driving machine with a chain system as the connecting means.

driving machine, rack-and-pinion: an electric driving machine in which the motion of the car is obtained by a power-driven rotation pinion(s) mounted on the car, traveling on a stationary rack mounted in the hoistway.

driving machine, screw: an electric driving machine, the motor of which drives a nut on a vertical screw or rotates a vertical screw to raise or lower an elevator car.

driving machine, chain, dumbwaiter or material lift: a driving machine in which the motion of a car is obtained through a connection between a driven sprocket and the suspension chains.

driving machine, hydraulic: a driving machine in which the energy is provided by a hydraulic machine and applied by a hydraulic jack.

chain-hydraulic drive machine: a hydraulic driving machine in which the drive member of the hydraulic jack is connected to the car by chains or indirectly coupled to the car by means of chains and sprockets.

direct hydraulic driving machine: a hydraulic driving machine in which the driving member of the hydraulic jack is directly attached to the car frame or platform.

roped-hydraulic driving machine: a hydraulic driving machine in which the driving member of the hydraulic jack is connected to the car by wire ropes or indirectly coupled to the car by means of wire ropes and sheaves. It includes multiplying sheaves, if any, and their guides.

(05S) **machine room and control room, remote, elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift:** a machine room or control room that is not attached to the outside perimeter or surface of the walls, ceiling, or floor of the hoistway. (See Nonmandatory Appendix Q.)

(05S) **machine room, elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift:** an enclosed machinery space outside the hoistway, intended for full bodily entry, that contains the electric driving machine or the hydraulic machine. The room could also contain electrical and/or mechanical equipment used directly in connection with the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift. (See Nonmandatory Appendix Q.)

(05S) **machine space, elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift:** a space inside or outside the hoistway, intended to be accessed with or without full bodily entry, that contains elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift mechanical equipment, and could also contain electrical equipment used directly in connection with the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift. This space could also contain the electric driving machine or the hydraulic machine. (See Nonmandatory Appendix Q.)

(05S) **machinery space and control space, remote, elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift:** a machinery space or control space that is not within the hoistway, machine room, or control room, and that is not attached to the outside perimeter or surface of the walls, ceiling, or floor of the hoistway. (See Nonmandatory Appendix Q.)

main floor: the floor providing normal egress from a building.

maintained pressure: the hydraulic pressure between the pressure source and the control valves of a maintained pressure hydraulic elevator.

maintenance: a process of routine examination, lubrication, cleaning, and adjustment of parts, components, and/or subsystems for the purpose of ensuring performance in accordance with the applicable Code requirements. (See also *repair* and *replacement.*)

manually (manual) reset, elevator:

(a) a type or feature of an elevator part or component that, when actuated, requires intervention of a person in order to reinstate it to its non-actuated state.

(b) a type of action required to be taken by a person to reinstate an elevator part or component from an actuated state to its non-actuated state.

manual reset, escalator, and moving walk: a means, not accessible to the general public, requiring personal intervention by an authorized person prior to restarting the escalator or moving walk.

material lift: a hoisting and lowering mechanism normally classified as an elevator, equipped with a car that moves within a guide system installed at an angle of greater than 70 deg from the horizontal, serving two or more landings, for the purpose of transporting materials that are manually or automatically loaded or unloaded. Material lifts without an automatic transfer device are Type A or Type B. On Type A material lifts no persons are permitted to ride. On Type B material lifts authorized personnel are permitted to ride.

may: indicates permission, not a mandatory requirement.

mechanical lock: see *hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contact* and *hoistway gate separate mechanical lock.*

mode of operation: a way in which a safety-related system is intended to be used, with respect to the rate of demands made upon it, that may by either

(a) low demand mode: where the frequency of demands for operation made on an electrical safety function is not greater than one per year and not greater than twice the proof-test frequency

(b) high demand or continuous mode: where the frequency of demands for operation made on a safety-related system is greater than one per year or greater than twice the proof-test frequency

NOTE: High demand or continuous mode covers those safety-related systems that implement continuous control to maintain functional safety.

(c) proof-test: a periodic test performed to detect failures in a safety-related system so that, if necessary, the system can be restored to an "as new" condition or as close as practical to this condition

NOTE: See IEC 61508-4, Clause 3.8.5 for additional information on this definition.

modernization: see *alteration.*

module: the increment of rise in a modular escalator that one drive unit is capable of powering.

molding, escalator: see *escalator molding.*

moving walk: a type of passenger-carrying device on which passengers stand or walk, and in which the passenger-carrying surface remains parallel to its direction of motion and is uninterrupted.

moving walk, belt pallet type: a moving walk with a series of connected and power-driven pallets to which a continuous belt treadway is fastened.

moving walk, belt type: a moving walk with a power-driven continuous belt treadway.

moving walk, edge-supported belt type: a moving walk with the treadway supported near its edges by a succession of rollers.

moving walk, pallet type: a moving walk with a series of connected and power-driven pallets that together constitute the treadway.

moving walk, roller-bed type: a moving walk with the treadway supported throughout its width by a succession of rollers.

moving walk, slider-bed type: a moving walk with the treadway sliding upon a supporting surface.

moving walk newel: the balustrade termination at the landing.

moving walk newel base: the panel located immediately under the newel.

moving walk wellway: an opening in a floor provided for moving walk installation.

newel, escalator: see *escalator newel.*

newel, moving walk: see *moving walk newel.*

newel base, escalator: see *escalator newel base.*

newel base, moving walk: see *moving walk newel base.*

nonstop switch, elevator: a switch that, when operated, will prevent the elevator from making registered landing stops.

normal stopping means: that portion of the operation control that initiates stopping of the car in normal operation at landings.

operating device: the car switch, push buttons, key or toggle switches, or other devices used to actuate the operation control.

operating speed in the down direction: the speed at which a hydraulic elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift is set to lower with rated load.

operation, inspection: a special case of continuous-pressure operation used for troubleshooting, maintenance, repair, adjustments, rescue, and inspection.

overhead structure: all of the structural members, walls, platforms, etc., supporting the elevator machinery, sheaves, and equipment at the top of the hoistway.

pallet, moving walk: one of a series of rigid platforms that together form an articulated treadway or the support for a continuous treadway.

panel, exterior escalator: see *escalator panel, exterior.*

panel, interior escalator: see *escalator panel, interior.*

parking device, elevator: an electrical or mechanical device, the function of which is to permit the opening of the hoistway door from the landing side when the car is within the landing zone of that landing. The device may also be used to close the door.

penetrate a floor: to pass through or pierce a floor in such a way that the opening has a continuous perimeter and is provided only to allow the equipment to pass through the floor.

periodic tests, category: a grouping of tests performed at common time intervals required by the authority having jurisdiction.

Phase I Emergency Recall Operation: the operation of an elevator where it is automatically or manually recalled to the recall level and removed from normal service because of activation of firefighters' emergency operation.

Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation: the operation of an elevator by firefighters where the elevator is under their control.

piston: a short cylindrical member that is provided with a sealing means that travels with the member within a hydraulic cylinder. Pistons may be coupled to the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift by a coupling means that passes through a sealing means provided in the cylinder head.

piston, rod: the coupling means between the piston and its driven member.

pit, dumbwaiter, material lift: the portion of a hoistway extending from the floor level of the bottom terminal landing to the floor at the bottom of the hoistway.

pit, elevator: the portion of a hoistway extending from the sill level of the bottom terminal landing to the floor at the bottom of the hoistway.

plunger (ram): a long cylindrical compression member that is directly or indirectly coupled to the car frame. This member is not provided with a sealing means. Where used in assembly with a cylinder, the sealing means is provided on the cylinder head. In the case of telescopic plungers and cylinders, a sealing means may be used in the moving plunger, that is also a cylinder.

plunger gripper: a mechanical device attached to a supporting structure in the pit, that stops and holds the car by gripping the plunger.

position indicator: a device that indicates the position of the elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car in the hoistway. It is called a hall position indicator when placed at a landing or a car position indicator when placed in the car.

power unit, hydraulic: see *hydraulic machine.*

pressure piping: the piping for a hydraulic elevator between the pump and the hydraulic jack.

private residence: a separate dwelling or a separate apartment in a multiple dwelling that is occupied only by the members of a single family unit.

private residence elevator: see *elevator.*

rated load, elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift, or escalator: the load that the equipment is designed and installed to lift at the rated speed.

rated load, moving walk: the load that the moving walk is designed and installed to move, horizontally or at an incline, at the rated speed.

rated load performance: the operation of the elevator with its rated load at rated speed.

rated speed: the speed at which the elevator, dumbwaiter, escalator, moving walk, or material lift is designed to operate under the following conditions:

elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: the speed in the up direction with rated load in the car. (See also *operating speed in the down direction.*)

escalator: the rate of travel of the steps, measured along the centerline of the steps in the direction of travel, with rated load on the steps. In the case of a reversible escalator, the rated speed shall be the rate of travel of the steps in the up direction, measured along the centerline of the steps on the incline, with rated load on the steps.

moving walk: the rate of travel of the treadway, horizontally or at an incline, with rated load on the treadway. In the case of reversible inclined moving walks, the rated speed is the rate of travel of the treadway in the up direction, measured along the centerline of the treadway surface in the direction of travel, with rated load on the treadway.

readily accessible: capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal, or inspection, without requiring those to whom ready access is a requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or resort to portable ladders, chairs, etc.

recall level: the designated or alternate level that cars are returned to when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is activated.

recycling operation, telescope plunger: an operation for restoring the relative vertical positions of the multiple plungers in a telescoping plunger arrangement.

regulatory authority: the person or organization responsible for the administration and enforcement of the applicable legislation or regulation governing the design, construction, installation, operation, inspection, testing, maintenance, or alteration of equipment covered by this Code. (See also *authority having jurisdiction.*)

rehabilitation: see *alteration; maintenance; repair;* and *replacement.*

releasing carrier, governor rope: a mechanical device to which the governor rope may be fastened, calibrated to control the activation of a safety at a predetermined tripping force.

remote machine and control rooms: rooms that do not share a common wall, floor, or ceiling with the hoistway.

repair: reconditioning or renewal of parts, components, and/or subsystems necessary to keep equipment in compliance with applicable Code requirements. (See also *replacement* and *maintenance.*)

replacement: the substitution of a device or component and/or subsystems, in its entirety, with a unit that is basically the same as the original for the purpose of ensuring performance in accordance with applicable Code requirements. (See also *repair* and *maintenance.*)

restricted area: (applicable to Part 7) an area accessible only to authorized personnel who have been instructed in the use and operation of the equipment.

rise: the vertical distance between the bottom terminal landing and the top terminal landing of an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift.

rise, escalator and moving walk: the vertical distance between the top and bottom landings of the escalator or moving walk.

rope, aircraft cable: a wire rope built for a special purpose having special flexibility properties, zinc-coating, high breaking strength, and antirust qualities. Designed originally for use with aircraft controls.

rope, car counterweight: wire rope used to connect the car and counterweight that does not pass over the driving means.

rope, counterweight: wire rope used to raise and lower the counterweight on an electric elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift having a winding drum machine.

rope, governor: wire rope with at least one end fastened to the safety activating means or governor rope releasing carrier, passing over and driving the governor sheave, and providing continuous information on the speed and direction of the car or counterweight.

rope, safety drum (also known as "Tail rope" and "Minne Line"): a corrosion-resistant wire rope used to connect the governor rope to the safety. Primarily used with wedge clamp safeties.

rope, suspension (hoisting): wire rope used to raise and lower an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car or its counterweight, or both.

rope equalizer, suspension: a device installed on an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car or counterweight to equalize automatically the tensions in the suspension wire ropes.

rope-fastening device, auxiliary: a device attached to the car or counterweight or to the overhead dead-end rope-hitch support that will function automatically to support the car or counterweight in case the regular wire rope fastening fails at the point of connection to the car or counterweight or at the overhead dead-end hitch.

rope sprocket drive: a driving means consisting of wire rope with fixed links at constant intervals throughout its length. The links engage in slots on a grooved drive cog to provide a positive drive force.

runby, bottom, elevator car: the distance between the car buffer striker plate and the striking surface of the car buffer when the car floor is level with the bottom terminal landing.

runby, bottom, elevator counterweight: the distance between the counterweight buffer striker plate and the striking surface of the counterweight buffer when the car floor is level with the top terminal landing.

runby, top, direct-plunger hydraulic elevator: the distance the elevator car can run above its top terminal landing before the plunger strikes its mechanical stop.

running gear, escalator: all the components of an escalator moving along the tracks.

running gear, moving walk: all the components of a moving walk moving along the tracks.

safety, car or counterweight: a mechanical device attached to the car, car frame, or to an auxiliary frame; or to the counterweight or counterweight frame; to stop and hold the car or counterweight under one or more of the following conditions: predetermined overspeed, free fall, or if the suspension ropes slacken.

safety, self-resetting: a car or counterweight safety released and reset by movement in the up direction.

safety bulkhead: a closure at the bottom of the cylinder located above the cylinder head and provided with an orifice for controlling the loss of fluid in the event of cylinder head failure.

safety integrity level (SIL): the discrete level (one out of a possible four) for specifying the safety integrity requirements of the safety functions to be allocated to the E/E/PE safety-related system, where safety integrity level 4 has the highest level of safety integrity and safety integrity level 1 has the lowest.

screw column: a vertical structural member provided with screw threads that support the car of a screw column elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift. The screw column may be either in tension or compression.

seismic switch: a device activated by ground movement to provide a signal that a potentially damaging earthquake is imminent.

sequence operation: see *door, vertically sliding sequence operation.*

shaft: see *hoistway.*

shall: indicates a mandatory requirement.

should: indicates a recommendation, not a mandatory requirement.

sight guard: a vertical member mounted on the hoistway side of the leading edge of the hoistway door. It is used to reduce the opening between the leading edges of the hoistway door and the car door.

signal device, elevator car flash: one providing a signal light in the car, that is illuminated when the car approaches the landings at which a landing signal registering device has been actuated.

signal registering device, elevator landing: a button or other device located at the elevator landing, that, when actuated by a waiting passenger, causes a stop signal to be registered in the car.

signal system, elevator separate: one consisting of buttons or other devices located at the landings, that, when actuated by a waiting passenger, illuminates a flash signal or operates an annunciator in the car indicating floors at which stops are to be made.

signal transfer device, elevator automatic: a device by means of which a signal to be registered in a car is automatically transferred to the next car following, in case the first car passes a floor for which a signal has been registered without making a stop.

signal transfer switch, elevator: a manually operated switch, located in the car, by means of which the operator can transfer a signal to the next car approaching in the same direction, when the operator desires to pass a floor at which a signal has been registered in the car.

skirt, escalator: see *escalator skirt.*

skirt panel, dynamic: the moving vertical panels, with a positive mechanical connection to the running gear, adjacent to, and moving with the steps.

slack-rope switch: a device that automatically causes the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake when the suspension ropes of a winding drum machine become slack.

sleeving (liner): the insertion of a smaller diameter cylinder inside the existing cylinder of a hydraulic jack.

sling: see *car frame.*

slope, moving walk: the angle that the centerline of the treadway makes with the horizontal.

software system failure: a behavior of the software, including its support (host) hardware, that is not in accordance with the intended function.

solid-state device: an element that can control current flow without moving parts.

speed governor: a continuously operating speed monitoring and detection device that, at predetermined speeds, provides signals to the controller and imparts a retarding force to activate the car or counterweight safety.

speed governor, escalator and moving walk: a continuously operating speed monitoring and detection device that, at predetermined speeds, provides signals to the controller to stop the escalator or moving walk.

starters control panel, elevator: an assembly of devices by means of which the starter may control the manner in which an elevator or group of elevators function.

static switching: switching of circuits by means of solid-state devices.

tandem operation escalators: see *escalators, tandem operation.*

terminal landing: see *landing, elevator or material lift.*

terminal speed-limiting device, emergency: a device that automatically reduces the car and counterweight speed to within the rated buffer striking speed prior to buffer engagement.

terminal speed reducing device, hydraulic: a device on hydraulic elevators that will reduce the speed prior to contacting the stop ring in the up direction.

terminal stopping device, emergency: a device that automatically causes the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake if the car fails to slow down as intended when approaching the terminal landing.

terminal stopping device, final: a device that automatically causes the power to be removed from a driving-machine motor and brake, or from a hydraulic machine, independent of the functioning of the normal stopping means, normal terminal stopping device, and any emergency terminal speed-limiting device, after the car has passed a terminal landing.

terminal stopping device, machine final (stop-motion switch): final terminal stopping device operated directly by the driving machine.

terminal stopping device, normal: device(s) to slow down and stop an elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift car automatically at or near a terminal landing, independently of the functioning of the normal stopping means.

threshold comb, moving walk: see *comb, escalator and moving walk.*

threshold plate, moving walk: see *combplate, escalator and moving walk.*

transom: a panel or panels used to close a hoistway enclosure opening above a hoistway entrance.

traveling cable: a cable made up of electric conductors, that provides electrical connection between an elevator, dumbwaiter, material lift car, or counterweight, and a fixed outlet in the hoistway or machine room.

treadway, moving walk: the passenger-carrying member of a moving walk.

truck zone, elevator: the limited distance above an elevator landing within which the truck zoning device permits movement of the elevator car.

truck zoning device, elevator: a device that will permit the operator in the car to move a freight elevator within the truck zone with the car door or gate and a hoistway door open.

type test: a test carried out by or witnessed by a certifying organization concerned with product evaluation and the issuing of certificates to ensure conformance to Code requirements.

unlocking device, hoistway door: a mechanical device, the function of which is to unlock and permit the opening of a hoistway door from a landing irrespective of the position of the car.

unlocking zone: a zone extending from the landing floor level to a point not less than 75 mm (3 in.) nor more than 450 mm (18 in.) above and below the landing.

upper landing, escalator: see *landing, upper, escalator.*

upper landing, moving walk: see *landing, upper, moving walk.*

valley break: a broken wire in a wire rope in which the outside wire of a strand breaks in the immediate vicinity of the point where it contacts a wire or wires of an adjacent strand, generally at a point not visible when the wire rope is examined externally. One end of the broken wire is long enough to reach from one valley to the next one and the other end of the broken wire generally cannot be seen.

valve, overspeed: a device installed in the pressure piping of a hydraulic elevator, between the hydraulic machine and the hydraulic jack, that restricts and ceases oil flow from the hydraulic jack through the pressure piping when such flow exceeds a preset value.

volatile memory: memory lost when operating power is removed.

waiting-passenger indicator: an indicator that shows at which landings and for which direction elevator hall stop-or-signal calls have been registered and are unanswered.

weatherproof: so constructed or protected that exposure to the weather will not interfere with successful operation.

width, moving walk: the exposed width of the treadway.

window: an assembly consisting of a surrounding frame and one or more sashes, ventilators, or fixed lights, or a combination of these, designed to be installed in a wall opening for the purpose of admitting light or air, or both.

working pressure: the pressure measured at the hydraulic machine when lifting car and its rated load at rated speed, or with Class C2 loading when leveling up with maximum static load.

yield strength: the tensile stress that is sufficient to produce a permanent deformation of 0.2%.

Part 2
Electric Elevators

SCOPE

Part 2 applies to electric elevators installed at an angle greater than 70 deg from the horizontal. It applies to other equipment only as referenced in the applicable Part.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *electric elevators*.

SECTION 2.1
CONSTRUCTION OF HOISTWAYS AND HOISTWAY ENCLOSURES

2.1.1 Hoistway Enclosures

Hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1.1.1, 2.1.1.2, or 2.1.1.3.

2.1.1.1 Fire-Resistive Construction

2.1.1.1.1 Where fire-resistive construction is required, hoistways shall be enclosed in conformance with the requirements of the building code (see 1.3).

(07) **2.1.1.1.2** Partitions between hoistways and

(*a*) machinery spaces outside the hoistway
(*b*) machine rooms
(*c*) control spaces outside the hoistway
(*d*) control rooms

that have a fire-resistance rating, shall be of noncombustible solid or openwork construction that meets the requirements of 2.1.1.2.2(d)(1), (2), and (3). Partitions of solid construction shall be permitted to have openings essential for ropes, drums, sheaves, and other elevator equipment.

Openwork construction shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter, except where there are openings essential for ropes, drums, sheaves, and other elevator equipment.

2.1.1.1.3 Hoistway enclosure openings shall be protected with entrances or access doors having a fire-protection rating conforming to the requirements of the building code.

2.1.1.2 Non-Fire-Resistive Construction

2.1.1.2.1 Where fire-resistive construction is not required by the building code, hoistway construction shall conform to 2.1.1.2.2 or 2.1.1.3.

(05S) **2.1.1.2.2** The hoistway shall be fully enclosed conforming to 2.1.1.2.2(a), (b), (c), and (d); or 2.1.1.2.2(a), (b), and (e).

(*a*) Enclosures and doors shall be unperforated to a height of 2 000 mm (79 in.) above each floor or landing and above the treads of adjacent stairways. The enclosure shall be unperforated, adjacent to, and for 150 mm (6 in.) on either side of any moving equipment that is within 100 mm (4 in.) of the enclosure.

(*b*) Partitions between hoistways and

(*1*) machinery spaces outside the hoistway
(*2*) machine rooms
(*3*) control spaces outside the hoistway
(*4*) control rooms

shall be of solid or openwork construction that meets the requirements of 2.1.1.2.2(d)(1), (2), and (3). Partitions of solid construction shall be permitted to have openings essential for ropes, drums, sheaves, and other elevator equipment. Openwork construction shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter, except where there are openings for ropes, drums, sheaves, and other elevator equipment.

(*c*) Openwork enclosures, where used above the 2 000 mm (79 in.) level, shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

(*d*) Openwork enclosures shall be

(*1*) at least 2.2 mm (0.087 in.) thick wire, if of steel wire grille

(*2*) at least 2.2 mm (0.087 in.) thick, if of expanded metal

(*3*) so supported and braced as to deflect not over 15 mm (0.6 in.) when subjected to a force of 450 N (100 lbf) applied horizontally at any point

(*e*) Enclosures shall be permitted to be glass, provided it is laminated glass conforming to ANSI Z97.1, 16 CFR Part 1201, or CAN/CGSB-12.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Markings as specified in the applicable standard shall be on each separate piece of glass and shall remain visible after installation.

2.1.1.2.3 Entrances shall be in conformance with 2.11, except 2.11.14, 2.11.15, 2.11.16, and 2.11.18.

2.1.1.3 Partially Enclosed Hoistways. For elevators that are not fully enclosed, protection at least 2 400 mm (94.5 in.) high shall be provided on the hoistway sides that are located 1 500 mm (59 in.) or less from elevator equipment to areas accessible to other than elevator personnel. Such protection shall comply with 2.1.1.2.

2.1.1.4 Multiple Hoistways. The number of elevators permissible in a hoistway shall be in conformance with the building code.

2.1.1.5 Strength of Enclosure. The hoistway enclosure adjacent to a landing opening shall be of sufficient strength to maintain, in true lateral alignment, the hoistway entrances. Operating mechanisms and locking devices shall be supported by the building wall, if loadbearing, or by other building structure. Adequate consideration shall be given to pressure exerted on hoistway enclosures as a result of windage and elevator operation.

2.1.2 Construction at Top and Bottom of the Hoistway

2.1.2.1 Construction at Top of the Hoistway. The top of the hoistway shall be enclosed as required by the building code.

2.1.2.2 Construction at Bottom of Hoistway. Pits extending to the ground shall have noncombustible floors, and shall be designed to prevent entry of ground water into the pit. The pit floor of any hoistway not extending to the ground shall be of construction having a fire-resistance rating at least equal to that required for the hoistway enclosure. (See also 2.2 and 2.6.)

(05S) **2.1.2.3 Strength of Pit Floor.** The pit equipment, beams, floor, and their supports shall be designed and constructed to meet the applicable building code requirements and to withstand the following loads, without permanent deformation, in the manner in which they occur:

(*a*) the impact load due to car or counterweight buffer engagement at 125% of the rated speed or 125% of the striking speed where reduced stroke buffers are used (see 8.2.3)

(*b*) the part of the load transmitted due to the application of the car safety, or where applicable, the counterweight safety

(ED) (*c*) compensation up-pull load where compensation tie-down is applied (see 2.21.4.2)

(*d*) the loads imposed by a driving machine where applicable (see 2.9)

(*e*) any other elevator-related loads that are transmitted to the pit floor

2.1.3 Floor Over Hoistways

2.1.3.1 General Requirements

(05S) **2.1.3.1.1** A metal or concrete floor shall be provided at the top of the hoistway

(*a*) where a machine room or control room is located above the hoistway

(*b*) below overhead sheaves and other equipment that are located over the hoistway and means of access conforming to 2.7.6.3.3 are not provided

(*c*) below governors that are located over the hoistway and means of access conforming to 2.7.6.3.4 are not provided

2.1.3.1.2 Floors are not required below secondary and deflecting sheaves of traction-type machines located over the hoistway. (05S)

2.1.3.2 Strength of Floor. Overhead floors shall be capable of sustaining a concentrated load of 1 000 N (225 lb) on any 2 000 mm^2 (3 in.^{2}) area, and in addition, where it constitutes the floor of the main or secondary level machinery space, it shall be designed for a live load of not less than 6 kPa (125 lb/ft^2) in all open areas. (05S)

Where the elevator driving machine is to be supported solely by the machine room floor slab, the floor slab shall be designed in accordance with 2.9.4 and 2.9.5.

2.1.3.3 Construction of Floors. Floors shall be of concrete or metal construction with or without perforations. Metal floors shall conform to the following:

(*a*) If of bar-type grating, the openings between bars shall reject a ball 20 mm (0.8 in.) in diameter.

(*b*) If of perforated sheet metal or of fabricated openwork construction, the openings shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

2.1.3.4 Area to Be Covered by Floor. Where a floor over a hoistway is required by 2.1.3.1, the floor shall extend over the entire area of the hoistway where the cross-sectional area is 10 m^2 (108 ft^2) or less. Where the cross-sectional area is greater, the floor shall extend not less than 600 mm (24 in.) beyond the general contour of the machine or sheaves or other equipment, and to the entrance to the machinery space at or above the level of that floor. Where the floor does not cover the entire horizontal area of the hoistway, the open or exposed sides shall be provided with a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2.

2.1.4 Control of Smoke and Hot Gases

When required by the building code, hoistways shall be provided with means to prevent the accumulation of smoke and hot gases.

Where air pressurization of the hoistway is utilized as a means of smoke and hot gas control, the air shall not be introduced into the hoistway in such a manner as to cause erratic operation by impingement of traveling cables, selector tapes, governor ropes, compensating ropes, and other components sensitive to excessive movement or deflection.

2.1.5 Windows and Skylights (05S)

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, windows in the walls of hoistway enclosures are prohibited.

Windows and skylights and their frames and sashes in machine rooms and control rooms shall conform to the requirements of the building code (see 1.3).

2.1.6 Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks in Hoistway Enclosures

Hoistway enclosures shall have flush surfaces on the hoistway side, subject to the requirements of 2.1.6.1 and 2.1.6.2.

2.1.6.1 On sides for loading and unloading, landing sills, hoistway doors, door tracks, and hangers shall be permitted to project inside the hoistway enclosure. Sills shall be guarded as required by 2.11.10.1.

(07) **2.1.6.2** On sides not used for loading and unloading

(a) beams, floor slabs, or other building construction making an angle less than 75 deg with the horizontal shall not project more than 100 mm (4 in.) inside the hoistway enclosure unless the top surface of the projection is beveled at an angle not less than 75 deg with the horizontal

(b) separator beams between adjacent elevators are not required to have bevels

(c) where recesses or setbacks exceeding 100 mm (4 in.) occur in the enclosure wall, the top of the recess or setback shall be beveled at an angle of not less than 75 deg with the horizontal

(d) bevels are not required if the projections, recesses, and setbacks are covered with material conforming to the following:

(1) it shall be equal to or stronger than 1.110 mm (0.0437 in.) wire

(2) it shall have openings not exceeding 25 mm (1 in.)

(3) it shall be supported and braced such that it will not deflect more than 25 mm (1 in.) when subjected to a force of 4.79 kPa (100 lbf/ft^2) applied horizontally at any point

SECTION 2.2 PITS

2.2.1 General

A pit shall be provided for every elevator.

2.2.2 Design and Construction of Pits

2.2.2.1 The construction of the pit walls, the pit floor, and any pit access doors (see 2.2.4) shall conform to 2.1.1 and 2.1.2.

2.2.2.2 The floor of the pit shall be approximately level, except that

(a) trenches or depressions shall be permitted for the installation of buffers, compensating sheaves and frames, and vertically sliding biparting hoistway doors, where structural conditions make such trenches or depressions necessary

(b) in existing buildings, where new elevators are installed or existing elevators are altered, existing foundation footings extending above the general level of the pit floor shall be permitted to remain in place, provided that the maximum encroachment of such footings does not exceed 15% of the cubic content of the pit, and further provided that it is impracticable to remove the footing

2.2.2.3 Permanent provisions shall be made to prevent accumulation of ground water in the pit (see 2.1.2.2).

2.2.2.4 Drains and sump pumps, where provided, shall comply with the applicable plumbing code, and they shall be provided with a positive means to prevent water, gases, and odors from entering the hoistway.

2.2.2.5 In elevators provided with Firefighters' Emergency Operation, a drain or sump pump shall be provided. The sump pump/drain shall have the capacity to remove a minimum of 11.4 m^3/h (3,000 gal/h) per elevator. (07)

2.2.2.6 Sumps and sump pumps in pits, where provided, shall be covered. The cover shall be secured and level with the pit floor.

2.2.2.7 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, sump pumps and their control equipment shall not be installed in any elevator pit.

2.2.3 Guards Between Adjacent Pits

2.2.3.1 Where there is a difference in level between the floors of adjacent pits, a metal guard, unperforated, or perforated with openings that will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter, shall be installed for separating such pits. Guards shall extend not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.) above the level of the higher pit floor and a self-closing access door shall be permitted.

2.2.3.2 Where the difference in level is 600 mm (24 in.) or less, a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 shall be permitted to be installed in lieu of the guard.

2.2.4 Pit Access (07)

Safe and convenient access shall be provided to all pits, and shall conform to 2.2.4.1 through 2.2.4.6.

2.2.4.1 Access shall be by means of the lowest hoistway door or by means of a separate pit access door.

2.2.4.2 There shall be installed in the pit of each elevator, where the pit extends more than 900 mm (35 in.) below the sill of the pit access door (lowest hoistway door or separate pit access door), a fixed vertical ladder of noncombustible material, located within reach of the access door. The ladder is permitted to be retractable or nonretractable. Nonretractable ladders, where provided, shall conform to 2.2.4.2.1 through 2.2.4.2.6. Retractable ladders, where provided, shall conform to 2.2.4.2.1 through 2.2.4.2.3 and 2.2.4.2.5 through 2.2.4.2.8. When in the extended position, retractable ladders shall conform to 2.2.4.2.4.

2.2.4.2.1 The ladder shall extend not less than 1 200 mm (48 in.) above the sill of the access door or handgrips shall be provided to the same height.

2.2.4.2.2 The ladder rungs, cleats, or steps shall be a minimum of 400 mm (16 in.) wide. When obstructions are encountered, the width shall be permitted to be decreased to less than 400 mm (16 in.). The reduced width shall be as wide as the available space permits, but not less than 225 mm (9 in.).

2.2.4.2.3 The ladder rungs, cleats, or steps shall be spaced 300 mm (12 in.) ± 13 mm (± 0.5 in.) on center, shall be provided to not less than the height of access door sill, and shall be designed to minimize slipping (e.g., knurling, dimpling, coating with skid-resistant material, etc.).

2.2.4.2.4 A clear distance of not less than 115 mm (4.5 in.) from the centerline of the rungs, cleats, or steps to the nearest permanent object in back of the ladder shall be provided.

2.2.4.2.5 Side rails, if provided, shall have a clear distance of not less than 115 mm (4.5 in.) from their centerline to the nearest permanent object.

2.2.4.2.6 The ladder and its attachments shall be capable of sustaining a load of 135 kg (300 lb).

2.2.4.2.7 Retractable ladders that are in the line of movement of the car or counterweight when not fully retracted, shall operate a retractable ladder electrical device (see 2.26.2.38) that shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake unless the ladder is in its fully retracted position.

2.2.4.2.8 Retractable ladders shall be capable of being extended, mechanically secured and unsecured, and retracted from the access door, and

(a) the force(s) required to extend a retractable ladder from the fully retracted position to the extended and mechanically secured position shall not exceed 220 N (50 lbf)

(b) after being extended and mechanically secured, a retractable ladder shall remain secured in the extended position when subjected to a horizontal force not to exceed 2 220 N (500 lbf)

(c) the force(s) required to retract a retractable ladder from its extended position to its fully retracted position, after being unsecured, shall not exceed 220 N (50 lbf)

(d) the ladder shall be mechanically secured when in the retracted position

2.2.4.3 Pit access by a ladder shall not be permitted when the pit floor is more than 3 000 mm (120 in.) below the sill of the access door, except where there is no building floor below the bottom terminal landing, this height shall be permitted to be greater but not more than 4 200 mm (165 in.).

2.2.4.4 Pits shall be accessible only to elevator personnel.

2.2.4.5 Separate pit access door, when provided, shall be subject to the following requirements:

(a) If the door swings into the pit, it shall be located so that it does not interfere with moving equipment.

(b) If the door swings out, and the lowest structural or mechanical part, equipment, or device installed beneath the car platform, except guide shoes or rollers or safety jaw assemblies, projects below the top of the separate pit access door opening when the car is level with the bottom terminal landing

(1) an electric contact conforming to 2.26.2.26 shall be provided to prevent operation of the elevator when the door is open

(2) the door shall be provided with a vision panel(s) that is glazed with clear wired glass not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) thick, will reject a ball 150 mm (6 in.) in diameter, and have an area of not more than 0.03 m^2 (47 $in.^2$)

(c) The door shall provide a minimum opening of 750 mm (29.5 in.) in width and 1 825 mm (72 in.) in height.

(d) The door shall be equipped with a barrier conforming to 2.11.1.2(i), where the door sill is located more than 300 mm (12 in.) above the pit floor.

(e) The door shall be self-closing and provided with a spring-type lock arranged to permit the door to be opened from inside of the pit without a key. Such doors shall be kept closed and locked. A key shall be required to unlock the lock from outside the hoistway. The key shall be of Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

2.2.4.6 Means to unlock the access door from inside the pit shall be provided. The means shall be located

(a) when no pit ladder is provided, not more than 1 825 mm (72 in.) vertically above the pit floor, or

(b) when a pit ladder is provided, not more than 1 825 mm (72 in.) vertically above a rung, cleat, or step. The minimum distance from the top rung, cleat, or step to the top of the pit ladder or handhold shall not be less than 1 200 mm (48 in.) (see 2.2.4.2.1 and Nonmandatory Appendix J, Fig. J-1), and

(c) with the door in the closed position, in a plane not more than 1 000 mm (39 in.) horizontally from a rung, cleat, or step of the pit ladder (see Nonmandatory Appendix J, Fig. J-1).

2.2.5 Illumination of Pits

A permanent lighting fixture shall be provided and shall conform to 2.2.5.1 through 2.2.5.3.

2.2.5.1 The lighting shall provide an illumination of not less than 100 lx (10 fc) at the pit floor and at a pit platform, when provided.

2.2.5.2 The light bulb(s) shall be externally guarded to prevent contact and accidental breakage.

2.2.5.3 The light switch shall be so located as to be accessible from the pit access door.

2.2.6 Stop Switch in Pits

An enclosed stop switch(es), meeting the requirements of 2.26.2.7 and 2.2.6.1 through 2.2.6.3, shall be installed in the pit of each elevator.

2.2.6.1 The stop switch shall be so located as to be accessible from the pit access door. Where access to the pits of elevators in a multiple hoistway is by means of a single access door, the stop switch for each elevator shall be located adjacent to the nearest point of access to its pit from the access door.

2.2.6.2 In elevators where access to the pit is through the lowest landing hoistway door, a stop switch shall be located approximately 450 mm (18 in.) above the floor level of the landing, within reach from this access floor and adjacent to the pit ladder, if provided. When the pit exceeds 1 700 mm (67 in.) in depth, an additional stop switch is required adjacent to the pit ladder and approximately 1 200 mm (47 in.) above the pit floor.

2.2.6.3 Where more than one switch is provided, they shall be wired in series.

2.2.7 Minimum Pit Depths Required

The pit depth shall be not less than is required for the installation of the buffers, compensating sheaves, if any, and all other elevator equipment located therein and to provide the minimum bottom car clearance and runby required by 2.4.1.

(07) 2.2.8 Access to Underside of Car

Where the distance from the pit floor to the underside of the plank channels or slings exceeds 2 100 mm (83 in.), with the car at the lowest landing, a means shall be permanently installed or permanently stored in the pit to provide access to the equipment on the underside of the car. When access is provided by means of a working platform it shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.5.3.2 through 2.7.5.3.6.

SECTION 2.3
LOCATION AND GUARDING OF COUNTERWEIGHTS

2.3.1 Location of Counterweights

Counterweights shall be located in the hoistway of the elevator that they serve, or in a remote hoistway subject to the limitations and requirements of 2.3.3.

2.3.2 Counterweight Guards

(05S) **2.3.2.1** Metal guards shall be installed in the pit and/or a machine room or control room located underneath the hoistway on all open sides of the counterweight runway, except that

(*a*) the guard, or portion thereof, is not required on the side facing the car where there is no space greater than 500 mm (20 in.) between compensating ropes (chains), or between compensating ropes (chains) and counterweight rails, or between compensating ropes (chains) and guards

(*b*) where pit-mounted buffers are used, the guard is not required where the bottom of the counterweight resting on its compressed buffer is 2 130 mm (84 in.) or more above the pit floor, or above the machine or control room floor if located underneath the hoistway

2.3.2.2 Guards shall

(*a*) extend from the lowest part of the counterweight assembly when the counterweight is resting on the fully compressed buffer to a point not less than 2 100 mm (83 in.) and not more than 2 450 mm (96 in.) above the pit floor

(*b*) be the full width of the area being guarded

(*c*) not prevent determination of the counterweight runby

(*d*) be fastened to a metal frame reinforced and braced to be at least equal in strength and stiffness to 2 mm (0.074 in.) thick sheet steel

(*e*) if perforated, reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter

2.3.2.3 Guarding of Counterweights in a Multiple-Elevator Hoistway. Where a counterweight is located between elevators, the counterweight runway shall be guarded on the side next to the adjacent elevator. The guard shall be of noncombustible material. The guard, if of openwork material, shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and be made from material equal to or stronger than 1.110 mm (0.0437 in.) diameter wire. The guard shall be so supported that when subjected to a force of 450 N (100 lbf) applied over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) at any location, the deflection shall not reduce the clearance between the guard and the counterweight below 25 mm (1 in.). (05S)

2.3.3 Remote Counterweight Hoistways

Where elevators are not provided with either compensating means or counterweight safeties, the counterweights shall be permitted to be located in a remote hoistway conforming to 2.3.3.1 through 2.3.3.6.

2.3.3.1 The hoistway shall be fully enclosed and shall have a fire-resistance rating, conforming to 2.1.1.1 if it penetrates a fire barrier. (07)

2.3.3.2 Construction at the top and bottom of the hoistway shall conform to 2.1.2.

2.3.3.3 Permanent means shall be provided for inspection, repair, and maintenance of the counterweight, deflecting and secondary sheaves, hoistway, ropes, counterweight guide rails, and counterweight buffers or bumpers. Entry doors into the separate counterweight hoistway shall be provided at top, bottom, (05S) and center of counterweight hoistway, but in no case shall the entry doors be more than 11 m (36 ft) from sill to sill. Doors shall be located and of such width to provide unobstructed access to the space between the counterweight guides. The height of the door shall be at least 1 975 mm (78 in.). Doors shall conform to 2.11.1.2(b) through (e), inclusive. An enclosed stop switch, meeting the requirements of 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c), a permanent electric light switch, duplex receptacle, and light shall be provided in the hoistway immediately inside the entry door.

2.3.3.4 Ropes and sheaves leading to the separate counterweight hoistways shall be protected against unauthorized access.

2.3.3.5 Not more than four counterweights shall be located in a single separate counterweight hoistway. Multiple counterweights located in a single hoistway shall be separated by means of an unperforated metal guard at the top, bottom, and center of the hoistway. Guards shall extend a minimum of 2 450 mm (96 in.) in length opposite the entry door. Doors and all other means described in 2.3.3.3 shall be provided for each counterweight.

2.3.3.6 There shall be a clearance of not less than 600 mm (24 in.) between the weight in the counterweight frame and the wall containing the entry door.

2.3.4 Counterweight Runway Enclosures

Where a counterweight is located in the same hoistway as the car, the runway for the counterweight shall be permitted to be separated from the runway for the car, provided it conforms to 2.3.4.1 and 2.3.4.2.

2.3.4.1 The partition shall be noncombustible. Unperforated metal partitions shall be equal to or stronger than 1.2 mm (0.047 in.) thick sheet steel. Openwork partitions shall be either wire grille at least 2.2 mm (0.087 in.) in diameter or expanded metal at least 2.2 mm (0.087 in.) in thickness.

2.3.4.2 The counterweight runway shall be permitted to be fully enclosed for the full height, provided that the partitions are removable in sections weighing not more than 25 kg (55 lb), that permit inspection and maintenance of the entire counterweight assembly and the inspection of the counterweight guide rails and guide-rail brackets.

SECTION 2.4
VERTICAL CLEARANCES AND RUNBYS FOR CARS AND COUNTERWEIGHTS

2.4.1 Bottom Car Clearances

2.4.1.1 When the car rests on its fully compressed buffers or bumpers, there shall be a vertical clearance of not less than 600 mm (24 in.) between the pit floor and the lowest structural or mechanical part, equipment, or device installed beneath the car platform, except as specified in 2.4.1.2.

2.4.1.2 The 600 mm (24 in.) clearance does not apply to

(a) any equipment on the car within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from any side of the car platform

(b) any equipment located on or traveling with the car located within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from either side of the car frame centerline parallel to the plane of the guide rails

(c) any equipment mounted in or on the pit floor located within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from either side of the car frame centerline parallel to the guide rail

2.4.1.3 In no case shall the available refuge space be less than either of the following:

(a) a horizontal area of 600 mm × 1 200 mm (24 in. × 48 in.) with a height of 600 mm (24 in.)

(b) a horizontal area of 450 mm × 900 mm (18 in. × 35 in.) with a height of 1 070 mm (42 in.)

2.4.1.4 Trenches and depressions or foundation encroachments permitted by 2.2.2.2 shall not be considered in determining these clearances.

2.4.1.5 When the car is resting on its fully compressed buffers or bumpers, no part of the car, or any equipment attached thereto or equipment traveling with the car, shall strike any part of the pit or any equipment mounted therein.

2.4.1.6 In any area in the pit, outside the refuge space, where the vertical clearance is less than 600 mm (24 in.), that area shall be clearly marked on the pit floor. Markings shall not be required in the area under the platform guard and guiding means if that is the only area in the pit where the vertical clearance is less than 600 mm (24 in.). The marking shall consist of alternating 100 mm (4 in.) diagonal red and white stripes. In addition, a sign with the words "DANGER LOW CLEARANCE" shall be prominently posted on the hoistway enclosure and be visible from within the pit and the entrance to the pit. The sign shall conform to ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). The sign shall be of such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the face shall remain permanently and readily legible.

2.4.2 Minimum Bottom Runby for Counterweighted Elevators

The bottom runby of cars and counterweights shall be not less than the requirements stated in 2.4.2.1 and 2.4.2.2.

2.4.2.1 Where oil buffers are used, the bottom runby shall be not less than 150 mm (6 in.), except that

Table 2.4.2.2 Minimum Bottom Runby for Counterweight Elevators With Spring Buffers or Solid Bumpers and Rheostatic Control or Single-Speed AC Control

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Runby, mm (in.)
Not over 0.13 (not over 25)	75 (3)
Over 0.13 to 0.25 (over 25 to 50)	150 (6)
Over 0.25 to 0.50 (over 50 to 100)	225 (9)
Over 0.50 to 1.0 (over 100 to 200)	300 (12)

(a) where practical difficulties prevent a sufficient pit depth or where a top clearance cannot be provided to obtain the runby specified, it shall be permitted to be reduced

(b) where spring-return-type oil buffers are used, the runby shall be permitted to be eliminated so that the buffers are compressed by amounts not exceeding those permitted by 2.22.4.8, when the car floor is level with the terminal landings

2.4.2.2 Where spring buffers or solid bumpers are used, the bottom runby shall be not less than 150 mm (6 in.), except for rheostatic and single-speed AC control, not less than shown in Table 2.4.2.2.

2.4.3 Minimum Bottom Runby for Uncounterweighted Elevators

The bottom runby of uncounterweighted elevators shall be not less than

(a) 75 mm (3 in.) where the rated speed does not exceed 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min)

(b) 150 mm (6 in.) where the rated speed exceeds 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min)

2.4.4 Maximum Bottom Runby

In no case shall the maximum bottom runby exceed

(a) 600 mm (24 in.) for cars

(b) 900 mm (35 in.) for counterweights

2.4.5 Counterweight Runby Data Plate

A data plate permanently and securely attached shall be provided in the pit, in the vicinity of the counterweight buffer, indicating the maximum designed counterweight runby. The data plate shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the letters shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) in height.

2.4.6 Top Car Clearances for Counterweighted Elevators

2.4.6.1 General Requirements. The top car clearance shall be not less than the sum of either of the following:

(a) the dimensions specified in 2.4.6.2(a) through (d)

(b) the dimensions specified in 2.4.6.2(a), (b), (c), and (e)

2.4.6.2 Components of the Top Car Clearances. The following shall be considered when calculating the minimum top car clearances:

(a) the designed maximum bottom counterweight runby [see 2.4.4(b)]

(b) the stroke of the counterweight buffer, determined as follows:

(1) for full-stroke buffers, the stroke of the buffer used, or the remaining stroke when the buffer is compressed with the car at the top terminal landing (see 2.4.2 and 2.22.4.8); or

(2) for reduced-stroke oil buffers (see 2.22.4.1.2), the full stroke required by 2.22.4.1.1.

(c) 600 mm (24 in.) or the distance that any sheave or any other equipment mounted in or on the car crosshead projects above the top of the car crosshead, whichever is greater, but in no case shall there be less than 150 mm (6 in.) clearance above the equipment, exclusive of guide-shoe assemblies or gate posts for vertically sliding gates, mounted on the car top or in or on the car crosshead when the car has reached its maximum upward movement.

NOTE: See also 2.4.12, requirements for refuge space on top of car enclosure.

(d) ½ the gravity stopping distance, based on

(1) 115% of the rated speed where oil buffers are used, or 115% of the reduced striking speed when emergency terminal speed-limiting devices meeting the requirements of 2.25.4 are used and no compensating rope tie-down device (see 2.21.4.2) is provided (see 8.2.5 for gravity stopping distances); or **(ED)**

(2) the governor tripping speed where spring buffers are used.

(e) the distance to which the compensating rope tie-down device, if provided (see 2.21.4.2), limits the jump of the car when the counterweight strikes the buffers at speeds specified in 2.4.6.2(d). **(ED)**

2.4.7 Top Car Clearance for Uncounterweighted Elevators

The top car clearance shall be not less than the greater of the following:

(a) 750 mm (29.5 in.); or

(b) 150 mm (6 in.), plus the amount that any equipment mounted on the car crosshead, or above the car top when no crosshead is provided, projects vertically above the crosshead or top.

NOTE (2.4.7): See also 2.4.12, requirements for refuge space on top of car enclosure.

2.4.8 Vertical Clearances With Underslung Car Frames

Where an underslung car frame is used, the clearances between the overhead car rope dead-end hitch or overhead car sheave and the portions of the car structure vertically below them, when the car floor is level with the top terminal landing, shall be not less than the following:

(a) where no counterweight is used, 230 mm (9 in.)

(b) where a counterweight is used, the sum of the following items:

(1) the bottom counterweight runby (see 2.4.2)

(2) the stroke of the counterweight buffer used, or the remaining stroke when the buffer is compressed with the car at the top terminal landing (see 2.4.2 and 2.22.4.8)

(3) 150 mm (6 in.)

(4) ½ the gravity stopping distance based on 115% of the rated speed where oil buffers are used, or 115% of the reduced striking speed when emergency terminal speed-limiting devices meeting the requirements of 2.25.4 are used and no provision is made to prevent the jump of the car at counterweight buffer engagement, or on governor tripping speed where spring buffers are used (see 8.2.4 for gravity stopping distances)

NOTE [2.4.8(b)(4)]: See also 2.4.12, requirements for refuge space on top of car enclosure.

2.4.9 Top Counterweight Clearances

The top counterweight clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following items:

(a) the bottom car runby (see 2.4.2)

(b) the stroke of the car buffer used, or the remaining stroke when the buffer is compressed with the car at the bottom terminal landing (see 2.4.2 and 2.22.4.8)

(c) 150 mm (6 in.)

(d) ½ the gravity stopping distance based on

(1) 115% of the rated speed where oil buffers are used, or 115% of the reduced striking speed when emergency terminal speed-limiting devices meeting the requirements of 2.25.4 are used and no provision is made to prevent the jump of the counterweight at car buffer engagement; or

(2) the governor tripping speed where spring buffers are used (see 8.2.4 for gravity stopping distances).

2.4.10 Overhead Clearances Where Overhead Beams Are Not Over Car Crosshead

Where overhead beams or other overhead hoistway construction, except sheaves, are located vertically over the car, but not over the crosshead, the requirements of 2.4.10.1 and 2.4.10.2 shall be met.

2.4.10.1 The clearance from the car top to such beams or construction, when the car is level with the top landing, shall be not less than the amount specified in 2.4.6 and 2.4.7.

2.4.10.2 Such beams or construction shall be located not less than 600 mm (24 in.) horizontally from the crosshead.

2.4.11 Equipment on Top of Car Not Permitted to Strike Overhead Structure

When the car crosshead, or car top where no crosshead is provided, is at a distance equal to that specified in 2.4.6.2(c) from the nearest obstruction above it, no equipment on top of the car shall strike any part of the overhead structure or the equipment located in the hoistway.

2.4.12 Refuge Space on Top of Car Enclosure

2.4.12.1 An unobstructed horizontal area of not less than 0.5 m^2 (5.4 ft^2) shall be provided on top of the car enclosure for refuge space. It shall measure not less than 600 mm (24 in.) on any side. This area shall be permitted to include the space utilized for the top emergency exit [see 2.14.1.5.1(f)]. The minimum vertical distance in the refuge area between the top of the car enclosure and the overhead structure or other obstruction shall be not less than 1 100 mm (43 in.) when the car has reached its maximum upward movement.

2.4.12.2 In any area outside the refuge space where the vertical clearance between the top of the car enclosure and the overhead structure or other obstructions is less than specified in 2.4.12.1, the top of the car enclosure shall be clearly marked. The marking shall consist of alternating 100 mm (4 in.) diagonal red and white stripes. In addition, a sign with the words "DANGER LOW CLEARANCE" shall be prominently posted on the crosshead and be visible from the entrance. The sign shall conform to ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). The sign shall be of such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the face shall remain permanently and readily legible.

SECTION 2.5
HORIZONTAL CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT CLEARANCES

2.5.1 Clearances Between Cars, Counterweights, and Hoistway Enclosures

2.5.1.1 Between Car and Hoistway Enclosures. The clearance between the car and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 20 mm (0.8 in.), except on the sides used for loading and unloading.

2.5.1.2 Between Car and Counterweight and Counterweight Guard. The clearance between the car and the counterweight shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.). The clearance between the car and the counterweight guard, counterweight and the counterweight guard, and between the counterweight and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 20 mm (0.8 in.).

2.5.1.3 Between Cars in Multiple Hoistways. The running clearance between the cars and any equipment attached thereto, of elevators operating in a multiple hoistway, shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.).

(05S) **2.5.1.4 Between Car and Landing Sills.** The clearance between the car platform sill and the hoistway edge of any landing sill, or the hoistway side of any vertically sliding counterweighted or counterbalanced hoistway door, or of any vertically sliding counterbalanced biparting hoistway door, shall be not less than

(a) where car side guides are used

(1) 13 mm (0.5 in.) for all elevators except freight elevators

(2) 20 mm (0.8 in.) for freight elevators

(b) where car corner guides are used, 20 mm (0.8 in.)

The maximum clearance shall be not more than 32 mm (1.25 in.).

2.5.1.5 Clearance Between Loading Side of Car Platforms and Hoistway Enclosures

2.5.1.5.1 The clearance between the edge of the car platform sill and the hoistway enclosure or fascia plate for the full width of the clear hoistway door opening shall be not more than

(a) 190 mm (7.5 in.) for vertically sliding doors

(b) 125 mm (5 in.) for other doors

2.5.1.5.2 This clearance shall be maintained until the car is resting on its fully compressed buffer.

2.5.1.5.3 The clearance is not limited on passenger elevators, provided that

(a) a car door interlock conforming to 2.14.4.2 is provided to prevent a door from being opened unless the car is within the unlocking zone

(b) the strength of the door complies with 2.11.11.2, 2.11.11.4, 2.11.11.6, 2.11.11.7, and 2.11.11.8

2.5.1.6 Clearance Between Car Platform Apron and Pit Enclosure. Where the lowest landing sill projects into the hoistway, the clearance between the car platform apron and the pit enclosure or fascia plate shall be not more than 32 mm (1.25 in.). This clearance shall be maintained until the car is resting on its fully compressed buffer.

2.5.1.7 Measurement of Clearances. The clearances specified in 2.5.1 shall be measured with no load on the car platform.

SECTION 2.6
PROTECTION OF SPACE BELOW HOISTWAYS

Where a hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building and there is space below the hoistway that is accessible, requirements of 2.6.1 and 2.6.2 shall be complied with.

2.6.1 Where the Space Is Underneath the Counterweight and/or Its Guides

Where the space is underneath the counterweight and/or its guides

(a) the counterweight shall be provided with a counterweight safety conforming to 2.17.4

(b) spring buffers, if used, shall conform to 2.22, except that they shall not be fully compressed when struck by the counterweight at the following speeds (see 2.1.2.3):

(1) at governor tripping speed where the counterweight safety is governor operated, or

(2) 125% of the rated speed where the counterweight safety is not governor operated

2.6.2 Where the Space Is Underneath the Car and/or Its Guides

Where the space is underneath the car and/or its guides and if spring buffers are used, they shall be so designed and installed that they will not be fully compressed solid or to a fixed stop when struck by the car with its rated load at the governor tripping speed (see 2.1.2.3).

SECTION 2.7 (05S)
MACHINERY SPACES, MACHINE ROOMS, CONTROL SPACES, AND CONTROL ROOMS

A machinery space outside the hoistway containing an electric driving machine and a motor controller shall be a machine room.

2.7.1 Enclosure of Rooms and Spaces

Machinery space and control space enclosures located outside the hoistway and machine room and control room enclosures shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.1.1 or 2.7.1.2, and shall also conform to 2.7.1.3, as applicable.

2.7.1.1 Fire-Resistive Construction. Where the building code requires fire-resistive construction, the construction shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.1.1.1 and 2.7.1.1.2.

2.7.1.1.1 Spaces containing machines, motor controllers, sheaves, and other machinery shall be separated from the remainder of the building by a fire-resistive enclosure conforming to the requirements of the building code.

2.7.1.1.2 Openings in room and space enclosures (ED) shall be protected with access doors having a fire-protection rating conforming to the requirements of the building code.

NOTES (2.7.1.1):
(1) See 2.1.3 for floors of machine rooms and control rooms over the hoistway.

(2) See 2.8.1 for separating elevator machinery from building machinery.
(3) See 2.1.1.1.2 for partitions between machine rooms and hoistways.

2.7.1.2 Non-Fire-Resistive Construction. Where the building code does not require fire-resistive construction, the construction shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.1.2.1 and 2.7.1.2.2.

2.7.1.2.1 Enclosure of the rooms or spaces shall comply with the following:

(a) Machine rooms and control rooms shall be enclosed with noncombustible material to a height of not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.).

(b) Machinery spaces shall be enclosed with noncombustible material to a height of not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.), or to the height of the machinery space if it is less than 2 000 mm (79 in.).

(c) Control spaces shall be enclosed with noncombustible material to a height of not less than 2 000 mm (79 in.).

2.7.1.2.2 The room and space enclosure, if of openwork material, shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

2.7.1.3 Floors

(07) **2.7.1.3.1 Difference in Floor Levels.** Where there is a difference in level exceeding 400 mm (16 in.), a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 shall be provided (see also 2.7.3.3.1 and 2.7.3.3.2).

NOTE: Differences in levels of floors should be avoided where practicable.

2.7.1.3.2 Where machine beams are provided, the floor shall be located above or level with the top of the machine beams.

2.7.2 Maintenance Path and Clearance

2.7.2.1 Maintenance Path in Machine Rooms and Control Rooms. A clear path of not less than 450 mm (18 in.) shall be provided to all components that require maintenance.

2.7.2.2 Maintenance Path in Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces. All components requiring maintenance in machinery spaces and control spaces shall have safe and convenient access.

2.7.2.3 Maintenance Clearance in Machine Rooms and Control Rooms. A clearance of not less than 450 mm (18 in.) shall be provided in the direction required for maintenance access.

2.7.2.4 Maintenance Clearance in Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces

2.7.2.4.1 Where a space is intended to be accessed with full bodily entry, then the requirements of 2.7.2.3 shall apply.

2.7.2.4.2 Where a space is not intended to be accessed with full bodily entry, then all components requiring maintenance shall have safe and convenient access.

NOTE (2.7.2): For electrical clearance requirements, see NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.7.3 Access to Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

2.7.3.1 General Requirements

2.7.3.1.1 A permanent and unobstructed means of access shall be provided to

(a) machine rooms and control rooms

(b) machinery spaces and control spaces outside the hoistway

(c) machinery spaces and control spaces inside the hoistway that do not have a means of access to the space as specified in 2.7.3.1.2.

2.7.3.1.2 Access to machinery spaces and control spaces inside the hoistway

(a) from the pit shall comply with 2.2.4 and 2.7.5.2.4

(b) from the car top shall comply with 2.12.6 and 2.12.7

(c) from a platform shall comply with 2.7.5.3.5

(d) from inside the car shall comply with 2.7.5.1.4

2.7.3.2 Passage Across Roofs. The requirements of 2.7.3.2.1 and 2.7.3.2.2 shall be conformed to where passage over roofs is necessary to reach the means of access to machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms.

2.7.3.2.1 A stairway with a swinging door and platform at the top level, conforming to 2.7.3.3, shall be provided from the top floor of the building to the roof level. Hatch covers, as a means of access to roofs, shall not be permitted.

2.7.3.2.2 Where the passage is over a roof having a slope exceeding 15 deg from the horizontal, or over a roof where there is no parapet or guardrail at least 1 070 mm (42 in.) high around the roof or passageway, a permanent, unobstructed and substantial walkway not less than 600 mm (24 in.) wide, equipped on the side sloping away from the walk with a railing conforming to 2.10.2.1, 2.10.2.2, and 2.10.2.3, shall be provided from the building exit door at the roof level to the means of access.

2.7.3.3 Means of Access. The means of access to the following shall conform to 2.7.3.3.1 through 2.7.3.3.5:

(a) machine rooms, control rooms, and machinery spaces and control spaces outside the hoistway, and machinery spaces and control spaces inside the hoistway that do not have a means of access to the space as specified in 2.7.3.1.2

(b) between different floor levels in machine rooms, in control rooms, and in machinery spaces or control spaces outside the hoistway

(c) from within machine rooms or control rooms to machinery spaces and control spaces

2.7.3.3.1 A permanent, fixed, noncombustible ladder or stair shall be provided where the floor of the room or the space above or below the floor or roof from which the means of access leads, or where the distance between floor levels in the room or space, is more than 200 mm (8 in.).

2.7.3.3.2 A permanent, noncombustible stair shall be provided where the floor of the room or the space above or below the floor or roof from which the means of access leads, or where the distance between floor levels in the room or space, is 900 mm (35 in.) or more. Vertical ladders with handgrips shall be permitted to be used in lieu of stairs for access to overhead machinery spaces, except those containing controllers and motor generators.

2.7.3.3.3 Permanent, fixed, noncombustible ladders shall conform to ANSI A14.3.

2.7.3.3.4 Permanent, noncombustible stairs shall have a maximum angle of 60 deg from the horizontal, and shall be equipped with a noncombustible railing conforming to 2.10.2.1, 2.10.2.2, and 2.10.2.3.

2.7.3.3.5 A permanent, noncombustible platform or floor shall be provided at the top of the stairs with noncombustible railings conforming to 2.10.2.1, 2.10.2.2, and 2.10.2.3 on each open side. In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the size of the platform shall be sufficient to permit the full swing of the door plus 600 mm (24 in.) from the top of the riser to the swing line of the door. The floor of the platform shall be at the level of not more than 200 mm (8 in.) below the level of the access-door sill. Where the door swings inward, the width of the platform shall be not less than 750 mm (29.5 in.), and the length not less than the width of the door.

2.7.3.4 Access Doors and Openings

2.7.3.4.1 Access doors shall be

(a) self-closing and self-locking

(b) provided with a spring-type lock arranged to permit the doors to be opened from the inside without a key

(c) kept closed and locked

2.7.3.4.2 Access doors to machine rooms and control rooms shall be provided. They shall be of a minimum width of 750 mm (29.5 in.) and a minimum height of 2 030 mm (80 in.). Keys to unlock the access doors shall be Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

2.7.3.4.3 Access doors for spaces specified in 2.7.4.2, 2.7.4.3, and 2.7.4.4 other than those for machine rooms or control rooms shall be a minimum width and height of 750 mm (29.5 in.). Keys to unlock the access doors shall be Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

2.7.3.4.4 Access doors for control spaces outside the hoistway shall be a minimum width and height of 750 mm (29.5 in.). Keys to unlock the access doors shall be Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

2.7.3.4.5 Doors are not required at openings in machine room or control room floors for access to machinery spaces, provided the access opening is provided on all four sides with a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2, one side of which is arranged to slide or swing to provide access to the ladder or stairs leading to the space. Trap doors, where provided, shall have a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 or guard wings on all open nonaccess sides.

2.7.3.4.6 Access openings in elevator hoistway enclosures where full bodily entry is not necessary for maintenance and inspection of components shall be

(a) located to permit the required maintenance and inspection

(b) of maximum width of 600 mm (24 in.) and a maximum height of 600 mm (24 in.). These dimensions shall be permitted to be increased, provided that any resultant opening through the access opening into the hoistway shall reject a 300 mm (12 in.) diameter ball.

(c) provided with doors that shall be kept closed and locked. Keys to unlock the access doors to the elevator hoistways shall be of Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

2.7.3.5 Stop Switch for Machinery Spaces or Control Spaces. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.24, or a disconnecting means where required by NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), accessible and visible from the point of access to machinery spaces or control spaces shall be provided for each elevator. Where access to machinery spaces is from the pit, from the top of the car, or from inside the car, the stop switch in the pit, the stop switch on top of the car, or, where provided, the emergency stop switch in the car, respectively, meet these requirements.

2.7.4 Headroom in Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

2.7.4.1 Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, and machinery spaces containing an elevator driving machine not located in the hoistway shall have a clear headroom of not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.). (See also 2.7.4.5.)

2.7.4.2 Where a floor or platform is provided at the top of the hoistway (see 2.1.3), machinery spaces above such a floor or platform shall have a clear headroom of not less than the following:

(a) spaces containing motor-generators, 2 130 mm (84 in.)

(b) spaces containing only overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves, 1 070 mm (42 in.)

(c) spaces containing overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves, and governors, signal machines, or other equipment, 1 350 mm (53 in.)

2.7.4.3 Where floors are provided under overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves [see 2.7.4.2(b) and (c)], the machine and supporting beams shall be permitted to encroach on the required headroom, provided there is a clearance of not less than 900 mm (35 in.) high and minimum width of 750 mm (29.5 in.) in the path of access to sheaves, governors, signal machines, or other equipment.

2.7.4.4 Where a machinery space is located outside but not above the hoistway, the headroom of the area from which any work is performed on the equipment located inside such space shall be not less than 2 000 mm (78 in.), except

(a) spaces containing motor-generators, the headroom shall be not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.)

(b) spaces containing only overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves, the headroom shall be not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.)

(c) spaces containing overhead, secondary, or deflecting sheaves, and governors, signal machines, or other equipment, the headroom shall be not less than 1 350 mm (53 in.)

(d) as permitted in 2.7.4.3

2.7.4.5 When working from inside the car, or from the top of the car in accordance with 2.7.5.1, or from the pit in accordance with 2.7.5.2, the headroom when the means required by 2.7.5.1 or 2.7.5.2 are engaged shall

(a) comply with the height of working space requirements of NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9)

(b) in no case be less than 1 350 mm (53 in.)

2.7.4.6 Control spaces outside the hoistway intended for full bodily entry shall have a clear headroom of not less than 2 000 mm (78 in.) or the height of the equipment, whichever is the greater.

NOTE: For control spaces outside the hoistway not intended for full bodily entry, see NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.7.5 Working Areas Inside the Hoistway and in the Pit

2.7.5.1 Working Areas in the Car or on the Car Top. The requirements of 2.7.5.1.1 through 2.7.5.1.4 shall be complied with if maintenance or inspections of the elevator driving-machine brake, emergency brake, elevator motion controller, or motor controller are to be carried out from inside the car or from the car top.

2.7.5.1.1 If maintenance or inspection of the elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake, or of elevator motion controllers or motor controllers from inside the car or from the car top could result in unexpected vertical car movement, a means to prevent this movement shall be provided.

2.7.5.1.2 The means shall

(a) be independent of the elevator driving-machine brake, emergency brake, motion controller, and motor controller

(b) support not less than the unbalanced weight of the system with no load and up to rated load (see also 2.16.8) in the car and all suspension ropes in place. The minimum factor of safety shall be not less than 3.5, and the materials used shall not have an elongation of less than 15% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 8.

(c) when in the engaged position, actuate an electrical device conforming to 2.26.2.34, that shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(d) not cause stresses and deflections that exceed the applicable requirements for the structure(s) to which the means transmits load based on 100% of the static unbalanced weight of the system (see also 2.16.8)

(e) have a sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable, that shall be prominently posted in the work area stating: "WARNING! Engage '____' before maintaining or inspecting brake, emergency brake, or controller. Follow manufacturers instructions for use of '____'" (see 8.6.11.6). Unless the means has been designed to support not less than the unsuspended car with rated load (see also 2.16.8), it shall also contain the following wording: "Elevator suspension means must be in place during use." (ED)

NOTE: Substitute name of actual means for "____" in the above signage.

(f) be so designed as to prevent accidental disengagement

(g) when engaged, not require electrical power or the completion or maintenance of an electrical circuit to remain engaged.

2.7.5.1.3 When the means required in 2.7.5.1.1 is engaged, egress from the working area shall be provided (see also 2.7.3.4.3).

The use of the car top emergency exit for egress and re-entry is permitted subject to the following:

(a) all edges of the exit opening are smooth and free of burrs

(b) means shall be provided to descend safely to the floor of the car, and subsequently ascend safely to the car top

(c) the means required in 2.7.5.1.1 shall not be arranged to be engaged at a position that would permit a vertical gap between the bottom of the vertical face of the platform guard and the elevator landing sill.

2.7.5.1.4 If provided, equipment access panels in the car for access to equipment outside the car shall comply with 2.14.2.2(g)(1), (2), and (5) and shall be provided with

(a) a key-operated lock capable of being locked without a key

(b) an electrical switch that shall cause the power to be removed from the driving machine motor and brake when the access panel is open (see 2.26.2.35)

(c) a key that shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1)

The access panels shall be kept closed and locked, shall not be self-closing, and shall be self-locking.

2.7.5.2 Working Areas in the Pit. The requirements of 2.7.5.2.1 through 2.7.5.2.4 shall be complied with if maintenance or inspections of the elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake or of elevator motion controllers or motor controllers is to be carried out from the pit.

(07) **2.7.5.2.1** The following shall be provided:

(a) a means in compliance with 2.7.5.1.1, 2.7.5.1.2, and 2.7.4.5 shall be provided; or

(b) a mechanical device shall be provided to stop vertical car movement to create a vertical clearance as required by 2.7.4.5 between the floor of the working area and the lowest part of the car, and between the floor of the working area and the counterweight where a counterweight guard in conformance with 2.3.2 is not provided.

(1) The mechanical device shall be able to stop vertical car movement at up to and including 115% of rated speed with rated load. The retardation shall not exceed that required by 2.22.3 or 2.22.4, as applicable.

(2) The mechanical device shall be permitted to be moved into the active position manually or automatically.

(3) When the mechanical device is in the active position, it shall operate an electrical contact, which when in the open position, shall permit the car to move only on inspection operation [see 2.26.1.4.1 and 2.26.9.3(d)]. The electrical contact shall be positively opened mechanically and its opening shall not depend solely on springs.

(4) A sign in conformance with the requirements of ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable, shall be prominently posted in the work area stating: "WARNING! Position ' _____ ' before maintaining or inspecting brake, emergency brake, or controller. Follow manufacturers instructions for use of ' _____ '" (see 8.6.11.6).

NOTE: Substitute name of actual device for " _____ " in the above signage.

(5) The mechanical device shall be designed to prevent accidental movement from the active position.

(6) The mechanical device shall not require electrical power or the completion or maintenance of an electrical circuit to be maintained in the active position.

2.7.5.2.2 Pit inspection operation, in compliance with 2.26.1.4, shall be permitted to be provided in the pit (see 2.26.1.4.4).

2.7.5.2.3 When the means required in 2.7.5.2.1 is in the active position, safe and convenient egress from the working area shall be provided (see also 2.7.3.4.3).

(a) Where the egress is through the landing door

(1) the landing door shall be openable from the hoistway side

(2) the means shall be arranged to provide vertical clearance of not less than 1 220 mm (48 in.) between the bottom edge of the platform guard and the elevator landing

(b) Where the egress is through a separate pit access door, the door opening shall not be blocked by the car.

2.7.5.2.4 Where maintenance or inspections of the elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake or of elevator motion controllers or motor controllers is to be carried out from the pit, and the distance from the pit floor to this equipment is more than 2 100 mm (83 in.), a means shall be permanently installed or permanently stored in the pit to provide access to the equipment.

2.7.5.3 Working Platforms. A platform located in the car, on the car, or in the hoistway shall be permitted for access to and maintenance and inspection of equipment in machinery spaces or control spaces in the hoistway and shall comply with 2.7.5.3.1 through 2.7.5.3.6 (see also 8.6.11.8). (ED)

2.7.5.3.1 A working platform shall be permanently installed, and it shall be permitted to be retractable. Retractable platforms, that are in the line of movement of the car or counterweight when in the operating position, shall operate a working platform electrical device(s) (see 2.26.2.36) that shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake unless the platform is in its fully retracted position.

2.7.5.3.2 A working platfrom shall be able to support in any position at least 2 000 N (450 lb), with a load concentration of at least 1 000 N (225 lb) over an area of 40 000 mm^2 (64 in.^{2}) with a factor of safety of not less than 5. If the platform is to be used for handling heavy equipment, the dimensions and the strength of the platform shall be considered accordingly.

2.7.5.3.3 A working platform shall be provided with a standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 on the open or exposed sides where the perpendicular distance between the edges of the platform and the adjacent hoistway enclosure exceeds 300 mm (12 in.) horizontal clearance, and the difference in level between the platform and the surrounding surface exceeds 400 mm (16 in.).

2.7.5.3.4 Where a car or counterweight passes within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from a working platform, a means of protection against shearing hazards shall be provided to a height as measured from the platform standing surface of not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.), or not less than the maximum upward movement of the car or counterweight. The means shall be at least equal in strength and stiffness to 2 mm (0.074 in.) thick sheet steel. If perforated, it shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

2.7.5.3.5 Where the access to a working platform that is in the line of movement of the car or counterweight is not through the elevator landing doors, but through an access panel or door in the hoistway, it shall be equipped with a device conforming to the requirements of 2.11.1.2(e) to prevent operation of the machine unless the access panel or door is closed and locked.

2.7.5.3.6 Working platform inspection operation, in compliance with 2.26.1.4, shall be permitted to be provided at the location of a working platform. [See 2.7.5.5(b) for additional requirements when the working platform is in the line of movement of the car.]

2.7.5.4 Working Platforms in the Line of Movement of the Car or Counterweight. Working platforms in the line of movement of the car or counterweight shall be permitted

(a) where retractable stops are provided and the car is

(1) below the platform, the travel of the elevator shall be limited by a retractable stop(s) in such a manner that the car shall be stopped below the platform at least the distance required for car top refuge space (see 2.4.12.1)

(2) above the platform, the travel of the elevator shall be limited by a retractable stop(s) in such a manner that the car shall be stopped above the platform at least the distance required in 2.7.4.5; or

(b) where the elevator is provided with a device conforming to 2.7.5.1.1 and 2.7.5.1.2.

2.7.5.5 Retractable Stops. Retractable stops, where provided, shall

(a) be equipped with a retractable stop electrical device(s) (see 2.26.2.37), that shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake, unless the stops are completely in the retracted position.

(b) be permitted to be equipped with an electrical device(s) that permits operation of the car only on inspection operation when the platform is in the operating position and the stops are in the fully extended position. When provided with such an electrical device and the stop(s) is in the extended position, an additional stopping device conforming to 2.25.3.1 and 2.25.3.3 through 2.25.3.5 shall cause the car to stop before it strikes the movable stop(s). This additional stopping device shall be rendered ineffective when the stop(s) is in the retracted position. Any electrical device(s) used to render the additional stopping device ineffective shall be in conformance with 2.26.4.3, 2.26.9.3(a), and 2.26.9.4.

(c) be operable from outside the hoistway or from the platform.

(d) be able to stop the car traveling at 115% of rated speed with rated load. The retardation shall not exceed that required by 2.22.3 or 2.22.4, as applicable.

(e) be so designed as to prevent accidental disengagement.

2.7.6 Location of Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, Control Rooms, and Equipment

2.7.6.1 Location of Machine Rooms and Control Rooms. Elevator machine rooms and control rooms, where provided, shall not be located in the hoistway.

2.7.6.2 Location of Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces. Machinery spaces and control spaces shall be permitted to be located inside or outside the hoistway.

NOTE: Inside the hoistway includes, but is not limited to, on or in the car, on the counterweight, or in the pit.

2.7.6.3 Location of Equipment. The location of equipment used directly in connection with the elevator shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.6.3.1 through 2.7.6.3.4.

2.7.6.3.1 The electric driving machine shall be located in a machinery space or machine room.

2.7.6.3.2 The motor controller shall be located in a machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

A motor controller shall be permitted to be located outside the specified spaces, provided it is enclosed in a locked cabinet. The locked cabinet shall be

(a) readily accessible for maintenance and inspection at all times.

(b) provided with cabinet door(s) or panel(s) that are not self-closing, that are self-locking, and that shall be kept closed and locked. Keys shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

(c) lit by permanently installed electric lighting with a lighting intensity of at least 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level.

(d) located in a space that is provided with natural or mechanical means to keep the ambient air temperature and humidity in the range specified by the elevator equipment manufacturer to ensure safe and normal operation of the elevator. The temperature and humidity range shall be permanently posted on the cabinet.

NOTE (2.7.6.3.2): For electrical clearance requirements, see NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.7.6.3.3 Where sheaves and other equipment (except governors) are located overhead inside the hoistway, they shall be provided with a means of access from outside the hoistway conforming to the requirements of 2.7.3.3, unless they can be inspected and serviced from the top of the car.

2.7.6.3.4 Where a governor is located inside the hoistway, means of access conforming to the requirements of 2.7.3.3 and 2.7.3.4 for inspection and servicing the governor shall be provided from outside the hoistway. The access opening shall not be required where

(ED) *(a)* the governor can be inspected and serviced from the top of the car or adjacent car, and the governor can be tripped for testing from the adjacent car or outside the hoistway; and means are furnished to prevent movement of the car when servicing the governor. A sign with the words "SECURE CAR AGAINST MOVEMENT BEFORE SERVICING THE GOVERNOR" shall be prominently posted and be visible from the governor. The sign shall conform to ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable. The sign shall be of such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the face shall remain permanently and readily legible; and

(b) for elevators in a single hoistway, the governor can be reset automatically when the car is moved in the up direction or the governor can be reset from outside the hoistway.

2.7.6.4 Means Necessary for Tests. Where an elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake, or an elevator motion controller or motor controller is located in the hoistway or pit, means necessary for tests that require movement of the car or release of the driving-machine brake or emergency brake, shall be provided and arranged so that they can be operated from outside the hoistway and shall conform to 2.7.6.4.1 through 2.7.6.4.3. These means are also permitted to be used by elevator personnel for passenger rescue.

2.7.6.4.1 Where direct observation of the elevator drive sheave or ropes is not possible from the location of the means necessary for tests that require movement of the car or release of the driving-machine brake or emergency brake, display devices or the equivalent shall be provided. They shall be visible from the location of the means and shall convey the following information about the elevator simultaneously

(a) the direction of movement

(b) the reaching of a position within the door unlocking zone

(c) an indication of the speed

The display devices or the equivalent shall remain operable during a failure of the normal building power supply. The power source shall be capable of providing for the operation of the display devices or the equivalent for at least 4 h. Where batteries are used, a monitoring system shall be provided. In the event that during normal operation of the car, the monitoring indicates insufficient power to operate the display devices or the equivalent, the car shall not be permitted to restart after a normal stop at a landing.

2.7.6.4.2 The means necessary for tests shall be permitted to be located within an inspection and test panel conforming to the requirements of 2.7.6.5.2.

2.7.6.4.3 A means to move the car from outside the hoistway shall be provided and it shall conform to the following:

(a) it shall not be dependent on the availability of normal power.

(b) it shall be accessible for operation by elevator personnel only with a key that is Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

(c) it shall allow the car to move only with continuous effort.

(d) if the car is moved manually, the effort required to move the car in the direction of load imbalance shall not exceed 400 N (90 lbf). If the means used is removable, it shall be stored outside the hoistway and access to the means shall be with a key that is Group 1 Security. It shall be suitably marked to indicate the machine for which it is intended.

(e) Where the manual effort required to move the car exceeds 400 N (90 lbf), a means of electrical operation shall be provided to allow the car to be moved. This means of electrical operation shall require constant pressure operating devices to move the car, and when activated, operation of the car by all other operating means shall be prevented. A failure of a single constant pressure operating device shall not permit the elevator to move or continue to move. Where batteries are used for this electrical operation, a monitoring system shall be provided. In the event that during normal operation of the car the monitoring system indicates insufficient power to move the car, the car shall not be permitted to restart after a normal stop at a landing.

2.7.6.5 Inspection and Test Panel

2.7.6.5.1 The inspection and test panel shall be required where any of the following are not accessible from outside the hoistway:

(a) the "CAR DOOR BYPASS" and "HOISTWAY DOOR BYPASS" switches required by 2.26.1.5; or

(b) the devices necessary for the manual reset of the detection means for ascending car overspeed protection [see 2.19.1.2(a)(4)], and protection against unintended car movement [see 2.19.2.2(a)(4)], or

(c) the circuits of the following devices:

(1) the car-safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.9)

(2) the car buffer switch, where provided (see 2.26.2.22)

(3) the top and bottom final terminal stopping devices (see 2.26.2.11)

(4) the car and counterweight governor switches, where provided (see 2.26.2.10)

2.7.6.5.2 The inspection and test panel, where provided shall

(a) be readily accessible for maintenance and inspection at all times.

(b) have the required devices located behind a locked door or panel that does not open into the hoistway, that is not self-closing, that is self-locking, and that shall be kept closed and locked. Keys shall be of Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

(c) be provided with a stop switch, conforming to 2.26.2.24.

(d) be lit by permanently installed electric lighting with a lighting intensity of at least 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level. A switch placed inside or close to the enclosure shall control lighting of the enclosure.

(e) include the display devices as required by 2.7.6.4.1.

(f) include the "CAR DOOR BYPASS" and "HOISTWAY DOOR BYPASS" switches where required by 2.26.1.5.

(g) include the devices necessary for the manual reset of the detection means for ascending car overspeed protection [see 2.19.1.2(a)(4)], and protection against Unintended Car Movement [see 2.19.2.2(a)(4)] where these devices are not accessible from outside the hoistway.

(h) where the circuits of the devices in 2.7.6.5.1(c)(1) through (4) are not accessible from outside the hoistway, include landing inspection operation in conformance with 2.26.1.4.4, and that shall be permitted to render ineffective the following electrical protective devices, individually or as a group or groups, in conformance with the requirements of 2.26.9.3(a) and 2.26.9.4:

(1) the car-safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.9)

(2) the car buffer switch, where provided (see 2.26.2.22)

(3) the top and bottom final terminal stopping devices (see 2.26.2.11)

(4) the car and counterweight governor switches, where provided (see 2.26.2.10)

NOTE (2.7.6.5): For electrical clearance requirements, see NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). See also 2.8.3.3.2.

2.7.6.6 Equipment Exposure to Weather. Machines, control equipment, sheaves, and other machinery shall not be exposed to the weather unless they are suitable for the application.

2.7.7 Machine Rooms and Control Rooms Underneath the Hoistway

When a machine room or control room is located underneath the hoistway, it shall conform to 2.7.7.1 through 2.7.7.5.

2.7.7.1 The machine or control room shall have a solid ceiling (pit floor, at the normal pit depth) of concrete or steel above the machine room or control room, with a minimum 2 130 mm (84 in.) clearance above the machine room or control room floor.

2.7.7.2 The ceiling of the machine or control room shall be capable of sustaining a concentrated load of 1 000 N (225 lbf) on any 2 000 mm^2 (3 in.^{2}) area, and it shall be designed for a live load of 6 kPa (125 lbf/ft^2) and loads imposed by rails and/or buffers, if applicable.

2.7.7.3 The car and counterweight guide rails and buffer supports shall be permitted to extend into the machine room and be supported by the machine room floor. If the counterweight buffer or buffer support extends to the machine room or control room floor, a counterweight safety is not required unless the space below the machine room is not permanently secured against access. If a counterweight buffer is supported at the machine room ceiling (pit floor), a counterweight safety is required. (See 2.6.1 for additional requirements.)

2.7.7.4 The solid ceiling (pit floor at normal pit depth) shall be permitted to be slotted for the penetration of equipment (suspension ropes, selector drives, electrical conduit, rails, buffers, etc.). Passage and guards shall be provided in conformance with 2.3.2 and 2.10.1 for both the machine or control room and pit. A counterweight guard shall be installed at the pit floor as well as the machine or control room floor if the counterweight extends into the machine or control room and 2.3.2.1(a) does not apply. The guard in the machine or control room shall extend to the ceiling.

2.7.7.5 Compensating ropes or chains and traveling cables shall not extend into the machine room located underneath the hoistway.

2.7.8 Remote Machine Rooms and Control Rooms

Elevators that are provided with remote machine rooms and/or control rooms shall conform to 2.7.8.1 through 2.7.8.4.

2.7.8.1 Ropes and sheaves leading to the remote machine room that penetrate fire barriers shall be fully enclosed, and the enclosures shall conform to 2.1.1.1. **(07)**

2.7.8.2 Rope and sheave enclosures leading to the remote machine room shall be protected against unauthorized access.

2.7.8.3 Permanent means of access shall be provided to the enclosures for inspection, repair, and maintenance of hoist ropes passing over sheaves that are not located in the hoistway or remote machine rooms. Access doors to these enclosures shall be provided at each sheave location, conforming to 2.7.3.4. Access openings shall be provided for inspection and maintenance of hoist ropes passing over sheaves and shall conform to 2.7.3.4. A stop switch meeting the requirements of 2.26.2.23, a permanent electric duplex receptacle, a light switch, and light shall be provided in the enclosures immediately inside the access doors and openings.

2.7.8.4 A permanent means of communication between the elevator car and remote machine room and or control room shall be provided.

2.7.9 Lighting, Temperature, and Humidity in Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms

2.7.9.1 Lighting. Permanently installed electric lighting shall be provided in all machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms. The illumination shall be not less than 200 lx (19 fc) at the floor level, at the standing surface of a working platform (see 2.7.5.3), or at the level of the standing surface when the car is in the blocked position (see 2.7.5.1). The lighting control switch shall be located within easy reach of the access to such rooms or spaces. Where practicable, the light control switch shall be located on the lock-jamb side of the access door.

2.7.9.2 Temperature and Humidity. Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall be provided with natural or mechanical means to keep the ambient air temperature and humidity in the range specified by the elevator equipment manufacturer to ensure safe and normal operation of the elevator. The temperature and humidity range shall be permanently posted in the machine room, control room, control space, or where specified by the equipment manufacturer, in the machinery space.

(05S)

SECTION 2.8 EQUIPMENT IN HOISTWAYS, MACHINERY SPACES, MACHINE ROOMS, CONTROL SPACES, AND CONTROL ROOMS

2.8.1 Equipment Allowed

Only machinery and equipment used directly in connection with the elevator shall be permitted in elevator hoistways, machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms.

2.8.2 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

2.8.2.1 Installation of electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

(07) **2.8.2.2** Only such electrical wiring, raceways, cables, coaxial wiring, and antennas used directly in connection with the elevator, including wiring for signals, for communication with the car, for lighting, heating, air conditioning, and ventilating the car, for fire detecting systems, for pit sump pumps, and for heating and lighting the hoistway and/or the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room shall be permitted to be installed inside the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

2.8.2.3 Bonding conductors from the lightning protection system grounding down conductor to long vertical metal bodies in the hoistway such as elevator rails and vertical wireways shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway as required by NFPA 780, or CAN/CSA-B72, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). The lightning protection system grounding down conductor shall not be permitted in the hoistway, and the elevator rails shall not be used as the lightning protection system grounding down conductor. Bonding conductors installed in the hoistway shall not interfere with the operation of the elevator.

2.8.3 Pipes, Ducts, Tanks, and Sprinklers

2.8.3.1 Steam and hot-water pipes shall be permitted to be installed in hoistways, machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms for the purpose of heating these areas only, subject to 2.8.3.1.1 through 2.8.3.1.3.

2.8.3.1.1 Heating pipes shall convey only low-pressure steam [100 kPa (15 psi) or less] or hot water [100°C (212°F) or less].

2.8.3.1.2 All risers and return pipes shall be located outside the hoistway. When the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room is located above the roof of the building, heating pipes for the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room shall be permitted to be located in the hoistway between the top floor and the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

2.8.3.1.3 Traps and shutoff valves shall be provided in accessible locations outside the hoistway.

2.8.3.2 Ducts shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room for the purpose of heating, cooling, ventilating, and venting these areas only and shall not encroach upon the required clearances.

2.8.3.3 Sprinkler systems conforming to NFPA 13 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room subject to 2.8.3.3.1 through 2.8.3.3.4.

2.8.3.3.1 All risers and returns shall be located outside these spaces. Branch lines in the hoistway shall supply sprinklers at not more than one floor level. When the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room is located above the roof of the building, risers, return pipes, and branch lines for these sprinklers shall be permitted to be located in the hoistway between the top floor and the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

(07) **2.8.3.3.2** In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, where elevator equipment is located or its enclosure is configured such that application of water from sprinklers could cause unsafe elevator operation, means shall be provided to automatically disconnect the main line power supply to the affected elevator and any other power supplies used to move the elevator upon or prior to the application of water.

(a) This means shall be independent of the elevator control and shall not be self-resetting.

(b) Heat detectors and sprinkler flow switches used to initiate main line elevator power shutdown shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 72.

(c) The activation of sprinklers outside of such locations shall not disconnect the main line elevator power supply. See also 2.27.3.3.6.

2.8.3.3.3 Smoke detectors shall not be used to activate sprinklers in these spaces or to disconnect the main line power supply.

(07) **2.8.3.3.4** In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, when sprinklers are installed not more than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor, 2.8.3.3.4(a) and (b) apply to elevator electrical equipment and wiring in the hoistway located less than 1 200 mm (48 in.) above the pit floor, except earthquake protective devices conforming to 8.4.10.1.2(d); and on the exterior of the car at the point where the car platform sill and the lowest landing hoistway door sill are in vertical alignment.

(a) Elevator electrical equipment shall be weatherproof (Type 4 as specified in NEMA 250).

(b) Elevator wiring, except traveling cables, shall be identified for use in wet locations in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 70.

2.8.3.4 Other pipes or ducts conveying gases, vapors, or liquid and not used in connection with the operation of the elevator shall not be installed in any hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room. Where a machinery space, machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway extend above the roof of a building, pipes shall be permitted from roof drains to the closest point where they can be diverted out of this space. Pipes shall be covered to prevent leakage or condensate from entering the machinery space, machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway.

2.8.3.5 Where permitted and provided, pipes, drains, and tanks, or similar equipment that contains liquids, shall not be located directly above the elevator equipment and shall not encroach upon the required clearances in the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

2.8.4 Electrical Heaters

Listed/certified electrical heaters shall be permitted.

2.8.5 Air Conditioning

Air conditioning equipment is permitted to be installed in machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, or control rooms for the purpose of cooling these areas only, subject to 2.8.5.1 through 2.8.5.5.

2.8.5.1 Air conditioning equipment shall not be located directly above elevator equipment.

2.8.5.2 The clear headroom below suspended air conditioning equipment shall conform to 2.7.4.

2.8.5.3 Means shall be provided to collect and drain condensation water from these spaces. Condensation drains shall not be located directly above elevator equipment. Drains connected directly to sewers shall not be installed.

2.8.5.4 Safe and convenient access within the elevator machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room shall be provided to the air-conditioning equipment for servicing and maintaining.

NOTE: See also 2.7.3.1.

2.8.5.5 There shall be no exposed gears, sprockets, belts, pulleys, or chains.

NOTES (2.8.5):
(1) See 2.8.3.2 for requirements for duct work.
(2) These requirements do not pertain to air-conditioning equipment used to cool selective elevator equipment.

2.8.6 Miscellaneous Equipment

Enclosed moving, rotating, hanging machinery, equipment, stationary decorative lighting, stationary signage or other stationary special effects devices, securely attached to either one or more of the car, counterweight, or hoistway shall be permitted, provided that the elevator, including the equipment and devices, conforms to 2.4, 2.5, 2.8.1, 2.14.2.1.1, 2.15.7, 8.2.2.1, and 8.2.9.1. Any unenclosed moving, rotating, or hanging machinery or equipment, attached to the exterior of the car or counterweight, interior of the hoistway, exterior of the car, or any other elevator equipment in the hoistway is prohibited unless it is used in conjunction with the designed use of the elevator.

SECTION 2.9 (05S)
MACHINERY AND SHEAVE BEAMS, SUPPORTS, AND FOUNDATIONS

2.9.1 Supports Required

Machines, machinery, sheaves, and hitches shall be supported by overhead beams, structural floors, structural walls, or guide rails.

2.9.1.1 Machines, machinery, and sheaves shall be so supported and maintained in place as to prevent any part from becoming loose or displaced under the conditions imposed in service.

2.9.1.2 Supporting beams, if used, shall be of steel or reinforced concrete.

2.9.1.3 Beams are not required under machine(s), sheave(s), and machinery or control equipment that is supported on floors, provided such floors are designed and installed to support the load imposed thereon, or where supported by guide rails or structural walls designed to meet the requirements of 2.9.3.3.

2.9.2 Loads on Machinery and Sheave Beams, Floors, or Foundations and Their Supports

2.9.2.1 Overhead Beams, Floors, and Their Supports. Overhead beams, floors, and their supports shall be designed for not less than the sum of the following loads:

(*a*) the load resting on the beams and supports, that shall include the complete weight of the machine, sheaves, controller, governor, and any other equipment, together with that portion, if any, of the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room floor supported thereon

(*b*) two times the sum of the tensions in all wire ropes supported by the beams, floors, and their supports with rated load in the car

NOTE [2.9.2.1(b)]: These tensions are doubled to take care of accelerations and decelerations.

2.9.2.2 Foundations, Beams, and Floors for Machinery and Sheaves Not Located Directly Over the Hoistway. The supports for machines and sheaves located below or at the sides of the hoistway shall meet the requirements of 2.9.2.2.1 through 2.9.2.2.4.

2.9.2.2.1 The foundation shall support the total weight of the machine, sheaves, and other equipment, and the floor, if any.

2.9.2.2.2 The sheave beams and the foundation bolts shall withstand two times the vertical force component acting thereon as a result of the tension in all the suspension ropes, less the weight of the machine or sheaves.

2.9.2.2.3 The sheave beams and the foundation bolts shall withstand two times the horizontal force component, if any, acting thereon as a result of the tension in all the suspension ropes.

2.9.2.2.4 The foundation shall withstand two times the overturning moment, if any, acting thereon as a result of the tension in all the suspension ropes.

2.9.3 Securing of Machinery and Equipment to Beams, Foundations, Guide Rails, Structural Walls, or Floors

2.9.3.1 Overhead Beams and Floors

2.9.3.1.1 Where overhead beams and floors are used to support machinery or equipment, the machinery or equipment shall be secured to and supported on or from the top of overhead beams or floors, except for the following equipment:

(*a*) secondary or deflecting sheaves of traction elevators

(*b*) devices and their accessories for limiting or retarding car speed

2.9.3.1.2 Securing bolts or fastenings are not required where sound isolation in compression is used between bases of machinery or equipment and supporting beams or floors.

2.9.3.2 Beams or Foundations Supporting Machinery and Sheaves Not Located Directly Over the Hoistway

2.9.3.2.1 Machines and sheaves located below or at one side of a hoistway shall be anchored to beams, foundations, or floors with bolts, conforming to ASTM A 307, of sufficient size and number to withstand the applicable load conditions specified in 2.9.2.2. Based on these initial loads, total tension in anchor bolts shall not exceed 85 MPa (12,000 psi) of net section, and the total shear shall not exceed 60 MPa (9,000 psi) of actual area in the shear plane. (See also 2.9.3.5.)

2.9.3.2.2 Where bolts are used through greater than 5 deg sloping flanges of structural shapes, the bolt heads shall be of the tipped or beveled head type or shall be fitted with beveled steel washers, and nuts on greater than 5 deg sloping flanges shall seat on beveled steel washers.

2.9.3.3 Securing of Machines, Sheaves, Equipment, and Hitches to Guide Rails or Structural Walls

2.9.3.3.1 Machines, sheaves, equipment, and hitches shall be permitted to be secured to and supported by the guide rails or structural walls, provided that the tension in the hoisting ropes and the weight of the equipment will not develop direct tensions in the bolts or rivets.

2.9.3.3.2 Securing bolts or fastenings are not required where sound isolation in compression is used between bases of machinery or equipment and their supports.

2.9.3.3.3 Bolts used to secure equipment to the guide rails or structural walls shall conform to ASTM A 307, and be of sufficient size and number to withstand the applicable load conditions specified in 2.9.2.2. Based on these initial loads, total tension in support bolts shall not exceed 85 MPa (12,000 psi) of net section, and the total shear in bolts and rivets shall not exceed 60 MPa (9,000 psi) of actual area in the shear plane. The requirements of 2.9.3.2.2 for bolts and 2.9.3.4.3 and 2.9.3.4.4 for hitch plates shall also apply. The stresses in welds due to tensions in the hoisting ropes shall not exceed 55 MPa (8,000 psi) on the throat area of the welds. (See also 2.9.3.5.)

2.9.3.3.4 Guide rails used to support machines, equipment, sheaves, and hitches shall meet the requirements of 2.23.4.

2.9.3.4 Overhead Hoisting-Rope Hitches

2.9.3.4.1 Where hoisting ropes are secured to the structure above a hoistway, the hitch plates and hitch-plate blocking beams, where used, shall be secured to and mounted on top of overhead beams, machine beams, or on top of auxiliary beams connected to the webs of overhead beams.

2.9.3.4.2 Hitch plates, blocking, or auxiliary beams shall be secured by bolts conforming to ASTM A 307, rivets conforming to ASTM A 502, or welding conforming to 8.8, and shall be so located that the tension in the hoisting ropes will not develop direct tensions in the bolts or rivets. Where bolts and rivets are subjected to shearing stresses due to tension in the hoisting ropes, the total shear shall not exceed 60 MPa (9,000 psi) of actual area in the shear plane. The stresses in welds due to tensions in the hoisting ropes shall not exceed 55 MPa (8,000 psi) on the throat area of the welds. (See also 2.9.3.5.)

2.9.3.4.3 The hitch plate supporting structure shall be designed to withstand two times the sum of the tensions in all hoisting ropes attached to the hitch plates. (See also 2.15.13.)

2.9.3.4.4 Total stresses in hitch plates and hitch-plate shapes shall not exceed 85 MPa (12,000 psi).

2.9.3.5 Bolts Made of Steel. Bolts made of steel used to comply with the requirements of 2.9.3.2.1, 2.9.3.3.3, and 2.9.3.4.2 having a greater strength than specified by ASTM A 307 shall be permitted, provided that the maximum allowable stresses increased proportionally based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths. Elongation shall conform to the requirements of the corresponding ASTM specification.

2.9.3.6 Cast Metals in Tension or Bending. Cast metals having an elongation of less than 20% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.), when measured in accordance with ASTM E 8, that are subject to tension or bending, shall not be used to support machinery or equipment from the underside of overhead beams or floors.

2.9.4 Allowable Stresses for Machinery and Sheave Beams or Floors, Their Supports, and Any Support Members That Transmit Load to the Guide Rails or Structural Walls

2.9.4.1 The unit stresses for all machinery and sheave beams and floors and their supports, based on the loads computed as specified in 2.9.2 or 2.9.6, whichever is greater, shall not exceed 80% of those permitted for static loads by the following standards:

(a) *Structural Steel.* AISC Book No. S326 or CAN/CSA-S16.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

(b) *Reinforced Concrete.* ANSI/ACI 318 or CAN3-A23.3, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

2.9.4.2 Where stresses due to loads, other than elevator loads supported on the beams or floor, exceed those due to the elevator loads, 100% of the permitted stresses are permitted.

2.9.4.3 Cast Metals in Tension or Bending. Cast metals having an elongation of less than 20% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.), when measured in accordance with ASTM E 8, that are subject to tension or bending, shall not be used to support machinery or equipment from guide rails or structural walls.

2.9.5 Allowable Deflections of Machinery and Sheave Beams, Their Supports, and Any Support Members Loaded in Bending That Transmit Load to Guide Rails or Structural Walls

The allowable deflections of machinery and sheave beams, their immediate supports, and any support members loaded in bending that transmit load to guide rails or structural walls under static load shall not exceed $\frac{1}{1666}$ of the span.

2.9.6 Allowable Stresses Due to Emergency Braking

Machinery and sheave beams, supports, any support members that transmit load to guide rails or structural walls and any fastenings subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19.4) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of the emergency braking so that the resulting stresses due to the emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall not exceed those specified in 2.9.4.

SECTION 2.10 GUARDING OF EQUIPMENT AND STANDARD RAILING

2.10.1 Guarding of Equipment (05S)

In machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms, the following shall be guarded to protect against accidental contact:

(a) driving-machine sheaves and ropes whose vertical projection upon a horizontal plane extends beyond the base of the machine, unless the driving-machine sheave is so located as to minimize the possibility of contact

(b) sheaves

(c) exposed gears, sprockets, tape or rope sheaves, or drums of selectors, floor controllers, or signal machines, and their driving ropes, chains, or tapes

(d) keys, keyways, and screws in projecting shafts

Handwinding wheels and flywheels that are not guarded shall have yellow markings.

(05S) **2.10.2 Standard Railing**

A standard railing shall be substantially constructed of metal and shall consist of a top rail, intermediate rail or equivalent structural member or solid panel, and toe-board.

2.10.2.1 Top Rail. The top rail shall have a smooth surface, and the upper surface shall be located at a vertical height of 1 070 mm (42 in.) from the working surface.

2.10.2.2 Intermediate Rail, Member, or Panel. The intermediate rail or equivalent structural member or solid panel shall be located approximately centered between the top rail and the working surface.

2.10.2.3 Toe-Board. The toe-board shall be securely fastened and have a height not less than 100 mm (4 in.) above the working surface.

2.10.2.4 Strength of Standard Railing. A standard railing shall be capable of resisting anywhere along its length the following forces when applied separately, without deflecting more than 75 mm (3 in.) and without permanent deformation:

(a) a force of at least 890 N (200 lbf) applied in any lateral or downward vertical direction, at any point along the top rail.

(b) a force of at least 666 N (150 lbf) applied in any lateral or downward vertical direction at any point along the center of the intermediate rail, member, or panel. If the standard railing is a solid panel extending from the top rail to the toe-board, the application of the force specified in 2.10.2.4(a) shall be considered to meet the requirements of 2.10.2.4(b).

(c) a force of 225 N (50 lbf) applied in a lateral direction to the toe-board.

SECTION 2.11
PROTECTION OF HOISTWAY OPENINGS

2.11.1 Entrances and Emergency Doors Required

2.11.1.1 Hoistway Landing Entrances. All elevator hoistway landing openings shall be provided with entrances that shall guard the full height and width of the openings. Entrances shall be at least 2 030 mm (80 in.) in height and 800 mm (31.5 in.) in width.

2.11.1.2 Emergency Doors in Blind Hoistways. Where an elevator is installed in a single blind hoistway, there shall be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway an emergency door at every third floor, but not more than 11 m (36 ft) from sill to sill, conforming to the following:

(a) The clear opening shall be at least 700 mm (28 in.) wide and 2 030 mm (80 in.) high.

(b) It shall be easily accessible and free from fixed obstructions.

(c) It shall be either of the horizontally sliding or swinging single-section type, irrespective of the type of door installed at other landings.

(d) It shall be self-closing and self-locking and shall be marked, in letters not less than 50 mm (2 in.) high, "DANGER, ELEVATOR HOISTWAY."

(e) It shall be provided with an electromechanical device that will prevent the operation of the driving machine unless the door is closed and locked (see 2.26.2.25).

(f) It shall be unlocked from the landing side only through the use of a cylinder-type lock, having not less than five pins or five discs. The cylinder lock shall

(1) not be unlocked by any key that will open any other lock or device used for any purpose in the building

(2) be so designed that the key shall be removable only in the locked position

(g) It shall be openable from the hoistway side without the use of a key.

(h) The key shall be of Group 1 Security (see 8.1). This key shall also be made available to emergency personnel during an emergency.

(i) A hinged self-closing barrier independent of the door shall be installed horizontally across the entrance on the hoistway side at a height of 1 070 mm (42 in.). The barrier shall not open into the hoistway.

2.11.1.3 Telephone as Alternative to Emergency Doors. Where an elevator is installed in a single blind hoistway, and there are no landings from which to gain access through an emergency door, a means of two-way conversation conforming to 2.27.1.1.4 shall be provided. (ED)

NOTE: Examples are pulp mills, grain elevators, dams, or similar locations.

2.11.1.4 Access Openings for Cleaning of Car and Hoistway Enclosures. Nonremovable sliding or swing panels or doors in the hoistway conforming to 2.11.1.2(d), (f), (g), and (i) shall be permitted for access to car or hoistway transparent enclosures for cleaning purposes. An electromechanical device shall be provided that will prevent the operation of the driving machine unless the access panels or doors are closed and locked (see 2.26.2.32). Keys used to unlock the access panels or doors shall be Group 2 Security (see 8.1). (07)

2.11.2 Types of Entrances

2.11.2.1 Passenger Elevators. For passenger elevators, entrances shall be one of the following types:

(a) horizontally sliding
(b) horizontally swinging, single-section
(c) combination horizontally sliding and swinging
(d) hand- or power-operated vertically sliding that slide up to open

2.11.2.2 Freight Elevators. For freight elevators, entrances shall be one of the following types:

(a) horizontally sliding
(b) swinging, single-section
(c) combination horizontally sliding and swinging
(d) center-opening, two-section horizontally swinging, subject to restrictions of 2.11.2.3
(e) vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced (see 2.16.4)
(f) vertically sliding counterweighted, single- or multisection

2.11.2.3 Limitations of Use of Center-Opening Swinging Entrances. Center-opening swinging entrances shall be permitted only

(a) for freight elevators that can be operated only from the car; or
(b) for freight elevators not accessible to the general public that can be operated from outside the hoistway, and that are located in factories, warehouses, garages, and similar industrial buildings.

2.11.3 Closing of Hoistway Doors

2.11.3.1 Horizontally sliding or single-section swinging doors of automatic-operation elevators shall be provided with door closers arranged to close an open door automatically if the car, for any reason, leaves the landing zone.

2.11.3.2 Horizontally sliding doors shall be closed when the car is at a landing, except when

(a) the car is operated by a designated attendant in the car;
(b) loading or unloading;
(c) the elevator conforms to 2.27.3.2.1 and 2.27.3.2.3 through 2.27.3.2.6, Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by fire alarm initiating device; or
(d) the car is at the recall level when Phase I is in effect [see 2.27.3.1.6(a)].

2.11.3.3 On center-opening doors, if there is an interlock on only one panel, the door closer required by 2.11.3.1 shall be provided on the leading panel that operates in the opposite direction (see 2.11.11.7).

2.11.4 Location of Horizontally Sliding or Swinging Hoistway Doors

Horizontally sliding or swinging doors shall be so located that the distance from the hoistway face of the doors to the edge of the hoistway landing sill, measured from the face of the door section nearest to the car, shall be not more than the requirements specified in 2.11.4.1 and 2.11.4.2.

2.11.4.1 For elevators that can be operated only from the car, 100 mm (4 in.), except that where new elevators are installed in existing multiple hoistways or where alterations involving replacement of the doors are made to existing elevators in multiple hoistways, and the location of the door openings is such that the 100 mm (4 in.) dimension specified cannot be maintained, the distance specified is permitted to be increased to not more than 125 mm (5 in.) where horizontally sliding doors are used.

2.11.4.2 For elevators with automatic or continuous-pressure operation, 19 mm (0.75 in.) for swinging doors and 57 mm (2.25 in.) for sliding doors, except that

(a) freight elevators not accessible to the general public, and that are located in factories, warehouses, garages, and similar industrial buildings are permitted to have single-section or center-opening two-section horizontally swinging doors conforming to 2.11.4.1; or
(b) for swinging doors used on elevators with automatic and continuous-pressure operation, the distance shall be permitted to be increased from 19 mm to 57 mm (0.75 in. to 2.25 in.) if such doors are emergency doors conforming to 2.11.1. (See also 2.14.4.5.)

2.11.5 Projection of Entrances and Other Equipment Beyond the Landing Sills

Entrances and equipment shall not project into an elevator hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill, except for

(a) equipment required for interlocking, indicator and signal devices, and door operating devices
(b) vertical slide entrances

2.11.6 Opening of Hoistway Doors

2.11.6.1 When the car is within the unlocking zone, the hoistway doors shall be openable by hand from within the car without the use of tools.

2.11.6.2 Means shall not be provided for locking out of service the doors at

(a) the top terminal landing
(b) the bottom terminal landing
(c) the designated and alternate landings for elevators equipped with Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, when Phase I is effective
(d) no landing for elevators equipped with Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation when Phase II is effective

2.11.6.3 Egress from the interior of the car to any elevator landing by means of the car and hoistway doors shall be unrestricted once the car and hoistway doors are open. **(05S)**

2.11.6.4 Handles or other means provided for operation of manually operated doors shall be so located that it is not necessary to reach the back of any panel, jamb, or sash to operate them.

2.11.7 Glass in Hoistway Doors

Glass in hoistway doors shall conform to 2.11.7.1 and 2.11.7.2.

2.11.7.1 Vision Panels. Manually operated or self-closing hoistway doors of the vertically or horizontally sliding type, for elevators with automatic or continuous-pressure operation, shall be provided with a vision panel. Vision panels shall not be required at landings of automatic operation elevators where a hall position indicator is provided. In multisection doors, the vision panel is required in one section only, but is permitted to be placed in all sections. All horizontally swinging elevator doors shall be provided with vision panels. Vision panels are permitted for any type of hoistway door.

Where required or used, vision panels shall conform to 2.11.7.1.1 through 2.11.7.1.7.

2.11.7.1.1 The area of any single vision panel shall be not less than 0.015 m^2 (24 $in.^2$), and the total area of one or more vision panels in any hoistway door shall be not more than 0.055 m^2 (85 $in.^2$).

2.11.7.1.2 Each clear panel opening shall reject a ball 150 mm (6 in.) in diameter.

2.11.7.1.3 Muntins used between panel sections shall be of noncombustible material and of substantial construction.

2.11.7.1.4 Panel opening shall be glazed with either of the following:

(a) clear wire glass not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) other transparent glazing material not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) thick that meets the impact safety standard 16 CFR Part 1201 or CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, or CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable (see Part 9)

2.11.7.1.5 The center of the panel shall be located not less than 1 300 mm (51 in.) and not more than 1 700 mm (67 in.) above the landing, except that for vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, it shall be located to conform to the dimensions specified insofar as the door design will permit.

2.11.7.1.6 Vision panels in power-operated doors shall be substantially flush with the surface of the landing side of the door.

2.11.7.1.7 Vision panels shall be protected by protective grilles made of steel not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 in.) thick, in accordance with the following specifications:

(a) Grilles shall be sized to fit within or over the vision panel frame and completely cover the vision panel opening in the hoistway door.

(b) Grilles shall be secured by means that deter removal by common tools.

(c) Grilles shall contain openings that shall be not larger than 19 mm × 19 mm (0.75 in. × 0.75 in.) in diameter. Such openings shall be spaced at 25 mm (1 in.) center-to-center.

(d) Grille edges shall be free of burrs and beveled.

(e) Grilles shall be installed on the hoistway side of the door.

2.11.7.2 Glass Doors. Where provided, glass hoistway doors shall conform to 2.11.7.2.1 through 2.11.7.2.5.

2.11.7.2.1 The glass shall be laminated glass conforming to 16 CFR Part 1201 or CAN/CGSB-12.1. Markings as specified in the applicable standard shall be on each separate piece of glass and shall remain visible after installation.

2.11.7.2.2 The glass shall be not less than 60% of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the landing side of the doors. Door lap shall not be used in calculating glass size.

2.11.7.2.3 In power-operated doors, the glass panel shall be substantially flush with the surface of the landing side of the door.

2.11.7.2.4 A nonglass edge shall be provided on the leading edge of the door panel.

2.11.7.2.5 The glass door shall conform to 2.11.11.5.7 for horizontally sliding type entrances, 2.11.12.4 for vertically sliding type entrances, or 2.11.13.3 for swinging entrances.

2.11.8 Weights for Closing or Balancing Doors

Hoistway door weights, where used for closing or balancing doors, shall be guided or restrained to prevent them from coming out of their runway. The bottom of the guides or other restraining means shall be so constructed as to retain the weights if the weight suspension means breaks.

2.11.9 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Power Operation

2.11.9.1 Locking Devices. Doors shall be provided with door locking devices conforming to 2.12.

2.11.9.2 Power Operation. Where hoistway doors are power operated or are opened or closed by power, their operation shall conform to 2.13.

2.11.10 Landing-Sill Guards, Landing-Sill Illumination, Hinged Landing Sills, and Tracks on Landings

2.11.10.1 Landing-Sill Guards

2.11.10.1.1 Landing sills shall be guarded on the underside with guard plates of smooth metal not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 in.) thick, extending the full width of the car sill exposed to the landing entrance, and securely fastened in place. Landing sill guards are not required for

(a) vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors

(b) vertically sliding counterweighted doors that slide down to open

(c) elevators where the landing sills do not project into the hoistway

2.11.10.1.2 Where a car leveling device is provided and the hoistway edge of the sill is either flush with or projects into the hoistway, the guard shall have a straight vertical face extending below the sill not less than the depth of the leveling zone plus 75 mm (3 in.). Where the sill projects inward from the hoistway enclosure, the bottom of the guard shall also be beveled at an angle of not less than 60 deg and not more than 75 deg from the horizontal, or the guard shall be extended from the hoistway edge of the landing sill to the top of door hanger pocket of the entrance next below.

2.11.10.1.3 Where no car leveling device is provided and the sill projects inward from the general line of the hoistway, the guard shall be either beveled at an angle of not less than 60 deg and not more than 75 deg from the horizontal, or have a straight vertical face extending from the hoistway edge of the landing sill to the top of door hanger pocket of the entrance below.

2.11.10.2 Illumination at Landing Sills. The building corridors shall be so lighted that the illumination at the landing sills, when an elevator is in service, shall be not less than 100 lx (10 fc).

2.11.10.3 Hinged Hoistway Landing Sills. Hinged hoistway landing sills provided in connection with vertically sliding, biparting, counterbalanced doors of freight elevators shall be hinged on the landing side so that they can be lowered only when the landing doors are in the fully opened position.

2.11.11 Entrances, Horizontal Slide Type

2.11.11.1 Landing Sills. Landing sills shall

(a) be of metal and of sufficient strength to support the loads to be carried by the sills when loading and unloading the car, and be secured in place

(b) be substantially flush with the floor surface of the elevator landings

(c) be so designed and maintained as to provide a secure foothold over the entire width of the door opening

2.11.11.2 Hangers, Tracks, and Track Supports. Hangers, tracks, and their supports and fastenings for doors shall be constructed to withstand, without damage or appreciable deflection, an imposed static load equal to four times the weight of each panel as applied successively downward and upward at the vertical centerline of the panel. (See 2.11.11.5.7 and 2.11.11.5.8.)

2.11.11.3 Entrance Frames

2.11.11.3.1 Where used, entrance frames shall be anchored to the sills and to the building structure or the track supports. The head of the entrance frame shall not be used to support the weight of the wall over the frame.

2.11.11.3.2 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified frames, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.11.4 Hangers. Hangers shall conform to 2.11.11.4.1 and 2.11.11.4.2.

2.11.11.4.1 Means shall be provided to prevent the hangers from jumping the track.

2.11.11.4.2 Stops shall be provided in the entrance assembly to prevent hangers from overrunning the end of the track.

2.11.11.5 Panels. Panels shall conform to 2.11.11.5.1 through 2.11.11.5.8.

2.11.11.5.1 The panels shall overlap the top and sides of the opening, and each other, in the case of multispeed entrances, by not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

Where entrances without frames are used, the overlap shall extend the thickness of the facing used to finish the opening plus 13 mm (0.5 in.) or more.

2.11.11.5.2 The clearance shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.) between

(a) the panel and the frame

(b) the panel and the wall, where entrances without frames are used in masonry or concrete

(c) related panels of multispeed entrances

(d) the panel and the sill measured vertically

2.11.11.5.3 The leading panel edge of side-opening entrances shall not close into pockets in the strike jamb and shall be smooth and free of sharp projections.

2.11.11.5.4 The meeting panel edges of center-opening entrances shall be smooth and free of sharp projection.

The meeting panel edges of center-opening entrances shall be protected with not less than one resilient male member extending the full height of the panel. The resilient members shall be permitted to interlock by not more than 10 mm (0.375 in.).

When in the closed position, the distance between the metal parts of the meeting panels shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.11.11.5.5 No areas shall be depressed or raised more than 3 mm (0.125 in.) from the adjacent area and edges shall be beveled at not more than 30 deg to the panel surface.

2.11.11.5.6 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified panels, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.11.5.7 The entrance assembly shall be capable of withstanding a force of 2 500 N (560 lbf) applied on the landing side at right angles to and approximately at the center of a panel. This force shall be distributed over an area of approximately 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no appreciable permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this test.

2.11.11.5.8 Means shall be provided to prevent opening of locked doors more than 20 mm (0.8 in.) per panel at the farthest point from the interlock when a force of 135 N (30 lbf) is applied in the opening direction at the leading edge of the door at the farthest point from the interlock.

2.11.11.6 Bottom Guides. Bottom guides shall conform to the following:

(*a*) The bottom of each panel shall be guided by one or more members.

(*b*) Guide members shall be securely fastened.

(*c*) The guide members and any reinforcements or guards shall engage the corresponding member by not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.). (See 2.11.11.5.7.)

2.11.11.7 Multipanel Entrances. Panels of multipanel doors shall conform to either 2.11.11.7.1 or 2.11.11.7.2. Multiple-speed and center-opening multiple-speed doors shall also conform to 2.11.11.7.3.

2.11.11.7.1 Panels shall be interconnected directly or through their hangers so as to assure simultaneous movement of all panels. The factor of safety of the interconnecting means shall not be less than 10 for cast iron or 5 for other materials.

2.11.11.7.2 Panels shall be equipped with hoistway door interlocks on each driven panel and provided with a door closer(s) installed to comply with 2.11.3.1. All panels shall move simultaneously when the car is at the landing.

2.11.11.7.3 Multiple-speed and center-opening multiple-speed panels shall be provided with secondary mechanical interconnecting means to ensure that individual panels of multiple panel doors moving in the same direction cannot become separated from the panel that is locked by the interlock in the event that the normal interconnecting means fails.

2.11.11.7.4 Where cable and pulleys are used to connect panels of multisection sliding doors, each pulley shall be equipped with a guard to prevent the cable from leaving the pulley.

2.11.11.8 Hoistway Door Safety Retainers. The top and bottom of horizontally sliding doors shall be provided with a means of retaining the closed door panel in position if the primary guiding means fail, and preventing displacement of the door panel top and bottom by more than 20 mm (0.8 in.) when the door panel is subjected to a force of 5 000 N (1,125 lbf) in the direction of the hoistway applied at right angles to the panel over an area of 300 mm × 300 mm (12 in. × 12 in.) at the approximate center of the panel.

The retaining means shall also withstand, without detachment or permanent deformation, a force of 1 000 N (225 lbf) applied upward at any point along the width of the door panel and, while this force is maintained, an additional force of 1 100 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles to the door at the center of the panel. This force shall be distributed over an area of 300 mm × 300 mm (12 in. × 12 in.).

The retaining means shall not be subjected to wear or stress during normal door operation or maintenance.

2.11.11.9 Beams, Walls, Floors, and Supports. The building structural supports of the entrance, such as building beams, walls, and floors, shall be designed to withstand the horizontal forces stipulated in 2.11.11.8.

2.11.11.10 Hoistway Door to Sill Clearance. The horizontal distance from the hoistway side of the leading edge of the hoistway door, or sight guard, if provided, to the edge of the landing sill, shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.). The vertical clearance between the sight guard, if provided, and the landing sill shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.11.12 Entrances, Vertical Slide Type

2.11.12.1 Landing Sills

2.11.12.1.1 Landing sills shall be of metal and of sufficient strength to support the loads to be carried by the sills when loading and unloading the car, and be secured in place (see 2.16.2.2 for classes of loading); the load on the sill during loading and unloading shall be considered to be the same as that on the platform members specified in 8.2.2.6.

2.11.12.1.2 Landing sills shall be secured to the building structure in substantially the same plane as the elevator landing floor.

2.11.12.2 Entrance Frames. Where used, frames shall conform to 2.11.12.2.1 through 2.11.12.2.4. **(05S)**

2.11.12.2.1 Entrance frames shall be anchored to the sills and to the building structure or track supports.

2.11.12.2.2 The weight of the wall above the frame shall be supported by either of the following:

(*a*) lintel

(*b*) the head of the frames when designed to support the load

2.11.12.2.3 In gypsum board (dry wall) construction, the frame side jambs shall be extended and securely fastened to the building structure above the frame.

2.11.12.2.4 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified frames, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.12.3 Rails. The panel guide rails shall be securely fastened to the building structure and the entrance frame, at intervals, throughout their entire length.

Rails and their supports shall withstand the forces specified in 2.11.12.4.6. Where truckable sills are provided as specified in 2.11.12.4.2, the rails shall withstand any reactions that could be transmitted to the rails as a result of loading and unloading operations.

2.11.12.4 Panels. Panels shall conform to 2.11.12.4.1 through 2.11.12.4.8.

2.11.12.4.1 The panels shall be constructed of noncombustible material, or of a structural core made of combustible material if covered with not less than 0.45 mm (0.0175 in.) sheet metal.

2.11.12.4.2 The lower panel of biparting entrances and the top of the panel of vertical slide entrances that slide down to open shall be provided with a truckable sill designed for the loads specified in 2.11.12.1.1. Provisions shall be made to transmit the panel sill load to the building structure.

2.11.12.4.3 Panels of biparting counterbalanced entrances shall conform to the following:

(a) They shall be provided with means to stop the closing panels when the distance between the closing rigid members of the panel is not less than 20 mm (0.8 in.) and not more than 50 mm (2 in.).

(b) A fire-resistive, nonshearing, and noncrushing member of either the meeting or overlapping type shall be provided on the upper panel to close the distance between the rigid door sections when in contact with the stops. This member shall allow a minimum compressible clearance of 20 mm (0.8 in.).

(c) Rigid members that overlap the meeting edge, and center-latching devices, are prohibited.

2.11.12.4.4 The panels, with their attachments for doors that slide up to open, shall overlap the sides and top of the entrance opening by at least 50 mm (2 in.) when in the closed position. Other vertically sliding panels and their attachments shall overlap their entrance openings and sills by at least 50 mm (2 in.) when in the closed position. The overlap shall extend at least 50 mm (2 in.) beyond the thickness of any facing used to finish the opening.

2.11.12.4.5 The clearance between a panel and the frame lintel, between a panel and the sill, and between related panels of multispeed entrances, shall not exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

2.11.12.4.6 Panels, rails, and door guides shall conform to the strength requirements of 2.11.11.5.7. Hangers, guides, and guide shoes shall not be permanently displaced or deformed by more than 20 mm (0.8 in.) when their panel is subjected to a force of 5 000 N (1,125 lbf) in the direction of the hoistway applied at right angles to the panel over an area of 300 mm × 300 mm (12 in. × 12 in.) at the approximate center of the panel.

2.11.12.4.7 Means shall be provided to close the opening between the upper panel of pass-type entrances and the entrance frame lintel. The sum of the clearance between the panel, the device used to close the opening, and the entrance lintel shall not exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

2.11.12.4.8 Means shall be provided to prevent the opening of locked doors more than 25 mm (1 in.) per panel at the farthest point from the interlock when a force of 135 N (30 lbf) is applied in the opening direction at the leading edge of the door at the farthest point from the interlock.

2.11.12.5 Guides. Panel guides shall conform to 2.11.12.5.1 through 2.11.12.5.3.

2.11.12.5.1 Each panel shall be equipped with not less than four guide members or with continuous guides.

2.11.12.5.2 Guide members shall be securely fastened to the panels.

2.11.12.5.3 Guide members shall be designed to withstand the forces specified in 2.11.12.4.6.

2.11.12.6 Counterweighting or Counterbalancing. Single or multisection vertically sliding panels shall be so counterweighted, and vertically sliding biparting panels shall be so counterbalanced, that they will not open or close by gravity.

Fastenings shall be provided to prevent the fall of a counterweight, and the detachment or dislodgment of counterweight parts or of balancing weights. Suspension means and their connections, for vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors and for the counterweights of vertically sliding counterweighted doors, shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5.

2.11.12.7 Sill Guards. Where the panel sill or other structural member projects more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) into the hoistway or beyond the panel surface below it, the projection shall be provided with a metal guard not less than 1.4 mm (0.055 in.) thick and beveled at an angle of not less than 50 deg and not more than 75 deg from the horizontal.

2.11.12.8 Pull Straps. Manually operated vertically sliding biparting entrances shall be provided with pull straps on the inside and outside of the door.

The length of the pull straps shall conform to 2.11.12.8.1 and 2.11.12.8.2.

2.11.12.8.1 The bottom of the strap shall be not more than 2 000 mm (79 in.) above the landing when the panel is in the fully opened position.

2.11.12.8.2 The length of the strap shall not be extended by means of ropes or other materials.

2.11.13 Entrances, Swinging Type

2.11.13.1 Landing Sills. Landing sills shall

(a) be of metal and of sufficient strength to support the loads to be carried by the sills when loading and unloading the car, and be secured in place

(b) be substantially flush with the floor surface of the elevator landings

(c) be so designed and maintained as to provide a secure foothold over the entire width of the door opening

2.11.13.2 Entrance Frames. Frames shall conform to 2.11.13.2.1 and 2.11.13.2.2.

2.11.13.2.1 They shall be designed to support in place the panels with their hinges or pivots, closer if attached to the frame and interlock. They shall withstand the forces referred to in 2.11.13.3.5, and the forces resulting from the normal opening of the door or normal attempts to open it when locked in the closed position.

2.11.13.2.2 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified panels, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.13.3 Panels. Panels shall conform to 2.11.13.3.1 through 2.11.13.3.7.

2.11.13.3.1 The panels shall overlap the part of the frame against which they close by not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.11.13.3.2 The clearance between a panel and its sill shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.).

(05S) **2.11.13.3.3** Handles or knobs on the hoistway side of door panels are not permitted. Unlatching devices that do not project beyond the face of the door panel on the hoistway side shall be permitted.

2.11.13.3.4 Where decorative material is applied to listed/certified panels, it shall conform to the requirements of the certifying organization.

2.11.13.3.5 Panels and their assembled accessories shall

(a) be capable of withstanding a force on the handle of not less than 450 N (100 lbf) in the opening direction of a closed and locked door. There shall be no permanent displacement or deformation of the handle or the door panel resulting from this force.

(b) conform to 2.11.11.5.7.

(c) not be permanently displaced or deformed by more than 20 mm (0.75 in.) when the panel is subjected to a force of 5 000 N (1,125 lbf) in the direction of the hoistway, applied at right angles to the panel over an area of 300 mm × 300 mm (12 in. × 12 in.) at the approximate center of the panel.

2.11.13.3.6 Center-opening horizontally swinging doors shall have one door section provided with an overlapping astragal on its vertical edge, except where each door section is provided with a landing door interlock [see 2.12.2.4.4(c)].

2.11.13.3.7 Center-opening horizontally swinging doors shall have door stops provided at the top entrances that will stop each door panel when closed and that will meet the requirements specified in 2.11.13.3.5.

2.11.13.4 Hinges. Hinges of the mortise and surface type shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 80, Table 2-4.3.1.

2.11.13.5 Entrances With Combination Horizontally Sliding and Swinging Panels. Where both the sliding and swinging panels are not equipped with hoistway door interlocks or locks and contacts conforming to 2.12, the horizontally sliding and swinging panels forming a part of the entrance shall be so interconnected that

(a) the swinging panel can be opened only when the sliding panel is in the open position

(b) both panels swing as a unit

2.11.14 Fire Tests

2.11.14.1 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC

(a) the fire-protection rating of entrances and doors shall be determined in accordance with the requirements specified in the NBCC (CAN4-S104) (ED)

(b) where required, the hoistway door interlock mechanism and associated wiring shall remain operational for a period of 1 h when subjected to the standard fire exposure test described in CAN4-S104

NOTE (2.11.14.1): Requirements 2.11.14.2 through 2.11.18 do not apply in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC.

2.11.14.2 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, 2.11.15 through 2.11.18, and 2.11.14.2.1 through 2.11.14.2.3 apply where fire-resistive construction is required by 2.1.1.1.3.

2.11.14.2.1 Entrances shall be subjected to the type tests specified in 8.3.4.

2.11.14.2.2 The following basic types of entrances shall be tested:

(a) *Horizontally Sliding Type.* Test a side-sliding and a center-opening assembly.

(b) *Swinging Type.* Test a single swinging assembly.

(c) *Vertically Sliding Type.* Test a biparting assembly.

2.11.14.2.3 When an entrance assembly has been tested for one type of wall construction, i.e., masonry or drywall, only the frame-to-wall interface shall be acceptable to the certifying organization for other types of construction.

2.11.15 Marking

(07) **2.11.15.1 Labeling of Tested Entrance Assembly.** In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, a single label listing covered components included per 2.11.15.1.1, or separate labels on all individual components per 2.11.15.1.2 shall be provided.

2.11.15.1.1 Each entrance shall be labeled. Each label shall be permanently attached to the equipment and shall be readily visible after installation. The following data shall be on the label:

(a) certifying organization's name or identifying symbol

(b) the name, trademark, or file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified

(c) statement of compliance with 8.3.4

(07) *(d)* a list of the component items found in the definition of Entrance Assembly that are covered by the label

(07) **2.11.15.1.2** Labels, conforming to 2.11.15.1.1(a) and (b), shall be provided for each entrance as follows:

(a) One label shall be provided for each door panel.

(b) Each frame shall be labeled, except where frames are installed in masonry or concrete and the panel overlaps the wall in conformance with 2.11.11.5.1 and 2.11.11.5.2, or 2.11.12.4.4.

(1) One label shall be provided for each section of a frame, or for each piece of a knockdown frame; or

(2) A single label shall be provided for the entire frame where the label states that it includes both the fixed side panels and the transom

(c) One label shall be provided for the frame, except that no label is required where frames are installed in masonry or concrete and the panel overlaps the wall in conformance with 2.11.11.5.1 and 2.11.11.5.2, or 2.11.12.4.4.

(d) A single label may be provided for the entire entrance assembly where components are equivalent to those tested as a complete assembly.

(07) **2.11.15.1.3** Where the entrance hardware assembly has been tested in a complete entrance assembly, a single label, conforming to 2.11.15.1.1, shall be provided for the entrance hardware assembly.

(07) **2.11.15.1.4** Where a component of the entrance hardware assembly has not been tested as part of the complete assembly, a label conforming to 2.11.15.1.1 shall be applied to the component.

(07) **2.11.15.2 Other Entrance Assemblies.** In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the following shall apply. Other entrance assemblies of the three basic types (see 2.11.14) shall qualify for labeling or listing/certification:

(a) when composed of panel(s), frame, and hardware of the same type as tested and not exceeding the overall height and width of any panel and frame of the largest size tested; or

(b) when such panel(s), frame, and hardware are modified, and test or technical data demonstrates that the modifications will meet the performance requirements of the test procedure in 8.3.3.

All other elements of the assembly shall conform to all other applicable requirements of this Code.

2.11.15.3 Entrances Larger Than Tested Assemblies. In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the following shall apply. When the entrance is too large for the regularly available test facilities, the certifying organization shall be permitted to issue oversize certificates or oversize labels, or such entrances shall be permitted to be used subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction.

2.11.16 Factory Inspections

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the following shall apply. The manufacturing facilities for the production of entrances or components thereof shall be inspected by the certifying organization at random at least quarterly, or if they are not manufactured on a continuous basis, at the time they are being produced, to assure that production methods are such that entrances or components thereof similar to those tested are being produced.

2.11.17 Transoms and Fixed Side Panels

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the following shall apply. Transoms and fixed side panels shall be permitted to close openings above and beside the horizontally sliding or horizontally swinging type entrances, provided that

(a) the opening closed by the transom and fixed side panel does not exceed in width or height the dimensions of the entrance in which it is installed

(b) the transom panels and fixed side panels are

(1) constructed in a manner equivalent to the construction of the entrance panels

(2) secured

2.11.18 Installation Instructions

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, the following shall apply:

(a) Instructions detailing the application and installation of door listed/certified panels and entrance hardware shall be provided.

(b) Where frames are used, instructions detailing the listed/certified frame-to-wall interface shall be provided.

(07) **2.11.19 Gasketing of Hoistway Entrances**

Where gasketing material is applied to entrances with a fire-protection rating, it shall conform to 2.11.19.1 through 2.11.19.4.

2.11.19.1 The gasketing material shall be subjected to the tests specified in UL 10B, NFPA 252, or CAN4-S104, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

(ED) **2.11.19.2** The gasketing material shall withstand the maximum elevated temperature tests as defined by ANSI/UL 1784 standard without deterioration.

2.11.19.3 Each section of the gasketing material shall be labeled. Each label shall bear the name of the manufacturer and a statement indicating conformance with 2.11.19.1 and 2.11.19.2. The label shall be visible after installation.

2.11.19.4 Labeled gasketing material shall conform to 2.11.16 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable.

NOTES (2.11.19):

(1) See also 2.1.1.5, 2.11.3, and 2.13.4 for additional requirements to be considered when gasketing material is applied to a hoistway entrance.

(2) These requirements do not evaluate the air and/or smoke leakage performance of the gasketing material.

SECTION 2.12 HOISTWAY DOOR LOCKING DEVICES AND ELECTRIC CONTACTS, AND HOISTWAY ACCESS SWITCHES

2.12.1 General

2.12.1.1 When the car is stopped within the unlocking zone, the hoistway doors shall be unlocked, or locked but openable from the landing side either manually or by power.

2.12.1.2 When the car is outside the unlocking zone, the hoistway doors shall be openable from the landing side only by a hoistway door unlocking device (see 2.12.6, 2.12.7, and Nonmandatory Appendix B).

2.12.1.3 For security purposes, hoistway doors shall be permitted to be locked out of service, subject to the requirements of 2.11.6.

2.12.1.4 Passenger elevator hoistway doors shall be equipped with interlocks conforming to 2.12.2.

2.12.1.5 Freight elevator hoistway doors shall be equipped with interlocks conforming to 2.12.2 or combination mechanical locks and electric contacts conforming to, and where permitted by, 2.12.3.

2.12.2 Interlocks

2.12.2.1 General. Each entrance at a landing to an elevator used for passengers or freight and not conforming to 2.12.3.1 shall be equipped with one or more interlocks meeting the design requirements of 2.12.2.4.

2.12.2.2 Closed Position of Hoistway Doors. Hoistway doors shall be considered to be in the closed position under the following conditions. These dimensions apply to the doors in their normal operating condition (see 2.14.4.11):

(*a*) for horizontally sliding or swinging doors, when the leading edge of the door is within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the nearest face of the jamb or when the panels of center-opening doors are within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of contact with each other

(*b*) for vertically sliding counterweighted doors, when the leading edge of the door is within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the sill for doors that slide up to open, or 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the lintel for doors that slide down to open

(*c*) for vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, when the astragal on the upper panel is within 19 mm (0.75 in.) of the lower panel

2.12.2.3 Operation of the Driving Machine With a Hoistway Door Unlocked or Not in the Closed Position. Operation of the driving machine when a hoistway door is unlocked or not in the closed position (see 2.12.2.2) shall be permitted under one of the following conditions:

(*a*) by a car leveling or truck zoning device (see 2.26.1.6)

(*b*) when a hoistway access switch is operated (see 2.12.7)

(*c*) when a bypass switch is activated (see 2.26.1.5)

2.12.2.4 General Design Requirements. Interlocks shall conform to 2.12.2.4.1 through 2.12.2.4.7.

2.12.2.4.1 Interlock contacts shall be positively opened by the locking member or by a member connected to and mechanically operated by the locking member, and the contacts shall be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity, or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by means of the opening member (see 2.26.2.14). Contacts shall be open when the hoistway door interlock is unlocked. If the contacts are maintained in the open position by other than the locking member, the interlock shall be located such that the contacts cannot be closed by hand from the car or landing when the doors are open. (ED)

The electrical contact bridging means shall withstand a separating force of 200 N (45 lbf) in any direction from the locking member.

2.12.2.4.2 The locking member of the interlock shall hold the door in the locked position by means of gravity, or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by means of a positive linkage.

2.12.2.4.3 The interlock shall lock the door in the closed position with a minimum engagement of 7 mm (0.28 in.) of the locking members before the interlock contacts are closed and before the driving machine can be operated, except as permitted in 2.12.2.3.

Devices that permit operation of the driving machine by the normal operating device when the door is closed but before it is locked are not interlocks and are not permitted where interlocks are required by this Code.

2.12.2.4.4 Interlocks, used with multisection doors, shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) They shall lock all sections of the door, but shall be permitted to be applied to only one section of the door, provided the device used to interconnect the door sections is so arranged that locking one section will prevent the opening of all sections.

(b) Where used with vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, they shall be so arranged that the interlock contacts are mechanically held in the open position by the door or devices attached thereto, unless the door is in the closed position.

(c) Where used with center-opening horizontally swinging doors, either

(1) both door panels shall be equipped with interlocks; or

(2) where the door panels are so arranged that one panel can be opened only after the other panel has been opened, the interlock is not required on the section that opens last, if that door panel is provided with a door electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.3, 2.14.4.2.5, and 2.26.2.15, except that terms "door or gate" and "car door or gate" shall be replaced with the term "hoistway door" or "hoistway door section" and the term "accessible from inside the car panel" with the term "accessible from the landing side when the hoistway doors are closed."

(d) Where used with combination horizontally sliding and swinging doors, either

(1) the sliding and swinging panels shall both be equipped with interlocks; or

(2) where the sliding and swinging panels are interconnected in conformity with the requirements of 2.11.13.5, the interlock is not required on the swinging panel, provided that the interlock on the sliding panel is so designed and installed that the car cannot be operated unless the sliding and swinging panels are both locked in the closed position, as defined in 2.12.2.2.

(e) Where a door closer, used with a combination sliding and swinging door, is arranged to be disconnected to allow the sliding panel to swing, it shall be so designed and installed that it shall not make the interlock contact when disconnected and released.

2.12.2.4.5 Interlock systems employing a single master switch for more than one door are prohibited.

(07) **2.12.2.4.6** Mercury tube switches shall not be used.

2.12.2.5 Interlock Retiring Cam Device. Retiring cams used to actuate an interlock shall exert a force at least double the average force required to operate the interlock and shall have a movement at least 13 mm (0.5 in.) more than the average movement required to operate the interlock.

An interlock retiring cam device shall be permanently marked by the manufacturer with its rated horizontal force and rated horizontal movement.

The rated horizontal force shall be the static force exerted by a retiring cam device in the horizontal direction when extended a distance equal to 75% of its rated horizontal movement. The rated horizontal movement shall be the horizontal distance traveled by the retiring cam device from the fully retired position to the fully extended position.

2.12.2.6 Location. Interlocks shall be so located that they are not accessible from the landing side when the hoistway doors are closed.

2.12.3 Hoistway Door Combination Mechanical Locks and Electric Contacts

2.12.3.1 Where Permitted. Hoistway door combination mechanical locks and electric contacts shall be permitted only on freight elevators equipped with manually operated vertically sliding doors and only at the following landings:

(a) the top terminal landing and the landing whose sill is located not more than 1 225 mm (48 in.) below the top terminal landing sill, provided that the elevator rise does not exceed 4 570 mm (15 ft) **(ED)**

(b) any landing whose sill is within 1 525 mm (60 in.) of the pit floor, regardless of the elevator rise **(ED)**

2.12.3.2 Closed Position of Hoistway Doors. Hoistway doors shall be considered to be in the closed position under the following conditions. These dimensions apply to the doors in their normal operating condition (see also 2.14.4.11):

(a) for vertically sliding counterweighted doors, when the leading edge of the door is within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the sill for doors that slide up to open, or 10 mm (0.375 in.) of the lintel for doors that slide down to open

(b) for vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, when the astragal on the upper panel is within 19 mm (0.75 in.) of the lower panel

2.12.3.3 Operation of the Driving Machine With a Hoistway Door Not in the Closed Position. Operation of the driving machine when a hoistway door is not in the closed position shall be permitted under one of the following conditions:

(a) by a car leveling or truck zoning device (see 2.12.2.2 and 2.26.1.6)

(b) when a hoistway access switch is operated (see 2.12.7)

(c) when bypass switch is activated (see 2.26.1.5)

2.12.3.4 General Design Requirements. Combination mechanical locks and electric contacts shall conform to 2.12.3.4.1 through 2.12.3.4.6.

2.12.3.4.1 They shall be so designed that the locking member and the electric contact are mounted on and attached to a common base, in such a manner that there is a fixed relation between the location of the contact and the location of the locking member.

They shall be so installed and adjusted that the electric contact cannot close until the door is in the closed position as specified in 2.12.3.2, and so that the locking member is in a position to lock the door when or before the contact closes. In order to prevent motion of the door from opening the electric contact while the door is locked in the closed position, multiple-locking points shall, where necessary, be provided on the locking mechanism.

2.12.3.4.2 The electric contact shall be positively opened by the locking bar of the mechanical lock or by a lever or other device attached to and operated by the door, and the electric contact shall be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by positive mechanical means. (See 2.26.2.14.)

2.12.3.4.3 The mechanical lock shall hold the door in the locked position by means of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both.

2.12.3.4.4 Combination mechanical locks and electric contacts used with vertical-slide multiple-panel doors shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) They shall lock all panels of the door, but shall be permitted to be applied to only one section of the door, provided the device used to interconnect the door sections is so arranged that locking one panel will prevent the opening of all panels.

(b) Where used with vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, the electric contact shall be so arranged that it is mechanically held in the open position by the door or a device attached thereto, unless the door is in the closed position.

(07) **2.12.3.4.5** Mercury tube switches shall not be used.

2.12.3.5 Location. Combination mechanical locks and electric contacts shall be so located that they are not accessible from the landing side when the hoistway doors are closed.

2.12.4 Listing/Certification Door Locking Devices and Door or Gate Electric Contacts

2.12.4.1 Type Tests. Each type and make of hoistway door interlock, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contact, and door or gate electric contact, shall conform to the type tests specified in 8.3.3, unless tested prior to

(a) August 1, 1996, and shall have been subjected to the tests specified in A17.1a–1994, Section 1101; or

(b) March 23, 2002 in jurisdictions enforcing CSA B44 and shall have been subjected to the tests specified in CSA B44S1-97, Clause 11.5. (05S)

The tests shall be done by or under the supervision of a certifying organization.

2.12.4.2 Listing/Certification. Each type and make of hoistway door interlock, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contact, and door or gate electric contact shall conform to the general requirements for tests and certification specified in 8.3.1.

2.12.4.3 Identification Marking. Each listed/certified device shall be labeled. It shall be permanently attached to the device, and shall be so located as to be readily visible when the device is installed in its operating position.

The labels shall include the following data:

(a) the name, trademark, or certifying organization file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified

(b) the certifying organization name or identifying symbol

(c) statement of compliance with ASME A17.1 or CSA B44

(d) a distinctive type, model, or style letter or number

(e) rated voltage and current, and whether AC or DC

(f) rated test force and rated test movement when the device is of a type released by an interlock retiring cam (see 8.3.3.4.7)

(g) date (month and year) devices subjected to type test specified in 2.12.4.1

(h) if the device has only been type tested and listed/certified for use on a private residence elevator, the label shall indicate the restricted use

2.12.5 Restricted Opening of Hoistway or Car Doors

Hoistway and car doors of passenger elevators shall conform to 2.12.5.1 through 2.12.5.3.

2.12.5.1 When a car is outside the unlocking zone, the hoistway doors or car doors shall be so arranged that the hoistway doors or car doors cannot be opened more than 100 mm (4 in.) from inside the car.

2.12.5.2 When the car doors are so arranged that they cannot be opened when the car is outside the unlocking zone, the car doors shall be openable from outside the car without the use of a special tool(s).

2.12.5.3 The doors shall be openable from within the car (see 2.14.5.7) when the car is within the unlocking zone.

NOTE (2.12.5): See also 2.12.1 and Nonmandatory Appendix B, Unlocking Zone.

2.12.6 Hoistway Door Unlocking Devices

2.12.6.1 General. Except in jurisdictions that limit the use of hoistway door unlocking devices, they shall be provided for use by elevator and emergency personnel for each elevator at every landing where there is an entrance.

2.12.6.2 Location and Design. Hoistway door unlocking devices shall conform to 2.12.6.2.1 through 2.12.6.2.5.

2.12.6.2.1 The device shall unlock and permit the opening of a hoistway door from a landing irrespective of the position of the car.

2.12.6.2.2 The device shall be designed to prevent unlocking the door with common tools.

2.12.6.2.3 Where a hoistway unlocking device consists of an arrangement whereby a releasing chain, permanently attached to a door locking mechanism, is kept under a locked panel adjacent to the landing door, such a panel shall be self-closing and self-locking and shall not have identifying markings on its face.

(07) **2.12.6.2.4** The hoistway door unlocking device shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1). The operating means shall also be made available to emergency personnel during an emergency.

2.12.6.2.5 The unlocking device keyway and locked panel (see 2.12.6.2.3), if provided, shall be located at a height not greater than 2 100 mm (83 in.) above the landing.

2.12.7 Hoistway Access Switches

2.12.7.1 General

2.12.7.1.1 Hoistway access switches shall be provided when the rated speed is greater than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) at

(a) the lowest landing for access to the pit, when a separate pit access door is not provided

(b) the top landing for access to the top of the car

2.12.7.1.2 For elevators with a speed of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) or less, hoistway access switches shall be provided at the top landing when the distance from the top of the car to the landing sill exceeds 900 mm (35 in.) when the car platform is level with the landing immediately below the top landing.

2.12.7.2 Location and Design. Hoistway access switches shall conform to 2.12.7.2.1 through 2.12.7.2.3.

2.12.7.2.1 The switch shall be installed adjacent to the hoistway entrance at the landing with which it is identified.

2.12.7.2.2 The switch shall be of the continuous-pressure spring-return type, and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination, with the key removable only when the switch is in the "OFF" position. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

2.12.7.2.3 The electric contacts in the switch shall be positively opened mechanically; their openings shall not be solely dependent on springs.

2.12.7.3 Operating Requirements. The operation of the switch shall permit movement of the car with the hoistway door at this landing unlocked or not in the closed position, and with the car door or gate not in the closed position, subject to the requirements of 2.12.7.3.1 through 2.12.7.3.8.

2.12.7.3.1 The operation of the switch shall not render ineffective the hoistway-door interlock or electric contact at any other landing, nor shall the car move if any other hoistway door is unlocked.

2.12.7.3.2 The car cannot be operated at a speed greater than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). (07)

For elevators with static control, an independent means shall be provided to limit the speed of the car on hoistway access to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), should the normal means to control this speed (mechanical, electrical, or solid-state devices) fail to do so.

2.12.7.3.3 For automatic and continuous-pressure operation elevators, provided that

(a) car and landing operating devices are first made inoperative by means within the car. This means shall enable the hoistway access switches and shall be key operated or behind a locked cover. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

(b) power operation of the hoistway door and/or car door or gate is inoperative.

2.12.7.3.4 Automatic operation by a car-leveling device is inoperative.

2.12.7.3.5 Both top-of-car inspection operation (see 2.26.1.4.2) and in-car inspection operation (see 2.26.1.4.3) are not in effect.

2.12.7.3.6 The movement of the car initiated and maintained by the access switch at the lowest landing, if this landing is the normal means of access to the pit, shall be limited in the up direction to the point where the bottom of the platform guard is even with hoistway entrance header.

2.12.7.3.7 The movement of the car initiated and maintained by the upper access switch shall be limited in the down direction to a travel not greater than the height of the car crosshead above the car platform, and limited in the up direction to the distance the platform guard extends below the car platform.

2.12.7.3.8 The access switch shall only control the movement of the car within the zone specified in 2.12.7.3.6 or 2.12.7.3.7. Control circuits related to, or operated by, the hoistway access switches shall comply with 2.26.9.3(c), (d), and (e) and 2.26.9.4.

SECTION 2.13
POWER OPERATION OF HOISTWAY DOORS AND CAR DOORS

2.13.1 Types of Doors and Gates Permitted

Where both a hoistway door and a car door or gate are opened and/or closed by power, the hoistway door and the car door or gate shall both be either of the horizontally sliding type or vertically sliding type.

2.13.2 Power Opening

2.13.2.1 Power Opening of Car Doors or Gates. Power opening of a car door or gate shall be subject to the requirements of 2.13.2.1.1 and 2.13.2.1.2.

2.13.2.1.1 Power opening shall occur only at the landing where the car is stopping, or is leveling, or at rest, and shall start only when the car is within the landing zone where an automatic car-leveling device is provided, except that on elevators with static control, power shall not be applied to open car doors until the car is within 300 mm (12 in.) of the landing.

2.13.2.1.2 Collapsible car gates shall not be power opened to a distance exceeding one-third of the clear gate opening, and in no case more than 250 mm (10 in.).

2.13.2.2 Power Opening of Hoistway Doors. Power opening of a hoistway door shall conform to 2.13.2.2.1 through 2.13.2.2.3.

2.13.2.2.1 Power opening shall occur only at the landing where the car is stopping, leveling, or at rest, and shall start only when the car is within the landing zone where an automatic car-leveling device is provided, except that on elevators with static control, opening shall not start until the car is within 300 mm (12 in.) of the landing.

2.13.2.2.2 Power opening shall be permitted to be initiated automatically through control circuits, provided that the car is being automatically stopped or leveled, and that, when stopping under normal operating conditions, the car shall be at rest or substantially level with the landing before the hoistway door is fully opened.

2.13.2.2.3 Sequence opening of vertically sliding hoistway doors and adjacent car doors or gates shall comply with 2.13.6.

2.13.3 Power Closing

2.13.3.1 Power Closing or Automatic Self-Closing of Car Doors or Gates Where Used With Manually Operated or Self-Closing Hoistway Doors

2.13.3.1.1 Where a car door or gate of an automatic or continuous-pressure operation passenger elevator is closed by power, or is of the automatically released self-closing type, and faces a manually operated or self-closing hoistway door, the closing of the car door or gate shall not be initiated unless the hoistway door is in the closed position, and the closing mechanism shall be so designed that the force necessary to prevent closing of a horizontally sliding car door or gate from rest is not more than 135 N (30 lbf).

2.13.3.1.2 Requirement 2.13.3.1.1 does not apply where a car door or gate is closed by power through continuous pressure of a door closing switch, or of the car operating device, and where the release of the closing switch or operating device will cause the car door or gate to stop or to stop and reopen.

2.13.3.2 Power Closing of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors or Gates by Continuous-Pressure Means. Horizontally or vertically sliding hoistway doors with manually closed, or power-operated, or power-closed car doors or gates shall be permitted to be closed by continuous-pressure means, subject to the requirements of 2.13.3.2.1 through 2.13.3.2.5.

2.13.3.2.1 The release of the closing means shall cause the hoistway door, and a power-operated or power-closed car door or gate, to stop or to stop and reopen.

2.13.3.2.2 The operation of the closing means at any landing shall not close the hoistway door at any other landing, nor the car door or gate when the elevator car is at any other landing.

2.13.3.2.3 Any closing means at a landing shall close only that hoistway door and the car door or gate at the side where such means is located.

2.13.3.2.4 For elevators having more than one hoistway opening at any landing level, a separate closing means shall be provided in the car for each car door or gate and its adjacent hoistway door, except that a separate closing means need not be furnished for a horizontally sliding hoistway door and adjacent car door or gate that conform to 2.13.4.

2.13.3.2.5 For sequence closing of vertically sliding hoistway doors and adjacent car doors or gates, see 2.13.6.

2.13.3.3 Power Closing of Horizontally Sliding Hoistway Doors and Horizontally Sliding Car Doors or Gates by Momentary Pressure or by Automatic Means. Power closing by momentary pressure or by automatic means shall be permitted only for automatic or continuous-pressure operation elevators. The closing of the doors shall be subject to the requirements of 2.13.3.3.1 and 2.13.3.3.2.

2.13.3.3.1 The closing of the doors shall conform to 2.13.4.

2.13.3.3.2 A momentary pressure switch or button shall be provided in the car, the operation of which shall cause the doors to stop or to stop and reopen. The switch or button shall be identified as required by 2.26.12.

2.13.3.4 Power Closing of Vertically Sliding Hoistway Doors and Vertically Sliding Car Doors or Gates by Momentary Pressure or by Automatic Means. Power closing by momentary pressure or by automatic means shall be permitted only for automatic or continuous-pressure operation elevators.

Vertically sliding hoistway doors used with vertically sliding power-operated car doors or gates closed by momentary pressure or automatic means, shall conform to the requirements of 2.13.3.4.1 through 2.13.3.4.5.

2.13.3.4.1 A warning bell or other audible signal shall be provided on the car, that shall start to sound at least 5 s prior to the time the car door or gate starts to close and shall continue to sound until the hoistway door is substantially closed. When the doors are closed by a closing switch in the car, the 5 s time interval shall be permitted to be omitted.

2.13.3.4.2 Sequence closing of the hoistway door and adjacent car door or gate shall be provided and shall conform to 2.13.6. Sequence closing is not required when a biparting vertically sliding hoistway door faces a biparting vertically sliding car door or gate.

2.13.3.4.3 The car door or gate shall be equipped with a reopening device conforming to 2.13.5.

2.13.3.4.4 A momentary pressure switch or button shall be provided in the car and at each landing, that, when operated, shall cause the car door or gate and the hoistway door at the landing to stop or to stop and reopen.

2.13.3.4.5 The average closing speed shall not exceed 0.3 m/s (1 ft/s) for a vertically sliding counterweighted hoistway door or for each panel of a biparting counterbalanced hoistway door or car gate, and shall not exceed 0.6 m/s (2 ft/s) for a vertically sliding counterweighted car door or gate.

2.13.4 Closing Limitations for Power-Operated Horizontally Sliding Hoistway Doors and Horizontally Sliding Car Doors or Gates

2.13.4.1 Where Required. Where a power-operated horizontally sliding hoistway door or car door/gate or both is closed by momentary pressure or by automatic means (see 2.13.3.3), or is closed simultaneously with another door or car door/gate or both from one continuous-pressure means (see 2.13.3.2.3 and 2.13.3.2.4), the closing mechanism shall be designed and installed to conform to 2.13.4.2 and the reopening device shall be designed and installed to conform to 2.13.5.

2.13.4.2 Closing Mechanism

2.13.4.2.1 Kinetic Energy

(a) Where the hoistway door and the car door/gate are closed in such a manner that stopping either one manually will stop both, the kinetic energy of the closing door system shall be based upon the sum of the hoistway and the car door weights, as well as all parts rigidly connected thereto, including the rotational inertia effects of the door operator and the connecting transmission to the door panels.

(b) Where a reopening device conforming to 2.13.5 is used, the closing door system shall conform to the following requirements:

(1) The kinetic energy computed for the actual closing speed at any point in the Code zone distance defined by 2.13.4.2.2 shall not exceed 23 J (17 ft-lbf).

(2) The kinetic energy computed for the average closing speed as determined in accordance with 2.13.4.2.2 shall not exceed 10 J (7.37 ft-lbf).

(c) Where a reopening device is not used, or has been rendered inoperative (see 2.13.5), the closing door system shall conform to the following requirements:

(1) The kinetic energy computed for the actual closing speed at any point in the Code zone distance defined by 2.13.4.2.2 shall not exceed 8 J (6 ft-lbf).

(2) The kinetic energy computed for the average closing speed within the Code zone distance (see 2.13.4.2.2), or in any exposed opening width, including the last increment of door travel, shall not exceed 3.5 J (2.5 ft-lbf).

2.13.4.2.2 Door Travel in the Code Zone Distance

(a) For all side sliding doors using single or multiple speed panels, the Code zone distance shall be taken as the horizontal distance from a point 50 mm (2 in.) away from the open jamb to a point 50 mm (2 in.) away from the opposite jamb.

(b) For all center-opening sliding doors using single or multiple speed panels, the Code zone distance shall be taken as the horizontal distance from a point 25 mm (1 in.) away from the open jamb to a point 25 mm (1 in.) from the center meeting point of the doors.

(c) The average closing speed shall be determined by measuring the time required for the leading edge of the door to travel the Code zone distance.

2.13.4.2.3 Door Force. The force necessary to prevent closing of the hoistway door (or the car door or gate if power operated) from rest shall not exceed 135 N (30 lbf) (see 2.13.3.1). This force shall be measured on the leading edge of the door with the door at any point between one-third and two-thirds of its travel.

2.13.4.2.4 Data Plate. A data plate conforming to 2.16.3.3 shall be attached to the power door operator or to the car crosshead and shall contain the following information:

(*a*) minimum door closing time in seconds for the doors to travel the Code zone distance as specified in 2.13.4.2.2 corresponding to the kinetic energy limits specified in 2.13.4.2.1(b)(2)

(*b*) minimum door closing time in seconds for the doors to travel the Code zone distance as specified in 2.13.4.2.2 corresponding to the kinetic energy limits specified in 2.13.4.2.1(c)(2), if applicable [see 2.27.3.1.6(e)]

(*c*) where heavier hoistway doors are used at certain floors, the minimum door closing time in seconds corresponding to the kinetic energy limits specified in 2.13.4.2.1(b)(2) and 2.13.4.2.1(c)(2), if applicable, for the corresponding floors shall be included on the data plate

2.13.5 Reopening Device for Power-Operated Car Doors or Gates

2.13.5.1 Where required by 2.13.3.4 or 2.13.4, a power-operated car door shall be provided with a reopening device that will function to stop and reopen a car door and the adjacent landing door sufficiently to permit passenger transfer in the event that the car door or gate is obstructed while closing. If the closing kinetic energy is reduced to 3.5 J (2.5 ft-lbf) or less, the reopening device shall be permitted to be rendered inoperative. The reopening device used shall be effective for substantially the full vertical opening of the door (see 2.13.4.2).

2.13.5.2 For center-opening doors, the reopening device shall be so designed and installed that the obstruction of either door panel when closing will cause the reopening device to function.

2.13.5.3 For vertically sliding doors or gates, reopening devices shall respond to any obstruction within the width of the opening to a point 125 mm (5 in.) maximum from each side of the opening.

2.13.5.4 Where Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by a fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2.3) is not provided, door reopening devices that can be affected by smoke or flame shall be rendered inoperative after the doors have been held open for 20 s. Door closing for power-operated doors shall conform to 2.13.5.

2.13.6 Sequence Operation for Power-Operated Hoistway Doors With Car Doors or Gates

2.13.6.1 Where Required

2.13.6.1.1 Sequence opening and closing shall be provided between hoistway doors and car doors or gates on passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted to carry passengers (see 2.16.4) when the elevator is equipped with power-operated vertically sliding slide-up-to-open type car doors or gates and

(*a*) power-operated vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced hoistway doors; or

(*b*) power-operated vertically sliding counterweighted hoistway doors that slide down to open.

2.13.6.1.2 Sequence opening and/or closing shall be permitted for vertically sliding power-operated hoistway doors and car doors or gates that are closed by continuous pressure means.

2.13.6.2 Operating Requirements. The sequence operation of a hoistway door and adjacent power-operated vertically sliding car door or gate shall conform to 2.13.6.2.1 and 2.13.6.2.2.

2.13.6.2.1 In opening, the hoistway door shall be opened at least two-thirds of its travel before the car door or gate can start to open.

2.13.6.2.2 In closing, the car door or gate shall be closed at least two-thirds of its travel before the hoistway door can start to close.

SECTION 2.14
CAR ENCLOSURES, CAR DOORS AND GATES, AND CAR ILLUMINATION

2.14.1 Passenger and Freight Enclosures, General

2.14.1.1 Enclosure Required. Elevators shall be equipped with a car enclosure.

2.14.1.2 Securing of Enclosures

2.14.1.2.1 The enclosure shall be securely fastened to the car platform and so supported that it cannot loosen or become displaced in ordinary service, on the application of the car safety, on buffer engagement, or the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19).

2.14.1.2.2 The car enclosure shall be so constructed that removable portions cannot be dismantled from within the car.

2.14.1.2.3 Enclosure linings, decorative panels, light fixtures, suspended ceilings, and other apparatus or equipment attached within the car enclosure shall be securely fastened and so supported that they will not loosen or become displaced in ordinary service, on car safety application, or on buffer engagement.

2.14.1.2.4 Panels attached to the car enclosure for decorative or other purposes shall either

(*a*) not be unfastened from inside the car by the use of common tools; or

(*b*) be permitted to be removed from inside the car when perforations, exceeding that which would reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter, in the enclosure used for panel hanging or support have permanent means to prevent straight through passage beyond the running clearance.

2.14.1.3 Strength and Deflection of Enclosure Walls. The enclosure walls shall be designed and installed to withstand a force of 330 N (75 lbf) applied horizontally at any point on the walls of the enclosure without permanent deformation and so that the deflection will not reduce the running clearance below the minimum specified in 2.5.1, nor cause the deflection to exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

2.14.1.4 Number of Compartments in Passenger and Freight Elevator Cars. Cars shall not have more than two compartments. Where elevators have two compartments, one shall be located above the other, and the elevator shall conform to 2.14.1.4.1 through 2.14.1.4.6.

2.14.1.4.1 The elevator shall be used exclusively for passengers or exclusively for freight at any one time. If freight is to be carried in only one compartment, means shall be provided to lock the other compartment out of service.

2.14.1.4.2 Each compartment shall conform to the requirements of this Section, except that a trap door in the floor of the upper compartment shall provide access to the top emergency exit for the lower compartment.

2.14.1.4.3 Where either or both compartments are intended for passenger service, the minimum rated load for each compartment shall conform to 2.16.1.

Where one compartment is intended for freight use, its minimum rated load shall conform to 2.16.1 or shall be based on the freight loads to be handled, if greater than the minimum rated load required by 2.16.1.

Where both compartments are used exclusively for freight, the minimum rated load of each compartment shall conform to 2.16.2.

The rated load of the elevator shall be the sum of the rated loads of the individual compartments.

2.14.1.4.4 An emergency stop switch, where required by 2.26.2.5, shall be provided in each compartment, and these emergency stop switches shall be so connected that the car cannot run unless both are in the run position.

2.14.1.4.5 An in-car stop switch, where required by 2.26.2.21, shall be provided in each compartment, and these switches shall be so connected that the car cannot run unless both are in the run position.

2.14.1.4.6 All hoistway doors shall be closed and locked and the car doors for each compartment closed before the car can be operated.

2.14.1.5 Top Emergency Exits. An emergency exit with a cover shall be provided in the top of all elevator cars, except cars in partially enclosed hoistways (see 2.14.1.5.2).

2.14.1.5.1 Top emergency exits shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) The top emergency exit opening shall have an area of not less than 0.26 m^2 (400 $in.^2$) and shall measure not less than 400 mm (16 in.) on any side.

(b) The top emergency exit and suspended ceiling opening, if any, shall be so located as to provide a clear passageway, unobstructed by fixed equipment located in or on top of the car. Equipment is permitted directly above the exit opening, provided that

(1) it is not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.) above the top of the car; or

(2) the exit is located to allow unobstructed passage of a parallelepiped volume measuring 300 mm × 500 mm by 1 500 mm (12 in. × 20 in. by 59 in.) at an angle not less than 60 deg from the horizontal (see Nonmandatory Appendix C).

(c) The top emergency exit cover shall open outward. It shall be hinged or securely attached with a chain when in both the open and closed positions. If a chain is used, it shall be not more than 300 mm (12 in.) in length and have a factor of safety of not less than 5. The exit cover shall only be openable from the top of the car, where it shall be openable without the use of special tools. The exit cover of the lower compartment of a multideck elevator shall be openable from both compartments. On elevators with two compartments, if the emergency exit of the lower compartment does not open directly into the upper compartment, a guarded passageway shall be provided between the lower compartment roof and the upper compartment floor.

(d) The movable portion (exit panel) of the suspended ceiling that is below the top exit opening shall be restrained from falling. It shall be permitted to be hinged upward or downward, provided that the exit permits a clear opening with the top exit opening.

(1) A minimum clear headroom of 2 030 mm (80 in.) above the car floor shall be maintained when downward-swinging suspended ceiling exit panels are used.

(2) Upward-opening suspended ceiling exit panels shall be restrained from closing when in use and shall not diminish the clear opening area of the corresponding top exit opening.

(3) The movable portion and the fixed portion of a suspended ceiling shall not contain lamps that could be shattered by the rescue operation using the top emergency exit. The movable portion of the suspended ceiling shall be permitted to contain light fixtures connected to the stationary portion of the suspended ceiling wiring by means of a plug and socket or by flexible armored wiring. Flexible wiring shall not be used to support or restrain the exit opening in the suspended ceiling in the open position.

(e) Where elevators installed in enclosed hoistways are provided with special car top treatments such as domed or shrouded canopies, the exit shall be made accessible, including the car top refuge space as specified in 2.4.12.

(f) Immediately adjacent to the top emergency exit there shall be a space available for standing when the emergency exit cover is open. This space shall be permitted to include a portion of the refuge area (see 2.4.12). All exit covers shall be provided with a car top emergency exit electrical device (see 2.26.2.18) that will prevent operation of the elevator car if the exit cover is open more than 50 mm (2 in.), and the device shall be so designed that it

(1) is positively opened

(2) cannot be closed accidentally when the cover is removed

(3) must be manually reset from the top of the car and only after the cover is within 50 mm (2 in.) of the fully closed position

(4) shall be protected against mechanical damage

2.14.1.5.2 On elevators in partially enclosed hoistways, means shall be provided to facilitate emergency evacuation of passengers. Such means shall not require a top emergency exit. A top emergency exit shall be permitted.

2.14.1.6 Car Enclosure Tops. Tops of car enclosures shall be so designed and installed as to be capable of sustaining a load of 135 kg (300 lb) on any area 600 mm × 600 mm (24 in. × 24 in.), or 45 kg (100 lb) applied to any point, without permanent deformation. The resulting deflection under these loads shall be limited to prevent damage to any equipment, devices, or lighting assemblies fastened to or adjacent to the car enclosure top.

2.14.1.7 Railing and Equipment on Top of Cars

(05S) **2.14.1.7.1** A standard railing conforming to 2.10.2 shall be provided on the outside perimeter of the car top on all sides where the perpendicular distance between the edges of the car top and the adjacent hoistway enclosure exceeds 300 mm (12 in.) horizontal clearance. The forces specified in 2.10.2.4 shall not deflect the railing beyond the perimeter of the car top.

The top-of-car enclosure, or other surface specified by the elevator installer, shall be the working surface referred to in 2.10.2.

2.14.1.7.2 A working platform or equipment that is not required for the operation of the elevator or its appliances, except where specifically provided herein, shall not be located above the top of an elevator car.

2.14.1.7.3 Devices that detect unauthorized access to the top of the car shall be permitted. These devices shall only be permitted to initiate an alarm. Audible alarms shall not exceed 90 dBA measured 1 m from the source.

2.14.1.8 Glass in Elevator Cars

2.14.1.8.1 Where enclosures include panels of glass, or transparent or translucent plastic, the panels shall

(a) be constructed of laminated glass that complies with the requirements of 16 CFR Part 1201, Sections 1201.1 and 1201.2; or be constructed of laminated glass, safety glass, or safety plastic that comply with CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, or CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable (see Part 9)

(b) be provided with a handrail or framing designed to guard the opening should the panel become detached, where wall panels are wider than 300 mm (12 in.)

(c) be mounted in the structure so that the assembly shall withstand the required elevator tests without damage (see 2.14.1.2)

2.14.1.8.2 Glass used for lining walls or ceilings shall conform to 2.14.1.8.1(a) and (c), except that tempered glass shall be permitted, provided that

(a) it conforms to ANSI Z97.1, 16 CFR Part 1201, Sections 1201.1 and 1201.2, or CAN/CGSB-12.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9)

(b) the glass is not subjected to further treatment such as sandblasting, etching, heat treatment, painting, etc., that could alter the original properties of the glass

(c) the glass is bonded to a nonpolymeric coating, sheeting, or film backing having a physical integrity to hold the fragments when the glass breaks

(d) the glass is tested and conforms to the acceptance criteria for laminated glass as specified in ANSI Z97.1, or 16 CFR Part 1201, Section 1201.4, or CAN/CGSB-12.11, whichever is applicable (see Part 9)

2.14.1.8.3 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, type 3C film reinforced silvered mirror glass that conforms to CAN/CGSB-12.5 shall be permitted for lining walls or ceilings.

2.14.1.8.4 Markings as specified in the applicable glazing standard shall be on each separate piece, and shall remain visible after installation.

2.14.1.9 Equipment Inside Cars

2.14.1.9.1 Apparatus or equipment not used in connection with the function or use of the elevator shall not be installed inside of any elevator car, except as follows:

(a) Support rails (handrails) are permitted.

(b) Fastening devices for padded protective linings are permitted.

(c) Lift hooks, conveyor tracks, and support beams for freight handling, mounted in the ceiling of passenger elevator, shall clear the car floor to a height of 2 450 mm (96 in.) (see 2.16.9).

(d) Picture frames, graphic display boards, plaques, and other similar visual displays shall be mounted to withstand the required elevator tests without damage. All edges shall be beveled or rounded. The material shall conform to 2.14.1.2 and 2.14.2.1. When attached to the car wall less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) above the floor,

projections from the car wall, excluding support rails, shall not be greater than 38 mm (1.5 in.).

(e) Conveyor tracks shall be permitted in freight elevators cars.

(f) Heating equipment, ventilating fans, and air-conditioning equipment, if used, shall be securely fastened in place and located above the car ceiling or outside the enclosure.

2.14.1.9.2 Passenger car floors shall have no projections or depressions greater than 6 mm (0.25 in.).

2.14.1.10 Side Emergency Exits. Side emergency exits are prohibited.

2.14.2 Passenger-Car Enclosures

2.14.2.1 Material for Car Enclosures, Enclosure Linings, and Floor Coverings. All materials exposed to the car interior and the hoistway shall be metal, glass, or shall conform to 2.14.2.1.1 through 2.14.2.1.6.

(ED) **2.14.2.1.1** Materials in their end-use configuration, other than those covered by 2.14.2.1.2 through 2.14.2.1.6 shall conform to the following requirements, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 84, ANSI/UL 723, NFPA 252, or CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable:

(a) flame spread rating of 0 to 75

(b) smoke development of 0 to 450

(07) **2.14.2.1.2** In jursidictions enforcing the NBCC, where the building is designated by the building code as a high building, materials in their end-use configuration shall have

(a) a flame spread rating for walls and ceiling of 0 to 25 with smoke development of 0 to 100 based on the test conducted in accordance with the requirements of CAN/ULC-S102

(b) a flame spread rating for floor surfaces of 0 to 300 with smoke development of 0 to 300, based on the test conducted in accordance with the requirements of CAN/ULC-S102.2

(ED) **2.14.2.1.3** Napped, tufted, woven, looped, and similar materials in their end-use configuration on car enclosure walls shall conform to 8.3.7 or the NBCC and NFCC, whichever is applicable. The enclosure walls to which this material is attached shall conform to 2.14.2.1.1.

2.14.2.1.4 Padded protective linings, for temporary use in passenger cars during the handling of freight, shall be of materials conforming to either 2.14.2.1.1 or 2.14.2.1.3, whichever is applicable. The protective lining shall clear the floor by not less than 100 mm (4 in.).

2.14.2.1.5 Floor covering, underlayment, and its adhesive shall have a critical radiant flux of not less than 0.45 W/cm^2, as measured by ASTM E 648 or conform to the requirements of the NBCC and ULC standard CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable.

2.14.2.1.6 Handrails, operating devices, ventilating devices, signal fixtures, audio and visual communication devices, and their housings are not required to conform to 2.14.2.1.1 through 2.14.2.1.4.

2.14.2.2 Openings Prohibited. Openings or hinged or removable panels in an enclosure are prohibited, other than as required for the following:

(a) signal, operating, and communication equipment

(b) entrances

(c) vision panels

(d) top emergency exit

(e) ventilation

(f) access panels for cleaning of glass on observation elevators (see 2.14.2.6) (05S)

(g) equipment access panels for maintenance and inspection of equipment shall conform to the following requirements (see also 2.7.5.1.4): (05S)

(1) be of hinged type.

(2) open only into the car.

(3) be provided with a lock so arranged that the door shall be openable from inside the car only by a specially shaped removable key. Locks shall be so designed that they cannot be opened from the inside by the use of ordinary tools or instruments. Keys shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

(4) be provided with electric contacts that conform to 2.14.4.2.3(b) through (e) and 2.26.2.35, and are located so as to be inaccessible from the inside of the car. When opened, the contact shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake.

(5) be of the same material and construction as required for the enclosure.

2.14.2.3 Ventilation

2.14.2.3.1 Natural ventilation openings conforming to the following shall be provided in car enclosures:

(a) Openings exposed to the inside of the car shall not be located in the portion of the enclosure walls extending from a point 300 mm (12 in.) above the floor to a point 1 825 mm (72 in.) above the floor.

(b) Openings less than 300 mm (12 in.) above the floor shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and be guarded to prevent straight-through passage.

(c) Openings above the 1 825 mm (72 in.) level shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter and be guarded to prevent straight-through passage.

(d) Openings in the car ceiling shall be protected and shall conform to 2.14.1.6.

(e) The total area of natural ventilation openings shall be not less than 3.5% of the inside car floor area divided equally between the bottom and top of the car enclosure.

(f) The total unrestricted opening in or around the car doors or gates shall be permitted to be included as part of the total natural ventilation required.

(g) The unrestricted opening provided by forced ventilation systems shall be permitted to be part of the natural ventilation area on the part of the car in which it is located.

2.14.2.3.2 Ventilating fans or blowers, if used, shall be located above the car ceiling or outside the enclosure and shall be securely fastened in place.

2.14.2.3.3 Forced ventilation conforming to the following shall be provided on observation elevators with glass walls exposed to direct sunlight:

(a) There shall be a minimum air handling capacity to provide one air change per minute based on net inside car volume.

(b) An auxiliary power source capable of providing the minimum air handling capacity for a continuous period of at least 1 h shall be provided on each elevator car.

NOTE (2.14.2.3.3): Special consideration should be given to elevators such as observation and parking garage elevators, when they are exposed to the elements. In extreme cases, emergency power may be required for this purpose.

2.14.2.4 Headroom in Elevator Cars. A minimum clear headroom of 2 025 mm (80 in.) above the car floor shall be provided.

2.14.2.5 Vision Panels. Vision panels are not required, but where used, shall

(a) be of a total area of not more than 0.1 m^2 (155 $in.^2$) and contain no single glass panel having a width exceeding 150 mm (6 in.)

(b) be provided with wire-glass panels or laminated-glass panels conforming to 16 CFR Part 1201 or CAN/CGSB-12.11, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Markings as specified in the applicable standard shall be on each separate piece of laminated glass, and shall remain visible after installation.

(c) be located in the car door or in the front return panel of the car enclosure

(d) have the inside face of a car door vision panel, grille, or cover located substantially flush with the inside surface of the car door

(e) have fasteners that are located on the hoistway side. It shall not be possible to remove the fasteners with common tools.

2.14.2.6 Access Panels. Nonremovable sliding or swing panels shall be permitted for access to the car or hoistway transparent enclosures for cleaning purposes. Such panels or doors shall

(a) if hinged, open only into the car

(b) be provided with cylinder-type locks, having not less than a five-pin or a five-disc combination, or a lock that provides equivalent security, arranged so that they can be unlocked with a key from the car side, and the key shall be Group 2 Security (see 8.1)

(c) be openable by hand from the hoistway side

(d) be self-locking

(e) be provided with a device arranged so that the panel must be in the closed and locked position (see 2.26.2.31) before the elevator can operate

(f) have a bottom edge a minimum of 1 070 mm (42 in.) from the floor in cases where the adjacent hoistway wall is more than 140 mm (5.5 in.) from the car enclosure or where there is no adjacent hoistway wall

2.14.3 Freight-Car Enclosure

2.14.3.1 Enclosure Material. Enclosures shall be of metal without perforations to a height of not less than 1 825 mm (72 in.) above the floor.

Above the 1 825 mm (72 in.) level, the walls and top of the enclosure shall be metal with or without perforations, except that portion of the enclosure wall in front of and extending 150 mm (6 in.) on each side of the counterweight, that shall be without perforations.

Perforated portions of enclosures shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

Freight elevators that are permitted to carry passengers (see 2.16.4) shall conform to 2.14.2.2.

2.14.3.2 Openings in Car Tops. Hinged or removable panels shall not be provided in car tops, except those required for emergency exit, and for equipment access (see 2.7.5.1.4). (05S)

2.14.3.3 Ventilation. If ventilating grilles or louvers are provided in the enclosure below the 1 825 mm (72 in.) level, they shall be located not more than 300 mm (12 in.) above the floor and shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

2.14.4 Passenger and Freight Car Doors and Gates, General Requirements

2.14.4.1 Where Required. A door shall be provided at each entrance to a passenger car and a door or gate shall be provided at each entrance to a freight car.

2.14.4.2 Door and Gate Electric Contacts and Door Interlocks

2.14.4.2.1 Each car door or gate shall be provided with a door or gate electric contact conforming to 2.26.2.15, 2.14.4.2.3, and 2.14.4.2.5, or a car door interlock conforming to 2.26.2.28, 2.14.4.2.4, and 2.14.4.2.5.

2.14.4.2.2 A car door interlock shall be required for

(a) car doors of elevators where the clearance between the loading side of the car platform and hoistway enclosure exceeds the maximum specified in 2.5.1.5

(b) car doors of elevators that face an unenclosed portion of the hoistway during the travel of the car

2.14.4.2.3 Car door and gate electric contacts shall

(a) prevent operation of the driving machine when the car door or gate is not in the closed position, except under one of the following conditions:

(1) when a hoistway access switch is operated (see 2.12.7)

(2) when a car-leveling or truck-zoning device is operated (see 2.26.1.6)

(3) when a bypass switch is activated (see 2.26.1.5)

(b) be positively opened by a lever or other device attached to and operated by the door or gate

(c) be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by positive mechanical means

(d) be so designed or located that they shall not be accessible from within the car

(e) not utilize mercury tube switches

2.14.4.2.4 Car door interlocks shall

(a) prevent operation of the driving machine when the car door is not in the closed and locked position, except

(1) when the car is within the unlocking zone for that entrance

(2) under the conditions specified in 2.14.4.2.3(a)

(b) prevent opening of the car door from within the car, except when the car is in the unlocking zone for that entrance

(c) hold the car door in the locked position by means of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both, or by means of a positive linkage

(d) be so located that they are not accessible from within the car when the car doors are closed

(e) be designed in accordance with 2.12.2.4

2.14.4.2.5 Each type and make of car door electric contact, car gate electric contact, and car door interlock shall

(a) be type tested in conformance with 2.12.4.1

(b) be listed/certified in conformance with 2.12.4.2

(c) be marked in conformance with 2.12.4.3

2.14.4.3 Type and Material for Doors. Doors shall be of the horizontally or vertically sliding type and of material conforming to 2.14.2.1.

2.14.4.4 Type of Gates. Gates, where permitted, shall be of the horizontally sliding or vertically sliding type, conforming to 2.14.4.7, 2.14.5, and 2.14.6.

2.14.4.5 Location

2.14.4.5.1 Doors or gates for automatic or continuous-pressure operation elevators, except freight elevators equipped with horizontally swinging doors and not accessible to the general public, located in factories, warehouses, garages, and similar buildings, shall be so located that the distance from the face of the car door or gate to the face of the hoistway door shall be not more than the following:

(a) where a swinging-type hoistway door and a car gate are used, 100 mm (4 in.)

(b) where a swinging-type hoistway door and a car door are used, 140 mm (5.5 in.)

(c) where a sliding-type hoistway door and a car door or gate are used, 140 mm (5.5 in.)

(d) on freight elevators that are equipped with horizontally swinging doors and that are not accessible to the general public (i.e., located in factories, warehouses, garages, and similar buildings), the distance specified in 2.14.4.5.1(a), (b), and (c) shall be not more than 165 mm (6.5 in.)

2.14.4.5.2 The distances specified shall be measured as follows:

(a) where a multisection car door and multisection hoistway door are used, or where one of these doors is multisection and the other is single section, between the sections of the car door and the hoistway door nearest to each other

(b) where a multisection car door and a swinging-type hoistway door are used, between the hoistway door and the section of the car door farthest from it

(c) where a car gate is used, between the car gate and that section of the hoistway door nearest to the car gate

2.14.4.6 Strength of Doors, Gates, and Their Guides, Guide Shoes, Tracks, and Hangers. Doors and gates and their guides, guide shoes, tracks, and hangers shall be so designed, constructed, and installed that when the fully closed door or gate is subjected to a force of 335 N (75 lbf), applied on an area 300 mm (12 in.) square at right angles to and approximately at the center of the door or gate, it will not deflect beyond the line of the car sill.

When subjected to a force of 1 100 N (250 lbf) similarly applied, doors and vertically sliding gates shall not break or be permanently deformed and shall not be displaced from their guides or tracks.

Where multisection doors or gates are used, each panel shall withstand the forces specified.

2.14.4.7 Vertically Sliding Doors and Gates. Vertically sliding doors or gates shall conform to 2.14.4.7.1 through 2.14.4.7.5.

2.14.4.7.1 They shall be of the balanced counterweighted type or the biparting counterbalanced type.

2.14.4.7.2 Gates shall be constructed of wood or metal, and shall be of a design that will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter, except that if multisection vertical lift gates are used, the panel shall be designed to reject a ball 10 mm (0.375 in.) in diameter.

2.14.4.7.3 Doors shall be constructed of material conforming to 2.14.2.1.

2.14.4.7.4 Doors or gates shall guard the full width of the car entrance openings, and their height shall conform to 2.14.5.4 or 2.14.6.2.3.

2.14.4.7.5 Balanced counterweighted doors or gates shall be either single or multiple section, and shall slide either up or down to open, conforming to 2.14.5.3 and 2.14.6.2.

2.14.4.8 Weights for Closing or Balancing Doors or Gates. Weights used to close or balance doors or gates shall be located outside the car enclosure and shall be guided or restrained to prevent them from coming out of their runway.

The bottom of the guides or other restraining means shall be so constructed as to retain the weights if the weight suspension means breaks.

Weights that extend beyond the hoistway side of the car door or gate guide rail shall be guarded to prevent accidental contact.

2.14.4.9 Factor of Safety for Suspension Members. Suspension members of vertically sliding car doors or gates, and of weights used with car doors or gates, shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5. At least two independent suspension means shall be provided so that the failure of one suspension means shall not permit the car doors or gates to fall; or a safety device shall be provided to prevent the doors or gates from falling, if the suspension means fails.

2.14.4.10 Power-Operated and Power-Opened or Power-Closed Doors or Gates. The operation of power-operated and power-opened or power-closed doors or gates shall conform to 2.13.

2.14.4.11 Closed Position of Car Doors or Gates. Car doors or gates shall be considered to be in the closed position under the following conditions:

(a) for horizontally sliding doors or gates, when the clear open space between the leading edge of the door or gate and the nearest face of the jamb does not exceed 50 mm (2 in.) except where car doors are provided with a car door interlock(s), 10 mm (0.375 in.)

(b) for vertically sliding counterweighted doors or gates, when the clear open space between the leading edge of the door or gate and the car platform sill does not exceed 50 mm (2 in.)

(c) for horizontally sliding center-opening doors, or vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced doors, when the door panels are within 50 mm (2 in.) of contact with each other, except where horizontally sliding center-opening car doors are provided with a car door interlock(s), 10 mm (0.375 in.)

2.14.5 Passenger Car Doors

2.14.5.1 Number of Entrances Permitted. There shall be not more than two entrances to the car, except in existing buildings where structural conditions make additional entrances necessary.

2.14.5.2 Type Required. Horizontally or vertically sliding doors subject to the restrictions of 2.14.5.3 shall be provided at each car entrance.

2.14.5.3 Vertically Sliding Doors. Vertically sliding doors shall be

(a) of the balanced counterweighted type that slide in the up direction to open

(b) power operated where facing a power-operated vertically sliding counterbalanced or a vertically sliding-down-to-open hoistway door

2.14.5.4 Dimensions of Doors. Doors, when in the fully closed position, shall protect the full width and height of the car entrance opening.

2.14.5.5 Openings in Doors. There shall be no openings in doors, except where vision panels are used.

2.14.5.6 Door Panels

2.14.5.6.1 Door panels shall have a flush surface on the side exposed to the car interior. The panels shall have no area or molding depressed or raised more than 3 mm (0.125 in.) and areas raised or depressed shall be beveled at not more than 30 deg to the panel surface.

2.14.5.6.2 Panels shall overlap the top and sides of the car entrance opening by not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) when in the closed position.

2.14.5.6.3 The vertical clearance between a panel and the sill, or in the case of a vertically sliding door the vertical clearance between the leading edge and the sill, shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.) when in the fully closed position.

2.14.5.6.4 The horizontal clearance shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.) for horizontally sliding panels and 25 mm (1 in.) for vertically sliding panels between

(a) the car side of a panel and the related car entrance jamb

(b) related panels of multispeed entrances

(c) the car side of the panel and the related car head jamb

2.14.5.6.5 The leading edges of doors shall be free of sharp projections.

2.14.5.6.6 The meeting panel edges of center-opening entrances shall be protected with not less than one resilient male member extending the full height of the panel. The meeting edges shall be permitted to interlock by not more than 10 mm (0.375 in.). When in the closed position, the distance between the metal parts of the meeting panels shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.14.5.6.7 The clearance between the leading edge of the trailing panel of multiple-speed panels and the jamb shall not exceed

(a) 13 mm (0.5 in.) for horizontal slide
(b) 25 mm (1 in.) for vertical slide

2.14.5.7 Manual Opening of Car Doors. Car doors shall be so arranged that when the car is stopped within the unlocking zone (see 2.12.5.3) and power to the door operator is cut off, they and the mechanically related hoistway door, if any, shall be movable by hand from inside the car. The force required at the edge of sliding doors to move them shall not exceed 330 N (75 lbf).

2.14.5.8 Glass in Car Doors

2.14.5.8.1 Vision panels, where provided, shall conform to 2.14.2.5.

2.14.5.8.2 Glass doors, where provided, shall conform to the following requirements:

(05S) (a) The glass shall be laminated glass conforming to the requirements of 16 CFR Part 1201, or be laminated glass, safety glass, or safety plastic conforming to the requirements of CAN/CGSB-12.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Markings as specified shall be on each separate piece, and shall remain visible after installation.

(b) The glass shall be not less than 60% of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the car side of the doors. Door lap shall not be used in calculating glass size.

(c) In power-operated doors, the glass panel shall be substantially flush with the surface of the car side of the door.

(d) The glass shall conform to the applicable strength requirements of 2.14.4.6.

(e) The glass shall be so mounted that it, and its mounting structure, will withstand the required elevator tests without becoming damaged or dislodged.

(f) A nonglass edge shall be provided on the leading edge of the door panel.

2.14.6 Freight Elevator Car Doors and Gates

2.14.6.1 Type of Gates

2.14.6.1.1 For elevators designed for Class A loading (see 2.16.2.2), car gates shall be either of the vertically sliding type (see 2.14.6.2) or the horizontally sliding collapsible type (see 2.14.6.3).

2.14.6.1.2 For elevators designed for Class B or Class C loading (see 2.16.2.2), car gates shall be of the vertically sliding type (see 2.14.6.2).

2.14.6.2 Vertically Sliding Doors and Gates

2.14.6.2.1 On elevators used exclusively for freight, car doors and gates shall be either of the balanced counterweighted type that slide up or down to open, or of the biparting counterbalanced type. They shall be manually operated or power operated.

2.14.6.2.2 Where used on freight elevators permitted to carry passengers (see 2.16.4), car doors shall conform to 2.14.5.

2.14.6.2.3 Car doors and gates shall protect the full width of the car entrance opening, and their height shall be determined as follows:

(a) car doors and gates shall extend from a point not more than 25 mm (1 in.) above the car floor to a point not less than 1 825 mm (72 in.) above the car floor

(b) where a vertically sliding car gate with a door reopening device is provided, the 25 mm (1 in.) maximum dimension specified shall be measured from the car floor to the bottom of the leading member

2.14.6.2.4 The horizontal clearance between the car side of a panel and the related car entrance jamb or between related panels of multispeed doors or gates shall not exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

2.14.6.3 Collapsible-Type Gates

2.14.6.3.1 Collapsible-type gates shall protect the full width of the car entrance opening, and they shall extend from the car floor to a height of not less than 1 825 mm (72 in.) when fully closed.

2.14.6.3.2 When in the fully closed (extended) position, the opening between vertical members shall not be more than 115 mm (4.5 in.).

2.14.6.3.3 Every vertical member shall be restricted from moving perpendicular to the direction of travel more than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

2.14.6.3.4 They shall not be power opened, except as permitted by 2.13.2.1.2.

2.14.6.3.5 When in the fully opened (collapsed) position, collapsible gates shall be permitted to be arranged to swing inward.

2.14.6.3.6 Handles of manually operated collapsible gates nearest the car operating device on elevators operated from the car only shall be so located that the nearest handle is not more than 1 225 mm (48 in.) from the car operating device when the gate is closed (extended position), and not more than 1 225 mm (48 in.) above the car floor. Gate handles shall be provided with finger guards.

2.14.7 Illumination of Cars and Lighting Fixtures

2.14.7.1 Illumination and Outlets Required. Cars shall be provided with an electric light or lights conforming to 2.14.7.1.1 through 2.14.7.1.4.

2.14.7.1.1 Not less than two lamps shall be provided.

2.14.7.1.2 The minimum illumination at the car threshold, with the door closed, shall be not less than

(a) 50 lx (5 fc) for passenger elevators

(b) 25 lx (2.5 fc) for freight elevators

(05S) **2.14.7.1.3** Each elevator shall be provided with auxiliary lighting having its power source located on the car. It shall conform to the following:

(07) (a) The intensity of auxiliary lighting illumination shall be not less than 2 lx (0.2 fc), measured at any point between 1 225 mm (48 in.) and 890 mm (35 in.) above the car floor and approximately 300 mm (12 in.) centered horizontally in front of a car operating panel containing any of the following:

(1) car operating device(s)
(2) door open button
(3) rear or side door open button
(4) door close button
(5) rear or side door close button
(6) "HELP" button and operating instructions, or
(7) "ALARM" switch

(b) Illumination is not required in front of additional car operating panels where the devices listed in 2.14.7.1.3(a) are duplicated.

(c) Auxiliary lights shall be automatically turned on in all elevators in service after normal car lighting power fails.

(d) The power system shall be capable of maintaining the light intensity specified in 2.14.7.1.3(a) for a period of at least 4 h.

(e) Not less than two lamps of approximately equal wattage shall be used.

(f) Battery-operated units, where provided, shall

(1) comply with CSA C22.2 No. 141 (see Section 4)
(2) have a 4 h rating minimum
(3) be permanently connected to the car light branch circuit
(4) have an output rating that includes the auxiliary lights and if connected, the emergency signaling device (see 2.27.1.1.3)

(07) **2.14.7.1.4** Each elevator shall be provided with lighting and a duplex receptacle fixture on the car top. The lighting shall be permanently connected, fixed, or portable, or a combination thereof, to provide an illumination level of not less than 100 lx (10 fc) measured at the point of any elevator part or equipment, where maintenance or inspection is to be performed from the car top. All lighting shall be eqiuipped with guards. The light switch shall be accessible from the landing when accessing the car top.

2.14.7.2 Light Control Switches

2.14.7.2.1 Light control switches for in-car lighting shall be permitted. When provided, they shall

(a) be located in or adjacent to the operating device in the car.

(b) in elevators having automatic operation, be of the key-operated type or located in a fixture with a locked cover. The key shall be Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

2.14.7.2.2 Automatic operation of the car lights shall be permitted. When provided, the operating circuit shall be arranged to turn off the lights only when the following conditions exist for not less than 5 min:

(a) the car is at a floor
(b) the doors are closed
(c) there is no demand for service
(d) the car is on automatic operation

Momentary interruption of any of the above conditions shall cause the car lights to turn on.

2.14.7.3 Car Lighting Devices

2.14.7.3.1 Glass used for lighting fixtures shall conform to 2.14.1.8.

2.14.7.3.2 Suspended glass used in lighting fixtures shall be supported by a metal frame secured at not less than three points.

2.14.7.3.3 Fastening devices shall not be removable from the fixture.

2.14.7.3.4 Glass shall not be drilled for attachment.

2.14.7.3.5 Light troughs supporting wiring raceways and other auxiliary lighting equipment, where used, shall be of metal, except where lined with noncombustible materials.

2.14.7.3.6 Materials for light diffusion or transmission shall be of metal, glass, or materials conforming to 2.14.2.1.1 and shall not come in contact with light bulbs and tubes.

2.14.7.4 Protection of Light Bulbs and Tubes. Light bulbs and tubes within the car shall

(a) be equipped with guards, be recessed, or be mounted above a drop ceiling to prevent accidental breakage. Cars that operate with the drop ceiling removed shall have a permanent separate guard for the light bulb or tube.

(b) be so mounted in the structure that the structure and the bulb or tube will withstand the required elevator tests without being damaged or becoming dislodged.

SECTION 2.15
CAR FRAMES AND PLATFORMS

2.15.1 Car Frames Required

Every elevator shall have a car frame (see 1.3).

2.15.2 Guiding Members

Car frames shall be guided on each guide rail by upper and lower guiding members attached to the frame.

Retention means shall be provided to prevent the car from being displaced by more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) from its normal running position should any part of the guiding means fail, excluding the guiding member base and its attachment to the frame. The retention means shall be permitted to be integral with the base.

2.15.3 Design of Car Frames and Guiding Members

The frame and its guiding members shall be designed to withstand the forces resulting under the loading conditions for which the elevator is designed and installed (see 2.16).

2.15.4 Underslung or Sub-Post Frames

The vertical distance between the centerlines of the top and bottom guide shoes of an elevator car having a sub-post car frame or having an underslung car frame located entirely below the car platform shall be not less than 40% of the distance between guide rails.

2.15.5 Car Platforms

2.15.5.1 Every elevator car shall have a platform consisting of a nonperforated floor attached to a platform frame supported by the car frame, and extending over the entire area within the car enclosure.

2.15.5.2 The platform frame members and the floor shall be designed to withstand the forces developed under the loading conditions for which the elevator is designed and installed.

2.15.5.3 Platform frames are not required where laminated platforms are provided.

2.15.5.4 Laminated platforms shall be permitted to be used for passenger elevators having a rated load of 2 300 kg (5,000 lb) or less.

2.15.5.5 The deflection at any point of a laminated platform, when uniformly loaded to rated capacity, shall not exceed $\frac{1}{960}$ of the span. The stresses in the steel facing shall not exceed one-fifth of its ultimate strength, and the stresses in the plywood core shall not exceed 60% of the allowable stresses in Section 3.14 of the American Plywood Association Plywood Design Specification or CSA O86.1, as applicable (see Part 9).

2.15.6 Materials for Car Frames and Platform Frames

2.15.6.1 Materials Permitted. Materials used in the construction of car frames and platforms shall conform to 2.15.6.1.1 through 2.15.6.1.4.

2.15.6.1.1 Car frames and outside members of platform frames shall be made of steel or other metals.

2.15.6.1.2 Platform stringers of freight elevators designed for Class B or Class C loading shall be of steel or other metals.

2.15.6.1.3 Platform stringers of passenger elevators and of freight elevators designed for Class A loading shall be made of steel or other metals, or of wood.

2.15.6.1.4 Cast iron shall not be used for any part subject to tension, torsion, or bending, except for guiding supports and guide shoes.

2.15.6.2 Requirements for Steel. Steel used in the construction of car frames and platforms shall conform to 2.15.6.2.1 through 2.15.6.2.3.

2.15.6.2.1 Car-Frame and Platform-Frame Members. Steel shall be rolled, formed, forged, or cast, conforming to the requirements of the following specifications:

(a) *Rolled and Formed Steel.* ASTM A 36 or ASTM A 283 Grade D or CAN/CSA-G40.21.

(b) *Forged Steel.* ASTM A 668 Class B.

(c) *Cast Steel.* ASTM A 27 Grade 60/30.

2.15.6.2.2 Rivets, Bolts, and Rods. Steel used for rivets, bolts, and rods shall conform to the following specifications:

(a) ASTM A 502, Rivets

(b) ASTM A 307, Bolts and Rods

2.15.6.2.3 Steels of Other Strength. Steels of greater or lesser strength than those specified by 2.15.6.2.1 shall be permitted to be used, provided they have an elongation of not less than 20% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 8, and provided that the stresses and deflections conform to 2.15.10 and 2.15.11, respectively.

Rivets, bolts, and rods made of steel having greater strength than specified by ASTM A 307 and ASTM A 502 shall be permitted to be used and the maximum allowable stresses increased proportionally, based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths. Elongation shall conform to the requirements of the corresponding ASTM specifications.

2.15.6.3 Requirements for Metals Other Than Steel. Metals other than steel shall be permitted to be used in the construction of car frames and platforms, provided the metal used has the essential properties to meet all the requirements for the purpose in accordance with good engineering practice, and provided the stresses and deflections conform to 2.15.10 and 2.15.11, respectively.

2.15.6.4 Requirements for Wood Used for Platform Floors and Stringers. Wood used for platform stringers and platform floors and sub-floors shall be of structural quality lumber or exterior-type plywood conforming to the requirements of the following:

(a) ASTM D 245, Structural Grades of Lumber

(b) ASTM D 198, Static Tests of Structural Timbers

(c) ANSI Voluntary Product Standard PS 1-74 or CSA O151, Softwood Plywood, Construction and Industrial

2.15.7 Car Frame and Platform Connections

2.15.7.1 Internal Connections. Connections between members of car frames and platforms shall be riveted, bolted, or welded, and shall conform to 2.15.7.3.

2.15.7.2 Connection Between Car Frame and Platform. The attachment of the platform to the car frame shall be done in accordance with good engineering practice and shall develop the required strength to transmit the forces safely from the platform to the car frame in accordance with 2.15.10. Bolts, nuts, and welding, where used, shall conform to 2.15.7.3.

2.15.7.3 Bolts, Nuts, and Welding

2.15.7.3.1 Bolts, where used through greater than 5 deg sloping flanges of structural members, shall have bolt heads of the tipped-head type or shall be fitted with bevelled washers.

2.15.7.3.2 Nuts used on greater than 5 deg sloping flanges of structural members shall sit on beveled washers.

2.15.7.3.3 All welding shall conform to 8.8.

2.15.8 Protection of Platforms Against Fire

All platform materials exposed to the hoistway shall be either of the following:

(a) metal

(b) other materials that, in their end-use configuration, conform to the following requirements, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 84, UL 723, NFPA 255, or CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable (see Part 9):

(1) flame spread rating of 0 to 75

(2) smoke development of 0 to 450

2.15.9 Platform Guards (Aprons)

The entrance side of the platform of passenger and freight elevators shall be provided with smooth metal guard plates of not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) thick steel, or material of equivalent strength and stiffness, adequately reinforced and braced to the car platform and conforming to 2.15.9.1 through 2.15.9.4.

2.15.9.1 The guard plate shall extend not less than the full width of the widest hoistway-door opening.

2.15.9.2 The guard plate shall have a straight vertical face, extending below the floor surface of the platform, conforming to one of the following:

(a) where the elevator is required to conform to 2.19.2.2(b) the depth of the truck zone, where provided, plus 75 mm (3 in.), but in no case less than 1 220 mm (48 in.)

(b) where the elevator is not required to conform to 2.19.2.2(b) the depth of the leveling zone or truck zone, where provided, plus 75 mm (3 in.), but in no case less than 525 mm (21 in.)

2.15.9.3 The lower portion of the guard shall be bent back at an angle of not less than 60 deg nor more than 75 deg from the horizontal.

2.15.9.4 The guard plate shall be securely braced and fastened in place to withstand a constant force of not less than 650 N (145 lbf) applied at right angles to and at any position on its face without deflecting more than 6 mm (0.25 in.), and without permanent deformation.

Where the car entrance on the truck loading side is provided with a collapsible-type gate and the height of the hoistway door opening is greater than the distance from the car floor to the car top, a head guard extending the full width of the door opening shall be provided on the car to close the space between the car top and the soffit of the hoistway-door opening when the car platform is level with the floor at the truck loading landing entrance.

2.15.10 Maximum Allowable Stresses in Car Frame and Platform Members and Connections

2.15.10.1 The stresses in car frame and platform members and their connections, based on the static load imposed upon them, shall not exceed the following:

(a) for steels meeting the requirements of 2.15.6.2.1 and 2.15.6.2.2, as listed in Table 2.15.10.1

(b) for steels of greater or lesser strength, as permitted by 2.15.6.2.3, the allowable stresses listed in Table 2.15.10.1 are to be adjusted proportionally, based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths

(c) for metals other than steel, as permitted by 2.15.6.3, the allowable stresses listed in Table 2.15.10.1 are to be adjusted proportionally, based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths

2.15.10.2 Car frame members, brackets, and their connections subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19.4) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of the emergency braking so that the resulting stresses due to the emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall not exceed 190 MPa (27,500 psi).

2.15.11 Maximum Allowable Deflections of Car Frame and Platform Members

The deflections of car frame and platform members based on the static load imposed upon them shall be not more than the following:

(a) for crosshead, plank, and platform frame members, $\frac{1}{960}$ of the span

(b) for uprights (stiles), as determined by 8.2.2.5.3

2.15.12 Car Frames With Sheaves

Where a hoisting-rope sheave is mounted on the car frame, the construction shall conform to 2.15.12.1 through 2.15.12.3.

Table 2.15.10.1 Maximum Allowable Stresses in Car Frame and Platform Members and Connections, for Steels Specified in 2.15.6.2.1 and 2.15.6.2.2

Member Type	Stress Type	Maximum Stress, MPa (psi)	Area Basis
Car crosshead	Bending	95 (14,000)	Gross section
Car frame plank (normal loading)	Bending	95 (14,000)	Gross section
Car frame plank (buffer reaction)	Bending	190 (27,500)	Gross section
Car frame uprights (stiles)	Bending plus tension	115 (17,000)	Gross section
		140 (20,200)	Net section
Hoisting rope hitch plate and shapes	Bending plus tension	75 (11,000)	Net section
Platform framing	Bending	95 (14,000)	Gross section
Platform stringers	Bending	115 (17,000)	Gross section
Threaded brace rods and other tension members except bolts	Tension	60 (9,000)	Net section
Bolts	Tension	55 (8,000)	Net section
Bolts in clearance holes	Shear	55 (8,000)	Actual area in shear plane
	Bearing	120 (17,500)	Gross section
Rivets or tight body-fit bolts	Shear	75 (11,000)	Actual area in shear plane
	Bearing	140 (20,000)	Gross section
Any framing member normal loading	Compression	Note (1)	Gross section

NOTE:
(1) The maximum allowable compressive stress in any member at normal loading shall not exceed 80% of those permitted for static loads by the AISC #S326 or CSA S16.1.

2.15.12.1 Where multiple sheaves mounted on separate sheave shafts are used, provision shall be made to take the compressive forces, developed by tension in the hoisting ropes between the sheaves, on a strut or struts between the sheave shaft supports, or by providing additional compressive strength in the car frame or car-frame members supporting sheave shafts.

2.15.12.2 Where the sheave shaft extends through the web of a car-frame member, the reduction in area of the member shall not reduce the strength of the member below that required. Where necessary, reinforcing plates shall be welded or riveted to the member to provide the required strength. The bearing pressure shall in no case be more than that permitted in Table 2.15.10.1 for bolts in clearance holes.

2.15.12.3 Where the sheave is attached to the car crosshead by means of a single-threaded rod or specially designed member or members in tension, the requirements of 2.15.12.3.1 and 2.15.12.3.2 shall be conformed to.

2.15.12.3.1 The single rod, member, or members shall have a factor of safety 50% higher than the factor of safety required for the suspension wire ropes, but in no case shall have a factor of safety of less than 15.

2.15.12.3.2 The means for fastening the single-threaded rod, member, or members to the car frame shall conform to 2.15.13.

2.15.13 Suspension-Rope Hitch Plates or Shapes

Where cars are suspended by hoisting ropes attached to the car frame or to the overhead supporting beams by means of rope shackles, the shackles shall be attached to steel hitch plates or to structural or formed steel shapes.

Such plates or shapes shall be secured to the underside or to the webs of the car-frame member with bolts, rivets, or welds so located that the tensions in the hoisting ropes will not develop direct tension in the bolts or rivets.

The stresses shall not exceed those permitted by 2.9.3.3.

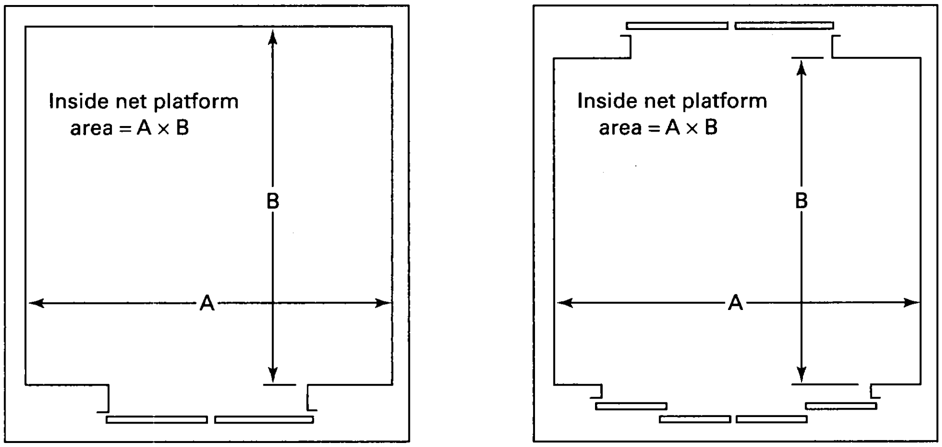
2.15.14 Calculation of Stresses in Car-Frame and Platform-Frame Members

The calculation of the stresses and deflection in the car-frame plank and uprights and platform frames shall be based on the formulas and data in 8.2.2.

2.15.15 Platform Side Braces

Where side bracing and similar members are attached to car-frame uprights, the reduction in area of the upright shall not reduce the strength of the upright below that required by 2.15.

Fig. 2.16.1.1 Inside Net Platform Areas for Passenger Elevators



2.15.16 Hinged Platform Sills

Hinged platform sills, where used, shall conform to 2.15.16.1 through 2.15.16.3.

2.15.16.1 Hinged platform sills shall be provided with electric contacts conforming to 2.12.5, that will prevent operation of the elevator by the normal operating device unless the hinged sill is within 50 mm (2 in.) of its fully retracted position, provided that when in this position, the sill does not reduce the clearance specified in 2.5.1.4.

2.15.16.2 The elevator shall be permitted to be operated by the leveling device in the leveling zone with the sill in any position.

2.15.16.3 The strength of the sills shall conform to 2.11.11.1.

2.15.17 Fastening of Compensation Means

Fastenings to the car of the suspension ropes' compensation means shall conform to 2.21.4.

SECTION 2.16 CAPACITY AND LOADING

2.16.1 Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators

2.16.1.1 Minimum Load Permitted. The rated load in kg (lb) for passenger elevators shall be based on the inside net platform area, and shall be not less than shown by Fig. 8.2.1.2 (see Nonmandatory Appendix D and 2.26.11).

The inside net platform area shall be determined at a point 1 000 mm (39 in.) above the floor and inside of any panels or wall surfaces, but exclusive of any handrails and space for doors as shown in Fig. 2.16.1.1. To allow for variations in car designs, an increase in the maximum inside net area not exceeding 5% shall be permitted for the various rated loads. See Table 2.16.1.1.

2.16.1.2 Use of Partitions for Reducing Inside Net Platform Area. Where partitions are installed in elevator cars for the purpose of restricting the platform net area for passenger use, they shall be permanently bolted, riveted, or welded in place. Gates, doors, or handrails shall not be used for this purpose. Partitions shall be so installed as to provide for approximately symmetrical loading.

2.16.1.3 Carrying of Freight on Passenger Elevators. When freight is to be carried on a passenger elevator, the requirements of 2.16.1.3.1 and 2.16.1.3.2 shall be conformed to.

2.16.1.3.1 The minimum rated load shall conform to 2.16.1 or 2.16.2, whichever is greater.

2.16.1.3.2 The elevator shall be designed for applicable class of freight elevator loading.

2.16.2 Minimum Rated Load for Freight Elevators

2.16.2.1 Minimum Load Permitted. The minimum rated load for freight elevators in pounds shall be based on the weight and class of the load to be handled, but shall in no case be less than the minimum specified in 2.16.2.2 for each class of loading based on the inside net platform area.

2.16.2.2 Classes of Loading and Design Requirements. Freight elevators shall be designed for one of the following classes of loading.

2.16.2.2.1 Class A: General Freight Loading. Where the load is distributed, the weight of any single piece of freight or of any single hand truck and its load is not more than 25% of the rated load of the elevator, and the load is handled on and off the car platform manually or by means of hand trucks.

Table 2.16.1.1 Maximum Inside Net Platform Areas for the Various Rated Loads

SI Units		Imperial Units	
Rated Load, kg	Inside Net Platform Area, m^2	Rated Load, lb	Inside Net Platform Area, ft^2
230	0.65	500	7.0
270	0.77	600	8.3
320	0.89	700	9.6
450	1.23	1,000	13.3
550	1.45	1,200	15.6
700	1.76	1,500	18.9
800	2.05	1,800	22.1
900	2.25	2,000	24.2
1 150	2.70	2,500	29.1
1 350	3.13	3,000	33.7
1 600	3.53	3,500	38.0
1 800	3.92	4,000	42.2
2 000	4.29	4,500	46.2
2 250	4.65	5,000	50.0
2 700	5.36	6,000	57.7
3 200	6.07	7,000	65.3
3 600	6.77	8,000	72.9
4 100	7.48	9,000	80.5
4 500	8.18	10,000	88.0
5 400	9.57	12,000	103.0
7 000	11.62	15,000	125.1
8 000	13.65	18,000	146.9
9 000	14.98	20,000	161.2
11 500	18.25	25,000	196.5
13 500	21.46	30,000	231.0

GENERAL NOTE: To allow for variations in cab designs, an increase in the maximum inside net platform area not exceeding 5% shall be permitted for the various rated loads.

For this class of loading, the rated load shall be based on not less than 240 kg/m^2 (49 lb/ft^2) of inside net platform area.

2.16.2.2.2 Class B: Motor Vehicle Loading. Where the elevator is used solely to carry automobile trucks or passenger automobiles up to the rated capacity of the elevator.

For this class of loading, the rated load shall be based on not less than 145 kg/m^2 (30 lb/ft^2) of inside net platform area.

2.16.2.2.3 Class C. There are three types of Class C loadings:

(a) Class C1: Industrial Truck Loading. Where the static load during loading and unloading does not exceed the rated load.

(b) Class C2: Industrial Truck Loading. Where the static load during loading and unloading is permitted to exceed the rated load.

(c) Class C3: Other Loading With Heavy Concentrations. Where the static load during loading and unloading does not exceed the rated load.

2.16.2.2.4 Class C loadings in 2.16.2.2.3 apply where the weight of the concentrated load including a powered industrial or hand truck, if used, is more than 25% the rated load and where the load to be carried does not exceed the rated load. (For concentrated loads exceeding the rated load, see 2.16.6.)

The following are additional requirements:

(a) For Class C1, Class C2, and Class C3 loadings, the rated load of the elevator shall be not less than the load (including any truck) to be carried, and shall in no case be less than 240 kg/m^2 (49 lb/ft^2) of inside net platform area.

The elevator shall be provided with a two-way automatic leveling device (see 1.3).

(b) For Class C1 and Class C2 loadings, the following additional requirements shall apply:

(1) For elevators with rated loads of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or less, the car platform shall be designed for a loaded truck of weight equal to the rated load or for the actual weight of the loaded truck to be used, whichever is greater.

(2) For elevators with rated loads exceeding 9 000 kg (20,000 lb), the car platform shall be designed for a loaded truck weighing 9 000 kg (20,000 lb), or for the actual weight of the loaded truck to be used, whichever is greater.

(c) For Class C2 loading, the following requirements shall apply:

(1) The maximum load on the car platform during loading or unloading shall not exceed 150% of rated load.

(2) For any load in excess of rated load on elevators with a rated load of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or less, the driving-machine motor, brake, and traction relation shall be adequate to sustain and level the full 150% of rated load.

(3) For any load in excess of the rated load on elevators with a rated load exceeding 9 000 kg (20,000 lb), the driving-machine motor, brake, and traction relation shall be adequate to sustain and level the rated load plus either 4 500 kg (10,000 lb), or the weight of the unloaded truck to be used, whichever is greater.

NOTES (2.16.2):

(1) When the entire rated load is loaded or unloaded in increments by an industrial truck, the load imposed on the car platform, while the last increment is being loaded or the first increment unloaded, will exceed the rated load by part of the weight of the empty industrial truck.

(2) Requirement 2.16.2 does not prohibit the carrying of an industrial truck on a freight elevator of Class C2 or Class C3 loading, provided that the total weight on the elevator does not exceed the rated load of the elevator, and the elevator is designed to meet the requirements of 8.2.2 and 8.2.9, as appropriate, for the load involved.

2.16.3 Capacity and Data Plates

2.16.3.1 Plates Required and Locations. Every elevator shall be provided with a capacity plate and a data plate permanently and securely attached.

The capacity plate shall be located in a conspicuous position inside the car.

The data plate shall be located on the car crosshead, or inside the car for underslung elevators having no crosshead.

2.16.3.2 Information Required on Plates

2.16.3.2.1 Capacity plates shall indicate the rated load of the elevator in kilograms or pounds or both (see Nonmandatory Appendix D), and, in addition, this plate or a separate plate shall indicate

(a) the capacity lifting one-piece loads where the elevator conforms to 2.16.7

(b) for freight elevators designed for Class C2 loading, the maximum load the elevator is designed to support while being loaded or unloaded [see 2.16.2.2.4(c)]

2.16.3.2.2 Data plates shall indicate

(a) the weight of the complete car, including the car safety and all auxiliary equipment attached to the car

(b) the rated load and speed

(c) the wire rope data required by 2.20.2.1

(d) the name or trademark of the manufacturer and year manufactured

(e) rail lubrication instructions (see 2.17.16)

2.16.3.3 Material and Marking of Plates. Plates shall be of such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the faces shall remain permanently and readily legible.

The height of the letters and figures shall be not less than

(a) 6 mm (0.25 in.) for passenger elevator capacity plates

(b) 25 mm (1 in.) for freight elevator capacity plates

(c) 3 mm (0.125 in.) for data plates

2.16.4 Carrying of Passengers on Freight Elevators

Freight elevators conforming to 2.16.4.1 through 2.16.4.9 shall be permitted to carry passengers.

2.16.4.1 The elevator shall not be accessible to the general public.

2.16.4.2 The rated load shall not be less than that required by 2.16.1.

2.16.4.3 The elevator shall conform to 2.16.8.

2.16.4.4 Hoistway entrances shall conform to 2.12.1.1 and 2.11.2.1, or shall be power-operated doors conforming to 2.11.2.2(e).

2.16.4.5 Car doors shall be provided, and shall conform to 2.14.5.

2.16.4.6 Openings in car enclosures shall conform to 2.14.2.2.

2.16.4.7 Hoistway doors and/or car doors shall conform to 2.12.5.

2.16.4.8 The factors of safety for suspension wire ropes shall conform to Table 2.20.3 for passenger elevators.

2.16.4.9 Power-operated vertically sliding doors shall be power closed conforming to the following:

(a) requirements 2.13.3.2 or 2.13.3.4.

(b) shall be provided with a reopening device conforming to 2.13.5. The reopening device shall detect obstruction in the path of closing door travel without the necessity of physical contact. This can be provided by mounting the protection device(s) on the car door itself or on the car or door jamb.

(c) vertically sliding hoistway and car doors shall conform to 2.13.6.

(d) supporting chains, cables, or ropes shall not be exposed to the car interior.

(e) when closed by automatic means, shall be provided with a visual warning to function over the same period as the audible signal in 2.13.3.4.1.

2.16.5 Signs Required in Freight Elevator Cars

2.16.5.1 Signs Required. Signs, in addition to the capacity and data plates required by 2.16.3.1, shall be provided inside the car and shall be located in a conspicuous position and permanently and securely fastened to the car enclosure, subject to the requirements of 2.16.5.1.1 through 2.16.5.1.3.

2.16.5.1.1 For every freight elevator, the sign shall specify the type of loading (see 2.16.2.2) for which the elevator is designed and installed, with one of the following markings.

(a) "CLASS A LOADING. ELEVATOR TO BE LOADED OR UNLOADED MANUALLY OR BY MEANS OF HAND TRUCKS ONLY. NO SINGLE PIECE OF FREIGHT OR SINGLE HAND TRUCK AND ITS LOAD SHALL EXCEED ____ KG (____ LB)."

(b) "CLASS B LOADING. THIS ELEVATOR DESIGNED TO TRANSPORT MOTOR VEHICLES HAVING A MAXIMUM GROSS WEIGHT NOT TO EXCEED ____ KG (____ LB)."

(c) "CLASS C1 LOADING. THIS ELEVATOR DESIGNED TO TRANSPORT LOADED INDUSTRIAL TRUCK. MAXIMUM COMBINED WEIGHT OF INDUSTRIAL TRUCK AND LOAD NOT TO EXCEED ____ KG (____ LB)."

(d) "CLASS C2 LOADING. THIS ELEVATOR DESIGNED FOR LOADING AND UNLOADING BY INDUSTRIAL TRUCK. MAXIMUM LOADING AND UNLOADING WEIGHT WHILE PARKED NOT TO EXCEED ____ KG (____ LB). MAXIMUM WEIGHT

TRANSPORTED NOT TO EXCEED _____ KG (_____ LB)."

(e) "CLASS C3 LOADING. THIS ELEVATOR DESIGNED TO TRANSPORT CONCENTRATED LOADS NOT TO EXCEED _____ KG (_____ LB)."

2.16.5.1.2 For elevators not permitted to carry passengers, the sign shall read: "THIS IS NOT A PASSENGER ELEVATOR. NO PERSONS OTHER THAN THE OPERATOR AND FREIGHT HANDLERS ARE PERMITTED TO RIDE ON THIS ELEVATOR."

2.16.5.1.3 For freight elevators permitted to carry passengers (see 2.16.4), a sign reading "PASSENGERS ARE PERMITTED TO RIDE THIS ELEVATOR."

2.16.5.2 Material and Marking of Signs. The material and marking of all signs shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the letters shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) high.

2.16.6 Overloading of Freight Elevators

Freight elevators shall not be loaded in excess of their rated load as specified on the capacity plate required by 2.16.3, except for

(a) static loads on elevators loaded and unloaded by industrial trucks as noted on capacity or separate plate [see 2.16.2.2.3 and 2.16.3.2.1(b)]

(b) elevators designed and installed to conform to 2.16.7 to carry one-piece loads exceeding their rated load

2.16.7 Carrying of One-Piece Loads Exceeding the Rated Load

Passenger and freight elevators shall be permitted to be used, where necessary, to carry one-piece loads greater than their rated load, provided they are designed, installed, and operated to conform to 2.16.7.1 through 2.16.7.11.

2.16.7.1 A locking device shall be provided that will hold the car at any landing, independently of the hoisting ropes, while the car is being loaded or unloaded.

2.16.7.2 The locking device shall be so designed that it cannot be unlocked until the entire weight of the car and load is suspended on the ropes.

2.16.7.3 A removable wrench or other device shall be provided to operate the locking device.

2.16.7.4 The locking device shall be so designed that the locking bars will be automatically withdrawn should they come into contact with the landing locks when the car is operated in the up direction.

2.16.7.5 A special capacity plate shall be provided inside the elevator car and located in a conspicuous place that shall bear the words "CAPACITY LIFTING ONE-PIECE LOADS" in letters, followed by figures giving the special capacity in kilograms (pounds) for lifting one-piece loads for which the machine is designed. For material and size of letters, see 2.16.3.3.

2.16.7.6 The car frame, car platform, sheaves, shafts, ropes, and locking devices shall be designed for the specified "Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads," provided that

(a) in the design of the car frame, platform, sheaves, shafts, and ropes, the allowable stress is permitted to be 20% higher than those permitted for normal loading

(b) the factor of safety for the locking device is not less than 5

2.16.7.7 The car safeties shall be designed to stop and hold the specified "Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads" with the ropes intact. The safety is not required to conform to the safety stopping distances specified in Table 2.17.3 if applied while the elevator is carrying a one-piece load exceeding the rated load.

2.16.7.8 Where there is an occupied space, or an unoccupied space not secured against unauthorized access (see 2.6), under the hoistway, the requirements of 2.16.7.8.1 through 2.16.7.8.4 shall be conformed to.

2.16.7.8.1 The machine shall be designed to operate the "Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads" at slow speed.

2.16.7.8.2 The car safety shall be designed to stop and hold the car with this load, independently of the hoisting ropes.

2.16.7.8.3 The counterweight safety, where required by 2.6, shall be designed to stop and hold the entire weight of the counterweight, independently of the ropes.

2.16.7.8.4 Under the conditions described in 2.16.7.8.2 and 2.16.7.8.3, the car and counterweight safeties are not required to conform to the safety stopping distances specified in Table 2.17.3 when the elevator is carrying a one-piece load exceeding the rated load and the counterweight is provided with additional weight as required by 2.16.7.9.

2.16.7.9 For traction machines, where it is necessary to secure adequate traction, an additional counterweight shall be added during the period of use with one-piece loads so that the total overbalance is at least equal to 45% of the "Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads."

2.16.7.10 A special operating device of the car switch or continuous-pressure type shall be provided in a machine room, control space located outside the hoistway, or control room to operate the elevator. **(05S)**

Means shall be provided to visually observe the driving machine when this special operating device is operated. When this device is operative, all other operating devices shall be inoperative (see 2.26.1.3).

2.16.7.11 The "Capacity Lifting One-Piece Loads" of any passenger traction elevator shall not exceed 1.33 times the rated load of the elevator.

2.16.8 Additional Requirements for Passenger Overload in the Down Direction

Passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted by 2.16.4 to carry passengers shall be designed and installed to safely lower, stop, and hold the car with an additional load up to 25% in excess of the rated load.

The elevator is not required to attain rated load performance under the passenger overload conditions specified but shall conform to

(a) requirement 2.17.2, except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(b) requirement 2.17.3, except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in the first paragraph in place of the rated load. Second paragraph of 2.17.3, except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load, and the rated load performance including safety stopping distance is not required.

(c) requirement 2.24.2.3, except that 125% of rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(d) requirement 2.24.8, except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(e) requirement 2.25.2.1, except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(f) requirement 2.26.9.8, except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(g) requirement 2.26.10, except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(h) requirement 2.19.2.2(b), except that 125% of the rated load shall be used in place of the rated load.

(i) requirement 2.27.2.1, except that 125% of rated load shall be used in place of rated load.

(05S) *(j)* requirement 2.7.5.1.2(b), except that 125% of rated load shall be used in place of rated load.

2.16.9 Special Loading Means

Where special means (lift hooks, conveyor tracks, and support beams) that exert loads upon the car frame or platform, or both, are used to carry loads other than as described in 2.16.2.2, the effects of their loading on the car frame and platform shall be considered in accordance with 8.2.2.1 and 8.2.9.1. The allowable stresses and deflections shall be as specified in 2.15.10 and 2.15.11. The connections shall conform to 2.15.7.

SECTION 2.17 CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT SAFETIES

2.17.1 Where Required and Location

The car of every elevator suspended by wire ropes shall be provided with one or more car safety devices of one of the types identified in 2.17.5. The safeties shall be attached to the car frame, and one safety shall be located within or below the car frame.

All car safeties shall be mounted on a single car frame and shall operate only on one pair of guide rails between which the frame is located.

2.17.2 Duplex Safeties

Where duplex (two) safeties are provided, the lower safety device shall be capable of developing not less than one-half of the force required to stop the entire car with rated load (see 2.16.8). Duplexed safety devices shall be arranged so as to function approximately simultaneously.

Type A or Type C safety devices (see 2.17.5) shall not be used in multiple (duplexed).

2.17.3 Function and Stopping Distance of Safeties

The safety device, or the combined safety devices, where furnished, shall be capable of stopping and sustaining the entire car with its rated load from governor tripping speed (see also 2.16.8).

Type B safeties shall stop the car with its rated load from governor tripping speed within the range of the maximum and minimum stopping distances as determined by the formulas in 8.2.6. Table 2.17.3 and Fig. 8.2.6 show the maximum and minimum stopping distances for various governor tripping speeds, when tested in conformance with 8.10 and 8.11.

2.17.4 Counterweight Safeties

Counterweight safeties, where furnished [see 2.6 and 2.19.3.2(a)(1)], shall conform to the requirements for car safeties, except as specified in 2.17.7 and 2.18.1.

2.17.5 Identification and Classification of Types of Safeties

Car safety devices (safeties) are identified and classified on the basis of performance characteristics after the safety begins to apply pressure on the guide rails. On this basis, there are three types of safeties.

2.17.5.1 Type A Safeties. Safeties that develop a rapidly increasing pressure on the guide rails during the stopping interval, the stopping distance being very short due to the inherent design of the safety. The operating force is derived entirely from the mass and the motion of the car or the counterweight being stopped. These safeties apply pressure on the guide rails through eccentrics, rollers, or similar devices, without any flexible medium purposely introduced to limit the retarding force and increase the stopping distance.

2.17.5.2 Type B Safeties. Safeties that apply limited pressure on the guide rails during the stopping interval, and which provide stopping distances that are related to the mass being stopped and the speed at which application of the safety is initiated. Retarding forces are

Table 2.17.3 Maximum and Minimum Stopping Distances for Type B Car Safeties With Rated Load and Type B Counterweight Safeties

SI Units				Imperial Units			
Rated Speed, m/s	Maximum Governor Trip Speed, m/s	Stopping Distances, mm Min.	Stopping Distances, mm Max.	Rated Speed, ft/min	Maximum Governor Trip Speed, ft/min	Stopping Distances, in. Min.	Stopping Distances, in. Max.
0–0.63	0.90	25	380	0–125	175	1	15
0.75	1.05	50	415	150	210	2	16
0.87	1.25	75	485	175	250	3	19
1.00	1.40	100	540	200	280	4	22
1.12	1.55	125	605	225	308	5	24
1.25	1.70	150	675	250	337	6	27
1.50	2.00	200	840	300	395	8	33
1.75	2.30	250	1 025	350	452	10	40
2.00	2.55	330	1 200	400	510	13	48
2.25	2.90	430	1 480	450	568	17	58
2.50	3.15	505	1 700	500	625	20	68
3.00	3.70	710	2 250	600	740	28	91
3.50	4.30	940	2 950	700	855	38	128
4.00	4.85	1 200	3 680	800	970	49	150
4.50	5.50	1 540	4 660	900	1,085	61	183
5.00	6.00	1 835	5 500	1,000	1,200	75	222
5.50	6.60	2 220	6 600	1,100	1,320	90	268
6.00	7.20	2 640	7 800	1,200	1,440	107	316
6.50	7.80	3 100	9 110	1,300	1,560	126	371
7.00	8.40	3 595	10 530	1,400	1,680	146	427
7.50	9.00	4 125	12 050	1,500	1,800	168	490
8.00	9.60	4 695	13 670	1,600	1,920	191	555
8.50	10.20	5 300	15 400	1,700	2,040	215	628
9.00	10.80	5 940	17 240	1,800	2,160	241	700
9.50	11.40	6 620	19 180	1,900	2,280	269	779
10.00	12.00	7 335	21 220	2,000	2,400	299	862

reasonably uniform after the safety is fully applied. Safeties that require or do not require continuous tension in the governor rope to operate the safety during the entire stopping interval shall be permitted. Minimum and maximum distances are specified on the basis of governor tripping speed (see 2.17.3).

2.17.5.3 Type C Safeties (Type A With Oil Buffers). Safeties that develop retarding forces during the compression stroke of one or more oil buffers interposed between the lower members of the car frame and a governor-operated Type A auxiliary safety plank applied on the guide rails. The stopping distance is equal to the effective stroke of the buffers.

2.17.6 Reserved for Future Use

2.17.7 Governor-Actuated Safeties and Car Safety Mechanism Switches Required

2.17.7.1 Counterweight safeties, where provided for rated speeds over 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), and car safeties, shall be actuated by separate speed governors.

Counterweight safeties for rated speeds of not over 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) shall be permitted to be operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the suspension ropes and shall be permitted to be of the inertia or other approved type without governors.

Where counterweight safeties are furnished to provide ascending car overspeed protection in accordance with 2.19.1.1, they shall be actuated by a counterweight speed governor (see 2.17.4).

2.17.7.2 Every car safety shall be provided with a switch, operated by the car safety mechanism (see 2.26.2.9).

A switch operated by the safety mechanism is not required on counterweight safeties.

2.17.7.3 The car safety mechanism switch shall operate before or at the time of application of the safety.

2.17.7.4 Switches operated by the car safety mechanism shall be of a type that cannot be reset until the car safety mechanism has been returned to the unapplied position.

2.17.8 Limits of Use of Various Types of Safeties

2.17.8.1 Type A (Instantaneous) Safeties. Type A safeties shall be permitted on elevators having a rated speed of not more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

When overspeed occurs, with the hoisting rope intact, such safeties shall be actuated by the governor.

On the parting of the hoisting ropes (free fall), Type A governor-operated safeties shall apply without appreciable delay, and their application shall be independent of the speed action of the governor and of the location of the break in the hoisting ropes (inertia application), and shall be permitted to be accomplished by the use of a governor and governor rigging having a sufficiently high value of inertia to apply the safety on free fall independently of the speed action of the governor (see 8.10 for inertia-application test of car safety).

2.17.8.2 Type C (Combination Instantaneous and Oil-Buffer Safety). Type C safeties shall be permitted subject to the requirements of 2.17.8.2.1 through 2.17.8.2.8.

2.17.8.2.1 The rated speed shall be not more than 2.5 m/s (500 ft/min).

2.17.8.2.2 The oil buffers shall conform to all requirements specified in 2.22 for oil buffers, except that the stroke shall be based on governor tripping speed and on an average retardation not exceeding 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

2.17.8.2.3 After the buffer stroke, as defined in 2.17.8.2.2, has been completed, provision shall be made for an additional travel of the plunger or piston of not less than 10% of the buffer stroke, to prevent excessive impact on the buffer parts and the auxiliary safety plank.

2.17.8.2.4 Where the distance between guide rails exceeds 2 450 mm (96 in.), the safety shall be provided with two oil buffers of substantially identical calibration, and the buffers shall be so located as to develop minimum stresses in the auxiliary safety plank during safety operation.

Buffers shall be located in line with and symmetrically between the guide rails.

2.17.8.2.5 The auxiliary safety plank shall be so supported and guided below the car frame that the clearances specified in 2.17.10 for the safety parts are maintained during normal operation.

The auxiliary safety plank shall be so designed that the maximum stresses in the plank shall not exceed those specified for similar car-frame members in 2.15.

2.17.8.2.6 The rail-gripping device of the auxiliary safety plank shall be so arranged and connected as to prevent the plank from being out of level more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) in the length of the plank when the safety is operated to stop the car.

2.17.8.2.7 An electric switch shall be provided and so arranged and connected that the elevator cannot be operated by means of the normal operating device if any buffer is compressed more than 10% of its stroke (see 2.26.2.13).

2.17.8.2.8 Means shall be provided to prevent operation of the elevator by means of the normal operating device if the oil level in buffer is below the minimum level (see 2.26.2.13).

2.17.9 Application and Release of Safeties

2.17.9.1 Means of Application. Safeties shall be applied mechanically. Electric, hydraulic, or pneumatic devices shall not be used to apply the safeties required by 2.17, nor to hold such safeties in the retracted position.

2.17.9.2 Level of Car on Safety Application. The application of a Type A or Type B safety to stop the car, with its rated load centered on each quarter of the platform symmetrically with relation to the centerlines of the platform, shall not cause the platform to be out of level more than 30 mm/m (0.36 in./ft) in any direction. (See 2.17.8.2.6 for Type C safeties.)

2.17.9.3 Release. When car safeties are applied, no decrease in tension in the governor rope or motion of the car in the down direction shall release the safeties, but such safeties shall be permitted to be released by the motion of the car in the up direction.

2.17.9.4 Force Providing Stopping Action to Be Compressive. Safeties shall be so designed that, on their application, the forces that provide the stopping action shall be compressive forces on each side of the guide-rail section.

2.17.10 Minimum Permissible Clearance Between Rail-Gripping Faces of Safety Parts

In the normally retracted position of the safety, the distance between the rail-gripping faces of the safety parts shall be not less than the thickness of the guide rail plus 3.5 mm (0.14 in.), and the clearance on any side between the gripping face and the guide rail shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.), as measured on the side of the rail toward which the car frame is pressed with sufficient force to take up all clearances in the guide-shoe assembly. Safety jaws, while in the retracted position, shall be so restrained as to prevent a reduction of this minimum clearance.

2.17.11 Maximum Permissible Movement of Governor Rope to Operate the Safety Mechanism

For all Type B safeties, the movement of the governor rope, relative to the car or the counterweight, respectively, required to operate the safety mechanism from its fully retracted position to a position where the safety jaws begin to exert pressure against the guide rails, shall not exceed the following values based on rated speed:

(a) for car safeties

(1) 1 m/s (200 ft/min) or less, 1 070 mm (42 in.)

(2) 1.01 m/s (201 ft/min) to 1.9 m/s (375 ft/min), 915 mm (36 in.)

(3) over 1.9 m/s (375 ft/min), 756 mm (30 in.)

(b) for counterweight safeties, all speeds, 1 070 mm (42 in.)

Drum-operated car and counterweight safeties, requiring continual unwinding of the safety drum rope to fully apply the safety, shall be so designed that not less than three turns of the safety rope will remain on the drum after the overspeed test of the safety has been made with rated load in the car.

2.17.12 Minimum Factors of Safety and Stresses of Safety Parts and Rope Connections

2.17.12.1 Parts of safeties, except springs, safety-rope drums, leading sheaves, and their supporting brackets and safety-jaw gibs, shall have a factor of safety of not less than 3.5, and the materials used shall have an elongation of not less than 15% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 8. Forged, cast, or welded parts shall be stress relieved.

2.17.12.2 Springs are permitted in the operation of car or counterweight safeties. Where used, and where partially loaded prior to safety operation, the loading on the spring shall not produce a fibre stress exceeding one-half the elastic limit of the material. During operation of the safety, the fibre stress shall not exceed 85% of the elastic limit of the material. Helical springs, where used, shall be in compression.

2.17.12.3 Safety-rope drums, leading sheaves, and their supporting brackets and safety-jaw gibs, are permitted to be made of cast iron and other metals provided such parts have a factor of safety of not less than 10.

2.17.12.4 Rope used as a connection from the safety to the governor rope, including rope wound on the safety-rope drum, shall be not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) in diameter, shall be made of metal, and shall be corrosion resistant. The factor of safety of the rope shall be not less than 5. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

2.17.12.5 The factors of safety shall be based upon the maximum stresses developed in the parts during the operation of the safety when stopping rated load from governor tripping speed.

2.17.12.6 Safety-rope leading sheave brackets and other safety operating parts shall not be attached to or supported by wood platform members.

2.17.13 Corrosion-Resistant Bearings in Safeties and Safety-Operating Mechanisms

Bearings in safeties and in the safety-operating mechanisms shall be of corrosion-resistant construction, with one or both members of the bearing made of, or electroplated with, a corrosion-resistant material.

2.17.14 Marking Plates for Safeties

A metal plate shall be securely attached to each safety so as to be readily visible, and shall be marked in a legible and permanent manner with letters and figures not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height indicating:

(a) the type of safety, based on 2.17.5

(b) the maximum tripping speed in m/s (ft/min) for which the safety is permitted

(c) the maximum weight in kg (lb), that the safety is designed and installed to stop and sustain

(d) the force in N (lbf) required to activate the safety or rope releasing carrier, if provided

(e) the manufacturer's name or trademark

2.17.15 Governor-Rope Releasing Carriers

Where a governor-rope releasing carrier is used to prevent actuation of the safety by the inertial forces of the governor-rope system, or used for any other purpose, the governor-rope releasing carrier on the car (or on the counterweight) shall be set to require a tension in the governor rope, to pull the rope from the carrier, of not more than 60% of the pull-through tension developed by the governor. The means to regulate the governor-rope pull-out force shall be mechanical and shall be sealed. The carrier shall be designed so that the pull-out tension cannot be adjusted to exceed the amount specified without breaking the seal.

2.17.16 Rail Lubricants and Lubrication Plate

Rail lubricants or coatings that will reduce the holding power of the safety, or prevent its functioning as required in 2.17.3, shall not be used (see 8.7 for maintenance requirements).

A metal plate as required by 2.16.3.2 shall be securely attached to the car crosshead in an easily visible location, and, where lubricants are to be used, shall carry the notation, "CONSULT MANUFACTURER OF THE SAFETY FOR THE CHARACTERISTICS OF THE RAIL LUBRICANT TO BE USED." If lubricants are not to be used, the plate shall so state.

If lubricants other than those recommended by the manufacturer are used, a safety test shall be made to demonstrate that the safety will function as required by 2.17.3.

SECTION 2.18 SPEED GOVERNORS

2.18.1 Speed Governors Required and Location

2.18.1.1 Counterweight safeties, where provided with rated speeds over 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), and car safeties shall be actuated by separate speed governors.

Where counterweight safeties are furnished to provide ascending car overspeed protection in accordance with 2.19.1.1, they shall be actuated by a counterweight speed governor (see 2.17.4).

2.18.1.2 The governor shall be located where it cannot be struck by the car or the counterweight in case of overtravel, and where there is adequate space for full movement of governor parts.

2.18.2 Tripping Speeds for Speed Governors

2.18.2.1 Car Speed Governors. Speed governors for car safeties shall be set to trip at car speeds as follows:

(a) at not less than 115% of the rated speed.

(b) at not more than the tripping speed listed opposite the applicable rated speed in Table 2.18.2.1. Maximum tripping speeds for intermediate rated speeds shall be determined from Fig. 8.2.5. For rated speeds exceeding 10 m/s (2,000 ft/min), the maximum tripping speeds shall not exceed 120% of the rated speed.

2.18.2.2 Counterweight Speed Governors. Speed governors, where provided for counterweight safeties, shall be set to trip at an overspeed greater than that at which the car speed governor is to trip, but not more than 10% higher.

2.18.3 Sealing and Painting of Speed Governors

2.18.3.1 Speed governors shall have their means of speed adjustment sealed after test. If speed governors are painted after sealing, all bearing and rubbing surfaces shall be kept free or freed of paint and a hand test made to determine that all parts operate freely as intended.

2.18.3.2 Where the rope retarding means provides for adjustment of the rope pull-through force (tension), means shall be provided to seal the means of adjustment of the rope tension.

2.18.3.3 Seals shall be of a type that will prevent readjustment of the sealed governor adjustments without breaking the seal. Provision shall be made to enable affixing seals after tests.

2.18.4 Speed-Governor Overspeed Switch

2.18.4.1 Where Required and Function

2.18.4.1.1 A switch shall be provided on every car and counterweight speed governor (see 2.26.2.10).

2.18.4.1.2 The switches required in 2.18.4.1.1 shall be operated by the overspeed action of the governor, except that the counterweight governor switch shall be permitted to be operated upon activation of the counterweight governor-rope retarding means (see 2.18.6.1).

2.18.4.2 Setting of Car Speed-Governor Overspeed Switches. The setting of the car speed-governor overspeed switch shall conform to 2.18.4.2.1 through 2.18.4.2.5. (ED)

2.18.4.2.1 For rated speeds more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), up to and including 2.5 m/s (500 ft/min), the car speed-governor overspeed switch shall open in the down direction of the elevator at not more than 90% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction.

2.18.4.2.2 For rated speeds more than 2.5 m/s (500 ft/min), the car speed-governor overspeed switch shall open in the down direction of the elevator at not more than 95% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction.

2.18.4.2.3 For elevators with static control, the car speed-governor overspeed switch shall open in the down direction of the elevator at not more than 90% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction.

2.18.4.2.4 The switch, when set as specified in either 2.18.4.2.1, 2.18.4.2.2, or 2.18.4.2.3, shall open in the up direction at not more than 100% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction.

2.18.4.2.5 The speed-governor overspeed switch shall be permitted to open in the down direction of the elevator at not more than 100% of the speed at which the governor is set to trip in the down direction, subject to the following requirements:

(a) A speed-reducing switch of the manually reset type is provided on the governor, that will reduce the speed of the elevator in case of overspeed, and that shall be set to open as specified in 2.18.4.2.1, 2.18.4.2.2, or 2.18.4.2.3.

(b) Subsequent to the first stop of the car following the opening of the speed-reducing switch, the car shall remain inoperative until the switch is manually reset.

2.18.4.3 Setting of the Counterweight Governor Switch. Where the counterweight governor switch is operated by the overspeed action (see 2.18.2.2), the switch shall be set to open when the counterweight is descending at a speed greater than the elevator rated speed, but not more than the speed at which the counterweight governor is set to trip.

2.18.4.4 Type of Speed-Governor Overspeed Switches and Speed-Reducing Switches. Switches used to perform the function specified shall be positively (05S)

Table 2.18.2.1 Maximum Car Speeds at Which Speed Governor Trips and Governor Overspeed Switch Operates

SI Units			Imperial Units		
Rated Speed, m/s	Maximum Car Governor Trip Speed, m/s	Maximum Car Speed at Which Governor Overspeed Switch Operates, Down, m/s [Note (1)]	Rated Speed, ft/min	Maximum Car Governor Trip Speed, ft/min	Maximum Car Speed at Which Governor Overspeed Switch Operates, Down, ft/min [Note (1)]
0–0.63	0.90	0.81	0–125	175	175
0.75	1.05	0.95	150	210	210
0.87	1.25	1.13	175	250	225
1.00	1.40	1.26	200	280	252
1.12	1.55	1.40	225	308	277
1.25	1.70	1.53	250	337	303
1.50	2.00	1.80	300	395	355
1.75	2.30	2.07	350	452	407
2.00	2.55	2.30	400	510	459
2.25	2.90	2.61	450	568	512
2.50	3.15	2.84	500	625	563
3.00	3.70	3.52	600	740	703
3.50	4.30	4.09	700	855	812
4.00	4.85	4.61	800	970	921
4.50	5.50	5.23	900	1,085	1,031
5.00	6.00	5.70	1,000	1,200	1,140
5.50	6.60	6.27	1,100	1,320	1,254
6.00	7.20	6.84	1,200	1,440	1,368
6.50	7.80	7.41	1,300	1,560	1,482
7.00	8.40	7.98	1,400	1,680	1,596
7.50	9.00	8.55	1,500	1,800	1,710
8.00	9.60	9.12	1,600	1,920	1,824
8.50	10.20	9.69	1,700	2,040	1,938
9.00	10.80	10.26	1,800	2,160	2,052
9.50	11.40	10.83	1,900	2,280	2,166
10.00	12.00	11.40	2,000	2,400	2,280

NOTE:
(1) See 2.18.4.2.5.

opened. Overspeed and speed-reducing switches permitted by 2.18.4.2.5 and operated by the speed governor shall remain in the open position until manually reset.

NOTE: Manual reset includes means such as a finger, hand or cable-actuated lever, cam, etc., or some form of electromechanical actuation from the location of elevator controllers located outside the hoistway or the enclosure as specified in 2.7.6.5.

2.18.5 Governor Ropes

2.18.5.1 Material and Factor of Safety. Governor ropes shall be of iron, steel, monel metal, phosphor bronze, or stainless steel. They shall be of a regular-lay construction and not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) in diameter. The factor of safety of governor ropes shall be not less than 5. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

2.18.5.2 Speed-Governor-Rope Clearance. During normal operation of the elevator, the governor rope shall run free and clear of the governor jaws, rope guards, or other stationary parts.

2.18.5.3 Governor-Rope Tag. A metal data tag shall be securely attached to the governor-rope fastening. This data tag shall bear the following wire-rope data:

(a) the diameter (mm or in.)
(b) the manufacturer's rated breaking strength
(c) the grade of material used
(d) the year and month the rope was installed
(e) whether nonpreformed or preformed
(f) construction classification
(g) name of the person or organization who installed the rope

(h) name or trademark by which the manufacturer of the rope can be identified

A new tag shall be installed at each rope renewal. The material and marking of the rope data tag shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.).

2.18.6 Design of Governor-Rope Retarding Means for Type B Safeties

Type B car and counterweight safeties shall be activated by a speed governor with a governor-rope retarding means conforming to 2.18.6.1 through 2.18.6.5.

2.18.6.1 Upon activation at the tripping speeds given by 2.18.2, the means shall retard the rope with a force that is at least 67% greater than the force required to activate the safety or to trip the governor-rope releasing carrier, where used (see 2.17.15).

2.18.6.2 The means shall be set to allow the governor rope to slip through the speed governor at a rope tension (the governor pull-through tension) higher than required to activate the safety or to trip the releasing carrier as specified in 2.17.15. The maximum tension in the rope shall not exceed one-fifth of the rated ultimate strength of the rope.

2.18.6.3 The means shall be designed to prevent appreciable damage to, or deformation of, the governor rope resulting from its application (stopping action).

2.18.6.4 The means shall provide a continuous tension in the governor rope as required to operate the safety during the entire stopping interval in accordance with 2.17.5.2.

(05S) **2.18.6.5** The governor shall be arranged to be manually tripped or activated to facilitate the tests specified in 8.10 and 8.11.

NOTE: Manually tripped or activated includes means such as but not limited to a finger, hand or cable-actuated lever, cam, etc., or some form of electromechanical actuation.

2.18.7 Design of Speed-Governor Sheaves and Traction Between Speed-Governor Rope and Sheave

2.18.7.1 The arc of contact between the governor rope and the governor sheave shall, in conjunction with a governor-rope tension device, provide sufficient traction to cause proper functioning of the governor.

2.18.7.2 Where the rope force imparted to the governor rope (see 2.18.6.1) necessary to activate the safety, or to trip the releasing carrier, if used, is dependent upon the tension in the governor rope prior to governor tripping, a switch or switches mechanically opened by the governor tension sheave before the sheave reaches its upper or lower limit of travel shall be provided. This switch shall be of the manually reset type and shall conform to 2.26.4.3. Subsequent to the first stop of the car following the opening of the switch, the car shall remain inoperative until the switch is manually reset.

2.18.7.3 Governor sheave grooves shall have machine-finished surfaces. Governor tension sheaves shall have machine-finished grooves for rated car speeds of more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). Machined governor sheave grooves shall have a groove diameter of not more than 1.15 times the diameter of the governor rope.

2.18.7.4 The pitch diameter of governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves shall be not less than the product of the diameter of the rope and the applicable multiplier listed in Table 2.18.7.4, based on the rated speed and the number of strands in the rope.

Table 2.18.7.4 Multiplier for Determining Governor Sheave Pitch Diameter

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Number of Strands	Multiplier
1.00 or less (200 or less)	6	42
1.00 or less (200 or less)	8	30
Over 1.00 (over 200)	6	46
Over 1.00 (over 200)	8	32

2.18.8 Factors of Safety in Load-Bearing Parts of Speed Governor

2.18.8.1 Material, except cast iron, used in load-bearing parts of speed governors shall have a factor of safety of not less than 3.5, and the materials used shall have an elongation of not less than 15% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 8. Forged, cast, or welded parts shall be stress relieved. Cast iron shall have a factor of safety of not less than 10.

2.18.8.2 The factors of safety shall be based upon the maximum stresses developed in the parts during normal or governor tripping operation.

2.18.9 Speed-Governor Marking Plate

A metal plate shall be securely attached to each speed governor and shall be marked in a legible and permanent manner with letters and figures not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height indicating the following:

(a) the speed in m/s (ft/min) at which the governor is set and sealed to trip the governor-rope retarding means

(b) the size, material, and construction of the governor rope on which the governor-rope retarding means were designed to operate

(c) the governor pull-through tension (force) in N (lbf) (see 2.18.6.2)

(d) manufacturer's name or trademark

(e) statement "DO NOT LUBRICATE GOVERNOR ROPE"

SECTION 2.19 ASCENDING CAR OVERSPEED AND UNINTENDED CAR MOVEMENT PROTECTION

2.19.1 Ascending Car Overspeed Protection

2.19.1.1 Purpose. Ascending car overspeed protection shall be provided to prevent the car from striking the hoistway overhead structure as a result of a failure in

(a) the electric driving-machine motor, brake, coupling, shaft, or gearing

(b) the control system

(c) any other component upon which the speed of the car depends, except the suspension ropes and the drive sheave of the traction machine

2.19.1.2 Where Required and Function. All electric traction elevators, except those whose empty car weight exceeds the total weight of the suspension ropes and counterweight, shall be provided with a device to prevent an ascending elevator from striking the hoistway overhead structure. This device (see 2.26.2.29) shall

(a) detect an ascending car overspeed condition at a speed not greater than 10% higher than the speed at which the car governor is set to trip (see 2.18.2.1).

(1) If the overspeed detection means requires electrical power for its functioning

(a) a loss of electrical power to the ascending car overspeed detection and control means shall cause the immediate activation of the emergency brake as required in 2.19.1.2(b)

(07) (b) the occurrence of a single ground, or the failure of any mechanically operated switch that does not meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1, any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay, or any single solid-state device, or a failure of a software system not conforming to 2.26.4.3.2, shall not render the detection means inoperative

(2) The failure of any single mechanically operated switch that does not meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3 shall not render the detection means inoperative.

(3) When a fault specified in 2.19.1.2(a)(1)(b) or 2.19.1.2(a)(2) is detected, the car shall stop at or before the next landing for which a demand was registered, and shall not be permitted to restart.

(4) Once actuated by overspeed, the overspeed detection means shall remain actuated until manually reset, and the car shall not start or run unless the detection means is reset.

(b) decelerate the car when loaded with any load up to its rated load [see 2.16.8(h)] by applying an emergency brake conforming to 2.19.3. The car shall not start or run unless the emergency brake is reset.

2.19.2 Protection Against Unintended Car Movement

2.19.2.1 Purpose. Protection shall be provided with a device to prevent unintended car movement away from the landing with the hoistway door not in the locked position and the car door not in the closed position, as a result of failure in

(a) the electric driving-machine motor, brake, coupling, shaft, or gearing

(b) the control system

(c) any other component upon which the speed of the car depends, except the suspension ropes and the drive sheave of the traction machine

2.19.2.2 Where Required and Function. All electric traction elevators shall be provided with a device (see 2.26.2.30) that shall

(a) detect unintended car movement away from the landing with the hoistway door not in the locked position and the car door not in the closed position.

NOTE: Freight elevators provided with combination mechanical locks and contacts on the hoistway door shall detect the closed position of the hoistway door and the closed position of the car door.

(1) If the detection means requires electrical power for its functioning

(a) a loss of electrical power to the unintended movement detection and control means shall cause the immediate activation of the emergency brake as required in 2.19.2.2(b)

(b) the occurrence of a single ground, or the failure of any mechanically operated switch that does not meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3.1, any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay, or any single solid-state device, or a failure of a software system not conforming to 2.26.4.3.2, shall not render the detection means inoperative **(07)**

(2) The failure of any single mechanically operated switch that does not meet the requirements of 2.26.4.3, shall not render the detection means inoperative.

(3) When a fault specified in 2.19.2.2(a)(1)(b) or 2.19.2.2(a)(2) is detected, the car shall stop at or before the next landing for which a demand was registered, and shall not be permitted to restart.

(4) Once actuated by unintended movement, the detection means shall remain actuated until manually reset, and the car shall not start or run unless the detection means is reset.

(b) upon detection of unintended car movement, stop and hold the car, with any load up to rated load [see also 2.16.8(h)], by applying an emergency brake conforming to 2.19.3, with the car movement limited in both directions, to a maximum of 1 220 mm (48 in.). The car shall not start or run unless the emergency brake provided for the unintended movement protection is reset.

2.19.3 Emergency Brake (See Nonmandatory Appendix F)

2.19.3.1 Where Required

2.19.3.1.1 When required by 2.19.1 for protection against ascending car overspeed, an emergency brake (see 1.3) conforming to 2.19.3.2 shall be provided.

2.19.3.1.2 When required by 2.19.2 for protection against unintended car movement, an emergency brake (see 1.3) conforming to 2.19.3.2 shall be provided.

2.19.3.1.3 A single device shall be permitted to meet the requirements of both 2.19.3.1.1 and 2.19.3.1.2, or separate devices shall be provided.

2.19.3.2 Requirements. The emergency brake is permitted to consist of one or more devices and shall

(a) function to decelerate the car by acting on one or more of the following (see also 2.19.4):

(1) counterweight [e.g., counterweight safety (see 2.17.4 and 2.17.7)]

(2) car

(3) suspension or compensation rope system

(4) drive sheave of a traction machine

(5) brake drum or braking surface of the driving-machine brake, provided that the driving-machine brake surface is integral (cast or welded) with or directly attached to the driving-machine sheave. Attachments, where used, shall conform to 2.24.3 and 2.24.4.1. Welding, where used, shall conform to 8.8.

(b) be independent of the driving-machine brake

(c) not be used to provide, or assist in providing, the normal stopping of the car. When the emergency brake is activated during normal elevator stops, it shall only be applied to and released from a stationary braking surface.

(d) not require the application of electrical power for its activation, nor be rendered inoperative by the failure of any power supply

(e) not on its own cause the car average retardation to exceed 9.8 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) during the stopping or slowdown phase during ascending car overspeed

(f) be designed so that the factors of safety based on the maximum stresses developed in the parts subject to load during the operation of the emergency brake shall comply with the following:

(1) Where an emergency brake is activated only when protecting against either an ascending car overspeed condition or unintended car movement with the car and hoistway doors open, the minimum factors of safety, when applied during the retardation phase of emergency braking, shall be not less than those specified in 2.17.12.1.

(2) Where an emergency brake is activated during normal stops of the elevator, the minimum factors of safety, when applied during the retardation phase of emergency braking, shall be not less than those specified in 2.24.3.1 and 2.24.3.2.

(3) Where an emergency brake acts on the suspension or compensation rope system

(a) the factor of safety with respect to the breaking strength of the ropes shall be not less than 5 at any time during the retardation phase

(b) it shall be designed to prevent appreciable damage or deformation to the ropes resulting from its activation

(g) be arranged to be tested in accordance with the requirements specified in 8.10.2

(h) if the design of the emergency brake is such that field adjustment or servicing is required and the emergency brake acts on the brake drum or braking surface of the driving-machine brake, it shall be provided with a sign stating "EMERGENCY BRAKE." The sign shall be located on the emergency brake at a location visible from the area likely to require service. The sign shall be of such material and construction that the letters shall remain permanently and readily legible. The height of the letters shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.). **(05S)**

2.19.3.3 Marking Plate Requirements. The emergency brake shall be provided with a marking plate indicating the range of total masses (car with attachments and its load) for which it is permitted to be used, the range of speeds at which it is set to operate, and the criteria such as rail lubrication requirements that are critical to the performance.

2.19.4 Emergency Brake Supports

All components and structural members, including their fastenings, subjected to forces due to the application of the emergency brake shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of the emergency braking so that the resulting stresses shall not exceed those permitted for the applicable type of equipment as follows:

(a) machinery and sheave beams (see 2.9.6)

(b) guide rails and their supports (see 2.23.5.3)

(c) counterweight frames (see 2.21.2.3.3)

(d) car frames (see 2.15.10.2)

(e) machines, sheaves, and bedplates (see 2.24.3.2)

SECTION 2.20 SUSPENSION ROPES AND THEIR CONNECTIONS

2.20.1 Suspension Means

Elevator cars shall be suspended by steel wire ropes attached to the car frame or passing around sheaves attached to the car frame specified in 2.15.1. Ropes that have previously been installed and used on another installation shall not be reused.

Only iron (low-carbon steel) or steel wire ropes, having the commercial classification "Elevator Wire Rope," or wire rope specifically constructed for elevator use, shall be used for the suspension of elevator cars and for the suspension of counterweights. The wire material for ropes shall be manufactured by the open-hearth or electric furnace process or their equivalent.

2.20.2 Wire Rope Data

2.20.2.1 On Crosshead Data Plate. The crosshead data plate required by 2.16.3 shall bear the following wire-rope data:

(a) the number of ropes
(b) the diameter in millimeters (mm) or inches (in.)
(c) the manufacturer's rated breaking strength per rope in kilonewton (kN) or pounds (lb)

2.20.2.2 On Rope Data Tag. A metal data tag shall be securely attached to one of the wire-rope fastenings. This data tag shall bear the following wire-rope data:

(a) the diameter in millimeters (mm) or inches (in.)
(b) the manufacturer's rated breaking strength
(c) the grade of material used
(d) the month and year the ropes were installed
(e) the month and year the ropes were first shortened
(f) whether the ropes were nonpreformed or preformed
(g) construction classification
(h) name of the person or organization who installed the ropes
(i) name or trademark of the manufacturer of the ropes
(j) lubrication information

A new tag shall be installed at each rope renewal.

The material and marking of the rope data tag shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.).

2.20.3 Factor of Safety

The factor of safety of the suspension wire ropes shall be not less than shown in Table 2.20.3. Figure 8.2.7 gives the minimum factor of safety for intermediate rope speeds. The factor of safety shall be based on the actual rope speed corresponding to the rated speed of the car.

The factor of safety shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$f = \frac{S \times N}{W}$$

where

N = number of runs of rope under load. For 2:1 roping, N shall be two times the number of ropes used, etc.
S = manufacturer's rated breaking strength of one rope
W = maximum static load imposed on all car ropes with the car and its rated load at any position in the hoistway

Table 2.20.3 Minimum Factors of Safety for Suspension Wire Ropes

Rope Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Minimum Factor of Safety	
	Passenger	Freight
0.25 (50)	7.60	6.65
0.37 (75)	7.75	6.85
0.50 (100)	7.97	7.00
0.62 (125)	8.10	7.15
0.75 (150)	8.25	7.30
0.87 (175)	8.40	7.45
1.00 (200)	8.60	7.65
1.12 (225)	8.75	7.75
1.25 (250)	8.90	7.90
1.50 (300)	9.20	8.20
1.75 (350)	9.50	8.45
2.00 (400)	9.75	8.70
2.25 (450)	10.00	8.90
2.50 (500)	10.25	9.15
2.75 (550)	10.45	9.30
3.00 (600)	10.70	9.50
3.25 (650)	10.85	9.65
3.50 (700)	11.00	9.80
3.75 (750)	11.15	9.90
4.00 (800)	11.25	10.00
4.25 (850)	11.35	10.10
4.50 (900)	11.45	10.15
4.75 (950)	11.50	10.20
5.00 (1,000)	11.55	10.30
5.25 (1,050)	11.65	10.35
5.50 (1,100)	11.70	10.40
5.75 (1,150)	11.75	10.45
6.00 (1,200)	11.80	10.50
6.25 (1,250)	11.80	10.50
6.50 (1,300)	11.85	10.55
6.75 (1,350)	11.85	10.55
7.00–10.00 (1,400–2,000)	11.90	10.55

2.20.4 Minimum Number and Diameter of Suspension Ropes

The minimum number of hoisting ropes used shall be three for traction elevators and two for drum-type elevators.

Where a car counterweight is used, the number of counterweight ropes used shall be not less than two.

The term "diameter," where used in reference to ropes, shall refer to the nominal diameter as given by the rope manufacturer.

The minimum diameter of hoisting and counterweight ropes shall be 9.5 mm (0.375 in.). Outer wires of the ropes shall be not less than 0.56 mm (0.024 in.) in diameter.

2.20.5 Suspension-Rope Equalizers

2.20.5.1 Suspension-rope equalizers, where provided, shall be of the individual compression spring type or shall meet the requirements of 2.20.5.3. Springs in tension shall not be used to attach suspension ropes.

2.20.5.2 Single-bar-type equalizers shall be permitted only for winding drum machines with two ropes, to attach the ropes to the dead-end hitch plate, provided it meets the requirements of 2.20.5.3.

2.20.5.3 Equalizers other than the individual compression spring type shall be permitted, provided that their strength is established through tensile engineering tests. Such tests shall show the ultimate strength of the equalizers and its fastenings in its several parts and assembly to be not less than 10% in excess of the strength of the suspension ropes as required by 2.20.3.

2.20.6 Securing of Suspension Wire Ropes to Winding Drums

Suspension wire ropes of winding-drum machines shall have the drum ends of the ropes secured on the inside of the drum by clamps.

Where the ropes extend beyond their clamps or sockets, means shall be provided to prevent the rope ends from coming out of the inside of the drum and to prevent interference with other parts of the machine.

2.20.7 Spare Rope Turns on Winding Drums

Suspension wire ropes of winding drum machines shall have not less than one turn of the rope on the drum when the car is resting on the fully compressed buffers.

2.20.8 Reserved

2.20.9 Suspension-Rope Fastening

2.20.9.1 Type of Rope Fastenings. The car and counterweight ends of suspension wire ropes, or the stationary hitch-ends where multiple roping is used, shall be fastened in such a manner that all portions of the rope, except the portion inside the rope sockets, shall be readily visible.

Fastening shall be

(a) by individual tapered rope sockets (see 2.20.9.4) or other types of rope fastenings that have undergone adequate tensile engineering tests, provided that

(1) such fastenings conform to 2.20.9.2 and 2.20.9.3;

(2) the rope socketing is such as to develop at least 80% of the ultimate breaking strength of the strongest rope to be used in such fastenings; or

(b) by individual wedge rope sockets (see 2.20.9.5); and

(c) U-bolt-type rope clamps or similar devices shall not be used for suspension-rope fastenings.

2.20.9.2 Adjustable Shackle Rods. The car ends, or the car or counterweight dead ends where multiple roping is used, of all suspension wire ropes of traction-type elevators shall be provided with shackle rods of a design that will permit individual adjustment of the rope lengths. Similar shackle rods shall be provided on the car or counterweight ends of compensating ropes.

2.20.9.3 General Design Requirements. Wire-rope fastenings shall conform to 2.20.9.3.1 through 2.20.9.3.8.

2.20.9.3.1 The portion of the rope fastening that holds the wire rope (rope socket) and the shackle rod shall be in one piece (unit construction), or separate.

2.20.9.3.2 The rope socket shall be either cast or forged steel, provided that where the rope socket and the shackle rod are in one piece (unit construction), the entire fastening shall be of forged steel.

2.20.9.3.3 Where the shackle rod and rope socket are not in one piece, the shackle rod shall be of forged or rolled steel.

2.20.9.3.4 Cast or forged steel rope sockets, shackle rods, and their connections shall be made of unwelded steel, having an elongation of not less than 20% in a gauge length of 50 mm (2 in.), when measured in accordance with ASTM E 8, and conforming to ASTM A 668, Class B for forged steel, and ASTM A 27, Grade 60/30 for cast steel, and shall be stress relieved. Steels of greater strength shall be permitted, provided they have an elongation of not less than 20% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.).

2.20.9.3.5 Where the shackle rod is separate from the rope socket, the fastening between the two parts shall be positive, and such as to prevent their separation under all conditions of operation of the elevator.

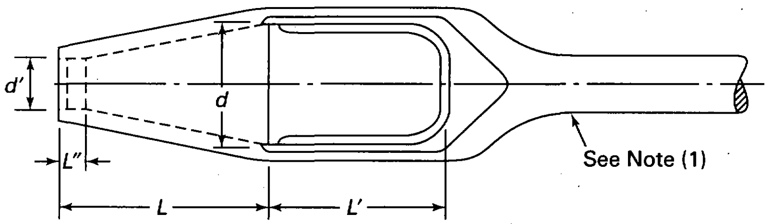
Where the connection of the two parts is threaded, the thread design, tolerance, and manufacture shall conform to the requirements of ASME B1.13M, M-6H/6g, coarse or fine threads (ASME B1.1, UNC or UNF Class 2A and Class 2B threads). The length of the thread engagement of the rod in the socket shall be not less than 1.5 times the root diameter of the thread on the rod, and a cotter pin or equivalent means shall in addition be provided to restrict the turning to the rod in the socket and prevent unscrewing of the connection in normal operation.

Eye bolts used as connections with clevis-type sockets shall be of forged steel conforming to ASTM A 668, Class B (heat treated), without welds.

2.20.9.3.6 Rope sockets shall be of such strength that the rope will break before the socket is materially deformed.

2.20.9.3.7 The shackle rod, eye bolt, or other means used to connect the rope socket to the car or counterweight shall have a strength at least equal to the manufacturer's rated breaking strength of the rope.

Fig. 2.20.9.4 Tapered Rope Sockets



NOTE:
(1) Rope socket and shackle rod may be in one piece, as shown (unit construction) or the socket and rod may be separate (see 2.20.9.3).

Table 2.20.9.4.5 Relation of Rope Diameter to Diameter of the Small Socket Hole

Nominal Rope Diameter, mm	Maximum Diameter of Hole, *d* ′, mm	Nominal Rope Diameter, in.	Maximum Diameter of Hole, *d* ′, in.
10 to 12 inclusive	2.5 larger than nominal rope diameter	$3/8$ to $7/16$ inclusive	$3/32$ larger than nominal rope diameter
13 to 19 inclusive	3 larger than nominal rope diameter	$1/2$ to $3/4$ inclusive	$1/8$ larger than nominal rope diameter
22 to 29 inclusive	4 larger than nominal rope diameter	$7/8$ to $1\,1/8$ inclusive	$5/32$ larger than nominal rope diameter
32 to 40 inclusive	5 larger than nominal rope diameter	$1\,1/4$ to $1\,1/2$ inclusive	$3/16$ larger than nominal rope diameter

2.20.9.3.8 Rope fastenings incorporating antifriction devices that will permit free spinning of the rope shall not be used.

2.20.9.4 Tapered Rope Sockets. Tapered rope sockets shall be of a design as shown in Fig. 2.20.9.4, and shall conform to 2.20.9.2 and 2.20.9.3, and 2.20.9.4.1 through 2.20.9.4.5.

2.20.9.4.1 The axial length *L* of the tapered portion of the socket shall be not less than 4.75 times the diameter of the wire rope used.

2.20.9.4.2 The axial length, *L*′, of the open portion of the rope socket shall be not less than 4 times the diameter of the wire rope used.

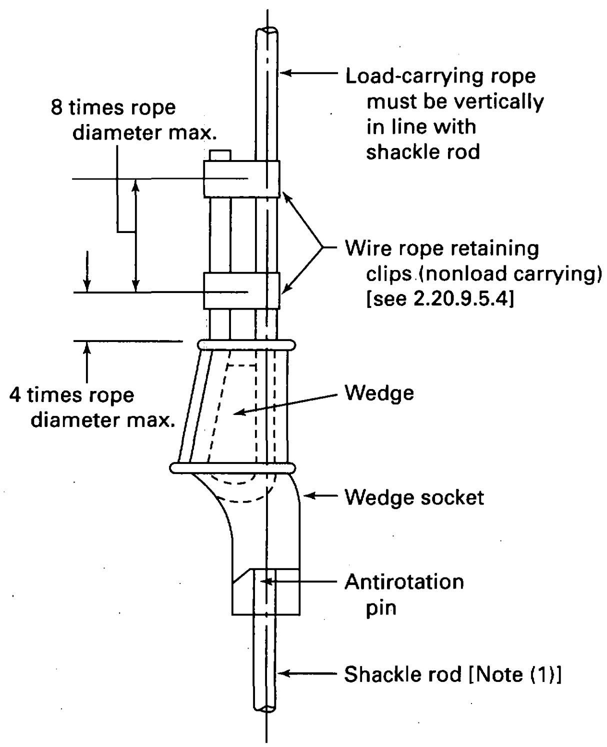
2.20.9.4.3 The length of the straight bore, *L*″, at the small end of the socket shall be not more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) nor less than 3 mm (0.125 in.), and its outer edge shall be rounded and free from cutting edges.

2.20.9.4.4 The diameter, *d*, of the hole at the large end of the tapered portion of the socket shall be not less than 2.25 times nor more than 3 times the diameter of the wire rope used.

2.20.9.4.5 The diameter, *d*′, of the hole at the end of the tapered portion of the socket shall be not more than shown in Table 2.20.9.4.5.

2.20.9.5 Wedge Rope Sockets. Wedge socket assemblies shall be of a design as shown in Fig. 2.20.9.5, and shall conform to 2.20.9.2 and 2.20.9.3, and 2.20.9.5.1 through 2.20.9.5.6.

Fig. 2.20.9.5 Wedge Rope Sockets



NOTE:
(1) Rope socket and shackle rod may be in one piece, as shown (unit construction) or the socket and rod may be separate (see 2.20.9.3).

2.20.9.5.1 A test specimen consisting of the strongest elevator wire rope for a given diameter and wedge socket assembly shall be subjected to a destructive tensile engineering test. The rope socketing shall develop at least 80% of the ultimate breaking strength of the strongest rope to be used in such a fastening without the rope slipping through the assembly.

2.20.9.5.2 Wedge socket assemblies shall be of such a strength that when tested as in 2.20.9.5.1, the rope shall break before the socket or wedge is materially deformed.

2.20.9.5.3 Suppliers of wedge sockets shall submit certification showing that the sockets, with visible permanent manufacturer's identification, have successfully passed the tests described in 2.20.9.5.1 and 2.20.9.5.2 at a testing laboratory.

2.20.9.5.4 When the rope has been seated in the wedge socket by the load on the rope, the wedge shall be visible, and at least two wire-rope retaining clips shall be provided to attach the termination side to the load-carrying side of the rope (see Fig. 2.20.9.5). The first clip shall be placed a maximum of 4 times the rope diameter above the socket, and the second clip shall be located within 8 times the rope diameter above the first clip. The purpose of the two clips is to retain the wedge and prevent the rope from slipping in the socket should the load on the rope be removed for any reason. The clips shall be designed and installed so that they do not distort or damage the rope in any manner.

2.20.9.5.5 Markings on the wedge socket assembly components shall be as follows:

(a) Each socket shall be permanently and legibly marked or color coded to identify the corresponding wedge, or wedges, and rope size to be used in the assembly. The markings shall be visible after installation.

(b) Each wedge shall be permanently and legibly marked or color coded to identify the corresponding socket, or sockets, and rope size, within which it is to be inserted to form an assembly. The markings shall be visible after installation.

2.20.9.5.6 Load-carrying rope shall be in line with shackle rod, and the sockets shall be permitted to be staggered in the direction of travel of the elevator and counterweight, where used.

2.20.9.6 Rope Socket Embedment Medium. Only babbitt metal or thermosetting resin compositions intended for elevator wire rope socketing shall be used to secure ropes in tapered sockets. The embedment material shall conform to 2.20.9.6.1 through 2.20.9.6.3.

2.20.9.6.1 Babbitt Metal. Babbitt metal shall contain at least 9% of antimony and shall be clean and free from dross.

2.20.9.6.2 Thermosetting Resin Composition

(a) Physical Properties. The thermoset resin composition shall have the following properties:

(1) Uncured (Liquid) Material

(a) Viscosity of Resin-Catalyst Mixture. The viscosity of the resin-catalyst mixture shall be sufficiently low to permit rapid, complete saturation of the rope rosette in order to prevent entrapment of air.

(b) Flash Point. All components shall have a minimum flash point of 27°C (80°F).

(c) Shelf Life. All components shall have a minimum of 1 year shelf life at 21°C (70°F).

(d) Pot Life and Cure Time. After mixing, the resin-catalyst mixture shall be pourable for a minimum of 8 min at 21°C (70°F) and shall cure within 1 h after hardening. Heating of the resin mixture in the socket to accelerate curing shall follow the resin manufacturer's instructions.

(2) Cured Resin

(a) Socket Performance. Resin, when cured, shall develop sufficient holding strength to solvent-washed wire in wire-rope sockets to develop 80% of the ultimate strength of all types of elevator wire rope. No slippage of wire is permissible when testing resin-filled rope socket assemblies in tension; however, after testing, some seating of the resin cone shall be permitted to be apparent and is acceptable. Resin terminations shall also be capable of withstanding tensile shock loading.

(b) Shrinkage. The volumetric shrinkage of fully cured resin shall not exceed 2%. The use of an inert filler in the resin is permissible.

(c) Curing. The resin-catalyst mixture shall be capable of curing either at ambient [16°C to 38°C (60°F to 100°F)] or elevated temperatures. At temperatures below 16°C (60°F), an elevated temperature cure shall be used.

(b) Materials Required. The thermoset resin composition intended for elevator wire rope socketing shall be supplied in two parts consisting of preweighed resin and preweighed catalyst, each packaged separately within a kit. Each kit containing the thermoset resin composition shall consist of the following:

(1) preweighed thermoset resin

(2) preweighed catalyst

(3) necessary materials for mixing and pouring

(4) detachable label on resin container

(c) Marking

(1) Resin Container. The label on the resin container shall show the following information:

(a) product name

(b) part designation (e.g., "Part A" or "Resin")

(c) manufacturer's name or trademark and address

(d) mixing instructions

(e) ICC information

(f) safety warnings and cautions

(g) packaging date
(h) flash point
(i) shelf life
(j) storage instructions
(k) curing instructions
(l) net weight
(m) a statement certifying that the product conforms to 2.20.9.6.2 of ASME A17.1 or CSA B44

2.20.9.6.3 Catalyst Container. The label on the catalyst container shall show the following information:
(a) product name
(b) part designation (e.g., "Part B," "Catalyst," or "Hardener")
(c) manufacturer's name or trademark and address
(d) safety warnings and cautions
(e) flash point
(f) storage instructions
(g) net weight

2.20.9.7 Method of Securing Wire Ropes in Tapered Sockets. Where the tapered type of socket is used, the method and procedure to be followed in making up the fastening shall conform to the following as applicable.

2.20.9.7.1 Handling. The rope to be socketed shall be carefully handled to prevent twisting, untwisting, or kinking.

2.20.9.7.2 Seizing of Rope Ends. The rope ends to be socketed shall be seized before cutting with seizing in accordance with the following:

(a) The seizing shall be done with annealed iron wire, provided that other methods of seizing be permitted, that give the same protection from loss of rope lay. Where iron wire is used for seizing, the length of each seizing shall be not less than the diameter of the rope.

(b) For nonpreformed rope, three seizings shall be made at each side of the cut in the rope. The first seizing shall be close to the cut end of the rope, and the second seizing shall be spaced back from the first the length of the end of the rope to be turned in. The third seizing shall be at a distance from the second equal to the length of the tapered portion of the socket.

(c) For preformed rope, one seizing shall be made at each side of the cut in the rope. The seizing shall be at a distance from the end of the rope equal to the length of the tapered portion of the socket plus the length of the portion of the rope to be turned in.

2.20.9.7.3 Spreading of Rope Strands. After the rope has been seized, it shall be inserted into the socket through the hole in the small end, a sufficient distance for manipulation, and where nonpreformed rope is used, the first two seizings shall be removed. The rope strands shall then be spread apart, and where rope with fibre core is used, the fibre core shall be cut away as close as possible to the remaining seizing.

2.20.9.7.4 Removal of Grease or Oil. Thorough cleaning of the outer wires of the strand surface and the inside of the rope socket is required for good adhesion. Brush or dip in clean solvents is recommended.

2.20.9.7.5 Turning in of Rope Strands. The exposed rope strands shall then be bent, turned in, and bunched closely together, each strand being turned back the same distance. The portion turned in (rope rosette) shall have a length of not less than 2.5 times the diameter of the rope, and such that, when the rope is pulled as far as possible into the socket, the bend of the turned-in strands shall be slightly overflush with the mouth of the tapered socket (large end) and will be visible when the socket has been completed (see 2.20.9.7.9). Where rope with steel core is used, the steel core shall be cut off even with tops of the looped strands.

2.20.9.7.6 Insertion of Bent-In Rope Strands in Socket. The rope end shall be pulled as far as possible into the socket, so that the remaining seizing projects outside the hole at the small end of the socket.

2.20.9.7.7 Position of Socket Preparatory to Pouring Embedment Medium. The socket shall be held in a vertical position with the large end up, and the rope held in a position truly axial with the socket. Tape or waste shall be permitted to be wound around the rope at the small end of the socket to prevent the embedment medium from seeping through, but shall be removed after completion of the socket.

2.20.9.7.8 Preparation of Embedment Medium

(a) *Babbitt Metal*

(1) *Heating of Babbitt.* The babbitt shall be heated to a fluidity just sufficient to char a piece of soft wood such as white pine without igniting it. Care shall be taken not to overheat the babbitt sufficiently to damage the rope.

(2) *Heating of Socket Basket and Pouring of Babbitt.* The rope socket basket shall be heated by a blowtorch flame sufficiently to prevent chilling of the babbitt and to ensure that the babbitt, when poured, will completely fill the basket, including all the spaces between the rope strands. Following this the molten babbitt shall be poured slowly and evenly into the basket until it is filled to a point level with the top of the opening in the large end.

(b) *Thermosetting Resin Composition*

(1) The manufacturer's directions shall be strictly followed in handling, mixing, pouring, and curing the resin material.

(2) New containers of resin and catalyst shall be utilized for each set of rope sockets. The entire quantity of resin and catalyst shall be mixed when the containers are opened.

(3) Resin sockets shall not be poured at a temperature below 16°C (60°F) without first warming the socket

and the resin composition to 21°C to 32°C (70°F to 90°F). The socket shall be permitted to be warmed using the electrical resistance heating devices intended for curing resin sockets.

(4) Curing of resin sockets shall be accomplished by heating at elevated temperature following the manufacturer's suggested schedule and directions. Cure time shall not exceed 30 min. Electrical resistance heating devices designed to fit around the sockets, or other means of providing controlled, evenly distributed heat, shall be used to provide the elevated temperature for curing. Open flames or exposed electrical resistance heating elements shall not be used.

(5) Upon completion of the socketing, the label from the container of resin shall be attached to one of the rope sockets for inspection purposes and shall be suitably protected.

2.20.9.7.9 Inspection of Sockets After Completion. A visual inspection of the completed sockets shall be made after they have cooled and the tape or waste has been removed from the small end of the sockets. The visual inspection shall verify that

(a) the embedment medium is visible at the small end of the socket

(b) the bends of all of the individual rope strands (see 2.20.9.7.5) are approximately the same height above the embedment medium and visible within the range of not less than one-half the diameter of the rope strand above the embedment medium and that there is not more than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) clearance between the embedment medium and the underside of the bend in the rope strand

(c) no loss of rope lay has occurred where the wire rope enters the socket

2.20.9.7.10 Lubrication of Wire Rope After Socket Attachment. After the resin has cured, the wire ropes shall be lubricated at the base of the socket (small end) to replace the lubricant that was removed during the cleaning operation required under 2.20.9.7.4.

2.20.9.8 Antirotation Devices. Following the completion of the rope socketing and any adjustments of individual shackle rods as provided for in 2.20.9.2, means shall be provided to prevent the rotation of the suspension ropes without restricting their movement horizontally or vertically.

2.20.10 Auxiliary Rope Fastening Devices

Auxiliary rope fastening devices, designed to support elevator cars or counterweights if any regular rope fastening fails, shall be permitted to be provided, subject to the requirements of 2.20.10.1 through 2.20.10.9.

2.20.10.1 They shall be approved on the basis of adequate tensile and fatigue engineering tests.

2.20.10.2 The device and its fastenings, in its several parts and assembly, shall have a strength at least equal to that of the manufacturer's breaking strength of the rope to which it is to be attached.

2.20.10.3 Steel parts used in the device shall be cast or forged with an elongation of not less than 20%, conforming to ASTM A 668, Class B, for forgings and ASTM A 27, Grade 60/30 for cast steel, and shall be stress relieved.

2.20.10.4 The device shall be so designed and installed that

(a) it will not become operative unless there is a failure of the normal rope fastening

(b) it will function in a rope movement of not over 38 mm (1.5 in.)

(c) it will not interfere with the vertical or rotational movements of the rope during normal service

2.20.10.5 Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when any auxiliary fastening device operates. Such means shall

(a) have all electrical parts enclosed

(b) be of the manually reset type that can be reset only when the wire rope or ropes have been resocketed and the auxiliary rope fastening device has been restored to its normal running position

2.20.10.6 The method used to attach the device to the rope shall be such as to prevent injury to, or appreciable deformation of, the rope.

2.20.10.7 The installation of the device shall not reduce the required overhead clearances.

2.20.10.8 The car-frame supports for the fastening members of the device shall conform to 2.15.13, or where existing conditions will not permit compliance with this requirement, other means of fastening shall be permitted to be used subject to the approval of the enforcing authority.

2.20.10.9 Each device shall be permanently marked with the name or trademark of the manufacturer by means of metal tags or plates with the following data of the wire rope for which they are designated to be used:

(a) diameter of the rope in millimeters (mm) or inches (in.)

(b) manufacturer's rated breaking strength of the rope

(c) construction classification of the wire rope

The material and marking of the tags or plates shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.).

SECTION 2.21
COUNTERWEIGHTS

2.21.1 General Requirements

2.21.1.1 Frames. Weight sections of a counterweight shall be mounted in structural or formed metal frames so designed as to retain them securely in place (see 2.21.2.6).

2.21.1.2 Retention of Weight Sections. Means shall be provided to retain weight sections in place in the event of buffer engagement or safety application or if they become broken.

Where tie rods are used, a minimum of two shall be provided, that shall pass through all weight sections. Tie-rods shall be provided with a lock nut and cotter pin at each end.

2.21.1.3 Guiding Members. Counterweight frames shall be guided on each guide rail by upper and lower guiding members attached to the frame.

Retention means shall be provided to prevent the counterweight from being displaced by more than 13 mm (0.5 in.) from its normal running position should any part of the guiding means fail, excluding the guiding member base and its attachment to the frame. The retention means shall be permitted to be integral with the base.

2.21.1.4 Independent Car Counterweights. Where an independent car counterweight is provided, it shall run in separate guide rails and shall not be of sufficient weight to cause undue slackening of the hoisting ropes during acceleration or retardation of the elevator car.

2.21.2 Design Requirements for Frames and Rods

2.21.2.1 Material. Frames and rods shall be made of steel or other metals conforming to 2.15.6.2 and 2.15.6.3, provided that where steels of greater strength than those specified, or where metals other than steel are used, the factor of safety used in the design shall conform to 2.21.2.3.

2.21.2.2 Frame Connections. Connections between frame members shall conform to 2.15.7.

2.21.2.3 Factor of Safety

2.21.2.3.1 The frame members and their connections shall be designed with a factor of safety of not less than 5 with the elevator at rest and the counterweight at the top of its travel.

2.21.2.3.2 The counterweight frame shall be designed with a factor of safety of not less than 2.5 at buffer engagement or safety application.

2.21.2.3.3 The frame members, brackets, and their connections subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19.4) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of the emergency braking so that the resulting stresses due to the emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall not exceed 190 MPa (27,500 psi).

2.21.2.4 Sheaves. Where a hoisting sheave or sheaves are mounted in the frame, the requirements of 2.15.12 shall apply (see also 2.24.2 and 2.24.3 for requirements for sheaves).

2.21.2.5 Suspension-Rope Hitch or Shapes. Where counterweights are suspended by ropes attached directly to the frames by means of rope fastenings, the rope attachments shall conform to 2.15.13.

2.21.2.6 Securing of Weights in Frames. The weights shall be so mounted and secured in the frames as to prevent shifting of the weights by an amount that will reduce the running clearances to less than those specified in 2.5.1.2.

2.21.3 Cars Counterbalancing One Another

An elevator car shall not be used to counterbalance another elevator car.

2.21.4 Compensation Means (07)

Compensation means, such as compensating ropes or chains or other mechanical means and their attachments (except for safety hooks, where used) to tie the counterweight and car together, shall be capable of withstanding, with a factor of safety of 5, any forces to which the means is subjected with the elevator at rest.

The maximum suspended weight of compensation means with car or counterweight at the top of its travel and one-half total weight of tension sheave assembly, where used, shall be included.

The factor of safety for compensation means shall be based on the minimum, breaking load, or breaking force as appropriate to the tensile testing method.

2.21.4.1 Connections. A connection shall be provided between the car or counterweight and the compensation means. The connection shall be bolted or welded and shall conform to 2.15.7.3. (07)

2.21.4.1.1 Cast iron, where used, shall have a factor of safety of not less than 10, based on maximum stress developed.

2.21.4.1.2 When compensation ropes are used with a tension sheave, one end of each rope shall be provided with a means to individually adjust rope length.

2.21.4.2 Tie-Down Compensation Means. For rated speeds greater than 3.5 m/s (700 ft/min), a tie-down compensation means shall be provided and fastened to the building structure to limit the jump of the car or counterweight as a result of car or counterweight buffer engagement or safety application. (07)

The compensation means, connection, building structural members, and fastenings shall be capable of withstanding the maximum forces to which they are

Table 2.22.3.1 Minimum Spring Buffer Stroke

Rated Car Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Minimum Stroke, mm (in.)
0.5 or less (100 or less)	38 (1.5)
0.51 to 0.75 (101 to 150)	63 (2.5)
0.76 to 1.00 (151 to 200)	100 (4.0)

subjected due to car or counterweight buffer engagement or safety application with a factor of safety of not less than 2.5.

SECTION 2.22 BUFFERS AND BUMPERS

2.22.1 Type and Location

2.22.1.1 Type of Buffers. Buffers of the spring, oil, or equivalent type shall be installed under the cars and counterweights of passenger and freight elevators subject to the requirements of 2.22.1.1.1 through 2.22.1.1.3.

2.22.1.1.1 Spring buffers or their equivalent shall be permitted to be used where the rated speed is not in excess of 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

2.22.1.1.2 Oil buffers or their equivalent shall be used where the rated speed is in excess of 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

2.22.1.1.3 Where Type C safeties are used (see 2.17.8.2), car buffers are not required if solid bumpers are installed.

2.22.1.2 Location. Buffers or bumpers shall be located so as to retard the car and counterweight without exceeding allowable design stresses in the car frame and counterweight frame.

2.22.2 Solid Bumpers

Solid bumpers, where permitted, shall be made of wood or other suitably resilient material of sufficient strength to withstand without failure the impact of the car with rated load, or the counterweight, descending at governor tripping speed.

The material used shall be of a type that will resist deterioration or be so treated as to resist deterioration.

2.22.3 Spring Buffers

2.22.3.1 Stroke. The stroke of the buffer spring, as marked on its marking plate, shall be equal to or greater than the value specified in Table 2.22.3.1.

2.22.3.2 Load Rating

2.22.3.2.1 Buffers for cars and counterweights shall be capable of supporting, without being compressed solid or to a fixed stop, a static load having a minimum of 2 times the total weight of

(a) the car and its rated load for car buffers
(b) the counterweight for counterweight buffers

2.22.3.2.2 Buffers for cars and counterweights shall be compressed solid or to a fixed stop with a static load of three times the weight of

(a) the car and its rated load for car buffers
(b) the counterweight for counterweight buffers

2.22.3.2.3 Where the space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the load rating specified in 2.22.3.2.1 shall be increased to meet the requirements of 2.6.1(b) and 2.6.2.

2.22.3.3 Marking Plates. Each spring buffer shall be provided with a marking plate showing its load rating and stroke and the number of springs. Where the springs are removable, each spring shall be identified, and the assembly marking plate shall indicate this identification. Markings shall be made in a permanent and legible manner.

2.22.4 Oil Buffers

2.22.4.1 Stroke. The minimum stroke of oil buffers shall be based on the requirements of 2.22.4.1.1 or 2.22.4.1.2.

2.22.4.1.1 The stroke shall be such that the car or the counterweight, on striking the buffer at 115% of the rated speed, shall be brought to rest with an average retardation of not more than 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

2.22.4.1.2 Where terminal speed reducing device is installed that conforms to 2.25.4.1, and that will limit the speed at which the car or counterweight can strike its buffer, the buffer stroke shall be based on at least 115% of such reduced striking speed and on an average retardation not exceeding 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2). In no case shall the stroke used be less than 50% of the stroke required by 2.22.4.1.1 for rated speeds under 4 m/s (800 ft/min), nor less than 33⅓%, or 450 mm (18 in.), whichever is greater, for rated speeds of 4 m/s (800 ft/min) or more.

NOTE (2.22.4.1): Figure 8.2.4 indicates the minimum buffer strokes for various initial velocities. Table 2.22.4.1 indicates the minimum buffer strokes for the most usual rated speeds. See formula in 8.2.4 for calculation of buffer strokes differing from or exceeding those listed in Table 2.22.4.1.

2.22.4.2 Retardation. Oil buffers shall develop an average retardation not in excess of 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2), and shall develop no peak retardation greater than 24.5 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2), having a duration exceeding 0.04 s with any load in the car, from rated load to a minimum load of 70 kg (154 lb), when the buffers are struck with an initial speed of not more than

(a) 115% of the rated speed for buffers conforming to 2.22.4.1.1
(b) 115% of the predetermined reduced speed for buffers conforming to 2.22.4.1.2

Table 2.22.4.1 Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes

SI Units			Imperial Units		
Rated Speed, m/s	115% of Rated Speed, m/s	Minimum Stroke, mm	Rated Speed, ft/min	115% of Rated Speed, ft/min	Minimum Stroke, in.
1.00	1.15	65	200	230	2.75
1.12	1.29	85	225	269	3.50
1.25	1.44	105	250	288	4.25
1.50	1.73	155	300	345	6.25
1.75	2.01	205	350	402	8.25
2.00	2.30	270	400	460	11.00
2.25	2.59	340	450	517	13.75
2.50	2.88	425	500	575	17.00
3.00	3.45	605	600	690	24.75
3.50	4.03	825	700	805	33.25
4.00	4.60	1 080	800	920	43.75
4.50	5.18	1 365	900	1,035	55.50
5.00	5.75	1 685	1,000	1,150	68.50
5.50	6.32	2 040	1,100	1,265	83.00
6.00	6.90	2 425	1,200	1,380	98.50
6.50	7.48	2 845	1,300	1,495	115.50
7.00	8.05	3 300	1,400	1,610	134.50
7.50	8.63	3 790	1,500	1,725	154.00
8.00	9.20	4 310	1,600	1,840	175.25
8.50	9.78	4 870	1,700	1,955	197.75
9.00	10.35	5 460	1,800	2,070	221.75
9.50	10.93	6 080	1,900	2,105	247.00
10.00	11.50	6 740	2,000	2,300	273.75

2.22.4.3 Factor of Safety for Oil-Buffer Parts. The factor of safety of parts of oil buffers, based on the yield point for compression members and on the ultimate strength and elongation for other parts, at gravity retardation with the maximum load for which the buffer is designed, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 8 using a 50 mm (2 in.) gauge length, shall be not less than

(a) 3 for materials having an elongation 20% or more

(b) 3.5 for materials having an elongation from 15% to 20%

(c) 4 for materials having an elongation from 10% to 15%

(d) 5 for materials having an elongation less than 10%

(e) 10 for cast iron parts

2.22.4.4 Slenderness Ratio for Members Under Compression as Columns. The slenderness ratio (*L/R*) for members of oil buffers under compression as columns shall be not more than 80.

The slenderness ratio (*L/R*) specified applies only to those main buffer members that are subject to the impact of the fully loaded car when striking the buffer.

2.22.4.5 Plunger Return Requirements. Oil buffers shall be so designed that

(a) the buffer plunger of gravity-return and spring-return-type oil buffers, when the buffer is filled with oil shall, when released after full compression, return to its fully extended position within 90 s

(b) the plunger of a spring-return-type oil buffer with a 20 kg (44 lb) weight resting on it shall, when released after being depressed 50 mm (2 in.), return to the fully extended position within 30 s

(c) gas spring-return oil buffers shall be provided with a switch conforming to 2.26.2.22 that shall be actuated if the plunger is not within 13 mm (0.5 in.) of the fully extended position

2.22.4.6 Means for Determining Oil Level. Oil buffers shall be provided with means for determining that the oil level is within the maximum and minimum allowable limits. Glass sight gauges shall not be used.

2.22.4.7 Type Tests and Certification for Oil Buffers

2.22.4.7.1 Each type of oil buffer shall be subjected to the type tests as specified in 8.3.2 and to the certification process as specified in 8.3.1.

2.22.4.7.2 A type test on an oil buffer shall be permitted to be acceptable for similarly designed buffers, provided that the longest stroke of the type is subjected to the type test; and the load range of the buffer is within the maximum and minimum range for the oil portings of the given buffer.

2.22.4.7.3 Oil buffers tested in accordance with the test requirements of prior editions of ASME A17.1 or CSA B44 shall be acceptable without being retested, provided the buffer has been listed/certified to a previous edition of the Code or on submittal by the person or organization installing the buffers of the test certificate stating that the buffer, when tested, met the specified test requirements of that edition of the Code.

2.22.4.8 Compression of Buffers When Car Is Level With Terminal Landings. Car and counterweight oil buffers of the mechanical spring-return type shall be permitted to be compressed not to exceed 25% of their stroke when the car is level with the terminal landings (see 2.4.2.1).

2.22.4.9 Buffer Oil Requirements. Oils used in oil buffers shall have a pour point of −18°C (0°F), or lower, as defined in ASTM D 97, and a viscosity index of 75, or higher, as defined in ASTM D 2270.

2.22.4.10 Load Ratings of Oil Buffers. The minimum and maximum load ratings of car and counterweight oil buffers, as indicated on the buffer marking plate, shall conform to 2.22.4.10.1 through 2.22.4.10.3.

2.22.4.10.1 The minimum load rating shall be not greater than

(*a*) for car oil buffers, the total weight of the car as marked on the car crosshead data plate plus 70 kg (150 lb)

(*b*) for counterweight oil buffers, the weight of the counterweight used

2.22.4.10.2 The maximum load rating shall be not less than

(*a*) for car oil buffers, the total weight of the car as marked on the crosshead data plate plus the rated load

(*b*) for counterweight oil buffers, the weight of the counterweight used

(ED) **2.22.4.10.3** When compensating rope tie-down is present, the increase in load shall be taken into account (see 2.21.4.2).

2.22.4.11 Buffer Marking Plate. Every installed oil buffer shall have permanently attached thereto a metal plate, marked by the manufacturer in a legible and permanent manner, indicating

(*a*) the maximum and minimum loads and the maximum striking speeds for which the buffer has been rated for use in conformance with the requirements in 2.22

(*b*) the permissible range in viscosity of the buffer oil to be used, stated in Saybolt Seconds Universal at 38°C (100°F)

(*c*) the viscosity index number of the oil to be used

(*d*) the pour point in degrees Celsius (Fahrenheit) of the oil to be used

(*e*) the stroke of the buffer in mm (in.)

(*f*) the composition of the gas, if used

(*g*) the name, trademark, or file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified

(*h*) the certification marking in accordance with 8.3.1.3

SECTION 2.23
CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT GUIDE RAILS, GUIDE-RAIL SUPPORTS, AND FASTENINGS

2.23.1 Guide Rails Required

Elevator cars and counterweights shall be provided with guide rails.

2.23.2 Material

Guide rails, guide-rail brackets, rail clips, fishplates, and their fastenings shall be either of the following:

(*a*) of steel or other metals conforming to 2.23

(*b*) where steel presents an accident hazard, as in chemical or explosive plants, guide rails shall be permitted to be of selected wood or other suitable nonmetallic materials, provided the rated speed of the car does not exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

2.23.2.1 Requirements for Steel, Where Used

(*a*) Rails, brackets, fishplates, and rail clips shall be made of open-hearth steel, or its equivalent, having a tensile strength of not less than 380 MPa (55,000 psi) and having an elongation of not less than 22% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.) when measured in accordance with ASTM E 8.

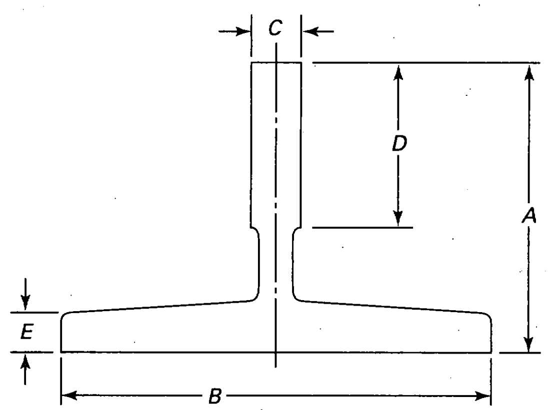
(*b*) Bolts shall conform to ASTM A 307.

(*c*) Rivets shall conform to ASTM A 502.

(*d*) Maximum permissible stresses and deflections shall conform to 2.23.5.

2.23.2.2 Requirements for Metals Other Than Steel. Metals other than steel shall be permitted to be used, provided the factor of safety is not less than, and the deflections are not more than, the values specified in this section, and provided that cast iron is not used.

Fig. 2.23.3 Elevator Guide Rails



T Section Rail

2.23.3 Rail Section

Guide rails shall be either of the following:

(a) T-section, conforming to the nominal weights and dimensions shown in Fig. 2.23.3 and Table 2.23.3

(b) other shapes, subject to the following requirements:

(1) They shall have a section modulus and moment of inertia equal to or greater than that of the section shown in Fig. 2.23.3 for a given loading condition.

(2) They shall have a sectional area sufficient to withstand the compressive forces resulting from the application of the car or counterweight safety device, if used.

(05S) 2.23.4 Maximum Load on Rails in Relation to the Bracket Spacing

The maximum load on guide rails in relation to the bracket spacing shall conform to 2.23.4.1 through 2.23.4.3. In addition to the loads specified therein any static and dynamic loads imposed by the support of machines, sheaves, and hitches, if any, on one or more guide rails shall be taken into account in determining rail size and bracket spacing.

The combination of all vertical loads on any single guide rail shall not exceed one-half of the values specified in Fig. 2.23.4.1-1 in relation to the bracket spacing. This load requirement is not intended to limit design, and more detailed design and calculation methods shall be permitted to be used, provided that the moments and vertical loads induced into the rail system are taken into account in the calculations.

EXAMPLES (2.23.4):

(1) *SI Units.* For 2 750 kg total weight of car plus load and a 2 150 kg counterweight, both roped 2:1; 90 kg suspension weight, 70 kg compensation weight, 20 kg traveling cable weight, and a machine weight of 360 kg; and with the machine supported in the overhead by one guide rail; the impacted reaction on that guide rail due to the machine loading is 2 750 kg + 2 150 kg + 90 kg + 70 kg + 20 kg + 360 kg = 5 440 kg. The equivalent static loading per pair of guide rails is 5 440 kg and given a 22.5 kg/m rail, there is a maximum bracket spacing of 4 050 mm.

(2) *Imperial Units.* For 6,000 lb total weight of car plus load and a 4,700 lb counterweight, both roped 2:1; 200 lb suspension weight; 150 lb compensation weight; 45 lb traveling cable weight, and a machine weight of 800 lb; and with the machine supported in the overhead by one guide rail; the impacted reaction on that guide rail due to the machine loading is 6,000 lb + 4,700 lb + 200 lb + 150 lb +45 lb + 800 lb = 11,895 lb. The equivalent static loading per pair of guide rails is 11,895 lb and given a 15 lb rail, there is a maximum bracket spacing of 13 ft 3 in.

2.23.4.1 With Single Car or Counterweight Safety. Where a single car or counterweight safety is used, the maximum suspended weight of the car and its rated load, or the maximum suspended weight of the counterweight, including the weight of any compensation means and of any traveling cables suspended therefrom per pair of guide rails, shall not exceed the maximum specified in Fig. 2.23.4.1-1 for the size of the rail and the bracket spacing used, except that the bracket spacing shall be permitted to exceed the values specified in Fig. 2.23.4.1-1, provided that

(a) the guide rail is reinforced or a rail of larger size is used

(b) the moment of inertia of a single reinforced rail or of a single larger size T-section about the *x-x* axis parallel to the base of the rail is not less than that required by Fig. 2.23.4.1-1 for the given weight of car plus load, or the counterweight with safety device, at the bracket spacing used

(c) where the bracket spacings exceed those shown on Figs. 2.23.4.1-1 and 2.23.4.1-2, the rail system

(1) conforms to 2.23.5

(2) is designed to limit the deflection during the application of the safety with a fully loaded car to not more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) per rail

EXAMPLES [2.23.4.1(c)]:

(1) *SI Units.* For 5 500 kg total weight of car plus load and a bracket spacing of 4 875 mm, there is required

(a) 27.5 kg/m rail without reinforcement; or

(b) 22.5 kg/m rail with reinforcement having a combined moment of inertia of 3.3 mm × 10^6 mm^4.

(2) *Imperial Units.* For 12,000 lb total weight of car plus load and a bracket spacing of 16 ft 0 in., there is a required

(a) 18.5 lb rail without reinforcement; or

(b) 15 lb rail with reinforcement having a combined moment of inertia of 8 $in.^4$

2.23.4.2 With Two (Duplex) Car or Counterweight Safeties. Where the car or counterweight is provided with two safety devices, the loads specified in Fig. 2.23.4.1-1 shall be permitted to be increased by the factors specified in Table 2.23.4.2.

Table 2.23.3 T-Section Guide-Rail Dimensions

SI Units						Imperial Units					
Nominal Mass, kg/m	Nominal Dimensions, mm					Nominal Weight, lb/ft	Nominal Dimensions, in.				
	A	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*		*A*	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*
8.5	68.3	82.6	9.1	25.4	6.0	$5\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{11}{16}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{23}{64}$	1	$\frac{15}{64}$
9.5	49.2	69.9	15.9	25.4	7.9	$6\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{15}{16}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	1	$\frac{5}{16}$
12.0	61.9	88.9	15.9	31.8	7.9	8	$2\frac{7}{16}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$
16.5	88.9	114.3	15.9	38.1	7.9	11	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{16}$
18.0	88.9	127.0	15.9	44.5	7.9	12	$3\frac{1}{2}$	5	$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$
22.5	88.9	127.0	15.9	50.0	12.7	15	$3\frac{1}{2}$	5	$\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{31}{32}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
27.5	108.0	139.7	19.1	50.0	12.7	$18\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{31}{32}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
33.5	101.6	139.7	28.6	50.8	14.3	$22\frac{1}{2}$	4	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	2	$\frac{9}{16}$
44.5	127.0	139.7	31.8	57.2	17.5	30	5	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{11}{16}$

2.23.4.3 Counterweight With No Safety

2.23.4.3.1 Guide rails for counterweights not provided with a safety device shall be fastened to the building structure at intervals specified in Table 2.23.4.3.1, except as specified in 2.23.4.3.2, and the weight of the counterweight for each size of guide rail shall not exceed that specified in Table 2.23.4.3.1.

2.23.4.3.2 The bracket spacing specified shall be permitted to be increased by an amount determined by Figs. 2.23.4.1-1 and 2.23.4.1-2, subject to the following requirements:

(*a*) where guide rails are reinforced or a larger rail section is used having a moment of inertia, about an axis parallel to the base [*x-x* axis in Fig. 2.23.4.1-2], at least equal to that of the rail sections shown in Table 2.23.3, based on the weight of the counterweight

(*b*) where intermediate tie brackets, approximately equally spaced, are provided between the guide rails at intervals of not over 2 130 mm (84 in.)

2.23.4.3.3 Intermediate tie brackets, approximately equally spaced, shall be provided between the guide rails at intervals as specified in Table 2.23.4.3.3. Intermediate tie brackets are not required to be fastened to the building structure.

2.23.5 Stresses and Deflections

2.23.5.1 Guide Rails

(05S) **2.23.5.1.1** For steels conforming to 2.23.2.1, the stresses in a guide rail, or in the rail and its reinforcement shall not exceed 105 MPa (15,000 psi), based upon the class of loading, and the deflection shall not exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.). The loads used to determine the guide rail stress and deflection shall include vertical and moment loads transferred into the rail, that are imposed by equipment supported by the guide rail, combined with the horizontal forces imposed on the rail during loading, unloading, or running, calculated without impact (see 2.16.2.2 and 8.2.2.6).

2.23.5.1.2 Where steels of greater strength than those specified in 2.23.2.1 are used, the stresses specified may be increased proportionately, based on the ratio of the ultimate strengths.

2.23.5.2 Brackets, Fastenings, and Supports. The guide-rail brackets, their fastenings, and supports, such as building beams and walls, shall be capable of resisting the horizontal forces imposed by the class of loading (see 2.16.2.2 and 8.2.2.6) with a total deflection at the point of support not in excess of 3 mm (0.125 in.).

2.23.5.3 Allowable Stresses Due to Emergency Braking. Guide rails, brackets, supports, and their fastenings subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19.4) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of the emergency braking so that the resulting stresses due to the emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall not exceed 190 MPa (27,500 psi).

2.23.6 Guide-Rail Surfaces

Guide-rail surfaces used for guiding a car or counterweight shall be sufficiently smooth and true to operate properly with the guiding members. Those surfaces that the car or counterweight safeties engage shall be smooth and true within the tolerances required to ensure proper safety application without excessive retardation or excessive out-of-level platform conditions resulting (see 2.17.3, 2.17.9.2, and 2.17.16).

2.23.7 Rail Joints and Fishplates

2.23.7.1 Type and Strength of Rail Joints. Metal guide-rail sections shall be joined together as specified in 2.23.7.2. The jointed rail sections shall withstand the

(07) **Fig. 2.23.4.1-1 Maximum Weight of a Car With Rated Load or of Counterweight With Safety Device for a Pair of Guide Rails as Specified in 2.23.4.1**

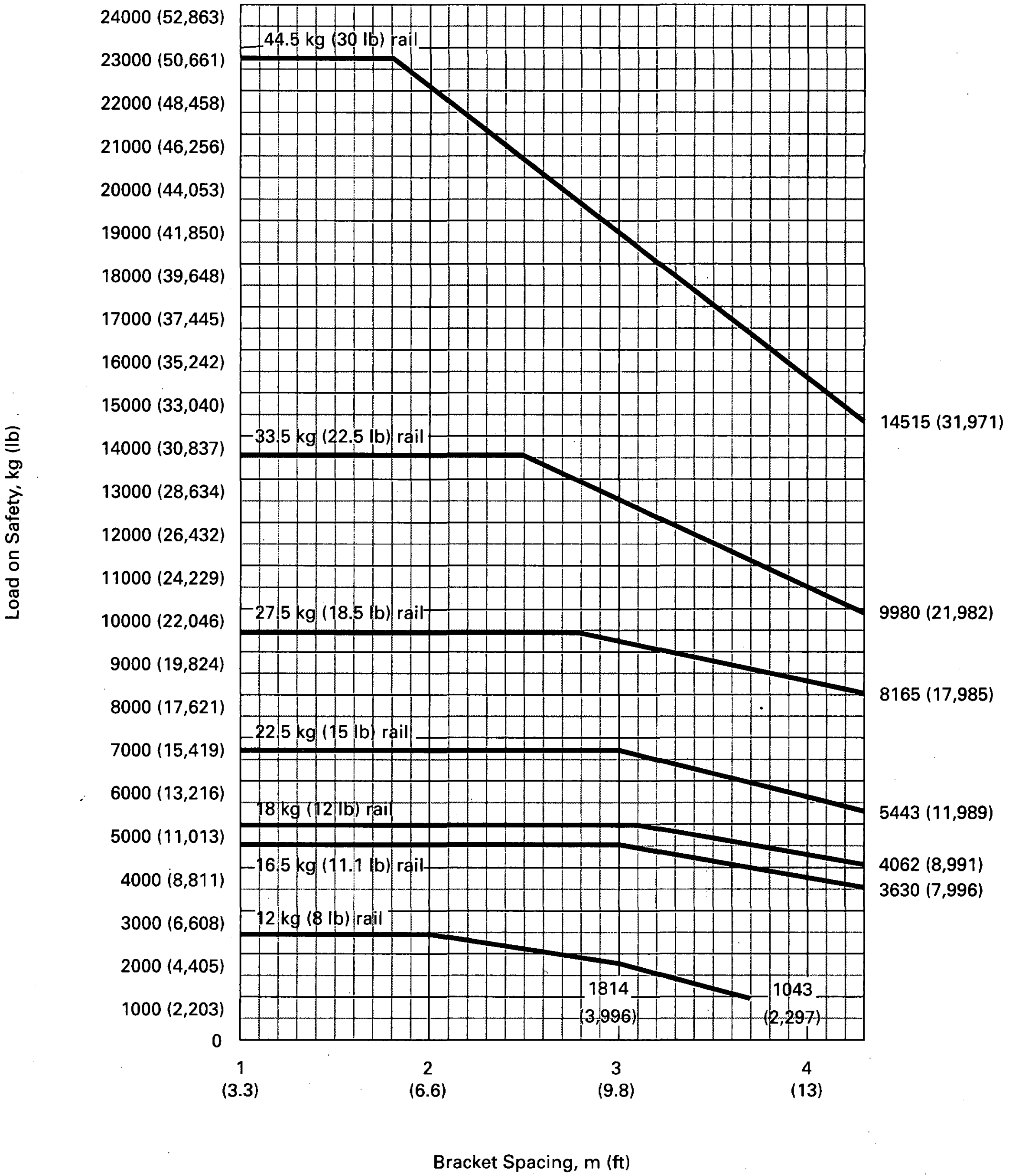
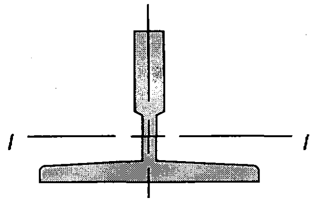
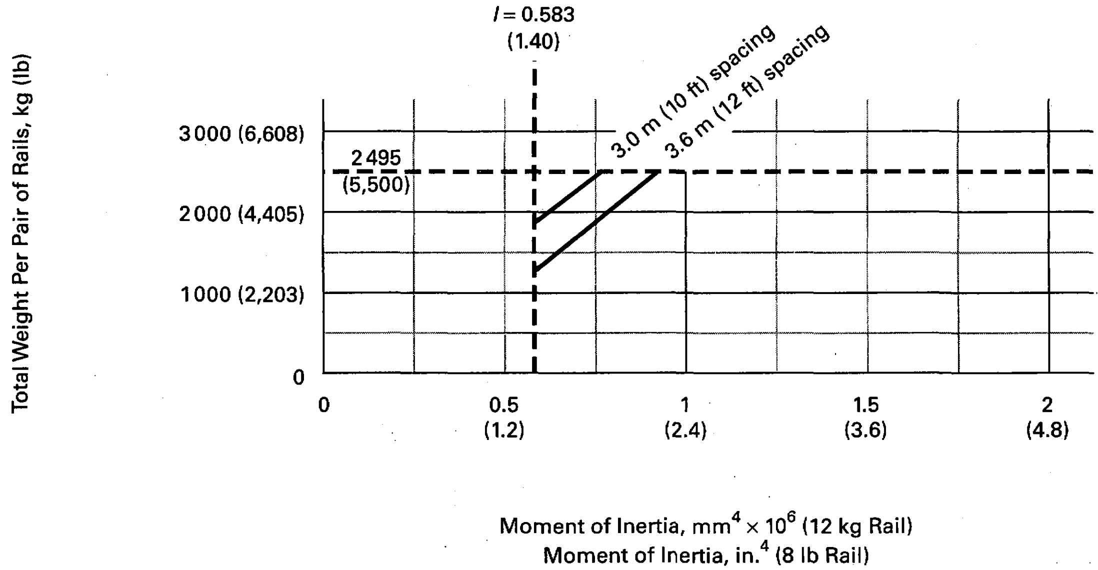
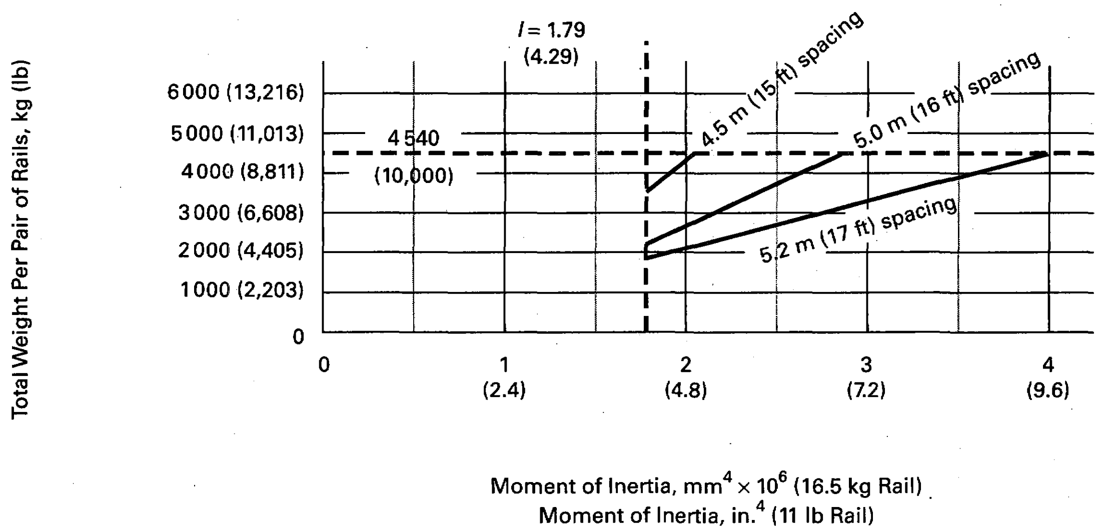


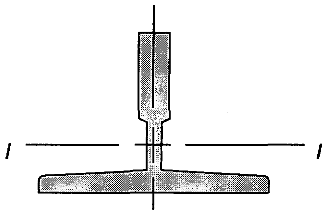
Fig. 2.23.4.1-2 Minimum Moment of Inertia About *x-x* Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement (07)

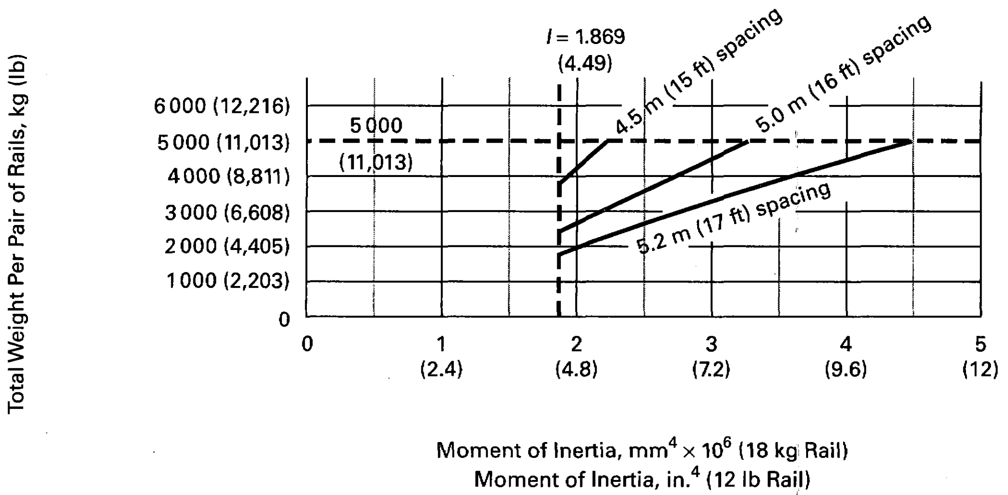






(07) **Fig. 2.23.4.1-2 Minimum Moment of Inertia About *x-x* Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement (Cont'd)**





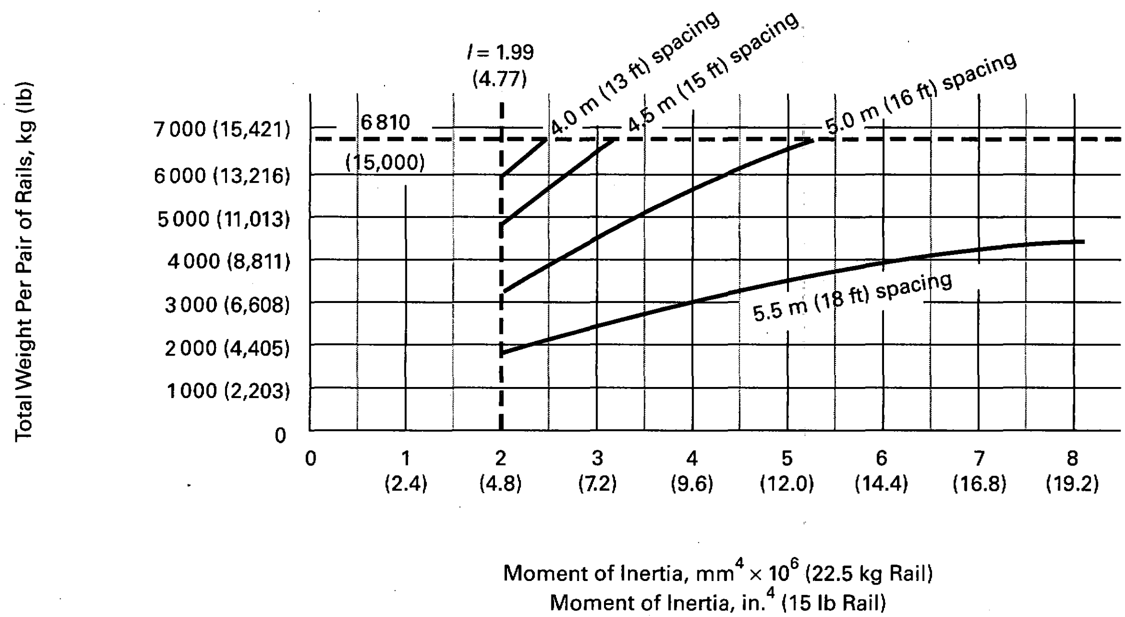
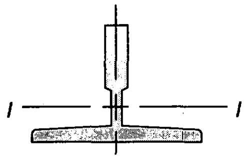
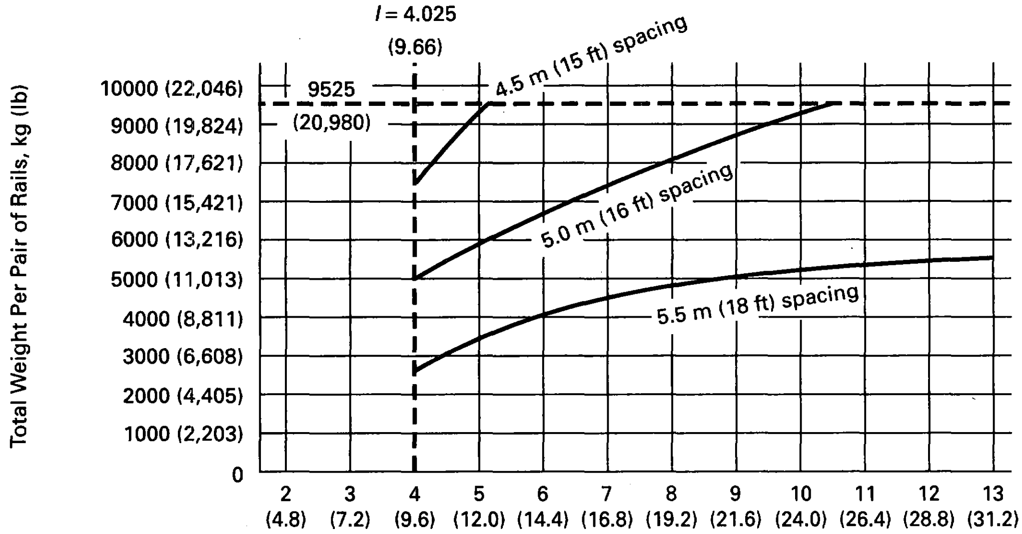
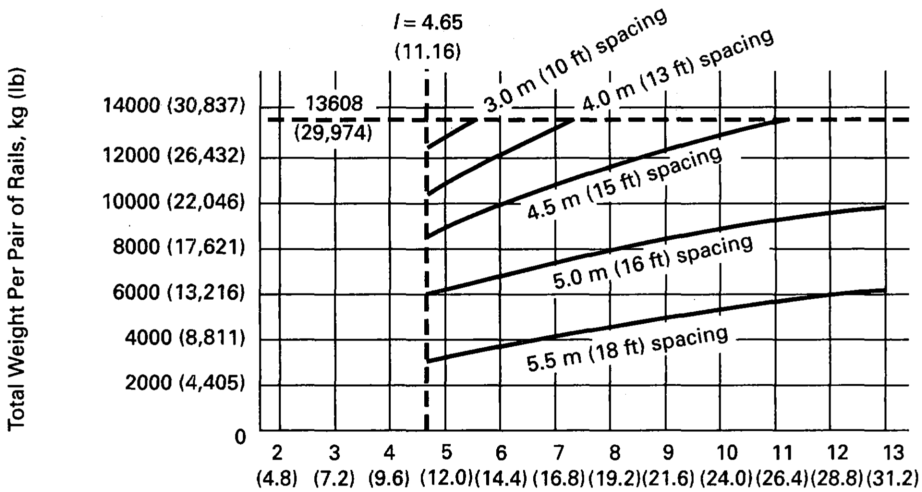


Fig. 2.23.4.1-2 Minimum Moment of Inertia About *x-x* Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement (Cont'd) (07)



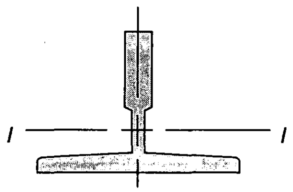


Moment of Inertia, mm^4 × 10^6 (27.5 kg Rail)
Moment of Inertia, *in.*^{4} (18.5 lb Rail)



Moment of Inertia, mm^4 × 10^6 (33.5 kg Rail)
Moment of Inertia, in.^{4} (22.5 lb Rail)

(07) **Fig. 2.23.4.1-2 Minimum Moment of Inertia About *x-x* Axis for a Single Guide Rail With Its Reinforcement (Cont'd)**



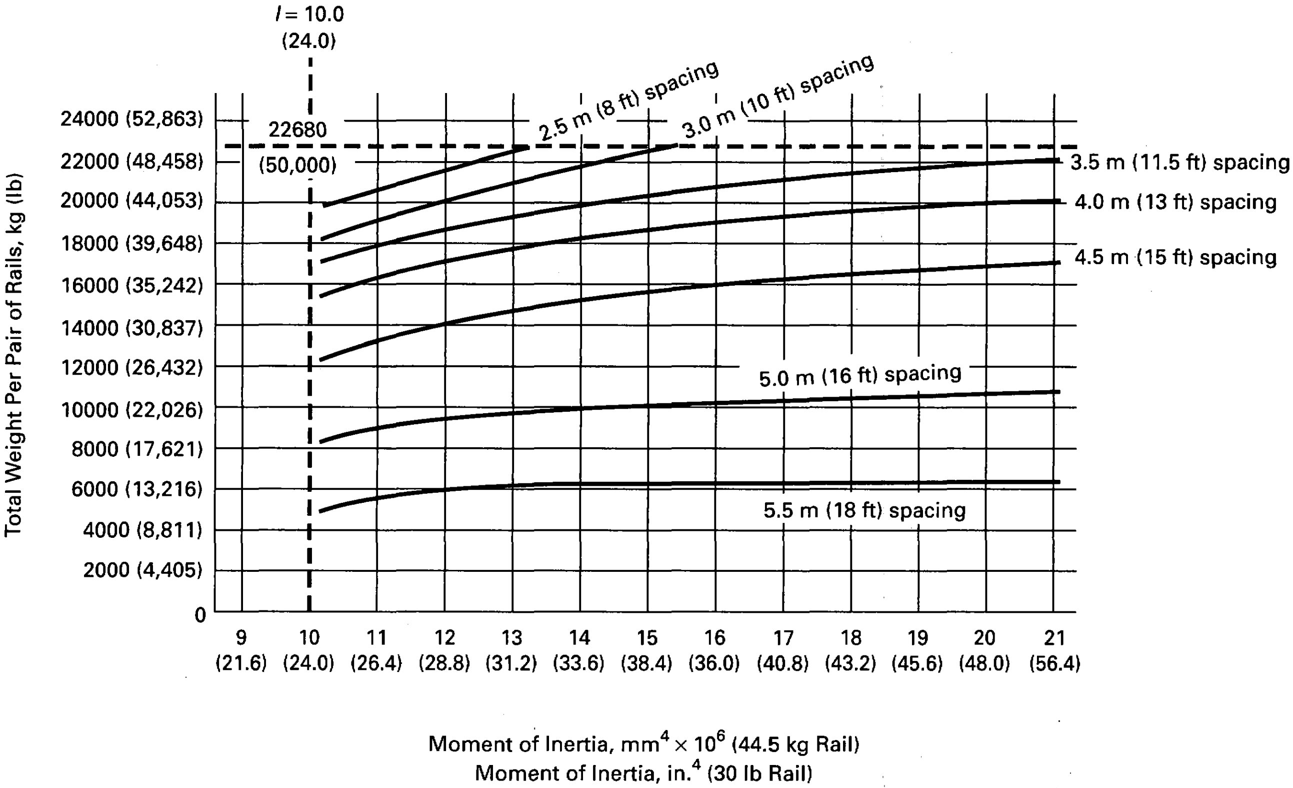


Table 2.23.4.2 Load Multiplying Factor for Duplex Safeties

Vertical Distance Between Safeties, mm (in.)	Multiply Load in Fig. 2.23.4.1-1 by
5 400 (212 or more)	2.00
4 600 (182)	1.83
3 700 (146)	1.67
2 700 (106)	1.50

Table 2.23.4.3.1 Guide Rails for Counterweight Without Safeties

SI Units			Imperial Units		
Mass of Counterweight, kg	Nominal Mass of Guide Rail, kg/m	Maximum Bracket Spacing Without Reinforcement, mm	Weight of Counterweight, lb	Nominal Weight of Guide Rail, lb/ft	Maximum Bracket Spacing Without Reinforcement, ft
3 000	9.5	3 000	6,600	$6\frac{1}{4}$	10
4 000	8.5	4 400	8,800	$5\frac{3}{4}$	14.5
7 000	12.0	4 900	15,000	8	16
12 000	16.5	4 900	27,000	11	16
13 000	18.0	4 900	29,000	12	16
18 000	22.5	4 900	40,000	15	16
25 000	27.5	4 900	56,000	$18\frac{1}{2}$	16
36 000	33.5	4 900	80,000	$22\frac{1}{2}$	16
60 000	44.5	4 900	133,000	30	16

Table 2.23.4.3.3 Intermediate Tie Brackets

Nominal Distance Between Fastenings to Building Structure, mm (in.)		Number of Intermediate Tie Brackets
For 8.5 kg ($6^1/_4$ lb) Rail	For All Other Rails	
0–3 300 (0–130)	0–3 700 (0–146)	0
3 301–3 800 (130–150)	3 701–4 300 (147–169)	1
3 801–4 400 (150–173)	4 301–4 900 (170–193)	2

forces specified in 2.23.5.1 without exceeding the stress and deflection limitations.

2.23.7.2 Design and Construction of Rail Joints

2.23.7.2.1 The joints of metal guide rails with T-section profiles as specified in 2.23.3(a) shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) The ends of the rails shall be accurately machined with a tongue and matching groove centrally located in the web.

(b) The backs of the rail flanges shall be accurately machined, in relation to the rail guiding surfaces, to a uniform distance front to back of the rails to form a flat surface for the fishplates.

(c) The ends of each rail shall be bolted to the fishplates with not fewer than four bolts that conform to Table 2.23.7.2.1.

(d) The width of the fishplate shall be not less than the width of the back of the rail.

(e) The thickness of the fishplates and the diameter of the bolts for each size of guide rail shall be not less than specified in Table 2.23.7.2.1.

(f) The diameter of bolt holes shall not exceed the diameter of the bolts by more than 2 mm (0.08 in.) for guide rails nor 3 mm (0.125 in.) for fishplates.

2.23.7.2.2 Joints of different design and construction shall be permitted to be used, provided they are equivalent in strength and will adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment.

2.23.8 Overall Length of Guide Rails

The car and counterweight guide rails shall extend at the top and bottom to prevent the guiding members (see 2.15.2 and 2.21.1.3) from disengaging from the guide rails in the event that either the car or counterweight reaches its extreme limit of travel.

2.23.9 Guide-Rail Brackets and Building Supports

2.23.9.1 Design and Strength of Brackets and Supports

2.23.9.1.1 The building construction forming the supports for the guide rails and the guide-rail brackets shall be designed to

(a) safely withstand the application of the car or counterweight safety when stopping the car and its rated load or the counterweight

(b) withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.2 within the deflection limits specified

2.23.9.1.2 Walls of bricks, terra-cotta, hollow blocks, and similar materials shall not be used for attachment of guide-rail brackets unless adequately reinforced.

2.23.9.1.3 Where necessary, the building construction shall be reinforced to provide adequate support for the guide rails.

2.23.9.2 Bracket Fastenings

2.23.9.2.1 Guide-rail brackets shall be secured to their supporting structure by one of the following means:

(a) by bolts or rivets

(b) by using clip fastenings to mount brackets to the building structure, provided that

(1) the friction force of such clips has a minimum factor of safety of 10

(2) an additional means, having a safety factor of not less than 5, of resisting horizontal shear is incorporated

Table 2.23.7.2.1 Minimum Thickness of Fishplates and Minimum Diameter of Fastening Bolts

SI Units			Imperial Units		
Nominal Mass of Guide Rail, kg/m	Minimum Thickness of Fish Plates, mm	Minimum Diameter of Bolts, mm	Nominal Weight of Guide Rail, lb/ft	Minimum Thickness of Fish Plates, in.	Minimum Diameter of Bolts, in.
8.5	9.5	M12	$5\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
9.5	9.5	M12	$6\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
12.0	14.0	M12	8	$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
16.5	17.0	M16	11	$\frac{11}{16}$	$\frac{5}{8}$
18.0	17.0	M16	12	$\frac{11}{16}$	$\frac{5}{8}$
22.5	17.0	M16	15	$\frac{11}{16}$	$\frac{5}{8}$
27.5	20.0	M20	$18\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{13}{16}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
33.5	20.0	M20	$22\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{13}{16}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
44.5	23.0	M20	30	$\frac{15}{16}$	$\frac{3}{4}$

Table 2.23.10.2 Minimum Size of Rail-Fastening Bolts

SI Units		Imperial Units	
Nominal Mass of Guide Rail, kg/m	Minimum Diameter of Rail Bolts, mm	Nominal Weight of Guide Rail, lb/ft	Minimum Diameter of Rail Bolts, in.
8.5	M12	$5\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
9.5	M12	$6\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
12.0	M12	8	$\frac{1}{2}$
16.5	M16	11	$\frac{5}{8}$
18.0	M16	12	$\frac{5}{8}$
22.5	M16	15	$\frac{5}{8}$
27.5	M16	$18\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{8}$
33.5	M20	$22\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
44.5	M20	30	$\frac{3}{4}$

(c) by welding conforming to 8.8

2.23.9.2.2 Fastening bolts and bolt holes in brackets and their supporting beams shall conform to 2.23.10.

2.23.9.3 Slotted guide-rail brackets having single-bolt fastenings shall be provided with an additional means to prevent lateral movement of the rail bracket. Such means shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5.

2.23.10 Fastening of Guide Rails to Rail Brackets

2.23.10.1 Type of Fastenings. Guide rails shall be secured to their brackets by clips, welds, or bolts.

Bolts used for fastening shall be of such strength as to withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.2 and 2.23.9.1.

Welding, where used, shall conform to 8.8.

2.23.10.2 Size of Bolts for Fastening. The size of bolts used for fastening the guide rails or rail clips to the brackets shall be not less than specified in Table 2.23.10.2.

2.23.10.3 Bolt Holes for Fastenings. The diameter of holes or the width of slots for fastening bolts shall not exceed the diameter of the bolt by more than 2 mm (0.08 in.).

SECTION 2.24 DRIVING MACHINES AND SHEAVES

2.24.1 Type of Driving Machines

All driving machines shall be of the traction type, except that winding-drum machines shall be permitted for freight elevators, subject to the following:

(a) They shall not be provided with counterweights.

(b) The rated speed of the elevator shall not exceed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min).

(c) The travel of the elevator car shall not exceed 12.5 m (40 ft).

NOTE (2.24.1): See 4.1 for rack-and-pinion machines and 4.2 for screw machines.

2.24.2 Sheaves and Drums

2.24.2.1 Material and Grooving. Sheaves and drums used with suspension and compensating ropes shall be of metal and provided with finished grooves for ropes or shall be permitted to be lined with nonmetallic groove material.

2.24.2.2 Minimum Pitch Diameter. Sheaves and drums used with suspension and compensating ropes shall have a pitch diameter of not less than

(a) 40 times the diameter of the rope where used with suspension ropes

(b) 32 times the diameter of the ropes where used with compensating ropes

2.24.2.3 Traction

2.24.2.3.1 Where the grooves are used to transmit power, sufficient traction shall be provided between the rope and groove, and in the event of nonmetallic lining failure, between the rope and the remaining sheave groove, to safely stop and hold the car with rated load [see 2.16.8(c)] from rated speed in the down direction.

2.24.2.3.2 If either the car or the counterweight bottoms on its buffers or becomes otherwise immovable

(*a*) the ropes shall slip in the drive sheave grooves and not allow the car or counterweight to be raised; or

(*b*) the driving system shall stall and not allow the car or counterweight to be raised.

2.24.2.4 Minimum Sheave and Drum Diameter. Drive sheaves and drums shall be permanently and legibly marked to state the minimum sheave or drum diameter, measured at the bottom of the groove, that is required to maintain structural integrity (see 2.24.3).

2.24.3 Factor of Safety for Driving Machines and Sheaves

The factor of safety to be used in the design of driving machines, and in the design of sheaves used with suspension and compensating ropes, shall be not less than

(*a*) 8 for metals having an elongation of at least 14% in a gauge length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 8

(*b*) 10 for cast iron, or for metals having an elongation of less than 14% in a gauge length of 50 mm (2 in.) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 8

The load to be used in determining the factor of safety shall be the resultant of the maximum tensions in the ropes leading from the sheave or drum with the elevator at rest and with the rated load in the car.

2.24.3.1 Factors of Safety Based on Alternating/Reversing Stresses

2.24.3.1.1 Driving-machine components subjected to alternating or reversing stresses shall have a factor of safety of not less than 1.5.

2.24.3.1.2 This factor of safety shall be the ratio of the endurance limit of the components (see 1.3) to the actual alternating or reversing stress to which the components can be subjected under any normal operating condition. The endurance limit shall be based on 10^7 cycles of stress reversals. The actual stress shall include all designed or anticipated load conditions and stress risers, such as sharp corners, shock loading, surface finish, keyways, material variations, alignment tolerances, etc.

2.24.3.2 Factors of Safety at Emergency Braking. Driving-machine components including bedplate, where used, subject to forces due to the application of the emergency brake (see 2.19.4) shall be designed to withstand the maximum forces developed during the retardation phase of the emergency braking so that the factor of safety resulting from the emergency braking and all other loading acting simultaneously, if applicable, shall be not less than those specified in 2.24.3(a) and 2.24.3(b).

2.24.4 Fasteners Transmitting Load

2.24.4.1 Fasteners and Rigid Connections. Set screws or threaded portions located in the shear plane of bolts and screws shall not be used to transmit load.

Means shall be provided to ensure that there is no relative motion between rigidly joined components transmitting load.

The factors of safety to be used in the design of fasteners transmitting load in driving machines and sheaves shall be not less than those specified in 2.24.3.

2.24.4.2 Flexible Connections. Where flexible couplings are used to transmit load, means shall be provided to prevent disengagement of the coupling components in the event of the failure of or excessive motion in the flexible connection.

2.24.5 Shaft Fillets and Keys

A fillet shall be provided at any point of change in the diameter of driving-machine shafts and sheave shafts to prevent excessive stress concentrations in the shafts (see 2.24.3.1).

Shafts that support drums, sheaves, gears, couplings, and other members, and that transmit torque, shall be provided with tight-fitting keys.

2.24.6 Cast-Iron Worms and Worm Gears

Worms and worm gears made of cast iron shall not be used in elevator driving machines.

2.24.7 Friction Gearing and Clutches

Friction gearing or a clutch mechanism shall not be used to connect a driving-machine drum or sheave to the main driving mechanism.

2.24.8 Braking System and Driving-Machine Brakes (See Nonmandatory Appendix F, Table F-1)

2.24.8.1 General Requirements. The elevator shall be provided with a braking system conforming to 2.24.8.2.

2.24.8.2 Braking System

2.24.8.2.1 The braking system shall consist of a driving-machine brake and in addition shall be permitted to include other braking means, such as electrically assisted braking.

2.24.8.2.2 The braking system shall be capable of decelerating the car from its rated speed when it is carrying its rated load (see 2.16.8) in the down direction, or empty car in the up direction from the speed at which the governor overspeed switch is set. Any deceleration not exceeding 9.8 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) is acceptable, provided that all factors such as, but not limited to, system heat dissipation and allowable buffer striking speeds are considered. The loss of main line power shall not reduce the braking system capacity below the requirements stated here.

2.24.8.3 Driving-Machine Brake. The driving machine shall be equipped with a friction brake applied by a spring or springs, or by gravity, and released electromechanically or electrohydraulically (see 1.3) in conformance with 2.26.8. The driving-machine brake, on its own, shall be capable of

(a) holding the car at rest with its rated load (see 2.16.8 and 2.26.8)

(b) holding the empty car at rest

(c) decelerating the empty car traveling in the up direction from the speed at which the governor overspeed switch is set. Any deceleration not exceeding 9.8 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) is acceptable provided that all factors such as, but not limited to, system heat dissipation and allowable buffer striking speeds are considered.

2.24.8.4 Means for Manual Release. Means shall be permitted for manual release of the driving-machine brake. The means shall permit car movement in a gradual, controllable manner. Provision shall be made to prevent unintended actuation of the device. The manual release device shall be designed to be hand applied only with continuous effort. The brake shall reapply at its fully adjusted capacity in the absence of the hand-applied effort. Devices required in accordance with 2.19 are permitted to be temporarily disabled when the manual release device is in use.

2.24.8.5 Marking Plates for Brakes. The brake setting and method of measurement shall be permanently and legibly marked on the driving machine.

2.24.8.6 Driving-Machine Brake Design. The driving-machine brake design shall ensure contact of the friction material on the braking surface consistent with good engineering practice. Means shall be provided to protect the braking surfaces from contamination caused by any driving-machine fluid leak.

2.24.9 Indirect Driving Machines

2.24.9.1 Belt and Chain Drives. Indirect driving machines, utilizing V-belt drives, tooth drive belts, or drive chains, shall include not less than three belts or chains operating together in parallel as a set. Belt and chain drive sets shall be preloaded and matched for length in sets.

2.24.9.2 General Requirements

2.24.9.2.1 Belt sets shall be selected on the basis of the manufacturer's rated breaking strength and a factor of safety of 10. Chain and sprocket sets shall be selected on the basis of recommendations set forth in the Supplementary Information section of ASME B29.1M, using a service factor of 2. Offset links in chain are not permitted.

2.24.9.2.2 Sprockets in a chain drive set and also a driven set shall be assembled onto a common hub, with teeth cut in-line after assembly to assure equal load distribution on all chains. Tooth sheaves for a belt drive shall be constructed in a manner to assure equal load distribution on each belt in the set.

2.24.9.2.3 Load determination for both the belt and chain sets shall be based on the maximum static loading on the elevator car, that is the full load in the car at rest and at a position in the hoistway that creates the greatest load, including either the car or counterweight resting on its buffer.

2.24.9.2.4 Chain drives and belt drives shall be guarded to protect against accidental contact and to prevent foreign objects from interfering with the drives.

2.24.9.3 Monitoring and Brake Location. Each belt or chain shall be continuously monitored by a broken belt or chain device, that shall function to stop the car at the next available landing and prevent it from running, in the event that any belt or chain in the set breaks or becomes excessively slack. The driving-machine brake shall be located on the traction sheave or drum assembly side of the driving machine so as to be fully effective in the event that the entire belt set or chain set should break.

2.24.10 Means for Inspection of Gears

Each gear case of geared machines shall have access to permit inspection of the contact surfaces of the gears. Such access need not provide a direct view of all gears, but shall be located and sized adequately to allow access by fibre optic or similar visual inspection instrumentation.

SECTION 2.25
TERMINAL STOPPING DEVICES

2.25.1 General Requirements

2.25.1.1 Normal terminal stopping devices required by 2.25.2, emergency terminal stopping devices required by 2.25.4.2, and emergency terminal speed-limiting devices required by 2.25.4.1 shall be permitted to use mechanically operated, magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state devices for determining car position and speed.

2.25.1.2 Final terminal stopping devices required by 2.25.3 shall use only mechanically operated switches for determining car position.

2.25.1.3 Terminal stopping devices that are located on the car or in the hoistway shall be of the enclosed type and securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect the operation of the device.

2.25.2 Normal Terminal Stopping Devices

2.25.2.1 Where Required and Function. Normal terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.2.1.1 through 2.25.2.1.3.

(05S) **2.25.2.1.1** Normal terminal stopping devices shall be provided and arranged to slow down and stop the car automatically, at or near the top and bottom terminal landings, with any load up to and including rated load in the car and from any speed attained in normal operation (see 2.16.8).

2.25.2.1.2 Such devices shall function independently of the operation of the normal stopping means and of the final terminal stopping device, except that on elevators with a rated speed of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) or less, the normal terminal stopping device shall be permitted to be used as the normal stopping means.

2.25.2.1.3 The device shall be so designed and installed that it will continue to function until the final terminal stopping device operates.

2.25.2.2 Location of Stopping Devices. Normal terminal stopping devices shall be located as specified in 2.25.2.2.1 and 2.25.2.2.2.

2.25.2.2.1 Stopping devices for traction machines shall be located on the car, in the hoistway, a machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room, and shall be operated by the movement of the car.

2.25.2.2.2 Stopping devices for winding drum machines shall be located on the car or in the hoistway, and shall be operated by the movement of the car.

2.25.2.3 Indirectly Operated Normal Terminal Stopping Devices. Stopping devices that are not located on the car or in the hoistway shall conform to 2.25.2.3.1 through 2.25.2.3.3.

2.25.2.3.1 The stopping device shall be mounted on and operated by a stopping means mechanically connected to and driven by the car.

Stopping means depending on friction or traction shall not be used.

2.25.2.3.2 Tapes, chains, ropes, or similar devices mechanically connecting the stopping device to the car and used as a driving means shall be provided with a device that will cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake if the driving means fails (see 2.26.2.6).

2.25.2.3.3 If mechanically operated switches are used, only one set of floor-stopping contacts is necessary for each terminal landing on floor controllers or other similar devices used to stop the car automatically at the landings (such as automatic operation, signal operation, etc.), provided these contacts and the means for operating them conform to 2.25.2.3.1 and 2.25.2.3.2. These contacts shall be permitted to serve also as the normal terminal stopping devices.

2.25.3 Final Terminal Stopping Devices

2.25.3.1 General Requirements. Final terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.1 and the following:

(*a*) They shall be mechanically operated.

(*b*) Operating cams shall be of metal.

(*c*) The switch contacts shall be directly opened mechanically.

2.25.3.2 Where Required and Function. Final terminal stopping devices shall be provided and arranged to cause the electric power to be removed automatically from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake after the car has passed a terminal landing.

The device shall be set to function as close to the terminal landing as practicable, but so that under normal operating conditions it will not function when the car is stopped by the normal terminal stopping device.

Where spring buffers are provided, the device shall function before the buffer is engaged.

The device shall be so designed and installed that it will continue to function

(*a*) at the top terminal landing, until the car has traveled above this landing a distance equal to the counterweight runby plus 1.5 times the buffer stroke, but in no case less than 0.6 m (2 ft)

(*b*) at the bottom terminal landing, until the car rests on its fully compressed buffer

The operation of final terminal stopping devices shall prevent movement of the car by the normal operating devices in both directions of travel.

2.25.3.3 Location. Final terminal stopping devices shall be located as specified in 2.25.3.3.1 and 2.25.3.3.2.

2.25.3.3.1 Traction machine elevators shall have final terminal stopping switches located in the hoistway and operated by cams attached to the car.

2.25.3.3.2 Winding drum machine elevators shall have two sets of final terminal stopping switches, one located on and operated by the driving machine, and the other located in the hoistway and operated by cams attached to the car (see 2.25.3.5).

2.25.3.4 Controller Switches Controlled by Final Terminal Stopping Device. The normal and final terminal stopping devices shall not control the same controller switches unless two or more separate and independent switches are provided, two of which shall be closed to complete the driving-machine motor and brake circuit in either direction of travel.

Where a two- or three-phase AC driving-machine motor is used, these switches shall be of the multipole type.

The control shall be so designed and installed that a single ground or short circuit may permit either, but not prevent both, the normal or final stopping device circuits from stopping the car.

2.25.3.5 Additional Requirements for Winding-Drum Machines. Final terminal stopping devices for winding-drum machines shall conform to 2.25.3.5.1 through 2.25.3.5.3.

2.25.3.5.1 Stopping switches, located on and operated by the driving machine, shall not be driven by chains, ropes, or belts.

2.25.3.5.2 Where a two- or three-phase AC driving-machine motor is used, the mainline circuit to the driving-machine motor and the circuit of the driving-machine brake coil shall be directly opened either by the contacts of the machine stop switch or by stopping switches mounted in the hoistway and operated by a cam attached to the car. The opening of these contacts shall occur before or coincident with the opening of the final terminal stopping switch required by 2.25.3.2.

2.25.3.5.3 Driving machines equipped with a direct-current brake and having a DC mainline control switch in the driving-machine motor circuit controlled by a final terminal stopping switch located in the hoistway and operated by a cam attached to the car need not conform to 2.25.3.5.2. This does not eliminate the need for a machine-operated switch.

2.25.4 Emergency Terminal Stopping Means

2.25.4.1 Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Device. Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall be installed on all elevators where reduced stroke buffers are used (see 2.22.4.1.2 and 2.26.2.12), and shall conform to 2.25.4.1.1 through 2.25.4.1.9.

2.25.4.1.1 The operation of the emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall be entirely independent of the operation of the normal terminal stopping device. The emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall automatically reduce the car and counterweight speed by removing power from the driving-machine motor and brake, such that the rated buffer striking speed is not exceeded if the normal terminal stopping device fails to slow down the car at the terminal as intended.

2.25.4.1.2 The car speed sensing device shall be independent of the normal speed control system.

2.25.4.1.3 The emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall provide a retardation not in excess of 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

2.25.4.1.4 The emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall not apply the car safety.

2.25.4.1.5 The emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall be so designed and installed that a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds, or by other conditions, shall not render the device ineffective.

2.25.4.1.6 The emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall be located on the car, in the hoistway, or a machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room, and shall be operated by the movement of the car. **(05S)**

2.25.4.1.7 Mechanically operated switches, where located on the car or in the hoistway, shall conform to 2.25.3.1.

2.25.4.1.8 Where the operation of emergency terminal speed-limiting devices is dependent on car position relative to the terminal landings

(a) friction or traction drives shall not be used

(b) if tape, chain, or rope is used for connection to the car, a switch shall be provided to remove electrical power from the driving-machine motor and brake should this connection fail (see 2.26.2.6)

2.25.4.1.9 Where magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state devices are used for position sensing, a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds or by other conditions, or the failure of any single magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state device shall not

(a) render the emergency terminal speed-limiting device inoperative

(b) permit the car to restart after a normal stop

2.25.4.2 Emergency Terminal Stopping Device. Elevators with static control and rated speeds over 1 m/s (200 ft/min) shall be provided with an emergency terminal stopping device that will cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake should the normal stopping means and the normal terminal stopping device fail to cause the car to slow down at the terminal as intended.

The emergency terminal stopping device shall function independently of the normal terminal stopping device and the normal speed control system.

Elevators with static generator-field control that use the normal terminal stopping device to limit the generator-field current directly, or elevators that have an emergency terminal speed-limiting device that complies with 2.25.4.1, are not required to have an emergency terminal stopping device.

SECTION 2.26
OPERATING DEVICES AND CONTROL EQUIPMENT

2.26.1 Operation and Operating Devices

2.26.1.1 Types of Operating Devices. All operating devices shall be of the enclosed electric type.

Rope or rod operating devices actuated directly by hand, or rope operating devices actuated by wheels, levers, or cranks, shall not be used.

2.26.1.2 For Car-Switch Operation Elevators. Handles of lever-type operating devices of car-switch operation elevators shall be so arranged that they will return to the stop position and latch there automatically when the hand of the operator is removed.

2.26.1.3 Additional Operating Devices for Elevators Equipped to Carry One-Piece Loads Greater Than the Rated Load. Elevators equipped to carry one-piece loads greater than their rated load shall be provided with an additional operating device of the continuous-pressure type to operate the elevator at a speed not exceeding 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) under such conditions. The normal operating devices shall be inoperative during such operation (see 2.16.7.10).

(05S) **2.26.1.4 Inspection Operation.** See Appendix R, Table R-1.

2.26.1.4.1 General Requirements

(a) *Operating Devices*

(1) Operating devices for inspection operation shall be provided

(a) on the top of the car

(b) at the inspection and test panel when required by 2.7.6.5.2(h)

(2) Operating devices for inspection operation shall also be permitted

(a) in the car

(b) in a machinery space outside the hoistway

(c) in a machine room

(d) in a control space outside the hoistway

(e) in a control room

(f) in the pit in accordance with 2.7.5.2.2

(g) at a working platform in accordance with 2.7.5.3.6

(b) A switch for transferring control of the elevator to the operating devices for inspection operation shall be provided, that shall

(1) be manually operated

(2) be labeled "INSPECTION"

(3) have two positions, labeled "INSPECTION" or "INSP" and "NORMAL" or "NORM"

(4) when in the "INSPECTION" position

(a) enable inspection operation by means of the inspection operating devices

(b) except as provided, in 2.26.1.4.2(f), cause the movement of the car to be solely under the control of the inspection operating devices through a contact that shall be positively opened mechanically and whose opening shall not depend solely on springs

(c) disable automatic power door opening and closing and car leveling, except as provided in 2.26.1.4.2(f)

(5) when in the "NORMAL" position, disable inspection operation by means of the inspection operating devices

(c) Inspection operating devices shall

(1) be of the continuous-pressure type

(2) be labeled "UP" and "DOWN," respectively

(d) Inspection operation shall conform to the following:

(1) the speed of the car shall not exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) (07)

For elevators with static control, an independent means shall be provided to limit the inspection speed to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), should the normal means to control this speed (mechanical, electrical, or solid-state devices) fail to do so.

(2) be subject to the electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2, except as permitted by 2.26.1.5

(3) fully closed doors shall be permitted to be held in the closed position with power applied

(e) Inspection operation shall be used only by elevator personnel.

2.26.1.4.2 Top-of-Car Inspection Operation. Top-of-car inspection operation shall conform to 2.26.1.4.1 and the following:

(a) A stop switch (see 2.26.2.8) shall be permanently located on the car top and readily accessible to a person, while standing at the hoistway entrance normally used for access to the car top.

(b) The transfer switch [see 2.26.1.4.1(b)] shall be located on the car top and shall be so designed as to prevent accidental transfer from the "INSPECTION" to "NORMAL" position.

(c) A separate device of the continuous-pressure type labeled "ENABLE" shall be provided adjacent to the inspection operating devices.

(d) The inspection operating devices shall become effective only when the "ENABLE" device is activated.

(e) The inspection operating devices [see 2.26.1.4.1(c)], shall be permitted to be of the portable type, provided that

(1) the "ENABLE" device [see 2.26.1.4.2(c)], and a stop switch, in addition to the stop switch required in 2.26.1.4.2(a) are included in the portable unit

(2) the flexible cord is permanently attached so that the portable unit cannot be detached from the car top

(f) Separate additional devices of the continuous-pressure type shall be permitted to be provided on the car top to make power door opening and closing and automatic car leveling operative from the top of the car for testing purposes.

(g) When on top-of-car inspection operation, a separate additional device shall be permitted to render ineffective the top final terminal stopping device, and the buffer switch for gas spring-return counterweight oil buffers, in conformance with the requirements of

2.26.4.3, 2.26.9.3(a), and 2.26.9.4, and it shall allow the car to be moved to a position in conformance with the requirements of 2.7.4.5 and 2.7.5.1.3(c).

2.26.1.4.3 In-Car Inspection Operation. When in-car inspection operation is provided, it shall conform to 2.26.1.4.1, and the transfer switch [see 2.26.1.4.1(b)]

(a) shall be located in the car.

(b) shall be key-operated or placed behind a locked cover. Keys to operate or access the switch shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

(c) shall be rendered ineffective if top-of-car inspection operation is activated.

(d) when in the "INSPECTION" position, shall not enable hoistway access switch(es). A third switch position shall be permitted to enable the hoistway access switches [see 2.12.7.3.3(a)].

2.26.1.4.4 Machinery Space Outside the Hoistway, Machine Room, Control Space Outside the Hoistway, Control Room, Pit, Landing, and Working Platform Inspection Operations. Where inspection operation in a machinery space outside the hoistway, machine room, control space outside the hoistway, control room, pit, or at an inspection and test panel, or a working platform is provided, it shall conform to 2.26.1.4.1 and the following:

(a) The transfer switch [see 2.26.1.4.1(b)] shall be

(1) located in the pit, where provided in accordance with 2.7.5.2.2 (Pit Inspection Operation)

(2) located in the inspection and test panel as required by 2.7.6.5.2(h) (Landing Inspection Operation)

(3) located in the machinery space outside the hoistway, machine room, control space outside the hoistway, or control room, as applicable

(4) located at a working platform where required by 2.7.5.3.6 (Working Platform Inspection Operation)

(5) rendered ineffective if top-of-car inspection operation, in-car inspection operation, or hoistway access operation is activated, or when a car door or hoistway door bypass switch is in the "BYPASS" position

(b) Only one mode of the inspection operation as described in 2.26.1.4.4(a)(1) through (4) shall be permitted to be operative at any time. If more than one inspection operation transfer switch, as permitted in 2.26.1.4.4(a)(1) through (4), is in the "INSPECTION" position, the controls shall prevent operation of the car from any location as described in 2.26.1.4.4(a)(1) through (4).

(c) Pit inspection operation where provided shall also conform to 2.26.1.4.2(c) and (d). When the pit transfer switch is in the "INSPECTION" position, the controls shall prevent operation of the car when any inspection transfer switch, other than that in the pit, is in the "INSPECTION" position, or when hoistway access operation is enabled.

(d) Where inspection operation from a working platform is provided and the working platform transfer switch is in the "INSPECTION" position, the controls shall prevent operation of the car when any other inspection transfer switch, other than that at the working platform, is in the "INSPECTION" position, or when hoistway access operation is enabled.

2.26.1.5 Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits. A single set of switches marked "CAR DOOR BYPASS" and "HOISTWAY DOOR BYPASS" shall be provided in the elevator controller enclosure containing the car door and gate electric contact circuits and hoistway door interlock and hoistway door electric contact circuits (see 2.26.2.14 and 2.26.2.15); except where the switches are not accessible from outside the hoistway, they shall be located in the inspection and test panel (see 2.7.6.5). The switches shall prepare the control system so that, only when top-of-car or in-car inspection operation is activated, the car shall be permitted to be moved with open door contacts. The switches shall conform to 2.26.1.5.1 through 2.26.1.5.8. **(05S)**

2.26.1.5.1 They shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically, when switching to either "BYPASS" or "OFF" positions, and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs.

2.26.1.5.2 The positions of the "BYPASS" switches shall be clearly marked "BYPASS" and "OFF."

2.26.1.5.3 The related circuits shall comply with 2.26.9.3 and 2.26.9.4.

2.26.1.5.4 When either or both of the switches are in the "BYPASS" position, all means of operation shall be made inoperative except top-of-car and in-car inspection operation [see also 2.26.1.4.4(c) and (d)].

2.26.1.5.5 When the "CAR DOOR BYPASS" switch is in the "BYPASS" position, it shall permit top-of-car and in-car inspection operation with open car door (or gate) contacts.

2.26.1.5.6 When the "HOISTWAY DOOR BYPASS" switch is in the "BYPASS" position, it shall permit top-of-car and in-car inspection operation with open hoistway door interlocks or contacts.

2.26.1.5.7 Each of the "BYPASS" switches shall be permitted to be replaced by a set of switches used to bypass individual groups of door contacts. Each switch in this set shall be marked to identify the specific door contacts bypassed.

2.26.1.5.8 A warning sign shall be mounted adjacent to the "BYPASS" switches stating, "Jumpers shall not be used to bypass hoistway door or car door electric contacts."

2.26.1.6 Operation in Leveling or Truck Zone. Operation of an elevator in a leveling or truck zone at any landing by a car leveling or truck zoning device, when the hoistway doors, or the car doors or gates, or any combination thereof, are not in the closed position, is permissible, subject to the requirements of 2.26.1.6.1 through 2.26.1.6.7.

2.26.1.6.1 Operating devices of manually operated car leveling devices or truck zoning devices shall be of the continuous-pressure type and located in the car.

2.26.1.6.2 Car platform guards, conforming to 2.15.9, shall be provided. Where a car leveling device is used, landing sill guards, conforming to 2.11.12.7, shall also be provided.

2.26.1.6.3 The leveling zone at any landing shall not extend more than 450 mm (18 in.) above and below any landing where an automatic leveling device is used, and not more than 250 mm (10 in.) above and below any landing where a manually operated leveling device is used.

2.26.1.6.4 The truck zone at any landing shall not extend more than 1 700 mm (67 in.) above the landing.

2.26.1.6.5 Where a truck or leveling zone for one hoistway entrance extends into the door interlocking zone for a second entrance, the truck zoning or leveling operation shall be inoperative unless the hoistway door at the second entrance is in the closed position.

Where a truck or leveling zone for one hoistway entrance extends into the leveling zone for a second entrance, the leveling operation for the second entrance shall be inoperative while the hoistway door at the first entrance is open.

2.26.1.6.6 A leveling or truck-zoning device shall not move the car at a speed exceeding 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

For elevators with static control, an independent means shall be provided to limit the leveling speed to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) with the doors open, should the normal means to control this speed (mechanical, electrical, or solid-state devices) fail to do so.

2.26.1.6.7 For elevators with static control, an inner landing zone extending not more than 75 mm (3 in.) above and 75 mm (3 in.) below the landing shall be provided. A car shall not move if it stops outside of the inner landing zone unless the doors are fully closed.

2.26.2 Electrical Protective Devices

When an electrical protective device is activated (operated, opened), it shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake. [See also 2.26.3, 2.26.4.3, 2.26.4.4, 2.26.7, 2.26.8.3(c), 2.26.9.3, and 2.26.9.4.] Electrical protective devices shall be provided as specified in 2.26.2.1 through 2.26.2.37.

2.26.2.1 Slack-Rope Switch. Winding-drum machines shall be provided with a slack-rope device equipped with a slack-rope switch of the enclosed manually reset type. This switch shall operate whenever the ropes are slack.

2.26.2.2 Motor-Generator Running Switch. Where generator-field control is used, means shall be provided to prevent the application of power to the elevator driving-machine motor and brake unless the motor generator set connections are properly switched for the running condition of the elevator. It is not required that the electrical connections between the elevator driving machine motor and the generator be opened in order to remove power from the elevator motor.

2.26.2.3 Compensating-Rope Sheave Switch. Compensating-rope sheaves shall be provided with a compensating-rope sheave switch or switches mechanically opened by the compensating-rope sheave before the sheave reaches its upper or lower limit of travel.

2.26.2.4 Motor Field Sensing Means. Where direct current is supplied to an armature and shunt field of an elevator driving-machine motor, a motor field current sensing means shall be provided, that shall cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor armature, and brake unless current is flowing in the shunt field of the motor, except for static control elevators provided with a device to detect an overspeed condition prior to, and independent of, the operation of the governor overspeed switch. This device shall cause power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor armature and machine brake.

2.26.2.5 Emergency Stop Switch. An emergency stop switch shall not be provided on passenger elevators. On all freight elevators, an emergency stop switch shall be provided in the car, and located in or adjacent to each car operating panel.

When open ("STOP" position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

Emergency stop switches shall

(a) be of the manually opened and closed type

(b) have red operating handles or buttons

(c) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions

(d) while opened, cause the audible device to sound (see 2.27.1.2)

NOTE (2.26.2.5): See 2.26.2.21 for in-car stop switch requirements for passenger elevators.

2.26.2.6 Broken Rope, Tape, or Chain Switches. The switch or switches that shall be opened by a failure of a rope, tape, or chain, shall be provided when required by 2.25.2.3.2 or 2.25.4.1.8(b).

2.26.2.7 Stop Switch in Pit. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), (c) shall be provided in the pit of every elevator (see 2.2.6).

2.26.2.8 Stop Switch on Top of Car. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided on the top of every elevator car.

2.26.2.9 Car Safety Mechanism Switch. A switch, conforming to 2.17.7 shall be required where a car safety is provided.

2.26.2.10 Speed-Governor Overspeed Switch. A speed-governor overspeed switch shall be provided when required by 2.18.4.1 and shall conform to 2.18.4.1.2, 2.18.4.2, and 2.18.4.3.

2.26.2.11 Final Terminal Stopping Devices. Final terminal stopping devices, conforming to 2.25.3, shall be provided for every electric elevator.

2.26.2.12 Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Devices. Where reduced-stroke oil buffers are provided, as permitted by 2.22.4.1.2, emergency terminal speed-limiting devices conforming to 2.25.4.1 shall be provided.

2.26.2.13 Buffer Switches for Oil Buffers Used With Type C Car Safeties. Oil level and compression switches conforming to 2.17.8.2.7 and 2.17.8.2.8 shall be provided for all oil buffers used with Type C safeties (see 2.17.5.3).

2.26.2.14 Hoistway Door Interlocks and Hoistway Door Electric Contacts. Hoistway door interlocks or hoistway door electric contacts conforming to 2.12 shall be provided for all elevators.

2.26.2.15 Car Door and Gate Electric Contacts. Car door or gate electric contacts, conforming to 2.14.4.2, shall be provided for all elevators; except when car door interlock, conforming to 2.26.2.28 is provided.

2.26.2.16 Emergency Terminal Stopping Devices. Emergency terminal stopping devices conforming to 2.25.4.2 shall be provided for all elevators where static control is used, unless exempted by 2.25.4.2.

2.26.2.18 Car Top Emergency Exit Electrical Device. An electrical device conforming to 2.14.1.5.1(f) shall be provided on the car top emergency exit cover.

2.26.2.19 Motor-Generator Overspeed Protection. Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed automatically from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake should a motor-generator set, driven by a DC motor, overspeed excessively.

2.26.2.20 Electric Contacts for Hinged Car Platform Sills. Hinged car platform sills, where provided, shall be equipped with electric contacts conforming to 2.15.16.

2.26.2.21 In-Car Stop Switch. On passenger elevators, a stop switch, either key operated or behind a locked cover, shall be provided in the car and located in or adjacent to the car operating panel. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

The switch shall be clearly and permanently marked "STOP" and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions.

When opened ("STOP" position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

2.26.2.22 Buffer Switches for Gas Spring-Return Oil Buffers. Buffer switches conforming to 2.22.4.5(c) shall be provided.

2.26.2.23 Stop Switch in Remote Machine and Control Rooms. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided in remote machine and control rooms where required by 2.7.8.

2.26.2.24 Stop Switch for Machinery Spaces and Control Spaces. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided where required by 2.7.3.5. (05S)

2.26.2.25 Blind Hoistway Emergency Door Locking Device. A locking device conforming to 2.11.1.2(e) shall be provided on every emergency door in a blind hoistway.

2.26.2.26 Pit Access Door Electric Contact. An electric contact shall be provided on each pit access door where required by 2.2.4.4.

2.26.2.27 Stop Switch in Remote Counterweight Hoistways. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided in the remote counterweight hoistway where required by 2.3.3.3.

2.26.2.28 Car Door Interlock. An interlock conforming to 2.14.4.2 shall be provided where required by 2.14.4.2.1.

2.26.2.29 Ascending Car Overspeed Protection Device. An overspeed device shall be provided when required by 2.19.1 and shall meet the requirements of 2.19.1.2(a).

2.26.2.30 Unintended Car Movement Device. An unintended car movement device shall be provided when required by 2.19.2 and shall meet the requirements of 2.19.2.2(a). Where generator-field control is used, this electrical protective device shall also cause the power to be removed from the drive motor of the motor-generator set.

2.26.2.31 Car Access Panel Locking Device. A locking device conforming to 2.14.2.6 shall be provided where required by 2.14.2.6(e).

2.26.2.32 Hoistway Access Opening Locking Device. Access openings in the hoistway shall be provided with a locking device where required by 2.11.1.4.

2.26.2.33 Firefighter's Stop Switch. A firefighter's stop switch that conforms to the requirements of 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided where required by 2.27.3.3.1(m).

(05S) **2.26.2.34 Unexpected Car Movement Device.** An unexpected car movement device shall be provided where required by 2.7.5.1.2(c). This requirement shall be permitted to be satisfied by another device specified in 2.26.2, provided that the means required by 2.7.5.1.1 actuates the electrical device.

(05S) **2.26.2.35 Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device.** An electric contact on equipment access panels in the car shall be provided where required by 2.7.5.1.4 or 2.14.2.2(g).

(05S) **2.26.2.36 Working Platform Electrical Device.** An electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.3(b), (c), and (e) shall be provided where required by 2.7.5.3.1.

(05S) **2.26.2.37 Retractable Stop Electrical Device.** An electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.3(b), (c), and (e) shall be provided where required by 2.7.5.5(a).

(07) **2.26.2.38 Retractable Ladder Electrical Device.** An electrical contact conforming to the following shall be provided where required by 2.2.4.2.7:

(a) be positively opened by a device attached to and operated by the ladder

(b) not utilize mercury tube switches

2.26.3 Contactors and Relays for Use in Critical Operating Circuits

Where electromechanical contactors or relays are provided to fulfill the requirements of 2.26.8.2, and 2.26.9.3 through 2.26.9.7, they shall be considered to be used in critical operating circuits. If contact(s) on these electromechanical contactors or relays are used for monitoring purposes, they shall be prevented from changing state if the contact(s) utilized in a critical operating circuit fail to open in the intended manner. The ability of the monitoring contact(s) to perform this function shall not be solely dependent upon springs.

2.26.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

2.26.4.1 All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

(07) **2.26.4.2** Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification.

(07) **2.26.4.3** The devices covered by 2.26.2 shall meet the requirements of either 2.26.4.3.1 or 2.26.4.3.2.

2.26.4.3.1 They shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs. Exceptions are devices described by 2.26.2.4, 2.26.2.19, 2.26.2.29, and 2.26.2.30; and 2.26.2.12 and 2.26.2.16 where magnetically operated, optical, or static-type switches are used.

2.26.4.3.2 They shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked to a SIL rating in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3 with a SIL rating equal to or greater than the SIL indicated for the applicable device shown in Table 2.26.4.3.2.

The detection of a dangerous fault (e.g., with diagnostic tests, proof-tests, or by any other means) in SIL rated E/E/PES that can tolerate a single fault shall cause the elevator to revert to a known fail-safe condition. Where necessary, to maintain the integrity of the SIL rated E/E/PES and maintain the fail-safe condition prior to a second fault that could lead to a dangerous condition, a manual reset shall be required to remove the SIL rated E/E/PES from the fail-safe condition.

2.26.4.4 Control equipment shall be tested in accordance with the testing requirements of EN 12016 by exposing it to interference levels at the test values specified for "safety circuits." The interference shall not cause any of the conditions described in 2.26.9.3(a) through (e) and shall not cause the car to move while on inspection operation.

If enclosure doors or suppression equipment must remain installed to meet the above requirements, warning signs to that effect shall be posted on the control equipment.

2.26.4.5 In jurisdictions enforcing CSA-C22.1, power supply line disconnecting means, shall not be opened automatically by a fire alarm system.

2.26.5 System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of the Elevator With Faulty Door Contact Circuits (07)

Means shall be provided to monitor the position of power-operated car doors that are mechanically coupled with the landing doors while the car is in the landing zone, in order

(a) to prevent automatic operation of the car if the car door is not closed (see 2.14.4.11), regardless whether the portion of the circuits incorporating the car door contact or the interlock contact of the landing door coupled with the car door, or both, are closed or open, except as permitted in 2.26.1.6

(b) to prevent the power closing of the doors during automatic operation if the car door is fully open and any of the following conditions exist:

(1) the car door contact is closed or the portion of the circuit, incorporating this contact is bypassed

(2) the interlock contact of the landing door that is coupled to the opened car door is closed or the portion of the circuit, incorporating this contact is bypassed

(07)

Table 2.26.4.3.2 SIL for Electrical Protective Devices and Other Electrical Safety Functions

Requirement	Device Name	Safety Function	SIL
2.12.7.3.3(a)	Hoistway access switches	Check enable hoistway access operation	3
2.26.1.4.1(b)	Inspection switch	Check on enable of inspection operation	3
2.26.1.5	Bypass switches	Check bypass device for bypassing landing and car door device(s)	3
2.26.1.6	Car leveling or truck zoning device	Check on leveling (re-leveling) with car and hoistway doors not in the closed position	2
2.26.2.1	Slack-rope switch	Check the tension of winding drum machine ropes	2
2.26.2.2	Motor-generator running switch	Check that the motor generator is switched for the running condition	1
2.26.2.3	Compensating-rope sheave switch	Check the position limits of compensating-rope sheave	2
2.26.2.4	Motor field sensing means	Check for current flow in the motor shunt field	1
2.26.2.5	Emergency stop switch	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.6	Broken rope, tape, or chain switches	Check for a failure of a rope, tape, or chain	2
2.26.2.7	Stop switch in pit	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.8	Stop switch on top of car	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.9	Car safety mechanism switch	Check on the operation of the car safety mechanism	1
2.26.2.10	Speed-governor overspeed switch	Check on overspeed	2
2.26.2.11	Final terminal stopping devices	Check that the car has passed a terminal landing	1
2.26.2.12	Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices	Check on retardation in the case of reduced stroke buffers	2
2.26.2.13	Buffer switches for oil buffers used with Type C car safeties	Check on the return to normal. Extended position of buffer.	1
2.26.2.14	Hoistway door interlocks and hoistway door electric contacts	Check on locked and/or closed position of landing doors	3
2.26.2.15	Car door and gate electric contacts	Check on closed position of car door (Note: For the application of a SIL 3 ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC/PROGRAMMABLE ELECTRONIC SYSTEMS device for freights and cars with swing hoistway doors, an independent monitoring of the closed car door gate position by the elevator control is required to prevent the car from moving if the car/gate door is open.)	3
2.26.2.16	Emergency terminal stopping devices	Check on stopping at terminal landings	1
2.26.2.18	Car top emergency exit electrical device	Check on the closed position of the car top exit	2
2.26.2.19	Motor-generator overspeed protection	Check on overspeed of DC driven motor generator sets	1
2.26.2.20	Electric contacts for hinged car platform sills	Check on the retracted position of car platform sill. Obsolete technology.	SIL rated device not permitted
2.26.2.21	In-car stop switch	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.22	Buffer switches for gas spring-return oil buffers	Check on the return to normal extended position of buffer	3
2.26.2.23	Stop switch in remote machine and control rooms	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.24	Stop switch for machinery spaces and control spaces	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3

Table 2.26.4.3.2 SIL for Electrical Protective Devices and Other Electrical Safety Functions (Cont'd)

Requirement	Device Name	Safety Function	SIL
2.26.2.25	Blind hoistway emergency door locking device	Check on the locked position of blind hoistway door	2
2.26.2.26	Pit access door electric contact	Check on the closed position of pit access doors	2
2.26.2.27	Stop switch in remote counter-weight hoistways	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.28	Car door interlock	Check on locking and closed position of car doors	3
2.26.2.29	Ascending car overspeed protection device	Check on the ascending car overspeed protection means	2
2.26.2.30	Unintended car movement device	Check on unintended car movement with doors open	2
2.26.2.31	Car access panel locking device	Check on locked position of car access panel	SIL rated device not permitted [see Note (1)]
2.26.2.32	Hoistway access opening locking device	Check on locked position of hoistway access openings	SIL rated device not permitted [see Note (1)]
2.26.2.33	Firefighter's stop switch	Check that the stop switch is actuated	3
2.26.2.34	Unexpected car movement device	Check on actuation of unexpected car movement means	3
2.26.2.35	In-car equipment access panel device	Check on closed position of access panel in the car	2
2.26.2.36	Working platform electrical device	Check on fully retracted position of working platform	4
2.26.2.37	Retractable stop electrical device	Check on fully retracted position of retractable stops	2

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) For the purpose of this Standard, the SIL represents the requirement for a device operating in the low demand mode and the probability of failure to perform its safety function on demand (see CEI IEC 61508-1, Table 2). However, where the device is used for continuous control to maintain functional safety, for example when the use of a stop switch solely prevents an elevator controller from operating in automatic operation, the SIL shall represent the requirement for a device considered operating in the high demand mode and the dangerous failure rate of the device (see CEI IEC 61508-1, Table 3 and definition).

(b) For the purposes of this Standard, SIL refers to SIL rating of a E/E/PES to the applicable requirements of CEI IEC 61508-2 and CEI IEC 61508-3.

(c) The SIL values specified in Table 2.26.4.3.2 are based on a proof-test frequency of no more than half the rate of demand on the safety function. The inspection frequencies provided in Nonmandatory Appendix N serve as a reference to this proof-test interval and are addressed in the Maintenance Control Program. See requirement 8.6.1.2.1(a)(1).

(d) It is possible to use several lower safety integrity level systems to satisfy the need for a higher safety integrity level function provided that the implementation is certified.

(e) The summary of functions described in the "Safety Function" column are for reference only. The referenced Code item in the "Requirement" column must be used to determine the safety function of the item in the "Device Name" column.

NOTE:

(1) A device rated SIL 4 or less cannot fulfill this function.

(3) the car door contact and the interlock contact of the door that is coupled to the opened car door are closed, or the portions of the circuits incorporating these contacts are bypassed

2.26.6 Phase Protection of Motors

Elevators having a polyphase AC power supply shall be provided with means to prevent the starting of the elevator drive motor or door motor if a reversal of phase rotation, or phase failure of the incoming polyphase AC power, will cause the elevator car or elevator door(s) to operate in the wrong direction.

2.26.7 Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective (05S)

The installation of capacitors or other devices, the operation or failure of which will cause an unsafe operation of the elevator, is prohibited.

No permanent device that will make any required electrical protective device ineffective shall be installed except as provided in 2.7.6.5.2(h), 2.12.7.1, 2.26.1.4.2(g), 2.26.1.5, 2.26.1.6, and 2.27.3.1.6(c) (see 8.6.1.6.1).

2.26.8 Release and Application of Driving-Machine Brakes

(05S) **2.26.8.1** Driving-machine brakes shall not be electrically released until power has been applied to the driving-machine motor except as permitted by 2.7.6.4.3.

(07) **2.26.8.2** Two means shall be provided to independently remove power from the brake. The electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2 shall control both means, except that leveling shall be permitted to take place with power opening of doors and gates in conformance with 2.13.2.1.1 and 2.13.2.2.1.

One of the means shall be either a contactor, or an E/E/PES with a SIL of not less than the highest SIL of the function for the electrical protective devices involved with removing power from the brake and shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked for compliance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3. This means is not required to remove power from the driving-machine motor.

If the brake circuit is ungrounded, power shall be interrupted at all power feed lines to the brake.

2.26.8.3 The brake shall apply automatically when

(a) the operating device of a car switch or continuous-pressure operation elevator is in the stop position

(b) a normal stopping means functions

(c) any electrical protective device is activated

(d) there is a loss of power to the driving-machine brake

2.26.8.4 The application of the brake shall be permitted to occur on or before the completion of the slowdown and leveling operations, under conditions described in 2.26.8.3(a) and (b).

2.26.8.5 The brake shall not be permanently connected across the armature or field of a direct-current elevator driving-machine motor.

2.26.9 Control and Operating Circuits

The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 2.26.9.1 through 2.26.9.8.

2.26.9.1 If springs are used to actuate switches, contactors, or relays to break the circuit to stop an elevator at the terminal landings, they shall be of the compression type.

2.26.9.2 The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to interrupt the power to the elevator driving-machine motor or brake at the terminal landings, nor to stop the car when any of the electrical protective devices (see 2.26.2) operate. Requirement 2.26.9.2 does not apply to dynamic braking, nor to speed control switches.

2.26.9.3 The occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay, or any single device that limits the leveling or truck zone, or any single solid-state device not a part of a software system; or a failure of a software system in circuits not in conformance with 2.26.9.4(b), shall not (07)

(a) render any electrical protective device ineffective (see 2.26.2)

(b) permit the car to move beyond the leveling or truck zone if any hoistway-door interlock is unlocked or if any hoistway door or car door or gate electric contact is not in the closed position (see 2.26.1.6)

(c) permit speeds in excess of those specified in 2.12.7.3.2, 2.26.1.4.1(d)(1), and 2.26.1.6.6 (ED)

(d) permit the car to revert to normal operation when the electrical contact required by 2.7.5.2.1(b)(3) is in the open position, or the electrical device as permitted in 2.7.5.5(b) is activated, or on hoistway access switch operation (see 2.12.7.3), or on inspection operation (see 2.26.1.4), or on bypass operation (see 2.26.1.5) (05S)

(e) continue to make ineffective any hoistway-door interlock or car door or gate electric contact when either a hoistway access switch (see 2.12.7.3) or a "BYPASS" switch (see 2.26.1.5) is turned to the "OFF" position.

2.26.9.4 Methods used to satisfy 2.26.9.3 shall be checked prior to each start of the elevator from a landing, when on automatic operation. When a single ground or failure, as specified in 2.26.9.3 occurs, the car shall not be permitted to restart. Methods implemented using software systems are permitted, provided that (07)

(a) the removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake is not solely dependent on software-controlled means, or

(b) the software system and related circuits are listed/certified and labeled/marked for compliance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3. This software system and its related circuits shall have a SIL of not less than the highest SIL value of the safety function(s) in Table 2.26.4.3.2 used in the circuit.

2.26.9.5 Except for elevators employing alternating-current hoist motors driven from a direct-current source through a static inverter (see 2.26.9.6), elevators with driving motors employing static control without motor-generator sets shall conform to 2.26.9.5.1 through 2.26.9.5.4. (ED)

2.26.9.5.1 Two means shall be provided to remove power independently from the driving-machine motor. At least one shall conform to either 2.26.9.5.1(a) or 2.26.9.5.1(b). (07)

(a) An electromechanical contactor arranged to

(1) open each time the car stops, or

(2) open, at the latest, each time the car reverses direction, except for releveling, and it has been verified

at each stop that there is no current flow exceeding normal leakage current through the other means

(b) An E/E/PES, with a SIL of not less than the highest SIL value of the applicable function as shown in Table 2.26.4.3.2 for the electrical protective devices involved and shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked for compliance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3.

(07) **2.26.9.5.2** The means used for conformance to 2.26.9.5.1 shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine brake.

(07) **2.26.9.5.3** The electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2 shall control both means, except that leveling shall be permitted to take place with power opening of doors and gates in conformance with 2.13.2.1.1 and 2.13.2.2.1.

(07) **2.26.9.5.4** Where contactors are used to satisfy 2.26.9.5.1 or 2.26.8.2, after each time the contactor is required to open in conformance with 2.26.9.5.1(a) or 2.26.9.5.2, the car shall not respond to a signal to start unless the contactor(s) is in the de-energized position. After each stop in conformance with 2.26.9.5.1(a)(2), the car shall not respond to a signal to start if current flow exceeding normal leakage current through the other means is detected.

(ED) **2.26.9.6** Elevators employing alternating-current driving motors driven from a direct-current power source through a static inverter shall conform to 2.26.9.6.1 through 2.26.9.6.4.

(07) **2.26.9.6.1** Two separate means shall be provided to independently inhibit the flow of alternating current through the solid-state devices that connect the direct-current power source to the alternating-current driving motor. At least one of the means shall conform to either 2.26.9.6.1(a) or 2.26.9.6.1(b).

(a) An electromechanical relay arranged to

(1) open each time the car stops, or

(2) open, at the latest, each time the car reverses direction, except for releveling, and it has been verified at each stop that there is no current flow exceeding normal leakage current through the other means

(b) An E/E/PES, with a SIL of not less than the highest SIL value of the applicable function as shown in Table 2.26.4.3.2 for the electrical protective devices involved and shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked for compliance with the applicable requirements of IEC 61508-2 and IEC 61508-3.

2.26.9.6.2 The means used for conformance to 2.26.9.6.1(a) or 2.26.9.6.1(b) shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine brake circuit.

2.26.9.6.3 The electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2 shall control both means that inhibit the flow of alternating current through the solid-state devices, except that leveling shall be permitted to take place with power opening of the doors and gates as restricted by 2.13.2.1.1 and 2.13.2.2.1.

2.26.9.6.4 Where relays are used to satisfy 2.26.9.6.1(a) and contactors are used to satisfy 2.26.8.2, after each time the relay is required to open in conformance to 2.26.9.6.1(a) or the contactor is required to open in conformance to 2.26.9.6.2, the car shall not respond to a signal to start unless the relay that inhibits the flow of alternating current through the solid-state devices, as well as the contactors in the brake circuit, are in the de-energized position. After each stop in conformance to 2.26.9.6.1(a)(2), the car shall not respond to a signal to start if current flow exceeding normal leakage current through the other means is detected.

2.26.9.7 Where generator-field control is used, means shall be provided to prevent the generator from building up and applying sufficient current to the elevator driving-machine motor to move the car when the elevator motor control switches are in the "OFF" position. The means used shall not interfere with maintenance of an effective dynamic-braking circuit during stopping and standstill conditions.

2.26.9.8 The control circuits shall be so designed and installed that the car speed in the down direction with rated load in the car, under normal operating conditions with the power supply on or off, shall not exceed governor tripping speed, or 125% of rated speed, whichever is the lesser (see also 2.16.8).

2.26.10 Absorption of Regenerated Power

When a power source is used that, in itself, is incapable of absorbing the energy generated by an overhauling load, means for absorbing sufficient energy to prevent the elevator from attaining governor tripping speed or a speed in excess of 125% of rated speed, whichever is less, shall be provided on the load side of each elevator power supply line disconnecting means (see 2.16.8).

2.26.11 Car Platform to Hoistway Door Sills Vertical Distance

Where ANSI/ICC A117.1 or ADAAG is not applicable, the vertical distance between the car platform sill and the hoistway door sill on passenger elevators shall be in accordance with the following:

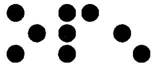
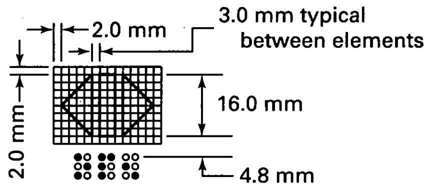
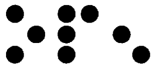
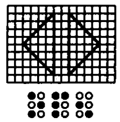
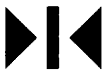
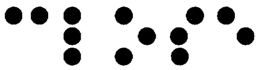
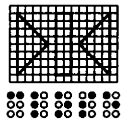
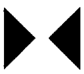
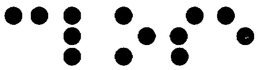
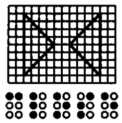
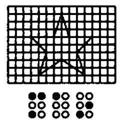
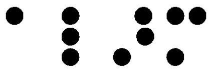
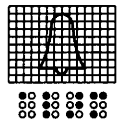
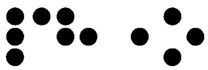
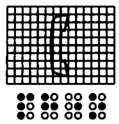
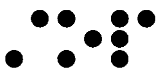
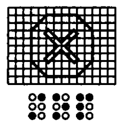
(a) it shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.) on initial stop at a landing

(b) the car shall relevel if the vertical distance exceeds 25 mm (1 in.) while loading or unloading

2.26.12 Symbols

2.26.12.1 Where reference is made requiring wording to designate a specific function, the symbols as shown in Table 2.26.12.1 shall be substituted for, or used in conjunction with, the required wording.

Table 2.26.12.1 Symbol Identification

Function	Tactile Symbol	Braille Message Where Provided	Proportions (Open Circles Indicate Unused Dots Within Each Braille Cell)
Door Open		 OP"EN"	
Rear/Side Door Open		 REAR/SIDE OP"EN"	
Door Close		 CLOSE	
Rear/Side Door Close		 REAR/SIDE CLOSE	
Main		 MA"IN"	
Alarm		 AL"AR"M	
Phone		 PH"ONE"	
Emergency Stop		 "ST"OP	

2.26.12.2 The emergency stop switch shall have the "STOP" and "RUN" positions conspicuously and permanently marked as required by 2.26.2.5(c).

2.26.12.3 Where Braille is provided it shall conform to the requirements in Table 2.26.12.1.

NOTE (2.26.12): See also ANSI/ICC A117.1, ADAAG, and B44 Appendix E.

2.26.12.4 Identify "HELP" button [see 2.27.1.1.3(b)] and visual indication [see 2.27.1.1.3(c)] with the phone symbol.

(07)
SECTION 2.27
EMERGENCY OPERATION AND SIGNALING DEVICES

NOTE (2.27): Additional requirements, including those for firefighters' communications systems, may be found in the building code.

2.27.1 Car Emergency Signaling Devices

2.27.1.1 Emergency Communications

(07) **2.27.1.1.1** A two-way communications means between the car and a location staffed by authorized personnel shall be provided.

(07) **2.27.1.1.2** When the two-way communications location is not staffed 24 h a day, by authorized personnel who can take appropriate action, the means of two-way communications shall automatically be directed within 30 s to an additional on- or off-site location, staffed by authorized personnel, where an appropriate response can be taken.

2.27.1.1.3 The two-way communication means within the car shall comply with the following requirements:

(a) In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, Appendix E of CSA B44, or in jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, ICC/ANSI A117.1.

(b) A push button to actuate the two-way communication means shall be provided in or adjacent to a car operating panel. The push button shall be visible and permanently identified as "HELP." The identification shall be on or adjacent to the "HELP" button. When the push button is actuated, the emergency two-way communication means shall initiate a call for help and establish two-way communications.

(c) A visual indication on the same panel as the "HELP" push button shall be provided, that is activated by authorized personnel, to acknowledge that two-way communications link has been established. The visual indication shall be extinguished when the two-way communication link is terminated.

(d) The two-way communication means shall provide on demand to authorized personnel, information that identifies the building location and elevator number and that assistance is required.

(e) After the call acknowledgement signals are sent [2.27.1.1.3(c)], the two-way voice communications shall be available between the car and authorized personnel.

(f) The two-way communications, once established, shall be disconnected only when authorized personnel outside the car terminate the call.

(g) The two-way communication means shall not use a handset in the car.

(h) The two-way communications shall not be transmitted to an automated answering system. The call for help shall be answered by authorized personnel.

(i) Operating instructions shall be incorporated with or adjacent to the "HELP" button.

2.27.1.1.4 Where the elevator rise is 18 m (60 ft) or more, a two-way voice communication means within the building accessible to emergency personnel shall be provided and comply with the following requirements: (07)

(a) The means shall enable emergency personnel within the building to establish two-way voice communications to each car individually. Two-way voice communication shall be established without any intentional delay and shall not require intervention by a person within the car. The means shall override communications to outside of the building.

(b) Two-way voice communications, once established, shall be disconnected only when emergency personnel outside the car terminates the call.

(c) Once the two-way voice communication has been established, the visual indication [see 2.27.1.1.3(c)] within the car shall illuminate. The visual indication shall be extinguished when the two-way communication is terminated.

(d) Operating instructions shall be incorporated with or adjacent to the two-way voice communication outside the car. Instructions shall conform to 2.27.7.3.

2.27.1.1.5 If the emergency communication means is normally connected to the building's main power supply, it shall automatically transfer to an alternate source(s) of power when the normal power supply fails. The alternate source(s) of power (standby, emergency, etc.) shall be capable of providing power for illumination of the visual indication [see 2.27.1.1.3(c)] within the car, and the means of emergency communications for at least 4 h; and the audible signaling device (see 2.27.1.2) for at least 1 h.

2.27.1.2 Emergency Stop Switch Audible Signal. When an emergency stop switch (2.26.2.5) is provided, an audible signaling device shall be provided. The audible signaling device shall

(a) have a rated sound pressure rating of not less than 80 dBA nor greater than 90 dBA at 3 m (10 ft)

(b) respond without delay after the switch has been activated

(c) be located inside the building and audible inside the car and outside the hoistway

(ED) (d) for elevators with a rise greater than 30 m (100 ft), be duplicated as follows:

(1) one device shall be mounted on the car

(2) a second device shall be placed at the designated level

2.27.2 Emergency or Standby Power System

Where an emergency or standby power system is provided to operate an elevator in the event of normal power supply failure, the requirements of 2.27.2.1 through 2.27.2.5 shall be complied with.

2.27.2.1 The emergency or standby power system shall be capable of operating the elevator(s) with rated load (see 2.16.8), at least one at a time, unless otherwise required by the building code.

2.27.2.2 The transfer between the normal and the emergency or standby power system shall be automatic.

2.27.2.3 An illuminated signal marked "ELEVATOR EMERGENCY POWER" shall be provided in the elevator lobby at the designated level to indicate that the normal power supply has failed and the emergency or standby power is in effect.

2.27.2.4 Where the emergency or standby power system is not capable of operating all elevators simultaneously, requirements of 2.27.2.4.1 through 2.27.2.4.5 shall be conformed to.

2.27.2.4.1 A selector switch(es) marked "ELEVATOR EMERGENCY POWER" in red lettering a minimum of 5 mm (0.25 in.) in height, that is key-operated or under a locked cover (see 2.27.8), shall be provided to permit the selection of the elevator(s) to operate on the emergency or standby power system. The key shall be Group 3 Security (see 8.1).

2.27.2.4.2 The selector switch(es) positions shall be marked to correspond with the elevator identification number (see 2.29) and a position marked "AUTO."

2.27.2.4.3 The selector switch(es) shall be located at the designated level in view of all elevator entrances, or if located elsewhere means shall be provided adjacent to the selector switch(es) to indicate that the elevator is at the designated level with the doors in the normally open position.

2.27.2.4.4 When the selector switch is in the "AUTO" position, automatic power selection shall be provided, that will return each elevator that is not on designated attendant operation, inspection operation, or Phase II In-Car Emergency Operation, one or more at a time, to the recall level. Failure of the selected car to move shall cause power to be transferred to another car.

2.27.2.4.5 The selector switch(es) positions corresponding to the elevator identification numbers (see 2.29.1) shall override the automatic power selection. Operation of the selector switch(es) shall not cause power to be removed from any elevator until the elevator is stopped.

NOTE (2.27.2.4): The selector switch(es) should normally be placed in the "AUTO" position.

2.27.2.5 When the emergency or standby power system is designed to operate only one elevator at a time, the energy absorption means (if required) shall be permitted to be located on the supply side of the elevator power disconnecting means, provided all other requirements of 2.26.10 are conformed to when operating any of the elevators the power might serve. Other building loads, such as power and lights that can be supplied by the emergency or standby power system, shall not be considered as a means of absorbing the regenerated energy for the purposes of conforming to 2.26.10, unless such loads are normally powered by the emergency or standby power system.

2.27.3 Firefighters' Emergency Operation: Automatic Elevators (07)

Firefighters' Emergency Operation shall apply to all automatic elevators except where the hoistway or a portion thereof is not required to be fire-resistive construction (see 2.1.1.1), the rise does not exceed 2 000 mm (80 in.), and the hoistway does not penetrate a floor.

NOTE (2.27.3): When the structure (building, etc.) is located in a flood hazard area, the alternate and designated levels (see 8.12.1) should be above the base flood elevation.

2.27.3.1 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation

2.27.3.1.1 A three-position key-operated switch that will not change position without a deliberate action by the user, shall be (07)

(a) provided only at the designated level for each single elevator or for each group of elevators.

(b) labeled "FIRE RECALL" and its positions marked "RESET," "OFF," and "ON" (in that order), with the "OFF" position as the center position. The "FIRE RECALL" letters shall be a minimum of 5 mm (0.25 in.) high in red or a color contrasting with a red background.

(c) located in the lobby within sight of the elevator or all elevators in that group and shall be readily accessible.

2.27.3.1.2 An additional key-operated "FIRE RECALL" switch, with two positions that will not change position without a deliberate action by the user, marked "OFF" and "ON" (in that order), shall be permitted only at the building fire control station. (07)

2.27.3.1.3 The switch(es) shall be rotated clockwise to go from the "RESET" (designated level switch only), to "OFF" to "ON" positions. Keys shall be removable only in the "OFF" and "ON" positions.

2.27.3.1.4 Only the "FIRE RECALL" switch(es) or fire alarm initiating device located at floors that are (05S) served by the elevator, or in the hoistway, or in an elevator machine room, or a control space, or a control room (see 2.27.3.2) shall initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

2.27.3.1.5 All "FIRE RECALL" switches shall be provided with an illuminated visual signal to indicate when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect.

2.27.3.1.6 When a "FIRE RECALL" switch is in the "ON" position all cars controlled by the switch shall operate as follows:

(a) A car traveling towards the designated level shall continue nonstop to the designated level and power-operated doors shall open and remain open.

On cars with two entrances, if both entrances can be opened at the designated level, only the doors serving the lobby where the "FIRE RECALL" switch is located shall open and remain open.

(b) A car traveling away from the designated level shall reverse at or before the next available landing without opening its doors and proceed to designated level.

(c) A stopped car shall have the in-car stop switch (see 2.26.2.21) and the emergency stop switch in the car (see 2.26.2.5) when provided, rendered inoperative as soon as the car moves away from the landing. A moving car shall have the in-car stop switch and the emergency stop switch in the car when provided, rendered inoperative without delay. Once the emergency stop switch in the car and the in-car stop switch have been rendered inoperative, they shall remain inoperative while the car is on Phase I Emergency Recall Operation. All other stop switches required by 2.26.2 shall remain operative.

(d) A car standing at a landing other than the designated level, with the doors open and the in-car stop switch and the emergency stop switch in the car when provided, in the run position, shall conform to the following:

(1) Elevators having automatic power-operated horizontally sliding doors shall close the doors without delay and proceed to the designated level.

(2) Elevators having power-operated vertically sliding doors provided with automatic or momentary pressure closing operation per 2.13.3.4 shall have the closing sequence initiated without delay in accordance with 2.13.3.4.1, 2.13.3.4.2, 2.13.3.4.3, and 2.13.3.4.5, and the car shall proceed to the designated level.

(3) Elevators having power-operated doors provided with continuous pressure closing operation (see 2.13.3.2), or elevators having manual doors, shall be provided with a visual and audible signal system [see 2.27.3.1.6(h)] to alert an operator to close the doors and shall, when the doors are closed, proceed to the designated level. Sequence operation, if provided, shall remain effective.

(e) Door reopening devices for power-operated doors that are sensitive to smoke or flame shall be rendered inoperative without delay. Door reopening devices not sensitive to smoke or flame (e.g., mechanically actuated devices) are permitted to remain operative. Door closing for power-operated doors shall conform to 2.13.5.

(f) All car and corridor call buttons shall be rendered inoperative. All call-registered lights and directional lanterns shall be extinguished and remain inoperative. Car position indicators, where provided, shall remain operative. Where provided, landing position indicators shall be extinguished and remain inoperative, except at the designated level and the building fire control station, where they shall remain operative.

(g) Where provided on elevators with vertically sliding doors, corridor door open and door close buttons shall remain operative.

(h) An illuminated visual and audible signal system shall be activated. The visual signal shall be one of the symbols shown in Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h) and located on the car-operating panel. The entire circular or square area or the outline of the hat, or the outline of the area shown in Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h) shall be illuminated. The visual signal shall remain activated until the car is restored to automatic operation. When the door is open, the audible signal shall remain active until the door is closed. When the door is closed, the audible signal shall remain active for a minimum of 5 s. The audible signal shall not be active when the car is at the recall level.

(i) A car stopped at a landing shall have the in-car door open button rendered inoperative as soon as the car moves away from the landing. The in-car door open button shall remain inoperative when a car stops to reverse direction. Once the in-car door open button has been rendered inoperative, it shall remain inoperative until the car has returned to the designated level. **(07)**

(j) Where an additional "FIRE RECALL" switch is provided, both "FIRE RECALL" switches shall be in the "ON" position to recall the elevator to the designated level if the elevator was recalled to the alternate level (see 2.27.3.2.4).

(k) To remove the elevator(s) from Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, the "FIRE RECALL" switch shall be rotated first to the "RESET," and then to the "OFF" position, provided that

(1) the additional two-position "FIRE RECALL" switch, where provided, is in the "OFF" position

(2) no fire alarm initiating device is activated (see 2.27.3.2).

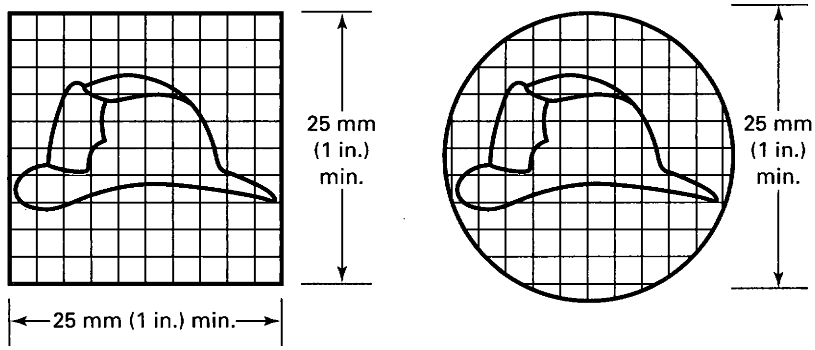
(l) Means used to remove elevators from normal operation shall not prevent Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, except **(07)**

(1) as specified in this Code

(2) as controlled by elevator personnel

(m) No device, that measures load, shall prevent operation of the elevator at or below the capacity and loading required in 2.16.

(07) **Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h) Visual Signal**



(07) *(n)* If the normal power supply, emergency power supply, and standby power supply are not available and the elevator is equipped with an alternate source of power that is insufficient to move the car to the recall level, the following requirements shall apply:

(1) The visual signal [2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall extinguish.

(2) A car that is not at a landing shall move to the closest landing it is capable of reaching.

(3) A car that has automatic power-operated horizontally sliding doors or power-operated vertically sliding doors provided with automatic closing operation and is stopped at a landing, shall open the doors, and then within 15 s, initiate reclosing.

(4) A car that is stopped at a landing shall have its door open button operative.

(5) A car stopped at a landing shall not move until normal power, emergency power, or standby power becomes available.

2.27.3.2 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by Fire Alarm Initiating Devices

(07) **2.27.3.2.1** In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, fire alarm initiating devices used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be installed in conformance with the requirements of NFPA 72, and shall be located

(a) at each floor served by the elevator

(b) in the associated elevator machine room, control space, or control room

(c) in the elevator hoistway, when sprinklers are located in those hoistways

(07) **2.27.3.2.2** In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, smoke detectors, or, if applicable, the building fire alarm system (fire alarm initiating devices), used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, shall be installed in conformance with the requirements of the NBCC, and shall be located in

(a) each elevator lobby

(b) the machine room

NOTE (2.27.3.2.2): Fire alarm initiating devices are referred to as fire detectors in the NBCC.

2.27.3.2.3 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the designated level shall conform to the following:

(a) The activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1 or 2.27.3.2.2(a) at any floor, other than at the designated level, shall cause all elevators that serve that floor, and any associated elevator of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level.

(b) The activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(b) or 2.27.3.2.2(b) shall cause all elevators having any equipment located in that machine room, and any associated elevators of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level. If the machine room is located at the designated level, the elevator(s) shall be returned nonstop to the alternate level. (07)

(c) In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, the activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(c) or in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, the initiation of a fire detector in the hoistway shall cause all elevators having any equipment in that hoistway, and any associated elevators of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level, except that initiating device(s) installed at or below the lowest landing of recall shall cause the car to be sent to the upper recall level. (07)

(d) The Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the designated level shall conform to 2.27.3.1.6(a) through (n). (ED)

2.27.3.2.4 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to an alternate level (see 1.3) shall conform to the following:

(a) the activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(a) or 2.27.3.2.2(b) that is located at the designated level, shall cause all elevators serving that level to be recalled to an alternate level, unless Phase I Emergency Recall is in effect

(b) the requirements of 2.27.3.1.6(f), (j), (m), and (n) (ED)

(c) the requirements of 2.27.3.1.6(a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (g), (h), (i), (k), and (l), except that all references to the

"designated level" shall be replaced with "alternate level"

2.27.3.2.5 The recall level shall be determined by the first activated fire alarm initiating device for that group (see 2.27.3.2.1 or 2.27.3.2.2).

If the car(s) is recalled to the designated level by the "FIRE RECALL" switch(es) [see also 2.27.3.1.6(j)], the recall level shall remain the designated level.

(05S) **2.27.3.2.6** When a fire alarm initiating device in the machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway initiates Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, as required by 2.27.3.2.3 or 2.27.3.2.4, the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall illuminate intermittently only in a car(s) with equipment in that machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway. When activated, a heat detector [2.27.3.2.1(d)] in the machine room, control space, or control room shall cause the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)] to illuminate intermittently only in a car(s) with equipment in that machine room, control space, or control room.

(07) **2.27.3.3 Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation.** A three-position ("OFF," "HOLD," and "ON," in that order) key-operated switch that will not change position without a deliberate action by the user, shall be labeled "FIRE OPERATION"; provided in an operating panel in each car; and shall be readily accessible. The label "FIRE OPERATION" lettering shall be a minimum of 5 mm (0.25 in.) high in red or a color contrasting with a red background. It shall become effective only when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect and the car has been returned to the recall level. The switch shall be rotated clockwise to go from "OFF" to "HOLD" to "ON."

The key shall only be removable in the "OFF" and "HOLD" position. For elevators with power-operated doors, the "OFF," "HOLD," and "ON" positions shall not change the mode of operation within Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation until the car is at a landing with the doors in the normal open position, except as required by 2.27.3.3.4 and 2.27.3.4. The three modes of operation within Phase II In-Car Operation ("OFF," "HOLD," and "ON") are specified by 2.27.3.3.1 through 2.27.3.3.4.

For elevators with manual doors, after the car and hoistway doors have been opened at least once at the recall level, the "OFF," "HOLD," and "ON" positions shall then change the mode of operation in accordance with 2.27.3.3.1 through 2.27.3.3.4.

2.27.3.3.1 When the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "ON" position, the elevator shall be on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, for use by emergency personnel only, and the elevator shall operate as follows:

(a) The elevator shall be operable only by a person in the car.

(b) The car shall not respond to landing calls. Directional lanterns, where provided, shall remain inoperative. Car position indicators, where provided, shall remain operative. Landing position indicators, where provided, shall remain inoperative, except at the designated level and the building fire control station, where they shall remain operative.

(c) Door open and close buttons shall be provided for power-operated doors and located as required by 2.27.3.3.7. Buttons shall be a minimum of 19 mm (0.75 in.) in the smallest dimension. The door open and door close buttons shall be labeled "OPEN" and "CLOSE." The door open and close buttons shall be operative when the elevator is stopped within an unlocking zone. (07)

(d) The opening of power-operated doors shall be controlled only by a continuous-pressure door open button. If the button is released prior to the doors reaching the normal open position, the doors shall automatically reclose. Requirements 2.13.3.3, 2.13.3.4, 2.13.4.2.1(b)(2), and 2.13.4.2.1(c) do not apply.

On cars with multiple entrances, if more than one entrance can be opened at the same landing, separate door open buttons shall be provided for each entrance.

(e) Open power-operated doors shall be closed only by continuous pressure on the door close button. If the button is released prior to the doors reaching the fully closed position, horizontally sliding doors shall automatically reopen, and vertically sliding doors shall automatically stop or stop and reopen.

On cars with multiple entrances, if more than one entrance can be opened at the same landing, a separate door close button shall be provided for each entrance.

(f) Opening and closing of power-operated car doors or gates that are opposite manual swing or manual slide hoistway doors shall conform to 2.27.3.3.1(d) and (e).

(g) All door reopening devices, except the door open button, shall be rendered inoperative. Full-speed closing shall be permitted.

Landing door opening and closing buttons, where provided, shall be rendered inoperative.

(h) Every car shall be provided with a button labeled "CALL CANCEL," located as required in 2.27.3.3.7, that shall be effective during Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation. When activated, all registered calls shall be canceled and a traveling car shall stop at or before the next available landing. The button shall be a minimum of 19 mm (0.75 in.) in the smallest dimension. (07)

(i) Floor selection means shall be provided in the car to permit travel to all landings served by the car, and shall be operative at all times, except as in 2.27.3.3.2 and 8.12.1. Means to prevent the operation of the floor selection means or door-operating buttons shall be rendered inoperative. The floor selection means shall be operable without the use of keys, cards, tools, or special knowledge. The floor selection means shall be permitted to be located behind the locked cover specified in (07)

2.27.3.3.7, only if floor selection means for all landings served are included behind the locked cover. Where buttons not accessible to the public are provided they shall be a minimum of 19 mm (0.75 in.) in the smallest dimension.

(j) A traveling car shall stop at the next available landing for which a car call was registered. When a car stops at a landing, all registered car calls shall be canceled.

(07) (k) Means used to remove elevators from normal operation shall not prevent Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, except

(1) as specified in this Code

(2) as controlled by elevator personnel

(l) No device, that measures load, shall prevent operation of the elevator at or below the capacity and loading required in 2.16.

(07) (m) Every car shall be provided with a switch, conforming to the requirements of 2.26.2.33 and located as required in 2.27.3.3.7. When the switch is in the "STOP" position, all registered calls shall be canceled and power shall be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake. When the switch is moved to the "RUN" position from the "STOP" position, the car shall not move, except for leveling, until a call is entered. If the type of switch used is a button, it shall be a minimum of 19 mm (0.75 in.) in the smallest dimension.

NOTE [2.27.3.3.1(m)]: This requirement does not limit the firefighters' stop switch to a specific style of switch. Toggle switches and push/pull buttons are two possible styles. A switch, if provided, should be operable to the "STOP" position by a firefighter wearing protective gloves (see NFPA 1971).

(07) (n) If the normal power supply, emergency power supply, and standby power supply are not available and the elevator is equipped with an alternate source of power that is insufficient to move the car to all landings, the requirements of 2.27.3.1.6(n)(1) through (5) shall apply.

(07) **2.27.3.3.2** For elevators with power-operated doors, when the car is at a landing, with the doors open, and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "HOLD" position, the car shall remain at the landing with the doors open. The door close buttons shall be inoperative, and car calls shall not be registered.

For elevators with manual doors, when the car is at a landing and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "HOLD" position, the car shall remain at the landing and car calls shall not be registered.

2.27.3.3.3 When the car is at a landing other than the recall level, with the doors in the normal open position, and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "OFF" position, power-operated doors shall operate as follows:

(a) Horizontal sliding doors shall close automatically. All door reopening devices shall remain inoperative. Door open buttons shall remain operative. Full-speed closing is permitted. If the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is turned to the "ON" or "HOLD" position prior to the completion of door closing, the doors shall reopen.

(b) Elevators having vertically sliding doors shall have corridor "DOOR OPEN" and "DOOR CLOSE" buttons rendered operative. All door reopening devices shall remain inoperative. Door closing shall be in accordance with 2.27.3.3.1(e). Full-speed closing is permitted. If the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is turned to the "ON" or "HOLD" position prior to the completion of door closing, the doors shall reopen.

2.27.3.3.4 When the doors are in the closed position and the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is placed in the "OFF" position, the car shall return to the recall level in conformance with 2.27.3.1.6(a) through (n) and 2.27.3.2.5. (07)

2.27.3.3.5 Elevators shall be removed from Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation only when the "FIRE OPERATION" switch is in the "OFF" position and the car is at the designated level and the doors are in the normal open position.

2.27.3.3.6 The occurrence of an accidental ground or short circuit in elevator electrical equipment located on the landing side of the hoistway enclosure and in associated wiring, as a result of exposure to water, shall not disable Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation once it has been activated.

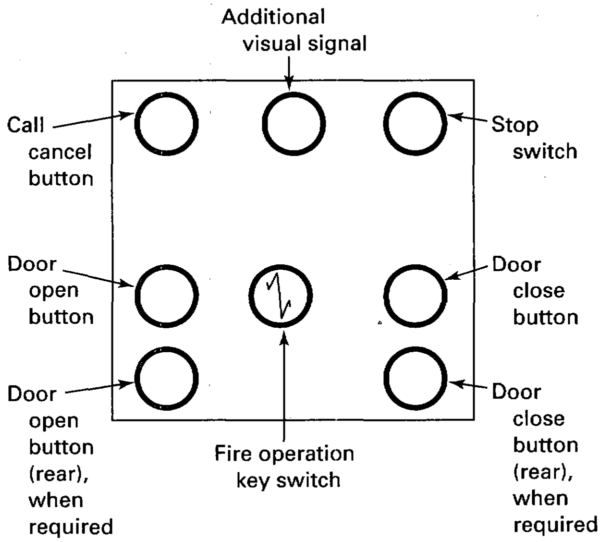
2.27.3.3.7 The "FIRE OPERATION" switch (2.27.3.3), the "CALL CANCEL" button [2.27.3.3.1(h)], the "STOP" switch [2.27.3.3.1(m)], the door open button(s), the door close button(s), the additional visual signal (2.27.3.3.8), and the operating instructions shown in Fig. 2.27.7.2 shall be grouped together at the top of a main car operating panel behind a locked cover.

The firefighters' operation panel cover shall be openable by the same key that operates the "FIRE OPERATION" switch. The cover shall be permitted to open automatically when the car is on Phase I Emergency Recall Operation and at the recall level. When the key is in the "FIRE OPERATION" switch, the cover shall not be capable of being closed. When closed, the cover shall be self-locking.

Where rear doors are provided, buttons for both the front and rear doors shall be provided in the firefighters' operation panel. The door open and door close buttons for the rear entrance shall be labeled "OPEN REAR" and "CLOSE REAR."

All buttons and switches shall be readily accessible, located not more than 1 800 mm (72 in.) above the floor and shall be arranged as shown in Fig. 2.27.3.3.7. Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply to these buttons and switches. The front of the cover shall contain the words "FIREFIGHTERS' OPERATION" in red letters at least 10 mm (0.4 in.) high.

Fig. 2.27.3.3.7 Panel Layout



GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Switches and buttons show only the location not the labeling.

(b) When manually operated doors are provided, door open and close buttons and instructions for their use are not required.

(c) Not to scale.

2.27.3.3.8 An additional visual signal shall be provided and located as required by 2.27.3.3.7. The additional visual signal shall be one of the symbols shown in Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h). The entire circular or square area shown in Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h) shall be illuminated. This additional visual signal shall be activated whenever the visual signal in 2.27.3.1.6(h) is activated.

(07) **2.27.3.4 Interruption of Power.** Upon the resumption of power (normal, emergency, or standby), the car shall be permitted to move to reestablish absolute car position. Restoration of electrical power following a power interruption shall not cause any elevator to be removed from Phase I Emergency Recall Operation or Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation.

The failure and subsequent restoration of electrical power (normal, emergency, or standby) shall not cause any elevator to be removed from Phase I Emergency Operation or Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation.

(a) Elevators on Phase I Emergency Operation shall be permitted to move only to the next floor in the direction of the recall level to reestablish absolute car position prior to conforming to 2.27.3.1 and 2.27.3.2.

(b) Elevators on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation with the key in the "OFF" position shall be permitted to move only to the next floor in the direction of the recall level to reestablish absolute car position prior to conforming to 2.27.3.3.3 and 2.27.3.3.4. If the key is moved to the "ON" or "HOLD" position before the doors are fully closed, 2.27.3.4(c) or (d) shall apply, and automatic power-operated doors shall open if in a level zone.

(c) Elevators on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation with the key in the "HOLD" position shall not move, except for leveling within a leveling zone. Automatic power-operated doors shall open if the doors are not fully closed and the car is in a level zone.

(d) Elevators on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation with the key in the "ON" position shall not move, except for leveling within a leveling zone, until a car call is entered. Automatic power-operated doors shall not move until a door open or close button is pressed; after which they shall conform to 2.27.3.3.1(d) and (e). After a car call is entered, the car shall be permitted to move only to the next floor in the direction of the recall level to reestablish absolute car position prior to answering car calls.

2.27.3.5 Multicompartment Elevators. Multicompartment elevators shall also conform to 2.27.3.5.1 and 2.27.3.5.7. (07)

2.27.3.5.1 The "FIRE RECALL" switch (2.27.3.1) shall be located at the designated level served by the upper compartment.

2.27.3.5.2 The "FIRE OPERATION" switch (see 2.27.3.3) shall be located in the upper compartment.

2.27.3.5.3 A means to display the entire floor area in the lower compartment shall be located in the upper compartment. The means shall display the lower compartment only when Phase I and Phase II is in effect.

2.27.3.5.4 A switch labeled "LOWER CAR LOCKOUT" with two positions marked "OFF" and "ON" shall be located behind the firefighters' operation panel cover (see 2.27.3.3.7).

NOTE (2.27.3.5.4): The switch should be operable by a firefighter wearing protective gloves (see NFPA 1971).

(a) The "LOWER CAR LOCKOUT" switch shall only be functional when Phase II is in effect.

(b) When placed in the "ON" position, the "LOWER CAR LOCKOUT" switch shall

(1) disable all door reopening devices in the lower compartment, and

(2) initiate closing of the lower compartment doors in accordance with 2.13.4.2.1(c).

(c) When the car is stopped at a landing and the "LOWER CAR LOCKOUT" switch is in the "OFF" position, the lower compartment doors shall be opened.

2.27.4 Firefighters' Emergency Operation: Nonautomatic Elevators

Firefighters' Emergency Operation shall apply to all nonautomatic elevators, except as follows:

(a) where the hoistway or a portion thereof is not required to be fire-resistive construction (see 2.1.1.1), the (ED)

rise does not exceed 2 000 mm (80 in.), and the hoistway does not penetrate a floor

(b) in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC where the NBCC does not require Firefighters' Emergency Operation

(c) where Firefighters' Emergency Operation is provided voluntarily these requirements shall also apply

(05S) **2.27.4.1 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.** A three-position key-operated switch shall be provided at the designated level for each single elevator or for each group of elevators. The three-position switch shall be labeled "FIRE RECALL" and its positions marked "RESET," "OFF," and "ON" (in that order), with the "OFF" position as the center position. The "FIRE RECALL" letters shall be a minimum of 5 mm (0.25 in.) high in red or a color contrasting with a red background. The three-position switch shall be located in the lobby within sight of the elevator or all elevators in that group and shall be readily accessible.

An additional "FIRE RECALL" switch with two-positions, "OFF" and "ON" (in that order), shall be permitted only at the building fire control station.

The switch(es) shall be rotated clockwise to go from the "RESET" (designated level switch only), to the "OFF" and to the "ON" positions.

All keys shall be removable only in the "OFF" and "ON" positions.

Only the "FIRE RECALL" switch(es) or fire alarm initiating devices located at floors that are served by the elevator, in the hoistway, or in an elevator machine room, or a control space, or a control room (see 2.27.3.2) shall initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

All "FIRE RECALL" switches shall be provided with an illuminated visual signal to indicate when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect.

When all switches are in the "OFF" position, normal elevator service shall be in effect and the fire alarm initiating devices required by 2.27.4.2 shall be operative.

When a "FIRE RECALL" switch is in the "ON" position, a visual and audible signal shall be provided to alert the attendant to return nonstop to the designated or alternate level. The visual signal shall read "FIRE RECALL — RETURN TO _____" [insert level to which the car should be returned (the designated or alternate level)]. The signal system shall be activated when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect.

Where an additional "FIRE RECALL" switch is provided, both "FIRE RECALL" switches must be in the "ON" position to recall the elevator to the designated level if the elevator was recalled to the alternate level.

Where an additional "FIRE RECALL" switch is provided, it shall not affect the visual signal if the designated level fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2.4) has been activated.

To extinguish the audible and visual signals, the "FIRE RECALL" switch shall be rotated first to the "RESET" and then to the "OFF" position, provided that:

(a) the additional two-position "FIRE RECALL" switch, where provided, is in the "OFF" position

(b) no fire alarm initiating device is activated (see also 2.27.3.2.4)

No device, that measures load, shall prevent operation of the elevator at or below the capacity and loading required in 2.16.

2.27.4.2 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by Fire Alarm Initiating Devices. Fire alarm initiating devices shall be installed at each floor served by the elevator, and in the associated machine room, control space, or control room, and elevator hoistway, in compliance with the requirements in NFPA 72 or NBCC, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, compliance with 2.27.4.2 is not required where the NBCC specifies manual Emergency Recall operations only. (07)

Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, conforming to 2.27.4.1, shall be initiated when any Phase I Emergency Recall Operation fire alarm initiating device at the elevator lobbies, machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway is activated.

Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, when initiated by a Phase I Emergency Recall Operation fire alarm initiating device, shall be maintained until canceled by moving the "FIRE RECALL" switch to the "RESET" position.

When a fire alarm initiating device in the machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway initiates Phase I Emergency Recall Operation as required by 2.27.3.2.3 or 2.27.3.2.4, the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall illuminate intermittently only in a car(s) with equipment in that machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway. When activated, a heat detector [2.27.3.2.1(d)] in the machine room, control space, or control room shall cause the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)] to illuminate intermittently only in a car(s) with equipment in that machine room, control space, or control room.

2.27.5 Firefighters' Emergency Operation: Automatic Elevators With Designated-Attendant Operation

2.27.5.1 When designated-attendant operation is not in effect, elevators shall conform to 2.27.3.

2.27.5.2 When operated by a designated attendant in the car, except hospital service:

(a) elevators parked at the recall level shall conform to 2.27.3 without delay; elevators parked at a floor other than the recall level shall conform to 2.27.3.1.6(h). At the completion of a time delay of not less than 10 s and not more than 30 s, elevators parked at a floor away from the recall level shall conform to 2.27.3. (07)

(b) A moving car shall conform to 2.27.3.

Fig. 2.27.7.1 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation Instructions

FIREFIGHTERS' OPERATION

To recall elevators
Insert fire key and turn to "ON"

2.27.5.3 When an elevator that is provided with firefighters' emergency operation is on hospital service, a visual signal as shown in Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h) shall illuminate and a continuous audible signal, audible within the car, shall sound when the "FIRE RECALL" switch(es) (see 2.27.3.1) is in the "ON" position, or when a fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2) is activated to alert the operator of an emergency. A means located in the car shall be permitted for manually silencing the audible signal, after the signal has been active for at least 5 s. The signal shall be automatically reactivated when the doors open.

The car shall remain under control of the operator until removed from hospital service. An elevator on firefighters' emergency operation shall not be placed on hospital service.

2.27.6 Firefighters' Emergency Operation: Inspection Operation

When an elevator that is provided with firefighters' service is on inspection operation (see 2.26.1.4 and 2.26.1.5) or when the hoistway access switch(es) has been enabled [see 2.12.7.3.3(a)], a continuous audible signal, audible at the location where the operation is activated shall sound when the "FIRE RECALL" switch(es) (see 2.27.3.1) is in the "ON" position or when the fire alarm initiating device (see 2.27.3.2) is activated to alert the operator of an emergency. The car shall remain under the control of the operator until removed from inspection operation or hoistway access operation. Inspection operation or hoistway access operation shall take precedence over Phase I Emergency Recall Operation and Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation.

2.27.7 Firefighters' Emergency Operation: Operating Procedures

2.27.7.1 Instructions for operation of elevators under Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be incorporated with or adjacent to the "FIRE RECALL" switch at the designated level. The instructions shall include only the wording shown in Fig. 2.27.7.1.

2.27.7.2 A sign containing instructions for operation of elevators under Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation shall be incorporated with or adjacent to the switch in each car and shall be visible only when the cover (2.27.3.3.7) is open. The sign shall include only the wording and graphics shown in Fig. 2.27.7.2, except

(*a*) for elevators with manually operated doors, the instructions for opening and closing the doors shall be permitted to be replaced with short phrases such as "PUSH DOOR" or "PULL DOOR UP"

(*b*) for elevators with vertically sliding doors, the instructions for returning the car to the recall floor shall be permitted to be expanded to include instructions for closing the door

2.27.7.3 Instructions shall be in letters not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) in height and shall be permanently installed and protected against removal or defacement.

2.27.7.4 In jurisdictions that enforce the NBCC, a symbol showing a red firefighters' hat on a contrasting background, as shown in Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h) (figure not to scale), shall be used exclusively to identify elevators that comply with 2.27.3 and additional NBCC requirements. This identification shall be located on the elevator entrance frame or adjacent to it at each emergency recall level. The identification on the entrance frame, or adjacent to it, shall be a minimum of 50 mm (2 in.) in height.

2.27.8 Switch Keys (07)

The key switches required by 2.27.2 through 2.27.5 for all elevators in a building shall be operable by the same key. The keys shall be Group 3 Security (see 8.1). There shall be a key for each switch provided.

These keys shall be kept on the premises in a location readily accessible to firefighters and emergency personnel, but not where they are available to the public. This key shall be of a tubular, 7 pin, style 137 construction and shall have a bitting code of 6143521. The key shall be coded "FEO-K1." The possession of the "FEO-K1" key shall be limited to elevator personnel, emergency personnel, and elevator equipment manufacturers.

Where provided, a lock box, including its lock and other components, shall conform to the requirements of UL 1037 (see Part 9).

NOTE (2.27.8): Local authorities may specify additional requirements for a uniform keyed lock box and its location to contain the necessary keys.

2.27.9 Elevator Corridor Call Station Pictograph

When the building code requires a sign be posted adjacent to hall call fixtures instructing occupants not to use the elevator in case of fire, the sign shown in Fig. 2.27.9 shall be provided. The sign shall include only the wording and graphics shown in Fig. 2.27.9. When the building code specifies a different design, 2.27.9 shall not apply.

Fig. 2.27.7.2 Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation

FIRE OPERATION

When  **flashing, exit elevator**

To operate car	**Insert fire key and turn to "ON."** **Enter floor selection.**
To cancel floor selection	**Press "CALL CANCEL" button.**
To close door	**Press and hold "CLOSE" button.**
To open door	**Press and hold "OPEN" button.**
To hold car at floor	**With doors open, turn key to "HOLD."**
For emergency stop	**Use "STOP" switch.**
To automatically return to recall floor	**Turn key to "OFF."**

SECTION 2.28 LAYOUT DRAWINGS

2.28.1 Information Required on Layout Drawings

Elevator layout drawings shall, in addition to other data, indicate the following:

(a) the maximum bracket spacing (see 2.23)

(b) the estimated maximum vertical forces on the guide rails on application of the safety or other retarding device (see 2.23 and 2.19.3)

(c) in the case of freight elevators for Class B or C loading (see 2.16.2.2), the horizontal forces on the guide-rail faces during loading and unloading, and the estimated maximum horizontal forces in a post-wise direction on the guide-rail faces on the application of the safety device (see 2.23)

(d) the size and linear weight kg/m (lb/ft) of any rail reinforcement, where provided (see 2.23)

(05S) *(e)* the total static and impact loads imposed on machinery and sheave beams, supports, and floors or foundations (see 2.9)

(f) the impact load on buffer supports due to buffer engagement at the maximum permissible speed and load (see 8.2.3)

(g) where compensation tie-down is applied (see 2.21.4.2), the load on the compensation tie-down supports

(h) the total static and dynamic loads from the governor, ropes, and tension system

(i) the horizontal forces on the building structure stipulated by 2.11.11.8 and 2.11.11.9

SECTION 2.29 IDENTIFICATION

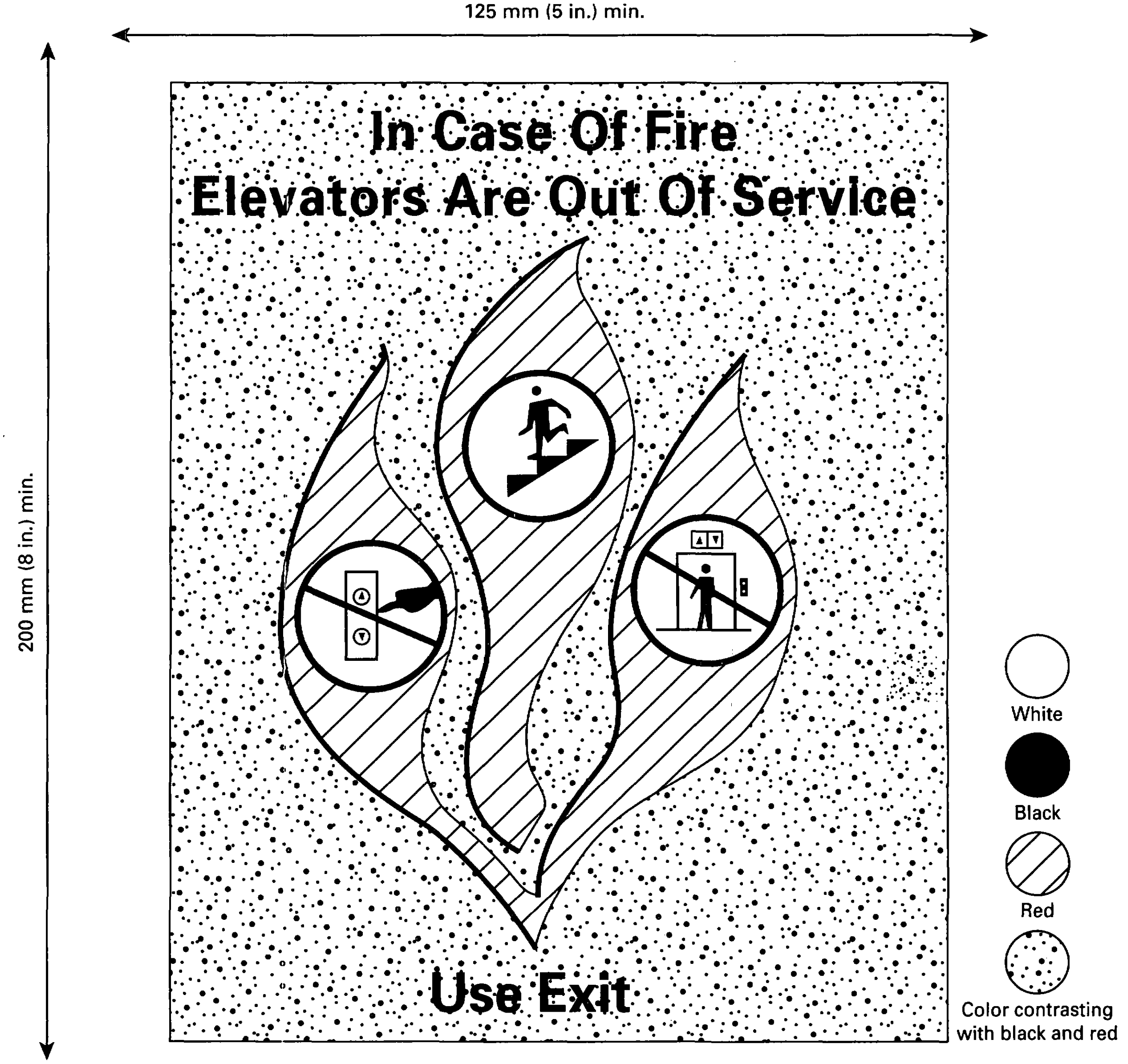
2.29.1 Identification of Equipment

In buildings with more than one elevator, each elevator in the building shall be assigned a unique alphabetical or numerical identification, a minimum of 50 mm (2 in.) in height unless otherwise specified. The identification shall be painted on, engraved, or securely attached to

(a) the driving machine

(b) MG set

Fig. 2.27.9 Elevator Corridor Call Station Pictograph (07)



(c) controller
(d) selector
(e) governor
(f) main line disconnect switch
(g) the crosshead, or where there is no crosshead, the car frame, such that it is visible from the top of the car
(h) the car operating panel, minimum of 13 mm (0.5 in.) in height
(i) adjacent to or on every elevator entrance at the designated level, minimum of 75 mm (3 in.) in height

2.29.2 Identification of Floors

Hoistways shall have floor numbers, not less than 100 mm (4 in.) in height, on the hoistway side of the enclosure or hoistway doors.

Part 3
Hydraulic Elevators

SCOPE

Part 3 applies to direct-acting hydraulic elevators and the roped-hydraulic types.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *hydraulic elevators.*

SECTION 3.1
CONSTRUCTION OF HOISTWAYS AND HOISTWAY ENCLOSURES

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 2.1.1 through 2.1.6 and 2.29.2, except 2.1.2.3 and 2.1.3.1.2.

3.1.1 Strength of Pit Floor

The pit equipment, beams, floor, and their supports shall be designed and constructed to meet the applicable building code requirements and to withstand the following loads in the manner in which they occur:

(a) the impact load due to car buffer engagement (see 8.2.3 and 3.22.2)

(b) where a plunger gripper, or car, or counterweight safety is furnished, the part of the load transmitted by the application of such gripper(s) or safety(s)

(c) loads imposed by the hydraulic jack

(1) to the cylinder during normal operation

(2) to the buffer when resting on the buffer or during conditions described in 3.1.1(a)

(d) hoist rope up-pull, where applicable, for indirect roped-hydraulic elevators

3.1.2 Floors Over Hoistways

The floor shall be located entirely above the horizontal plane required for hydraulic elevator top car clearance.

When a hydraulic pump unit and/or control equipment is located on a floor over the hoistway, access shall comply with 2.7.3.

SECTION 3.2
PITS

Pits shall conform to 2.2, except 2.2.7.

3.2.1 Minimum Pit Depths Required

The pit depth shall not be less than is required for the installation of the buffers, hydraulic jack, platform guard (apron), and all other elevator equipment located therein, and to provide the minimum bottom clearance and runby required by 3.4.1 and 3.4.2, respectively.

SECTION 3.3
LOCATION AND GUARDING OF COUNTERWEIGHTS

The location and guarding of counterweights, where provided, shall conform to 2.3.

SECTION 3.4
BOTTOM AND TOP CLEARANCES AND RUNBYS FOR CARS AND COUNTERWEIGHTS

Requirement 2.4 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

3.4.1 Bottom Car Clearance

3.4.1.1 When the car rests on its fully compressed buffers or bumpers, there shall be a vertical clearance of not less than 600 mm (24 in.) between the pit floor and the lowest structural or mechanical part, equipment, or device installed beneath the car platform, including a plunger-follower guide, if provided, except as specified in 3.4.1.2.

3.4.1.2 The 600 mm (24 in.) clearance does not apply to the following:

(a) any equipment on the car within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from any side of the car platform

(b) any equipment located on or traveling with the car located within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from either side of the car frame centerline parallel to the guide rails

(c) any equipment mounted in or on the pit floor located within 300 mm (12 in.) horizontally from either side of the car frame centerline parallel to the guide rails

3.4.1.3 In no case shall the available refuge space be less than either of the following:

(a) a horizontal area 600 mm × 1 200 mm (24 in. × 47 in.), with a height of 600 mm (24 in.)

(b) a horizontal area 450 mm × 900 mm (18 in. × 35 in.), with a height of 1 070 mm (42 in.)

3.4.1.4 Trenches and depressions or foundation encroachments permitted by 2.2.2 shall not be considered in determining these clearances.

3.4.1.5 When the car is resting on its fully compressed buffers or bumpers, no equipment traveling with the car, including a plunger-follower guide, if provided, shall strike any part of the pit or any equipment mounted therein.

3.4.1.6 Where the vertical clearance outside the refuge space is less than 600 mm (24 in.), that area shall be clearly marked on the pit floor. Markings shall not be required in the area under the apron and guiding means. The marking shall consist of alternating 100 mm (4 in.) diagonal red and white stripes. In addition, a sign with the words "DANGER LOW CLEARANCE" shall be prominently posted on the hoistway enclosure and shall be visible from within the pit and at the entrance to the pit. The sign shall conform to ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). The sign shall be of such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the face remain permanently and readily legible.

3.4.2 Minimum Bottom and Top Car Runby

3.4.2.1 Bottom Car Runby. The bottom car runby shall be

(*a*) not less than 75 mm (3 in.) for operating speed(s) in the down direction up to 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min)

(*b*) increased from 75 mm (3 in.) to 150 mm (6 in.) in proportion to the increase in operating speed(s) in the down direction from 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min) to 1 m/s (200 ft/min)

(*c*) a minimum of 150 mm (6 in.) for operating speed(s) in the down direction exceeding 1 m/s (200 ft/min)

3.4.2.2 Car Top Minimum Runby. The top runby of the car shall be

(*a*) not less than 75 mm (3 in.) for rated speeds up to 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min)

(*b*) increased from 75 mm (3 in.) to 150 mm (6 in.) in proportion to the increase in rated speed from 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min) to 1 m/s (200 ft/min)

(*c*) a minimum of 150 mm (6 in.) for rated speeds exceeding 1 m/s (200 ft/min)

3.4.3 Car Top and Bottom Maximum Runby

Neither the top nor the bottom runby of the car shall be more than 600 mm (24 in.).

3.4.4 Top Car Clearance

The top car clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following two items (see Nonmandatory Appendix G):

(*a*) the top car runby

(*b*) the height of the refuge space on top of the car (see 3.4.7) or the clearance required for equipment projecting above the car top or crosshead (see 3.4.5), whichever is greater

3.4.5 Equipment Projecting Above the Car Top

When the car reaches its maximum upward movement

(*a*) all equipment attached to and projecting above the car top, other than equipment mentioned in 3.4.5(b) shall be at least 150 mm (6 in.) from striking any part of the overhead structure or any equipment located in the hoistway

(*b*) guide-shoe assemblies or gate posts for vertically sliding gates shall not strike any part of the overhead structure

(*c*) the car crosshead shall have a minimum of 300 mm (12 in.) vertical clearance to the horizontal plane described by the lowest point of the overhead structure (see 1.3)

3.4.6 Top Clearance and Bottom Runby of Counterweight

Where a counterweight is provided, the top clearance and the bottom runby of the counterweight shall conform to 3.4.6.1 and 3.4.6.2.

3.4.6.1 Top Clearance. The top clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following:

(*a*) the bottom car runby

(*b*) the stroke of the car buffers used

(*c*) 150 mm (6 in.)

3.4.6.2 Bottom Runby. The bottom runby shall be not less than the sum of the following:

(*a*) the distance the car can travel above its top terminal landing until the plunger strikes its mechanical stop

(*b*) 150 mm (6 in.)

The minimum runby specified shall not be reduced by rope stretch (see 3.22.2 prohibiting counterweight buffers).

3.4.7 Refuge Space on Top of Car Enclosure

An unobstructed horizontal area of not less than 0.51 m^2 (5.49 ft^2) shall be provided on top of the car enclosure for refuge space. It shall measure not less than 600 mm (24 in.) on any side. The area shall be permitted to include the space utilized for top emergency exit [see 2.14.1.5.1(f)]. The minimum vertical distance in the refuge area between the top of the car enclosure and the horizontal plane described by the lowest point of the overhead structure or other obstruction shall be not less than 1 100 mm (43 in.) when the car has reached its maximum upward movement.

3.4.8 Vertical Clearances With Underslung Car Frames

Where an underslung car frame is used, the clearances between the overhead car rope dead-end hitch, or overhead car sheave, and the portions of the car structure vertically below them, when the car floor is level with the top terminal landing, shall be not less than the following:

(a) where no counterweight is used, the sum of the following items:

(1) the car top runby

(2) 200 mm (8 in.)

(b) where a counterweight is used, the sum of the following items:

(1) the bottom counterweight runby (see 3.4.6.2)

(2) 150 mm (6 in.)

SECTION 3.5 HORIZONTAL CAR AND COUNTERWEIGHT CLEARANCES

The horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5.

SECTION 3.6 PROTECTION OF SPACES BELOW HOISTWAY

Requirement 2.6 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

Where there is space below the hoistway that is accessible to persons, requirements of 3.6.1 through 3.6.4 shall be conformed to.

3.6.1 Jack-Supporting Structure

The hydraulic jack shall be supported by a structure of sufficient strength to support the entire static load at rated capacity that is capable of being imposed upon it. The design factor of safety shall be not less than 5, based on ultimate strength for static loads transmitted.

3.6.2 Counterweight Safety Actuation

Where the space referred to in 3.6 falls underneath the counterweight and/or its guides, the counterweight shall be provided with a safety device that functions as a result of the breaking or slackening of the counterweight suspension ropes.

3.6.3 Buffer Types

The car shall be provided with buffers of either of the following types:

(a) oil buffers conforming to 3.22.1

(b) spring buffers of a design that will not be fully compressed when struck by a car with rated load at the operating speed in the down direction (see 3.22.1)

3.6.4 Buffer Supports

Car buffer supports shall be provided that will withstand, without permanent deformation, the impact resulting from buffer engagement by a car with rated load at the operating speed in the down direction. The design factor of safety shall conform to 2.22.4.3.

SECTION 3.7 MACHINERY SPACES, MACHINE ROOMS, CONTROL SPACES, AND CONTROL ROOMS (05S)

A machinery space outside the hoistway containing a hydraulic machine and a motor controller shall be a machine room.

3.7.1

Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall conform to the requirements of 2.7.1 through 2.7.7 and 2.7.9.

3.7.1.1 In 2.7.5.1.1, 2.7.5.2, and 2.7.5.2.4, replace the words "elevator driving-machine brake or an emergency brake" with the words "hydraulic machine."

3.7.1.2 In 2.7.5.1 and 2.7.5.1.2(a), replace the words "elevator driving-machine brake, emergency brake" with the words "hydraulic machine."

3.7.1.3 In 2.7.5.1.2(b), replace the wording with the following: "for a roped-hydraulic elevator support not less than twice the unbalanced weight of the system with no load and up to rated load in the car and all suspension ropes in place; and for a direct-acting hydraulic elevator support not less than twice the weight of the car with rated load."

3.7.1.4 In 2.7.5.1.2(c), 2.7.5.3.1, and 2.7.5.5(a), replace the words "elevator driving-machine motor and brake" with the words "hydraulic machine."

3.7.1.5 In 2.7.5.1.2(e) and 2.7.5.2.1(b)(4), replace the words "before maintaining or inspecting brake, emergency brake" with the words "before maintaining or inspecting the hydraulic machine."

3.7.1.6 In 2.7.5.2.1(b)(1) and 2.7.5.5(d), replace the words "115% of rated speed" with the words "operating speed in the down direction."

3.7.1.7 In 2.7.6.3.1, replace the words "electric driving machine" with the words "hydraulic machine."

3.7.1.8 In 2.7.6.4, replace the wording with the following: "Where hydraulic machine, or an elevator motion controller or motor controller is located in the hoistway or pit, means necessary for tests that require movement of the car shall be provided and arranged so that they can be operated from outside the hoistway and shall conform to 2.7.6.4.1 through 2.7.6.4.2. These means are also permitted to be used by elevator personnel for passenger rescue."

3.7.1.9 In 2.7.6.4.1, replace the first paragraph with the following: "Where direct observation of the elevator or ropes in the case of a roped-hydraulic elevator is not possible from the location of the means necessary for tests that require movement of the car, display devices or the equivalent shall be provided. They shall be visible from the location of the means and shall convey the following information about the elevator simultaneously:".

3.7.1.10 Requirement 2.7.6.4.3 does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

(05S)

SECTION 3.8
ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, WIRING, PIPES, AND DUCTS IN HOISTWAY, MACHINERY SPACES, MACHINE ROOMS, CONTROL SPACES, AND CONTROL ROOMS

Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts shall conform to 2.8.

SECTION 3.9
MACHINERY AND SHEAVE BEAMS, SUPPORTS, AND FOUNDATIONS

Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to 2.9.

SECTION 3.10
GUARDING OF EXPOSED AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT

Guarding of exposed auxiliary equipment shall conform to 2.10.

SECTION 3.11
PROTECTION OF HOISTWAY LANDING OPENINGS

Protection of hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11, except as excluded by 3.11.1.

3.11.1 Emergency Doors

Emergency doors, where required by 2.11.1, are required only when car safeties are provided.

SECTION 3.12
HOISTWAY DOOR LOCKING DEVICES, CAR DOOR OR GATE ELECTRIC CONTACTS, AND HOISTWAY ACCESS SWITCHES

3.12.1 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches

Hoistway door locking devices and electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to 2.12.

3.12.2 Car Door or Gate Electric Contacts and Car Door Interlocks

Car door or gate electric contacts and car door interlocks shall conform to 2.14.4.2.

SECTION 3.13
POWER OPERATION, POWER OPENING, AND POWER CLOSING OF HOISTWAY DOORS AND CAR DOORS OR GATES

Power operation, power opening, and power closing of hoistway doors and car doors or gates shall conform to 2.13.

SECTION 3.14 (07)
CAR ENCLOSURES, CAR DOORS AND GATES, AND CAR ILLUMINATION

Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to 2.14 except 2.14.2.3.3(b) does not apply where the elevator conforms to the requirements of 3.26.10.

SECTION 3.15
CAR FRAMES AND PLATFORMS

3.15.1 Requirements

3.15.1.1 Direct-acting hydraulic elevators shall be provided with car frames and platforms conforming to 2.15, subject to the modification hereinafter specified. (See 3.18.2.3 for connection between plunger and platform or car frame.)

A car frame shall not be required, provided 3.15.1.1.1 through 3.15.1.1.6 are conformed to.

3.15.1.1.1 The platform frame shall be of such design and construction that all eccentric loads are carried through the structure and plunger attachment into the hydraulic jack (see 3.18.2.3).

3.15.1.1.2 The platform frame shall be guided on each guide rail by single-guiding members attached to the frame.

3.15.1.1.3 The platform frame shall be designed to withstand the forces resulting from the class of loading for which the elevator is designed without exceeding the stresses and deflections in 2.15.10 and 2.15.11 (see 8.2.2.6).

3.15.1.1.4 The hydraulic jack connection to the car shall be designed to transmit the full eccentric moment into the plunger with a factor of safety of not less than 4 (see 3.18.2.3).

3.15.1.1.5 The hydraulic jack shall be designed to withstand the stresses due to bending during the loading and unloading of the platform based on the type of loading for which the elevator is designed (see 8.2.8.1.2).

3.15.1.1.6 Car safeties shall not be provided.

3.15.1.2 Roped-hydraulic elevators shall be provided with car frames and platforms conforming to 2.15.

3.15.2 Maximum Allowable Stresses and Deflections in Car Frame and Platform Members

3.15.2.1 Direct-Acting Hydraulic Elevators. The stresses and deflections in car frame and platform members and their connections, based on the static load imposed upon them, shall be not more than those permitted by 2.15, provided that the maximum stresses in the car frame uprights that are normally subject to compression shall conform to 8.2.9.1.1.

3.15.2.2 Roped-Hydraulic Elevators. The stresses and deflection in car frame and platform members and their connections, based on the static load imposed upon them, shall be not more than those permitted by 2.15, and shall conform to 8.2.2.

3.15.3 Calculations of Stresses and Deflections in Car Frame and Platform Members

3.15.3.1 Direct-Acting Hydraulic Elevators. The calculations of the stresses and deflections in side-post car frame and platform members shall be based on the formulas and data in 8.2.9.

For cars with corner-post or sub-post car frames, the formulas and specified methods of calculations do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

3.15.3.2 Roped-Hydraulic Elevators. The calculations of the stresses and deflections in side-post car frame and platform members shall be based on the formulas and data in 8.2.2.

For cars with corner-post or sub-post car frames, or where the rope hitches are not on the crosshead, the formulas and specified methods of calculations do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

SECTION 3.16 CAPACITY AND LOADING

3.16.1 Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators

The requirements of 2.16.1 shall apply.

3.16.2 Minimum Rated Load for Freight Elevators

The requirements of 2.16.2 shall apply, except, in 2.16.2.2.4(c) the wording "hydraulic jack, hydraulic machine, pressure piping and fittings" shall be substituted for the wording "driving-machine motor, brake and traction relation."

3.16.3 Capacity and Data Plates

The requirements of 2.16.3 shall apply, except:

(a) requirement 2.16.3.2.1(a) shall not apply to hydraulic elevators.

(b) on data plates (see 2.16.3.2.2), the weight of the plunger is not to be included in the weight of the complete car, even though it is attached. The plunger weight is to be indicated independently. The operating speed in the down direction shall also be indicated.

3.16.4 Carrying of Passengers on Freight Elevators

The requirements of 2.16.4 shall apply, except 2.16.4.3 shall not apply to hydraulic elevators.

3.16.5 Signs Required in Freight Elevators

The requirements of 2.16.5 shall apply.

3.16.6 Overloading of Freight Elevators

The requirements of 2.16.6 shall apply, except 2.16.6(b) shall not apply to hydraulic elevators.

3.16.7 One-Piece Loads Exceeding the Rated Load

Requirement 2.16.7 shall not apply. One-piece loads exceeding rated load shall not be carried on hydraulic elevators.

3.16.8 Additional Requirements for Passenger Overload

Requirement 2.16.8 shall not apply. Hydraulic passenger elevators shall be designed based on 100% of rated load.

3.16.9 Special Loading Means

The requirements of 2.16.9 shall apply.

SECTION 3.17 CAR SAFETIES, COUNTERWEIGHT SAFETIES, PLUNGER GRIPPER, AND GOVERNORS (07)

3.17.1 Car Safeties

Car safeties shall be provided for roped-hydraulic elevators and shall be permitted to be provided for direct-acting hydraulic elevators. When provided, car safeties shall conform to 2.17, and to 3.17.1.1 through 3.17.1.3.

3.17.1.1 The slack-rope device required by 3.18.1.2 shall be permitted to be an additional means of activating the car safety on roped-hydraulic elevators using hydraulic jacks equipped with plungers. The slack-rope device required by 3.18.1.2.7 shall be an additional means of activating the car safety on roped-hydraulic elevators using hydraulic jacks equipped with pistons.

3.17.1.2 The safety shall be of a type that can be released only by moving the car in the up direction. To return a car to normal operation after a safety set, the car shall be moved hydraulically in the up direction. For repairs of obvious or suspected malfunction, the car shall be permitted to be raised by other means capable of holding the entire car weight. Prior to releasing the other means, the car shall be run hydraulically in the up direction.

If an auxiliary pump is used to move the car in the up direction to release the safeties, it shall

(a) have a relief valve that limits the pressure to not more than 2.3 times the working pressure

(b) be connected between the check valve or control valve and the shutoff valve

(ED) **3.17.1.3** The switches required by 2.17.7 shall, when operated, remove power from the hydraulic machine motor and control valves before or at the time of application of the safety.

3.17.2 Counterweight Safeties

Counterweight safeties, where provided in accordance with 3.6.2, shall conform to 2.17, provided that safeties shall be operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the counterweight suspension ropes, irrespective of the rated speed of the elevator.

3.17.3 Plunger Gripper

A plunger gripper shall be permitted to be provided for direct-acting hydraulic elevators using hydraulic jacks equipped with plungers. A plunger gripper shall be capable of stopping and holding the car with its rated load from the actual measured tripping speed per Table 2.18.2.1 and shall conform to 3.17.3.1 through 3.17.3.9. In Table 2.18.2.1 the words "rated speed" shall be replaced by "operating speed in the down direction."

3.17.3.1 Limits of Application. A plunger gripper shall be permitted, provided that

(a) the external pressure applied to the plunger by the device is symmetrically distributed at locations around the circumference of the plunger. The resulting stress in the plunger shall not exceed 67% of the yield strength at any point of the plunger.

(b) the external pressure applied to the plunger by the device does not exceed 67% of the value that will cause local buckling. Where the external pressure is applied over substantially the full circumference of the plunger, the maximum value shall be permitted to be determined by 8.2.8.6.

(c) during the application, the plunger and the plunger gripper are capable of withstanding any vertical forces imposed upon them, and transfer such forces to the supporting structure. During the application of the device, any loading on the plunger shall not damage the cylinder.

(d) power is removed from the hydraulic machine before or at the time of application.

3.17.3.2 Means of Application. A plunger gripper shall mechanically grip the plunger.

3.17.3.2.1 Hydraulic means are permitted to be used to hold the gripper in the retracted position. A loss of hydraulic pressure or fluid causing uncontrolled downward motion is permitted to be used to apply the plunger gripper.

3.17.3.2.2 When electrical means are used to actuate the gripper, the following shall apply:

(a) The plunger gripper shall be fully operational during a primary electrical system power failure.

(b) The elevator shall not be permitted to restart after a normal stop in the event of the failure within the electrical means used to actuate the gripper of any of the following: (07)

(1) a single mechanically operated switch

(2) a single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay

(3) a single solenoid

(4) a single solid-state device

(5) a software system failure

(6) the occurrence of a single ground

3.17.3.3 Release

3.17.3.3.1 The plunger gripper shall be released by establishing at least no-load static pressure on the hydraulic system, or by other means capable of holding the entire car weight.

3.17.3.3.2 The elevator shall not be permitted to be restarted without establishing at least no-load static pressure on the hydraulic system.

3.17.3.4 Clearance. In the normally retracted position of the plunger gripper, any contact between the gripping surface and the plunger shall not cause degradation of the plunger or premature degradation of the gripping surface.

3.17.3.5 Deceleration. The deceleration of the elevator upon actuation of the plunger gripper shall comply with the following criteria:

(a) The average deceleration rate at rated load shall be not less than 0.1 gravity nor more than 1.0 gravity. (See Nonmandatory Appendix P for minimum and maximum stopping distances.)

(b) Any peak deceleration rate in excess of 2.0 gravity shall have a duration of not greater than 0.04 s.

3.17.3.6 Minimum Factors of Safety and Stresses of Safety Parts and Rope Connections

3.17.3.6.1 Compliance with 2.17.12.1 and 2.17.12.6 is required. Springs shall be permitted in the operation of the plunger gripper. The maximum fiber stress in the spring shall not exceed 85% of the elastic limit in the material at any time. The factor of safety of wire ropes, if provided in the construction of the plunger gripper, shall not be less than 5. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

3.17.3.6.2 Leaf and roller chains, if provided in the construction of the plunger gripper, shall conform to ASME B29.100 or ASME B29.8. (07)

3.17.3.6.3 The factors of safety shall be based upon the maximum stresses developed in the parts during operation of the gripper when stopping rated load from the tripping speed (see 3.17.3) of the speed-measuring device.

3.17.3.6.4 Rope or tape used to drive an electrical encoder is not required to comply with the requirements for governor rope.

3.17.3.6.5 If a governor is used, it must comply with 2.18.5.1, except lang-lay construction is permitted and the diameter is permitted to be less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.).

3.17.3.7 Corrosion-Resistant Bearings in Plunger Gripper and Gripper Operating Mechanisms. Compliance with 2.17.13 is required.

3.17.3.8 Marking Plates for a Plunger Gripper. A permanent marking plate shall be securely attached to each plunger gripper so as to be readily visible, and shall be marked in a legible and permanent manner with letters and symbols not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height, indicating

(a) that it is a plunger gripper.

(b) the maximum operating speed in the down direction in m/s (ft/min) for which the plunger gripper shall be permitted to be used.

(c) the maximum load in Newtons (pounds) for which the gripper is designed and installed to stop and sustain.

(d) the manufacturer's name or trademark and identification number of the device.

(e) space for date of acceptance test. Date to be permanently marked following test.

(f) the diameter and minimum wall thickness of the plunger for which the device is applicable.

3.17.3.9 Flexible Hoses. Flexible hoses used for the operation of a plunger gripper shall be permitted, provided that their failure does not cause an uncontrolled descent. These flexible hoses are not required to meet the requirements of 3.19.3.3.

(07) 3.17.4 Governors

Governors, when provided, shall comply with 2.18, except 2.18.4. In addition, governors shall conform to 3.17.4.1 and 3.17.4.2

3.17.4.1 The term "operating speed in the down direction with rated load" shall be substituted for the words "rated speed" whenever these words appear.

3.17.4.2 For governors located inside the hoistway, see 2.7.6.3.4.

SECTION 3.18
HYDRAULIC JACKS

3.18.1 Hydraulic Jack and Connections

Where multiple hydraulic jacks are used, they shall be hydraulically connected to form a single hydraulic system.

3.18.1.1 Direct-Acting Hydraulic Elevators. The driving member of the hydraulic jack shall be attached to the car frame or car platform with fastenings of sufficient strength to support that member with a factor of safety of not less than 4 and shall be capable of withstanding, without damage, any forces resulting from a plunger stop as described in 3.18.4.2.

Any plunger or cylinder head mechanical connector or connection shall conform to 3.18.2.1, 3.18.2.4, 3.18.4, and 3.18.5.

3.18.1.2 Roped-Hydraulic Elevator

3.18.1.2.1 The driving member of the hydraulic jack shall be vertical. Cars shall be suspended with not less than two wire ropes per hydraulic jack in conformance with 2.15.13 and 2.20.

3.18.1.2.2 Where three or more hydraulic jacks are utilized, one rope per hydraulic jack shall be permitted to be used. Should one hydraulic jack become disconnected, the remaining hydraulic jacks shall be capable of supporting the load without exceeding allowable car frame stresses or hydraulic jack stress. The ropes shall conform to 2.15.13 and 2.20.

3.18.1.2.3 Ropes passing through seals fixed in cylinder heads shall be permitted to have a clear plastic coating applied in order to seal properly and facilitate rope inspection.

3.18.1.2.4 The roping ratio that relates the driving member of the hydraulic jack speed to the car speed shall not exceed 1:2.

3.18.1.2.5 Sheaves used to transfer load from the hydraulic jack to the car frame through wire ropes shall conform to 2.24.2, 2.24.3, and 2.24.5.

3.18.1.2.6 Means shall be provided to prevent the ropes, if slack, from leaving the sheave grooves.

3.18.1.2.7 A slack-rope device with an enclosed manually reset switch shall be provided that shall cause the electric power to be removed from the hydraulic machine pump motor and the control valves should any rope become slack.

3.18.1.2.8 The traveling sheave shall be attached with fastenings having a minimum factor of safety of 4, based upon the ultimate strength of the material used. The load to be used in determining the factor of safety shall be the resultant of the maximum tensions in the ropes leading from the sheave with the elevator at rest and with rated load in the car.

3.18.2 Plungers

3.18.2.1 Material. The plunger and connecting couplings for the plunger shall be of materials in accordance with 3.18.2.1.1 and 3.18.2.1.2.

3.18.2.1.1 Tensile, compressive, bending, and torsional loading shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5, based on ultimate strength.

3.18.2.1.2 Pressure loadings shall have a factor of safety not less than that calculated per 8.2.8.5.

3.18.2.2 Plunger Design. Plungers made of steel shall be designed and constructed in compliance with the applicable formula in 8.2.8.1 for calculation of elastic stability, bending, and external pressure. For other materials, the appropriate modulus of elasticity must be utilized.

Plungers subject to internal pressure shall also be designed and constructed in accordance with cylinder design formula in 8.2.8.2.

3.18.2.3 Plunger Connection

3.18.2.3.1 When the hydraulic jack is not subjected to eccentric loading, it shall

(*a*) carry in tension the weight of the plunger with a factor of safety not less than 4

(*b*) restrict total vertical movement to less than 20% of the buffer stroke, where vibration damping means are provided

3.18.2.3.2 In addition, when the hydraulic jack is subjected to eccentric loading, the following shall also apply:

(*a*) The plunger connection to the car shall also be so designed and constructed as to transmit the full eccentric moment into the plunger with a factor of safety not less than 4.

(*b*) The plunger and the plunger connection to the car shall also be so designed and constructed that the total vertical deflection of the loading edge of the car platform due to eccentric loading of the car shall not exceed 19 mm (0.75 in.).

3.18.2.4 Plunger Joints. Plungers composed of more than one section shall have joints designed and constructed to

(*a*) carry in tension the weight of all plunger sections below the joint with a factor of safety of not less than 4

(*b*) transmit in compression the gross load on the plunger with a factor of safety of not less than 5, based on ultimate strength

(*c*) withstand without damage any forces resulting from a plunger stop as described in 3.18.4.2

(*d*) for eccentric loading, the joints shall conform to 3.18.2.2 and 3.18.2.3

3.18.2.5 Plungers Subject to External Pressure. For plungers subjected to external pressure, the working pressure shall be not greater than indicated by the formula in 8.2.8.1.3.

3.18.2.6 Plunger Heads Subject to Fluid Pressure. Heads of plungers subject to fluid pressure shall conform to 3.18.3.6.

3.18.2.7 Plunger-Follower Guide

3.18.2.7.1 A plunger-follower guide shall be permitted to be used, provided it is arranged so that the elevator is always in a position where the unsupported length of the plunger conforms to the "maximum free length" as defined in 8.2.8.1. If this length is exceeded, upward movement of the car shall immediately stop, and it shall be permitted to allow the car to return nonstop to the lowest landing; power-operated doors shall open, and electric power shall be removed from the motor and the control valve. After not less than 15 s nor more than 60 s, the doors shall close in compliance with 2.11.3. A manual reset of the means shall be required before the elevator is returned to service. The in-car door open button shall remain operative.

Plunger-follower guides shall be designed and constructed to comply with all applicable requirements of 2.15.

3.18.2.7.2 Telescopic plungers shall have each plunger section internally guided. If more than two movable sections are used, external guides shall be provided for each plunger section. External guides shall be designed and constructed to comply with all applicable requirements of 2.15.

3.18.3 Cylinders

3.18.3.1 Material. The cylinder and connecting couplings for the cylinder shall be made of materials in compliance with 3.18.3.1.1 and 3.18.3.1.2.

3.18.3.1.1 For tensile, compressive, bending, and torsional loading, the cylinder and connecting couplings shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5, based on ultimate strength.

3.18.3.1.2 For pressure calculations, the cylinder and connecting coupling shall have a factor of safety not less than that calculated as specified in 8.2.8.5.

3.18.3.2 Cylinder Design. Cylinders shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the formula in 8.2.8.2.

3.18.3.3 Clearance at Bottom of Cylinder. Clearance shall be provided at the bottom of the cylinder so that the bottom of the plunger will not strike the safety bulkhead of the cylinder when the car is resting on its fully compressed buffer (see 3.22.1).

3.18.3.4 Safety Bulkhead. Cylinders buried in the ground shall be provided with a safety bulkhead having an orifice of a size that would permit the car to descend at a speed not greater than 0.075 m/s (15 ft/min), nor less than 0.025 m/s (5 ft/min). A space of not less than 25 mm (1 in.) shall be left between the welds of the safety bulkhead and the cylinder head. Safety bulkheads shall conform to 3.18.3.6.

A safety bulkhead shall not be required where a double cylinder is used and where both inner and outer cylinders conform to 3.18.3.

3.18.3.5 Cylinder Packing Heads. Cylinder packing heads shall conform to appropriate requirements of 3.18.4 and 8.2.8.3.

3.18.3.6 Closed Cylinder and Plunger Heads. Closed heads of cylinders, and heads of plungers subject to fluid pressure, shall conform to 3.18.3.6.1 through 3.18.3.6.3.

3.18.3.6.1 Closed Cylinder Heads. Closed heads of cylinders shall be only of dished seamless construction, concave to pressure, except if the bottom of the cylinder is supported, and if the cylinder is not buried.

3.18.3.6.2 Design Formulas. They shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable formulas in 8.2.8.3, provided that steel heads shall in no case have a thickness less than that required for the adjoining shell.

3.18.3.6.3 Dished Seamless Heads, Convex to Pressure. Dished seamless heads, convex to pressure, if used on plungers, shall have a maximum allowable working pressure of not more than 60% of that for heads of the same dimensions with pressure on the concave side.

3.18.3.7 Collection of Oil Leakage. Means shall be provided to collect for removal any oil leakage from the cylinder head seals or packing gland. The amount collected before removal shall not exceed 19 L (5 gal).

3.18.3.8 Cylinders Buried in the Ground

3.18.3.8.1 Cylinders buried in the ground shall be protected from corrosion due to galvanic or electrolytic action, salt water, or other underground conditions.

3.18.3.8.2 The methods specified in 3.18.3.8.3 shall be considered as acceptable, provided that they

(a) are designed and installed with means for monitoring and maintaining them in accordance with recognized industry standards applicable to the methods

(b) are effective for specific conditions where the cylinder is installed

(c) provide means for checking ongoing compliance with 3.18.3.8.1

3.18.3.8.3 The following are the specified methods:

(a) the cylinder shall be constructed of a material that is immune to the stated conditions; or

(b) the cylinder shall be completely covered or encased in a material that completely surrounds the exterior surface and is immune to the stated conditions. If the space between the protective casing and the cylinder is empty, the casing must be designed to withstand a static head of water from ground level to the bottom of the cylinder, based on the manufacturer's rating of the material used; or

(c) the cylinder shall be protected by a monitored cathodic protection system; or

(d) the cylinder shall be protected by a means that will provide an immunity level not less than that provided by the above methods for the stated conditions.

3.18.3.9 Means for Relief of Air or Gas. Cylinders shall be provided with a means to release air or other gas.

3.18.4 Plunger Stops

3.18.4.1 Metal Stops and/or Other Means. Metal stops and/or other means shall be provided at one end of the plunger and at the packing head end of the cylinder to prevent the plunger from traveling beyond the limits of the cylinder.

The metal stops and/or other means shall be so designed and constructed as to stop the plunger traveling in the up direction at maximum speed under full load pressure, should the normal terminal stopping device (see 3.25.1) fail to operate, or at a reduced speed when a terminal speed reducing device is provided as required by 3.25.2. No running test onto the stop ring is required [see 8.10.3.2.2(s)].

3.18.4.2 Hydraulic System. The connections to the hydraulic machine, plunger, plunger connection, couplings, plunger joints, cylinder, cylinder connecting couplings, or any other parts of the hydraulic system shall be designed and constructed to withstand, without damage, a plunger stop in accordance with 3.18.4.1.

3.18.5 Welding

All welding of hydraulic jack components shall conform to 8.8.

3.18.6 Marking of Hydraulic Jack (07)

The exposed portion of each hydraulic jack after installation shall be plainly marked in a permanent manner with the following:

(a) the name or trademark by which the organization that manufactured the hydraulic jack can be identified

(b) the manufacturer's designation of the type or model

(c) year of manufacture

SECTION 3.19 VALVES, PRESSURE PIPING, AND FITTINGS

3.19.1 Materials and Working Pressures

3.19.1.1 Materials. Pressure piping, valves, fittings, and mufflers shall be designed and made of materials having properties such that a factor of safety not less than that calculated per 8.2.8.5 is achieved.

Piping and fittings of a grade not subjected to listed/certified testing (ASTM or equivalent) shall not be used for hydraulic pressure piping and fittings.

NOTE (3.19.1.1): Examples of two acceptable pipe standards are ASTM A106 and ASTM A 53, Type E or S.

3.19.1.2 Working Pressures. The working pressure (see 1.3) shall not exceed the component rated pressure (see 1.3) of the pipes, valves, mufflers, and fittings used on the pressure side of the hydraulic system.

3.19.1.3 Component Proof Test. For elongations greater than or equal to 10%, the component design shall be substantiated either in accordance with 8.2.8.5 or by an unrestrained proof test of 5 times the component rated pressure without resulting in fracture. For elongations of less than 10%, the test value shall be 1.5 times the value indicated by 8.2.8.5 multiplied by the component rated pressure.

3.19.1.4 Component Markings. Valves, fittings, and mufflers shall be pressure rated, and shall bear the manufacturer's name or trademark by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified, and identification symbols to indicate the materials and service designations for which the manufacturer's rating applies.

NOTE: Valves and fittings rated for a different system may be used in hydraulic elevator systems when substantiated in accordance with the elevator code.

3.19.2 Pressure Piping

3.19.2.1 Wall Thickness. The minimum wall thickness shall conform to 8.2.8.4.

3.19.2.2 Threading. Pipe lighter than Schedule 40 shall not be threaded.

3.19.2.3 Pipe Supports. Piping shall be so supported as to eliminate undue stresses at joints and fittings, particularly at any section of the line subject to vibration.

3.19.2.4 Pipe, Tubing, or Fittings. Pipe, tubing, or fittings shall be permitted to be used for instrument or control purposes and shall conform to ASME B31.1, para. 122.3.

3.19.2.5 Hydraulic Pipeline Identification. A marking shall be applied, to accessible piping that is located outside the elevator machine room or hoistway, stating "Elevator Hydraulic Line" in letters that are at least 19 mm (0.75 in.) high in a contrasting color. The marking shall be visible after installation and applied at intervals not greater than 3 000 mm (120 in.).

3.19.2.6 Where the hydraulic machine is located in the hoistway and any piping, tubing, or fitting permitted by 3.19.2.4 is located outside the hoistway, means shall be provided to **(05S)**

(*a*) protect the specified piping, tubing, or fittings from damage, which would cause unsafe elevator operation; or

(*b*) prevent uncontrolled movement of the elevator in the event of failure of the specified piping, tubing, or fittings.

3.19.3 Connections and Fittings

3.19.3.1 Connections. All piping connections shall be of the welded, grooved, threaded, or bolted flange type. Threads of valves, piping, and fittings shall conform to the requirements of ASME B1.20.1 or ASME B1.20.3. Hydraulic tube fittings shall conform to SAE J514. **(07)**

3.19.3.2 Grooved Pipe Fittings

3.19.3.2.1 Grooved pipe fitting assemblies shall be permitted to be used for hydraulic connections. They shall be installed in conformance with the manufacturer's specifications. They shall be installed in locations that will permit disassembly and inspection of all of their component parts.

3.19.3.2.2 Grooved pipe fittings shall be so designed and constructed that failure of a sealing element will not permit separation of the parts connected. The devices or means used for preventing the separation of the parts connected shall be removable only with the use of tools. Devices or means removable with hand-operated quick-release levers or toggles are prohibited.

3.19.3.3 Flexible Hydraulic Connections. Flexible hose and fitting assemblies, and flexible couplings, shall be permitted to be used for hydraulic connections. Where installed between the check valve or control valve and the cylinder, they shall conform to 3.19.3.3.1 and 3.19.3.3.2.

3.19.3.3.1 Flexible hose and fitting assemblies shall

(*a*) not be installed within the hoistway, nor project into or through any wall. Installation shall be accomplished without introducing any twist in the hose, and shall conform with the minimum bending radius of SAE 100, R2 type, high pressure, steel wire reinforced, rubber-covered hydraulic hose specified in SAE J517.

(*b*) have a bursting strength sufficient to withstand not less than 10 times working pressure (see 1.3). They shall be tested in the factory or in the field prior to installation at a pressure of not less than 5 times working pressure and shall be marked with date and pressure of test.

(c) conform to the requirements of SAE 100, R2 type hose specified in SAE J517 and be compatible with the fluid used.

(d) be of nonreusable-type fittings.

(e) be permanently labeled/marked, indicating

(1) the name or trademark by which the manufacturer of the hose and fittings can be identified

(2) the type of hose and fitting

(3) the minimum factory test pressure

(4) the minimum bending radius of hose

(5) the date of installation

(6) the inspection procedure

(7) the name of elevator contractor

(f) have a line overspeed valve conforming to 3.19.4.7.

3.19.3.3.2 Flexible couplings are permitted for hydraulic connections. Such couplings shall be so designed and constructed that failure of the sealing element will not permit separation of the connected parts. The devices or means used to prevent the separation of the connected parts shall be removable only with the use of tools. Any devices or means that are removable with hand-operated quick-released levers are prohibited.

(05S) **3.19.4 Valves**

3.19.4.1 Shutoff Valve. A manually operated shutoff valve shall be provided between the hydraulic machines and the hydraulic jack and shall be located outside the hoistway and adjacent to the hydraulic machine.

Where the hydraulic machine is located in the hoistway, the manually operated shutoff valve shall be permitted to be located inside the hoistway, provided that it is accessible from outside the hoistway to elevator personnel only (see 8.1).

3.19.4.2 Pump Relief Valve

3.19.4.2.1 Each pump or group of pumps shall be equipped with one or more relief valve(s) conforming to the following requirements:

(a) Type and Location. The relief valve shall be located between the pump and the check valve and shall be of such a type and so installed in the bypass connection that the valve cannot be shut off from the hydraulic system.

(b) Size. The size of the relief valve and bypass shall be sufficient to pass the maximum rated capacity of the pump without raising the pressure more than 50% above the working pressure. Two or more relief valves shall be permitted to be used to obtain the required capacity.

(c) Sealing. Relief valves shall be sealed after being set to the correct pressure.

3.19.4.2.2 No relief valve is required for centrifugal pumps driven by induction motors, provided the shut-off, or maximum pressure that the pump can develop, is not greater than 135% of the working pressure at the pump.

3.19.4.3 Check Valve. A check valve shall be provided and shall be so installed that it will hold the elevator car with rated load at any point when the pump stops and the down valves are closed or the maintained pressure drops below the minimum operating pressure.

3.19.4.4 Manual Lowering Valve. A manually operated valve, located on or adjacent to the control valves, shall be provided and identified, which permits lowering the car at a speed not exceeding 0.10 m/s (20 ft/min). This valve shall be so marked to indicate the lowering position. Where the hydraulic machine is located in the hoistway, the manual lowering valve shall only be accessible to elevator personnel from outside the hoistway (see 8.1).

3.19.4.5 Pressure Gauge Fittings. A pressure gauge fitting with shutoff valve shall be provided on jack side of the check valve or immediately adjacent to the hydraulic control valve. Where the hydraulic machine is located in the hoistway, the pressure gauge fittings shall only be accessible to elevator personnel from outside the hoistway (see 8.1).

3.19.4.6 Type Tests, Certification, and Marking Plates for Control Valves

3.19.4.6.1 Each type or model and make of hydraulic control valve shall be subjected to the engineering tests and to the certification process as specified in 8.3.5.

3.19.4.6.2 Hydraulic control valves shall be plainly marked in a permanent manner with the following information:

(a) certifying organization's name or identifying symbol

(b) the name, trademark, or file number by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified

(c) statement of compliance with ASME A17.1 or CSA B44

(d) type designation

(e) component rated pressure

(f) electrical coil data

3.19.4.7 Overspeed Valves. When provided, overspeed valves and their connections and attachments shall conform to 3.19.4.7.1 through 3.19.4.7.6.

3.19.4.7.1 Overspeed Valve Tests. Each type or model of overspeed valve shall be subjected to the engineering tests specified in 8.3.9.

3.19.4.7.2 Marking of Overspeed Valves. The overspeed valves shall be plainly marked in a permanent manner with the following:

(a) the name or trademark by which the organization that manufactured the product can be identified

(b) type designation

(c) component rated pressure

(d) maximum and minimum rated flow

3.19.4.7.3 Installation of Overspeed Valves. Overspeed valves shall be installed and mounted as follows:

(a) *Single Jack Arrangements.* Where a single valve is used, it shall be located in the pressure piping within 300 mm (12 in.) of the hydraulic jack. Multiple parallel valves are permitted in lieu of a single valve. These shall be located so as to minimize the distance from the valves to the hydraulic jack.

(b) *Multiple Jack Arrangements.* Multiple jack arrangements shall conform with one of the following:

(1) A single overspeed valve shall be located in the pressure piping within 300 mm (12 in.) of each hydraulic jack. Multiple parallel valves are permitted in lieu of single valves at each hydraulic jack. These shall be located so as to minimize the distance from the valves to each hydraulic jack.

(2) A single overspeed valve shall be located in the pressure piping on the hydraulic machine side of, and immediately before, the tee junction, wye junction, or branch junction that connects the branch pressure pipes to the jacks. Multiple parallel valves are permitted in lieu of a single valve at the junction. For dual hydraulic jack systems, the total length of branch pressure pipe between the tee or wye junction and the jacks shall not exceed the distance between the jacks, measured horizontally, plus 1 m (39 in.). For multiple jack systems, the length of branch pressure piping shall be minimized.

3.19.4.7.4 Strength of Overspeed Valve Pressure Piping and Fittings Between the Overspeed Valve and the Jacks. The factor of safety of the overspeed valve pressure piping and fittings shall be not less than 1.5 times the value obtained using 8.2.8.5, provided that the minimum factor of safety is not less than 4.5, and the minimum percentage elongation is not less than 5 for the overspeed valve and fittings and not less than 20 for the pressure piping.

3.19.4.7.5 Performance Requirements. The overspeed valve shall be constructed, installed, and adjusted to ensure that the elevator obtains the following performance:

(a) The overspeed valve tripping speed shall be not less than 110% nor greater than 140% of the elevator operating speed in the down direction, but in no case shall exceed 0.3 m/s (60 ft/min) above the rated elevator speed.

(b) The average deceleration rate shall be not less than 1.96 m/s^2 (6.44 ft/s^2) nor more than 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

(c) Any peak deceleration rate in excess of 24.53 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2) shall have a duration of not greater than 0.04 s.

3.19.4.7.6 Sealing of the Overspeed Valve. Field-adjustable overspeed valves shall be sealed after field setting.

3.19.5 Piping Buried in the Ground

3.19.5.1 Protection. Piping buried in the ground shall be provided with protection from corrosion by one or more of the following methods:

(a) monitored cathodic protection

(b) a coating to protect the piping from corrosion that will withstand the installation process

(c) a protective casing, immune to galvanic or electrolytic action, salt water, and other known underground conditions, completely surrounding the exterior surfaces of the piping

3.19.5.2 Seals. Piping buried in the ground shall not include seals or other elements potentially requiring service or replacement.

3.19.6 Welding

3.19.6.1 All welding of valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to 8.8.

3.19.6.2 Field welding of pressure piping and fittings shall also be permitted to be performed by welders certified to the requirements pertaining to pressure systems.

3.19.7 Electrical Requirements

Hydraulic control valves shall conform to the electrical requirements in Clause 4 of CSA C22.2 No. 139.

SECTION 3.20
ROPES AND ROPE CONNECTIONS

Where a counterweight is provided, the counterweight shall be connected to the car by not less than two steel wire ropes.

The wire ropes and their connections shall conform to 2.20, except that the factor of safety of the wire ropes shall be not less than 7.

SECTION 3.21
COUNTERWEIGHTS

3.21.1 Counterweights

Counterweights, where provided, shall conform to 2.21. In the event of the separation of the counterweight from the car, the static pressure shall be not more than 140% of the working pressure.

3.21.2 Counterweight Sheaves

Sheaves for counterweight ropes shall conform to 2.24.2, 2.24.3, and 2.24.5.

SECTION 3.22
BUFFERS AND BUMPERS

3.22.1 Car Buffers or Bumpers

Car buffers or bumpers shall be provided and shall conform to 2.22, provided that in applying the requirements of 2.22 to hydraulic elevators 3.22.1.1 through 3.22.1.5 are complied with.

3.22.1.1 The term "operating speed in the down direction with rated load" shall be substituted for the words "rated speed" wherever these words appear.

3.22.1.2 In place of 2.22.3.2, the requirements specified in 3.22.1.2.1 and 3.22.1.2.2 shall be substituted.

3.22.1.2.1 Buffers shall be capable of withstanding without being compressed solid the loading per 8.2.3.2.

3.22.1.2.2 Buffers shall be compressed solid with a loading of 2 times that described in 8.2.3.2.

3.22.1.3 Requirement 2.22.4.1.2 shall not apply. Reduced stroke buffers shall not be provided on hydraulic elevators. Car buffers or bumpers shall be so located that the car will come to rest on the bumper or fully compressed buffer, or to a fixed stop, before the plunger reaches its down limit of travel.

3.22.1.4 When multiple buffers are used, each shall be identical and designed for an equal proportion of the loading described in 3.22.1.2.

3.22.1.5 Plunger weight, less buoyant effects of the plungers at the buffer strike point, shall be added, if applicable, and used in buffer calculations.

3.22.1.6 Solid bumpers are permitted on hydraulic elevators having an operating speed in the down direction of 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min) or less. See 2.22.2 for solid bumper material.

3.22.2 Counterweight Buffers

Where counterweights are provided, counterweight buffers shall not be provided. (See 3.4.6 for required counterweight runby.)

SECTION 3.23
GUIDE RAILS, GUIDE-RAIL SUPPORTS, AND FASTENINGS

3.23.1 Direct-Acting Hydraulic Elevators

Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to 2.23, with the exceptions specified in 3.23.1.1 through 3.23.1.4.

3.23.1.1 Requirement 2.23.4.1 shall apply only where car safeties are used and the maximum load on the car side for direct-acting hydraulic elevators is the maximum weight of the car and its rated load plus the weight of the plunger or cylinder as applicable.

3.23.1.2 Requirement 2.23.4.2 shall apply only where safeties are used.

3.23.1.3 Requirement 2.23.9.1.1(a) shall apply only where safeties are used.

3.23.1.4 Requirement 2.28 shall not apply.

3.23.2 Roped-Hydraulic Elevators

3.23.2.1 Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to 2.23.

3.23.2.2 The traveling sheave, if provided, shall be guided by means of suitable guide shoes and guide rails adequately mounted and supported.

SECTION 3.24
HYDRAULIC MACHINES AND TANKS

3.24.1 Hydraulic Machines (Power Units)

3.24.1.1 Marking Plates. The working pressure that is developed in the system shall be measured at the acceptance inspection and test. This pressure shall be legibly and permanently labeled/marked on a data plate that shall be mounted on the hydraulic machine.

3.24.2 Tanks

3.24.2.1 Capacity. Tanks shall be of sufficient capacity to provide for an adequate liquid reserve in order to prevent the entrance of air or other gas into the system.

3.24.2.2 Minimum Level Indication. The permissible minimum liquid level shall be clearly indicated.

3.24.3 Atmosphere Storage and Discharge Tanks

3.24.3.1 Covers and Venting. Tanks shall be covered and suitably vented to the atmosphere. Where tanks are located in the hoistway, they shall be vented to prevent accumulation of fumes in the hoistway and their covers shall be of sufficient strength to resist falling objects. (05S)

3.24.3.2 Factor of Safety. Tanks shall be so designed and constructed that when completely filled, the factor of safety shall be not less than 4, based on the ultimate strength of the material.

3.24.3.3 Means for Checking Liquid Level. Tanks shall be provided with means for checking the liquid level. Such means shall be accessible without the removal of any cover or other part.

3.24.4 Welding

All welding of hydraulic machine components shall conform to 8.8.

SECTION 3.25
TERMINAL STOPPING DEVICES

(05S) **3.25.1 Normal Terminal Stopping Devices**

3.25.1.1 Where Required and Function. Upper and lower normal terminal stopping devices shall be provided and arranged to slow down and stop the car automatically, at or near the top and bottom terminal landings, with any load up to and including rated load in the car from any speed attained in normal operation. Such devices shall function independently of the operation of the normal stopping means and the terminal speed reducing device, where provided. The device shall be so designed and installed that it will continue to function until the car reaches its extreme limits of travel.

The device shall be permitted to be rendered inoperative during recycling operation (see 3.26.7).

3.25.1.2 Location of Stopping Devices. Stopping devices shall be located on the car, in the hoistway, in the machine room or control room, or in overhead spaces, and shall be operated by movement of the car.

3.25.1.3 Requirements for Stopping Devices on the Car or in the Hoistway. Stopping devices located on the car or in the hoistway and operated by cams on the car or in the hoistway shall conform to 2.25.1.

3.25.1.4 Requirements for Stopping Devices in a Machine Room, Control Room, or Overhead Space. Stopping devices located in a machine room, control room, or in an overhead space shall conform to 2.25.2.3, except that the device required by 2.25.2.3.2 shall cause the electric power to be removed from the main control valve or from its control switch operating magnets and, in the case of electrohydraulic elevators, where stopping the car is effected by stopping the pump motor, from the pump motor and associated valves.

3.25.2 Terminal Speed Reducing Devices

3.25.2.1 Where Required. Terminal speed reducing devices shall be installed for the up direction where the car speed exceeds 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), to ensure that the plunger does not strike its solid limit of travel at a speed in excess of 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min) (see 3.18.4.1).

(07) **3.25.2.2 General Requirements.** Terminal speed reducing devices shall conform to 3.25.2.2.1 and 3.25.2.2.2.

(07) **3.25.2.2.1** They shall operate by mechanical, hydraulic, or electrical means independently of the normal terminal stopping device and function to reduce the speed of the car if the normal terminal stopping device fails to cause the car to slow down at the top terminal as intended.

3.25.2.2.2 They shall provide retardation not in excess of 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2).

3.25.2.2.3 They shall be so designed and installed that a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds or by other conditions shall not render the device ineffective.

3.25.2.3 Requirements for Mechanical or Hydraulic Means. Where the terminal speed reducing devices are implemented by mechanical or hydraulic means, a means shall be provided to prevent overheating of the drive system (pump and motor). The mechanical or hydraulic means shall not cause permanent deformation to any part upon which the means act. (07)

3.25.2.4 Requirements for Electrical Means. Where the terminal speed reducing devices are implemented by electrical means, they shall conform to 3.25.2.4.1 through 3.25.2.4.5. (07)

3.25.2.4.1 They shall be so designed and installed that a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds or by other conditions shall not render the device ineffective. (07)

3.25.2.4.2 Where magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state devices are used for position sensing, a single short circuit caused by a combination of grounds or by other conditions, or the failure of any single magnetically operated, optical, or solid-state device, shall not

(a) render the terminal speed reducing device inoperative

(b) permit the car to restart after a normal stop

3.25.2.4.3 Mechanically operated switches, where located on the car or in the hoistway, shall conform to the following:

(a) be operated by the movement of the car

(b) have metal operating cams

(c) have contacts that are positively opened mechanically

(d) be of the enclosed type

(e) be securely mounted in such a manner that horizontal movement of the car shall not affect operation of the device

3.25.2.4.4 Electrohydraulic elevators with two means to control upward movement (e.g., pump motor and valve) shall conform to the following:

(a) One or both means to control upward movement of the elevator shall be controlled by the terminal speed reducing device, either directly or through an intermediate device.

(1) Where an intermediate device is implemented with a solid-state device or software system to satisfy 3.25.2.4.4(a), the failure of any single solid-state device or a software system failure in the intermediate device shall not render the terminal speed reducing device ineffective.

(2) Redundant devices used to satisfy 3.25.2.4.4(a)(1) shall be checked prior to each start of the

elevator from a landing, when on automatic operation. When a failure as specified occurs the car shall not be permitted to restart.

(b) The other means or both means to control upward movement of the elevator are to be controlled by the normal terminal stopping device, either directly or through an intermediate device.

3.25.2.4.5 Electrohydraulic elevators with one means to control upward movement (e.g., pump motor only). One or both of the devices required in 3.26.6.4(a) shall be controlled by the terminal speed reducing device and the other device or both devices by the normal terminal stopping device.

3.25.3 Final Terminal Stopping Devices

Final terminal stopping devices are not required.

SECTION 3.26 OPERATING DEVICES AND CONTROL EQUIPMENT

3.26.1 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply.

(b) Requirement 2.26.1.4 applies as specified by 3.26.2.

(c) Requirement 2.26.1.6 applies as specified by 3.26.3.

(d) Requirement 2.26.2 applies as specified by 3.26.4.

(e) Requirement 2.26.6 does not apply.

(f) Requirement 2.26.8 does not apply.

(g) Requirements 2.26.9.1, 2.26.9.2, 2.26.9.5, 2.26.9.6, and 2.26.9.7 do not apply.

(h) Requirement 2.26.10 does not apply.

(05S) 3.26.2 Inspection Operation

Top-of-car operating devices shall be provided and shall conform to 2.26.1.4. In-car and those inspection operations conforming to 2.26.1.4.4 shall be permitted.

The bottom normal terminal stopping device shall be permitted to be made ineffective while the elevator is under the control of the inspection operation device.

3.26.3 Anticreep and Leveling Operation

3.26.3.1 Anticreep Operation. Each elevator shall be provided with an anticreep operation to correct automatically a change in car level. It shall conform to 2.26.1.6.2 and 2.26.1.6.3, and 3.26.3.1.1 through 3.26.3.1.5.

3.26.3.1.1 The anticreep device shall operate the car at a speed not exceeding 0.125 m/s (25 ft/min).

3.26.3.1.2 The anticreep device shall maintain the car within 25 mm (1 in.) of the landing, irrespective of the position of the hoistway door.

3.26.3.1.3 For electrohydraulic elevators, the anticreep device shall be required to operate the car only in the up direction.

3.26.3.1.4 Operation dependent on the availability of the electric power supply is permitted, provided that

(a) the mainline power disconnecting means is kept in the closed position at all times except during maintenance, repairs, and inspection

(b) a sign is placed on the switch stating, "KEEP SWITCH CLOSED EXCEPT DURING MAINTENANCE, REPAIRS, AND INSPECTIONS"

(c) the sign shall be made of durable material and securely fastened and have letters with a height of not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.)

3.26.3.1.5 Only the following, when activated, shall prevent operation of the anticreep device:

(a) the electrical protective devices listed in 3.26.4.1

(b) recycling operation (see 3.26.7)

(c) inspection transfer switch

(d) hoistway access switch

(e) low oil protection means

(f) oil tank temperature shutdown devices

3.26.3.2 Operation in Leveling or Truck Zone. Operation of an elevator in a leveling or truck zone at any landing by a car-leveling or truck-zoning device, when the hoistway doors, or the car doors or gates, or any combination thereof, are not in the closed position, is permissible, subject to the requirements of 2.26.1.6.1 through 2.26.1.6.5. A leveling or truck-zoning device shall operate the car at a speed not exceeding 0.125 m/s (25 ft/min).

3.26.4 Electrical Protective Devices

Electrical protective devices shall be provided in conformance with 2.26.2, and the following requirements, except the words "driving-machine motor and brake" in 2.26.2 shall be replaced with "hydraulic machine," and shall conform to 3.26.4.1 and 3.26.4.2.

3.26.4.1 When in the open position, the electrical protective devices shall prevent operation by all operating means, except as specified in 3.26.4.2.

3.26.4.2 When in the open position, the following devices shall initiate removal of power from the hydraulic machine in such a manner as to produce an average deceleration rate not greater than 9.8 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) and shall prevent operation by all operating means except the anticreep device:

(a) emergency stop switches, where required by 2.26.2.5

(b) broken rope, tape, or chain switches provided in connection with normal stopping devices, when such devices are located in the machine room, control room, or overhead space (05S)

(c) hoistway door interlocks or hoistway door contacts

(d) car door or gate electric contacts; or car door interlocks

(e) hinged car platform sill electric contacts

(f) in-car stop switch, where required by 2.26.2.21

3.26.5 Phase Reversal and Failure Protection

Hydraulic elevators powered by a polyphase AC motor shall be provided with the means to prevent overheating of the drive system (pump and motor) due to phase rotation reversals or failure.

3.26.6 Control and Operating Circuits

The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 3.26.6.1 and 3.26.6.2.

3.26.6.1 Springs, where used to actuate switches, contactors, or relays to stop an elevator at the terminals or to actuate electrically operated valves, shall be of the compression type.

(07) **3.26.6.2** The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to interrupt the power to the control valve, or to the pump driving motor of electrohydraulic elevators, or both under the following conditions:

(a) to stop the car at the terminals

(b) to stop the car when any of the electrical protective devices operate

(07) **3.26.6.3** For electrohydraulic elevators where there are two means of controlling upward movement of the elevator (e.g., a pump motor and a valve), at least one means shall be directly controlled by an electromechanical contactor or relay unless the terminal speed reducing device (see 3.25.2) directly removes power from one of the control means.

(07) **3.26.6.4** For electrohydraulic elevators where the only means of controlling upward movement of the elevator is the pump motor, the pump motor control shall conform to the following:

(a) Two devices shall be provided to remove power independently from the pump motor. At least one device shall be an electromechanical contactor.

(b) The contactor shall be arranged to open each time the car stops.

(c) The electrical protective devices shall control both devices [see 3.26.6.4(a)] in accordance with 3.26.4.

3.26.7 Recycling Operation for Multiple or Telescopic Plungers

Recycling operation shall permit the car to be lowered more than 25 mm (1 in.) below the bottom landing, but not require lowering in order to restore the relative vertical position of the multiple plunger sections, provided that

(a) the car is at rest at bottom landing

(b) the doors and gates are closed and locked

(c) no car calls are registered

(d) the speed during recycling does not exceed normal down leveling speed but in no case shall be more than 0.10 m/s (20 ft/min)

(e) normal operation cannot be resumed until car is returned to bottom landing and normal terminal stopping devices are restored to normal operation

3.26.8 Pressure Switch

When cylinders are installed with the top of the cylinder above the top of the storage tank, a pressure switch shall be provided in the line between the cylinder and the valve, which shall be activated by the loss of positive pressure at the top of the cylinder. The switch shall prevent automatic door opening and the operation of the lowering valve or valves. The door(s) shall be permitted to open by operation of the in-car open button, when the car is within the unlocking zone.

3.26.9 Low Oil Protection

3.26.9.1 A means shall be provided to render the elevator on normal operation inoperative if for any reason the liquid level in the tank falls below the permissible minimum. Suitable means include, but are not limited to, the following:

(a) direct sensing of liquid level

(b) a pump-run timer

Actuation of the means shall automatically bring the car down to the lowest landing, when the doors are closed.

3.26.9.2 When at the lowest landing, the doors shall comply with the following:

(a) For elevators with power-operated doors that automatically close, the door(s) shall open and shall initiate automatic closing within 15 s.

(b) For elevators with manual doors or with doors that do not automatically close, they shall be provided with a signal system to alert an operator to close the doors.

3.26.9.3 The car shall then shut down. The means shall require manual reset before returning the car to service. For elevators with power-operated doors, the in-car door open button(s) shall remain operative, but the doors shall not be able to be power-opened from the landing.

3.26.10 Auxiliary Power Lowering Operation

Where the auxiliary power supply is provided solely for the purpose of lowering the car, in the case of main power supply failure, the auxiliary lowering operation shall conform to 3.26.10.1 through 3.26.10.3.

3.26.10.1 Auxiliary lowering shall be permitted to be initiated, provided that all operating and control devices, including door open and close buttons, function as with normal power supply, except that the following devices shall be permitted to be bypassed or made inoperative:

(a) landing and car floor registration devices (or call buttons)

(b) devices enabling operation by designated attendant (hospital service, attendant operation)

(c) devices initiating emergency recall operation to the recall level, unless otherwise specified in 3.27

(d) "FIRE OPERATION" switch, unless otherwise specified in 3.27

3.26.10.2 When the auxiliary lowering operation has been initiated, the car shall descend directly to the lowest landing, except that the operating system shall be permitted to allow one or more intermediate stops, and then, after a predetermined interval, the car shall proceed to the lowest landing, provided the auxiliary power supply is of sufficient capacity to open and close doors at each intermediate stop.

3.26.10.3 If the car and landing doors are power operated, and if the auxiliary power supply is of adequate capacity, the doors shall open when the car stops at the lowest landing and shall close after a predetermined interval.

NOTE (3.26.10): For the main disconnect switch auxiliary contact, see ANSI/NFPA 70 and CSA-C22.1 requirements, where applicable (see Part 9).

SECTION 3.27
EMERGENCY OPERATION AND SIGNALING DEVICES

Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to 2.27, except as modified by the following: The requirements of 3.26.9 and 3.18.2.7 shall be modified when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation and Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation are in effect, as specified in 3.27.1 through 3.27.4.

(07) ### 3.27.1 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation After Device Actuation

If Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is activated while the elevator is responding to any of the following devices, the car shall return to the recall level:

(a) low oil protection (see 3.26.9)

(b) plunger-follower guide protection, provided the car is capable of being moved (see 3.18.2.7)

(c) auxiliary power lowering device (see 3.26.10)

If the elevator is incapable of returning to the recall level, the car shall descend to an available floor. Upon arrival, automatic power-operated doors shall open, and then reclose within 15 s. The door open button shall remain operative. The visual signal [2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall extinguish.

3.27.2 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation Prior to Device Actuation (07)

If any of the devices specified in 3.27.1(a), (b), or (c) is activated, while Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect, but before the car reaches the recall level, the car shall do one of the following:

(a) complete Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, if the car is above the recall level

(b) descend to an available floor, if the car is below the recall level

Upon arrival, automatic power-operated doors shall open, and then reclose within 15 s. The door open button shall remain operative. The visual signal [2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall extinguish.

3.27.3 Device Actuation at Recall Level

If either of the devices specified in 3.27.1(a) or (c) is activated while the car is stationary at the recall level and Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect, the following shall apply:

(a) automatic power-operated doors shall close within 15 s

(b) the door open button shall remain operational

(c) the visual signal [see Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall illuminate intermittantly

3.27.4 Device Actuation With Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation in Effect

If any of the devices specified in 3.27.1(a), (b), or (c) activate while the elevator is on Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation, a traveling car shall stop and all calls shall be canceled. The visual signal [see Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall illuminate intermittently. The elevator shall accept calls only to landings below its location and respond in compliance with the requirements for Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation.

SECTION 3.28
LAYOUT DATA

3.28.1 Information Required on Layout Drawing

Elevator layout drawings shall, in addition to other data, indicate the following:

(a) required clearances and basic dimensions

(b) the bracket spacing (see 3.23)

(c) the estimated maximum vertical forces on the guide rails on application of the safety, where provided (see 3.23)

(d) in the case of freight elevators for Class B or Class C loading (see 2.16.2.2), the horizontal forces on the guide-rail faces during loading and unloading, and the estimated maximum horizontal forces in a post-wise direction on the guide-rail faces on the application of the safety device, where provided (see 3.23)

(e) the size and weight per meter (foot) of any rail reinforcement, where provided (see 3.23)

(f) the impact loads imposed on machinery and sheave beams, supports, and floors or foundations (see 2.9)

(g) the impact load on buffer supports due to buffer engagement at the maximum permissible load and operating speed in the down direction (see 8.2.3)

(h) the net vertical load from the elevator system, which includes the total car weight and rated load; plunger, cylinder, and oil; and any structural supports

(i) the outside diameter and wall thickness of the cylinder, plunger, and piping, and the working pressure

(j) the total static and dynamic loads from the governor, ropes, and tension system

(k) rated speed and operating speed in the down direction

(l) the minimum "grade" of pipe (ASTM or recognized standard) required to fulfill the installation requirements for pressure piping, or in lieu of a specific "grade" of pipe, the minimum tensile strength of pipe to be used for the installation (see 3.19)

(m) the horizontal forces on the building structure stipulated by 2.11.11.8

(n) the length of the plunger and cylinder

(o) the clearance between the bottom of the plunger and the bottom head of the cylinder as required by 3.18.3.3

SECTION 3.29
IDENTIFICATION

Identification of equipment and floors shall conform to 2.29, as applicable.

Part 4
Elevators With Other Types of Driving Machines

SCOPE

Part 4 applies to elevators with other types of driving machines.

(a) Requirement 4.1 applies to rack-and-pinion elevators.

(b) Requirement 4.2 applies to screw-column elevators.

(c) Requirement 4.3 applies to hand elevators.

SECTION 4.1
RACK-AND-PINION ELEVATORS

This Section applies to an elevator with a car raised and lowered by a pinion(s) on a rack.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *rack-and-pinion elevators.*

4.1.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to Part 2, except 2.7 (see 4.1.2) and 2.8 (see 4.1.3).

4.1.2 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

4.1.2.1 Motors, electrical control equipment, and other equipment used in conjunction with the elevator shall be permitted to be located within the hoistway and/or on the car. If it is in a separate machine room and/or machinery space, it shall conform to 2.7.

(07) **4.1.2.2** In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, the controller shall be permitted to be located on the exterior of the hoistway wall or other approved location apart from the hoistway, elevator machine room, or elevator machinery space. A controller so located shall be available to and used only by inspectors, maintenance personnel, and repair personnel.

In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, the controller shall be permitted to be located on the exterior of the hoistway wall or other approved location apart from the hoistway, elevator machine room, or elevator machinery space. If the controller is located outside the hoistway, machine room, and machinery spaces, it shall be made accessible only to elevator personnel.

4.1.2.3 A rack-and-pinion machine and its controls, if located on the car, shall be protected by a noncombustible enclosure to prevent accidental contact. Openwork noncombustible enclosure material shall be permitted to be used for rack-and-pinion machines located on top of the car, provided the openwork material rejects a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

4.1.2.4 Access shall be provided to the rack-and-pinion machine for maintenance. Access panels to rack-and-pinion control equipment located in the car shall be provided with an electric contact and lock. The access panel shall be kept closed and locked. The electric contact shall be designed to prevent operation of the rack-and-pinion machine when the access panel is open. The lock shall not be operable by a key that will operate locks or devices for other purposes in the building. The key shall be available to, and used only by, inspectors, maintenance personnel, and repair personnel (see 8.1).

4.1.3 Equipment in Hoistways or Machine Rooms

Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in the hoistway shall conform to 2.8, except that the main feeder of a rack-and-pinion machine located on the car shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway.

4.1.4 Supports and Foundations

The supports and foundations shall be designed to support all loads imposed by the elevator (including impact loading in the event of a safety application, stop by a speed-limiting device, or drive nut failure) in accordance with the building code. Allowable stresses for machinery and sheave beams or floors and their supports shall be in accordance with 2.9.4.

4.1.5 Emergency Doors

Emergency doors meeting the requirements of 2.11.1 shall be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway, except in elevators having a manually operated device that permits lowering the car at an automatically controlled speed to the nearest landing.

4.1.6 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

The car enclosure, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to 2.14.

4.1.7 Car Frames and Platforms

The car frame and platform shall conform to the design and performance requirements of 2.15.

4.1.8 Capacity and Loading

The elevator shall conform to the capacity and loading requirements of 2.16.

4.1.9 Car Safeties and Speed Governor

The car shall be provided with a safety identified in 2.17.5 or a rack-and-pinion safety. The safety shall be attached to the car frame or supporting structure. All car safeties shall be mounted on a single car frame and shall operate on one pair of guide members or on one vertical rack.

The safety shall be located as required by 2.17.1, or if it is a rack-and-pinion safety, shall be permitted to be located above or in the car, provided that the members to which they are fixed are part of the car frame and are designed to withstand the forces imposed.

Rack-and-pinion safeties are safeties in which a freely rotating safety pinion, a governor, and a safety device shall be permitted to form an integral unit mounted in the car. The freely rotating pinion travels on a stationary rack mounted vertically on the hoist structure. The rotating pinion drives the governor. When the speed of the car reaches the tripping value, the rotating governor actuates the safety device that, in turn, brings the car to a gradual stop.

(07) **4.1.9.1 Stopping Distances.** In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, stopping distances for rack-and-pinion safeties and the travel of the car measured from the governor tripping time to the full stop time shall not exceed the values based on rated speed given in Table 4.1.9.1.

In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, stopping distances for rack-and-pinion safeties and the travel of the car measured from the governor tripping time to the full stop time shall not exceed the values based on rated speed given in Table 4.1.9.1. When calculating stopping distances, the kinetic energy from the driving unit shall be taken into account.

4.1.10 Counterweights

Counterweights, where provided, shall conform to 2.21.

4.1.11 Car Buffers

Buffers shall conform to 2.22. Kinetic energy from the drive unit shall be taken into account in the design calculations.

4.1.12 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to 2.23.

4.1.13 Rack-and-Pinion Driving Machine

Rack-and-pinion-type drives shall conform to 2.24 (except 2.24.1), and 4.1.13.1 through 4.1.13.6.

4.1.13.1 The rack-and-pinion drive shall consist of one or more power-driven rotating pinions mounted on the car and arranged to travel on a stationary rack mounted on the supporting structure. The drive shall have at least one pinion, one rack, and two backup rollers, which shall act on the same section of rack as the drive pinion. Driving machines utilizing a two-sided rack, where two drive pinions are located so that they are opposite each other and act as backup rollers, shall be deemed to have met this requirement.

4.1.13.2 The pinions and racks shall be of steel or of material having equivalent mechanical properties or better with a minimum factor of safety of 8 based on ultimate stress for the pinion and the rack. They shall be designed to conform to AGMA 218.01, including surface hardening and an assumption of a minimum of 200 000 life cycles.

4.1.13.3 All moving parts of the driving machine shall be properly protected with solid or perforated metal that will reject a ball of 13 mm (0.5 in.) diameter and shall be securely fastened.

4.1.13.4 The rack and pinion shall be so designed that the separation of the pinion from the rack in all directions in excess of 25% of the tooth depth of 6 mm (0.25 in.), whichever is the lesser, cannot occur. A guard shall be provided to prevent foreign material from lodging between the teeth, and clearance between the moving parts and the guard shall not exceed 5 mm (0.1875 in.).

4.1.13.5 Rack sections shall be fastened to the supporting structure with a factor of safety of 5 based on ultimate stress, and with dowels at each joint.

4.1.13.6 The manufacturer shall provide the measurement for checking tooth wear on pinion and rack. The measuring instruction shall be indicated on a metal plate securely fastened and conspicuously displayed on top of the car with letters not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) high.

4.1.14 Terminal Stopping Devices

4.1.14.1 Normal and Final Terminal Stopping Devices. Normal and final terminal stopping devices shall be provided conforming to 2.25.1, 2.25.2, and 2.25.3, except 2.25.3.3. Normal and final terminal stopping devices shall be permitted to be located on the car and operated by cams attached to the hoistway structure.

4.1.14.2 Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Devices. Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall conform to 2.25.4.

4.1.15 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

4.1.15.1 Applicable Requirements. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26 and to the following:

Table 4.1.9.1 Maximum and Minimum Stopping Distances for Rack-and-Pinion Safeties With Rated Load

SI Units				Imperial Units			
Rated Speed, m/s	Maximum Governor Trip Speed, m/s	Stopping Distance, mm		Rated Speed, ft/min	Maximum Governor Trip Speed, ft/min	Stopping Distance, in.	
		Min.	Max.			Min.	Max.
0.63	0.88	80.5	1 639.3	125	175	3.17	64.54
0.76	1.06	116.0	1 703.5	150	210	4.57	67.07
0.89	1.37	164.3	1 791.2	175	250	6.47	70.52
1.01	1.42	206.2	1 866.9	200	280	8.12	73.50
1.14	1.56	249.4	1 945.3	225	308	9.82	76.59
1.27	1.71	298.7	2 034.2	250	337	11.76	80.09
1.52	2.00	410.7	2 236.4	300	395	16.15	88.05
1.77	2.29	537.2	2 466.5	350	452	21.15	97.11
2.03	2.59	684.0	2 731.0	400	510	26.03	107.52
2.28	2.86	848.3	3 029.9	450	568	33.40	119.29
2.54	3.17	1 027.1	3 098.8	500	625	40.44	122.00
3.04	3.75	1 439.9	4 101.5	600	740	56.69	161.48
3.55	4.34	1 922.3	4 975.0	700	855	75.68	195.87
4.06	4.92	2 473.9	5 974.5	800	970	97.40	235.22
4.57	5.51	3 095.4	7 100.0	900	1,085	121.87	279.53
5.06	6.09	3 786.3	8 305.8	1,000	1,200	149.07	327.00
5.58	6.70	4 581.4	9 791.7	1,100	1,320	180.37	385.50
6.09	7.31	5 452.3	11 379.2	1,200	1,440	214.66	448.00
6.60	7.92	6 400.8	13 083.5	1,300	1,560	252.00	515.10
7.11	8.53	7 421.1	14 935.2	1,400	1,680	292.17	588.00
7.62	9.14	8 068.3	16 924.0	1,500	1,800	333.40	666.30
8.12	9.75	9 642.8	19 050.0	1,600	1,920	381.61	750.00
8.63	10.36	10 942.3	21 313.1	1,700	2,040	430.80	839.10
9.14	10.97	12 266.4	23 713.4	1,800	2,160	482.98	933.60
9.65	11.58	13 668.7	26 750.9	1,900	2,280	538.14	1,053.50
10.16	12.19	15 145.2	28 925.5	2,000	2,400	596.27	1,138.80

Where the rack-and-pinion machine and its controller are located on the car, the disconnecting means shall be located adjacent to the controller. Auxiliary disconnect means shall be provided at the main landing whenever the main power supply disconnect means (required by NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable; see Part 9) is mounted adjacent to the controller on the car. Auxiliary disconnect means shall be accessible to authorized personnel only in order to be available for their protection and emergency use.

4.1.15.2 Permitted Voltage. Voltage permitted in control and operating circuits shall not exceed 300 V on rack-and-pinion equipment.

4.1.16 Emergency Operation and Signal Devices

Emergency operation and signal service shall conform to 2.27.

4.1.17 Layout Drawings

Elevator layout drawings shall, in addition to the other data required by 2.28, indicate

(a) the dimensions of the rack and location with respect to the guide rail

(b) the magnitude of the loads on the rack imposed on the building structure

4.1.18 Welding

Welding shall conform to 8.8.

SECTION 4.2 SCREW-COLUMN ELEVATORS

This Section applies to an elevator having an uncounterweighted car that is supported by a screw column and is raised and lowered by screw thread means.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *screw-column elevators.*

4.2.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 2.1, 2.2, 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, and 2.13.

4.2.2 Vertical Clearance and Runby for Cars

4.2.2.1 Bottom Car Clearance. The bottom car clearance shall conform to 2.4.1, provided that, in the determination of the required clearance, any undercar machinery and bracing that is located within 150 mm (6 in.) horizontally from the edge of the car platform or 75 mm (3 in.) horizontally from the centerline of the guide rails is not considered.

4.2.2.2 Minimum and Maximum Bottom and Top Car Runby. The minimum bottom and top car runby shall be not less than

(*a*) 75 mm (3 in.) for rated speeds not exceeding 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min)

(*b*) 150 mm (6 in.) for rated speeds exceeding 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min)

The maximum bottom and top car runby shall be not more than 600 mm (24 in.).

4.2.2.3 Top Car Clearance. The top car clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following two items:

(*a*) the top car runby

(*b*) the height of the refuge space on top of the enclosure (see 4.2.2.4) or the clearance required for equipment projecting above the top of the car to prevent its striking any part of the overhead structure or equipment located in the hoistway, but in no case less than 1 070 mm (42 in.)

4.2.2.4 Refuge Space on Top-of-Car Enclosure. A refuge space shall be provided on top of the car enclosure conforming to 2.4.12.

4.2.3 Horizontal Car Clearance

The horizontal car clearances shall conform to 2.5, except 2.5.1.2.

4.2.4 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway

Where the space below the hoistway is used for a passageway, is occupied by persons, or if unoccupied, is not secured against unauthorized access, the requirements specified in 4.2.4.1 through 4.2.4.3 shall be conformed to.

4.2.4.1 The screw column, and any associated framing, shall be supported by a structure of sufficient strength to support the entire load imposed upon it, including the impact if the drive nut should fail.

4.2.4.2 The guide rails shall be supported by a structure of sufficient strength to withstand, without permanent deformation, the impact of a safety application with a fully loaded car.

4.2.4.3 The buffers shall be supported by a structure of sufficient strength to withstand, without permanent deformation, the impact resulting from buffer engagement by the car with its rated load at the maximum speed in the down direction.

4.2.5 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

The machine rooms, machinery spaces, and location of elevator components shall conform to 4.2.5.1 through 4.2.5.6.

4.2.5.1 Motors and other integral mechanical or electrical equipment shall be permitted to be located in machinery space within the hoistway, on the car, in the pit, or in a separate machine room or machinery space.

4.2.5.2 The controller shall be permitted to be located on the car or on the exterior of the hoistway wall or other location apart from the hoistway, machine room, or machinery space. A controller so located shall be readily accessible for maintenance and inspection at all times. Controllers located apart from the hoistway, machine room, or machinery space shall be housed in a locked metal cabinet. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

4.2.5.3 A separate machine room or machinery space, apart from the hoistway, shall conform to 2.7.

4.2.5.4 A screw machine and its controls, if located on the car, shall be protected by a noncombustible enclosure to prevent accidental contact. Openwork enclosures of noncombustible material shall be permitted to be used for screw machines located on top of the car, provided the openwork material rejects a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter.

4.2.5.5 Access shall be provided to the screw machine for maintenance. Access panels to screw machines located on the car shall be provided with an electric contact and lock. The electric contact shall be designed to prevent operation of the screw machine when the access panel is open. The access panel shall be kept closed and locked. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

4.2.5.6 Where the screw machine is located in the pit, means shall be permanently provided in the pit for supporting the car and its frame or platform during repairs or adjustments. Clear headroom under the platform shall be not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) when the car is landed on the supports.

4.2.6 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

Electrical wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways, machine rooms, and machinery spaces shall conform to 2.8, except, the main feeder of a screw-column elevator shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway if the screw machine is located in the hoistway, provided there is no intermediate access to the conductors between the disconnecting means and the termination at the motor or controller.

4.2.7 Supports and Foundations

4.2.7.1 The supports and foundations shall be designed to support all loads imposed by the elevator in accordance with the building code, including impact loading in the event of a car safety application, stop by a safety nut, or controlled descent by a speed-limiting device. The unit stresses in elevator-supporting members and their supports, based on two times the normal loading, shall not exceed those permitted for static loading in accordance with the requirements of the following standards:

(a) AISC Book No. S326 or CAN/CSA-S16.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9) for structural steel

(b) ANSI/ACI 318 or CAN3-A23.3, whichever is applicable (see Part 9) for reinforced concrete

4.2.7.2 Where stresses due to loads, other than elevator loads supported on the beams, floor, or structure, exceed those due to the elevator loads, 100% of the permitted stresses shall be permitted to be used.

NOTE: In determining unit stresses, the maximum normal loading is doubled to take care of impact, accelerating stresses, etc.

4.2.8 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

The car enclosure, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to 2.14.

4.2.9 Car Frames and Platforms

The car frame and platform shall conform to 2.15, except 2.15.12 and 2.15.13.

4.2.10 Capacity and Loading

The capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16.

4.2.11 Car Safeties and Speed Governor

A car safety device and speed governor shall be provided, which shall conform to the design and performance requirements of 2.17 and 2.18, except as specified in 4.2.11.1 and 4.2.11.2.

4.2.11.1 For elevators driven by an alternating-current squirrel cage induction motor and having a down speed of not more than 0.37 m/s (75 ft/min), the car safety and governor are not required if another safety device is provided to either

(a) limit the down speed of the car with rated load to not over 0.87 m/s (175 ft/min) in the event of failure of the driving means; or

(b) limit the fall of the elevator in the event of failure of the driving nut to a distance not exceeding 13 mm (0.5 in.), by utilizing a safety nut or other equivalent means.

4.2.11.2 The capability of the alternate safety devices described in 4.2.11.1(a) and (b) to function as required shall be verified by engineering tests as described in 8.3.10.

4.2.12 Safety Nut and Data Tag

4.2.12.1 A safety nut is required on all screw machines that utilize a driving nut made of a material other than metal and shall be permitted to be provided on all screw machines. The safety nut shall be made of metal and designed to withstand the impact without damage if the driving nut should fail.

4.2.12.2 A metal data tag shall be securely attached to each screw machine equipped with a safety nut bearing the following data:

(a) date of installation of driving and safety nuts

(b) spacing between driving and safety nuts

4.2.12.3 The material and markings of the safety nut spacing data tag shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.6 mm (0.0625 in.).

4.2.13 Car Buffers

Car buffers shall be provided, which conform to 2.22, except that solid bumpers shall be permitted to be used for elevators provided with a safety nut [see 4.2.11.1(b)] and having a maximum speed in the down direction of 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min).

4.2.14 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to 2.23, except 2.23.4.2, 2.23.4.3, 2.23.9.1, and 2.23.10.

The fastening of guide rails to brackets or to the elevator-supporting frame shall be by clips, welds, or bolts. The rail structure and the structural members to which it is attached shall withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.2, and the application of the car safety shall be within the deflection limits specified.

4.2.15 Driving Machine and Screw Column

The screw machine shall function to raise or lower the elevator car acting in conjunction with a screw column that directly supports the elevator car.

The screw column and machine shall conform to 2.24.4, 2.24.5, 2.24.6, 2.24.8, 2.29, and 4.2.15.1 through 4.2.15.11.

4.2.15.1 Screws shall be made of steel. Nuts shall be made of bronze or other materials having an elongation of at least 14% in a length of 50 mm (2 in.).

4.2.15.2 Means shall be provided to maintain the screw in its vertical position under all conditions of operation. Screws suspended from their upper end shall be restrained at their lower end.

4.2.15.3 A vertical casing, closed at the end, shall be provided to enclose and protect the screw column in cases where the screw column extends outside the hoistway and machine room.

4.2.15.4 The screw column and nut and their attachments to the car frame, car platform, or other structure shall provide sufficient strength to support the loads imposed on these connections with a factor of safety of 5.

4.2.15.5 Factors of safety for the driving machine, excluding the screw column and nut, their attachments to the car frame, car platform, or other structure, shall conform to 2.24.3, except that the load used in determining the factor of safety shall be based on the total weight supported with rated load in the car.

4.2.15.6 Screw machines of the indirect drive type shall conform to 2.24.9. The elevator shall be so designed that the elevator car, while carrying 125% of rated load and traveling at rated speed, shall decelerate and stop in the event the driving-belt system or driving-chain system should break.

4.2.15.7 Means shall be provided to prevent the disengagement of the nut from the screw column. This means shall be so designed and constructed as to prevent disengagement in the event of overtravel at full speed and without damage to any part of the elevator installation. Any additional loads imposed by this action shall also be considered in the computations made in accordance with 4.2.15.8.

4.2.15.8 Where the screw column is a compression member, column formulas of 8.2.8.1.1 shall be used in the design with the words "screw column" substituted for the word "plunger" and:

A = net cross-sectional area of screw at root of thread, mm^2 ($in.^2$)
L = maximum free length of screw, mm (in.)
R = radius of gyration of screw at root of thread, mm (in.)
W = the total weight with rated load plus one-half the weight of the screw column, kg (lb)
W/A = maximum allowable fiber stress

4.2.15.9 Where the screw column is a tension member, the unit stress (considering the root dimension and any associated stress concentration and/or the reduced section at any joints in the screw) shall not exceed one-fifth of the ultimate strength of the material with a maximum fiber stress not to exceed 124 MPa (18,000 psi).

4.2.15.10 Positive mechanical means shall be provided to prevent rotation or separation of sections of a multiple section screw column.

4.2.15.11 Means shall be provided to permit authorized personnel from a position outside the elevator car to raise or lower the car manually in the event of a power failure, unless emergency or standby power is provided, except that for private residence elevators and special purpose personnel elevators, means to allow a passenger within a stalled car to manually move the car to a landing is acceptable and no other means of moving the stalled car is required.

4.2.16 Terminal Stopping Devices

4.2.16.1 Normal Terminal Stopping Devices. Normal terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.1 and 2.25.2.

4.2.16.2 Final Terminal Stopping Devices. Final terminal stopping devices, conforming to 2.25.3.1 and 2.25.3.3, shall be provided for elevators having a rated speed exceeding 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min). Final terminal stopping devices shall be located in the hoistway and operated by cams attached to the car.

Elevators having a rated speed of 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min) or less shall be designed so that the elevator car will be brought to a stop without damage to the elevator system in the event of overtravel of the elevator at either terminal due to a malfunction.

4.2.16.3 Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Devices. Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices shall be installed where reduced stroke buffers are used (see 2.22.4.1.2). These devices shall conform to 2.25.4.

4.2.17 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

4.2.17.1 Applicable Requirements. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to the following:

(*a*) Requirement 2.26.1.1, Types of Operating Devices.

(*b*) Requirement 2.26.1.4, Inspection Operation, except that a top-of-car operating devices are not required on private residence elevators and special purpose personnel elevators. Top-of-car operating devices are not required on any screw-column elevator if there is no mechanical or electrical equipment that requires maintenance from the top of the car.

(*c*) Requirements 2.26.2.5, 2.26.2.7 through 2.26.2.10, 2.26.2.12 through 2.26.2.15, 2.26.2.18 through 2.26.2.21, 2.26.2.25, and 2.26.2.28, Electrical Protective Devices.

(*d*) Requirement 2.26.3, Contactors and Relays in Critical Operating Circuits.

(*e*) Requirement 2.26.4, Requirements of Electrical Equipment and Wiring.

(*f*) Requirement 2.26.5, System to Monitor and Prevent Automatic Operation of the Elevators With Faulty Door Contact Circuits.

(*g*) Where the screw machine and its controller are located on the car, in the hoistway, or outside the hoistway, the disconnecting means shall be located adjacent to the controller.

(*h*) Requirement 2.26.6, Phase Protection of Motors.

(*i*) Requirement 2.26.7, Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective.

(*j*) Requirement 2.26.8, Release and Application of Driving-Machine Brakes.

(*k*) Requirement 2.26.9, Control and Operating Circuits.

(l) Requirement 2.26.11, Car Platform to Hoistway Door Sills Vertical Distance.

(m) Requirement 2.26.13, Operating Device Symbols.

4.2.18 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices

Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to 2.27.

4.2.19 Layout Drawings

Elevator layout drawings shall, in addition to the other data required by 2.28, indicate the following:

(a) the material and dimensions of the screw column, including thread dimensions

(b) the location and amount of the maximum loadings on the building structure

4.2.20 Welding. All welding shall conform to 8.8.

SECTION 4.3 HAND ELEVATORS

This Section applies to hand-operated elevators.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *hand elevators*.

4.3.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to Part 2, except for the following, which do not apply:

2.1.3	Floor Over Hoistways
2.1.6	Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks in Hoistway Enclosures
2.2	Pits
2.3	Location and Guarding of Counterweights
2.4	Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights
2.5	Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances
2.7.1.1	Fire-Resistive Construction
2.7.1.2	Non-Fire-Resistive Construction
2.7.2	Equipment in Machine Rooms
2.7.4	Headroom in Machine Rooms and Overhead Machinery Spaces
2.7.5.2	Temperature and Humidity
2.8	Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms
2.10	Guarding of Equipment and Standard Railing
2.11.2.1	Passenger Elevators
2.11.2.2	Freight Elevators
2.11.3	Closing of Hoistway Doors
2.11.7	Glass in Hoistway Doors
2.11.9	Hoistway-Door Locking Devices and Power Operation
2.12	Hoistway-Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches
2.13	Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors

4.3.2 Pits

Pits are not required.

4.3.3 Top Clearances

4.3.3.1 Top Car Clearance. The top car clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following:

(a) the bottom counterweight runby, if any

(b) the stroke of the counterweight buffer where a spring-type buffer is used (buffer not required for sidewalk elevators)

(c) 300 mm (12 in.)

4.3.3.2 Top Counterweight Clearance. The top counterweight clearance shall be not less than the sum of the following:

(a) the bottom car runby, if any

(b) the stroke of the car buffer where a spring-type buffer is used (buffer not required for sidewalk elevators)

(c) 150 mm (6 in.)

4.3.4 Enclosures for Machines and Control Equipment (ED)

Elevator machines and their control equipment shall be permitted to be located inside the hoistway enclosure at the top or bottom without intervening enclosures or platforms.

Machines of sidewalk elevators having a rise of not more than one floor, and having an opening into the building at the bottom terminal landing only, are not required to be enclosed.

4.3.5 Overhead Beams and Supports, and Access to Machines and Sheaves

4.3.5.1 Overhead Beams and Supports. Overhead beams and their supports shall conform to 2.9.

4.3.5.2 Access to Machines and Sheaves. Adequate and permanent means of access shall be provided to machines and sheaves for maintenance and inspection (see 2.7.3).

4.3.6 Hoistway Entrances

4.3.6.1 Types of Entrances. Entrances will be of the following types:

(a) self-closing or manually operated horizontally sliding or swinging, single section

(b) self-closing or manually operated horizontally swinging, two section (Dutch type) with one section above the other and the lower section extending not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.) above the floor, and arranged to be opened only when the car is in the landing zone and after the upper section has been opened, and to be closed by the closing of the upper section

(c) manually operated vertically sliding counterweighted single- or multi-section

(d) manually operated vertically sliding biparting counterbalanced

(e) for sidewalk elevator doors in sidewalks or other areas exterior to the building, see 5.5.1.11.2

4.3.6.2 Closing of Hoistway Doors. All doors shall be kept closed, except the door at the floor where the car is being operated or is being loaded or unloaded.

Manually operated doors shall be equipped with approved devices to close them automatically when released by the action of heat. Self-closing doors equipped with hold-open devices shall be equipped with fusible links that will release the door in case of excessive heat.

Landing doors shall be provided with mechanical locks so arranged that the car cannot leave the landing unless the door is closed. The lock or latch shall be arranged to ensure that the door is in a position to be locked when or before the car leaves the landing.

These requirements do not apply to bottom landing doors of sidewalk elevators.

4.3.6.3 Signs on Hoistway Doors. Every hoistway door shall have conspicuously displayed on the landing side in letters not less than 50 mm (2 in.) high the words: "DANGER–ELEVATOR–KEEP CLOSED."

4.3.7 Hoistway Gates for Landing Openings

Hoistway landing openings equipped with horizontally sliding or swinging doors shall also be provided with vertically sliding semiautomatic gates, not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.) high and of a design that will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter. Gates shall be so constructed and guided as to withstand a lateral force of 445 N (100 lbf) concentrated at the center of the gate without being deflected beyond the line of the landing sill, and a force of 1 112 N (250 lbf) without forcing the gate from its guides or without causing it to break or be permanently deformed.

4.3.8 Hoistway Door and Hoistway Gate Locking Devices

Hoistway doors and hoistway gates, where required, shall be provided with locking devices as specified in 4.3.8.1 and 4.3.8.2.

4.3.8.1 Door Latches. Hoistway doors shall be provided with spring-type latches to hold them in the closed position. Such latches shall be capable of being released from both the hoistway and landing side, irrespective of the position of the car.

4.3.8.2 Gate Locks. Hoistway gates required with horizontally sliding or swinging type hoistway doors (see 4.3.7) shall be provided with hoistway gate separate mechanical locks.

(a) *Type Required.* Hoistway gate separate mechanical locks shall be of a type actuated only when the car is within the landing zone by a cam attached to the car.

(b) *General Design Requirements.* The lock shall hold the gate in the closed position by means of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or by both.

(c) *Closed Position.* Hoistway gates provided with hoistway gate separate mechanical locks shall be considered to be in the closed position when the gate is within 10 mm (0.375 in.) of contact with the landing sill.

4.3.9 Car Enclosures

Cars shall be enclosed on the sides not used for entrance. The deflection of the enclosure shall be not more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) when subjected to a force of 334 N (75 lbf) applied perpendicularly to the car enclosure at any point. The enclosure shall be secured to the car platform or frame in such a manner that it cannot work loose or become displaced in ordinary service.

These requirements do not apply to sidewalk elevators.

4.3.10 Use of Glass in Cars

Glass shall not be used in elevator cars, except as permitted in 2.14.1.8.

4.3.11 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall be of metal or sound seasoned wood designed with a factor of safety of not less than 4 for metal and 6 for wood, based on the rated load uniformly distributed. Connection between frame members of the car frame and the platform shall be riveted, bolted, or welded.

Sidewalk elevator platforms shall be provided with steel bow irons or stanchions to open sidewalk doors or covers (see 5.5.1.15.2).

4.3.12 Car Compartments

Elevator cars upon which an operator is permitted to ride shall have not more than one compartment.

4.3.13 Cars Counterbalancing One Another

Elevator cars upon which persons are permitted to ride shall not be arranged to counterbalance each other.

4.3.14 Capacity and Loading

4.3.14.1 Minimum Rated Load. The rated load of hand elevators shall be not less than 240 kg/m^2 (50 lb/ft^2) of inside net car area.

4.3.14.2 Capacity Plate. A metal plate shall be fastened in a conspicuous place in the elevator car and shall bear the following information in not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) letters or numerals, stamped, etched, or raised on the surface of the plate:

(a) rated load in kg (lb)

(b) the maximum number of passengers to be carried based on 68 kg (150 lb) per person (if passenger elevator)

(c) suspension data required by 4.3.16.5

(ED) 4.3.15 Car Safeties

Elevators having a rise of more than 4.6 m (15 ft) shall be provided with a car safety, attached to the underside of the car frame, capable of stopping and sustaining the car with rated load.

The car safety device is not required to be operated by a speed governor, and is permitted to be of the instantaneous type operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the suspension members.

Where the rise exceeds 12.5 m (40 ft), driving machines having hand-operated brakes shall also be equipped with an automatic speed retarder.

4.3.16 Suspension Means

4.3.16.1 Type and Number Required. Suspension means shall consist of not less than two wire ropes or chains.

4.3.16.2 Factor of Safety. The factor of safety used in determining the size and number of the suspension members shall be not less than 5, based on the weight of the car and its rated load.

4.3.16.3 Length of Suspension Members. The length of suspension members shall be such as to provide the minimum top car and counterweight clearances specified in 4.3.3.

4.3.16.4 Securing of Drum Ends, and Turns on Drum. Drum ends of suspension members shall be secured to the inside of the drum by clamps or babbitted sockets, and there shall be not less than one complete turn of the suspension members around the winding drum when the car or counterweight is resting on its buffers.

4.3.16.5 Suspension Member Data. The capacity plate required by 4.3.14.2 shall show the size, rated ultimate strength, and material of the suspension members. The date of installation of the suspension members shall be shown on a metal tag attached to the suspension fastening.

4.3.17 Counterweights

4.3.17.1 Counterweight Construction. Sections of counterweights, whether carried in frames or not, shall be secured by at least two tie-rods passing through holes in the sections. The tie-rods shall have locknuts at each end, secured by cotter pins.

4.3.18 Guide Rails and Fastenings

4.3.18.1 Material and Finish. Car and counterweights shall be provided with guide rails of steel or straight-grained seasoned wood free from knots, shakes, dry rot, or other imperfections.

Guide rails for sidewalk elevators shall be of steel. The guiding surfaces of the guide rails for elevators equipped with car safeties shall be finished smooth.

4.3.18.2 Strength of Rails and Fastenings. Guide rails shall be securely fastened with through bolts or clips of such strength, design, and spacing that

(a) the guide rails and their fastenings shall not deflect more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) under normal operation

(b) the guide rails and their fastenings shall withstand the application of the safety, where provided, when stopping the car with rated load or when stopping the counterweight

4.3.18.3 Extension of Guide Rails at Top and Bottom of Hoistway. Car and counterweight guide rails shall rest on suitable supports and extend at the top of the hoistway sufficiently to prevent the guide shoes from running off the guide rails in case the car or counterweight travels beyond the terminal landings.

4.3.19 Driving Machines and Sheaves

4.3.19.1 Factors of Safety. The factors of safety, based on static loads, to be used in the design of driving machines and sheaves shall be not less than 8 for wrought iron or wrought steel and 10 for cast iron or other materials.

4.3.19.2 Driving-Machine Brakes. Driving machines shall be equipped with a hand brake or an automatic brake operating in either direction of motion of the elevator, and capable of stopping and holding the car with its rated load. When the brake has been applied, it shall remain in the "ON" position until released by the operator.

4.3.20 Power Attachments

Power attachments are prohibited. Elevators shall not be equipped with any means or attachment for applying electric or other power unless the elevator is permanently and completely converted into a power elevator conforming to all requirements of this Code for electric or hydraulic elevators.

4.3.21 Layout Data

The information provided on layout data shall conform to 2.28.

4.3.22 Inspections and Tests

See 8.10 and 8.11 for the testing requirements for hand elevators.

Part 5
Special Application Elevators

(07) SCOPE

Part 5 applies to special application elevators as specified in the following requirements:

(a) Requirement 5.1 applies to inclined elevators.

(b) Requirement 5.2 applies to limited-use/limited-application elevators.

(c) Requirement 5.3 applies to private residence elevators.

(d) Requirement 5.4 applies to private residence inclined elevators.

(e) Requirement 5.5 applies to power sidewalk elevators.

(f) Requirement 5.6 applies to rooftop elevators.

(g) Requirement 5.7 applies to special purpose personnel elevators in jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC.

(h) Requirement 5.8 applies to shipboard elevators.

(i) Requirement 5.9 applies to mine elevators in jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC.

(j) Requirement 5.10 applies to elevators used for construction.

SECTION 5.1
INCLINED ELEVATORS

Requirement 5.1 applies to inclined elevators (see 1.3) at other than private residences.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *inclined elevators.*

5.1.1 General Requirements

5.1.1.1 Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 5.1.2, 2.1 through 2.13, and 2.29, except as modified by 5.1.1 through 5.1.6 and 5.1.8 through 5.1.10.

5.1.1.2 Machinery and equipment shall conform to 2.14 through 2.28, 8.8, and 8.9, except as modified by 5.1.7, and 5.1.11 through 5.1.22.

5.1.2 Construction of Hoistway and Hoistway Enclosures

5.1.2.1 Fire-Resistive Construction. Hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1.1.1.

5.1.2.2 Non-Fire-Resistive Construction. Where fire-resistive construction of the hoistway is not required by the building code, the hoistway shall be enclosed as specified in 5.1.2.2.1 through 5.1.2.2.4.

5.1.2.2.1 Enclosures shall be of solid construction or openwork at least 2 140 mm (84 in.) high. If of openwork, it shall reject a ball 19 mm (0.750 in.) in diameter and be located a minimum of 150 mm (6 in.) from the nearest moving component, or shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter and be located a minimum of 914 mm (36 in.) from the nearest moving component. Areas of the enclosure located adjacent to landing entrances, and entrances of openwork construction, shall reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter. All enclosures shall be supported and braced so as to deflect not more than 50 mm (2 in.) when subjected to a force of 444 N (100 lbf) applied horizontally over any 101.6 mm^2 (4 $in.^2$) area of the enclosure, nor shall the running clearance be reduced to less than 25 mm (1 in.).

5.1.2.2.2 Those portions of the hoistway where the lowest member of the guides or any moving component is at least 2 440 mm (96 in.) above the surface below shall not be required to have any enclosure. Adjacent hoistway enclosures shall be joined under the guides. The underside of any area of the hoistway that crosses any passageway, such as a pathway or roadway, shall be enclosed. The enclosure shall be of solid or openwork construction, shall be full width, and shall extend beyond the area of the passageway on each side a distance at least equal to one-half of the vertical distance between the lowest member of the guides and each edge of the passageway, respectively. If of openwork construction, it shall reject a ball 19 mm (0.75 in.) in diameter.

5.1.2.2.3 Structures used to support the hoistway, and located outside of the enclosure, shall be designed to protect against climbing.

5.1.2.2.4 Acrylics, laminated glass, or wired glass used for enclosures and doors shall be of the following minimum thicknesses:

(a) acrylics, 6 mm (0.250 in.)

(b) laminated glass, 9.5 mm (0.375 in.)

(c) wired glass, 6 mm (0.250 in.)

5.1.3 Pits and Work Spaces

5.1.3.1 Work Space Dimensions. If not otherwise provided by the pit design, each inclined elevator shall be provided with a work space below the guides extending to each side a minimum of 450 mm (18 in.) beyond the running line of the car or counterweight with a length in the direction of travel of not less than

1 830 mm (72 in.) throughout the length measured from the top of the guides. Such work spaces shall be provided with stop switches and lighting conforming to 2.2.5 and 2.2.6 and shall be equipped with a convenience outlet. On exterior installations, these devices shall be weatherproof.

5.1.3.2 Pit and Work Space Water Removal. In addition to the requirements of 2.2, the means provided for the removal of water on exterior installations shall be ample for weather-caused water collection.

5.1.4 Counterweight Pit Guards

Requirement 2.3.2.1 does not apply.

5.1.5 Clearances for Cars and Counterweights

5.1.5.1 Bottom Car Clearances. Inclined elevators shall conform to 2.4.1 or be provided with one of the following refuge spaces:

(a) a minimum of 610 mm × 610 mm × 2 134 mm (24 in. × 24 in. × 84 in.) high

(b) a minimum of 610 mm × 1 220 mm × 1 220 mm (24 in. × 48 in. × 48 in.)

The refuge space shall be clear of the car and counterweight resting on their fully compressed buffers. This space shall be located to either side of, or toward the downhill end of, the pit in the direction of travel.

5.1.5.2 Top Car Clearance for Uncounterweighted Inclined Elevators. The top car clearance for inclined elevators of less than 20 deg inclination from the horizontal shall include the gravity stopping distance based on 115% of rated speed plus the top car clearance required by 2.4.7.

5.1.6 Protection of Spaces in Line With the Direction of Travel

Requirement 2.6 applies, except that where it states "below the hoistway," it shall mean "beyond the bottom terminal in the direction of travel."

(a) Where 2.6.1 states "underneath," it shall refer to the location stated in 5.1.6.

(b) Where 2.6.2 states "underneath," it shall refer to the location stated in 5.1.6.

5.1.7 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

5.1.7.1 Protection of Traveling Cables. Traveling cables shall be suitably protected against abrasion and fouling. This protection shall be permitted to be provided in conjunction with that protection required by 5.1.16.1.

5.1.7.2 Weatherproofing. Components subject to corrosion on installations exposed to the weather shall be weatherproofed with either exterior coatings, anodizing, plating, galvanizing, or noncorrosive metals or other accepted forms of protection.

5.1.8 Protection of Hoistway Openings

5.1.8.1 Hoistway Door Vision Panels. Where the hoistway enclosure is not required to be fire-resistive construction (see 5.1.2.2), hoistway door vision panels are not required to conform to 2.11.7. The hoistway entrances of such elevators shall be permitted to be provided with vision panels of larger size, including complete door panels, made of any materials conforming to 5.1.2.2.4 and ANSI Z97.1 or 16 CFR Part 1201 or CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, and CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable. (07)

5.1.8.2 Landing Sill Guards. When a car leveling device is provided, the landing sills shall be guarded in conformance with 2.11.10.1. The guards shall also extend 75 mm (3 in.) beyond the horizontal leveling zone.

5.1.9 Restricted Opening of Hoistway or Car Doors

Inclined elevators shall conform to 2.12.5, except that the unlocking zone shall not exceed 152 mm (6 in.) beyond the landing measured in the direction of travel.

5.1.10 Access to Hoistways for Inspection, Maintenance, and Repairs

5.1.10.1 Hoistway Access Switches. Elevators installed conforming to 5.1.2.2 are not required to conform to 2.12.7, provided that

(a) the means of access provides equivalent safety to that provided by 2.12.7

(b) if the means of access includes entrance through the hoistway guarding, it is locked under Group 1 Security (see 8.1) and is equipped with a contact meeting the requirements of 2.26.2.26

5.1.10.2 Workspace Access. Where a workspace is required by 5.1.3.1, access to the workplace shall comply with 2.12.7 or 5.1.10.1, except where a separate workspace access door is provided.

5.1.10.3 Special Operating Requirements

5.1.10.3.1 The speed under 2.12.7.3.2 shall be not greater than 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min).

5.1.10.3.2 The movement of the car under 2.12.7.3.6 shall be limited to the point where the platform guard is even with the uphill edge of the open hoistway door.

5.1.10.3.3 The movement of the car under 2.12.7.3.7 shall be limited to the point where the uppermost chassis member is even with the downhill edge of the open hoistway door.

5.1.11 Car Enclosures

5.1.11.1 Car Emergency Exits

5.1.11.1.1 Top Emergency Exits. Requirement 2.14.1.5 applies only where installations are at an angle greater than 49 deg and where an unhill end emergency exit is not provided.

5.1.11.1.2 Uphill End Emergency Exit. If the installation arrangement is such that the car door cannot be used for an emergency exit when the car is located between landings, the car shall be provided with an emergency exit located in the uphill end of the car. The emergency exit door shall

(*a*) be of the hinged type

(*b*) open only into the car

(*c*) extend from the floor or base moulding to a clear height of not less than 1 524 mm (60 in.) and shall provide a clear width of not less than 356 mm (14 in.) when the door is open

(*d*) be provided with a locking means with a nonremovable handle that can be opened only from the exterior of the car. The device shall be permitted to be openable from the interior of the car by use of a special key, which shall be of Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

(*e*) be provided with an electric contact, which shall not permit the car to start or run, except under inspection conditions as provided for in 5.1.10.1 and 5.1.10.3. The contact shall conform to the following:

(*1*) it shall not be accessible from the inside of the car

(*2*) it shall be positively opened by a lever or other device attached to and operated by the door

(*3*) the contacts shall be maintained in the open position by the action of gravity or by a restrained compression spring, or both, or by positive mechanical means

(*f*) be of the same material and construction as required for the car enclosure.

5.1.11.1.3 Emergency Exit Unloading Platforms. An emergency exit unloading platform is not required. If provided, an emergency exit unloading platform shall be attached to the car and shall be retractable and operable only from the exterior of the car. It shall be located only on the uphill end of the car and shall be provided with an electric contact conforming to 5.1.11.1.2(e) and shall only be made in the retracted position of the platform.

5.1.11.2 Car Enclosure Tops. Requirement 2.14.1.6 does not apply. However, if equipment is placed or installed on inclined elevators that will require servicing from the top of the car or a car top emergency exit is provided, the car top shall conform to 2.14.1.6 and 2.14.1.7.

5.1.11.3 Glass and Plastic for Cars and Doors. Glass and safety plastic used in car or for doors shall be laminated glass or safety plastic conforming to the requirements of ANSI Z97.1 or 16 CFR Part 1201.1 or 1202.2; or, be laminated glass or safety glass or safety plastic conforming to the requirements of CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, and CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable.

5.1.11.4 Collapsible Gates. Requirement 2.14.6.3 shall not apply. Collapsible-type gates are not permitted.

5.1.12 Car Frames and Platforms

5.1.12.1 Materials for Car Frames and Platform Frames. Car frames and platform frames shall conform to 2.15.6.1, except that cast iron shall not be used for guiding supports or guide shoes.

5.1.12.2 Platform Guards (Aprons). The entrance side of the platform shall be provided with smooth metal guard plates of not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) thick steel, or material of equivalent strength and stiffness, reinforced and braced to the car platform and conforming to 5.1.12.2.1 through 5.1.12.2.5.

5.1.12.2.1 It shall extend not less than the full width of the widest hoistway door opening plus the leveling zone in each direction.

5.1.12.2.2 It shall have a straight vertical face in the direction of travel throughout the length described in 5.1.12.2.1 plus 75 mm (3 in.).

5.1.12.2.3 The ends of the guard in each direction of travel shall be bent back at an angle of not less than 60 deg nor more than 75 deg from the face provided for in 5.1.12.2.2.

5.1.12.2.4 The straight vertical facing wall shall extend a minimum of 25 mm (1 in.) below the landing sills at any position above or below the landing to the extent of the leveling zones.

5.1.12.2.5 The guard plate shall be able to withstand a constant force of not less than 667 N (150 lbf) applied at right angles to and at any position on its face without deflecting more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) and without permanent deformation.

5.1.12.2.6 Platform Stringers. Platform stringers made of wood are not permitted.

5.1.13 Capacity and Loading

5.1.13.1 Benches or Seats. The inside net platform area (see Table 2.16.1) shall be permitted to be increased by an amount not greater than 50% of the area of the bench or seat, when a permanently located and nonfolding bench or seat is installed.

5.1.13.2 Data Plates. Data plates shall be located on the uphill member of the car chassis (frame).

5.1.14 Car and Counterweight Safeties

5.1.14.1 Requirements for Safeties. Car and counterweight safeties shall meet the requirements of 2.17, except as modified by 5.1.14.2, 5.1.14.3, 5.1.15, and 5.1.18.4.

Table 5.1.14.2 Minimum and Maximum Stopping Distances at Given Angles From Horizontal

SI Units

Rated Speed, m/s	Governor Trip, m/s	30 Min.	30 Max.	45 Min.	45 Max.	60 Min.	60 Max.	70 Min.	70 Max.
		Minimum and Maximum Stopping Distance, mm, at Angle From Horizontal, deg							
0–0.63	0.90	139	453	114	417	81	369	55	333
0.75	1.05	201	541	164	489	116	420	79	367
0.87	1.25	285	661	232	586	164	489	113	415
1.00	1.40	357	765	292	671	206	549	141	456
1.12	1.55	432	872	353	758	249	611	171	498
1.25	1.70	517	993	422	858	299	681	204	546
1.50	2.00	711	1 270	580	1 084	410	840	281	655
1.75	2.30	930	1 584	760	1 340	537	1 022	368	780
2.00	2.55	1 185	1 948	967	1 637	684	1 232	468	923
2.25	2.90	1 469	2 355	1 200	1 970	848	1 467	580	1 084
2.50	3.15	1 779	2 798	1 453	2 331	1 027	1 723	700	1 259
3.00	3.70	2 494	3 820	2 036	3 166	1 440	2 313	985	1 663
3.50	4.30	3 329	5 015	2 718	4 141	1 922	3 003	1 315	2 134
4.00	4.85	4 285	6 382	3 499	5 257	2 474	3 792	1 692	2 674

Imperial Units

Rated Speed, ft/min	Governor Trip, ft/min	30 Min.	30 Max.	45 Min.	45 Max.	60 Min.	60 Max.	70 Min.	70 Max.
		Minimum and Maximum Stopping Distance, in., at Angle From Horizontal, deg							
0–125	175	5.5	18.0	4.5	16.5	3.5	14.5	2.5	13.0
150	210	8.0	21.5	6.5	19.5	5.0	17.0	3.5	14.5
175	250	11.5	26.0	9.5	23.0	6.5	19.5	4.5	16.5
200	280	14.5	30.0	11.5	26.5	8.5	22.0	6.0	18.0
225	308	17.5	34.5	14.0	30.0	10.0	24.0	7.0	20.0
250	337	20.5	39.0	17.0	34.0	12.0	27.0	8.5	21.5
300	395	28.0	50.0	23.0	43.0	16.5	33.0	11.5	26.0
350	452	37.0	62.5	30.0	53.0	21.5	40.5	14.5	31.0
400	510	47.0	77.0	38.5	64.5	27.0	48.5	18.5	36.5
450	568	58.0	93.0	47.5	77.5	33.5	58.0	23.0	43.0
500	625	70.5	110.5	57.5	92.0	40.5	68.0	28.0	50.0
600	740	98.5	150.5	80.5	125.0	57.0	91.0	39.0	65.5
700	855	131.5	197.5	107.5	163.0	76.0	118.5	52.0	84.5
800	970	169.0	251.5	138.0	207.0	97.5	149.5	67.0	105.5

5.1.14.2 Functions and Stopping Distance of Safeties. The safety device, or the combined safety devices where furnished, shall be capable of stopping and sustaining the entire car with its rated load from governor tripping speed (see also 2.16.8) with an average horizontal retardation, measured over the total retardation time, not exceeding 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2).

Type B safeties shall stop the car with its rated load from governor tripping speed within range of the minimum and maximum stopping distances as determined by the formulas in 8.2.11. Table 5.1.14.2 shows the minimum and maximum stopping distances for various governor tripping speeds, when tested in conformance with 8.10 and 8.11.

5.1.14.3 Limits of Use of Various Types of Safeties

5.1.14.3.1 Type A (Instantaneous) Safeties

(a) Type A safeties shall not be used on inclined elevators having a rated speed in excess of 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min) or with a governor tripping speed in excess of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

(b) Type A safeties that develop horizontal retardations exceeding 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2) shall not be used on inclined elevators.

5.1.14.3.2 Type C Safeties. Type C safeties shall conform to 2.17.8.2, except as modified by the following:

Table 5.1.17.2 Spring Buffer Stroke

Rated Car Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
0.38 or less (75 or less)	63 (2.5)
0.38–0.63 (75–125)	125 (5.0)

(a) Type C safeties that develop horizontal retardations exceeding 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2) shall not be used on inclined elevators.

(b) The oil buffers shall conform to all requirements specified in 2.22 for oil buffers, except that the stroke shall be based on governor tripping speed and on an average horizontal retardation not exceeding 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2).

5.1.15 Speed Governor Drive

5.1.15.1 Rope-Driven Governors. Rope-driven governors are not required.

5.1.15.2 Other Driving Means of Governors. The means used to drive the speed governor shall be positive and fail-safe.

5.1.15.3 Counterweight-Mounted Governor. Where a counterweight operates on guide rails, which are located below the car guide rails and the governor, if required, is located on the counterweight, the overspeed switch shall be permitted to be omitted.

5.1.16 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

5.1.16.1 Protection of Ropes. Suspension, governor, and compensation ropes shall be protected against abrasion.

5.1.17 Car and Counterweight Buffers

5.1.17.1 Type and Location. The maximum rated speed of inclined elevators for the use of spring-type buffers shall be 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min).

5.1.17.2 Spring Buffer Stroke. The stroke of a spring buffer shall be not less than as specified in Table 5.1.17.2.

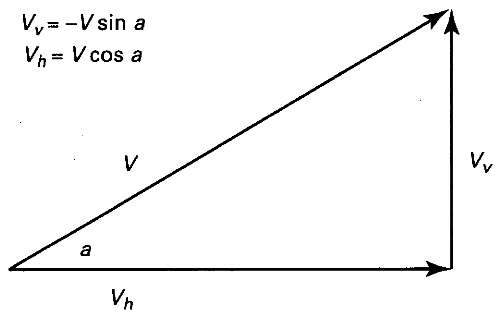
5.1.17.3 Vertical and Horizontal Components of Velocity. The speed shall be considered as having vertical and horizontal components defined as in Fig. 5.1.17.3.

5.1.17.4 Oil Buffers. Oil buffers shall conform to 2.22.4, except as modified by 5.1.17.4.1 through 5.1.17.4.5.

5.1.17.4.1 The average horizontal retardation at buffer engagement, with rated load in the car, measured over the stopping distance, shall not exceed 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2).

5.1.17.4.2 In 2.22.4.1.1, 2.22.4.1.2, and 2.22.4.2, the phrase "an average retardation of not more than 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2)" is replaced with the phrase "an average horizontal retardation not in excess of 2.46 m/s^2 (8.05 ft/s^2)."

Fig. 5.1.17.3 Vertical and Horizontal Components of Velocity



a = angle of travel above horizontal
V = linear velocity of elevator in direction of travel
V_h = horizontal component of velocity
V_v = vertical component of velocity

5.1.17.4.3 In 2.22.4.2, the phrase "peak retardation greater than 24.54 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2)" is replaced with the phrase "peak horizontal retardation greater than 6.13 m/s^2 (20.1 ft/s^2)."

5.1.17.4.4 Table 2.22.4.1 is replaced with Table 5.1.17.4.4, which indicates the minimum buffer strokes for the most usual rated speeds and selected angles of inclination.

5.1.17.4.5 The minimum buffer strokes for speeds differing from the values in Table 5.1.17.4.4 shall be based on the formula in 8.2.10.

5.1.18 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

5.1.18.1 Guide-Rail Section. The guide-rail sections, in conjunction with the guiding members, shall be so designed as to retain the car and counterweights on the rails in case of upthrust or side thrust force, such as caused by foreign objects in or on the guide rail, or from the effects of wind, frost, or snow.

5.1.18.2 Maximum Load on Rails. On inclined elevators where a single system of guide rails or brackets is employed, the sum of the car and counterweight forces shall be used to determine the maximum acceptable rated load. The guide rails, guide-rail brackets, and their supports shall be capable of resisting the bending loads of a fully loaded car and its counterweight with a total deflection not in excess of 3 mm (0.125 in.).

5.1.18.3 Guide-Rail Surfaces. Guide rails shall conform to 2.23.6, except that guide rails for inclined elevators with Type A and Type C safeties shall not be

Table 5.1.17.4.4 Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes at Given Angle From Horizontal

SI Units						Imperial Units					
Rated Speed, m/s	Minimum Stroke, mm, at Angle From Horizontal, deg					Rated Speed, ft/min	Minimum Stroke, in., at Angle From Horizontal, deg				
	15	30	45	60	70		15	30	45	60	70
1.00	269	241	197	139	95	200	10.58	9.49	7.74	5.48	3.75
1.12	340	305	249	176	120	225	13.39	12.00	9.80	6.93	4.74
1.25	420	376	307	217	149	250	16.53	14.82	12.10	8.56	5.85
1.50	605	542	443	313	214	300	23.80	21.34	17.43	12.32	8.43
1.75	823	738	602	426	291	350	32.40	29.05	23.72	16.77	11.47
2.00	1 075	964	787	556	380	400	42.32	37.94	30.98	21.90	14.98
2.25	1 360	1 220	996	704	482	450	53.56	48.02	39.21	27.72	18.96
2.50	1 679	1 506	1 229	869	595	500	66.12	59.28	48.40	34.23	23.41
3.00	2 418	2 168	1 770	1 252	856	600	95.21	85.37	69.70	49.29	33.71
3.50	3 292	2 951	2 410	1 704	1 166	700	129.60	116.19	94.87	67.08	45.89
4.00	4 299	3 855	3 147	2 226	1 522	800	169.27	151.76	123.91	87.62	59.93

required to have finished guiding surfaces.

5.1.18.4 Safety Guide Rail. A single guide rail shall be permitted to be provided for application of the safety and for lateral guiding. It shall be located between the main guide rails.

5.1.19 Driving Machines

Driving machines shall conform to 2.24, except as modified by 5.1.19.1.

5.1.19.1 Winding Drum Machines. Winding drum machines without counterweights shall be permitted to be used for inclined elevators when the net rated load (sine of the angle of inclination times the gross load) does not exceed 454 kg (1,000 lb) and the distance of travel does not exceed 38 m (125 ft), and the rated speed does not exceed 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min).

5.1.20 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.1.20.1 Inspection Operation. Requirements 2.26.1.1 through 2.26.1.4 apply, except as referenced and modified in 5.1.20. Where car top is stated there, it shall also mean the uphill end emergency exit exterior inspection device location. Where an inspection operating device is located at the uphill exit, it is permitted to omit one on the car top.

5.1.20.2 Operating Requirements

(a) *Requirement 2.26.1.3.* The speed shall be limited to not exceed 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min).

(b) *Requirement 2.26.1.4.1(d)(1).* The speed shall be limited to not exceed 0.64 m/s (125 ft/min).

5.1.20.3 Top-of-Car Stop Switch. The top-of-car stop switch is not required except where access is provided to the top of car.

5.1.20.4 Machine Room Inspection. Machine room inspection shall not be provided.

5.1.20.5 Slack Rope Device. Slack rope devices shall be provided on traction driving machines of elevators having an inclination of less than 35 deg from horizontal. The devices shall be located on both the car and counterweight sides of the driving machine and conform to 2.26.2.1.

5.1.20.6 Horizontal Retardations at Emergency Electrical Stopping. Horizontal retardations induced on the car due to the emergency stopping of an inclined elevator, caused by the removal of electrical power, shall meet the requirements of 5.1.20.6.1 and 5.1.20.6.2.

5.1.20.6.1 The average horizontal retardation, measured over the total retardation time, shall not exceed 0.98 m/s^2 (3.22 ft/s^2).

5.1.20.6.2 No peak horizontal retardation value exceeding 0.98 m/s^2 (3.22 ft/s^2) shall have a time duration exceeding 0.125 s.

5.1.21 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices

5.1.21.1 Emergency Signal and/or Communications. Each elevator shall be equipped with an alarm button or switch in the car operating station and an alarm device mounted in a location that shall be readily available to a person who is normally situated in the vicinity when the elevator is in use; or a means of voice communication to a receiving station always attended when the installation is in use. If the alarm device or means of voice communication is normally activated by utility power supply, it shall be backed up by a manual or battery operated device.

5.1.22 End-Loading Inclined Elevators

5.1.22.1 Additional Requirements. Inclined elevators that load and unload passengers through car doors located at the uphill and downhill ends of the car shall conform to the following additional requirements of 5.1.22.

5.1.22.2 Speed. The rated speed shall not exceed 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min).

5.1.22.3 Buffers. The buffers shall be oil type only, installed at both terminals, conforming to 5.1.17.4.

Requirement 2.22.4.8 does not apply to end-loading inclined elevators. The buffer shall be compressed to within the overtravel distance when the car is level with the terminal landing. Each buffer shall be provided with a switch that shall prevent operation of the elevator by means of the normal operating device in the direction of travel towards that buffer unless it has returned to at least 90% of its stroke.

5.1.22.4 Final Terminal Stopping Devices. The final terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.3.1 and 2.25.3.2, except for 2.25.3.2(a) and shall be located to operate within the reduced runby of end-loading inclined elevators.

5.1.22.5 Retractable Sills. End-loading inclined elevators shall be permitted to be equipped with retractable sill conforming to the following:

(a) They shall be designed so as to function without creating any pinching or shearing hazards.

(b) They shall be equipped with return switches conforming to 2.25.2.1.1 and 2.25.2.1.3, which shall prevent the operation of the car in the direction of travel toward that terminal unless the retractable sill returns to its normal position.

5.1.22.6 Locking Car Doors. Car door locking devices on end-loading inclined elevators shall conform to 2.14.4.2.

5.1.23 Special Requirements for Inclined Elevator Layout Drawings

The forces and loads covered by 2.28.1(b), (c), and (f) shall be calculated based on the angle of inclination from the horizontal.

SECTION 5.2 LIMITED-USE/LIMITED-APPLICATION ELEVATORS

This Section applies to limited-use/limited-application elevators (see 1.3).

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *limited-use/limited-application elevators.*

5.2.1 Electric Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators

5.2.1.1 Construction of Hoistway and Hoistway Enclosures. The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1, except as modified by 5.2.1.1.1 and 5.2.1.1.2.

5.2.1.1.1 Requirement 2.1.1.4 does not apply. Elevators shall be installed in a single hoistway.

5.2.1.1.2 Requirement 2.1.3 applies only when a floor is provided at the top of hoistway. (07)

(a) Requirement 2.1.3.1.1. If a floor is provided, it shall be permitted to be of wood.

(b) Requirement 2.1.3.2 does not apply. The floor shall be designed in accordance with other floors in the building. Where the machine is to be supported by the machine room floor, the floor shall be designed in accordance with 2.9.4 and 2.9.5.

(c) Requirement 2.1.3.3. The floor shall be permitted to be of wood.

5.2.1.2 Pits. Pits shall conform to 2.2.

5.2.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights. The location and guarding of counterweights shall conform to 2.3, except as follows: Where counterweight guards conforming to 2.3.2 are not provided, lightweight chains, approximately 600 mm (24 in.) in length shall be attached to the bottom of the counterweight. These chains shall be spaced at 150 mm (6 in.) intervals to provide a warning to a person in the path of the descending counterweight.

5.2.1.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights. Bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 2.4, except as specified in 5.2.1.4.1 through 5.2.1.4.4.

5.2.1.4.1 Bottom Car Clearance. Elevators shall conform to 2.4.1 or 5.2.1.4.2.

5.2.1.4.2 Alternative to Bottom Car Clearance Requirements. When the car rests on its solid bumper or fully compressed buffer, no part of the car or any equipment attached thereto shall strike the pit or any part of the equipment located therein. (07)

5.2.1.4.2.1 Where a machinery space or control space is not located in the pit, a nonremovable means shall be provided to mechanically hold the car above the pit floor to provide an area in the pit for maintenance and inspection, conforming to the following:

(a) It shall hold the car at a height of not less than 900 mm (35 in.) nor more than 2 000 mm (79 in.) above the pit floor and not less than 300 mm (12 in.) above the bottom landing sill, as measured from the underside of the car platform.

(b) The means shall be so designed and constructed as to stop and hold the car at governor tripping speed with rated load in the car.

(c) It shall not cause the stresses and deflections in car frame and platform members and their connections to exceed the limits specified in 2.15.10 and 2.15.11.

(d) If the means does not automatically activate when the lowest hoistway door is opened with the car not at the landing

(1) it shall be capable of being operated without complete bodily entry into the pit.

(2) a sign conforming to ANSI Z35.1, or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), shall be conspicuously displayed inside the hoistway, which shall include a warning that there is an insufficient bottom car clearance and instructions for operating the device. The letters shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) in height.

5.2.1.4.2.2 Where a machinery space or control space is located in the pit, 2.7.5.2 applies.

5.2.1.4.3 Top Car Clearance Requirements. Top car clearance shall conform to 2.4 or 5.2.1.4.4.

5.2.1.4.4 Alternative to Top Car Clearance Requirements. In existing buildings where the top car clearance conforming to 5.2.1.4.3 cannot be provided, the following shall apply:

(a) When the car has reached its maximum upper movement, no part of the car or any equipment attached thereto, other than as permitted by 5.2.1.4.4(b), shall strike the overhead structure or any part of the equipment located in the hoistway.

(b) Nonremovable means shall be provided to mechanically and electrically prevent upward movement of the car to provide an area above the car for maintenance and inspection, conforming to the following:

(1) The means shall prevent upward movement of the car to provide a refuge space conforming to 2.4.12.

(2) The means shall be so designed and constructed as to stop upward movement of the car at governor-tripping speed with and without rated load in the car.

(3) The means shall not cause the stresses and deflections in car frame and platform members and their connections to exceed the limits specified in 2.15.10 and 2.15.11.

(4) A sign conforming to ANSI Z35.1, or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), shall be conspicuously displayed inside the hoistway which shall include a warning that there is an insufficient top car clearance and instructions for operating the means. The letters shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) in height.

(5) The means shall be capable of being operated without complete bodily entry into the hoistway.

(6) The force to actuate the means shall not require more than 90 N (20 lbf).

(7) The top-of-car operating device shall not allow car movement until the means is actuated.

5.2.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5.

5.2.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways. The protection of spaces below hoistways shall conform to 2.6.

5.2.1.7 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. (07) Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall conform to 2.7, except as modified by 5.2.1.7.1. Equipment shall be permitted to be located in rooms containing other equipment essential to the operation of the building.

NOTE: See 5.2.1.1.2 for floors of machine room and machinery spaces over or at the top of hoistway.

5.2.1.7.1 Requirement 2.7.4.1 does not apply. The minimum headroom shall be 2 000 mm (79 in.).

5.2.1.8 Equipment in Hoistways, Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. (07) Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways, machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall comply with 2.8.

5.2.1.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to 2.9.

5.2.1.10 Guarding. The guarding of exposed auxiliary equipment shall conform to 2.10.

5.2.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings. The protection of hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11, except as modified by the following:

(a) *Requirement 2.11.2.* Entrances shall be of the horizontal slide or single section swing type.

(b) Requirement 2.11.10.3 does not apply.

(c) Requirement 2.11.12 does not apply.

(d) Requirement 2.11.13.5 does not apply.

(e) Requirement 2.11.15.3 does not apply.

5.2.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches. (07) Hoistway door locking devices, hoistway door and car door electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to 2.12, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirement 2.12.1.5 does not apply. Combination mechanical locks and electric contacts are not permitted.

(b) *Requirement 2.12.2.3(a).* Truck zoning devices are not permitted.

(c) Requirement 2.12.3 does not apply.

(d) *Requirement 2.12.7.3.2.* The car cannot be operated at a speed greater than 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min).

(e) *Requirement 2.12.5.* The dimension for the unlocking zone shall be not more than the straight vertical face of the platform guard minus 75 mm (3 in.).

(07) **5.2.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors.** When provided, power operation, power opening, and power closing of hoistway doors and car doors shall conform to 2.13, except as modified by 5.2.1.13.

(a) Requirement 2.13.1 does not apply. Both car and hoistway doors shall be of the horizontally sliding type or a power-operated swinging hoistway door with a power-operated horizontally sliding car door shall be permitted. Power operation of accordion or bifold type car doors shall be permitted.

(b) Vertically sliding doors shall not be permitted.

5.2.1.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors, and Car Illumination. Car enclosures, car doors, and car illumination shall conform to 2.14, except as modified by the following:

(a) *Requirement 2.14.1.4.* Cars shall not have more than one compartment.

(b) Requirement 2.14.1.5 applies only where manual operation (see 5.2.1.28) is not provided. If a top emergency exit is provided, it shall conform to 2.14.1.5.

(c) Requirement 2.14.1.9.1(c) does not apply. Equipment mounted to the car for freight handling shall not be permitted.

(d) Requirement 2.14.3 does not apply.

(e) Requirement 2.14.4.1 does not apply. An unperforated door shall be provided at each entrance to the car.

(f) Requirement 2.14.4.3 does not apply. Doors shall be of the horizontally sliding, accordion, or bifold type and so arranged to reduce the possibility of pinching. Material shall conform to 2.14.2.1.

(g) Requirement 2.14.4.4 does not apply.

(h) Requirement 2.14.4.7 does not apply.

(i) Requirement 2.14.4.9 does not apply.

(j) Requirement 2.14.4.11(b) does not apply.

(k) Requirement 2.14.5.1 does not apply. There shall not be more than two entrances to the car.

(l) Requirements 2.14.5.2 and 2.14.5.3 do not apply.

(m) Requirement 2.14.6 does not apply.

5.2.1.15 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to 2.15, except as modified by 5.2.1.15.1 and 5.2.1.15.2.

5.2.1.15.1 Underslung or Sub-Post Frames. Requirement 2.15.4 applies, except the term "guiding surfaces" shall be substituted for the term "guide rails."

5.2.1.15.2 Platform Guards. Requirement 2.15.9.2 does not apply. The platform guard shall have a straight vertical face, extending below the floor surface of the platform of not less than the depth of the unlocking zone plus 75 mm (3 in.).

5.2.1.16 Capacity, Loading, Speed, and Rise

5.2.1.16.1 Rated Load and Platform Area. The minimum rated load shall conform to 2.16.1, except as follows:

(a) The maximum rated load shall not exceed 635 kg (1,400 lb).

(b) The inside net platform area shall not exceed 1.67 m^2 (18 ft^2).

(c) Requirements 2.16.1.2 and 2.16.1.3 do not apply.

5.2.1.16.2 Capacity and Data Plates

(a) Capacity plates shall indicate the rated load of the elevator in kilograms (kg), pounds (lb), or both.

(b) Data plates shall conform to 2.16.3.2.2.

(c) The material and marking of plates shall conform to 2.16.3.3.

5.2.1.16.3 Additional Requirements for Passenger Overload. Elevators shall conform to 2.16.8.

5.2.1.16.4 Maximum Rated Speed. The rated speed shall not be more than 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min).

5.2.1.16.5 Maximum Rise. The maximum rise shall not be more than 7.6 m (25 ft).

5.2.1.17 Car and Counterweight. Car and counterweight safeties shall conform to 2.17, except as modified by 5.2.1.17.1.

5.2.1.17.1 Application of Safeties. The force providing the stopping action shall conform to 2.17.9.4 or the following: Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the application of safety stopping forces shall not cause deformation of the guide-rail section upon whose dimensional stability the stopping capability is dependent.

5.2.1.18 Speed Governors. Speed governors shall conform to 2.18, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirement 2.18.2.1(b) does not apply. The tripping speed shall not exceed 0.38 m/s (75 ft/min). On the breakage of the suspension means, the safety shall operate without delay and independently of the governor's speed action.

(b) Requirement 2.18.4 does not apply.

(c) *Requirement 2.18.5.* Governor ropes shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter.

5.2.1.19 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall conform to 2.19.

5.2.1.20 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections. Suspension ropes and their connections shall conform to 2.20, except for 2.20.1 and 2.20.3. Suspension ropes and their connections shall also conform to 5.2.1.20.1 and 5.2.1.20.2.

5.2.1.20.1 Suspension Means. Cars shall be suspended by ropes attached to the car frame or passing around sheaves attached to the car frame specified in 2.15.1. Ropes that have previously been installed and used on another installation shall not be reused. Only rope having the following classifications shall be used for the suspension of limited-use/limited-application elevator cars and for the suspension of counterweights:

(a) Iron (low-carbon steel) or steel wire rope, having the commercial classification "Elevator Wire Rope," or wire rope specifically constructed for elevator use. The wire material for these wire ropes shall be manufactured by the open-hearth or electric furnace process or their equivalent.

(b) Aircraft cable rope of 7 × 19 construction, classified as Mil Spec 83420, shall be permitted in those applications where aircraft cable rope is not subjected to crushing pressures, with the following exceptions permitted:

(1) nonjacketed, carbon steel, tin- or zinc-coated (Type 1A) 7 × 19 construction (Section 3.2.4 of Mil Spec 83420)

(2) identifying color tracer filaments are not required (Section 3.5.2 of Mil Spec 83420)

5.2.1.20.2 Factor of Safety. The factor of safety shall be specified in accordance with the following:

(a) "Elevator Wire Rope" [see 5.2.1.20.1(a)] shall comply with 2.20.3.

(b) "Aircraft Cable Rope" [see 5.2.1.20.1(b)] shall have a factor of safety of not less than 7.5.

5.2.1.21 Counterweights. Counterweights shall conform to 2.21, except as modified by 5.2.1.21.1.

5.2.1.21.1 Independent Car Counterweights. Requirement 2.21.1.4 applies, except that the counterweight shall be permitted to utilize the same guide rails as the car.

5.2.1.22 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to 2.22, except as modified by 5.2.1.22.1.

5.2.1.22.1 Bumpers. Elastomeric bumpers capable of absorbing the energy of a fully loaded car shall be permitted to be used. The average deceleration shall be less than 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2) with any load between 61 kg (135 lb) and rated load.

5.2.1.23 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings. Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and fastenings shall conform to 2.23, except as modified by 5.2.1.23.1 and 5.2.1.23.2.

5.2.1.23.1 Use of Common Guide Rails. The same set of guide rails shall be permitted to be used for both the car and counterweight.

5.2.1.23.2 Guide-Rail Sections. Requirements 2.23.3(a) and 2.23.3(b)(1) do not apply. Guide rails, supports, joints, fishplates, and fastenings that do not conform to 2.23 are permitted, provided that the strengths and stresses are consistent with 2.23 for the loads imposed.

Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used

(a) requirement 2.23.10.2 does not apply.

(b) the rail joints shall be designed in accordance with 2.23.5.1 and shall adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment.

(c) the deflections shall comply with 2.23. The allowable deflection of the guide rail shall be limited to prevent the safety device from disengaging the rail during the application of the load.

5.2.1.24 Driving Machine and Sheaves. Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to 2.24, except for 2.24.1, 2.24.2.1, and 2.24.2.2. Driving machines and sheaves shall also conform to 5.2.1.24.1 through 5.2.1.24.3.

5.2.1.24.1 Type of Driving Machines. All driving machines shall be of the traction type, except that winding drum machines that do not have multiple cable layers on the drum shall be permitted for elevators, subject to the following: They shall not be provided with counterweights.

5.2.1.24.2 Material and Grooving. Sheave material and grooving shall be subject to the following:

(a) Sheaves and drums used with "Elevator Wire Rope" [see 5.2.1.20.1(a)] shall be of metal and provided with finished grooves for ropes or shall be permitted to be lined with nonmetallic groove material.

(b) Sheaves and drums used with "Aircraft Cable Rope" [see 5.2.1.20.1(b)] shall be of metal and provided with finished "U" grooves that do not subject the aircraft cable rope to crushing pressure.

5.2.1.24.3 Minimum Pitch Diameter. Sheaves and drums used with suspension and compensating ropes shall have a pitch diameter of not less than the following:

(a) For all "Elevator Wire Rope," the diameter shall not be less than 30 times the diameter of the rope, where used with suspension ropes.

(b) For all "Elevator Wire Rope," the diameter shall not be less than 30 times the diameter of the rope, where used with compensating ropes.

(c) For "7 × 19 Aircraft Cable Rope," the diameter shall not be less than 21 times the diameter of the rope, where used with either suspension ropes or compensating ropes.

5.2.1.25 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25, except as follows:

(a) Requirement 2.25.4 does not apply.

(b) If the driving machine is of the winding drum type, a lower final terminal stopping device shall be used in addition to the slack-rope switch, and two independent upper final terminal stopping devices shall be provided. A separate device shall be used to operate the lower final terminal and one upper final terminal

stopping device. All final terminal stopping and slack-rope devices shall operate independently of one another. The power feed lines to the driving machine and brake shall be opened by one or both of the upper final terminal stopping devices and either the slack-rope switch or the lower terminal stopping device, or both.

5.2.1.26 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply.
(b) Requirement 2.26.2.5 does not apply.
(c) Requirement 2.26.2.10 does not apply.
(d) Requirement 2.26.2.12 does not apply.
(e) Requirement 2.26.2.16 does not apply.

(07) **5.2.1.27 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices.** Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to 2.27, except 2.27.3 through 2.27.8 do not apply. However, if firefighters' emergency operation is provided, it shall conform to 2.27.

5.2.1.28 Manual Operation. Elevators shall be permitted to be arranged for manual operation in case of power failure. The manual operating device shall conform to the following:

(a) It shall not be accessible from inside the car.
(b) It shall not release the brake.
(c) Upon removal of the device, the car shall not move.
(d) It shall be actuated by mechanical means only.
(e) Instructions shall be posted at or near the manual operating device.

5.2.1.29 Layout Data. The information provided on layout data shall conform to 2.28.

5.2.1.30 Welding. Welding shall conform to 8.8.

5.2.1.31 Identification. Identification shall conform to 2.29.

(07) 5.2.2 Hydraulic Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators

Hydraulic limited-use/limited-application elevators shall conform to 5.2.1, except as modified by 5.2.2.1 through 5.2.2.15.

5.2.2.1 Bottom and Top Clearances and Runbys. Bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 3.4, except as follows:

(a) Bottom car clearances shall conform to 3.4.1 or 5.2.1.4.2.
(b) Requirement 3.4.2.1 does not apply. The bottom car runby shall not be less than 50 mm (2 in.).
(c) The top car clearances shall conform to 3.4.4 or 5.2.1.4.4.

5.2.2.2 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms. Machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms shall comply with 3.7, except as modified by 5.2.1.7.

5.2.2.3 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to 3.15, except as modified by 5.2.1.15.2.

5.2.2.4 Capacity and Loading. The capacity and loading shall conform to 3.16, except as modified by 5.2.1.16.1 and 5.2.1.16.2. Requirement 5.2.1.16.3 does not apply.

5.2.2.5 Alternative to Speed Governor for Roped-Hydraulic Elevators. Car and counterweight safeties and plunger gripper shall conform to 3.17, except as modified by 5.2.2.5.1 and 5.2.2.5.2.

NOTE: See also 5.2.1.18.

5.2.2.5.1 The safeties on roped-hydraulic elevators shall be operated by a speed governor or shall be permitted to be operated by inertia where an overspeed valve conforming to 3.19.4.7 is provided.

5.2.2.5.2 Upon the parting of the suspension ropes, the safeties shall apply without appreciable delay and their application shall be independent of the location of the break in the ropes and shall be permitted to be accomplished by the use of restrained compression springs or by the action of gravity, or by both, or by positive mechanical means.

5.2.2.6 Hydraulic Jacks and Sheaves. Hydraulic jacks and sheaves shall conform to 3.18. The reference in 3.18.1.2.1 and 3.18.1.2.2 to 2.20 shall be modified by 5.2.1.20. The reference in 3.18.1.2.5 to 2.24.2 shall be modified by 5.2.1.24.2 and 5.2.1.24.3.

5.2.2.7 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to 3.19. Requirement 5.2.1.28 does not apply.

5.2.2.8 Counterweights. Counterweights shall conform to 3.21.

5.2.2.9 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to 3.22, except as modified by 5.2.1.22.1.

5.2.2.10 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Their Fastenings. Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to 2.23, except as modified by 3.23 and 5.2.1.23.2.

5.2.2.11 Hydraulic Machines and Tanks. Hydraulic machines and tanks shall conform to 3.24. Requirement 5.2.1.24 does not apply, except as modified by 5.2.2.6.

5.2.2.12 Terminal Stopping Devices. Requirement 5.2.1.25 does not apply. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 3.25.1 and 3.25.3.

5.2.2.13 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Requirement 5.2.1.26 does not apply. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 3.26.

5.2.2.14 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices. Requirement 5.2.1.27 does not apply. Emergency operations and signaling devices shall conform to 3.27, except firefighters' emergency operations (2.27.3 through 2.27.8) does not apply. When firefighters' emergency operation is provided, it shall conform to 3.27.1 through 3.27.4.

5.2.2.15 Layout Data. Requirement 5.2.1.29 does not apply. The information provided on layout data shall conform to 3.28.

SECTION 5.3
PRIVATE RESIDENCE ELEVATORS

Requirement 5.3 applies to elevators installed in or at a private residence. Requirement 5.3 also applies to similar elevators installed in buildings as a means of access to private residences within such buildings provided the elevators are so installed that they are not accessible to the general public or to other occupants in the building.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *private residence elevators*.

5.3.1 Private Residence Electric Elevators

(07) **5.3.1.1 Construction of Hoistway and Hoistway Enclosures.** The hoistway shall be solidly enclosed throughout its height without grillwork or openings other than for landing or access doors, except that any exterior windows within the hoistway shall be protected by metal grillwork. Grillwork shall reject a ball 76 mm (3 in.) in diameter and shall be securely fastened from the inside of the hoistway. Enclosures shall be of sufficient strength to support in true alignment the hoistway doors and gates and their locking equipment. The fire resistance rating shall be in accordance with the requirements of the building code.

(07) **5.3.1.1.1** The enclosure shall be permitted to be omitted on the lowest landing served, provided the elevator

(a) does not open directly into a garage

(b) has continuous-pressure operation

(c) car platform is equipped with a device that, if the platform is obstructed in its downward travel by a force of 18 N (4 lbf) or more applied anywhere at its lower surface, will open an electric contact in the control circuit and thus stop the downward travel of the car within 75 mm (3 in.). The stroke of the device shall be not less than the stopping distance of the platform. This device shall be of a type that will not reset unless it has been returned to its normal position. The elevator shall be permitted to operate in the up direction.

(07) **5.3.1.1.2** The enclosure shall be permitted to be omitted on the upper landing on continuous-pressure operation elevators serving only adjacent landings (one-floor rise) conforming to one of the following:

(a) the floor opening at the upper landing is protected by a partial enclosure and gate at least 910 mm (36 in.) high with openings that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and the gate is provided with a combination mechanical lock and electric contact

(b) the floor opening is provided with a vertically lifting hatch cover which is automatically raised and lowered vertically by the ascending and descending car, provided this cover meets the following requirements:

(1) It is fitted with guides to ensure its proper seating.

(2) It is designed and installed to sustain a total load of 3.6 kPa (75 lb/ft^2) or 135 kg (300 lb) at any one point.

(3) It is equipped with an electric contact that will prevent the upward travel of the car when a force of 90 N (20 lbf) is placed at any point on the top of the hatch cover.

5.3.1.2 Pits

5.3.1.2.1 Guarding of Pits. A pit provided in other than a fully enclosed hoistway shall be guarded by a solid enclosure at least 2 130 mm (84 in.) high. The entrance shall be provided with a door conforming to 5.3.1.7. When the enclosure does not extend from floor to ceiling, only solid car doors or gates rejecting a 13 mm (0.5 in.) diameter ball shall be used.

5.3.1.2.2 Pit Maintenance. Where a pit is provided, it shall be kept clean and free from dirt and rubbish and the accumulation of water. It shall not be used for storage purposes.

5.3.1.3 Top Car Clearance. The top car clearance shall be not less than 152 mm (6 in.) plus 25 mm (1 in.) for each 0.017 m/s (3.3 ft/min) of the rated speed in excess of 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min). Where the machine or its controls are located on the top of the car, a refuge space on top of the car enclosure shall be provided in conformance with 2.4.12.

5.3.1.4 Horizontal Car Clearances

5.3.1.4.1 Between Car and Hoistway Enclosures or Counterweight. There shall be a clearance of not less than 20 mm (0.75 in.) between the car and the hoistway enclosure, and between the car and its counterweight.

5.3.1.4.2 Between Car and Landing Sill. The clearance between the car platform and the landing sill shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) nor more than 38 mm (1.5 in.).

5.3.1.5 Pipes in Hoistways. Pipes conveying steam, gas, or liquids, which if discharged into the hoistway would endanger life, shall not be installed in the hoistway.

5.3.1.6 Guarding of Suspension Means

5.3.1.6.1 Suspension Means Passing Through Floors or Stairs. Ropes and chains passing through a floor or stairway outside the hoistway enclosure shall be enclosed with a solid or openwork enclosure. If of openwork, the enclosure shall reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter. Means for inspection shall be provided. The floor openings shall not be larger than is necessary to clear the suspension means.

5.3.1.6.2 Suspension or Support Means Having an Opening Facing Away From the Stair. Suspension or support means that operate within a guide or track whose segments total a minimum of 270 deg shall be considered suitably guarded, provided that the centerline of the opening in the guide or track is 180 deg from the closest point of the stair. See Nonmandatory Appendix H, Fig. H-1.

5.3.1.7 Protection of Hoistway Openings

(07) **5.3.1.7.1 Where Required.** Where a hoistway enclosure is required, landing openings shall be protected by swinging or horizontally sliding doors or gates. Landing openings in solid hoistway enclosures shall be protected the full height by solid swinging or horizontally sliding doors. Their fire-protection rating shall be not less than required by the building code (see 1.3). The doors or gates shall be designed to withstand a force of 670 N (150 lbf) applied horizontally over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) in the center of the doors or gates without permanent displacement or deformation.

5.3.1.7.2 Clearance Between Hoistway Doors or Gates and Landing Sills and Car Doors or Gates. The clearance between the hoistway doors or gates and the hoistway edge of the landing sill shall not exceed 75 mm (3 in.). The distance between the hoistway face of the landing door or gate and the car door or gate shall not exceed 125 mm (5 in.).

5.3.1.7.3 Projection of Hoistway Doors or Gates Into the Hoistway. The hoistway face of the hoistway door or gate shall not project into the hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill. No hardware, except that required for door-locking and door-operating or signaling devices, shall project into the hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill.

5.3.1.7.4 Locking Devices for Hoistway Doors and Gates. Hoistway doors or gates shall be provided with locking devices.

The locking device shall be of a type that will

(a) either prevent car movement unless the door is locked in the closed position; or

(b) permit the car to start if the door or gate is in the closed position but not locked, provided that the device stops the car if the door or gate fails to lock before the car has moved 150 mm (6 in.) away from the landing. The device shall also prevent the opening of the hoistway door or gate unless the car is within 150 mm (6 in.) of the landing.

The locking device shall conform to 2.12.4.

5.3.1.7.5 Opening of Hoistway Doors or Gates. Hoistway doors or gates shall be so arranged that it will not be necessary to reach behind any panel, jamb, or sash to operate them.

5.3.1.7.6 Hangers and Stops for Hoistway Sliding Doors. Means shall be provided to prevent a sliding hoistway door from disengaging from its track.

5.3.1.7.7 Access to the Hoistway for Emergency Purposes. Hoistway door unlocking devices shall be provided for all hoistway doors and gates, conforming to 2.12.6.

5.3.1.7.8 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Gates. Power opening shall be permitted for hoistway doors and gates and shall conform to 2.13.2.2.1 and 2.13.2.2.2. Power closing shall be permitted for hoistway doors and gates and shall conform to 2.13.3.2 through 2.13.4, and 2.13.6. (07)

5.3.1.7.9 Landing-Sill Guards. Where the elevator is equipped with a two-way leveling device or anticreep device, and the hoistway landing sill projects into the hoistway, a landing-sill guard shall be provided conforming to the following: (07)

(a) it shall have a straight vertical face extending below the sill not less than the depth of the zone where the hoistway door is unlocked below the landing sill plus 50 mm (2 in.)

(b) it shall extend not less than the width of the clear car opening exposed to the landing sill

(c) it shall be securely braced and fastened in place to withstand a force of 670 N (150 lbf) applied horizontally over an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) in the center of the guard without permanent displacement or deformation

5.3.1.8 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

5.3.1.8.1 Car Enclosure

(a) Car Enclosure Required. Except at entrances, cars shall be enclosed on all sides and on the top. The enclosure shall be constructed of solid or of openwork material that will reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter.

(b) Securing Enclosures. Car enclosures shall be secured in conformance with 2.14.1.2 and 2.14.1.3.

(c) Glass, Plastic, or Acrylics in Elevator Cars. Glass, plastic, or acrylics, where used in elevator cars, shall conform to the following:

(1) if of glass, it shall meet the requirements of 2.14.1.8

(2) if of plastic or acrylic, it shall meet the requirements of ANSI Z97.1, 16 CFR Part 1201, or

CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, and CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable

(07) *(d) Access Panels for Elevator Equipment Outside of the Car.* Equipment access panels in the car for access to equipment outside the car shall comply with 2.7.5.1.4.

(e) Number of Compartments. The car shall not have more than one compartment.

5.3.1.8.2 Car Doors and Gates. A car door or gate that, when closed, will guard the opening to a height of at least 1 675 mm (66 in.) shall be provided at each entrance to the car. Car doors shall be permitted to be of solid or openwork construction that will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter.

Collapsible car gates shall be of a design that, when fully closed (extended position), will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter.

(07) *(a) Power Operation of Car Doors and Gates.* Power opening shall be permitted for car doors and gates, and shall conform to 2.13.2.1 and 2.13.6. Power closing shall be permitted for car doors and gates, and shall conform to 2.13.3 through 2.13.6.

(b) Car Door or Gate Locking Devices. Where the hoistway enclosure is not continuous for the full travel of the car, the car door or gate shall be provided with a mechanical lock that will lock the car door or gate if the car is more than 150 mm (6 in.) away from a landing.

(c) Car Door or Gate Electric Contacts. Every car door or gate shall be provided with an electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.3 and 2.14.4.2.5.

The design of the car door or gate electric contacts shall be such that for a sliding door or gate, the car cannot move unless the door or gate is within 50 mm (2 in.) of the closed position. If the door or gate swings outward to open, the car door or gate must be closed and locked before the car can move.

5.3.1.8.3 Light in Car. The car shall be provided with an electric light. The light shall be controlled by a switch located in the car and near the car entrance, or by automatic means in conformance with 2.14.7.2.2. The minimum illumination at the car threshold, with the door closed, shall be not less than 50 lx (5 fc).

5.3.1.9 Car Frames and Platforms

5.3.1.9.1 Car Frame

(a) Where Required. Every elevator shall have a car frame to which the suspension or support means and the safeties are attached.

(b) Material Permitted. Car frames shall be made of metal.

(c) Factor of Safety. The factor of safety shall be not less than 5 based on the rated load.

(d) Use of Cast Iron. Cast iron shall not be used in any member other than for guides or guide shoe brackets.

(e) Location of Guiding Means. Primary guiding means shall be attached to the car frame.

5.3.1.9.2 Platforms

(a) Construction. Platforms shall be of non-perforated metal or wood. If constructed of wood, they shall be laminated.

Platforms shall be supported by a platform frame or formed metal support pan attached to the car frame. Platforms and platform frame assemblies shall have a safety factor of 5.

(b) Platform Guards (Aprons). Where the elevator is equipped with a two-way leveling device, the entrance side(s) of the platform shall be provided with a guard conforming to 2.15.9, except as modified by the following:

(1) Requirement 2.15.9.2 does not apply. The platform guard shall have a straight vertical face, extending below the floor surface of the platform not less than the depth of the zone where the hoistway door is unlocked above the landing sill plus 50 mm (2 in.). The platform guard shall not strike the pit floor or any obstruction when the elevator is at its lowest point of travel.

5.3.1.10 Capacity, Loading, Speed, and Rise

5.3.1.10.1 Capacity. The maximum inside net platform area shall not exceed 1.4 m^2 (15 ft^2). The minimum rated load shall be not less than the following:

(a) For net platform areas up to and including 1.1 m^2 (12 ft^2), the rated load shall be not less than 195 kg/m^2 (40 lb/ft^2) or 159 kg (350 lb), whichever is greater.

(b) For net platform areas greater than 1.1 m^2 (12 ft^2), the rated load shall be based upon 305 kg/m^2 (62.5 lb/ft^2).

5.3.1.10.2 Speed. The rated speed shall not exceed 0.20 m/s (40 ft/min).

5.3.1.10.3 Rise. The rise shall not exceed 15 m (50 ft).

5.3.1.11 Safeties and Governors

5.3.1.11.1 Safeties Required. Each elevator shall be provided with a car safety. Where the space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the counterweight shall be provided with a safety conforming to 5.3.1.11.2.

5.3.1.11.2 Operation of Safeties. The car safety shall be of the inertia, rack and pinion, or other type operated by the breakage of the suspension means or by the action of a speed governor. If of the speed-governor type, the governor shall operate the safety at a maximum tripping speed of 0.38 m/s (75 ft/min). On the breakage of the suspension means, the safety shall operate without delay and independently of the speed governor action.

5.3.1.11.3 Application of Safeties. The application of safeties shall conform to 2.17.9.1, 2.17.9.2, and 2.17.9.3. The forces providing the stopping action shall conform to 2.17.9.4 or the following:

(a) Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the application of safety stopping forces shall not cause deformation of the guide-rail section upon whose dimensional stability the stopping capability of the safeties is dependent.

(b) Where the car safety is of the rack-and-pinion type, it shall conform to 4.1.9.

5.3.1.11.4 Materials Used in Safeties. The minimum factors of safety and stresses of safety parts and rope connections shall conform to 2.17.12.

5.3.1.11.5 Location of Speed Governor. Where a speed governor is used, it shall be located where it is readily accessible from outside the hoistway and it cannot be struck by any moving object in normal operation or under conditions of overtravel, and where there is sufficient space for full movement of the governor parts.

5.3.1.11.6 Opening of the Motor and Brake Circuit on Safety Application. Where a speed governor is used, the motor circuit and the brake circuit shall be opened before or at the time that the safety applies.

5.3.1.11.7 Governor Ropes. The governor ropes, where used, shall be of iron, steel, monel metal, or phosphor bronze not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

5.3.1.12 Suspension Means

5.3.1.12.1 Types Permitted

(a) Suspension means shall be not less than two wire ropes or two steel roller-type chains conforming to ASME B29.1.

(b) Aircraft cable rope of 7 × 19 construction, classified as Mil Spec 83420, shall be permitted in those applications where aircraft cable rope is not subjected to crushing pressures. The following exceptions to Mil Spec 83420 are permitted:

(1) nonjacketed carbon steel, tin-, or zinc-coated (Type 1-A) 7 × 19 construction (Section 3.2.4 of Mil Spec 83420)

(2) identifying color tracer filaments are not required (Section 3.5.2 of Mil Spec 83420)

5.3.1.12.2 Suspension Ropes. On elevators having a rated load of 230 kg (500 lb) or less and operating at a rated speed of 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min) or less, suspension ropes shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter. Where the rated load exceeds 230 kg (500 lb) or the rated speed exceeds 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min), the ropes shall be not less than 9 mm (0.375 in.) in diameter.

5.3.1.12.3 Factor of Safety of Suspension Means. The factor of safety of the suspension means shall be not less than 7 for cars with less than or equal to 1.1 m^2 (12 ft^2) of net platform area, and not less than 7.5 for cars with more than 1.1 m^2 (12 ft^2) of net platform area, based on the manufacturer's rated breaking strength.

When the car and counterweight are suspended by steel ropes and the driving means is an endless steel roller-type chain, the factor of safety of such chain with the rated load in the car shall be not less than 8 based on the ultimate tensile strength.

5.3.1.12.4 Arc of Contact of Suspension Means on Sheaves and Sprockets. The arc of contact of a wire rope on a traction sheave shall be sufficient to produce traction under all load conditions up to rated load. The arc of contact of a chain with a driving sprocket shall not be less than 140 deg.

5.3.1.12.5 Spare Rope Turns on Winding Drums. The spare rope turns on winding drums shall conform to 2.20.7.

5.3.1.12.6 Securing of Wire Suspension Ropes to Winding Drums. The securing of wire suspension ropes to winding drums shall conform to 2.20.6.

5.3.1.12.7 Fastening of Wire Rope Suspension Means to Car or to the Counterweight. The fastening of a wire rope suspension means to a car or to a counterweight shall conform to 2.20.9, or by properly attached fittings as recommended by wire rope manufacturers.

5.3.1.13 Counterweights

5.3.1.13.1 General Requirements. Counterweights, where used, shall conform to the following:

(a) Counterweights shall run in guide rails.

(b) Where a car counterweight is used, it shall not be of sufficient weight to cause slackening of any rope during acceleration or retardation of the car.

(c) The counterweight sections, whether carried in a frame or not, shall be fastened together and shall also be secured to prevent shifting by an amount that will reduce the running clearance to less than 19 mm (0.75 in.) between the counterweight and hoistway.

5.3.1.13.2 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

(a) *Counterweight on Cars Operating Through Hatch Covers.* If a car operates through a hatch cover, the counterweight runway shall be enclosed throughout its height.

(b) *Counterweight Coming Down to Floors or Passing Floors or Stairs.* Where the counterweight runway comes down to a floor or passes floors or stairs, it shall be guarded to a height of at least 2 130 mm (84 in.) above the floor or the stair treads by a solid or openwork enclosure. Openwork enclosures shall reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter.

(c) *Access to Enclosed Counterweights and Ropes.* Access shall be provided for inspection, maintenance, and repair of an enclosed counterweight and its ropes. Doors on the counterweight enclosure shall be self-closing and self-locking and openable from the outside only with a suitable key. If the enclosure is of such size that the door can be closed when the enclosure is occupied by a person, the door shall be easily openable from the inside without the use of a key or other instrument. A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.5 shall be located adjacent to and inside the opening and operable without entering the enclosure.

5.3.1.14 Buffers and Buffer Supports

5.3.1.14.1 The car and counterweight shall be provided with spring buffers, except as specified in 5.3.1.14.3. They shall be so designed and installed that they will not be fully compressed when struck by car with its rated load or by the counterweight traveling at 125% of the rated speed, or at governor tripping speed where a governor-operated safety is used.

5.3.1.14.2 Car and counterweight buffer supports shall be of sufficient strength to withstand without failure the impact resulting from buffer engagement at 125% of the rated speed, or at governor tripping speed where a governor-operated safety is used.

5.3.1.14.3 Buffers shall be permitted to be omitted when the striking speed is 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min) or less if the space below the car and counterweight consists of a nonoccupiable area, and the floor below the car and counterweight has sufficient strength to withstand, without failure, the impact of the car with rated load and counterweight descending at 125% of rated speed or governor tripping speed if a governor is provided.

5.3.1.15 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails and Guide Fastenings. Car and counterweight guide rails and their fastenings shall conform to 2.23.2, 2.23.5, 2.23.6, 2.23.8, and 2.23.9. Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the allowable deflection of the guide rail shall be limited to prevent the safety device from disengaging the rail during the application of the load.

5.3.1.16 Driving Machines, Sheaves, and Their Supports

5.3.1.16.1 Overhead Machinery Beams and Supports

(a) Securing of Machinery Beams and Types of Supports. All machinery and sheaves shall be so supported and secured as to prevent any part from becoming loose or displaced.

Beams supporting machinery shall be of steel, sound timber, or reinforced concrete.

(b) Overhead Beams and Their Supports. Overhead beams and their supports shall be designed for not less than the sum of the following:

(1) the load resting on the beams and their supports, which shall include the complete weight of the machine, sheaves, controller, and any other equipment supported thereon

(2) the sum of the tension on all suspension ropes or chains times 2

(c) Factor of Safety for Overhead Beams and Supports. The factor of safety for overhead beams and supports based on ultimate strength of material shall be not less than 5 for steel, and 6 for timber and reinforced concrete.

5.3.1.16.2 Driving Machines: General Requirements

(a) Types of Driving Means. The driving means shall be one of the following types: **(07)**

(1) traction

(2) winding drum (see 5.3.1.16.3)

(3) direct plunger hydraulic (see 5.3.2)

(4) roped-hydraulic (see 5.3.2)

(5) screw machine (see 5.3.1.16.4)

(6) chain drive

(7) chain-hydraulic (see 5.3.2)

(8) rack-and-pinion, in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC

(b) Material for Sheaves and Drums and Minimum Diameter

(1) Winding drums, traction sheaves, and overhead and deflecting sheaves shall be of cast iron or steel and the pitch diameter shall be not less than one of the following:

(a) 30 times the diameter of the wire suspension means

(b) 21 times the diameter of the wire suspension means for 8 × 19 steel rope or for 7 × 19 aircraft cable allowed by 5.3.1.12.1

(2) The rope grooves shall be machined and designed to conform to 2.24.2.1 and 2.24.2.3.

(3) The factor of safety, based on the static load (the rated load plus the weight of the car, ropes, counterweights, etc.) to be used in the design of the driving machine and sheaves shall be not less than 8 for wrought iron and steel, and 10 for cast iron and cast steel and other metals.

(c) Fastening of Driving Machines and Sheaves to Underside of Overhead Beams

(1) Overhead driving machines or sheaves shall not be fastened to the underside of the supporting beams, except for idlers or deflecting sheaves including their guards and frames.

(2) Cast iron in tension shall not be used for supporting idler and deflecting sheaves where they are hung beneath the beams.

(d) Fastenings Transmitting Load. Fasteners transmitting load shall conform to 2.24.4.

(e) Friction Gearing, Clutch Mechanisms, or Couplings. Friction gearings or clutch mechanisms shall not be used for connecting the drum or drive sheave to the main drive gear. Couplings shall not be used for connecting the output shaft to the main drive gear.

(f) Use of Cast Iron in Gears. Worm gearing having cast iron teeth shall not be used.

(g) Driving-Machine Roller Chains and Sprockets. Driving-machine chains and sprockets shall be of steel and shall conform in all particulars of design and dimensions to ASME B29.1.

(h) Driving-Machine Brakes. Driving machines, except hydraulic driving machines, shall be equipped with electrically released, mechanically applied brakes conforming to 2.24.8. The operation of the brake shall conform to 2.26.8.

(i) Manual Operation. Private residence elevators shall be arranged for manual operation in case of power failure. The manual operating device shall conform to the following:

(1) It shall not be accessible from inside the car.

(2) It shall not release the brake.

(3) Upon removal of the device, the car shall not move.

(4) It shall be actuated by mechanical means only.

(5) Elevators with hydraulic driving machines shall be provided with a manual lowering valve conforming to 3.19.4.4.

(6) Instructions shall be posted at or near the manual operating device.

(07) *(j) Car Top Mounted Machine or Controller.* Where the machine or its controls are located on top of the car

(1) they shall be protected by a solid, noncombustible enclosure

(2) the car top enclosure shall be designed and installed in conformance with 2.14.1.6

(3) a top-of-car operating device shall be provided in conformance with 2.26.1.4.2

(4) access shall be provided to the machine or its controls for maintenance. Access panels shall conform to 5.3.1.8.1(d).

5.3.1.16.3 Winding Drum Machines. Winding drum machines shall not be provided with counterweights.

5.3.1.16.4 Screw Machines. Screw machines, where used, shall conform to 4.2.15 and 4.2.20, except that the rated speed shall not exceed 0.20 m/s (40 ft/min).

(07) **5.3.1.16.5 Traction Machines.** Traction machines shall be provided with a suspension means retainer or restraint on the drive sheave conforming to one of the following:

(a) Suspension Means Retainers. Suspension means retainers shall be continuous over not less than two-thirds of the arc of contact between the suspension means and its sheave or drum and shall be so located that not more than one-sixth of the arc of contact is exposed at each end of the retainer. For double-wrap traction applications the arc of contact for sheaves or drums shall be that length of arc that is uninterrupted by the entry/exit of the suspension means leading to/from the car or counterweight.

(b) Suspension Means Restraints. One suspension means restraint, where the arc of contact is 30 deg or less, shall be located at the midpoint of the arc of contact; or, where the arc of contact exceeds 30 deg, suspension means restraints shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 30 deg of arc along the arc of contact and at each end of the arc of contact.

5.3.1.17 Terminal Stopping Devices

5.3.1.17.1 Stopping Devices Required

(a) Upper and lower normal terminal stopping devices operated by the car shall be provided, and shall be set to stop the car at or near the upper and lower terminal landings.

(b) Upper and lower final terminal stopping devices operated by the car to remove power from the motor and the brake shall be provided. They shall be set to stop the car after it travels past the normal terminal stopping device and before an obstruction is struck.

A slack-rope switch conforming to 2.26.2.1 shall be permitted to be used as the lower final terminal stopping device.

(c) If the driving machine is of the winding drum or sprocket and chain-suspension type

(1) a final terminal stopping device operated by the driving machine shall also be provided.

(2) driving-machine-operated final terminal stopping devices are not required when a lower final terminal stopping device is used in addition to the slack-rope switch, and two independent upper final terminal stopping devices are provided. A separate device shall be used to operate the lower final terminal and one upper final terminal stopping devices. All final terminal stopping and slack-rope devices shall operate independently of one another. The power feed lines to the driving machine and brake shall be opened by one or both of the upper final terminal stopping devices and either the slack-rope switch or the lower terminal stopping device, or both.

(3) indirect connections between the final terminal stopping device and the driving machine shall be designed to prevent slippage.

(b) Terminal stopping switches shall conform to 2.25.1.

5.3.1.17.2 Operation of the Stopping Devices. The final terminal stopping device shall act to prevent movement of the car in both directions of travel. The normal and final terminal stopping devices shall not control the same switches on the controller unless two or more separate and independent switches are provided, two of which shall be closed to complete the motor and brake circuit in each direction of travel.

5.3.1.18 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.3.1.18.1 Type of Operation. The operation of the car shall be by continuous-pressure means or by automatic means.

(07) **5.3.1.18.2 Control and Operating Circuit Requirements.** The design and installation of the operating circuits shall conform to the following:

(a) The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall be used neither to interrupt the power to the elevator driving machine or brake at the terminal landings, nor to stop the car when any electrical protective device operates.

(b) If springs are used to actuate switches, contactors, or relays to stop an elevator at the terminal landings, they shall be of the restrained compression type.

(c) In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, the occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; or the failure of any single solid-state device; or a software system failure, shall not

(1) render any electrical protective device ineffective

(2) permit the car to move beyond the leveling or anticreep zones, if any hoistway door interlock is unlocked or if any hoistway door or car door or gate electric contact is not in the closed position

(d) In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, the occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay, or the failure of any single solid-state device, or a software system failure, shall not permit the car to start if any hoistway door or car door or gate is not in the closed position. When any failure specified above occurs, the elevator shall not be permitted to restart.

(e) If an instantaneous reversible motor is not used, a protective device or circuit shall be provided to prevent the motor from continuing in the same direction if the reversing control is actuated.

5.3.1.18.3 Key-Operated Switches. Any car exterior to a residence shall be operated by means of a key switch. Key-operated switches shall be of continuous-pressure spring-return type, and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination with the key removable only when the switch is in the off position. The key shall be Group 4 Security (see 8.1).

5.3.1.18.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

(a) All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable.

(07) (b) Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification.

(c) The installation of capacitors or other devices, the operation or failure of which will cause an unsafe operation of the elevator, is prohibited.

5.3.1.18.5 Disconnecting Means. Where the controller is located on the car, the disconnecting means shall be located adjacent to the controller. Auxiliary disconnect means shall be provided at the main landing when the main power supply disconnect means is mounted adjacent to the controller on the car.

5.3.1.18.6 Phase Reversal and Failure Protection. If polyphase alternating-current power supply is used, provide protection in conformance with 2.26.6 and 3.26.5.

5.3.1.18.7 Emergency Stop Switch. An emergency stop switch, conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c), shall be provided in every car and shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their openings shall not be solely dependent on springs.

5.3.1.18.8 Slack-Rope and Slack-Chain Devices for Winding Drum and Roller-Chain-Type Driving Machines. Winding drum machines with rope suspension shall be provided with a slack-rope device of the manually reset type that will remove power from the motor and brake if the car is obstructed in its descent and the hoisting ropes slacken.

Elevators with roller-chain suspension shall be provided with a slack-chain device that will remove power from the motor and brake if the car is obstructed in its descent and the suspension means slacken. This device need not be of the manually reset type if the chain sprockets are guarded to prevent the chain from becoming disengaged from the sprockets.

5.3.1.19 Emergency Signaling Devices. A telephone connected to a central telephone exchange shall be installed in the car and an emergency signaling device operable from inside the car and audible outside the hoistway shall be provided.

5.3.1.20 Marking Plates

5.3.1.20.1 Capacity Plate. A capacity plate indicating the rated load of the elevator in pounds shall be furnished by the manufacturer and fastened in a conspicuous place inside the car. The letters and figures on such plates shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height.

5.3.1.20.2 Data Plates. A data plate indicating the weight of the elevator, the rated speed, the suspension means, the manufacturer's name, and the date of installation shall be furnished by the manufacturer. This plate shall be installed in a conspicuous place in the machinery area. The letters and figures on such plates shall be not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in height.

5.3.2 Private Residence Hydraulic Elevators

Machinery and equipment for hydraulic elevators shall conform to 5.3.2.

5.3.2.1 General Requirements for Hydraulic Private Residence Elevators. Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction; cars; counterweights; safeties and governors; guide rails and fastenings; car and counterweight buffer; operating devices and suspension means shall meet the requirements of 5.3.1.1 through 5.3.1.16, and 5.3.1.18 through 5.3.1.20, except as modified in 5.3.2.

5.3.2.2 Driving Machines, Sheaves, and Supports for Direct-Plunger and Roped-Hydraulic Driving Machines

(07) **5.3.2.2.1** Direct-plunger, roped-hydraulic, and chain-hydraulic private residence elevator driving machines, sheaves, valves, supply piping, fittings, and tanks shall conform to 3.18, 3.19, and 3.24, except as modified by 5.3.1.16.2 and 5.3.2.

5.3.2.2.2 A pressure switch shall be provided to remove power from the pump motor and the control valve unless there is positive pressure at the control valve.

(07) **5.3.2.3 Terminal Stopping Devices.** Direct-plunger, roped-hydraulic, and chain-hydraulic private residence elevator terminal stopping devices shall conform to 3.25, except as modified in 3.25.2.

5.3.2.4 Anticreep Leveling Devices. Each elevator shall be provided with an anticreep leveling device conforming to 5.3.2.4.1 through 5.3.2.4.7.

5.3.2.4.1 The anticreep leveling device shall maintain the car within 25 mm (1 in.) of the landing irrespective of the position of the hoistway door.

5.3.2.4.2 For electrohydraulic elevators, the anticreep leveling device shall be required to operate the car only in the up direction.

5.3.2.4.3 For maintained pressure hydraulic elevators, the anticreep leveling device shall be required to operate the car in both directions.

5.3.2.4.4 The operation of the anticreep leveling device shall be permitted to depend on the availability of the electric power supply, provided that the power supply line disconnecting means is kept in the closed position at all times, except during maintenance, repairs, and inspection.

5.3.2.4.5 The anticreep leveling device shall be permitted to be rendered inoperative during recycling operation.

5.3.2.4.6 The following devices shall prevent operation of the elevator by the normal operating device and also the movement of the car in response to the anticreep leveling device:

(*a*) low pressure switch when required by 5.3.2.2.2
(*b*) slack-rope switch when required by 3.18.1.2.7
(*c*) platform switch when required by 5.3.1.1.1
(*d*) hatch cover switch when required by 5.3.1.1.3(c)
(*e*) speed governor switch when required by 5.3.1.11.6

5.3.2.4.7 The following devices shall prevent the operation of the elevator by the normal operating device, but the anticreep leveling device shall remain operable:

(*a*) hoistway door locking device when required by 5.3.1.7.4
(*b*) car door or gate electric contacts when required by 5.3.1.8.2(c)
(*c*) emergency stop switch when required by 5.3.1.18.7

SECTION 5.4
PRIVATE RESIDENCE INCLINED ELEVATORS

Requirement 5.4 applies to inclined elevators installed in or at a private residence. Requirement 5.4 also applies to similar elevators installed in buildings as a means of access to private residences within such buildings, provided the inclined elevators are so installed that they are not accessible to the general public or to other occupants in the building.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *private residence inclined elevators.*

5.4.1 Runway Protection

If the car sides extend less than 1 825 mm (72 in.) above the floor of the car, there shall be no obstruction along the runway, within the arc formed by a 600 mm (24 in.) radius whose center is the outer corner of the top rail of the car enclosure.

When solid guards are installed on the obstruction in both directions of travel, which project at least 350 mm (14 in.) in line with the direction of travel, the running clearance shall be permitted to be reduced to 175 mm (7 in.). The exposed edge of the guard shall be rounded to eliminate shear hazards.

5.4.2 Landing Enclosures and Gates (Where Required)

5.4.2.1 Landing Enclosures. Where a landing platform is provided or if a portion of an existing structure is used as a landing platform, it shall be protected by an enclosure not less than 915 mm (36 in.) high.

5.4.2.2 Landing Gates. The opening in the enclosure shall be guarded by a gate to a height equal to that of the enclosure. The gates shall be permitted to be of the horizontally sliding or of the swinging type and shall be equipped with a combination mechanical lock and electric contact conforming to 2.12.4, 5.3.1.7.4, 5.3.1.7.5, 5.3.1.7.6, and 5.3.1.7.7 where doors and gates exceed 915 mm (36 in.) in height.

5.4.2.3 Construction of Landing Enclosures and Gates. The landing enclosure and gates shall either be of solid construction or of openwork rejecting a 25 mm (1 in.) ball. A force of 670 N (150 lbf) applied at any area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) on the walls of the enclosure shall not reduce the running clearance below 19 mm (0.75 in.) nor cause a deflection exceeding 25 mm (1 in.).

5.4.2.4 Clearance Between Landing Doors or Gates and Landing Sills and Car Doors or Gates. The clearance between landing doors or gates and the runway edge of the landing sill shall not exceed 75 mm (3 in.). The distance between the runway face of the landing doors or gates and the car door or gate shall not exceed 175 mm (7 in.).

5.4.2.5 Horizontal Clearance Between Car and Landing Sills. The horizontal clearance between the car and landing sills shall conform to 5.3.1.4.2.

5.4.3 Machinery Beams and Supports

5.4.3.1 Securing of Machinery Beams and Type of Support. All machinery and sheaves shall be so supported and secured as to effectually prevent any part from becoming loose or displaced. Beams directly supporting machinery shall be of steel, sound timber, or reinforced concrete.

5.4.3.2 Loads on Beams and Supports. Loads on beams and their supports shall be computed as follows:

(a) The total load on the beams shall be equal to the weight of all apparatus resting on the beams plus twice the maximum load suspended from the beams.

(b) The load resting on the beams shall include the complete weights of the driving machine, sheaves, controller, etc.

(c) The load suspended from the beams shall include the sum of the load in every rope or chain suspended from the beams.

5.4.3.3 Fastening of Driving Machines and Sheaves to Underside of Beams. Elevator driving machine and sheaves, except idlers or deflecting sheaves with their guards and frames, shall not be fastened to the underside of the supporting beams at the top of the hoistway.

Cast iron in tension shall not be used for supporting members for sheaves where they are hung beneath beams.

5.4.3.4 Factor of Safety of Beams and Supports. The factor of safety for beams and their supports shall be not less than 5 for steel and 6 for timber and reinforced concrete.

5.4.4 Car Enclosures, Car Doors, and Gates

5.4.4.1 Car Enclosures

5.4.4.1.1 Car Enclosures Required. Except at the entrance, cars shall be enclosed on all sides to a height of not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.).

5.4.4.1.2 Securing of Car Enclosures. The car enclosure shall be securely fastened to the car platform and so supported that it cannot loosen or become displaced in ordinary service or on the application of the car safety or on bumper or buffer engagement.

5.4.4.1.3 Deflection of Car Enclosure Walls. The car enclosure walls shall be of such strength and so designed and supported that when subjected to a force of 334 N (75 lbf) applied horizontally at any point on the walls of the enclosure, the deflection will not reduce the running clearance below 19 mm (0.75 in.) nor to exceed 25 mm (1 in.).

5.4.4.1.4 Platform Guards (Aprons). Requirement 5.3.1.9.1(b) applies, and the guard shall extend horizontally within the zone where the doors or gates are unlocked.

5.4.4.2 Car Doors or Gates

5.4.4.2.1 Doors or Gates Required. A car door or gate that, when closed, will guard the opening to a height of at least 1 070 mm (42 in.) or to the height of the car enclosure, whichever is greater, and shall be provided at each entrance to the car. Car doors shall be permitted to be of solid or openwork construction that will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter.

5.4.4.2.2 Door or Gate Electric Contacts. Car doors or gates shall be provided with an electric contact conforming to 2.14.4.2.3 and 2.14.4.2.5.

5.4.4.2.3 Manual Operation. Car doors or gates shall be manually operated.

5.4.4.2.4 Latching of Swinging Gates. If the car gate is of the swinging type, opening outward from the car, the electric contact required by 5.4.4.2.2 shall not close until the gate is securely latched.

5.4.4.3 Use of Glass, Plastics, or Acrylics

5.4.4.3.1 Glass, plastics, or acrylics, where used in elevator cars, shall conform to the following:

(a) if of glass, meet the requirements of 2.14.1.8

(b) if of plastic or acrylic, it shall meet the requirements of ANSI Z97.1, 16 CFR Part 1201, or CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, and CAN/CGSB-12.12, whichever is applicable

5.4.4.3.2 Glass, plastics, or acrylics shall be secured as required by 5.4.4.1.2.

5.4.4.3.3 Weather-Resistant Plastics. Plastics shall be of a weather-resistant type.

5.4.5 Car and Chassis Construction

5.4.5.1 Car and Platform. Inclined elevator cars shall have frames and platforms of metal or combination metal and wood, or other materials of equal strength. Car frames and platforms shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5, based on the rated load, they suitably prepared and/or protected for exposure to the weather.

5.4.5.2 Chassis Construction. Inclined elevator chassis shall be constructed of metal, except for guiding members. Chassis shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5, based on the rated load. The chassis-guiding members shall be retained and/or enclosed in guides or tracks in such a manner that the chassis cannot be derailed.

5.4.5.3 Use of Cast Iron. Cast iron shall not be used in the construction of any member of the car frame or chassis.

5.4.5.4 Number of Compartments. The car shall not have more than one compartment.

5.4.6 Capacity

5.4.6.1 Rated Load and Platform Area. The rated load and net platform area shall conform to 5.3.1.10.1.

5.4.6.2 Shelves or Benches. Shelves or benches permanently fixed to the car structure, which reduce the standing area of the platform, are permitted and shall not exceed 0.55 m^2 (1.8 ft^2). Fifty percent of the net area of shelves or benches shall be added to the standing platform area to calculate the net platform area.

5.4.6.3 Rated Speed. The rated speed measured along the incline shall not exceed 0.38 m/s (75 ft/min).

5.4.7 Safeties and Governors

5.4.7.1 Car Safeties Required. Each inclined elevator shall be provided with a car safety capable of stopping and sustaining the car with rated load.

5.4.7.2 Operation of Car Safeties. The car safety shall be of Type A, B, or C, as specified in 2.17.5, and shall be operated by a speed governor, complying with the following requirements:

(a) The governor shall be set to trip at not less than 115% nor more than 140% of the rated speed.

(b) Type A safeties shall operate as required by 2.17.8.1.

(c) Type C safeties shall operate as required by 2.17.8.2.

5.4.7.3 Counterweight Safeties. If the construction at the lower end of the rail is not at or below grade at the termination of the rail, counterweight safeties conforming to 5.4.7 shall be provided, except governor operation of the safeties is not required.

5.4.7.4 Location of Speed Governor. The speed governor shall be located where it cannot be struck by the car or counterweight in case of overtravel and where there is sufficient space for full movement of the governor parts and where it is accessible for examination.

5.4.7.5 Opening of Brake and Motor Control Circuits on Safety Application. Power shall be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake before or at the time the safety applies.

5.4.7.6 Governor Ropes. The governor ropes, where used, shall be of iron, steel, monel metal, or phosphor bronze not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) in diameter. Tiller-rope construction shall not be used.

5.4.7.7 Slack-Rope and Slack-Chain Devices for Winding Drum and Roller-Chain-Type Driving Machines

5.4.7.7.1 Inclined elevators of the winding-drum type with rope suspension shall be provided with a slack-rope device of the manually reset type, which will remove the power from the motor and brake if the car is obstructed in its descent and the suspension rope slackens.

5.4.7.7.2 Inclined elevators with roller-chain suspension shall be provided with a slack-chain device, which will remove the power from the motor and brake if the car is obstructed in its descent and the suspension chains slacken. This device need not be of the manually reset type if the chain sprockets are guarded to prevent the chain from jumping off the sprockets.

5.4.7.8 Application of Car Safety. The application of car safeties shall comply with 5.3.1.11.3.

5.4.7.9 Use of Cast Iron in Car Safeties. Cast iron shall not be used in the construction of any part of a car safety, the breakage of which would result in failure of the safety to function to stop and sustain the car.

5.4.7.10 Corrosion-Resistant Bearings in Safeties. Materials used in safeties shall meet the requirements of 2.17.13.

5.4.8 Suspension Means

5.4.8.1 Types Permitted. Where the chassis is suspended from the driving machine by a wire rope or roller chain, a single suspension means shall be permitted to be used. The suspension means shall be any one of the following:

(a) steel elevator wire rope

(b) steel aircraft cable

(c) roller chain conforming to ASME B29.1

5.4.8.2 Types Prohibited. Steel tapes shall not be used as suspension means.

5.4.8.3 Minimum Diameter of Suspension Means. The diameter of hoist rope(s) or cable(s) shall not be less than the following:

(a) 6 mm (0.25 in.) for elevator wire rope

(b) 5 mm (0.1875 in.) for galvanized aircraft cable

5.4.8.4 Factor of Safety of Suspension Means. The suspension means shall have a factor of safety of not less than 8, based on the tension in the rope(s) or chain(s) when raising the car and its rated load. In no case shall the rated breaking strength of the rope(s) or chain(s) be less than 17 800 N (4,000 lbf).

5.4.8.5 Arc of Contact of Suspension Means on Sheaves and Sprockets. The arc of contact of a wire rope on a traction sheave shall be sufficient to produce adequate traction under all load conditions. The arc of contact of a chain with a driving sprocket shall be not less than 140 deg.

5.4.8.6 Idle Turns of Ropes on Winding Drums. All wire ropes anchored to a winding drum shall have not less than one full turn of rope on the drum when the car or counterweight has reached its limit of possible overtravel.

5.4.8.7 Lengthening, Splicing, Repairing, or Replacing Suspension Means. No car or counterweight wire rope shall be lengthened or repaired by splicing. Broken or worn suspension chains shall not be repaired. If one wire rope or a chain of a set is worn or damaged and requires replacement, the entire set of ropes or chains shall be replaced. In the event that a worn chain is replaced, the drive sprocket shall also be replaced.

5.4.8.8 Securing Ends of Suspension Ropes in Winding Drums. The winding-drum ends of car and counterweight wire ropes shall be secured by clamps on the inside of the drum or by one of the methods specified in 5.4.8.9 for fastening wire ropes to car or counterweight.

5.4.8.9 Fastening of Rope Suspension Means to Cars and Counterweights. The car or counterweight ends of wire ropes shall be fastened by return loop, by properly made individual tapered sockets or by properly attached fittings as recommended by wire-rope manufacturers. Clamps of the U-bolt type shall not be used.

Tapered rope sockets and the method of socketting shall conform to 2.20.9.4 through 2.20.9.6. The diameter of the hole in the small end of the socket shall not exceed the nominal diameter of the rope by more than 2.3 mm (0.094 in.).

5.4.9 Counterweight Guiding and Construction

5.4.9.1 Guiding. Counterweights, where used, shall be in a guide or track.

5.4.9.2 Construction. Counterweights shall not be of sufficient weight to cause undue slackening of any car suspension means during acceleration or retardation of the car. Weight sections, if used, shall be mounted in structural or formed metal frames so designed as to retain weights securely in place. Counterweights shall be permitted to be constructed of a single metal plate.

5.4.10 Bumpers and Buffers

5.4.10.1 Solid Bumpers. For rated speeds not exceeding 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), if spring- or equivalent-type buffers are not used, solid bumpers shall be installed.

5.4.10.2 Construction and Requirements for Solid Bumpers. Solid bumpers shall be made of wood or other suitable resilient material of sufficient strength to withstand, without failure, the impact of the car with rated load or the counterweight, descending at 125% of the rated speed.

The material used shall be of a type that will resist deterioration or be so treated as to resist deterioration.

5.4.10.3 Spring Buffers. For rated speeds exceeding 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), buffers of the spring type shall be installed.

5.4.10.4 Construction and Requirements for Spring Buffers. Spring buffers shall be constructed so as to have a minimum stroke of 19 mm (0.75 in.) and a maximum stroke of 38 mm (1.5 in.) and shall not be fully compressed when struck by the car with its rated load or counterweight traveling at 125% of the rated speed.

5.4.11 Car and Counterweight Guide and Track Supports and Fastenings

5.4.11.1 Material. Guide rails, guide-rail brackets, splice plates, and their fastenings shall be of steel or other metals conforming to 5.3.1.15 and 5.4.11.

5.4.11.2 Stresses of Deflections. The guide-rail brackets, their fastenings and supports, shall be capable of resisting the horizontal forces imposed by loading with a total deflection at the point of support not in excess of 3 mm (0.125 in.). The guide rails shall not deflect in any direction 6 mm (0.25 in.) measured at the midpoint between brackets.

5.4.11.3 Overall Length of Guide Rails or Track. The top and bottom ends of each run of guide rail shall be so located in relation to the extreme positions of travel of the car and counterweight that the car and counterweight guiding members cannot travel beyond the ends of the guide rails.

5.4.12 Track(s)/Guide(s) Supporting Structure

All supporting structures shall meet the requirements of the building code.

5.4.13 Driving Machines and Sheaves

5.4.13.1 Materials for Drums and Sheaves and Minimum Diameters. Winding drums, traction sheaves, and overhead and deflecting sheaves shall be of cast iron or steel and of a diameter of not less than 30 times the diameter of the wire suspension ropes, except that where 8 × 19 steel ropes or 7 × 19 aircraft cable are used, the diameter of drums and sheaves shall be permitted to be reduced to 21 times the diameter of the rope. The rope grooves shall be machined.

5.4.13.2 Factor of Safety. The factor of safety, based on the static load (the rated load plus the weight of the car, ropes, counterweights, etc.) to be used in the design of driving machines and sheaves, shall be not less than

8 for wrought iron steel and 10 for cast iron, cast steel, and other metals.

5.4.13.3 Set-Screw Fastenings. Set-screw fastenings shall not be used in lieu of keys or pins if the connection is subject to torque or tension.

5.4.13.4 Friction Gear, Clutch Mechanism, or Coupling. Friction gear, clutch mechanism, or coupling shall not be used for connecting the drum or sheaves to the main driving gear.

5.4.13.5 Use of Cast Iron in Gears. Worm gearing having cast iron teeth shall not be used.

5.4.13.6 Driving-Machine Brakes. Driving machines shall be equipped with electrically released spring-applied brakes meeting the requirements of 2.24.8 and 2.26.8.

5.4.13.7 Operation of Brake. A single ground or short circuit, a counter voltage or a motor field discharge shall not prevent the brake magnet from allowing the brake to set when the operating device is placed in the stop position.

5.4.13.8 Location of Driving Machine, Alignment, and Guarding of Sheaves. The driving machine shall be permitted to be mounted on the car chassis or placed at a remote location. If remotely located, all intervening sheaves or sprockets shall be placed to ensure that ropes or chains travel in proper alignment. All sheaves or sprockets shall be guarded.

5.4.13.9 Driving-Machine Roller-Chain Sprockets. Driving-machine roller-chain sprockets shall be steel and shall conform in all particulars of design and dimensions to ASME B29.1.

5.4.13.10 Manual Operation. Manual operation shall conform to 5.3.1.16.2(i).

5.4.14 Terminal Stopping Devices

5.4.14.1 Terminal Stopping Devices. Upper and lower normal terminal stopping switches, operated by the movement of the car, shall be provided and set to stop the car at normal top and bottom terminals of travel.

5.4.14.2 Final Stopping Devices. Final terminal stopping devices, operated by the movement of the car, shall be provided and set to stop the car should it overtravel the normal terminals.

5.4.14.3 Operation of Stopping Devices. The final terminal stopping device shall act to prevent the movement of the car in both directions of travel. The normal and final terminal stopping devices shall not control the same switches on the controller unless two or more separate and independent switches are provided, two of which shall be closed to complete the motor and brake circuits in each direction of travel.

5.4.15 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.4.15.1 Type of Operation. The inclined elevator shall be operated by weatherproof constant pressure or momentary pressure key switches at each landing and on the car. Key-operated switches shall be of the spring-return type and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than five-pin or five-disk combination with the key removable only when the switch is in the off position. The key shall be Group 4 Security (see 8.1).

5.4.15.2 Emergency Stop Switches in Cars. An emergency stop switch shall be provided on or adjacent to the car operating panel. Stop switches shall be of the manually opened and manually closed type with red handles or buttons and conspicuously marked "STOP." Where springs are used, their failure shall not prevent opening of the switch.

5.4.15.3 Control and Operating Circuit Requirements. The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 5.3.1.18.2.

5.4.15.4 Hand Rope Operation. Hand rope operation shall not be used.

5.4.15.5 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

5.4.15.5.1 Electrical Equipment and Wiring Requirements. Requirements 5.3.1.18.4, 5.3.1.18.5, and 5.3.1.18.6 apply.

5.4.15.5.2 Electrical Connections. If the driving (07)
machine is mounted on the car chassis, electrical connections between the car and power source shall be provided with a means to remove power if the connecting traveling cable part. All electrical connections to the moving chassis and the stationary connections shall be insulated flexible conductors, in accordance with NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

5.4.15.5.3 Traveling Cables. Traveling cables shall be Type EO, ETT, or ETP and shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Where traveling cable voltage exceeds 30 V, a means shall be provided to remove the power automatically upon parting of the traveling cable.

5.4.16 Marking Plates

Capacity, data, and code data plates shall be provided as required in 5.3.1.20.1, 5.3.1.20.2, and 8.9. All plates shall be weather resistant.

SECTION 5.5
POWER SIDEWALK ELEVATORS

Requirement 5.5 applies to power sidewalk elevators. Requirement 5.5.1 applies to electric elevators. Requirement 5.5.2 applies to direct-plunger hydraulic elevators.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *power sidewalk elevators.*

5.5.1 Electric Sidewalk Elevators

5.5.1.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures. The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1, except as modified by the following:

(a) *Requirement 2.1.1.1.* Hoistways are not required to be enclosed above the top landing.

(b) Requirement 2.1.1.3 does not apply.

(c) Requirement 2.1.2.1 does not apply.

(d) Requirement 2.1.3 does not apply.

(e) Requirement 2.1.4 does not apply.

5.5.1.2 Pits. Pits shall conform to 2.2. Means shall be provided to automatically remove water from the pit.

5.5.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweight. The location and guarding of counterweights shall conform to 2.3.

5.5.1.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys. Where a car top is provided, bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 2.4.

Where no car top is provided, they shall conform to 2.4.1 through 2.4.4 and 2.4.9. When the car has reached its maximum upward movement, no equipment shall strike the overhead structure or other obstructions.

On elevators with vertical lifting covers, there shall be a clearance of not less than 600 mm (24 in.) between the top of the cover and any obstruction vertically above it when the car has reached its maximum upward movement.

The clearance required by 2.4.1 does not apply below underslung elevators with the car resting on its fully compressed buffers, when a refuge space not less than either of the following is provided:

(a) a horizontal area 600 mm × 1 200 mm (24 in. × 48 in.), with a height of 600 mm (24 in.)

(b) a horizontal area 450 mm × 900 mm (18 in. × 36 in.), with a height of 1 070 mm (42 in.)

5.5.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5, except as modified by 5.5.1.5.

For sidewalk elevators with adjacent openings, the maximum clearance required by 2.5.1.5 shall be permitted to be increased on the side where the overhead sheaves are located, provided that in such cases this clearance shall not be greater than that required for the installation of the sheaves or sheave beams plus running clearance of not more than 25 mm (1 in.).

5.5.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway. Where the hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building, it shall conform to 2.6.

5.5.1.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to 2.7.

5.5.1.8 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms. Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways and machine rooms shall conform to 2.8 and 5.5.1.8.1 through 5.5.1.8.3.

5.5.1.8.1 Slack-rope switches (where required), lower normal and final terminal stopping devices, and pit stop switches shall be located not less than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor.

5.5.1.8.2 All electrical equipment in the hoistway shall be weatherproof.

5.5.1.8.3 Electrical metal tubing (EMT) shall not be used.

5.5.1.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to 2.9.

5.5.1.10 Guarding. The guarding of exposed auxiliary equipment shall conform to 2.10.

5.5.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings

5.5.1.11.1 Vertical Openings. Vertical hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11, except that 2.11.2.1 does not apply.

5.5.1.11.2 Horizontal Openings in Sidewalks and Other Areas Exterior to the Building

(a) The clear opening in a sidewalk that is accessible to the general public when the sidewalk door or cover is open shall be such that the sidewalk permits a minimum 1 200 mm (48 in.) wide unobstructed pedestrian path, which is not normally accessible to vehicular traffic.

(b) Hoistways shall not be located either wholly or partially in front of any entrance to a building.

(c) The side of the door opening nearest to any building wall or other obstruction shall be less than or equal to 100 mm (4 in.), or greater than 914 mm (36 in.), from the wall or obstruction.

(d) Horizontal openings in sidewalks or other areas exterior to the building shall be protected by hinged metal doors or vertically lifting covers having a nonslip upper surface. Such doors or covers shall not be used where the hoistway is located inside the building. Doors or covers shall be of sufficient strength to safely support a static load of not less than 1 460 kg/m^2 (300 lb/ft^2), uniformly distributed.

(e) When in the closed position, doors shall be flush with the adjacent sidewalk or other surface.

(f) Such doors and covers shall conform to 5.5.1.11.3 or 5.5.1.11.4.

(g) All openings between sidewalk door panels and frames shall be provided with gutters to collect rainwater. Their gutters shall be piped rigidly to a discharge point exterior to the hoistway and pit or to the sump pit when provided and designed in accordance with 5.5.1.2.

(h) When subject to vehicular traffic, the doors or covers shall be designed to safely support the loads likely to be imposed on them.

5.5.1.11.3 Hinged-Type Swing Sidewalk Doors

(a) The line of the hinges shall be at right angles to the building wall.

(b) There shall be a minimum clearance of 450 mm (18 in.) between the face of the doors and any obstruction when the doors are in the open position.

(c) The doors shall be opened by the ascending car and shall be self-closing as the car descends, and shall be kept in the closed position when the car is not at the top landing, except as provided for in 5.5.1.11.3(d).

(d) The doors shall be permitted to be held or fastened in the open position when the car is not at the top landing, provided self-closing hinged metal screen panels, which will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter and which will support a static load of not less than 1 136 kg (300 lbf) applied on any area 600 mm (24 in.) on a side and not less than 68 kg (150 lb) applied at any point, are installed directly below the watertight sidewalk doors. Screen panels shall be opened and closed automatically by the ascending and descending car and shall always be closed when the car is not at the top landing.

(e) Stops shall be provided to prevent the doors from opening more than 90 deg from their closed position.

5.5.1.11.4 Vertical Lifting Sidewalk Covers

(a) The covers shall be raised and lowered vertically by the ascending and descending car and shall not be held or fastened in the open position when the car is not at the top landing.

(b) Recesses or guides, which will securely hold the cover in place on the stanchions, shall be provided on the underside of the cover.

5.5.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches. Hoistway door locking devices, car door or gate electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to 2.12, except as modified by 5.5.1.12.1 through 5.5.1.12.3.

5.5.1.12.1 Requirement 2.12.1.1 does not apply.

5.5.1.12.2 Interlocks or electric contacts are not required on horizontal hinged-type swinging covers and vertical lifting covers used at the top landing in sidewalks or other areas exterior to the building. Locks, if used, shall be of the spring type and shall be automatically unlocked by the bow irons or stanchions of the car, unless the locks are of the type that permit operation of the elevators to open the cover only if the locking device is in the unlocked position.

5.5.1.12.3 Requirement 2.12.7. Hoistway access switches are not required for access to the top of the car.

5.5.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors. Power operation, power opening, and power closing of the hoistway doors and car doors or gates shall conform to 2.13.

5.5.1.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

5.5.1.14.1 Car Enclosures. Car enclosures shall conform to 2.14.1 and 2.14.3, except as modified by the following:

(a) Car tops are not required. Where provided, the distance between the top of the car and the bow iron or stanchions shall be not less than 1 067 mm (42 in.).

(b) Requirements 2.14.1.5 and 2.14.1.6 apply only when a car top is provided.

(c) The height of the car enclosure required by 2.14.3.1 shall be permitted to be reduced when the height of the bow iron or stanchion is reduced as permitted by 5.5.1.15.2(a).

5.5.1.14.2 Car Doors and Gates. Car doors and gates shall conform to 2.14.4 and 2.14.6.

5.5.1.14.3 Illumination of Cars. Illumination of cars and lighting fixtures shall conform to 2.14.7, except as modified by the following:

(a) Lighting devices are not required in the car if there are lighting devices exterior to the car, which will provide the minimum illumination specified in 2.14.7.1.2(b) for the full travel of the car.

(b) Requirement 2.14.7.1.3 does not apply.

(c) Requirement 2.14.7.1.4 applies only where a car top is provided.

5.5.1.15 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to 2.15.

5.5.1.15.1 Car Frames and Platforms of Elevators Traveling Above the Level of the Sidewalk. Sidewalk elevators arranged to travel above the level of the sidewalk or other area exterior to the building shall conform to the following:

(a) Car frames of the underslung rope-suspended-type elevators shall be of sufficient depth to provide the minimum vertical clearance between the car rope hitches or car sheaves and any obstruction in the hoistway vertically above them, as specified in 2.4.8, when the car floor is level with its upper landing level.

(b) The depth of the car frame and the length and spacing of guiding members shall conform to 2.15.4 and, in addition, shall be such as to prevent tipping of the platform when it is at the highest upper landing level.

(c) The car platform shall be provided with metal aprons or guards on all exposed sides conforming to the following:

(1) They shall be made of metal of not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) in thickness.

(2) They shall have a straight vertical face flush with the outer edge of the platform having a depth of not less than the distance between the normal upper terminal landing level and the highest upper landing level plus 75 mm (3 in.).

(3) The lower portion of the guard shall be rounded or beveled at an angle of approximately 75 deg with the horizontal.

5.5.1.15.2 Bow Irons and Stanchions. Where hinged doors or vertically lifting covers are provided at the sidewalk or other exterior area, bow irons or stanchions shall be provided on the car to operate the doors or covers.

Bow irons and stanchions shall conform to the following:

(a) They shall be not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) high, except that this height shall be permitted to be reduced by an amount necessary to permit the doors or covers to close when the car is at the landing next to the top terminal landing.

(b) They shall be so designed, installed, and braced as to withstand the impact when striking the doors or covers.

(c) Bow irons shall be located approximately symmetrical with respect to the center of the car platform.

(d) Stanchions shall be framed together at their upper ends and provided with spring buffers at the top.

5.5.1.16 Capacity and Loading. Capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirement 2.16.1 does not apply.

(b) Requirement 2.16.4 does not apply. Sidewalk elevators shall not be permitted to carry passengers.

5.5.1.17 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Safeties shall conform to 2.17, except as modified by the following:

Where the rated speed does not exceed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), car safeties that operate as a result of breaking or slackening of the hoisting ropes shall be permitted to be used in lieu of governor-actuated safeties required by 2.17.7.1. The safety shall operate without delay.

5.5.1.18 Speed Governors. Governors, where provided, shall conform to 2.18.

5.5.1.19 Suspension Ropes. Suspension ropes shall conform to 2.20.

5.5.1.20 Counterweights. Counterweights shall conform to 2.21.

5.5.1.21 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to 2.22.

5.5.1.22 Guide Rails. Guide rails shall conform to 2.23.

5.5.1.23 Driving Machines and Sheaves. Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to 2.24, except that the ratio of the drum diameter to the rope diameter (see 2.24.2) shall be permitted to be reduced to 24.

5.5.1.24 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25 (see also 5.5.1.8).

5.5.1.25 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except as modified by 5.5.1.25.1 through 5.5.1.25.4. Where the top opening is located in an area exterior to the building, all electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

5.5.1.25.1 Types of Operating Devices. Operating devices shall be of the automatic or continuous-pressure type. Operation through openings in the sidewalk or other area exterior to the building shall conform to 5.5.1.25.2.

5.5.1.25.2 Operation Through Openings in Sidewalk or Other Area Exterior to the Building. The operation of elevators through openings in the sidewalk, or through openings in other exterior areas, and which are protected by hinged doors or vertically lifting covers, shall conform to the following:

(a) The elevator shall be operated through the opening, in both the up and down directions, only from the sidewalk or other exterior area and at a speed not exceeding 0.13 m/s (25 ft/min). The operation shall be by means of

(1) key-operated continuous-pressure-type up-and-down switches; or

(2) continuous-pressure-type up-and-down operating buttons on the free end of a detachable, flexible cord not more than 1 525 mm (60 in.) in length.

(b) Key-operated switches shall be of the continuous-pressure spring-return type and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination with the key removable only when the switch is in the "OFF" position.

(c) Key-operated switches and plug receptacles for flexible cords shall be weatherproof and shall be installed above the sidewalk or other area on the side of the building wall, located 450 mm (18 in.) or less horizontally from one side of the opening.

(d) Operating buttons, if provided in the elevator car and at any landing below the top landing, shall operate the car only when the bow iron or stanchions are not in contact with the doors or covers in the sidewalk or other exterior area.

(e) When the bow iron or stanchions are in contact with the doors or covers at the sidewalk or other exterior area, it shall be possible to operate the car only by means of either the key switches or the continuous-pressure-type up-and-down buttons on the free end of the flexible cord specified in 5.5.1.25.2(a).

(f) Flexible cords and operating keys shall not be left where they are accessible to unauthorized persons for operation of the elevator.

5.5.1.25.3 Top-of-Car Operating Devices and Stop Switch. The requirement for a top-of-car operating device (see 2.26.1.4) applies only where a car top is provided. It shall operate the car at a speed not greater than 0.13 m/s (25 ft/min). It shall not operate when the bow iron or stanchions are in contact with the doors or covers in the sidewalk or other exterior area.

The requirement for a stop switch on top of the car (see 2.26.2.8) applies only where a car top is provided.

5.5.1.25.4 Maximum Rated Speed. Where the car is not fully enclosed, the rated speed shall not exceed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min), except as required by 5.5.1.25.2(a) and 5.5.1.25.3.

Where the car is fully enclosed, there is no limit on the rated speed, except as required by 5.5.1.25.2(a) and 5.5.1.25.3.

(ED) **5.5.1.26 Car Emergency Signaling Devices.** If car operating buttons are provided, car emergency signaling devices shall be provided conforming to 2.27.1.1.1 and 2.27.1.2. If the rise is more than 7.6 m (25 ft), the signaling devices shall also conform to 2.27.1.1.2.

5.5.1.27 Layout Data. The information provided on layout data shall conform to 2.28.

5.5.1.28 Welding. Welding shall conform to 8.8.

5.5.2 Direct-Plunger Hydraulic Sidewalk Elevators

5.5.2.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction. Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 5.5.1.1 through 5.5.1.13, and 5.5.2.1 through 5.5.2.18, except 5.5.1.4 and 5.5.1.6.

5.5.2.2 Vertical Clearances and Runbys. Where a car top is provided, bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 3.4.

Where no car top is provided, they shall conform to 3.4.1, 3.4.2.1, and 3.4.6.2. When the car has reached its maximum upward movement, no equipment shall strike the overhead structure or other obstruction.

5.5.2.3 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway. Where the hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building, it shall conform to 3.6.

5.5.2.4 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to 3.7.

5.5.2.5 Emergency Doors. The requirements for emergency doors in single-blind hoistways apply only where a car safety is provided.

5.5.2.6 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination. Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to 5.5.1.14.

5.5.2.7 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to 3.15, 5.5.1.15.1, and 5.5.1.15.2.

5.5.2.8 Capacity and Loading. Capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16, except as modified by 3.16 and 5.5.1.16.

5.5.2.9 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Car safeties, where provided, shall conform to 5.5.1.17 and shall be of the type that can be released only by moving the car in the up direction.

Counterweight safeties, where provided, shall conform to 3.17.2.

5.5.2.10 Hydraulic Jacks. Hydraulic jacks shall conform to 3.18.

5.5.2.11 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to 3.19.

5.5.2.12 Counterweights. Where provided, counterweights shall conform to 3.21.

5.5.2.13 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to 3.22.

5.5.2.14 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings. Guide rails and their supports and fastenings shall conform to 3.23.

5.5.2.15 Tanks. Tanks shall conform to 3.24.

5.5.2.16 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 3.25 (see also 5.5.1.8).

5.5.2.17 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.5.2.17.1 Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 3.26, 5.5.1.25.1, 5.5.1.25.2, and 5.5.1.25.4 and all electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

5.5.2.17.2 The requirement for a top-of-car operating device (see 3.26.2) applies only where a car top is provided. It shall operate the car at a speed not greater than 0.13 m/s (25 ft/min). It shall not operate when the bow iron or stanchions are in contact with the doors or covers in the sidewalk or other exterior area.

5.5.2.17.3 The requirement for a stop switch on top of the car (see 2.26.2.8 and 3.26.4.1) applies only where a car top is provided.

5.5.2.18 Layout Data. The information provided on layout data shall conform to 3.28.

SECTION 5.6 ROOFTOP ELEVATORS

Requirement 5.6 applies to rooftop elevators. Requirement 5.6.1 applies to electric elevators. Requirement 5.6.2

applies to direct-plunger hydraulic elevators.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *rooftop elevators*.

5.6.1 Electric Rooftop Elevators

5.6.1.1 Construction of Hoistway and Hoistway Enclosures. The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1, except as modified by the following:

(*a*) *Requirement 2.1.1.1.* Hoistways are not required to be enclosed above the rooftop landing.

(*b*) Requirement 2.1.1.3 does not apply.

(*c*) Requirement 2.1.2.1 does not apply.

(*d*) Requirement 2.1.3 does not apply.

5.6.1.2 Pits. Pits shall conform to 2.2. Means shall be provided to automatically remove water from the pit.

5.6.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweight. The location and guarding of counterweights shall conform to 2.3.

5.6.1.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys. Bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 2.4, except as modified by the following:

(*a*) Table 2.4.2.2, maximum speed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min). See 5.6.1.25.4.

(*b*) Requirement 2.4.10 does not apply.

(*c*) Requirement 2.4.11 does not apply.

(ED) (*d*) Requirement 2.4.12 does not apply if rise is 6.1 m (20 ft) or less. When refuge space is required, it shall be measured to the underside of the roof door when the bow iron or stanchion is in contact with the door.

5.6.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5.

5.6.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway. Where the hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building, it shall conform to 2.6.

5.6.1.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to 2.7, except as modified by the following:

(*a*) Requirement 2.7.3.2.2 does not apply.

(*b*) Requirement 2.7.3.5 does not apply.

5.6.1.8 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms. Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways and machine rooms shall conform to 2.8 and the following:

(*a*) Slack-rope switches (where required), lower normal and final terminal stopping devices, and pit stop switches shall be located not less than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor.

(*b*) All electrical equipment in the hoistway shall be weatherproof.

(*c*) Electrical metallic tubing (EMT) shall not be used.

5.6.1.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to 2.9.

5.6.1.10 Guarding. The guarding of exposed auxiliary equipment shall conform to 2.10.

5.6.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings

5.6.1.11.1 Vertical Openings. Vertical hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11.

5.6.1.11.2 Horizontal Openings in Rooftops

(*a*) The pedestrian path on a rooftop, when the door or cover is open, shall be such that it permits a minimum 1 200 mm (48 in.) wide unobstructed path that is not normally accessible to vehicular traffic.

(*b*) Hoistways shall not be located either wholly or partially in front of any entrance to a building or openable window.

(*c*) The side of the door opening nearest to any building wall or other obstruction shall be 100 mm (4 in.) or less, or greater than 900 mm (36 in.), from the wall or obstruction.

(*d*) Horizontal openings in rooftops shall be protected by hinged metal doors or vertically lifting covers having a nonslip upper surface. Doors or covers shall be of sufficient strength to safely support a static load of not less than 14.4 kPa (300 lb/ft^2), uniformly distributed.

(*e*) When in the closed position, doors shall be flush with the landing sill.

(*f*) Such doors and covers shall conform to 5.6.1.11.3 or 5.6.1.11.4.

(*g*) All openings between rooftop door panels and frames shall be provided with minimum 50 mm (2 in.) gutters to collect rainwater. The gutters shall be piped rigidly to a discharge point exterior to the hoistway and pit.

5.6.1.11.3 Hinged-Type Rooftop Doors

(*a*) There shall be a minimum clearance of 450 mm (18 in.) between the face of the doors and any obstruction when the doors are in the open position.

(*b*) The doors shall be opened by the ascending car and shall be self-closing as the car descends, and shall be kept in the closed position when the car is not at the top landing.

(*c*) Stops shall be provided to prevent the doors from opening more than 90 deg from their closed position.

(*d*) Means shall be provided at the meeting edge of biparting rooftop doors to collect and discharge rain water.

(*e*) The landing sill shall be substantially flush with the floor surface of the elevator landings.

5.6.1.11.4 Vertical Lifting Rooftop Covers

(*a*) The covers shall be raised and lowered vertically by the ascending and descending car and shall not be held or fastened in the open position when the car is not at the top landing.

(b) Recesses or guides, which will securely hold the cover in place on the stanchions, shall be provided on the underside of the cover.

(c) The landing sill shall be substantially flush with the floor surface of the elevator landings.

5.6.1.11.5 Setting of the Door. The door shall be set in the roof in such a manner that the upper surface of the rooftop door is at least 25 mm (1 in.) above the surface of the roof and pitched at the same angle. The edge around the rooftop door and the surface of the roof shall be such that a gradual change in surface height is provided.

5.6.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts and Hoistway Access Switches. Hoistway door locking devices, car door or gate electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to 2.12 or 2.14.4, except as modified by the following:

(a) Requirements 2.12.2 and 2.12.3. Interlocks or electric contacts are not required on hinged-type swinging covers and vertical lifting covers used at the top landing in rooftops. Locks, if used, shall be of the spring type and shall be automatically unlocked by the bow irons or stanchions of the car, unless the locks are of the type that permit operation of the elevators to open the cover only if the locking device is in the unlocked position.

(b) Requirement 2.12.7. Hoistway access switches are not required for access to the top of the car.

5.6.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors. Power operation, power opening, and power closing of the hoistway doors and car doors or gates shall conform to 2.13.

5.6.1.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination. Car enclosures, car doors, gates, and car illumination shall conform to 2.14, except as modified by 5.6.1.14.1 and 5.6.1.14.2.

5.6.1.14.1 *Requirement 2.14.3.1.* The height of the car enclosure shall be permitted to be reduced when the height of the bow iron or stanchion is reduced as permitted by 5.6.1.15.2(a).

5.6.1.14.2 All electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

5.6.1.15 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to 2.15, 5.6.1.15.1, and 5.6.1.15.2.

5.6.1.15.1 Platforms

(a) Car frames of the underslung rope-suspended-type elevators shall be of sufficient depth to provide the minimum vertical clearance between the car rope hitches or car sheaves and any obstruction in the hoistway vertically above them, as specified in 2.4.8, when the car floor is level with its upper landing level.

(b) The depth of the car frame and the length and spacing of guiding members shall conform to 2.15.4 and, shall be such as to prevent tipping of the platform when it is at the highest upper landing level.

(c) The car platform shall be provided with metal aprons or guards on all exposed sides conforming to the following:

(1) They shall be made of metal of not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) in thickness.

(2) They shall have a straight vertical face flush with the outer edge of the platform having a depth of not less than the distance between the normal upper terminal landing level and the highest upper landing level plus 75 mm (3 in.).

(3) The lower portion of the guard shall be rounded or beveled at an angle of approximately 75 deg with the horizontal.

5.6.1.15.2 Bow Irons and Stanchions. Where hinged doors or vertically lifting covers are provided at the rooftop bow irons or stanchions shall be provided on the car to operate the doors or covers. Bow irons and stanchions shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) They shall be not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) high, measured from the finished car floor, except that this height shall be permitted to be reduced by an amount necessary to permit the doors or covers to close when the car is at the landing next to the top terminal landing.

(b) They shall be so designed, installed, and braced as to withstand the impact when striking the doors or covers.

(c) Bow irons shall be located approximately symmetrical with respect to the center of the car platform.

(d) Stanchions shall be framed together at their upper ends and provided with spring buffers at the top.

5.6.1.16 Capacity and Loading. Capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16.

5.6.1.17 Safeties. Safeties shall conform to 2.17.

5.6.1.18 Governors. Governors, where provided, shall conform to 2.18.

5.6.1.19 Suspension Ropes. Suspension ropes shall conform to 2.20.

5.6.1.20 Counterweights. Counterweights, when provided, shall conform to 2.21.

5.6.1.21 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to 2.22.

5.6.1.22 Guide Rails. Guide rails shall conform to 2.23.

5.6.1.23 Driving Machines and Sheaves. Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to 2.24, except that on freight elevators the ratio of the drum diameter to the rope diameter (see 2.24.2) shall be permitted to be reduced to 24 for elevators with a rated load of 1 150 kg (2 500 lb) or less.

5.6.1.24 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25 and 5.6.1.8.

5.6.1.25 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except as modified by 5.6.1.25.1 through 5.6.1.25.5.

All electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

Actuation of a landing call button when the car is at the roof level shall illuminate a visual "in-use" signal at the landing station at which the landing call was registered, and sound an audible and visual alarm at the roof level. The audible alarm shall have a sound pressure rating of not less than 80 dBA nor greater than 90 dBA at 3.05 m (10 ft).

Operation to the roof level shall be in accordance with 5.6.1.25.1.

5.6.1.25.1 Types of Operating Devices. Operating devices in the car and at the lower landing are prohibited on two-stop elevators.

5.6.1.25.2 Operation to the Roof Level. The operation of elevators shall conform to the following:

(a) The operation of elevators between openings in the roof, which are protected by hinged doors or vertically lifting covers, and the first landing below the roof level shall conform to the following:

(1) key-operated continuous-pressure-type up-and-down switches; or

(2) continuous-pressure-type up-and-down operating buttons on the free end of a detachable, flexible cord not more than 1 525 mm (60 in.) in length.

(b) Key-operated switches shall be of the continuous-pressure spring-return type and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination with the key removable only when the switch is in the "OFF" position. The key shall be Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

(c) Key-operated switches and plug receptacles for flexible cords shall be weatherproof and shall be installed above the roof level, located within 1 525 mm (60 in.) horizontally from one side of the opening in such a manner that the opening is within clear sight of the operator.

(d) It shall be possible to operate the car only by means of either the key switches or the continuous-pressure-type up-and-down buttons on the free end of the flexible cord specified in 5.6.1.25.2(a).

(e) Flexible cords and operating keys shall not be left where they are accessible to unauthorized persons for operation of the elevator.

(f) Means of two-way communication shall be provided between the car, lower terminal landing, the first landing below the roof level, and the rooftop operating station.

(g) On multiple-stop elevators, the car operating panels shall only be operational for floors below the roof level.

5.6.1.25.3 Top-of-Car Operating Devices and Stop Switch. A top-of-car operating device shall not be provided if the rise is 6.1 m (20 ft) or less. (ED)

Top-of-car operating devices, when required, shall conform to 2.26.1.4.

A stop switch shall be provided on top of the car, conforming to 2.26.2.8.

5.6.1.25.4 Maximum Rated Speed. When the car bow iron or stanchion is in contact with the rooftop door or cover, the rated speed shall not exceed 0.13 m/s (25 ft/min).

When the car is fully enclosed, other than when it is running through the rooftop door or cover, there is no limit on the rated speed except as required by 5.6.1.25.2 and 5.6.1.25.3.

5.6.1.25.5 Operation to the Roof Level. Operation to the roof level shall be in accordance with 5.6.1.25.2.

5.6.1.26 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices. Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to 2.27.

5.6.1.27 Welding. Welding shall conform to 8.8.

5.6.2 Direct-Plunger Hydraulic Rooftop Elevators

5.6.2.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction. Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 5.6.1.1 through 5.6.1.13, and 5.6.2.2 through 5.6.2.5, except 5.6.1.4 and 5.6.1.6.

5.6.2.2 Vertical Clearances and Runbys. Where a car top is provided, bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 3.4.

Where no car top is provided, they shall conform to 3.4.1, 3.4.2.1, and 3.4.6.2.

5.6.2.3 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway. Where the hoistway does not extend to the lowest floor of the building, it shall conform to 3.6.

5.6.2.4 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to 3.7.

5.6.2.5 Emergency Doors. The requirements for emergency doors in single blind hoistways shall conform to 2.11.

5.6.2.6 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination. Car enclosures, car doors, gates, and car illumination shall conform to 2.14.

5.6.2.7 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to 3.14, 5.6.1.15.1, and 5.6.1.15.2.

5.6.2.8 Capacity and Loading. Capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16, except as modified by 3.16.

5.6.2.9 Car and Counterweight Safeties

5.6.2.9.1 Car safeties, where provided, shall conform to 2.17, except as modified for freight elevators by 5.6.1.17 and shall be of the type that can be released only by moving the car in the up direction.

5.6.2.9.2 Counterweight safeties, where provided, shall conform to 3.16.

5.6.2.10 Hydraulic Jacks. Hydraulic jacks shall conform to 3.18.

5.6.2.11 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to 3.19.

5.6.2.12 Counterweights. Where provided, counterweights shall conform to 3.15.

5.6.2.13 Buffers and Bumpers. Buffers and bumpers shall conform to 3.21 and 3.22.2.

5.6.2.14 Guide Rails. Guide rails and their supports and fastenings shall conform to 3.23 and 3.28.

5.6.2.15 Tanks. Tanks shall conform to 3.24.

5.6.2.16 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 3.25 and 5.6.1.8.

5.6.2.17 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 3.26. Requirements 5.6.1.25.1, 5.6.1.25.2, 5.6.1.25.4, 5.6.1.25.5, 5.6.1.26, and 5.6.1.27 and all electrical equipment on the car shall be weatherproof.

5.6.2.17.1 Top-of-Car Operating Device and Stop Switch. Top-of-car operating device when required shall conform to 5.6.1.25.3.

(07)

SECTION 5.7
SPECIAL PURPOSE PERSONNEL ELEVATORS

In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, requirement 5.7 applies to elevators permanently installed in a wide variety of structures and locations to provide vertical transportation of authorized personnel and their tools and equipment only. Such elevators are typically installed in structures such as grain elevators, radio antennas and bridge towers, underground facilities, dams, power plants, and similar structures where, by reason of their limited use and the types of construction of the structures served, full compliance with Part 2 is not practicable or necessary.

Requirement 5.7 applies to special purpose personnel elevators having a traction, winding drum, screw, or rack-and-pinion driving machine.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *special purpose personnel elevators.*

5.7.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

5.7.1.1 Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures. Where the hoistway is adjacent to areas permitting passage of people (e.g., passageways, stairwells, elevator landings), it shall be enclosed to a height of not less than 2 130 mm (84 in.) above the floor or stair treads. The enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact between the enclosure and the car or counterweight when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 1 112 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles at any point over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). Openwork enclosures shall be permitted to be used and shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

5.7.1.2 Floor Over Hoistway. A floor conforming to 2.1.3.1 and 2.1.3.4 shall be provided at the top of the hoistway.

5.7.2 Pits

A pit conforming to 2.2 shall be provided for every elevator.

5.7.3 Location and Enclosing of Counterweights

5.7.3.1 Counterweight Coming Down to Floors or Passing Floors or Stairs. Where a counterweight runway comes down to a floor or passes a floor or stairs, it shall be enclosed to a height of at least 2 130 mm (84 in.) above the floor or the stair treads by a solid or openwork enclosure. The enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact between the enclosure and the counterweight when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 1 100 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles at any point over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). Openwork enclosures shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and shall be so located as to provide at least 100 mm (4 in.) between the outside of the enclosure and the closest member of the counterweight assembly.

5.7.3.2 Access to Enclosed Counterweights and Ropes. Access shall be provided for inspection, maintenance, and repair of an enclosed counterweight and its ropes. Doors in the counterweight enclosures shall be self-closing and shall be provided with

(a) an electric contact, the opening of which will remove power from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake

(b) a self-locking keyed tumbler lock

5.7.4 Vertical Clearances and Runby

5.7.4.1 Bottom Runby. Bottom runby shall conform to 2.4.2, 2.4.3, and 2.4.4.

5.7.4.2 Top Car Clearance. There shall be a clearance of not less than 762 mm (30 in.) from the highest projection of the car top or the car crosshead or the equipment mounted on the car top and the nearest part of the overhead structure, when the counterweight is resting on its fully compressed buffer as required in 2.4.6.

For rack-and-pinion elevators without counterweights, there shall be a clearance of not less than 762 mm (30 in.) from the highest projection of the car top and the nearest part of the overhead structure, when the car has reached the uppermost limit of its travel. The top car clearance shall conform to 2.4.6 and 2.4.7.

5.7.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5 and 5.7.3.1.

5.7.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway

Protection of spaces below hoistways not extending to the lowest level of the structure shall conform to the applicable requirements of 2.6.1.

5.7.7 Overhead Machinery Beams and Supports

5.7.7.1 Securing of Machinery Beams and Type of Supports

5.7.7.1.1 All machinery and sheaves shall be so supported and secured as to effectively prevent any part becoming loose or displaced.

5.7.7.1.2 Beams directly supporting machinery shall be of steel or reinforced concrete.

5.7.7.1.3 Machinery or equipment shall be secured to and supported on, or from the top of, overhead beams or floors, except for the following equipment:

(*a*) secondary or deflecting sheaves of traction elevators

(*b*) devices and their accessories for limiting or retarding car speed

(*c*) driving machines on the car

5.7.7.1.4 Cast iron in tension shall not be used for supporting members for sheaves where they are hung beneath beams.

5.7.7.2 Loads on Overhead Beams and Supports. The total load on overhead beams shall be equal to the weight of all apparatus resting on the beams, plus twice the maximum load suspended from the beams.

5.7.7.2.1 The load resting on the beams shall include the complete weights of the driving machine, sheaves, controller, etc.

5.7.7.2.2 The load suspended from the beams shall include the sum of the tensions in all ropes suspended from the beams.

NOTE (5.7.7.2): The object in doubling the suspended load is to allow for impact, accelerating stresses, etc.

5.7.7.3 Factor of Safety of Overhead Beams and Supports. The factor of safety for overhead beams and their supports shall be not less than 5 for steel and 6 for reinforced concrete.

5.7.7.4 Allowable Stresses and Deflections. Overhead beams and supports shall conform to 2.9.4 and 2.9.5.

5.7.8 Hoistway Doors and Gates

5.7.8.1 Where Required. The full width of each landing opening shall be protected by doors or gates. The landing opening shall be at least 2 030 mm (80 in.) in height. The entire entrance assembly shall be capable of withstanding a force of 1 100 N (250 lbf) applied on the landing site at right angles to, and approximately at the center of, a panel. This force shall be distributed over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this test. Openwork entrances shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter.

5.7.8.2 Projections of Hoistway Doors or Gates Into Hoistway. The hoistway face of the landing doors or gates shall not project into the hoistway beyond the landing sill. No hardware, except that required for door locking devices or contacts, signals, or door operating devices, shall project into the hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill.

5.7.8.3 Access to Hoistways for Emergency and Inspection Purposes. A device to unlock and permit opening of the hoistway door from the landing side, regardless of the location of the car in the hoistway, shall be provided at the top and bottom landings and shall be permitted at all landings. This device shall be designed to prevent unlocking the door with common tools.

The operating means for unlocking the door shall be of Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

5.7.8.4 Opening of Hoistway Doors and Gates. Hoistway doors or gates shall be so arranged that it will not be necessary to reach behind any panel or jamb to operate them.

5.7.8.5 Hangers and Stops for Sliding Hoistway Doors. Hangers, conforming to 2.11.11.4.1 and 2.11.11.4.2, shall be provided.

5.7.8.6 Distance Between Hoistway Doors or Gates and Landing Sills and Car Doors or Gates. The distance between the hoistway doors or gates and the hoistway edge of the landing sill shall not exceed 57 mm (2.25 in.), and the distance between the hoistway faces of the landing door or gate and the car door or gate shall not exceed 133 mm (5.25 in.).

5.7.9 Locking Devices for Hoistway Doors or Gates

Hoistway doors or gates shall be provided with hoistway door interlocks or with locking devices and electric contacts conforming to 2.12.

5.7.10 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

5.7.10.1 Enclosures Required. Except at the entrance, cars shall be fully enclosed with metal at the sides and top. The enclosure at the sides shall be solid or of openwork that will reject a ball of 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. The minimum clear height inside the car shall be 1 980 mm (78 in.).

5.7.10.2 Securing Enclosures. The car enclosure shall be secured to the platform in such a manner that it cannot work loose or become displaced in regular service.

5.7.10.3 Illumination in Car. Each car shall be provided with an electric light and a light control switch. The light shall provide illumination of at least 27 lx (2.5 fc) at the landing edge of the car platform.

5.7.10.4 Emergency Exits. When car size and construction permit, and other conditions warrant, an emergency exit with a cover shall be permitted in the top of the car enclosure conforming to 5.7.10.4.1 through 5.7.10.4.4.

5.7.10.4.1 The exit opening shall have an area of not less than 0.227 m (352 in.), and shall not measure less than 406 mm (16 in.) on any side.

5.7.10.4.2 The exit shall be so located as to provide a clear passageway unobstructed by fixed elevator equipment located in, or on top of, the car.

5.7.10.4.3 The exit cover shall open outward and shall be hinged, or otherwise attached, to the car top.

5.7.10.4.4 The exit cover shall be equipped with a switch or contact that, when opened, will cause a device to remove power from the machine motor and brake. The exit cover switch or contact shall be of a manual reset type.

5.7.10.5 Car Doors or Gates. A car door or gate that, when closed, shall guard the opening to its full height, shall be provided at each entrance to the car. Car doors shall be of solid or openwork construction that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. Collapsible car gates shall be of a design that, when fully closed (extended position), will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter.

5.7.11 Car Construction

5.7.11.1 Car Frames and Platforms. Elevator car frames shall be metal. Elevator car platforms shall be metal or a combination of metal and wood. Where wood is used, the platform shall conform to 2.15.8. Car frames and platforms shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5, based on the rated load.

5.7.11.2 Use of Cast Iron. Cast iron shall not be used in the construction of any member of the car frame or platform other than for guide shoes and guide-shoe brackets.

5.7.11.3 Use of Glass. Glass shall not be used in elevator cars, except for the car light and accessories necessary for the operation of the car or car vision panels that, if provided, shall conform to 2.14.2.5.

5.7.11.4 Number of Compartments. The car shall not have more than one compartment.

5.7.12 Capacity and Loading

5.7.12.1 Capacity and Data Plates. Capacity and data plates, conforming to 2.16.3, shall be provided.

5.7.12.2 Limitation of Load, Speed, and Platform Area. The rated load shall not exceed 454 kg (1,000 lb). The inside net platform area shall not exceed 1.208 m^2 (13 ft^2). The minimum rated load shall not be less than that based on 3.35 kPa (70 lbf/ft^2) of inside net platform area or 113 kg (250 lb), whichever is greater. The rated speed shall not exceed 0.76 m/s (150 ft/min). Winding drum machines shall comply with 2.24.1.

5.7.13 Car Safeties and Governors

5.7.13.1 Car Safeties and Governors for Traction and Winding-Drum-Type Elevators. Cars suspended by wire ropes shall be provided with a car safety capable of stopping and sustaining the car with rated load. The safeties shall be Type A and shall conform to 2.17.5.1.

The car safety shall be actuated by a speed governor. The governor shall be operated to set the safety when the car has attained a maximum speed of 0.9 m/s (175 ft/min). The operation of the safety shall conform to 2.17.8.1.

The speed governor shall be located where it cannot be struck by the car or counterweight in case of overtravel and where there is sufficient space for full movement of the governor parts. Governor ropes shall conform to 2.18.5.

5.7.13.2 Car Safeties and Governors for Rack-and-Pinion-Type Elevators. The car shall be provided with one or more safeties identified in 2.17.5. The safeties shall be attached to the car frame or supporting structure. All car safeties shall be mounted on a single car frame and shall operate on one pair of guide members or on one vertical rack.

Rack-and-pinion machines have safeties consisting of a freely rotating safety pinion, a governor, and a safety device that shall be permitted to form an integral unit mounted on the car. The freely rotating pinion travels on a stationary rack mounted vertically in the hoistway. The rotating pinion drives the governor. When the downward speed of the car reaches the tripping value, the rotating governor actuates the safety device, which, in turn, brings the car to a gradual stop.

5.7.13.2.1 Stopping Distances. The travel of the car measured from the governor tripping to the full stop shall not exceed the following values:

(a) for car safeties: 1 625 mm (64 in.)

(b) for counterweight safeties: 1 980 mm (78 in.)

5.7.13.2.2 Marking Plates. A metal plate shall be securely attached to each safety so as to be readily visible and shall be marked in a legible and permanent manner with letters and figures not less than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) in height, indicating the following:

(a) the maximum governor tripping speed, in m/s (ft/min), for which the safety is rated to be used

(b) the maximum weight, in kg (lb), which the safety, as installed, is designed to stop and sustain

5.7.13.2.3 Governor Ropes. Governor ropes shall conform to 2.18.5, when applicable.

5.7.13.3 Opening of Brake and Motor Control Circuits on Safety Application. The motor control circuit and the brake control circuit shall be opened before, or at the time, the safety applies.

5.7.13.4 Application of Car Safety. A car safety device that depends upon the completion or maintenance of an electric circuit for the application of the safety shall not be used. Car safeties shall be applied mechanically.

5.7.13.5 Minimum Factors of Safety and Stresses of Safety Parts and Rope Connections. The minimum factors of safety and stresses of safety parts and any associated rope connections shall conform to 2.17.12.

5.7.14 Suspension Ropes

5.7.14.1 Types Permitted. Suspension means shall consist of not less than two wire ropes.

Only iron (low-carbon steel) or steel wire ropes, having the commercial classification "Elevator Wire Rope," or wire rope specifically constructed for elevator use shall be used for the suspension of elevator cars and for the suspension of counterweights. The wire material for ropes shall be manufactured by the open-hearth or electric furnace process or their equivalent.

5.7.14.2 Minimum Diameter of Suspension Ropes. The minimum diameter of any suspension rope shall be not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.).

5.7.14.3 Factor of Safety of Suspension Means. The factor of safety of the suspension means shall be not less than 7.95.

5.7.14.4 Arc of Contact of Suspension Means on Sheaves. The arc of contact of a wire rope on a traction sheave and the shape of the grooves shall be sufficient to produce adequate traction under all load conditions.

5.7.14.5 Arrangement of Wire Ropes on Winding Drums. All wire ropes anchored to a winding drum shall have not less than one full turn of rope on the drum when the car or counterweight has reached its limit of possible overtravel, including a fully compressed buffer. Each turn of the wire rope on the winding drum shall be in a separate groove on the drum.

5.7.14.6 Lengthening, Splicing, Repairing, or Replacing Suspension Means. No car or counterweight rope shall be lengthened or repaired by splicing. If one wire rope of a set is worn or damaged and requires replacement, the entire set of ropes shall be replaced.

5.7.14.7 Securing Ends of Suspension Ropes in Winding Drums. The winding drum ends of car and counterweight wire ropes shall be secured by clamps on the inside of the drum or by one of the methods specified in 5.7.14.8 for fastening wire ropes to car or counterweight.

5.7.14.8 Fastening of Rope Suspension Means to Cars and Counterweights. The car or counterweight ends of wire ropes shall be fastened by properly made individual tapered babbitted sockets or by properly attached fittings as recommended by wire-rope manufacturers.

Tapered babbitted rope sockets and the method of babbitting shall conform to 2.20.9.4 and 2.20.9.6. The diameter of the hole in the small end of the socket shall not exceed the nominal diameter of the rope by more than 2.4 mm (0.094 in.).

5.7.15 Counterweight Guiding and Construction

5.7.15.1 Guiding. Counterweights shall be guided to prevent horizontal movement. Guide rails, where used, shall conform to 5.7.17.

5.7.15.2 Car Counterweights. A car counterweight on winding drum elevators shall not be of sufficient weight to cause slackening of any car hoisting rope during acceleration or retardation of the car.

5.7.15.3 Types of Counterweight Construction

(a) One-piece solid or laminated steel counterweights shall be permitted to be used.

(b) Means shall be provided to retain counterweight sections, if used, in place if they become broken, whether carried in a frame or not. If tie rods are used, the sections shall be fastened together by a minimum of two tie rods that pass through all weight sections. Tie rods shall be provided with locknuts and cotter pins at each end.

5.7.16 Car and Counterweight Buffers

5.7.16.1 Car and counterweight buffers shall be provided and shall conform to the applicable requirements of 2.22.

5.7.16.2 For rack-and-pinion elevators, spring buffers, where used, shall be so designed and installed that they will not be fully compressed when struck by the car with its rated load at governor tripping speed where the safety is governor operated, or at 125% of rated speed where the safety is not governor operated. Kinetic energy from the drive unit shall be taken into account in the design calculations. The effect of the counterweight, where used, shall be permitted to be taken into account in the design calculations.

5.7.17 Car Guide Rails and Guide-Rail Fastenings

Car guide rails shall be provided.

5.7.17.1 Material. Guide rails and guide-rail fastenings shall be of steel, or where steel presents a hazard, as in chemical or explosive atmospheres, guide rails shall be permitted to be of selected wood or other suitable nonferrous materials.

5.7.17.2 Fastenings, Deflections, and Joints. Guide rails shall be securely fastened, shall not deflect more than 6 mm (25 in.) under normal operation, and shall have their joints well-fitted and strongly secured. Guide rails and their joints and fastenings shall withstand without failure the application of the car safety when stopping the car with its rated load.

5.7.17.3 Extension of Guide Rails at Top and Bottom of Hoistway. Guide rails shall extend from the bottom of the hoistway to a sufficient height above the top landing to prevent the guide shoes from running off the rails when the car or counterweight is at its extreme upper position.

5.7.18 Driving Machines and Sheaves

5.7.18.1 Types of Driving Machines. Driving machines shall be of the traction, drum, screw, or rack-and-pinion type. The installation of belt-drive and chain-drive machines is prohibited.

5.7.18.1.1 Screw Machines. Screw machines shall conform to 4.2.15.

5.7.18.1.2 Rack-and-Pinion Machines. The rack-and-pinion drive shall consist of one or more power-driven rotating pinions mounted on the car and arranged to travel on a stationary vertical rack mounted in the hoistway. The drive shall have at least one pinion, one rack, and two backup rollers. The pinions and rack shall be of steel with a minimum safety factor of 8 for the pinion and the rack. Driving machines located within the car shall be fully enclosed with solid or openwork metal that shall reject a ball 13 mm (0.5 in.) in diameter and that shall be locked.

5.7.18.2 Material and Grooving for Sheaves and Drums. Winding drums, traction sheaves, and overhead and deflecting sheaves shall be of cast iron or steel and of a pitch diameter of not less than 30 times the diameter of the wire suspension ropes, except that where 8 × 19 steel ropes are used on a drum-type machine installation, the pitch diameter of drums and sheaves shall be permitted to be reduced to 21 times the diameter of the rope. The rope grooves shall be machined.

5.7.18.3 Factor of Safety for Driving Machines and Sheaves. The factor of safety for driving machines and sheaves shall conform to 2.24.3.

5.7.18.4 Bolts Transmitting Torque, and Set Screws. Bolts transmitting torque, and set screws shall conform to 2.24.4.

5.7.18.5 Friction-Gearing or Clutch Mechanism. Friction-gearing or clutch mechanisms shall not be used for connecting the drum or sheaves to the main driving mechanism.

5.7.18.6 Use of Cast Iron in Gears. Worms and worm gears made of cast iron shall not be used.

5.7.18.7 Driving-Machine Brakes. Driving machines shall be equipped with electrically released spring-applied friction brakes.

5.7.18.8 Operation of Brake. A single ground or short circuit, a countervoltage, or a motor field discharge shall not prevent the brake magnet from allowing the brake to set when the operating device is placed in the stop position.

5.7.18.9 Access to Machines and Sheaves. A permanent, safe, and convenient means of access to elevator machine rooms and overhead machinery spaces shall be provided for authorized personnel.

5.7.19 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except for the following, which do not apply:

2.26.1.2	For Car-Switch Operation Elevators
2.26.1.3	Additional Operating Devices for Elevators Equipped to Carry One-Piece Loads Greater Than the Rated Load
2.26.1.4	Inspection Operation (NOTE: A top-of-car operating station may be provided, and if provided, shall conform to 2.26.1.4)
2.26.1.6	Operation in Leveling or Truck Zone
2.26.2.12	Emergency Terminal Speed-Limiting Devices
2.26.2.13	Buffer Switches for Oil Buffers Used With Type C Car Safeties
2.26.2.14	Hoistway Door Interlocks and Hoistway-Door Electric Contacts
2.26.2.20	Electric Contacts for Hinged Car Platform Sills
2.26.10	Absorption of Regenerated Power

5.7.20 Operation

5.7.20.1 Types of Operation. The following types of operation shall be permitted:

(*a*) continuous-pressure operation.

(b) momentary-pressure operation with up-down buttons or switches in the car and up-down buttons or switches, or call buttons, at each landing. It is not required that the operation be selective.

(c) single automatic operation.

5.7.20.2 Hand-Rope Operation. Hand-rope operation shall not be used.

5.7.21 Emergency Signal and/or Communication

Each elevator shall be equipped with an alarm button or switch in the car operating station and an alarm device mounted in a location that shall be readily available to a person who is normally situated in the vicinity when the elevator is in use, or a means of voice communication to a receiving station always attended when the installation is in use. If the alarm device or means of voice communication is normally activated by utility power supply, it shall be backed up by a manual or battery-operated device.

5.7.22 Layout Drawings

Information provided on layout drawings shall conform to 2.28.1.

5.7.23 Welding

All welding shall conform to 8.8.

SECTION 5.8 SHIPBOARD ELEVATORS

Requirement 5.8 applies to elevators installed on a ship or offshore drilling rigs for the purpose of transporting personnel, maintenance equipment, and ship stores.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *shipboard elevators.*

5.8.1 Electric Shipboard Elevators

Electric shipboard elevators shall conform to Part 2, except as modified by 5.8.

(07) **5.8.1.1 Hoistway Enclosures.** The hoistway shall be entirely enclosed over all of its height by means of a continuous solid steel fire-resistive enclosure with an equivalent fire-resistance rating of 1 h as defined in the 1974 Amendment of SOLAS Regulation 3. Elevators with total travel within one compartment of the vessel shall be permitted to be enclosed with expanded metal having openings the maximum of 25 mm (1 in.). The hoistway enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact between the enclosure and the car or counterweight when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 1 112 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles at any point over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.).

(07) **5.8.1.2 Separate Counterweight Hoistways.** The hoistway shall be entirely enclosed over all of its height by means of a continuous solid steel fire-resistive enclosure with an equivalent fire-resistance rating of 1 h as defined in the 1974 Amendment of SOLAS Regulation 3. Where a separate counterweight hoistway is provided on an elevator that has total travel within a single compartment of the vessel, it shall be permitted to be enclosed with expanded metal having openings the maximum of 25 mm (1 in.). The hoistway enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact of the car or counterweight and its enclosure when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 1 112 N (250 lbf) applied at right angles at any point over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.).

5.8.1.3 Protection of Space Below Hoistway. All elevators shall be provided with elevator counterweight safeties conforming to 2.17.4.

5.8.1.4 Hoistway Entrances. Except when opening and closing in response to control signals, each hoistway door shall have means to prevent door movement and slamming when the vessel is subjected to conditions up to and including a 30-deg roll and a 10-deg pitch simultaneously.

5.8.1.5 Top Emergency Exits. It shall be permissible to open the top emergency exit cover from the top of car or from within the car. This exit cover shall be provided with an electric contact conforming to 2.12.5. The breaking of this contact shall cause the power to be removed from the elevator driving motor and brake and the power shall be restored only by a manually operated reset switch located inside the elevator enclosure. Means shall be provided within the elevator car to gain access to the top emergency exit. A fixed vertical ladder of noncombustible material shall be provided on the inside of the hoistway to permit access from the top of the car to the hoistway entrance above. Means shall be provided to snap latch the cover closed or fully open.

5.8.1.6 Illumination of Cars. Elevators used primarily for the movement of personnel shall have the electrical power meet the requirements of IEEE 45 with car enclosure lighting to be supplied from the vessel's final emergency power source. In addition, a standby (emergency) lighting power source shall be furnished conforming to 2.14.7.1.3.

5.8.1.7 Traction Driving Machines

5.8.1.7.1 Traction driving machines shall be provided with a device to cause the elevator to stop and remain stopped if

(a) when a start is initiated, the driving machine does not rotate

(b) the car or counterweight is stopped in a downward motion by an obstruction that causes the suspension ropes to slip on the driving sheave

5.8.1.7.2 This device shall function in a time that does not exceed the smaller of the following values:

(*a*) 45 s

(*b*) time for car traveling the full travel, plus 10 s with a minimum of 20 s if the full travel time is less than 10 s

5.8.1.7.3 This device shall not affect operation from top-of-car inspection station.

5.8.1.7.4 Driving machines shall be provided with a manual means of operation, allowing the car to be moved to the nearest landing in the event of a power failure. This shall be done by having the end of the drive motor shaft arranged to receive a crank. The manual effort required to move the car in the upward direction with rated load shall not exceed 400 N. One crank or tool shall be furnished for this purpose.

5.8.1.8 Emergency Operation and Signal Devices

(*a*) Shipboard elevators shall be required to conform to 2.27.1.1.

(*b*) In ships or offshore drilling rigs in which a watchman is not continuously available to take action when the required emergency signal is operated, the elevator shall be provided with one of the following additional emergency signaling devices:

(*1*) a telephone connected to a central telephone exchange system

(*2*) means within the car for communicating with or signaling to an emergency service that operates 24 h each day

5.8.1.9 Special Conditions. Elevators shall be designed and installed to function in accordance with 2.14 through 2.28 when operating under the following conditions inherent to the installation location:

(*a*) continuous vibration: 2 mm peak to peak of frequency 0 to 25 Hz

(*b*) rolling: ±10 deg, period 10 s

(*c*) pitching: ±5 deg, period 7 s

(*d*) heaving amplitude: A 3.8, period 10 s, calculated the formula $A = 3.8 - 0.01\ (L - 250)$, where L is the length of the ship, in meters, measured between the perpendicular taken at extremities of the deepest subdivision loadline

5.8.1.10 Handrails. Cars shall be fitted with at least one handrail.

5.8.1.11 Flooring. Cars shall be fitted with slip-resistant flooring.

5.8.2 Hydraulic Shipboard Elevators

Hydraulic shipboard elevators shall conform to Part 3, except as modified by 5.8.1 and 5.8.2.

5.8.2.1 Storage Tanks. Power unit oil storage tanks shall be constructed in such a manner to prevent spillage of hydraulic fluid under the following conditions inherent to the installation location:

(*a*) rolling: ±45 deg

(*b*) pitching: ±5 deg

5.8.2.2 Special Conditions. Elevators shall be designed and installed to function in accordance with Part 3 when operating under the following conditions inherent to the installation location:

(*a*) continuous vibration: 2 mm peak to peak of frequency 0 to 25 Hz

(*b*) rolling: ±10 deg, period 10 s

(*c*) pitching: ±5 deg, period 7 s

(*d*) heaving amplitude: A 3.8, period 10 s, calculated by the formula $A = 3.8 - 0.01\ (L - 250)$, where L is the length of the ship, in meters, measured between the perpendicular taken at extremities of the deepest subdivision loadline

5.8.2.3 Handrails. Cars shall be fitted with at least one handrail.

5.8.2.4 Flooring. Cars shall be fitted with slip-resistant flooring.

5.8.3 Rack-and-Pinion Shipboard Elevators

Rack-and-pinion shipboard elevators shall conform to 4.1, except as modified by 5.8.1 and 5.8.3.

5.8.3.1 Special Conditions. Elevators shall be designed and installed to function in accordance with 4.1 when operating under the following conditions inherent to the installation location:

(*a*) continuous vibration: 2 mm peak to peak of frequency 0 to 25 Hz

(*b*) rolling: ±10 deg, period 10 s

(*c*) pitching: ±5 deg, period 7 s

(*d*) heaving amplitude: A 3.8, period 10 s, calculated by the formula $A = 3.8 - 0.01\ (L - 250)$, where L is the length of the ship, in meters, measured between the perpendicular taken at extremities of the deepest subdivision loadline

5.8.3.2 Handrails. Cars shall be fitted with at least one handrail.

5.8.3.3 Flooring. Cars shall be fitted with slip-resistant flooring.

SECTION 5.9 MINE ELEVATORS (07)

In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, requirement 5.9 applies to elevators as covered by Part 2, permanently installed in mine shafts. The purpose is to provide vertical transportation of mine personnel, their tools, equipment, and mine supplies. By reason of their limited use and the types of construction of the mines served, compliance with Part 2 is modified as follows (see also 1.3):

(a) Substitute "Title 30 Code of Federal Regulations" or "State Mine Laws" (if applicable) for "building code."
(b) Substitute "mine" for "building."
(c) Requirements modified in 5.9.

NOTES (5.9):
(1) Title 30 Code of Federal Regulations provides for certain additional and more stringent requirements. Where applicable, Title 30 requirements have been addressed in this Section.
(2) See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *mine elevators.*

5.9.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1, except as modified by the following:
(a) Requirement 2.1.1 does not apply, except for 2.1.1.3 and 2.1.1.5, which do apply.
(b) Requirement 2.1.6.2 does not apply.

5.9.2 Pits

Pits or the area below the elevator shall conform to 2.2, except as modified by 5.9.2.1 and 5.9.2.2.

5.9.2.1 When the pit extends below the mine level, a pit water level alarm shall be provided in an attended location to annunciate water accumulation in the elevator pit. This water level alarm shall be powered from the elevator electrical source. The elevator shall return to the surface and shall not be permitted to start if the power to the water level annunciator is interrupted.

5.9.2.2 When the bottom of the hoistway is located at or above the mine level, a walk-in pit is permitted. A ramp shall be permanently installed to provide access to the mine level from the bottom landing. Required bottom runby and space for the buffers, tension frames, and other equipment normally installed in the pit must be considered when determining the location of the bottom landing. The pit floor shall be so designed to prevent accumulation of water in the area. The area shall be protected with either an unperforated metal guard, or if of openwork, guards shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter. Guards shall extend not less than 2 000 mm (78 in.) above the level of the pit floor.

5.9.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

The location and guarding of counterweights shall conform to 2.3.

5.9.4 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights

Bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 2.4, except 2.4.12 shall have the minimum vertical distance in the refuge area increased from 1 100 mm (43 in.) to 2 000 mm (78 in.).

5.9.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5, except as modified by 5.9.5.

Requirement 2.5.1.5 only applies when the car is located at the lower landing.

5.9.6 Protection of Space Below Hoistways

The protection of space below the hoistways shall conform to 2.6.

5.9.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to 2.7, except as modified by the following:
(a) Requirement 2.7.1.1.2 does not apply.
(b) Note (3) in 2.7.1.1 does not apply.

5.9.8 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways and machinery rooms shall comply with 2.8, except as modified by 5.9.8.1 and 5.9.8.2.

5.9.8.1 Hoistway and Car Wiring. In addition to the requirements of 2.8.1, all wiring, raceways, and traveling cables installed in the hoistway or on the car, used directly in connection with the elevator, shall be suitable for weatherproof (NEMA 4) application. Suitable expansion joints shall be provided in vertical raceways, if necessary, to prevent damage caused by extreme temperature changes.

5.9.8.2 Requirement 2.8.2 does not apply.
(a) All pipes shall be secured to prevent interference with the elevator equipment.
(b) The clearance between pipes, fittings, brackets, and elevator equipment shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.).
(c) All pipes shall be suitably identified as to its contents.

NOTE (5.9.8): Note (1) in 2.8.4 does not apply.

5.9.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations

Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to 2.9.

5.9.10 Guarding

The guarding of equipment and standard railing shall conform to 2.10.

5.9.11 Protection of Hoistway Openings

The protection of hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11, except as modified by the following:
(a) Requirement 2.11.7.2 does not apply. Glass hoistway doors are prohibited.
(b) Requirement 2.11.14 does not apply.
(c) Requirement 2.11.15 does not apply.

(d) Requirement 2.11.16 does not apply.
(e) Requirement 2.11.17 does not apply.
(f) Requirement 2.11.18 does not apply.
(g) Requirement 2.11.19 does not apply.

5.9.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches

Hoistway door locking devices, hoistway door and car door or gate electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to 2.12, except as modified by the following:

(a) In addition, a car door interlock shall be provided.
(b) Hoistway access switches are not required if a car top access panel is provided.

5.9.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors

When provided, power operation of hoistway doors and car doors and gates shall conform to 2.13.

5.9.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Car enclosures, car doors and gates, and car illumination shall conform to 2.14, except as modified by 5.9.14.1 through 5.9.14.5.

5.9.14.1 Car Top Access Panel. A car top access panel shall be provided in the top of all elevator cars. Car top access panels shall conform to the following:

(07) (a) Requirement 2.14.1.5 applies, except as modified by this requirement. The car top access panel will substitute for the car top emergency exit panel.

(07) (b) The car top access panel shall have an area of not less than 0.58 m^2 (900 $in.^2$) and shall measure not less than 635 mm (25 in.) on any side. The panel shall open outward or slide over the car top. It shall be hinged, or be retained in a track. The movable portion of the access panel, if hinged, shall be provided with means to counterbalance the panel and restrain it from closing when in the open position. The force required to open the access panel or prevent it from closing shall not exceed 45 N (10 lbf). When in the fully opened position, the access panel shall resist accidental closing. The movable portion of the access panel shall not reduce the running clearance. The access panel shall be openable without the use of tools or keys.

(07) (c) The car top access panel shall be provided with a switch whose contacts are positively opened mechanically and their opening shall not be dependent on springs that will initiate a controlled slow down and stop when the access panel is opened. A permanently mounted emergency stop switch shall be located on top of the car, adjacent to the access panel to secure the car prior to transferring to inspection operation.

5.9.14.2 A permanent fixed ladder shall be provided for passage through the car top access panel. The ladder shall project through the car canopy at least 1 070 mm (42 in.) above the car top, or handgrips shall be provided to the same height.

The rungs, cleats, or steps shall be spaced 300 mm (12 in.) on center. A clear distance of not less than 115 mm (4.5 in.) from the centerline of the rungs, cleats, or steps to the nearest permanent object in the back of the ladder shall be provided. Handgrips, if provided, shall have a clear distance of not less than 115 mm (4.5 in.) from their centerline to the nearest permanent object.

5.9.14.3 Car Top Protection. Protection from falling debris shall be provided on all car tops. The car top protection shall

(a) not interfere with the use of the car top access panel
(b) be solid without perforations and shall comply with strength requirements of 2.14.1.6
(c) provide a minimum head height clearance of 2 m (78 in.)
(d) be removable if the car top protection interferes with normal inspection, maintenance, and repairs

5.9.14.4 Requirement 2.14.1.7.2 does not apply.

5.9.14.5 Requirement 2.14.7.1.3 does not apply.

5.9.15 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall conform to 2.15 and 5.9.15.1.

5.9.15.1 Corrosion Protection. Car frames, platforms, bolts, rivets, and fastenings shall be treated with a corrosion-resistant protective coating, be electroplated, or be made of corrosion-resistant material.

5.9.16 Capacity and Loading

Capacity and loading requirements shall conform to 2.16.

5.9.17 Car and Counterweight Safeties

Car and counterweight safeties shall conform to 2.17, except as modified by 5.9.17.1 through 5.9.17.6.

5.9.17.1 Requirement 2.17.7.2 applies, except every safety shall be provided with a switch, operated by the safety mechanism (see 2.26.2.9).

The counterweight safety switch shall be operated by the safety mechanism or a means to detect application of the safety independent from the counterweight governor switch(es) shall be provided.

5.9.17.2 Requirement 2.17.7.3 applies to both car and counterweight safety mechanism switches.

5.9.17.3 Requirement 2.17.7.4 applies to both car and counterweight safety mechanism switches.

5.9.17.4 Requirement 2.17.9.1 applies, except safeties applied by rope drums are prohibited.

5.9.17.5 Requirement 2.17.9.3 applies to both car and counterweight safeties. When the counterweight safeties are furnished, means shall be provided to release the safeties if both safeties are applied simultaneously.

(ED) **5.9.17.6** Requirement 2.21.4.2 does not apply.

5.9.18 Speed Governors

Speed governors shall conform to 2.18, except as modified by 5.9.18.1.

5.9.18.1 Governor Rope Tension Sheaves. In addition to the requirements of 2.18.7, the governor rope tension sheave shall be provided with a governor rope tension sheave switch or switches mechanically opened by the governor rope tension sheave before the sheave reaches its upper or lower limit of travel, to cause the elevator speed to be reduced to 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). This switch shall be manually reset.

5.9.19 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection

Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall conform to 2.19.

5.9.20 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

Suspension ropes and their connections shall conform to 2.20.

5.9.21 Counterweights

Counterweights shall conform to 2.21.

5.9.22 Buffers and Bumpers

Buffers and bumpers shall conform to 2.22, except as modified by the following:

(a) Oil buffers shall be suitable for operation at extreme temperatures experienced in the anticipated mining environment.

(b) Requirement 2.22.4.5(c) applies, except that all oil buffers shall be provided with a switch conforming to 2.26.4.3 that will cause the power to be removed from the driving machine when the plunger is not within 13 mm (0.5 in.) of the fully extended position.

5.9.23 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and fastenings shall conform to 2.23.

5.9.24 Driving Machines and Sheaves

Driving machines and sheaves shall conform to 2.24.

5.9.25 Terminal Stopping Devices

Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.

5.9.26 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except 2.26.2.5, 2.26.2.21, and 2.26.12.

An emergency stop switch shall be provided in the car, and located in or adjacent to each car operating panel.

When open ("STOP" position), this switch shall cause the electric power to be removed from the elevator driving-machine motor and brake.

Emergency stop switches shall

(a) be of the manually opened and closed type

(b) have red operating handles or buttons

(c) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions

(d) while opened, cause the audible device to sound (see 2.27.1.1.1)

(e) conform to 2.26.4.3

5.9.27 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices

Conformance to 2.27 is not required, except 2.27.1 and 2.27.2 apply.

5.9.28 Layout Drawings

Information required on layout drawings shall conform to 2.28.

5.9.29 Identification

Identification of equipment shall conform to 2.29, except 2.29.2 does not apply.

5.9.30 Welding

Welding shall conform to 8.8, except when welding in or above the hoistway, requirements of 30 CFR 75.1106 and 75.1106-1 apply.

SECTION 5.10
ELEVATORS USED FOR CONSTRUCTION

Requirement 5.10 applies to elevators temporarily used for construction or demolition to provide transportation for construction personnel, tools, and materials only.

Such elevators utilize temporary or permanent equipment in a temporary or permanent location. Because of their special use in a special environment, full compliance with Part 2 and Part 3 is not practical or necessary.

Requirement 5.10.1 applies to electric elevators used for construction.

Requirement 5.10.2 applies to hydraulic elevators of the direct-plunger type used for construction.

Elevators used for construction shall not be accessible to the general public unless they comply with Part 2 or Part 3.

NOTE (5.10): See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *elevators used for construction.*

5.10.1 Electric Elevators Used for Construction

5.10.1.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

5.10.1.1.1 Hoistway Enclosures

(a) Where the hoistway is adjacent to areas permitting passage of people (e.g., stairwells, floors, and work space exterior to the hoistway), it shall be fully enclosed. The enclosure shall be of sufficient strength to prevent contact between the enclosure material and the car or counterweight when the enclosure is subjected to a force of 890 N (200 lbf) applied at right angles at any point on an area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). Openwork enclosures shall be permitted to be used on all but the entrance side of the hoistway and shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. Openwork enclosures shall be so located as to provide at least 150 mm (6 in.) clearance between the outside of the enclosure and the closest member of the car or counterweight assembly. Openwork enclosures shall not be used on elevators with car speeds of over 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min).

(b) Overhead protection shall be provided across the entire cross-sectional area of the hoistway. It shall be located above the machine when the machine is located directly over the elevator, and shall be capable of sustaining a concentrated load of 1 335 N (300 lbf) on any area 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.).

(c) Where the elevator is operating in a multiple hoistway, and work is to be performed in an adjacent portion of that multiple hoistway, the construction elevator's hoistway shall be fully separated. The material used for this separation shall

(1) be equal to or stronger than 1 mm (0.0437 in.) diameter wire

(2) have openings not exceeding 25 mm (1 in.)

(3) be so supported and braced that when subjected to a pressure of 4.79 kPa (100 lbf/ft^2) applied horizontally at any point, the deflection shall not exceed 25 mm (1 in.)

5.10.1.1.2 Working Requirements in the Hoistway

(a) Hoisting of materials in any portion of the hoistway of the elevator used for construction is prohibited unless the car is not in use and is unoccupied.

(b) Conformance with 5.10.1.1.1(c) is required to allow work in adjacent portions of a multiple hoistway.

(c) Hoisting of materials in adjacent portions of a multiple hoistway is prohibited unless under the direct supervision of the elevator contractor.

5.10.1.2 Pits

(a) A pit shall be provided for every elevator.

(b) The design shall conform to 5.10.1.1.1.

(c) Guards between adjacent pits shall conform to 5.10.1.1.1(c).

(d) The minimum pit depth required shall conform to 2.2.7.

5.10.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

5.10.1.3.1 Location of Counterweights. The location of the counterweights shall conform to 2.3.1.

5.10.1.3.2 Counterweight Pit Guards

(a) Counterweight guards shall be installed in the pit on all open sides of the counterweight runway, except as follows:

(1) Where compensating chains or ropes are attached to the counterweight, the guard shall be permitted to be omitted on the side facing the elevator car.

(2) Where pit-mounted buffers are used, the guard is permitted to be omitted where the bottom of the counterweight resting on its compressed buffer is 2 130 mm (84 in.) or more above the pit floor.

(b) The design, construction, and location of the guards shall conform to 2.3.2.2. Perforated material that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter shall be permitted to be used.

5.10.1.3.3 Separate Counterweight Hoistways. Where separate counterweight hoistways are provided, they shall conform to

(a) requirement 2.3.3 for permanent separate hoistway

(b) requirement 5.10.1.1.1 for temporary separate hoistway

5.10.1.4 Vertical Car Clearances and Runby. Top and bottom car clearances and runby shall conform to 2.4.

5.10.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

(a) Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5.1.1, 2.5.1.2, 2.5.1.3, and 2.5.1.6.

(b) The clearance between the car and landing sills shall conform to 2.5.1.4, except that the maximum clearance shall be not more than 100 mm (4 in.).

5.10.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways. Protection of spaces below hoistways not extending to the lowest level of the structure shall conform to the applicable requirements of 2.6, or the space below the hoistway shall be temporarily secured from occupancy with a fence or wall.

5.10.1.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

5.10.1.7.1 General Requirements

(a) Spaces containing machines, control equipment, sheaves, and other machinery shall be fully enclosed and protected from the elements. Enclosures shall be so supported and braced as to deflect not over 25 mm (1 in.) when subjected to a force of 450 N (100 lbf) applied horizontally over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). The overhead protection of the machine room shall conform to 5.10.1.1.1(b). The floor of the machine room shall conform to 5.10.1.7.2.

(b) A safe means of access to the machine room and machinery spaces shall be provided for authorized personnel. Access doors shall be of a minimum height of 1 830 mm (72 in.), and shall be kept closed and locked.

(c) Temporary electric lighting shall be provided in the machine room and machinery spaces. The illumination shall be not less than 100 lx (10 fc) at the floor level.

(d) Machine rooms shall be maintained free of refuse, and shall not be used for the storage of material unnecessary for the construction, maintenance, or operation of the elevator. Flammable liquids having a flash point of less than 38°C (100°F) shall not be kept in the machine room.

5.10.1.7.2 Machine Room and Machinery Space Floors

(a) A metal, concrete, or wood floor shall be provided, except that floors are not required below:

(1) secondary and deflecting sheaves of traction-type machines located over the hoistway

(2) overhead sheaves, governors, and other equipment where the elevator machine is located below or at the side of the hoistway, provided that

(a) means of access for inspection and servicing of governors is provided

(b) sheaves and other equipment (except governors) shall be permitted to be inspected and serviced from the top of the car or by other means

(b) The floor shall be located above, level with, or directly below the machine beams.

(c) Floors shall be designed to carry a minimum live load of 195 kg/m^2 (40 lb/ft^2).

(d) Floors shall be of concrete, wood, or of metal with or without perforations. Wood planking, when used, shall be scaffold grade or equivalent as recognized by approved grading rules for the species of wood used.

(e) The area to be covered by the floor shall conform to 2.1.3.5.

5.10.1.8 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Beams, supports, and foundations shall conform to 2.9.

NOTE: Temporary structural reinforcement shall be permitted to be used to meet the requirements of 5.10.1.

5.10.1.9 Hoistway Doors and Gates

5.10.1.9.1 Where Required. The full width of each landing opening shall be protected to its full height by doors, gates, transoms, or any combination thereof. The entire entrance assembly shall be capable of withstanding a force of 1 112 N (250 lbf) applied on the landing side at right angles to and approximately at the center of a panel. This force shall be distributed over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this test. Openwork entrances shall reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. Where permanent doors are provided, they shall conform to 2.11 through 2.13.

5.10.1.9.2 Emergency Doors. Emergency doors shall conform to 2.11.1.2.

5.10.1.9.3 Projection of Hoistway Doors or Gates Into the Hoistway. All projections of hoistway doors or gates into the hoistway shall conform to 2.11.5.

5.10.1.9.4 Hoistway Door Vision Panels

(a) Where permanent hoistway doors are installed, vision panels shall conform to 2.11.7.

(b) Where temporary swinging solid hoistway doors are used, a vision panel covered with material that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter and have a deflection not greater than any other part of the door shall be provided. The total area of the vision panel shall be not more than 0.016 m^2 (25 $in.^2$) and it shall be located between 1 370 mm (54 in.) and 1 675 mm (66 in.) above the floor level.

5.10.1.9.5 Openings of Hoistway Doors or Gates From the Landing Side

(a) For elevators with car speeds of up to 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min), hoistway doors or gates shall be provided with means that will latch the doors or gates mechanically so that they cannot be opened from the landing side, conforming to 5.10.1.21.1. Means shall be provided at a designated landing for unlatching the hoistway door or gate from the landing side to permit access to the car. At this landing, positive means shall be provided to lock the elevator entrance out of service.

(b) For elevators with car speeds over 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min), hoistway doors shall be provided with either of the following:

(1) interlocks conforming to 2.12.2

(2) combination mechanical locks and electric contacts conforming to 2.12.3

(c) The mechanical locking device, when used on temporary doors, shall be self-latching.

NOTE [5.10.1.9.5(c)]: When permanent doors are installed, it is recommended that the mechanical locking function of the permanent interlocks be used.

5.10.1.9.6 Closing of Hoistway Doors and Gates. Temporary hoistway doors and gates shall be considered to be in the closed position when the door or gate is fully closed and latched.

Permanent hoistway doors shall conform to 2.12.1. The electrical circuitry for hoistway door interlocks, or combination mechanical locks and electric contacts, does not have to be operational at this time unless the car speed is over 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min).

5.10.1.9.7 Hangers and Stops for Sliding Hoistway Doors. Hangers conforming to 2.11.11.4 shall be provided.

Where permanent hoistway doors are installed, they shall conform to 2.11, 2.12, and 2.13.

5.10.1.9.8 Weights for Closing and/or Balancing Temporary Hoistway Doors or Gates. Weights used to close or balance hoistway doors or gates should be located outside the hoistway enclosure and shall run in guides or be enclosed. Weights located inside the hoistway enclosure shall conform to 2.11.8. Guides shall be of metal, and the bottom of the guide or enclosure shall be so constructed as to retain the weights if their suspension members fail.

5.10.1.10 Car Enclosure, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

5.10.1.10.1 Enclosures Required. Except at the entrance, cars shall be fully enclosed with metal or wood on the sides and top. The enclosures shall be solid. The minimum clear height inside the car shall be 1 980 mm (78 in.). Car top enclosures shall be constructed to sustain a load of 135 kg (300 lb) on any 0.09 m^2 (1 ft^2) area.

5.10.1.10.2 Securing Enclosure. The enclosure shall be securely fastened to the car platform and so supported that it cannot loosen or become displaced in regular service, on application of the car safety, or on engagement of the buffer.

5.10.1.10.3 Illumination in the Car. Each car shall be provided with an electric light and a light control switch. The light shall provide illumination of at least 50 lx (5 fc) at the landing edge of the car platform. Light bulbs and tubes shall be suitably protected against accidental breakage.

5.10.1.10.4 Top Emergency Exits. Emergency exits with a cover shall be provided in the top of all elevator cars and shall conform to the following:

(a) The exit opening shall have an area of not less than 0.26 m^2 (400 $in.^2$), and shall measure not less than 400 mm (16 in.) on any side.

(b) The exit shall be so located as to provide a clear passageway unobstructed by fixed elevator equipment located in or on top of the car.

(c) The exit cover shall open outward and shall be hinged or otherwise attached to the car top and so arranged that the cover can be opened from the top of the car only. The cover when opened shall not protrude beyond the perimeter of the car.

(d) Operation of the car with the top emergency exit open is prohibited, except as specified in 5.10.1.10.4(e).

(e) Operation of the car with the top emergency exit open is permissible only when the load cannot be carried totally within the car enclosure and the operation is under the direct supervision of authorized personnel. The car shall not be operated at a speed of more than 0.75 m/s (50 ft/min).

5.10.1.10.5 Use of Glass. Glass shall not be used in elevator cars, except for the car light and accessories necessary for the operation of the car. Glass used for the car light and accessories shall be laminated and meet the requirements of ANSI Z97.1 or CAN/CGSB-12.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), except for transparency.

5.10.1.10.6 Number of Compartments. The number of compartments shall conform to 2.14.1.4.

5.10.1.10.7 Car Emergency Signal. Elevators shall be provided with an audible signaling device, or a permanent or portable means of two-way communication.

5.10.1.10.8 Car Doors or Gates. A car door or gate shall be provided at each entrance to the car. When closed, it shall guard the opening to its full height. Car doors shall be solid or openwork construction that will reject a ball 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter. Collapsible car gates shall be of a design that, when fully closed (extended position), will reject a ball 75 mm (3 in.) in diameter. Each door or gate shall be equipped with a car door or gate electric contact conforming to the requirements of 2.14.4.2. Operation of the car with the car door or gate open is prohibited.

5.10.1.11 Car Frames and Platforms. Car frames and platforms shall conform to 2.15, except for 2.15.8.

5.10.1.12 Rated Load and Speed

5.10.1.12.1 Rated Load. The inside net platform area shall be determined by the temporary rated load and shall conform to 2.16.1.

The maximum number of passengers shall be based on the temporary rated load divided by 90 kg (200 lb).

5.10.1.12.2 Reduction of Inside Net Platform Area. Temporary partitions shall be permitted to be installed for the purpose of restricting the inside net platform area. Such partitions shall be securely fastened to prevent unauthorized removal.

The temporary partitions shall be so installed as to provide for approximately symmetrical loading.

Temporary partitions used within a car enclosure to reduce the inside net platform area shall be permitted to be removed only under the supervision of the elevator contractor to accommodate bulky loads that do not exceed the temporary capacity.

5.10.1.12.3 Speed. The car speed shall not exceed 5 m/s (1,000 ft/min) unless permission to do so is granted by the authority having jurisdiction. Related devices such as governors and buffers shall be calibrated to the car speed.

5.10.1.13 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Car and counterweight safeties shall conform to 2.17.

5.10.1.14 Governors. Governors shall conform to 2.18.

5.10.1.15 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall be provided on new elevators, and on elevators being altered if required in 8.7, in conformance with 2.19.

5.10.1.16 Suspension Means. Elevator cars shall be suspended by steel wire ropes attached to the car frame or passing around sheaves attached to the car frame as required by 2.15.12, except as specified in 5.10.1.16.1 through 5.10.1.16.8.

Elevator cars arranged for progressive rises with continuous suspension ropes on storage reels shall have steel wire ropes attached to the car frame or the stationary hitch-ends with suitable anchorages on the basis of tensile and fatigue in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and conforming to 5.10.1.16.7.

5.10.1.16.1 Types Permitted. Suspension means shall conform to 2.20.1.

5.10.1.16.2 Minimum Number and Diameter of Suspension Ropes. Ropes shall conform to 2.20.4.

5.10.1.16.3 Factor of Safety. Ropes shall conform to 2.20.3. The factor of safety of the suspension wire ropes shall be based on the requirements for freight elevators.

5.10.1.16.4 Spare Rope Turns on Winding Drums. Ropes shall conform to 2.20.7.

5.10.1.16.5 Splicing and Replacement of Suspension Ropes. Suspension wire ropes shall not be lengthened or repaired by splicing. Damaged ropes in a set shall be permitted to be replaced without replacing the whole set.

5.10.1.16.6 Securing of Suspension Wire Ropes to Winding Drums. Ropes shall conform to 2.20.6.

5.10.1.16.7 Suspension-Rope Fastenings. The car and counterweight ends of suspension wire ropes, or the stationary hitch-ends where multiple roping is used, shall be fastened in such a manner that all portions of the rope, except the portion inside the rope sockets, shall be readily visible. Fastening shall be

(a) by individual tapered babbitted rope sockets (see 2.20.9.4)

(b) by means of clamps and wire-rope thimbles or by special fastening devices. Where clamps are used, the fastening shall conform to the following:

(1) Clamps shall not be of the U-bolt type.

(2) Both members of the clamps shall be provided with seats conforming to the lay of the rope.

5.10.1.16.8 Rope Data Tag. Tags shall conform to 2.20.2.2.

5.10.1.17 Counterweights. Counterweight guiding and construction shall conform to 2.21.

5.10.1.18 Car and Counterweight Buffers. Car and counterweight buffers shall conform to 2.22.

5.10.1.19 Car Guide Rails and Guide-Rail Fastenings. Car guide rails and guide-rail fastenings shall conform to 2.23.

5.10.1.20 Driving Machines and Sheaves

5.10.1.20.1 Driving Machines. All driving machines shall conform to 2.24.1, except that winding-drum machines shall be permitted to be used for passenger elevators subject to the requirements of 2.24.1(a), (b), and (c).

5.10.1.20.2 Material and Grooving for Sheaves and Drums. Permanent sheaves and drums shall conform to 2.24.2. Temporary sheaves and drums shall conform to 5.7.18.2.

5.10.1.20.3 Factor of Safety for Driving Machines and Sheaves. The factor of safety for driving machines and sheaves shall conform to 2.24.3.

5.10.1.20.4 Bolts Transmitting Torque, and Set Screws. Bolts transmitting torque, and set screws shall conform to 2.24.4.

5.10.1.20.5 Friction Gearing or Clutch Mechanism. Friction gearing or clutch mechanism is prohibited.

5.10.1.20.6 Use of Cast Iron in Gears. Worms and worm gears made of cast iron are prohibited.

5.10.1.20.7 Driving-Machine Brakes. Driving-machine brakes shall conform to 2.16.8, 2.24.8, and 2.26.8.

5.10.1.21 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

5.10.1.21.1 Applicable Requirements

(a) Operating devices and control equipment on elevators with a car speed of up to 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min) shall conform to 2.26, except for 2.26.1.6, 2.26.2.14, 2.26.4.4, and 2.26.12 that do not apply. See 5.10.1.21.3 regarding temporary wiring requirements.

(b) Operating devices and control equipment on elevators with a car speed of over 1.75 m/s (350 ft/min) shall also conform to 2.26.2.14, where applicable.

(c) Elevators used for construction shall not be required to conform to 2.26.11.

5.10.1.21.2 Operation and Operating Devices. Operating devices shall conform to 2.26.1.1. All automatic operation elevators shall conform to 2.14.

5.10.1.21.3 Temporary Wiring. Temporary wiring shall conform to Article 305 of NFPA 70 or Section 76 of CSA-C22.1, Part I, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

5.10.1.22 Floor Numbers. Hoistways shall have floor numbers, not less than 100 mm (4 in.) in height, on the hoistway side of the enclosure or hoistway doors.

5.10.1.23 Capacity and Data Plates or Signs

5.10.1.23.1 Plates or Signs Required and Locations. Every elevator car shall be provided with a capacity plate or sign and a data plate or sign temporarily fastened in place. The capacity plate or sign shall be located in a conspicuous position inside the car.

The data plate or sign shall be located on the car crosshead, or if there is no crosshead, inside the car.

5.10.1.23.2 Information Required on Plates or Signs

(a) Temporary capacity plates or signs shall indicate the maximum load and the maximum number of passengers allowed in the car during the use of the elevator for construction.

(b) Temporary data plates or signs shall indicate

(1) the approximate temporary weight of the car including the car safety and all auxiliary equipment attached to the car

(2) the temporary rated load and temporary speed

(3) the wire rope data required by 2.20.2.1

(4) the manufacturer's name and date of installation

5.10.1.23.3 Marking of Plates or Signs. Plates or signs shall have letters and figures stamped, cast, etched, stenciled, or painted on the surface in such a manner as to be legible. The height of the letters and figures shall be not less than

(a) 25 mm (1 in.) for capacity plates

(b) 3 mm (0.125 in.) for data plates

5.10.2 Hydraulic Elevators Used for Construction

5.10.2.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures. Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 5.10.1.1.

5.10.2.2 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to 5.10.1.7.

5.10.2.3 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway. Protection of the space below the hoistway shall conform to 3.6.

5.10.2.4 Vertical Clearances and Runby for Cars and Counterweights. Bottom and top clearances and runby for cars and counterweights shall conform to 3.4.

5.10.2.5 Emergency Doors. Emergency doors shall conform to 3.11.1.

5.10.2.6 Mechanical Equipment. Mechanical equipment shall conform to 5.10.1.10, 5.10.1.11, 5.10.1.13 through 5.10.1.15, 5.10.1.17 through 5.10.1.19, and 5.10.1.23.

5.10.2.7 Hydraulic Jack. Hydraulic jacks shall conform to 3.18.

5.10.2.8 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Valves, supply piping, and fittings shall conform to 3.19.

5.10.2.9 Counterweight Ropes, Rope Connections, and Sheaves. Counterweight ropes, rope connections, and sheaves shall conform to 3.20.

5.10.2.10 Tanks. Tanks shall conform to 3.24.

5.10.2.11 Terminal Stopping Devices. Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 3.25.

5.10.2.12 Operating Devices and Control Equipment. Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 5.10.1.21.

Part 6
Escalators and Moving Walks

SCOPE

Part 6 applies to escalators and moving walks used to transport passengers.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *escalators and moving walks.*

SECTION 6.1
ESCALATORS

6.1.1 Protection of Floor Openings

6.1.1.1 Protection Required. Floor openings for escalators shall be protected against the passage of flame, heat, and/or smoke in accordance with the provisions of the applicable building code (see Part 9).

6.1.2 Protection of Trusses and Machine Spaces Against Fire

6.1.2.1 Protection Required. The sides and undersides of an escalator truss or group of adjacent trusses in a single wellway shall be enclosed in materials defined as either noncombustible or limited-combustible by the building code or NFPA 101, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Means provided for adequate ventilation of the driving machine and control spaces, when included in the truss enclosure area, shall be permitted.

6.1.3 Construction Requirements

6.1.3.1 Angle of Inclination. The angle of inclination shall be designed not to exceed 30 deg from the horizontal, but due to field conditions at the site shall be permitted to exceed this maximum by 1 deg. The angle shall be measured at the centerline of the steps.

6.1.3.2 Geometry

6.1.3.2.1 The width of the escalator shall be the width of the step tread. See 6.1.3.5.2 for step width requirements.

6.1.3.2.2 The handrail shall be a minimum of 100 mm (4 in.) horizontally and 25 mm (1 in.) vertically away from adjacent surfaces, except that rounded fillets or beveled sides of the handrail stand are permitted to reduce the 25 mm (1 in.) clearance between the handrail and the point where the handrail stand is connected to the balustrade. The centerline of the handrail shall be not more than 240 mm (9.5 in.), measured horizontally, from the vertical plane through the edge of the exposed step. (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Figs. I-1 and I-2.)

6.1.3.3 Balustrades. Balustrades shall be installed on each side of the escalator. (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-3.)

6.1.3.3.1 Construction

(a) For

(1) escalators not equipped with dynamic skirt panels, the balustrade on the step side shall have no areas or moldings depressed or raised more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) from the parent surface, except as permitted in 6.1.3.3.10 **(07)**

(2) escalators equipped with dynamic skirt panels, the balustrade on the step side shall have no areas or moldings parallel to the direction of travel that are depressed or raised more than 12 mm (0.47 in.) from the parent surface **(07)**

(3) all escalators, the depressed or raised areas or moldings shall have boundary edges bevelled or rounded

(b) The balustrade shall be totally closed, except

(1) where the handrail enters the newel base (see 6.1.3.4.3).

(2) gaps between interior panels shall be not wider than 5 mm (0.19 in.). The edges shall be rounded or beveled.

(3) where the dynamic skirt panels enter the balustrade [see 6.1.3.3.7(c)].

(c) The width between the balustrade interior panels in the direction of travel shall not be changed.

6.1.3.3.2 Strength. Balustrades shall be designed to resist the simultaneous application of a static lateral distributed force of 585 N/m (40 lbf/ft) applied to the side of the handrail and a vertical distributed force of 730 N/m (50 lbf/ft), applied to the top of the handrail.

6.1.3.3.3 Use of Glass or Plastic. Glass or plastic, if used in balustrades, shall conform to the requirements of the following standards, whichever is applicable (see Part 9):

(a) ANSI Z97.1 or 16 CFR Part 1201; or

(b) one of the following CGSB Standards: CAN/CGSB-12.1, CAN/CGSB-12.11, or CAN/CGSB-12.12; except that there shall be no requirement for the panels to be transparent.

Plastic bonded to basic supporting panels is not required to conform to these requirements.

6.1.3.3.4 Interior Low Deck. The interior low deck, where provided, shall conform to the following (see Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-1):

(a) The width from the vertical face of the interior panel to the vertical plane of the skirt panel, or dynamic skirt panel cover, where provided, shall not exceed 150 mm (6 in.).

(b) The angle between the surface of the deck and the plane of the nose line of the steps shall be not less than 20 deg nor more than 30 deg.

(c) A horizontal section shall be permitted immediately adjacent to the interior panel. It shall be not greater than 35 mm (1.25 in.).

(d) The deck and the dynamic skirt panel cover, where provided, at the point closest to the step shall withstand a force of 900 N (200 lbf) perpendicular to the line of attachment of the element without detachment or permanent deformation. The force shall be applied to an area of 645 mm^2 (1 in.^{2}).

6.1.3.3.5 Loaded Gap Between Skirt and Step. The clearance (loaded gap) between the step tread and the adjacent skirt panel shall be not more than 5 mm (0.2 in.) when 110 N (25 lbf) is laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ±11 N (2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over an area not less than 1 940 mm^2 (3 in.^{2}) and not more than 3 870 mm^2 (6 in.^{2}).

6.1.3.3.6 Skirt Panels

(a) The height of the skirt above the tread nose line shall be at least 25 mm (1 in.) measured vertically (see Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-4).

(b) Skirt panels shall not deflect more than 1.6 mm (0.0625 in.) under a force of 667 N (150 lbf).

(c) The exposed surfaces of the skirt panels adjacent to the steps shall be smooth.

6.1.3.3.7 Dynamic Skirt Panels. Dynamic skirt panels, where provided, shall conform to the following:

(a) The height of the dynamic skirt panel above the step tread nose line shall be at least 25 mm (1 in.) measured vertically (see Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-4).

(b) The exposed surfaces of the dynamic skirt panels adjacent to the step treads shall be smooth and in one plane. Exposed edges shall be rounded or beveled.

(c) Guarding shall be provided at the point where the dynamic skirt panels enter the balustrade. The clearance between the guard and the dynamic skirt panels shall not exceed 3 mm (0.125 in.).

(d) The exposed panels that comprise the dynamic skirt shall overlap or interlock such that no clear-through spaces exist. The distance between exposed edges of dynamic skirt panel elements shall not exceed 4 mm (0.16 in.).

(e) There must be a positive mechanical connection between the dynamic skirt panels and the running gear.

(f) The distance between the dynamic skirt panel and the dynamic skirt panel cover shall not exceed 5 mm (0.20 in.).

6.1.3.3.8 Dynamic Skirt Panel Loaded Gap. The gap clearance (loaded gap) at any point between the step tread and the adjacent dynamic skirt panel shall not exceed 5 mm (0.20 in.) when 110 N (25 lbf) is laterally applied from the step to the adjacent dynamic skirt panel. The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ±11 N (2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over an area not less than 1 940 mm^2 (3 in.^{2}) and not more than 3 870 mm^2 (6 in.^{2}).

6.1.3.3.9 Step/Skirt Performance Index

(a) This requirement is not applicable to escalators with dynamic skirt panels. The step/skirt performance index, when the escalator is subjected to the test specified in 8.11.4.2.19, shall be the maximum value of the recorded instantaneous step/skirt index $e^y/(e^y + 1)$, where

(SI Units)

e = 2.7183

y = $-3.77 + 2.37\ (\mu) + 0.37\ (L_g)$

μ = the sliding coefficient of friction of a polycarbonate test specimen on the skirt panel at the measurement point calculated when subjected to a 110 N normal load. The coefficient of friction shall be measured without addition of any field-applied lubricant.

L_g = the clearance between the step and the adjacent skirt panel when 110 N is applied from the step to skirt panel, mm

The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N by more than ±11 N. The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 1 940 mm^2 and not more than 3 870 mm^2.

(Imperial Units)

e = 2.7183

y = $-3.77 + 2.37\ (\mu) + 9.3\ (L_g)$

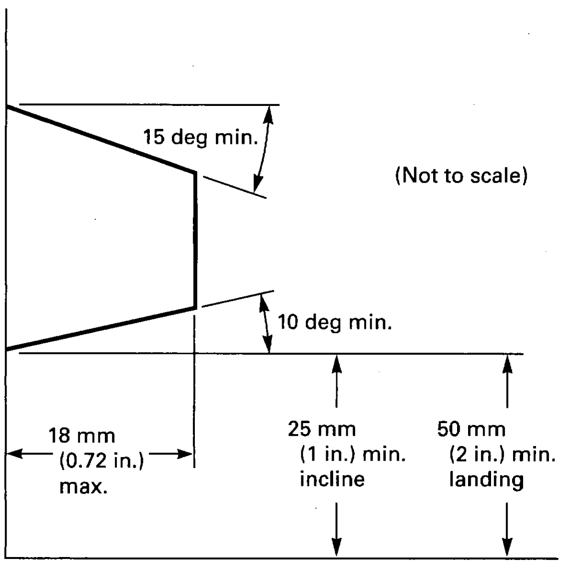
μ = the sliding coefficient of friction of a polycarbonate test specimen on the skirt panel at the measurement point calculated when subjected to a 25 lbf normal load. The coefficient of friction shall be measured without addition of any field-applied lubricant.

L_g = the clearance between the step and the adjacent skirt panel when 25 lbf is applied from the step to skirt panel, in.

The applied load shall not deviate from 25 lbf by more than ± 2.5 lbf. The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 3 in.^{2} and not more than 6 in.^{2}

(b) The step/skirt performance index polycarbonate test specimen shall conform to the following specifications:

Fig. 6.1.3.3.10 Dimensions



(1) Material: Polycarbonate without fillers

(2) Color: Natural, no pigments

(3) Finish: Glossy (roughness less than 0.8 μm (32 μin.)

(4) Area in contact with skirt panel: 2 900 ± 325 mm^2 (4.5 ± 0.5 $in.^2$) and at least 0.8 mm (0.03 in.) thick

(5) Specification: GE Lexan 100 series or equivalent polycarbonate

(c) The escalator step/skirt performance index shall be either of the following:

(1) ≤ 0.15

(ED) *(2)* ≤ 0.25 when a skirt deflector device complying with the requirements of 6.1.3.3.10 is provided

6.1.3.3.10 Skirt Deflector Devices. Deflector devices shall be permitted. Where provided, deflector devices shall extend from skirt panels parallel to the escalator path of travel. Means to secure such deflector devices are permitted to be on the exposed surface of the skirt. Any exposed fastener heads shall be of the tamper-resistant type and flush to within 1 mm (0.04 in.).

(a) Rigid elements shall be in conformance with the following conditions:

(1) Horizontal protrusions extending above the step shall be 18 mm (0.75 in.) maximum. Corners or changes in profile shall be rounded or beveled. The exposed surfaces of such elements shall be smooth and permanently treated with a low-friction material.

(2) On the incline, the area of any protrusion shall lie entirely above a line on the skirt panel positioned at least 25 mm (1 in.) vertically above the step nose line. The lower surface shall be beveled not less than 10 deg upward and the upper surface shall be beveled not less than 15 deg downward. (See Fig. 6.1.3.3.8.)

(3) At the upper and lower landing, any protrusion shall lie entirely above a line on the skirt panel positioned at least 50 mm (2 in.) vertically above the step nose line. The lower surface shall be beveled not less than 10 deg upward and the upper surface shall be beveled not less than 15 deg downward. Any rigid elements at the landings shall smoothly blend into the rigid elements along the incline in accordance with the radius of curvature of the transition zone.

(4) When attached to the skirt, rigid elements shall withstand a force of 900 N (200 lbf) perpendicular to the line of attachment of the element without detachment or permanent deformation. The force shall be applied to an area of 645 mm^2 (1 $in.^2$).

(b) Flexible elements shall be in conformance with the following conditions:

(1) The horizontal protrusion extending from the skirt surafce above the step shall be 50 mm (2 in.) maximum.

(2) They shall be capable of deflecting to an angle of 10 deg or greater above the horizontal.

(3) Noncontinuous flexible elements shall be allowed to deflect to allow a maximum of 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) interference with any point on the step surface.

(4) Continuous flexible elements shall not deflect such that they can contact the steps.

6.1.3.3.11 Guard at Ceiling Intersection

(a) On high deck balustrades, a solid guard shall be provided in the intersection of the angle of the outside balustrade deck and the ceiling or soffit, under the following conditions:

(1) where the clearance between the outside edge of the deck and the ceiling or soffit is 300 mm (12 in.) or less; or

(2) where the projected intersection of the outside deck and the ceiling or soffit is 600 mm (24 in.) or less from the centerline of the handrail.

(b) On low deck balustrades, a solid guard shall be provided to protect the intersection formed by the top of the handrail and the plain of the ceiling or soffit where the centerline of the handrail is 350 mm (14 in.) or less from the ceiling or soffit.

(c) The vertical edge of the guard shall be a minimum of 350 mm (14 in.) in length.

(d) The escalator side of the vertical face of the guard shall be flush with the face of the wellway.

(e) The exposed edge of the guard shall present a minimum width of 25 mm (1 in.) and a minimum radius of 12 mm (0.5 in.).

(f) Guards are permitted to be of glass or plastic, provided they meet the requirements of 6.1.3.3.3.

See also Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-5.

6.1.3.3.12 Antislide Devices. On high deck balustrades, antislide devices shall be provided on decks or combinations of decks when the outer edge of the deck is greater than 200 mm (8 in.) from the edge of the handrail, or on adjacent escalators when the unobstructed distance between the edge of the facing handrail is greater than 300 mm (12 in.).

These devices shall consist of raised objects fastened to the decks, no closer than 100 mm (4 in.) to the handrail nor greater than 300 mm (12 in.) from the handrail. They shall be spaced not greater than 2 000 mm (78 in.) apart as measured on a line parallel to the direction of travel and not greater than 300 mm (12 in.) as measured on a horizontal line perpendicular to the direction of travel. The height shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.). There shall be no sharp corners or edges. See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-6.

6.1.3.3.13 Deck Barricades

(a) A barricade to restrict access to the outer deck on low deck exterior balustrades shall be provided at the top and bottom ends of each escalator where the outer deck width exceeds 125 mm (5 in.). On parallel abutting units, this protection shall be provided where the combined outer deck width exceeds 125 mm (5 in.). The barricade shall extend to a height that is nominally 100 mm (4 in.) below the top of the handrail.

(b) When an escalator is not located at the edge of a floor surface, the barricade shall be installed on the outer deck at a point 1 000 mm (40 in.) above the floor where the bottom of the barricade intersects the outer deck.

(c) On parallel adjacent escalators, where the common low deck between adjacent interior panels exceeds 400 mm (16 in.), deck barricades should be spaced evenly up the incline at no greater than 4.6 m (15 ft) measured on a line parallel to the direction of travel.

(d) Barricades made of glass or plastic shall conform to the requirements of 6.1.3.3.3. All exposed barricade attachment fastener heads shall be of the tamper-resistant type.

6.1.3.4 Handrails

6.1.3.4.1 Type Required. Each balustrade shall be provided with a handrail moving in the same direction and at substantially the same speed as the steps. In the case of curved escalators, this shall be substantially the same angular velocity. The speed of the handrail shall not change when a retarding force of 450 N (100 lbf) is applied to the handrail opposite to the direction of travel.

6.1.3.4.2 Extension Beyond Combplates. Each moving handrail shall extend at normal handrail height not less than 300 mm (12 in.) beyond the line of points of the combplate teeth at the upper and lower landings.

6.1.3.4.3 Guards. Hand or finger guards shall be provided at a point where the handrail enters the balustrade.

6.1.3.4.4 Splicing. Splicing of handrails shall be done in such a manner that the joint is free of any pinching effect.

6.1.3.4.5 Vertical Height. The vertical height from step nose to top of handrail shall be not less than 900 mm (35 in.) nor more than 1 000 mm (39 in.). See 6.1.3.6.6 for floor opening protection adjacent to escalator wellways.

6.1.3.4.6 Handrail Clearance. The horizontal clearance between either lip of the handrail and the handrail stand shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.). (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-2.)

6.1.3.5 Steps

6.1.3.5.1 Material and Type

(a) Step frames, treads, risers, and dynamic skirt panels, excluding the step's attachments or inserts, shall be metal, except that magnesium alloys shall not be used; or the materials, in their end-use configuration, shall have a flame spread index of 0 to 50 based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 84, UL 723, NFPA 255, or CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

(b) Nonmetallic attachments and inserts (excluding wheels) shall be classified 94 HB or better in accordance with ANSI/UL 94.

(c) Step treads shall be horizontal, and shall afford a secure foothold. The step supporting system shall be so designed so that the back of the step cannot tip upward more than 6 mm (0.25 in.) at any point.

6.1.3.5.2 Dimensions of Steps. The depth of any step tread in the direction of travel shall be not less than 400 mm (15.75 in.), and the rise between treads shall be not more than 220 mm (8.5 in.). The width of a step tread shall be not less than 560 mm (22 in.) nor more than 1 020 mm (40 in.). (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-7.)

6.1.3.5.3 Cleated Step Risers. The step riser shall be provided with vertical cleats, which shall mesh with slots on the adjacent step tread wherever the steps are exposed. (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-8.)

6.1.3.5.4 Clearance Between Steps. The maximum clearance between step treads on the horizontal run shall be 6 mm (0.25 in.). (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-6.)

6.1.3.5.5 Slotting of Step Treads. The tread surface of each step shall be slotted in a direction parallel to the travel of the steps. Each slot shall be not more than 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) wide and not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) deep, and the distance from center to center of adjoining slots shall be not more than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.).

Slots shall be so located on the step tread surface as to form a cleat on each side of the step tread adjacent to the skirt or dynamic skirt panel.

6.1.3.5.6 Step Demarcation. There shall be demarcation lines on the step tread along the back of the step (07)
to delineate the division between steps. These lines shall be marked by a yellow strip a minimum of 38 mm

(1.5 in.) in width and a maximum of 50 mm (2 in.). [See 6.1.3.5.1(b).]

There shall be demarcation lines on the step tread along the sides of the step. These side lines shall be yellow and at least 13 mm (0.5 in.) wide and shall not exceed 50 mm (2 in.). [See 6.1.3.5.1(b).]

6.1.3.5.7 Step Fatigue Tests. Each step width shall be subjected to the step fatigue test as described in 8.3.11.

6.1.3.5.8 Step Wheels. Where support wheels attached to the steps are not located within the width of the step, provision shall be made to prevent the step from falling into the escalator interior due to a loss of one or more of the support wheel assemblies.

6.1.3.6 Entrance and Egress Ends

6.1.3.6.1 Combplates

(a) There shall be a combplate, to which the combs shall be fastened, at the entrance and at the exit of every escalator.

(b) The comb teeth shall be meshed with and set into the slots in the tread surfaces so that the points of the teeth are always below the upper surface of the treads.

(c) Combplates shall be adjustable vertically. Sections forming the comb teeth shall be readily replaceable.

(d) The comb section, combplate, and landing plate assemblies shall not make contact with the step treads when a weight of 160 kg (350 lb) is applied to any area 200 mm × 300 mm (8 in. × 12 in.) centered on the plates with the 300 mm (12 in.) dimension parallel to the direction of travel.

6.1.3.6.2 Distinction Between Comb and Step. There shall be a visual contrast between the comb and step, achieved by color, pattern, or texture.

6.1.3.6.3 Adjacent Floor Surfaces. The adjacent floor surfaces at each landing shall be continuous with the top of the landing plate with no abrupt change in elevation of more than 6 mm (0.25 in.).

6.1.3.6.4 Safety Zone. The entry and exit zone shall be kept clear of all obstacles. The width of the zone shall be not less than the width between the centerlines of the handrails plus 200 mm (8 in.). The length of the zone, measured from the end of the newel, shall be not less than twice the distance between the centerlines of the handrails. Space shall be provided to accommodate all traffic in the safety zone.

NOTE: These dimensions are absolute minimums.

6.1.3.6.5 Flat Steps. There shall be a minimum of two and a maximum of four flat steps at the entrance and exit of every escalator. (See 1.3 and 6.1.3.5.2.)

6.1.3.6.6 Floor Opening Protection Adjacent to Escalator Wellway. Floor openings adjacent to the entire length of the escalator wellway shall be provided with protection in accordance with the applicable building code (see Part 9).

6.1.3.7 Trusses or Girders. The truss or girder shall be designed to safely sustain the running gear in operation. In the event of failure of the track system, it shall retain the running gear within the confines of this truss.

Where tightening devices are operated by means of tension weights, provision shall be made to retain these weights in the truss if they should be released.

6.1.3.8 Step Wheel Tracks. Step wheel tracks shall be designed so as to prevent displacement of the running gear if a step chain breaks.

6.1.3.9 Rated Load

6.1.3.9.1 Structural. For the purpose of structural design, the rated load shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Structural rated load (kg)} = 0.27\ (W + 203)A$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Structural rated load (lb)} = 4.6\ (W + 8)A$$

where

A = length of the horizontal projection of the entire truss measured along its centerline, m (ft)

W = width of the escalator, mm (in.) (see 6.1.3.2)

6.1.3.9.2 Machinery

(a) For the purpose of driving machine and power transmission calculations, the rated load for all single driving machines shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (kg)} = 0.21\ (W + 203)B_1$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (lb)} = 3.5\ (W + 8)B_1$$

(b) The rated load per module for two or more modular driving machines shall be considered to be not less than:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (kg)} = 0.21\ (W + 203)B_2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (lb)} = 3.5\ (W + 8)B_2$$

where

B_1 = cot θ × total rise, m (ft)

B_2 = cot θ × rise per module, m (ft)

θ = the angle of inclination, deg (see 6.1.3.1)
W = width of the escalator, mm (in.) (see 6.1.3.2)

6.1.3.9.3 Brake

(a) For the purpose of brake calculations, the rated load for all single driving machines shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(1) with escalator stopped

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = 0.27\,(W + 203)B_1$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = 4.6\,(W + 8)B_1$$

(2) with escalator running

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = 0.21\,(W + 203)B_1$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = 3.5\,(W + 8)B_1$$

(b) The rated load per module for two or more modular driving machines shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(1) with escalator stopped

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = 0.27\,(W + 203)B_2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = 4.6\,(W + 8)B_2$$

(2) with escalator running

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = 0.21\,(W + 203)B_2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = 3.5\,(W + 8)B_2$$

where

B_1 = cot θ × total rise, m (ft)
B_2 = cot θ × rise per module, m (ft)
θ = the angle of inclination, deg (see 6.1.3.1)
W = width of the escalator, mm (in.) (see 6.1.3.2)

6.1.3.9.4 Step. The step shall be designed to support a load of 135 kg (300 lb) on a 150 mm × 250 mm (6 in. × 10 in.) plate placed on any part of the step with the 250 mm (10 in.) dimension in the direction of step travel.

6.1.3.10 Design Factors of Safety. Factors of safety are based on either single driving-machine design or modular driving-machine design.

The factors of safety shall be at least the following.

6.1.3.10.1 Trusses and all supporting structures, including tracks, shall conform to the AISC Specifications for Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings, or the CSA Standard CAN/CSA-S16.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), based on the maximum static load calculated per 6.1.3.9.1.

6.1.3.10.2 For driving-machine parts based on not less than the loads calculated per 6.1.3.9.2:

(a) where made of steel or bronze, the factor of safety shall be 8

(b) where made of cast iron or other materials, the factor of safety shall be 10

6.1.3.10.3 For power transmission members, the factor of safety shall be 10, based on not less than the loads calculated per 6.1.3.9.2.

6.1.3.10.4 For steps, the factor of safety shall be 5, based on not less than the loads designated in 6.1.3.9.4.

6.1.3.11 Chains. The use of chains with cast iron links shall not be permitted.

6.1.3.12 Headroom. The minimum headroom shall be 2 130 mm (84 in.) measured vertically from the step noseline, landing plates, and landings.

6.1.3.13 Welding. Welding shall conform to 8.8.

6.1.3.14 Non-Escalator-Related Equipment. Components not used directly in connection with the escalator are prohibited to be installed on, in, or through the escalator.

6.1.3.15 Pit Drains. Permanent provisions shall be made to prevent accumulation of water in the pit. Drains and sump pumps, where provided, shall comply with 2.2.2.4.

6.1.4 Rated Speed

6.1.4.1 Limits of Speed. The rated speed shall be not more than 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min), measured along the centerline of the steps in the direction of travel.

The speed attained by an escalator after start-up shall not be intentionally varied.

6.1.5 Driving Machine, Motor, and Brake

6.1.5.1 Connection Between Driving Machine and Main Drive Shaft. The driving machine shall be connected to the main drive shaft by toothed gearing, a mechanical coupling, or a chain.

6.1.5.2 Driving Motor. An electric motor shall not drive more than one escalator driving machine. A driving machine shall not operate more than one escalator.

6.1.5.3 Brakes

6.1.5.3.1 Escalator Driving-Machine Brake

(a) Each escalator driving machine shall be provided with an electrically released and mechanically or magnetically applied brake. If the brake is magnetically applied, a ceramic permanent magnet shall be used. There shall be no intentional time delay designed into the application of the brake.

(b) The brake shall be applied automatically if the electrical power supply is interrupted. The brake shall be capable of stopping the down-running escalator with any load up to the brake rated load [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(2) or (b)(2)]. The brake shall hold the stopped escalator with any load up to the brake rated load [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(1) or (b)(1)].

(c) Driving-machine brakes shall stop the down-running escalator steps at an average rate not greater than 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) as measured over the total retardation time. No peak horizontal retardation value exceeding 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) shall have a time duration greater than 0.125 s (see Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-11). (See also 6.1.6.3.6.)

(d) The escalator brake shall be provided with a data plate that is readily visible, located on the machine brake and when necessary, a duplicate data plate with the certification mark shall be placed adjacent to the machine brake. The data plate shall indicate:

(1)(a) for fixed torque brakes, the range of brake torque that complies with 6.1.5.3.1 and 6.1.6.3.6; or

(1)(b) for variable torque brakes, the minimum brake torque for a loaded escalator and the minimum stopping distance for the unloaded escalator, which complies with 6.1.5.3.1 and 6.1.6.3.6;

(2) the method of measuring the torque, designated "BREAKAWAY" or "DYNAMIC," based on the method used when measuring the torque;

(3) the location where the torque is to be measured, e.g., "MOTOR SHAFT," "MACHINE INPUT SHAFT," "MAIN DRIVE SHAFT";

(4) the type of brake as fixed or variable torque;

(5) the maximum stopping distance with rated load in the down direction that corresponds to the minimum distance between the comb and the step when the step is positioned to activate any of the electrical protective devices required in 6.1.6.3.6, 6.1.6.3.9, 6.1.6.3.11, or 6.1.6.5.

(e) Where means other than a continuous shaft, mechanical coupling, or toothed gearing is used to connect the motor to a gear reducer, the escalator driving-machine brake shall be located on the gear reducer or main drive shaft.

6.1.5.3.2 Main Drive Shaft Brake. If the escalator driving-machine brake is separated from the main drive shaft by a chain used to connect the driving machine to the main drive shaft, a mechanically or magnetically applied brake capable of stopping a down-running escalator with brake rated load (see 6.1.3.9.3) shall be provided on the main drive shaft. If the brake is magnetically applied, a ceramic permanent magnet shall be used.

6.1.5.3.3 Escalator driving-machine brakes shall be certified to the requirements of 8.3.1 and 8.3.6.

6.1.6 Operating and Safety Devices (07)

6.1.6.1 General. Operating and safety devices conforming to the requirements of this Section shall be provided. When more than one driving machine per escalator is utilized, actuation of devices covered by this Section shall simultaneously control all driving machines.

6.1.6.1.1 Automatic Operation. Automatic starting by any means, or automatic stopping, except as required in 6.1.6, shall be prohibited.

6.1.6.2 Starting and Inspection Control Switches

6.1.6.2.1 Escalators shall be provided with starting switch(es) conforming to the following:

(a) *Location and Design.* The switch(es) shall be:

(1) located so that the escalator steps are within sight.

(2) key operated, of the continuous-pressure spring-return type, and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination.

(3) clearly and permanently marked "DOWN," "RUN," and "UP," in that order, with the key removable only in the "RUN" (spring return) position. The switch(es) shall be rotated clockwise to go from the "DOWN" to "RUN" to "UP" position.

(b) *Operating Requirements.* The operation of the switch(es) shall initiate movement of the escalator. The escalator shall not start (restart) unless all starting switch(es) were first in the "RUN" position.

(c) The starting switch(es) shall be located within reach of an emergency stop button (see 6.1.6.3.1).

(d) The key shall be of Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

6.1.6.2.2 Inspection Control. Each escalator shall be equipped with inspection controls not accessible to the general public during normal operation to provide constant pressure operation during maintenance, repair, or inspection by means of a manually operated control device.

(a) *General Requirements*

(1) Switches for transferring the control of the escalator to inspection operation shall be provided or a switch shall be provided at each landing in a portable control station; the switch(es) shall function as follows:

(a) be through a contact that shall be positively opened mechanically and whose opening shall not depend solely on springs

(b) be manually operated

(c) be labeled "INSPECTION"

(d) have two positions, labeled "INSPECTION" or "INSP" and "NORMAL" or "NORM"

(e) when in the "INSPECTION" position, it shall cause the movement of the escalator to be solely under the control of constant pressure operating devices at that landing or in that portable control station

(f) be arranged so that if more than one inspection transfer switch is in the "INSPECTION" position, then all constant pressure operating devices at all locations shall be inoperative

(g) be protected against accidental contact

(h) the completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to initiate inspection control

(2) Constant pressure operating devices shall

(a) allow movement of the escalator only by constant application of manual pressure

(b) be distinctly recognizable from indications on the device as to the direction of travel controlled

(c) be protected against accidental contact

(d) be located so that the escalator steps are within sight

(3) A stop switch conforming to 6.1.6.3.15 shall be provided adjacent to the constant pressure operating devices.

(4) When portable control stations are used, the cord length shall not exceed 3 000 mm (120 in.) in length.

(b) *Plug-in Portable Control Station.* A plug-in portable control station shall be permitted, provided that

(1) either a transfer switch conforming to 6.1.6.2.2(a)(1) is complied with, or when plugged in, the escalator shall automatically transfer to inspection operation

(2) when the switch, if provided, is in the "INSPECTION" position, or when the control station is plugged in, it shall cause the movement of the escalator to be solely under the control of constant pressure operating devices contained in the portable unit

(3) the plug-in portable control station is stored at the upper landing machinery space

(ED) **6.1.6.3 Electrical Protective Devices.** Electrical protective devices shall be provided in accordance with 6.1.6.3.1 through 6.1.6.3.16.

6.1.6.3.1 Emergency Stop Buttons

(07) (a) *Location.* In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, a red stop button shall be visibly located at the top and the bottom landings on the right side facing the escalator. Remote stop buttons are prohibited. In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, a red stop button shall be visibly located at the top and the bottom landings on the right side facing the escalator. If auxiliary emergency-stop buttons are provided, they shall be located within view of the escalator.

(1) On high deck balustrades, they shall be located on the curved newel deck in the upper quadrant, with the centerline of the button at a 45 deg angle from the horizontal.

(2) On low deck balustrades, they shall be located below the handrail height. The centerline of the button shall be located on a radial line 45 deg above the horizontal, such that no part of the button assembly is within 38 mm (1.5 in.) of the bottom of the handrail and the button is no more than 90 mm (3.5 in.) from the bottom of the handrail.

(b) *Cover, Alarm, and Marking.* The buttons shall be covered with a transparent cover that can be readily lifted or pushed aside. When the cover is moved, an audible warning signal shall be activated. The signal shall have a sound intensity of 80 dBA minimum at the button location. The cover shall be marked "EMERGENCY STOP," "MOVE COVER" or equivalent legend (e.g., "LIFT COVER," "SLIDE COVER,"), and "PUSH BUTTON." "EMERGENCY STOP" shall be in letters not less than 12 mm (0.5 in.) high. Other required wording shall be in letters not less than 4.8 mm (0.188 in.) high. The cover shall be self-resetting.

(c) *Operation.* The operation of either of these buttons shall cause the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake. It shall not be possible to start the escalator by these buttons.

6.1.6.3.2 Speed Governor. A speed governor shall be provided, except as specified in 6.1.6.3.2(b).

(a) The operation of the governor shall cause the electric power to be removed from the driving machine motor and brake should the speed of the steps exceed a predetermined value, which shall not be more than 40% above the rated speed.

(b) The speed governor is not required where an alternating current, squirrel cage induction motor is used, and the motor is directly connected to the driving machine.

(c) All escalators equipped with variable frequency drive motor controls shall be provided with an overspeed governor.

(d) The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.3 Broken Step-Chain Device

(a) A broken step-chain device shall be provided, which shall cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake

(1) if a step chain breaks

(2) where no automatic chain tension device is provided, if excessive sag occurs in either step chain

(b) The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.4 Drive-Chain Device. When the driving machine is connected to the main drive shaft by a chain, a device shall be provided that will cause the application of the brake on the main drive shaft, and will also cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake if the drive chain between the machine and the main drive shaft becomes disengaged from the sprockets. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.5 Stop Switch in Machinery Spaces. A stop switch conforming to the following requirements shall be provided in each machinery space and other spaces where means of access to the interior space is provided (see 6.1.7.3), except for the machinery space where the mainline disconnect switch is located

(*a*) when opened ("STOP" position), cause the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake

(*b*) be of the manually opened and closed type

(*c*) have red operating handles or buttons

(*d*) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions

(*e*) shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs

6.1.6.3.6 Escalator Skirt Obstruction Device. Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake if an object becomes caught between the step and the skirt as the step approaches the upper or lower combplate. The device shall be located at a point at which the step assumes a flat step position (see 6.1.3.6.5). The escalator shall stop before that object reaches the combplate with any load up to full brake rated load with escalator running [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(2) and (b)(2)].

6.1.6.3.7 Escalator Egress Restriction Device. Egress restrictors that would prevent the free and continuous exiting of passengers, if used, shall provide a signal to a device on the escalator that shall cause the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake when the exit restrictors begin to close.

6.1.6.3.8 Reversal Stop Device. Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake in case of reversal of travel while the escalator is operating in the ascending direction. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.9 Step Upthrust Device. Means shall be provided in the passenger-carrying line of the track system to detect a step forced upward in the lower transition curve at or prior to the point of tangency of the horizontal and curved track. The means shall actuate when the riser end of the step is displaced upward more than 5 mm (0.20 in.) at the lower landing. Actuation of the means shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. The escalator shall stop, before the detected step reaches the combplate with any load up to brake rated load with escalator running [see 6.1.3.9.3(a)(2) and (b)(2)].

6.1.6.3.10 Disconnected Motor Safety Device. If the drive motor is attached to a gear reducer by means other than a continuous shaft, mechanical coupling, or toothed gearing, a device shall be provided that will cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake (see 6.1.5.3.1), if the motor becomes disconnected from the gear reducer. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.11 Step Level Device. Step level devices shall be located at the top and bottom of the escalator. These devices shall detect downward displacement of 3 mm (0.125 in.) or greater at the riser end at either side of the step. When activated, the device shall cause the escalator to stop before the step enters the combplate. The device shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. Devices shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.12 Handrail Entry Device. A handrail entry device shall be provided at each newel. It shall be operative in the newels in which the handrail enters the balustrade. It shall be of the manually reset type and shall cause the escalator to stop by removing power from the driving-machine motor and brake. It shall operate in either of two ways:

(*a*) if an object becomes caught between the handrail and the handrail guard

(*b*) if an object approaches the area between the handrail and the handrail guard

For those units that rely on an opening of the balustrade to prevent entrapment, all handrail entry devices shall be operative whenever the handrails are operating.

6.1.6.3.13 Comb-Step Impact Devices. Devices shall be provided that will cause the opening of the power circuit to the escalator driving-machine motor and brake if either

(*a*) a horizontal force not greater than 1 780 N (400 lbf) in the direction of travel is applied at either side, or not greater than 3 560 N (800 lbf) at the center of the front edge of the comb-plate; or

(*b*) a resultant vertical force not greater than 670 N (150 lbf) in the upward direction is applied at the center of the front of the combplate.

These devices shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.14 Step Lateral Displacement Device. A device shall be provided on curved escalators to cause the opening of the power circuit to the escalator driving-machine motor and brake, should a step be excessively displaced horizontally due to a failure in the lateral support system. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.3.15 Stop Switch in Inspection Controls. A stop switch conforming to the following requirements shall be provided when required by 6.1.6.2.2:

(a) when opened ("STOP" position), cause the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake

(b) be of the manually opened and closed type

(c) have red operating handles or buttons

(d) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions

(e) shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs

6.1.6.3.16 Dynamic Skirt Panel Obstruction Device. Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake if an object becomes caught between the dynamic skirt panel and the dynamic skirt panel cover in the upper or lower transition zone. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.4 Handrail Speed Monitoring Device. A handrail speed monitoring device shall be provided that will cause the activation of the alarm required by 6.1.6.3.1(b) without any intentional delay, whenever the speed of either handrail deviates from the step speed by 15% or more. The device shall also cause electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when the speed deviation of 15% or more is continuous within a 2 s to 6 s range. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.5 Missing Step and Missing Dynamic Skirt Devices

(a) A device shall be provided to detect a missing step and bring the escalator to a stop, before the gap resulting from the missing step emerges from the comb. The device shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

(b) For escalators with dynamic skirts, a device shall be provided to detect a missing dynamic skirt panel and bring the escalator to a stop, before the gap resulting from the missing dynamic skirt panel emerges from the balustrade. The device shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.1.6.6 Tandem Operation. Tandem operation escalators shall be electrically interlocked where traffic flow is such that bunching will occur if the escalator carrying passengers away from the intermediate landing stops. The electrical interlocks shall stop the escalator carrying passengers into the common intermediate landing if the escalator carrying passengers away from the landing stops. These escalators shall also be electrically interlocked to assure that they run in the same direction.

6.1.6.8 Escalator Smoke Detectors. Smoke detectors shall be permitted that shall activate the alarm required by 6.1.6.3.1(b) and, after at least 15 s, shall cause the interruption of power to the driving-machine motor and brake.

6.1.6.9 Signs

6.1.6.9.1 Caution Signs. A caution sign shall be located at the top and bottom landing of each escalator, readily visible to the boarding passengers.

The sign shall include the following wording:

(a) "Caution"

(b) "Passengers Only"

(c) "Hold Handrail"

(d) "Attend Children"

(e) "Avoid Sides"

The sign shall be standard for all escalators and shall be identical in format, size, color, wording, and pictorials as shown in Fig. 6.1.6.9.1. The sign shall be durable and have a maximum thickness of 6.4 mm (0.25 in.), with rounded or beveled corners and edges.

6.1.6.9.2 Additional Signs. Signs in addition to those required by 6.1.6.9.1 relating to cautions or warnings applying to escalator passengers, when provided, shall be in a readily visible location, and limited to conveying any additional cautions and/or warnings. The additional signs shall be prohibited in the area starting from 3 000 mm (118 in.) horizontally outward from the end of the newel and to the point where the steps start to move vertically. Its location shall not impede or otherwise cause persons about to board the escalator to suddenly pause or stop. The sign shall comply with ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

6.1.6.10 Control and Operating Circuits. The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 6.1.6.10.1 through 6.1.6.10.3.

6.1.6.10.1 The occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; or any single solid-state device; or a software system failure, shall not

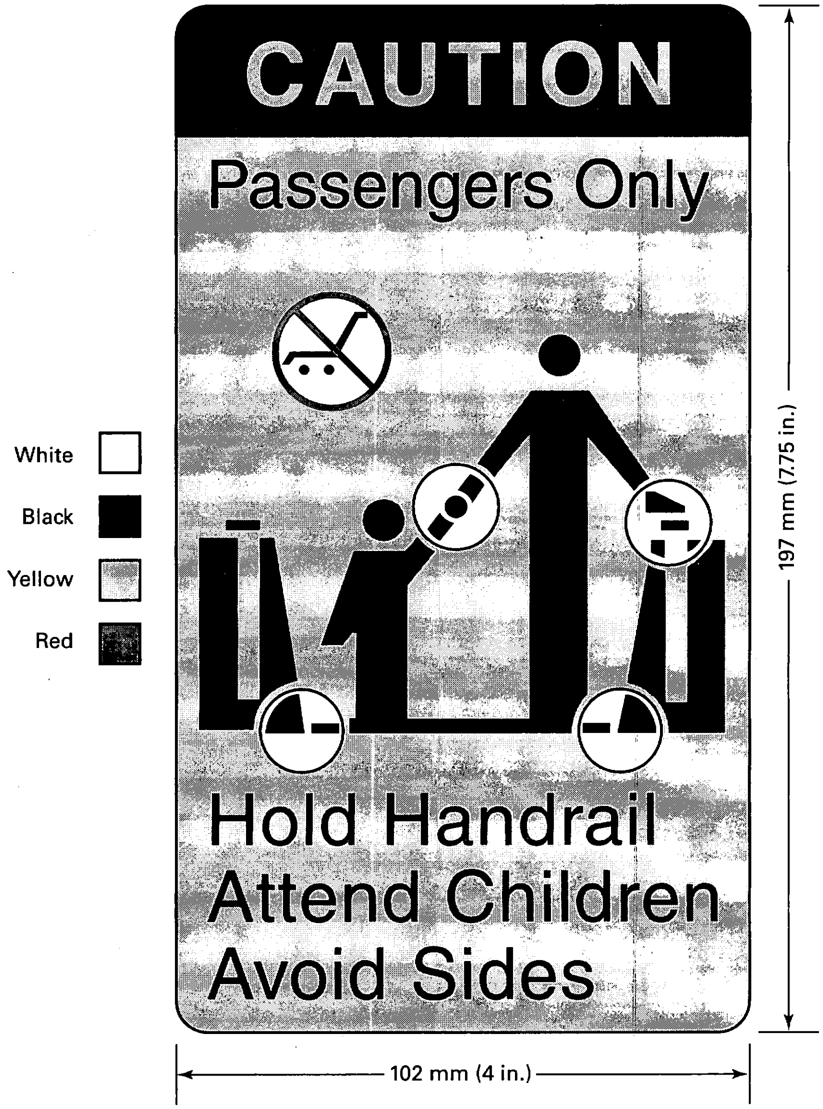
(a) permit the escalator to start; or

(b) render ineffective any electrical protective device required by 6.1.6.3, or the handrail speed monitoring device required by 6.1.6.4, or the missing step or missing dynamic skirt device required by 6.1.6.5.

NOTE [6.1.6.10.1(b)]: Requirements only apply to the circuits in which the devices are used and not to the devices themselves.

6.1.6.10.2 Redundancy used in the control and operating circuits to satisfy the requirements of 6.1.6.10.1 shall be checked prior to each start of the escalator. When a single ground or failure as specified in 6.1.6.10.1 occurs, the escalator shall not be permitted to restart. Implementation of redundancy by a software system shall be permitted, provided that the removal of power from the

Fig. 6.1.6.9.1 Caution Sign



driving-machine motor and brake shall not be solely dependent on software-controlled means.

6.1.6.10.3 Escalators with driving-machine motors employing static control shall conform to the following:

(a) Two devices shall be provided to remove power from the driving-machine motor. At least one device shall be an electromechanical contactor.

(1) The contactor shall be arranged to open each time the escalator stops.

(2) The contactor shall cause the removal of power from the driving-machine brake in accordance with 6.1.6.3.4.

(b) An additional contactor shall be provided to also open the driving-machine brake circuit. This contactor is not required to have contacts in the driving-machine motor circuit.

(c) The electrical protective devices required by 6.1.6.3 shall control the solid-state device and both contactors.

(d) After each stop of the escalator, the escalator shall not respond to a signal to start unless both contactors [see 6.1.6.10.3(a) and (b)] are in the de-energized position.

6.1.6.11 Electrically Powered Safety Devices. If the handrail speed monitoring device required by 6.1.6.4, the missing step or missing skirt device, required by 6.1.6.5, or any electrical protective device required by 6.1.6.3, requires electrical power for its functioning

(a) a loss of electrical power to the device shall cause power to be removed from the escalator driving-machine motor and brake

(07) (b) the occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; or any single solid-state device; or a software system failure, shall not render the missing step or missing dynamic skirt devices or handrail speed monitoring device or electrical protective device inoperative

(c) when a single ground or failure as described in 6.1.6.11(b) occurs, the escalator shall not be permitted to restart

6.1.6.12 Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective. The installation of capacitors, or other devices, the operation or failure of which will cause an unsafe operation of the escalator, is prohibited. No permanent device shall be installed, except as provided for in this Code, which will make any required electrical protective device ineffective. (See also 6.1.6.3.4.)

6.1.6.13 Completion or Maintenance of Circuit. The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to stop the escalator when the emergency stop switch is opened or when any of the electrical protective devices operate. These requirements do not apply to speed control switches (see 6.1.6.3.2, 6.1.6.3.8, and 6.1.6.4).

6.1.6.14 Escalator Manual Reset. Where manual reset is required, interruption of power to the escalator shall not cause a safety device to lose the status of the event upon return of power. The cause of the malfunction shall be indicated in some manner, so that an examination will be made prior to restarting the escalator. The starting switch shall not be operable until the reset for each activated device is accomplished.

6.1.6.15 Contactors and Relays for Use in Critical Operating Circuits. Where electromechanical contactors or relays are provided to fulfill the requirements of 6.1.6.10.1 through 6.1.6.10.3, they shall be considered to be used in critical operating circuits. If contact(s) on these electromechanical contactors or relays are used for monitoring purposes, they shall be prevented from changing state if the contact(s) utilized in a critical operating circuit fail to open in the intended manner. The monitoring contact(s) shall be positively actuated and shall not be solely dependent upon springs.

6.1.7 Lighting, Access, and Electrical Work

6.1.7.1 Lighting of Machine Room and Truss Interior

6.1.7.1.1 Remote Machine Room. Permanent electric lighting and at least one duplex receptacle rated at not less than 15 A, 120 V shall be provided in every remote machine room. The illumination shall be not less than 100 lx (10 fc) at the floor level. The lighting control switch shall be located within easy reach of the access to such rooms and so located that it can be operated without passing over or reaching over any part of the machinery.

6.1.7.1.2 Truss Interior. A duplex receptacle rated at not less than 15 A, 120 V, accessibly located, shall be provided under the access plates (see 6.1.7.3) at the top and bottom landings and in any machine areas located in the incline.

6.1.7.2 Lighting of Escalator. Landing floor plates and all exposed step treads shall be illuminated with a lighting intensity of not less than 50 lx (5 fc). The illumination of these surfaces shall be of uniform intensity and not contrast materially with that of the surrounding area.

6.1.7.3 Access to Interior. Reasonable access to the interior of the escalator shall be provided for inspection and maintenance.

6.1.7.3.1 Access plates requiring no more than 310 N (70 lbf) effort to open shall be provided at the top and bottom landing for inspection and maintenance. The plates shall be made of a material that will afford a secure foothold. The use of stone, terrazzo, or concrete as a fill material is prohibited in panels within the confines of the escalator truss.

6.1.7.3.2 Access plates at the top and bottom landings shall be securely fastened by a mechanical means. (07)

6.1.7.3.3 If access doors are provided in the side of the escalator enclosure, they shall be kept closed and locked. The key shall be removed only when in the locked position. The key shall be of Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

6.1.7.3.4 Where access is provided to a machinery enclosure, a fixed guard shall be provided to prevent accidental contact with the moving steps by a person servicing equipment from within the enclosure. The guard shall be made of material that will reject a 13 mm (0.5 in.) diameter ball and shall extend the full width of the step treads. A guard is not required where the only equipment normally serviced from within the enclosure is within the step band.

6.1.7.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

6.1.7.4.1 All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). In jurisdictions enforcing CSA-C22.1, power supply-line disconnecting means shall not be opened automatically by a fire alarm system.

6.1.7.4.2 Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 (07) defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification.

6.1.7.4.3 Control equipment shall be tested in accordance with the testing requirements of EN 12016 by exposing it to interference levels at the test values specified for "safety circuits." The interference shall not cause any of the conditions described in 6.1.6.10.1(a) and (b). If enclosure doors or suppression equipment must remain installed to meet the above requirements, warning signs to that effect shall be posted on the control equipment.

6.1.8 Outdoor Escalators

(07) **6.1.8.1 Weatherproofing.** Escalators shall be so constructed that exposure to the weather will not interfere with normal operation.

6.1.8.1.1 The escalator equipment and its supports shall be protected from corrosion.

6.1.8.1.2 Electrical equipment shall be provided with a degree of protection of at least Type 4 construction as specified in NEMA 250, and wiring shall be identified for use in wet locations in accordance with NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1 as applicable (see Part 9).

(07) **6.1.8.2 Precipitation.** A cover, directly over the horizontal projection of the escalator, shall be provided. The cover shall extend outward from the centerline of the handrail so that a line extended from the edge of the cover to the centerline of the handrail forms an angle of not less than 15 deg from the vertical.

6.1.8.2.1 When the escalator is subjected to blowing snow or freezing rain, heating systems shall be operated to prevent accumulation of snow or ice on the steps, landings, and skirt deflector devices. The heating systems operation shall be thermostatically controlled and independent of the escalator operation.

6.1.8.2.2 Drains suitable for all weather conditions shall be provided to prevent the accumulation of water.

6.1.8.3 Slip Resistance. Landing plates and combplates shall be designed to provide a secure foothold when wet.

SECTION 6.2
MOVING WALKS

6.2.1 Protection of Floor Openings

6.2.1.1 Protection Required. Floor openings for moving walks shall be protected against the passage of flame, heat, and/or smoke in accordance with the provisions of the applicable building code (see Part 9).

6.2.2 Protection of Supports and Machine Spaces Against Fire

6.2.2.1 Protection Required. The sides and undersides of the moving walk truss or group of adjacent trusses in a single wellway shall be enclosed in materials defined as either noncombustible or limited-combustible by the building code or NFPA 101, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Means provided for adequate ventilation of the driving machine and control spaces, when included in the truss enclosure area, shall be permitted.

6.2.3 Construction Requirements

6.2.3.1 Angle of Inclination. The angle of inclination from the horizontal shall not exceed 3 deg within 900 mm (36 in.) of the entrance and egress ends and shall not exceed 12 deg at any point.

6.2.3.2 Geometry

6.2.3.2.1 The width of the moving walk shall be the width of the exposed tread (see 6.2.3.7).

6.2.3.2.2 The height of the balustrade shall be not less than 900 mm (35 in.) nor more than 1 000 mm (39 in.) from the treadway to the top of handrail, measured perpendicular to the treadway surface.

6.2.3.2.3 The handrail shall be a minimum of 100 mm (4 in.) horizontally and 25 mm (1 in.) vertically away from adjacent surfaces, except that rounded fillets or beveled sides of the handrail stand are permitted to reduce the 25 mm (1 in.) clearance between the handrail and the point where the handrail stand is connected to the balustrade. The centerline of the handrail shall be not more than 240 mm (9.5 in.), measured horizontally, from the vertical plane through the edge of the exposed treadway (see Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-9).

6.2.3.3 Balustrades. Balustrades shall be installed on each side of the moving walk (see Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-7).

6.2.3.3.1 Construction

(a) The balustrade on the tread side shall have no areas or moldings depressed or raised more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) from the parent surface. Such areas or moldings shall have all boundary edges beveled or rounded.

(b) The balustrade shall be totally closed except:

(1) where the handrail enters the newel base (see 6.2.3.4.3).

(2) gaps between interior panels shall not be wider than 5 mm (0.19 in.). The edges shall be rounded or beveled.

(c) The width between the balustrade interior panels in the direction of travel shall not be changed.

6.2.3.3.2 Strength. Balustrades shall be designed to resist the simultaneous application of a static lateral distributed force of 585 N/m (40 lbf/ft) applied to the side of the handrail and a vertical distributed force of 730 N/m (50 lbf/ft) applied to the top of the handrail.

6.2.3.3.3 Use of Glass or Plastic. Glass or plastic, if used in balustrades, shall conform to the requirements of either of the following standards, whichever is applicable (see Part 9):

(a) ANSI Z97.1 or 16 CFR Part 1201

(b) one of the following CGSB Standards: CAN2-12.1, CAN2-12.11, or CAN2-12.12; except that there shall be no requirement for the panels to be transparent

Plastic bonded to basic supporting panels is not required to conform to these requirements.

6.2.3.3.4 Interior Low Deck. The interior low deck, where provided, shall conform to the following (see Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-9):

(a) The width from the vertical face of the interior panel to the vertical plane of the skirt panel shall not exceed 150 mm (6 in.).

(b) The angle between the surface of the deck and the plane of the noseline of the treadway shall be not less than 20 deg nor more than 30 deg.

(c) A horizontal section shall be permitted immediately adjacent to the interior panel. It shall be not greater than 35 mm (1.25 in.).

6.2.3.3.5 Skirtless Balustrade. On moving walks where the balustrade covers the edge of the treadway

(a) the clearance between the top surface of the treadway and the underside of the balustrade shall not exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) the balustrade shall be vertical and smooth for at least 25 mm (1 in.) including the 6 mm (0.25 in.) clearance above the top of the tread

6.2.3.3.6 Skirt Panels. Where skirt panels are provided

(a) the clearance between each side of the treadway and the adjacent skirt panel shall be not more than 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) the height of the skirt above the top of the tread shall be at least 25 mm (1 in.), measured vertically

(c) skirt panels shall not deflect more than 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) under a force of 670 N (150 lbf)

(d) the exposed surface of the skirt panels adjacent to the tread shall be smooth

6.2.3.3.7 Guard at Ceiling Intersections

(a) On high deck balustrades, a solid guard shall be rovided in the intersection of the angle of the outside balustrade deck and ceiling or soffit under either of the following conditions:

(1) where the clearance between the outside edge of the deck and the ceiling or soffit is 300 mm (12 in.) or less

(2) where the projected intersection of the outside deck and the ceiling or soffit is 600 mm (24 in.) or less from the centerline of the handrail

(b) On low deck balustrades, a solid guard shall be provided to protect the intersection formed by the top of the handrail and the plane of the ceiling or soffit where the centerline of the handrail is 350 mm (14 in.) or less from the ceiling or soffit.

(c) The vertical edge of the guard shall be a minimum of 350 mm (14 in.) in length.

(d) The moving walk side of the vertical face of the guard shall be flush with the face of the wellway.

(e) The exposed edge of the guard shall present a minimum width of 25 mm (1 in.) and a minimum radius of 12 mm (0.5 in.).

(f) Guards made of glass or plastic shall conform to the requirements of 6.2.3.3.3. See also Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-5.

6.2.3.3.8 Deck Barricades

(a) A barricade to restrict access to the outer deck on low deck exterior balustrades shall be provided on each moving walk when the exterior deck is greater than 915 mm (36 in.) above the floor in any part of its travel and the exterior deck width exceeds 125 mm (5 in.). On parallel abutting units, this protection shall be provided where the combined outer deck width exceeds 125 mm (5 in.). The barricade shall extend to a height that is nominally 100 mm (4 in.) below the top of the handrail.

(b) The barricades shall be located wherever the exterior deck exceeds the 915 mm (36 in.) height above the floor.

(c) On parallel adjacent moving walks, where the common low deck between adjacent interior panels exceeds 400 mm (16 in.), deck barricades should be spaced evenly along the treadway at not greater than 4.6 m (15 ft) measured on a line parallel to the direction of travel.

(d) Barricades made of glass or plastic shall conform to the requirements of 6.2.3.3.3.

All exposed barricade attachment fastener heads shall be of the tamper-resistant type.

6.2.3.4 Handrails

6.2.3.4.1 Type Required. Each balustrade shall be provided with a handrail moving in the same direction and at substantially the same speed as the treadway. The speed of the handrail shall not change when a retarding force of 450 N (100 lbf) is applied to the handrail opposite to the direction of travel.

6.2.3.4.2 Extension Beyond Combplates. The moving handrail at both the entrance and exit landings shall extend at normal height not less than 300 mm (12 in.) beyond the end of the exposed treadway. The point at which the moving handrail enters or leaves an enclosure shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) above the floor line.

6.2.3.4.3 Guards. Hand or finger guards shall be provided at points where the handrails enter the balustrade.

6.2.3.4.4 Splicing. Splicing of handrails shall be done in such a manner that the joint is free of any pinching effect.

6.2.3.4.5 Handrail Clearance. The horizontal clearance between either lip of the handrail and the handrail stand shall not exceed 10 mm (0.375 in.).

6.2.3.5 Pallet-Type Treadway

6.2.3.5.1 Slotting of Treadway. The treadway surface of each pallet shall be slotted in a direction parallel to its travel. Each slot shall be not more than 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) wide at the treadway surface and not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) deep; and the distance from center to center of adjoining slots shall be not more than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.). Sides of the slots shall be permitted to slope for mold draft purposes and shall be permitted to be filleted at the bottom. Slots shall be so located on each side of the pallet to form a cleat adjacent to the skirt panel. (See Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-10.)

6.2.3.5.2 Intermeshing Pallets. Alternate cleats on adjacent pallets shall intermesh so that there is no continuous transverse gap between adjacent pallets.

6.2.3.5.3 Alignment of Pallet Tread Surfaces. Adjacent ends of pallets shall not vary in elevation more than 1.6 mm (0.06 in.).

6.2.3.5.4 Pallet Fatigue Tests. Each pallet width shall be subjected to the pallet fatigue test as described in 8.3.11.

6.2.3.5.5 Material and Type

(a) Pallet frames and treads, excluding their attachments or inserts, shall be metal, except that magnesium alloys shall not be used; or the materials, in their end-use configuration, shall have a flame spread index of 0 to 50, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 84, UL 723, NFPA 255, or CAN/ULC-S102.2, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

(b) Nonmetallic attachments and inserts (excluding wheels) shall be classified 94 HB or better, in accordance with ANSI/UL 94.

(c) Pallet treads shall afford a secure foothold.

6.2.3.5.6 Pallet Wheels. Where support wheels are attached to the pallets and are not located within the width of the pallet, provision shall be made to prevent the pallet from falling into the moving walk interior due to a loss of one or more of the support wheel assemblies.

6.2.3.6 Belt-Type Treadway. Belt-type treadways shall conform to 6.2.3.6.1 and 6.2.3.6.2.

6.2.3.6.1 Splices. Splicing of the treadway belt shall be made in such a manner as to result in a continuous unbroken treadway surface of the same characteristics as the balance of the belt.

6.2.3.6.2 Slotting of Treadway. The treadway surface shall be slotted in a direction parallel to its travel for purposes of meshing with combplates at the landings. Each slot shall be not more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) wide at the treadway surface and not less than 4.8 mm (0.188 in.) deep, and the distance from center to center of adjoining slots shall be not more than 13 mm (0.50 in.). Sides of slots shall be permitted to slope for mold draft purposes and shall be permitted to be filleted at the bottom. Slots shall be so located on each side of the belt to form a cleat adjacent to the skirt panel.

6.2.3.7 Width. The width of a moving walk (see 6.2.3.2.1) shall be not less than 560 mm (22 in.). The maximum width shall depend both on the maximum slope at the point on the treadway and on the treadway speed. The width shall not exceed the value shown in Table 6.2.3.7.

6.2.3.8 Entrance and Egress Ends

6.2.3.8.1 Combplates

(a) There shall be a combplate, to which combs shall be fastened, at the entrance and at the exit of every moving walk.

(b) The comb teeth shall be meshed with and set into the slots in the tread surfaces so that the points of the teeth are always below the upper surface of the treads.

(c) Combplates shall be adjustable vertically. Sections forming the comb teeth shall be readily replaceable.

(d) The comb section, combplate, and landing plate assemblies shall not make contact with the pallet or belt treadway surfaces when a weight of 160 kg (350 lb) is applied to any area 200 mm × 300 mm (8 in. × 12 in.) centered on the plates with the 300 mm (12 in.) dimension parallel to the direction of travel.

6.2.3.8.2 Distinction Between Comb and Treadway. There shall be a visual contrast between the comb and tread, achieved by color, pattern, or texture.

6.2.3.8.3 Adjacent Floor Surfaces. The adjacent floor surfaces at each landing shall be continuous with the top of the landing plate, with no abrupt change in elevation of more than 6 mm (0.25 in.).

6.2.3.8.4 Safety Zone. The entry and exit zones shall be kept clear of all obstacles. The width of the zones shall be not less than the width between the centerlines of the handrails plus 200 mm (8 in.). The length of the zones, measured from the end of the newel, shall be not less than twice the distance between the centerlines of the handrails. Space shall be provided to accommodate all traffic in the safety zone.

NOTE: These dimensions are absolute minimums.

Table 6.2.3.7 Treadway Width

Maximum Treadway, Slope at Any Point on Treadway, deg	Maximum Moving Walk Treadway Width, mm (in.)		
	Maximum Treadway Speed, 0.45 m/s (90 ft/min)	Treadway Speed, Above 0.45 m/s (90 ft/min) to 0.7 m/s (140 ft/min)	Treadway Speed, Above 0.7 m/s (140 ft/min) to 0.9 m/s (180 ft/min)
0 to 4	Unrestricted	1 525 (60)	1 020 (40)
Above 4 to 8	1 020 (40)	1 020 (40)	1 020 (40)
Above 8 to 12	1 020 (40)	1 020 (40)	Not permitted

6.2.3.8.5 Floor Opening Protection Adjacent to Moving Walk Wellway. Floor openings adjacent to the entire length of the moving walk wellway shall be provided with protection in accordance with the applicable building code (see Part 9).

6.2.3.9 Supporting Structure

6.2.3.9.1 Supports. Supports shall conform to the following:

(a) Slider-Bed Type. The carrying portion of the treadway shall be supported for its entire width and length, except where it passes from a support to a pulley. The surface of the slider bed shall be reasonably smooth. It shall be so constructed that it will not support combustion.

(b) Roller-Bed Type. Where the treadway is supported on a series of rollers, the combination of roller spacing, belt tension, and belt stiffness shall be such that the deflection of the treadway surface, midway between rollers, shall not exceed the quantity 0.25 mm (0.094 in.) plus 0.004 times the center-to-center distance of rollers in mm (in.) when measured as follows:

(1) The treadway surface shall be loaded midway between rollers with a 11.3 kg (25 lb) weight, concentrated on a cylindrical foot-piece 50 mm (2 in.) long by 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter, placed with its long axis across the belt. Deflection of this footpiece from its unloaded position shall not exceed the figure obtained above.

(2) The rollers shall be concentric and true running within commercially acceptable tolerances.

(c) Edge-Supported Belt Type. When the treadway belt is transversely rigid and is supported by rollers along its edges, the following requirements shall apply:

(1) With the belt tensioned through the take-up system, the permissible slope of a straight line from the top of a treadway rib adjacent to the centerline of the treadway to the top of a treadway rib adjacent to the balustrade, in a plane perpendicular to the path of the treadway, shall not exceed 3% when the treadway is loaded with a 68 kg (150 lb) weight on a 150 mm × 250 mm (6 in. × 10 in.) plate, located on the centerline of the treadway with the 250 mm (10 in.) dimension in the direction of treadway travel.

(2) In order to support the treadway in case of localized overload, supports shall be supplied at intervals not exceeding 1 830 mm (72 in.) along the centerline of the treadway. The supports shall be located at a level not more than 50 mm (2 in.) below the underside of the treadway when it is loaded under test conditions required by 6.2.3.9.1(c)(1).

(d) Pallet Type. Pallet wheel tracks shall be so designed and located as to prevent more than 3 mm (0.125 in.) vertical displacement of the treadway should the pallet connection means break.

6.2.3.10 Rated Load

6.2.3.10.1 Structural. For the purpose of structural design, the rated load shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Structural rated load (kg)} = 0.49\,(W)A$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Structural rated load (lb)} = 8.33\,(W)A$$

where

A = length of the horizontal projection of the entire truss, m (ft)

W = width of the moving walk, mm (in.) (see 6.2.3.2.1 and 6.2.3.7)

6.2.3.10.2 Machinery

(a) For the purpose of driving machine and power transmission calculations, the rated load for all single driving machines shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (kg)} = 0.37\,(W)C_1$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (lb)} = 6.25\,(W)C_1$$

(b) The rated load per module for two or more modular driving machines shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (kg)} = 0.37\,(W)C_2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Machinery rated load (lb)} = 6.25\,(W)C_2$$

where
C_1 = length of exposed treadway, m (ft)
C_2 = length of exposed treadway per module, m (ft)
W = width of the moving walk, mm (in.) (see 6.2.3.2.1 and 6.2.3.7)

6.2.3.10.3 Brake

(a) For the purpose of brake calculations, the rated load for all single driving machines shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(1) With moving walk stopped

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = 0.49\,(W)C_1$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = 8.33\,(W)C_1$$

(2) With moving walk running

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = 0.37\,(W)C_1$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = 6.25\,(W)C_1$$

(b) The rated load per module for two or more modular driving machines shall be considered to be not less than the following:

(1) with moving walk stopped

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = 0.49\,(W)C_2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = 8.33\,(W)C_2$$

(2) with moving walk running

(SI Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (kg)} = 0.37\,(W)C_2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Brake rated load (lb)} = 6.25\,(W)C_2$$

where
C_1 = length of exposed treadway, m (ft)
C_2 = length of exposed treadway per module, m (ft)
W = width of moving walk, mm (in.) (see 6.2.3.2.1 and 6.2.3.7)

6.2.3.10.4 Pallet. The pallet shall be designed to support a load of 135 kg (300 lb) for each 0.42 m^2 (4.5 ft^2) of area, or part thereof. The load shall be applied on a 150 mm × 250 mm (6 in. × 10 in.) plate, placed on any part of the pallet with the 250 mm (10 in.) dimension in the direction of step travel. If more than one load is required, they shall be located no closer than 910 mm (36 in.) to each other.

6.2.3.11 Design Factors of Safety. Factors of safety are based on either single driving-machine design or modular driving-machine design. The factors of safety shall be at least as specified in 6.2.3.11.1 through 6.2.3.11.5.

6.2.3.11.1 Trusses and all supporting structures, including tracks, shall conform to the AISC Specifications for Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings, or the CSA Standard CAN/CSA-S16.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), based on the maximum static load calculated per 6.2.3.10.1.

6.2.3.11.2 For driving-machine parts based on not less than the loads calculated per 6.2.3.10.2:

(a) where made of steel or bronze, factor of safety shall be 8

(b) where made of cast iron or other materials, factor of safety shall be 10

6.2.3.11.3 For power transmission members, factor of safety shall be 10, based on not less than the loads calculated per 6.2.3.10.2.

6.2.3.11.4 For pallets, factor of safety shall be 5, based on not less than the loads designated in 6.2.3.10.4.

6.2.3.11.5 For belts, factor of safety shall be 5, based on not less than the loads designated in 6.2.3.10.2.

6.2.3.12 Chains. The use of chains with cast iron links shall not be permitted.

6.2.3.13 Chain Drives. Chain drives shall be of the type covered by ASME B29.1M and ANSI/SAE SP-68.

When operating at the machinery rated load, the load imposed on such chains shall not exceed the horsepower rating established by these standards.

The loading shall be considered to be uniform and the service to be 24 h per day.

6.2.3.14 V-Belt Drives. The load imposed on V-belt drives, when operating at the machinery rated load, shall not exceed the horsepower rating established by ANSI/RMA IP-20. The loading shall be considered to be uniform and the service to be 24 h per day.

6.2.3.15 Headroom. The minimum headroom shall be 2 130 mm (84 in.) measured vertically from the treadway surface, landing plates, and landings.

6.2.3.16 Welding. Welding shall conform to 8.8.

Table 6.2.4 Treadway Speed

Maximum Treadway Slope at Any Point on Treadway, deg	Maximum Treadway Speed, m/s (ft/min)
0 to 8	0.9 (180)
Above 8 to 12	0.7 (140)

6.2.3.17 Nonmoving-Walk Related Equipment. Components not used directly in connection with the moving walk are prohibited to be installed on, in, or through the moving walk.

6.2.4 Rated Speed

The maximum speed of a treadway shall depend on the maximum slope at any point on the treadway. The speed shall not exceed the value determined by Table 6.2.4.

The speed attained by a moving walk after startup shall not be intentionally varied.

6.2.5 Driving Machine, Motor, and Brake

6.2.5.1 Connection Between Driving Machine and Main Drive Shaft. The driving machine shall be connected to the main drive shaft by toothed gearing, a mechanical coupling, or a chain.

6.2.5.2 Driving Motor. An electric motor shall not drive more than one moving walk driving machine. A driving machine shall not operate more than one moving walk.

6.2.5.3 Brakes

6.2.5.3.1 Moving Walk Driving-Machine Brakes

(a) Each moving walk driving machine shall be provided with an electrically released and mechanically or magnetically applied brake. If the brake is magnetically applied, a ceramic permanent magnet shall be used. There shall be no intentional time delay designed into the application of the brake.

(b) The brake shall be applied automatically if the electrical power supply is interrupted. The brake shall be capable of stopping the down- or horizontal-running moving walk with any load up to the brake rated load [see 6.2.3.10.3(a)(2) or (b)(2)]. The brake shall hold the stopped moving walk with any load up to the brake rated load [see 6.2.3.10.3(a)(1) or (b)(1)].

(c) Driving-machine brakes shall stop the down- or horizontal-running moving walk treadway at an average rate not greater than 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) as measured over the total retardation time. No peak horizontal retardation value exceeding 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) shall have a time duration greater than 0.125 s (see Nonmandatory Appendix I, Fig. I-11).

(d) The moving walk brake shall be provided with a data plate that is readily visible, located on or adjacent to the machine brake, and that indicates

(1) the range of brake torques in N·m (ft-lb) that complies with 6.2.5.3.1

(2) the method of measuring the torque, designated "BREAKAWAY" or "DYNAMIC," based on the method used when measuring the torque

(3) the location where the torque is to be measured, e.g., "MOTOR SHAFT," "MACHINE INPUT SHAFT," "MAIN DRIVE SHAFT"

(4) the minimum stopping distance with no load

(5) the maximum stopping distance with rated load in the down direction that corresponds to the minimum distance between the comb and the pallet when the pallet is positioned to activate any of the electrical protective devices required in 6.2.6.3.9 or 6.2.6.5.

(e) Where means other than a continuous shaft, mechanical coupling, or toothed gearing is used to connect the motor to a gear reducer, the moving walk driving-machine brake shall be located on the gear reducer, main drive shaft, or a specially attached braking surface attached directly to the treadway.

6.2.5.3.2 Main Drive Shaft Brake. If the moving walk driving-machine brake is connected to the main drive shaft by a chain, and the moving walk, with the drive chain disconnected, is capable of running under gravity with any load up to and including rated load (see 6.2.3.10.2), a mechanically or magnetically applied brake capable of stopping a down-running moving walk with brake rated load (see 6.2.3.10.3) shall be provided on the main drive shaft or specially attached braking surface attached directly to the treadway. If the brake is magnetically applied, a ceramic permanent magnet shall be used.

6.2.6 Operating and Safety Devices

6.2.6.1 General

6.2.6.1.1 Operating and safety devices conforming to 6.2.6 shall be provided. When more than one driving machine per moving walk is utilized, actuation of devices covered by 6.2.6 shall simultaneously control all driving machines.

6.2.6.1.2 Automatic Operation. Automatic starting by any means, or automatic stopping, except as required in 6.2.6, shall be prohibited.

6.2.6.2 Starting and Inspection Control Switches

6.2.6.2.1 Moving walks shall be provided with starting switch(es) conforming to the following:

(a) Location and Design. The switch(es) shall be

(1) located so that the exposed treadway is within sight.

(2) key operated, of the continuous-pressure spring-return type, and shall be operated by a cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination.

(3) clearly and permanently marked "TOWARDS," "RUN," and "AWAY," in that order, with the key removable only in the "RUN" (spring return) position. The switch(es) shall be rotated clockwise to go from the "TOWARDS" to "RUN" to "AWAY" position.

(b) Operating Requirements. The operation of the switch(es) shall initiate movement of the moving walk. The moving walk shall not start (restart) unless all starting switch(es) were first in the "RUN" position.

(c) The starting switch(es) shall be located within reach of an emergency stop button (see 6.2.6.3.1).

(d) The key shall be of Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

6.2.6.2.2 Inspection Control. Each moving walk shall be equipped with inspection controls not accessible to the general public during normal operation to provide constant pressure operation during maintenance, repair, or inspection by means of a manually operated control device.

(a) General Requirements

(1) Switches for transferring the control of the moving walk to inspection operation shall be provided or a switch shall be provided at each landing in a portable control station; the switch(es) shall function as follows:

(a) be through a contact that shall be positively opened mechanically and whose opening shall not depend solely on springs

(b) be manually operated

(c) be labeled "INSPECTION"

(d) have two positions, labeled "INSPECTION" or "INSP" and "NORMAL" or "NORM"

(e) when in the "INSPECTION" position, it shall cause the movement of the moving walk to be solely under the control of constant pressure operating devices at that landing or in that portable control station

(f) be arranged so that if more than one inspection transfer switch is in the "INSPECTION" position, then all constant pressure operating devices at all locations shall be inoperative

(g) be protected against accidental contact

(h) the completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to initiate inspection control

(2) Constant pressure operating devices shall

(a) allow movement of the moving walk only by constant application of manual pressure

(b) be distinctly recognizable from indications on the device as to the direction of travel controlled

(c) be protected against accidental contact

(d) be located so that the moving walk treadway surface is within sight

(3) A stop switch conforming to 6.2.6.3.12 shall be provided adjacent to the constant pressure operating devices.

(4) When portable control stations are used, the cord length shall not exceed 3 000 mm (120 in.) in length.

(b) Plug-in Portable Control Station. A plug-in portable control station shall be permitted provided that

(1) either a transfer switch conforming to 6.2.6.2.2(a)(1)(a), (a)(1)(b), and (a)(1)(c) is complied with, or when plugged in, the moving walk shall automatically transfer to inspection operation

(2) when the switch, if provided, is in the "INSPECTION" position, or when the control station is plugged in, it shall cause the movement of the moving walk to be solely under the control of constant pressure operating devices contained in the portable unit

(3) the plug-in portable control station is stored at the upper landing machinery space

6.2.6.3 Electrical Protective Devices. Electrical protective devices shall be provided in accordance with 6.2.6.3.1 through 6.2.6.3.12.

6.2.6.3.1 Emergency Stop Buttons

(a) Location. In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, a red stop button shall be visibly located at the top and the bottom landings on the right side facing the escalator. Remote stop buttons are prohibited. In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, a red stop button shall be visibly located at the top and the bottom landings on the right side facing the escalator. If auxiliary emergency-stop buttons are provided, they shall be located within view of the escalator. **(07)**

(1) On high deck balustrades, they shall be located on the curved newel deck in the upper quadrant, with the centerline of the button at a 45 deg angle from the horizontal.

(2) On low deck balustrades, they shall be located below the handrail height. The centerline of the button shall be located on a radial line 45 deg above the horizontal, such that no part of the button assembly is within 38 mm (1.5 in.) of the bottom of the handrail and the button is no more than 90 mm (3.5 in.) from the bottom of the handrail.

(b) Cover, Alarm, and Marking. The buttons shall be covered with a transparent cover that can be readily lifted or pushed aside. When the cover is moved, an audible warning signal shall be activated. The signal shall have a sound intensity of 80 dBA minimum at the button location. The cover shall be marked "EMERGENCY STOP," "MOVE COVER" or equivalent legend (e.g., "LIFT COVER," "SLIDE COVER," etc.), and "PUSH BUTTON." "EMERGENCY STOP" shall be in letters not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) high. Other required

wording shall be in letters not less than 4.8 mm (0.188 in.) high. The cover shall be self-resetting.

(c) Operation. The operation of either of these buttons shall cause the electric power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake. It shall not be possible to start the moving walk by these buttons.

6.2.6.3.2 Speed Governor. A speed governor shall be provided, except as specified in 6.2.6.3.2(c).

(a) The operation of the governor shall cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake should the speed of the treadway exceed a predetermined value, which shall be not more than 40% above the rated speed.

(b) The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

(c) The speed governor is not required where an alternating current, squirrel cage induction motor is used, and the motor is directly connected to the driving machine.

(d) All moving walks equipped with variable frequency drive-motor controls shall be provided with an overspeed governor.

6.2.6.3.3 Broken Treadway Device. A broken treadway device shall be provided that shall cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake if the connecting means between pallets or the belt breaks. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.4 Drive-Chain Device. When the driving machine is connected to the main drive shaft by a chain, a device shall be provided that will cause the application of the brake on the main drive shaft and also cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake if the drive chain between the machine and the main drive shaft becomes disengaged from the sprockets. The device shall of the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.5 Stop Switch in Machinery Spaces. A stop switch conforming to the following requirements shall be provided in each machinery space and other spaces where means of access to the interior space is provided (see 6.2.7.3), except for the machinery space where the main line disconnect switch is located:

(a) when opened ("STOP" position), cause the electric power to be removed from the moving walk drving-machine motor and brake

(b) be of the manually opened and closed type

(c) have red operating handles or buttons

(d) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions

(e) shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs

6.2.6.3.6 Moving Walk Egress Restriction Device. Egress restrictors, if used, that would prevent the free and continuous exiting of passengers, shall provide a signal to a device on the moving walk that shall cause the electric power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake when the exit restrictors begin to close.

6.2.6.3.7 Reversal Stop Device. Means shall be provided to cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake in case of reversal of travel while the moving walk is operating in the ascending direction. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.8 Disconnected Motor Safety Device. If the drive motor is attached to a gear reducer by means other than a continuous shaft, mechanical coupling, or toothed gearing, a device shall be provided that will cause the electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake (see 6.2.5.3.1) if the motor becomes disconnected from the gear reducer. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.9 Pallet Level Device. Moving walks equipped with pallets with trail wheels shall be provided with pallet level devices located at the top and bottom of the moving walk. These devices shall detect downward displacement of 3 mm (0.125 in.) or greater at either side of the trailing edge of the pallet. When activated, the device shall cause the moving walk to stop before the pallet enters the combplate. The device shall cause the power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. Devices shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.10 Handrail Entry Device. A handrail entry device shall be provided at each newel. It shall be operative in the newels in which the handrail enters the balustrade. It shall be of the manual-reset type and shall cause the moving walk to stop by removing power from the driving-machine motor and brake. It shall operate in either of two ways

(a) if an object becomes caught between the handrail and the handrail guard

(b) if an object approaches the area between the handrail and handrail guard

For those units that rely on an opening of the balustrade to prevent entrapment, all handrail entry devices shall be operative whenever the handrails are operating.

6.2.6.3.11 Comb-Pallet Impact Devices. Devices shall be provided that will cause the opening of the power circuit to the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake if either

(a) a horizontal force not greater than 1 780 N (400 lbf) in the direction of travel is applied at either side, or not greater than 3 560 N (800 lbf) at the center of the front edge of the comb-plate; or

(b) a resultant vertical force not greater than 670 N (150 lbf) in the upward direction is applied at the center of the front of the combplate.

These devices shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.3.12 Stop Switch in Inspection Controls. A stop switch conforming to the following requirements shall be provided when required by 6.2.6.2.2:

(a) when opened ("STOP" position), cause the electric power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake

(b) be of the manually opened and closed type

(c) have red operating handles or buttons

(d) be conspicuously and permanently marked "STOP," and shall indicate the "STOP" and "RUN" positions

(e) shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically and their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs

6.2.6.4 Handrail Speed Monitoring Device. A handrail speed monitoring device shall be provided that will cause the activation of the alarm required by 6.2.6.3.1(b) without any intentional delay whenever the speed of either handrail deviates from the treadway speed by 15% or more. The device shall also cause electric power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake when the speed deviation of 15% or more is continuous within a 2 s to 6 s range. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.5 Missing Pallet Device. A device shall be provided to detect a missing pallet and bring the moving walk to a stop before the gap resulting from the missing pallet emerges from the comb. The device shall cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake. The device shall be of the manual-reset type.

6.2.6.6 Tandem Operation. Tandem-operation moving walks shall be electrically interlocked where traffic flow is such that bunching will occur if the moving walk carrying passengers away from the intermediate landing stops.

The electrical interlocks shall stop the moving walk carrying passengers into the common intermediate landing if the moving walk carrying passengers away from the landing stops. These moving walks shall also be electrically interlocked to assure that they run in the same direction.

6.2.6.7 Moving Walk Smoke Detectors. Smoke detectors shall be permitted, which shall activate the alarm required by 6.2.6.3.1(b) and, after at least 15 s, shall cause the interruption of power to the driving-machine motor and brake.

6.2.6.8 Signs

6.2.6.8.1 Caution Signs. A caution sign shall be located at the top and bottom landings of each moving walk, readily visible to the boarding passengers.

The sign shall include the following wording:

(a) "Caution"

(b) "Passengers Only"

(c) "Hold Handrail"

(d) "Attend Children"

(e) "Avoid Sides"

The sign shall be standard for all moving walks and shall be identical in format, size, color, wording, and pictorials as shown in Fig. 6.1.6.9.1.

The sign shall be durable and have a maximum thickness of 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) with rounded or beveled corners and edges.

6.2.6.8.2 Additional Signs. Signs in addition to those required by 6.2.3.8.1 relating to cautions or warnings applying to moving walk passengers, when provided, shall be in a readily visible location, and limited to conveying any additional cautions and/or warnings. The additional signs shall be prohibited in the area starting from 3 000 mm (118 in.) horizontally outward from the end of the newel along the path of travel and to a point 900 mm (36 in.) from the tread-comb intersection along the treadway. Its location shall not impede or otherwise cause persons about to board the moving walk to suddenly pause or stop. The sign shall comply with ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

6.2.6.9 Control and Operating Circuits. The design and installation of the control and operating circuits shall conform to 6.2.6.9.1 through 6.2.6.9.3.

6.2.6.9.1 The occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; or any single solid-state device; or a software system failure, shall not

(a) permit the moving walk to start

(b) render ineffective any electrical protective device required by 6.2.6.3, the handrail speed monitoring device required by 6.2.6.4, or the missing pallet device required by 6.2.6.5

NOTE [6.2.6.9.1(b)]: Requirements only apply to the circuits in which the devices are used and not to the devices themselves.

6.2.6.9.2 Redundancy used in the control and operating circuits to satisfy the requirements of 6.2.6.9.1 shall be checked prior to each start of the moving walk. When a single ground or failure as specified in 6.2.6.9.1 occurs, the moving walk shall not be permitted to restart. Implementation of redundancy by a software system shall be permitted, provided that the removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake shall not be solely dependent on software-controlled means.

6.2.6.9.3 Moving walks with driving-machine motors employing static control shall conform to the following:

(a) Two devices shall be provided to remove power from the driving-machine motor. At least one device shall be an electromechanical contactor.

(1) The contactor shall be arranged to open each time the moving walk stops.

(2) The contactor shall cause the removal of power from the driving-machine brake in accordance with 6.2.6.3.4.

(b) An additional contactor shall be provided to also open the driving-machine brake circuit. This contactor is not required to have contacts in the driving-machine motor circuit.

(c) The electrical protective devices required by 6.2.6.3 shall control the solid-state device and both contactors.

(d) After each stop of the moving walk, the moving walk shall not respond to a signal to start unless both contactors [see 6.2.6.9.3(a) and (b)] are in the de-energized position.

6.2.6.10 Electrically Powered Safety Devices. If the handrail-speed monitoring device required by 6.2.6.4, the missing pallet device, required by 6.2.6.5, or any electrical protective device required by 6.2.6.3, requires electrical power for its functioning

(a) a loss of electrical power to the device shall cause power to be removed from the moving walk driving-machine motor and brake

(07) *(b)* the occurrence of a single ground or the failure of any single magnetically operated switch, contactor, or relay; or any single solid-state device; or a software system failure, shall not render the missing pallet device or handrail speed monitoring device or electrical protective device inoperative

(c) when a single ground or failure as described in 6.2.6.10.2 occurs, the moving walk shall not be permitted to restart

6.2.6.11 Installation of Capacitors or Other Devices to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective. The installation of capacitors, or other devices, the operation or failure of which will cause an unsafe operation of the moving walk, is prohibited. No permanent device shall be installed, except as provided for in this Code, which will make any required electrical protective device ineffective.

6.2.6.12 Completion or Maintenance of Circuit. The completion or maintenance of an electric circuit shall not be used to stop the moving walk when the emergency stop switch is opened or when any of the electrical protective devices operate. These requirements do not apply to electrically assisted braking or speed control switches (see 6.2.6.3.2, 6.2.6.3.7, and 6.2.6.4).

6.2.6.13 Moving Walk Manual Reset. Where manual reset is required, interruption of power to the moving walk shall not cause a safety device to lose the status of the event upon return of power. The cause of the malfunction shall be indicated in some manner, so that an examination will be made prior to restarting the moving walk. The starting switch shall not be operable until the reset for each activated safety device is accomplished.

6.2.6.14 Contactors and Relays for Use in Critical Operating Circuits. Where electromechanical contactors or relays are provided to fulfill the requirements of 6.2.6.9.1 through 6.2.6.9.3, they shall be considered to be used in critical operating circuits. If the contact(s) on these electromechanical contactors or relays is used for monitoring purposes, it shall be prevented from changing state if the contact(s) utilized in a critical operating circuit fails to open in the intended manner. The monitoring contact(s) shall be positively actuated and shall not be solely dependent upon springs.

6.2.7 Lighting, Access, and Electrical Work

6.2.7.1 Lighting of Machine Room and Truss Interior

6.2.7.1.1 Remote Machine Room. Permanent electric lighting and a duplex receptacle rated at not less than 15 A, 120 V shall be provided in every remote machine room.

The illumination shall be not less than 100 lx (10 fc) at the floor level. The lighting control switch shall be located within easy reach of the access to such rooms and so located that it can be operated without passing over or reaching over any part of the machinery.

6.2.7.1.2 Truss Interior. A duplex receptacle rated at not less than 15 A 120 V accessibly located, shall be provided under the access plates (see 6.2.7.3) at both landings and in any machine areas located within the moving walk.

6.2.7.2 Lighting of Treadway. Treadways shall be illuminated with a light intensity of not less than 50 lx (5 fc). The illumination shall be of uniform intensity and should not contrast materially with that of the surrounding area.

6.2.7.3 Access to Interior. Reasonable access to the interior of the moving walk shall be provided for inspection and maintenance.

6.2.7.3.1 Access plates requiring no more than 310 N (70 lbf) of effort to open shall be provided at the top and bottom landings for inspection and maintenance. The plates shall be made of a material that will afford a secure foothold. The use of stone, terrazzo, or concrete as a fill material is prohibited within the confines of the moving walk truss.

6.2.7.3.2 Access plates at the top and bottom landings shall be securely fastened by a mechanical means. (07)

6.2.7.3.3 If access doors are provided in the side of the moving walk enclosure, they shall be kept closed and locked. The key shall be removable only when in the locked position. The key shall be of Group 2 Security (see 8.1).

6.2.7.3.4 Where access is provided to a machinery enclosure, a fixed guard shall be provided to prevent accidental contact with the moving pallets and moving treadways by a person servicing equipment from within the enclosure. The guard shall be made of material that will reject a 13 mm (0.5 in.) diameter ball and shall extend the full width of the pallet treads. A guard is not required where the only equipment normally serviced from within the enclosure is within the pallet band.

6.2.7.4 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

6.2.7.4.1 All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). In jurisdictions enforcing CSA-C22.1, power supply-line disconnecting means shall not be opened automatically by a fire alarm system.

(07) **6.2.7.4.2** Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA-B44.1/ASME A17.5 defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification.

6.2.7.4.3 Control equipment shall be tested in accordance with the testing requirements of EN 12016 by exposing it to interference levels at the test values specified for "safety circuits." The interference shall not cause any of the conditions described in 6.2.6.9.1(a) and (b). If enclosure doors or suppression equipment must remain installed to meet the above requirements, warning signs to that effect shall be posted on the control equipment.

6.2.8 Outdoor Moving Walks

6.2.8.1 Weatherproofing. Moving walks shall be **(07)**
so constructed that exposure to the weather will not interfere with normal operation.

6.2.8.1.1 The moving walk equipment and its supports shall be protected from corrosion.

6.2.8.1.2 Electrical equipment shall be provided with a degree of protection of at least Type 4 construction as specified in NEMA 250, and wiring shall be identified for use in wet locations in accordance with NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1 as applicable (see Part 9).

6.2.8.2 Precipitation. A cover, directly over the hori- **(07)**
zontal projection of the moving walk, shall be provided. The cover shall extend outward from the centerline of the handrail so that a line extended from the edge of the cover to the centerline of the handrail forms an angle of not less than 15 deg from the vertical.

6.2.8.2.1 When the moving walk is subjected to blowing snow or freezing rain, heating systems shall be operated to prevent accumulation of snow or ice on the treadway, landings, and skirt deflector devices. The heating systems operation shall be thermostatically controlled and independent of the moving walk operation.

6.2.8.2.2 Drains suitable for all weather conditions shall be provided to prevent the accumulation of water.

6.2.8.3 Slip Resistance. Landing plates and comb-plates shall be designed to provide a secure foothold when wet.

Part 7
Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts

(07)
SCOPE

Part 7 applies to dumbwaiters and material lifts.

NOTE: See also Part 8 for additional requirements that apply to *dumbwaiters and material lifts.*

Where the term "elevator" is used in a referenced requirement, it shall mean "dumbwaiter" or "material lift."

(07)
SECTION 7.1 POWER AND HAND DUMBWAITERS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Requirement 7.1 applies to all power and hand dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices.

7.1.1 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

The construction of hoistways and hoistway enclosures shall comply with 2.1, except as modified by 7.1.1.1 through 7.1.1.5.

7.1.1.1 Requirement 2.1.1.1 applies, except where dumbwaiters are installed in a private residence. In private residences, fire-resistive construction shall conform to the requirements of the building code, or where no building code has been enacted, the CABO One and Two Family Dwelling Code.

(07) **7.1.1.2** Requirement 2.1.2.1 does not apply. Where a hoistway extends into the top floor of a building, the hoistway or machinery space enclosures, where required, shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements of the building code (see 1.3).

7.1.1.3 Requirement 2.1.3.1 does not apply. Hand and power dumbwaiter machines and sheaves shall be permitted to be located inside the hoistway enclosure at the top or bottom without intervening enclosures or platforms. If a floor is provided at the top of the hoistway, it shall comply with 7.1.1.5.

7.1.1.4 Requirement 2.1.3.2 does not apply.

7.1.1.5 Requirement 2.1.3.3 does not apply. The floor shall be designed in accordance with other floors in the building. Where the dumbwaiter machine is to be supported by machine room floor, the floor shall be designed in accordance with 2.9.4 and 2.9.5.

7.1.2 Pits

Pits are not required, but shall be permitted. Where a pit is provided, it shall conform to 2.2, except as modified by 7.1.2.1 through 7.1.2.6.

7.1.2.1 Requirement 2.2.1 does not apply. Pits shall be permitted to be provided.

7.1.2.2 Requirement 2.2.4 does not apply. The access door shall be provided with an electric contact, which will cause the interruption of power to the motor and brake when the door is open.

7.1.2.3 Requirement 2.2.5 does not apply. If the level of illumination in the pit, where provided, does not meet the requirements of 2.2.5, then a permanent or portable lighting means complying with 2.2.5.1 shall be provided.

7.1.2.4 Requirement 2.2.6 applies only where pit access is provided by means of a ladder (see 2.2.4.2).

7.1.2.5 Requirement 2.2.7 does not apply.

7.1.2.6 Requirement 2.2.8 does not apply.

7.1.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights

Requirement 2.3 does not apply to the location and guarding of counterweights, except that the location of counterweight shall comply with 2.3.1.

7.1.4 Vertical Car Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights

Requirement 2.4 does not apply. Bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 7.1.4.1 through 7.1.4.2.

7.1.4.1 When the car or counterweight reaches its maximum limit of downward travel, no part of the car or counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the pit or floor beneath the lowest landing or equipment located in the hoistway, except a buffer or bumper.

7.1.4.2 When the car or counterweight reaches its maximum limit of upward travel, no part of the car or counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the overhead structure or equipment located in the hoistway, except a mechanical stop or buffer.

7.1.4.3 Where a top-of-car operating device is provided, a minimum vertical space shall be provided on (07) the car top when the car reaches its maximum limit of upward travel. The space shall comply with 7.1.4.3.1 and 7.1.4.3.2.

7.1.4.3.1 Horizontal unobstructed area on the car top of not less than 0.370 m^2 (570 in.^{2}) and measured not less than 500 mm (20 in.) on one side, and

7.1.4.3.2 Vertical height of not less than 1 100 mm (43 in.) measures vertically between the top of the car enclosure and the overhead structure or other obstruction.

7.1.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5, except as modified by 7.1.5.1 through 7.1.5.4.

7.1.5.1 Requirement 2.5.1.1 applies for dumbwaiters with rated load over 227 kg (500 lb). For dumbwaiters with a rated load of 227 kg (500 lb) or less, the clearance between the car and hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

7.1.5.2 Requirement 2.5.1.2 applies for dumbwaiters with a rated load over 227 kg (500 lb). For dumbwaiters with a rated load of 227 kg (500 lb) or less, clearances between the car and counterweight shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

7.1.5.3 Requirement 2.5.1.4 applies, except when a counterbalanced car door is provided. The clearance shall be measured between the landing side of the car door sill and the hoistway edge of any landing sill, or the hoistway side of any vertically sliding counterweighted or counterbalanced hoistway door or of any vertically sliding counterbalanced biparting hoistway door sill.

7.1.5.4 Requirement 2.5.1.5 does not apply.

7.1.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistway

Requirement 2.6 applies, except as modified by 7.1.6.1 through 7.1.6.3.

7.1.6.1 Car and counterweight safeties shall be provided conforming to 7.2.4.

7.1.6.2 Buffers shall be provided conforming to 7.2.8.1 or 7.2.8.2.

7.1.6.3 Direct-plunger hydraulic dumbwaiters shall conform to 3.6.

7.1.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

Machine rooms and machinery spaces shall comply with 2.7, except as modified by 7.1.7.1 through 7.1.7.11.

7.1.7.1 Requirement 2.7.1.1 applies only where a separate machinery space is provided.

7.1.7.2 Requirement 2.7.1.2 applies only where a separate machinery space is provided.

7.1.7.3 Dumbwaiter machine rooms shall conform to 2.7.2, or the following:

(a) Dumbwaiter machine and control equipment shall be permitted to be located in a room or space containing other equipment essential to the operation of the building, provided that all exposed moving parts are fully guarded.

(b) Guards on dumbwaiter equipment shall prevent accidental contact with moving parts and shall permit visual inspection without complete removal.

(c) Where a dumbwaiter machine is located at the bottom of the hoistway, the control equipment shall be located outside the hoistway or in a cabinet on the inside surface of the access door.

7.1.7.4 Requirement 2.7.3.1 does not apply. A means of access to dumbwaiter machine rooms and overhead machinery spaces shall be provided, from outside the hoistway, for elevator personnel.

7.1.7.5 Requirement 2.7.3.3 applies only where a separate room is provided for machine and control equipment.

7.1.7.6 Requirement 2.7.3.4.1 applies only where a separate machine room is provided and complete bodily entry is necessary.

Requirement 2.7.3.4.3 applies, except the maximum width of an access opening located not more than 1 525 mm (60 in.) above the lowest point of the hoistway, contiguous to and in vertical alignment with a hoistway entrance, shall be the lesser of 1 220 mm (48 in.) or the hoistway entrance width.

Hoistway access openings shall be provided with an electric contact that will cause interruption of power to the motor and brake when the access door is open.

7.1.7.7 Requirement 2.7.3.5 does not apply.

7.1.7.8 Requirement 2.7.4 does not apply.

7.1.7.9 Requirement 2.7.5.2 does not apply. Where there is a separate machine room, it shall be provided with natural or mechanical ventilation to avoid overheating of the electrical equipment to ensure normal operation of the dumbwaiter.

7.1.7.10 Requirement 2.7.6 does not apply.

7.1.7.11 Requirement 2.7.8.4 does not apply.

7.1.8 Electrical Equipment, Wiring, Pipes, Ducts, and HVAC in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

Electrical equipment, pipes, and ducts in hoistways, machine rooms, and machinery spaces shall comply with 2.8, except as modified by 7.1.8.1 and 7.1.8.2.

7.1.8.1 Type SF or equivalent wire is not required for the wiring to the hoistway door interlock from the hoistway riser.

7.1.8.2 Requirement 2.8.2.3 does not apply. Sprinklers shall be permitted in the hoistway when conforming to NFPA 13 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). All sprinkler risers and returns shall be located outside the hoistway.

7.1.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations

Machinery and sheave beams, supports, and foundations shall comply with 2.9, except as modified by 7.1.9.1 and 7.1.9.2.

7.1.9.1 Requirement 2.9.3.1 does not apply.

7.1.9.2 Machines and equipment directly over the hoistway shall be permitted to be hung underneath the supporting beams at the top of the hoistway.

7.1.9.3 Requirement 2.9.3.2 applies to the machine or sheave connections between the machine or sheave and the beams, foundations or floor, and machinery that is hung underneath beams.

7.1.10 Guarding of Equipment

Requirement 2.10 does not apply, except that the guarding of equipment shall comply with 2.10.1.

7.1.11 Protection of Hoistway Openings

The protection of hoistway openings shall conform to 2.11, except as modified by 7.1.11.1 through 7.1.11.14.

7.1.11.1 Entrances. Requirement 2.11.1 does not apply. All hoistway-landing openings shall be provided with entrances that shall guard the full height and width of the opening.

7.1.11.1.1 For power dumbwaiters, the doors shall not open to a 25 mm (1 in.) greater width and height than the width and height of the car, unless the car is being removed or installed.

7.1.11.1.2 For hand dumbwaiters, the width of the door openings shall not exceed the width of the car by more than 150 mm (6 in.). The height of the door shall not exceed 1 375 mm (54 in.).

7.1.11.2 Types of Entrances. Requirement 2.11.2 does not apply.

7.1.11.2.1 For power dumbwaiters, entrances shall be one of the following types:

(*a*) horizontal slide, single- or multi-section
(*b*) swing, single section
(*c*) combination horizontal slide and swing
(*d*) vertical slide biparting counterbalanced
(*e*) vertical slide counterweighted, single- or multi-section

7.1.11.2.2 For hand dumbwaiters, entrances shall be one of the following types:

(*a*) manually operated vertical slide counterweighted, single- or multi-section
(*b*) manually operated vertical slide biparting counterbalanced
(*c*) manually operated swing, single-section

7.1.11.3 Closing of Hoistway Doors. Requirement 2.11.3 does not apply.

7.1.11.3.1 For power dumbwaiters, all doors shall be kept closed, except the door at the floor at which the car is being loaded or unloaded.

7.1.11.3.2 For hand dumbwaiters

(*a*) all doors shall be kept closed, except the door at the floor at which the car is being loaded, unloaded, or operated
(*b*) each entrance shall have conspicuously displayed on the landing side, above the door opening, in letters not less than 50 mm (2 in.) high, the words: "DANGER-DUMBWAITER-KEEP CLOSED"
(*c*) all doors shall be equipped with devices to close them automatically when the devices are actuated by heat or smoke

7.1.11.4 Location of Hoistway Door Openings. Requirement 2.11.4 does not apply. The bottom of the hoistway-door opening shall be not less than 600 mm (24 in.) above the floor, except for power dumbwaiters applications conforming to 7.1.12.1.2 or 7.1.12.1.3.

7.1.11.5 Hoistway Access Doors. Access openings shall be permitted to be provided in the hoistway enclosure for maintenance and inspection. Access openings when provided shall conform to 7.1.7.5.

7.1.11.6 Projection of Equipment Beyond Landing Sills. Requirement 2.11.5 does not apply.

7.1.11.7 Opening of Hoistway Doors From Hoistway Side. Requirement 2.11.6 does not apply.

7.1.11.8 Hoistway Door Vision Panels. Hoistway door vision panels (see 2.11.7) are not required. Where provided, they shall comply with 2.11.7.1.2, 2.11.7.1.3, 2.11.7.1.4, and 2.11.7.1.6, and the total area of one or more vision panels in any hoistway door shall not exceed 0.016 m^2 (25 $in.^2$).

7.1.11.9 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Power Operation. Requirement 2.11.9 does not apply. Doors shall be provided with door-locking devices conforming to 7.1.12. Where hoistway doors are power operated or are opened or closed by power, they shall conform to 7.1.13.

7.1.11.10 Landings and Landing Sills. Requirement 2.11.10.1 does not apply.

7.1.11.11 Horizontal Slide-Type Entrances. Requirement 2.11.11.1(b) does not apply.

7.1.11.12 Vertical Slide-Type Entrances. Requirements 2.11.12.1, 2.11.12.2, 2.11.12.3, 2.11.12.7, and 2.11.12.8 do not apply.

7.1.11.12.1 Landing sills shall be of metal, securely fastened to the frame or building structure and of sufficient strength to support the rated load of the dumbwaiter, applied vertically over an area of 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.) at the center of the sill, with no permanent displacement or deformation of the sill.

7.1.11.12.2 Either the panel guide rails or the jambs used to frame the opening shall be securely anchored to a masonry wall, or securely fastened to the building structure or wall-supporting members.

7.1.11.12.3 Panel guide rails, not fastened in conformance with 7.1.11.12.2, shall be securely fastened to the jambs at intervals throughout the frame height, and shall be permitted to be fastened to the building structure where the rails extend past the frame. Rails and their fastenings shall withstand the forces specified in 7.1.11.12.1, and any reactions resulting from the loading and unloading operations, that are capable of being transmitted to the rails.

7.1.11.12.4 Requirement 2.11.12.4.2 applies only where truckable sills are required.

7.1.11.12.5 Requirements 2.11.12.4.3(a) and (b) do not apply. Panels of biparting counterbalanced entrances shall conform to the following:

(a) They shall be provided with means to stop the closing panels when the distance between the closing rigid members of the upper and lower panels is not less than 20 mm (0.8 in.)

(b) A fire-resistive, nonshearing, and noncrushing member of either the meeting or overlapping type shall be provided on the upper panel to close the distance between the rigid door panels when in contact with the stops.

7.1.11.12.6 Requirement 2.11.12.4.4 applies, except that the overlap shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

7.1.11.12.7 Requirement 2.11.12.4.6 does not apply. The entrance assembly shall be capable of withstanding a force of 1 110 N (250 lbf) applied on the landing side at right angles to, and approximately at the center of a panel. This force shall be distributed over an area of approximately 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no appreciable permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this test.

7.1.11.12.8 Requirement 2.11.12.5.3 does not apply. Guide members shall be designed to withstand the forces specified in 7.1.11.12.7.

7.1.11.12.9 Requirement 2.11.12.6 does not apply to hand-operated dumbwaiters covered in 7.1.11.3.

7.1.11.13 Swing-Type Entrances. For swing-type entrances, 2.11.13 applies, except as modified by 7.1.11.3.1 through 7.1.11.13.3.

7.1.11.13.1 Requirements 2.11.13.1(b) and 2.11.13.3.3 do not apply.

7.1.11.13.2 Requirement 2.11.13.3.5 does not apply. The panels and their assembled accessories shall be capable of withstanding normal attempts to open a closed and locked door by pulling the handle. The panel shall be so designed to withstand a force of 1 110 N (250 lbf) applied on the landing side at right angles to and approximately at the center of the panel. This force shall be distributed over an area of approximately 100 mm × 100 mm (4 in. × 4 in.). There shall be no appreciable permanent displacement or deformation of any parts of the entrance assembly resulting from this force.

7.1.11.13.3 Requirement 2.11.13.3.7 applies, except it shall be in conformance with 7.1.11.13.1.

7.1.11.14 Marking. Marking (see 2.11.15) shall apply, except as modified by 7.1.11.14.1 and 7.1.11.14.2.

7.1.11.14.1 Requirement 2.11.15.1.1(c) does not apply.

7.1.11.14.2 Requirement 2.11.15.1.2(b) applies, except it shall be in conformance with 2.11.11.5.1 and 2.11.11.5.2 or 7.1.11.12.6.

7.1.12 Hoistway Door Locking Devices, Access Switches, and Unlocking Devices

Hoistway door locking devices, access switches, and unlocking devices shall comply with 7.1.12. Requirement 2.12 does not apply, except as referenced in 7.1.12.

7.1.12.1 Hoistway Door Locking Devices for Power Dumbwaiters. Hoistway door locking devices for power dumbwaiters shall comply with 7.1.12.1.1 through 7.1.12.1.3.

7.1.12.1.1 Hoistway door interlocks in conformance with 7.1.12.1.2 are required at all landings, except that hoistway door combination mechanical locks and electric contacts conforming to 7.1.12.1.1 shall be permitted to be used at the following landings: **(ED)**

(a) at landings where the bottom of the door opening is 600 mm (24 in.) or more above the floor

(b) the top terminal landing and the landing located not more than 1 220 mm (48 in.) below the top terminal landing, provided that the dumbwaiter rise does not exceed 4 570 mm (180 in.)

(c) any landing whose sill is within 1 525 mm (60 in.) of the pit floor, regardless of the dumbwaiter rise

7.1.12.1.2 Hoistway door combination mechanical locks and electric contacts, where provided, shall conform to the following:

(a) requirement 2.12.3.2

(b) requirement 2.12.3.3

(c) requirement 2.12.3.4, except that

(1) requirement 2.12.3.4.4 applies to all types of multisection doors

(2) requirement 2.12.3.4.5 applies but the force used should be 225 N (50 lbf)

(d) requirement 2.12.3.5

(e) requirement 2.12.4

(f) arranged so that the hoistway door is locked when the car is more than 75 mm (3 in.) from the landing

7.1.12.1.3 Hoistway door interlocks, where provided, shall conform to the following:

(a) requirement 2.12.2.2

(b) requirement 2.12.2.3

(c) requirement 2.12.2.4, except that

(1) requirement 2.12.2.4.1 does not apply.

(2) requirement 2.12.2.4.6 applies but the force used shall be 225 N (50 lbf)

(d) requirement 2.12.2.5

(e) requirement 2.12.2.6

(f) requirement 2.12.4

7.1.12.2 Hoistway Door Locking Devices for Hand Dumbwaiters. Hoistway doors shall be provided with spring-type latches to hold them in the closed position. Such latches shall be releasable from both the hoistway and landing side, irrespective of the position of the car.

7.1.12.3 Hoistway Door Unlocking Devices. Hoistway door unlocking devices conforming to 2.12.6.2.1, 2.12.6.2.2, 2.12.6.2.4, and 2.12.6.2.5 shall be provided at the top and bottom terminal landings.

(07) **7.1.12.4 Hoistway Access Switches.** Hoistway access switches shall be permitted at the top and bottom landing. Requirement 2.12.7 does not apply. Where hoistway access switches are provided, they shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) Requirement 2.12.7.2 applies.

(b) Requirement 2.12.7.3 applies, except 2.12.7.3.3 does not apply. The means shall be key operated or behind a locked cover, and the key shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

7.1.13 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors or Gates

The power operation, power opening, and power closing of hoistway doors and car doors or gates shall comply with 2.13, except as modified by 7.1.13.1 through 7.1.13.9.

7.1.13.1 Requirement 2.13.2.1.2 does not apply.

7.1.13.2 Requirement 2.13.2.2.3 does not apply.

7.1.13.3 Requirement 2.13.3.1 does not apply.

7.1.13.4 Requirements 2.13.3.2.3 and 2.13.3.2.4 do not apply. A closing means shall not be provided in the car.

7.1.13.5 Requirement 2.13.3.3.2 does not apply.

7.1.13.6 Requirement 2.13.3.4.2 does not apply; sequence operation is not required, however, if provided, it shall conform to 2.13.6.2. Requirement 2.13.3.4.3 does not apply when the only means for controlling the door is by a momentary-pressure switch at the landing within sight of the door, that, when operated, shall cause the doors to stop or to stop and reopen. Requirement 2.13.3.4.4 does not apply.

7.1.13.7 Requirement 2.13.4 also applies to power-operated vertically sliding doors. Requirements 2.13.4.2.3 and 2.13.4.2.4 do not apply.

7.1.13.8 Requirement 2.13.5 applies only to power-operated hoistway doors and car doors or gates where closing is by automatic means. Requirement 2.13.5.4 does not apply.

7.1.13.9 Requirement 2.13.6 does not apply.

7.1.14 Identification

Requirement 2.29 does not apply. When the machinery of more than one dumbwaiter is in the machine room, each driving machine shall be assigned a different number that shall be painted on or securely attached to the driving machine.

SECTION 7.2 ELECTRIC AND HAND DUMBWAITERS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES (07)

Requirement 7.2 applies to electric and hand dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices.

7.2.1 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Car enclosures and car doors and gates shall comply with 2.14, except as modified by 7.2.1.1 through 7.2.1.3.

7.2.1.1 Car Enclosures

7.2.1.1.1 Requirement 2.14.1.2 does not apply. The enclosure shall be securely fastened to the car platform or the point of suspension.

7.2.1.1.2 Requirement 2.14.1.3 does not apply. The car enclosure walls shall be of solid, grille, or perforate construction. Car enclosure walls shall be of such strength and so designed and supported that when subjected to a leaning or falling rated load on the car, the car enclosure walls will not deflect or deform to the extent that the running clearances are reduced below the minimum specified in 7.1.5. Grilled or perforated portions of the enclosure shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter. Nonmetal cars shall be reinforced with metal from the bottom of the car to the point of suspension. Metal car sections shall be riveted, welded, or bolted together. Cars shall be permitted to be provided with hinged, permanent, or removable shelves. The maximum inside height of the car at any point shall not exceed 1 220 mm (48 in.) (see also 7.2.3). Hinged or removable panels shall not be provided in car tops.

7.2.1.1.3 Requirement 2.14.1.4 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.4 Requirement 2.14.1.5 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.5 Requirement 2.14.1.6 does not apply. Car tops shall be capable of sustaining a load of 3.5 kPa (75 lb/ft^2) without permanent deformation. The resulting deflection under this load shall be limited to prevent damage to any equipment, device, or lighting assemblies fastened to or adjacent to the car enclosure top.

7.2.1.1.6 Requirement 2.14.1.7.1 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.7 Requirement 2.14.1.8 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.8 Requirement 2.14.1.9 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.9 Requirement 2.14.1.10 does not apply.

7.2.1.1.10 Requirement 2.14.2 does not apply. Vision panels are not required. Where provided, the perforated portions shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter. Glass vision panels shall be either laminated or wire glass and shall not exceed 0.016 m^2 (25 in.^{2}).

7.2.1.1.11 Requirement 2.14.3 does not apply.

7.2.1.2 Car Doors and Gates. Car doors or gates shall be provided at entrances to the car, shall guard the full width of the opening, and shall conform to 7.2.1.2.1 through 7.2.1.2.12.

7.2.1.2.1 Requirement 2.14.4.1 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.2 Requirement 2.14.4.2 does not apply. Each door or gate shall be equipped with a contact that will prevent operation of the driving machine, unless the door or gate panel(s) is in the closed position as defined in 2.12.2.2(c) or 2.12.3.2.

7.2.1.2.3 Requirement 2.14.4.3 does not apply. Car doors shall be of the horizontal or vertical sliding type and of material conforming to 7.2.1.1.2.

7.2.1.2.4 Requirement 2.14.4.4 does not apply. Gates shall be of the horizontally sliding collapsible type or of the vertically sliding type.

(a) Horizontally sliding collapsible gates shall conform to the following:

(1) they shall not be power operated, except as permitted by 2.13.2.1.2

(2) they shall not be used with power-operated vertically sliding hoistway doors

(3) when fully closed (extended position), they shall reject a ball 113 mm (4.5 in.) in diameter

(4) they shall have at least every fourth vertical member guided at the top and every second vertical member guided at the bottom

(5) collapsible gate handles shall be provided with finger guards

(b) Vertically sliding type gates shall conform to the following:

(1) they shall be of the balanced counterweighted type or the biparting counterbalanced type

(2) they shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter

(3) balanced counterweighted gates shall be permitted to be either single- or multi-section and permitted to slide either up or down to open

(4) they shall be permitted to be either manually or power operated

7.2.1.2.5 Requirement 2.14.4.5 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.6 Requirement 2.14.4.6 applies, except that the forces applied shall be not greater than the weight of the rated load or that specified in 2.14.4.6, whichever is less.

7.2.1.2.7 Requirement 2.14.4.7 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.8 Requirement 2.14.4.9 does not apply. Suspension members of vertically sliding car doors or gates, and of weights used with car doors or gates, shall have a factor of safety of not less than 5.

7.2.1.2.9 Requirement 2.14.4.10 applies, except that they shall conform to 7.1.13 instead of 2.13.

7.2.1.2.10 Requirement 2.14.5 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.11 Requirement 2.14.6 does not apply.

7.2.1.2.12 Where car door or gate horizontal structural members are not fixed to the moveable panel, they shall not be capable of entering into the access door area.

7.2.1.3 Lighting Fixtures. Requirement 2.14.7 does not apply; however, if lighting is provided in the car, it shall conform to 2.14.7.3 and 2.14.7.4.

7.2.2 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall comply with 2.15, except as modified by 7.2.2.1 through 7.2.2.14.

7.2.2.1 Requirement 2.15.1 does not apply.

7.2.2.2 Requirement 2.15.2 does not apply. Cars shall be guided on each guide rail by upper and lower guiding members.

7.2.2.3 Requirement 2.15.3 applies, except that frames are not required.

7.2.2.4 Requirement 2.15.5 does not apply. The car shall be provided with a platform capable of withstanding the loading conditions for which the dumbwaiter is designed.

7.2.2.5 Requirements 2.15.6.1.2 and 2.15.6.1.3 do not apply. Requirements 2.15.6.1.1 and 2.15.6.1.4 apply only where car frames and car platform frames are used.

7.2.2.6 Requirement 2.15.7.3 does not apply.

7.2.2.7 Requirement 2.15.8 does not apply.

(07) **7.2.2.8** Requirement 2.15.9 does not apply. Leveling devices are not required. Guards shall be provided to close any opening to the hoistway above and below the car that occur when leveling or inching devices are operated with the hoistway door(s) in the open position.

7.2.2.8.1 The guards shall

(a) be located on the entrance side of the car

(b) extend the full width of the car

(c) be made of smooth metal plates of not less than 1.5 mm (0.059 in.) thick steel or material of equivalent strength, stiffness, and braced to the car

7.2.2.8.2 The guards shall have a straight vertical face, extending not less than the following:

(a) for the car platform guard, the maximum length of the car travel in the up direction permitted by the car leveling or inching device as installed, plus 13 mm (0.5 in.)

(b) for car head guard, the maximum length of the car travel in the down direction permitted by the car leveling or inching device as installed, plus 13 mm (0.5 in.)

7.2.2.9 Requirement 2.15.11 does not apply.

7.2.2.10 Requirement 2.15.12 does not apply.

7.2.2.11 Requirement 2.15.13 does not apply.

7.2.2.12 Requirement 2.15.14 does not apply.

7.2.2.13 Requirement 2.15.15 does not apply.

7.2.2.14 Requirement 2.15.16.1 applies, except that either hinged platform sill electric contact or car door electric contacts shall prevent operation of the car if the sill is not retracted.

7.2.3 Capacity and Loading

Requirement 2.16 does not apply to dumbwaiters.

7.2.3.1 Rated Load and Platform Area. The rated load shall be not less than 221 kg/m^3 (13.9 lb/ft^3) of the inside net car volume. The inside net platform area shall be not more than 1 m^2 (10.75 ft^2).

7.2.3.2 Capacity Plate. A metal capacity plate shall be fastened in a conspicuous place in the car and shall indicate the rated load in letters and numerals not less than 6 mm (0.25 in.) high, stamped, etched, or raised on the surface of the plate.

7.2.3.3 Data Plate

(07) **7.2.3.3.1** A data plate shall be located on the car crosshead, on the car top, or inside the car. If the information required on the data plate is provided on the capacity plate inside the car (see 7.2.3.2), then a separate data plate is not required on the car top or crosshead.

7.2.3.3.2 The data plate shall indicate

(a) the weight of the complete car including the car safety and all auxiliary equipment attached to the car

(b) the rated load and rated speed

(c) the suspension means (see 7.2.6)

(d) the manufacturer's name and date of installation

7.2.3.3.3 The letters and numerals on the data plate shall be not less than 3 mm (0.125 in.) high, stamped, etched, or raised on the surface of the plate.

7.2.3.4 "No Riders" Signs. A sign stating "NO RIDERS" shall be located in the car in letters not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.) high.

7.2.4 Car and Counterweight Safeties

Car and counterweight safeties, where provided, shall conform to 2.17, except as modified by 7.2.4.1 through 7.2.4.8.

7.2.4.1 Where Required and Located. Requirement 2.17.1 does not apply. Where required by 7.1.6, the car shall be provided with one or more safety devices identified in 2.17.5. Car safeties shall be attached to the supporting structure of the car.

7.2.4.2 Function and Stopping Distances. Requirement 2.17.3 does not apply. The safety device shall be capable of stopping and sustaining the entire car with its rated load, within the maximum stopping distances as determined in Tables 2.17.3 and 8.2.6.

7.2.4.3 Reserved for Future Use. Requirement 2.17.6 does not apply.

7.2.4.4 Governor-Actuated Safeties and Car Safety Mechanism Switches. Requirement 2.17.7 does not apply. Car and counterweight safeties shall be actuated by speed governors or as a result of breaking or slackening of the suspension means, and shall be permitted to be of the inertia type without governors.

Every car safety shall be provided with a switch, operated by the car safety mechanism. This switch shall conform to 2.18.4, except that the switch does not have to be on the safety, provided that it is operated by the action of the safety.

7.2.4.5 Limits of Use of Various Types of Safeties. Requirement 2.17.8 applies, except that Type A safeties shall be permitted to be used regardless of the rated speed.

7.2.4.6 Application of Safeties. The application of safeties shall conform to 2.17.9.1, 2.17.9.2, and 2.17.9.3. The forces providing the stopping action shall conform to 2.17.9.4 or 7.2.4.6.1.

7.2.4.6.1 Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the application of safety stopping forces shall not cause deformation of the guide-rail section upon whose dimensional stability the stopping capability of the safeties is dependent.

7.2.4.7 Marking Plates for Safeties. Requirement 2.17.14 applies only for governor-operated safeties.

7.2.4.8 Rail Lubricants. Requirement 2.17.16 applies only where safeties are provided.

7.2.5 Speed Governors

Speed governors are not required. Where provided, they shall conform to 2.18, except that the diameter of the governor rope (see 2.18.5.1) shall be permitted to be less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.), however, it shall be not less than the diameter of the suspension ropes.

7.2.6 Suspension Means

Suspension means shall comply with 2.20, except as modified by 7.2.6.1 through 7.2.6.8.

7.2.6.1 Type of Suspension Means. Requirement 2.20.1 does not apply.

7.2.6.1.1 Power Dumbwaiters

(a) Cars and counterweights for power dumbwaiters, except for dumbwaiters having rack-and-pinion or screw-type driving machines, shall be suspended by one or more iron or steel-wire hoisting ropes or chains.

(b) Wire ropes shall be permitted to have marlin covers.

(c) Chains, where used, shall be roller, block, or multiple-link silent type.

7.2.6.1.2 Hand Dumbwaiters

(a) Dumbwaiters having a rated load exceeding 35 kg (75 lb) shall be suspended by steel wire ropes or chains having a factor of safety of not less than 4.5.

(b) Dumbwaiters having a rated load 35 kg (75 lb) or less shall be permitted to be suspended by manila, braided-cotton, or equivalent ropes having a factor of safety of not less than 6.

7.2.6.2 Rope Data. Requirement 2.20.2 only applies to dumbwaiters suspended by wire or non-wire rope. The information required in 2.20.2.1 shall be located on the car crosshead, on the car top, or inside the car. Requirement 2.20.2.2(j) does not apply.

7.2.6.3 Chain Data

7.2.6.3.1 The data plate required by 7.2.3.3 shall bear the following chain data:

(a) number of chains

(b) type of chains

(c) standard chain number

(d) the manufacturer's rated breaking strength per chain in pounds

Table 7.2.6.4 Factors of Safety for Wire Rope and Chains

Rope or Chain Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Factor of Safety: Ropes	Factor of Safety: Chains
0.25 (50)	4.8	6.0
0.50 (100)	5.2	6.5
0.75 (150)	5.5	6.9
1.00 (200)	5.9	7.4
1.25 (250)	6.2	7.8
1.50 (300)	6.6	8.3
1.75 (350)	7.0	8.8
2.00 (400)	7.3	9.1
2.25 (450)	7.7	9.6
2.50 (500)	8.0	10.0

7.2.6.3.2 A metal data tag shall be securely attached to one of the chain fastenings. This data tag shall bear the following chain data:

(a) type of chain

(b) standard chain number

(c) manufacturer's rated breaking strength

(d) month and year the chains were installed

(e) name of the person or firm who installed the chains

(f) name of the manufacturer of the chains

7.2.6.3.3 A new tag shall be installed at each chain renewal. The material and marking of the chain data tag shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.6 mm (0.063 in.).

7.2.6.4 Factors of Safety. Requirement 2.20.3 does not apply. The factor of safety, based on the static load, of car and counterweight suspension means shall be not less than the value specified in Table 7.2.6.4 for actual speed of rope or chain corresponding to the rated speed of the dumbwaiter.

7.2.6.5 Number of Ropes or Chains Required. Requirement 2.20.4 does not apply. The number of suspension ropes or chains shall be determined by multiplying the static load (weight of the car plus rated load plus the weight of the hoisting ropes or chains) by the required factor of safety, and dividing the result by the manufacturer's

(a) rated ultimate strength of one of the ropes of the size and construction to be used

(b) average tensile strength of one of the chains of the size and construction to be used

Where 2:1 roping is used, one-half the static load shall be used in the formula.

7.2.6.6 Suspension-Rope Equalizers. Requirement 2.20.5 does not apply.

7.2.6.7 Splicing and Replacement of Suspension Ropes. Requirement 2.20.8 does not apply.

7.2.6.8 Fastening of Suspension Means

7.2.6.8.1 Requirement 2.20.9.1 does not apply. Fastening of suspension means shall conform to the following:

(a) The car and counterweight ends of suspension wire ropes, or the stationary hitch-ends where multiple roping is used, shall be fastened in such a manner that all portions of the rope, except the portion inside the rope sockets, shall be readily visible. Fastenings shall be by individual tapered babbitted rope sockets conforming to 2.20.9.3 through 2.20.9.6; or by other types of rope fastening, provided that they develop at least 80% of the ultimate breaking strength of the strongest rope to be used in such fastenings.

(b) The fastening of car and counterweight ends of suspension chains shall be such as to develop at least 80% of the rated breaking strength of the strongest chain used in such fastenings.

7.2.6.8.2 Requirement 2.20.9.2 applies only where adjustable shackle rods are provided.

7.2.7 Counterweights

Counterweights shall comply with 2.21, except as modified by 7.2.7.1 through 7.2.7.4.

7.2.7.1 Requirement 2.21.1.1 does not apply. Frames are not required. Counterweights shall be permitted to be solid or sectional in design.

7.2.7.2 Requirement 2.21.1.3 does not apply. Counterweights shall be guided on each guide rail by upper and lower guiding members.

7.2.7.3 Requirement 2.21.1.4 does not apply. The same set of guide rails shall be permitted to be used for both the car and counterweight.

7.2.7.4 Requirement 2.21.2.5 does not apply. Ropes and chains shall be secured to the counterweight or suspension-rope hitch conforming to 7.2.6.

7.2.8 Buffers and Bumpers

Requirements 2.22.1 and 2.22.2 do not apply. Cars and counterweights shall be provided with buffers or bumpers. Buffers shall be provided where required by 7.1.6.

7.2.8.1 Spring Buffers. Spring buffers shall conform to 2.22.3, except that Table 2.22.3.1 shall substitute for Table 7.2.8.1. Spring buffers, where required by 7.1.6, shall not be used for rated speeds greater than 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min).

7.2.8.2 Oil Buffers. Oil buffers shall conform to 2.22.4, except that Table 2.22.4.1 shall substitute for Table 7.2.8.2.

Table 7.2.8.1 Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
1.00 or less (200 or less)	40 (1.5)
1.01–1.25 (201–250)	65 (2.5)
1.26–1.50 (251–300)	100 (4.0)

Table 7.2.8.2 Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
1.50 (300)	70 (2.75)
1.60 (325)	90 (3.50)
1.75 (350)	110 (4.25)
2.00 (400)	160 (6.25)
2.25 (450)	210 (8.25)
2.50 (500)	280 (11.00)
2.75 (550)	350 (13.75)
3.00 (600)	430 (17.00)
3.50 (700)	630 (24.75)
4.00 (800)	845 (33.25)
4.50 (900)	1 110 (43.75)
5.00 (1,000)	1 410 (55.50)

7.2.9 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports and Fastenings

Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports and fastenings shall comply with 2.23, except as modified by 7.2.9. The same set of guide rails shall be permitted to be used for both the car and counterweight.

7.2.9.1 Guide-Rail Section. Requirements 2.23.3, 2.23.7.2.1(a), (b), and (e), 2.23.9.1.3, 2.23.9.3, and 2.23.10.2 do not apply. Guide rails, supports, joints, fishplates, and fastenings that are not covered by 2.23 shall be permitted to be used, provided that the strengths, stresses, and deflections are consistent with the requirements of 2.23 for the loads to be imposed.

Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the allowable deflection of the guide rail shall be limited to prevent the safety device from disengaging the rail during the application of the load.

7.2.10 Driving Machines and Sheaves

7.2.10.1 Power Dumbwaiters. Driving machines and sheaves for power dumbwaiters shall conform to 2.24 as modified by 7.2.10.1.1 through 7.2.10.1.3.

7.2.10.1.1 Requirement 2.24.1 does not apply.

7.2.10.1.2 Requirement 2.24.2.2 does not apply. Sheaves and drums shall have a pitch diameter of not less than 30 times the diameter of the rope.

7.2.10.1.3 Requirement 2.24.8 does not apply. The driving machine shall be equipped with a friction brake applied by a spring or springs, or by gravity, and electromechanically or electrohydraulically released. The brake shall be designed to have a capacity sufficient to hold the car at rest with its rated load (also see 7.2.3.1).

7.2.10.2 Hand Dumbwaiters

7.2.10.2.1 Hand driving machines shall be equipped with automatic brakes that will sustain the car and its rated load. When the brake is applied, it shall remain locked in the "ON" position until released by the operator.

7.2.10.2.2 Operation of a hand dumbwaiter shall not cause any part of the operator's body to be in the travel path of the car or counterweight.

7.2.10.3 Types of Driving Machines. Driving machines shall be one of the following types:

(*a*) winding-drum
(*b*) traction
(*c*) rack and pinion, conforming to 4.1.13
(*d*) screw-column, conforming to 4.2.15
(*e*) belt drive
(*f*) chain drive
(*g*) hydraulic, conforming to 7.3

7.2.10.4 Belt Drive Machines. Belts used as the driving means between the motor and the machine of power dumbwaiters shall conform to 7.2.10.4.1 and 7.2.10.4.2.

7.2.10.4.1 Where flat belts are used, the rated speed of the dumbwaiter shall be not more than 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min).

7.2.10.4.2 Where multiple V-belts are used, the rated speed of the dumbwaiter shall be not more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

7.2.11 Terminal Stopping Devices

Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25, except as specified in 7.2.11.1 through 7.2.11.4.

7.2.11.1 Requirement 2.25.2.2.2 does not apply.

7.2.11.2 Requirement 2.25.3.3 does not apply. Final terminal stopping devices shall be provided in the hoistway and shall be directly operated by the movement of the car.

7.2.11.3 Requirement 2.25.3.5 does not apply. Where final terminal stopping switches are located on and operated by the driving machine, they shall comply with 2.25.3.5.

7.2.11.4 Requirement 2.25.4 does not apply.

7.2.12 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

Operation of power dumbwaiters shall be of the automatic or continuous pressure type. Operating devices and control equipment shall comply with 2.26, except as modified by 7.2.12.1 through 7.2.12.37.

7.2.12.1 Requirement 2.26.1.1 applies to power dumbwaiters only.

7.2.12.2 Requirement 2.26.1.2 does not apply.

7.2.12.3 Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply.

7.2.12.4 Requirement 2.26.1.4 does not apply. Top-of-car operating devices are not required. Where provided, they shall conform to 7.2.12.4.1 and 7.2.12.4.2, and the installation shall also comply with 7.2.12.4.3. **(07)**

7.2.12.4.1 Requirement 2.26.1.4.2 applies. Requirement 2.26.1.4.1(d)(2) applies, except that it shall be subject to the electrical protective devices required by 7.2.12.

7.2.12.4.2 Safeties shall be provided in accordance with 7.2.4.

7.2.12.4.3 A hoistway access switch conforming to 7.1.12.4 shall be provided for access to the top of the car. **(07)**

7.2.12.5 Requirement 2.26.1.5 does not apply.

7.2.12.6 Requirement 2.26.1.6 applies, except that the devices shall be located at that landing and car platform guards shall conform to 7.2.2.8, and landing sill guards are not required.

7.2.12.7 Requirement 2.26.2.5 does not apply.

7.2.12.8 Requirement 2.26.2.6 does not apply.

7.2.12.9 Requirement 2.26.2.7 does not apply. Where a stop switch in the pit is provided (see 7.1.2), it shall conform in design and operation to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c).

7.2.12.10 In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, 2.26.2.8 does not apply. Where a top-of-car operating device is provided, a stop switch conforming in design and operation to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided on the top of the car. **(07)**

In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, 2.26.2.8 does not apply, except that for platform areas in excess of 0.5 m^2 (5.38 ft^2), or where a top-of-car operating device is provided, a stop switch conforming in design and operation to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided on the top of the car.

7.2.12.11 Requirement 2.26.2.10 applies only where a speed governor is provided.

7.2.12.12 Requirement 2.26.2.11 applies, except as modified by 7.2.11.2 and 7.2.11.3.

7.2.12.13 Requirement 2.26.2.12 does not apply.

7.2.12.14 Requirement 2.26.2.14 applies, except it shall conform to 7.1.12.1.

7.2.12.15 Requirement 2.26.2.15 does not apply. Car door or gate electric contacts, conforming to 7.2.1.2.2, shall be provided for all dumbwaiters.

7.2.12.16 Requirement 2.26.2.17 does not apply.

7.2.12.17 Requirement 2.26.2.18 does not apply.

7.2.12.18 Requirement 2.26.2.20 does not apply.

7.2.12.19 Requirement 2.26.2.21 does not apply.

7.2.12.20 Requirement 2.26.2.22 does not apply.

7.2.12.21 Requirement 2.26.2.23 does not apply.

7.2.12.22 Requirement 2.26.2.24 does not apply.

7.2.12.23 Requirement 2.26.2.25 does not apply.

7.2.12.24 Requirement 2.26.2.26 does not apply.

7.2.12.25 Requirement 2.26.2.28 does not apply.

7.2.12.26 Requirement 2.26.2.29 does not apply.

7.2.12.27 Requirement 2.26.2.30 does not apply.

7.2.12.28 Requirement 2.26.2.31 does not apply.

7.2.12.29 Requirement 2.26.3 does not apply.

7.2.12.30 Requirement 2.26.4.3 does not apply. The following switches shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs:

(a) stop switch in pit (see 2.26.2.7)
(b) stop switch on top-of-car (see 2.26.2.8)
(c) car safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.12)
(d) speed-governor overspeed switch (see 2.26.2.10)
(e) final terminal stopping device (see 7.2.11)
(f) hoistway door locking devices for power dumbwaiters (see 7.1.12.1)

7.2.12.31 Requirement 2.26.4.4 does not apply.

7.2.12.32 Requirement 2.26.4.5 does not apply.

7.2.12.33 Requirement 2.26.5 does not apply.

7.2.12.34 Requirement 2.26.6 applies. When single-phase AC motors are provided, they shall come to a complete stop before electrically reversing direction.

7.2.12.35 Requirements 2.26.9.3(c), (d), and (e) do not apply.

7.2.12.36 Requirement 2.26.9.4 does not apply.

7.2.12.37 Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply.

7.2.13 Layout Data

The information provided on layout data shall conform to 2.28, except that 2.28.1(c) and (d) do not apply. Requirement 2.28.1(b) applies only where safeties are provided.

7.2.14 Welding for Dumbwaiters

Requirement 8.8 applies, except for tack welds and other nonload-carrying welds.

SECTION 7.3 HYDRAULIC DUMBWAITERS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES (07)

Requirement 7.3 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices.

7.3.1 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Requirement 7.2.1 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.2 Car Frames and Platforms

Requirement 7.2.2 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.3 Capacity and Loading

Requirement 7.2.3 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.4 Car and Counterweight Safeties

7.3.4.1 Car Safeties. Car safeties, where provided (see 7.1.6), shall conform to 7.2.4, 7.3.4.1.1, and 7.3.4.1.2.

7.3.4.1.1 The safety shall be of a type that can be released only by moving the car in the up direction.

7.3.4.1.2 The switches required by 2.18.4.1 shall, when operated, remove power from the driving machine motor and control valves before or at the time of application of the safety.

7.3.4.2 Counterweight Safeties. Counterweight safeties, where provided (see 7.1.6), shall conform to 7.2.4, provided that safeties are operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the counterweight suspension ropes, irrespective of the rated speed of the dumbwaiter.

7.3.5 Hydraulic Driving Machines

Jacks shall conform to 3.18; valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to 3.19; and hydraulic machine and tanks shall conform to 3.24.

7.3.6 Rope, Rope Connections, and Sheaves

7.3.6.1 Ropes and Rope Connections. The wire ropes and their connections, where provided, shall conform to 7.2.6.

7.3.6.2 Sheaves. Sheaves, where provided, shall conform to 7.2.10.

7.3.6.3 Welding. Welding shall comply to 7.2.14.

7.3.7 Counterweights

Requirement 7.2.7 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters where counterweights are provided.

7.3.8 Buffers and Bumpers

7.3.8.1 Car Buffers or Bumpers. Requirements 7.2.8.1 and 7.2.8.2 apply to hydraulic dumbwaiters, except the term "maximum speed in the down direction with rated load" shall substitute for the term "rated speed."

7.3.8.2 Counterweight Buffers. Requirement 7.2.8 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

Where counterweights are provided for hydraulic dumbwaiters, counterweight bumpers or buffers shall not be provided.

7.3.9 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Requirement 7.2.9 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.10 Terminal Stopping Devices

Direct-plunger and roped-hydraulic dumbwaiter terminal stopping devices shall conform to the requirements of 3.25.

7.3.11 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

7.3.11.1 Types of Operating Devices. Requirement 7.2.12.1 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.2 Top-of-Car Operating Devices. Requirement 7.2.12.4 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.3 Anticreep Leveling Devices. Each dumbwaiter shall be provided with an anticreep leveling device conforming to 7.3.11.3.1 through 7.3.11.3.4.

7.3.11.3.1 The anticreep leveling device shall maintain the car within 25 mm (1 in.) of the landing irrespective of the position of the hoistway door.

7.3.11.3.2 For electrohydraulic dumbwaiters, the anticreep leveling device shall be required to operate the car only in the up direction.

7.3.11.3.3 For maintained pressure hydraulic dumbwaiters, the anticreep leveling device shall be required to operate the car in both directions.

7.3.11.3.4 The operation of the anticreep leveling device shall be permitted to depend on the availability of the electric power supply provided that

(a) the power supply line disconnecting means required by 7.3.11.7 is kept in the closed position at all times except during maintenance, repairs, and inspection

(b) the electrical protective devices required by 7.3.11.4.2 shall not cause the power to be removed from the device

7.3.11.4 Electrical Protective Devices. Electrical protective devices conforming to 7.2.12 shall be provided.

7.3.11.4.1 The following devices shall prevent operation of the dumbwaiter by the normal operating device and also the movement of the car in response to the anticreep leveling device:

(a) stop switches in the pit

(b) stop switches on top of car

(c) slack rope switch when required by 3.18.1.2.7

(d) speed governor switch when required by 7.2.5

7.3.11.4.2 The following devices, when actuated, shall prevent the operation of the dumbwaiter by the normal operating device, but the anticreep leveling device required by 7.3.11.3 shall remain operative:

(a) broken rope, tape, or chain switches on normal stopping devices when such devices are located in the machine room or overhead space

(b) hoistway door interlocks or hoistway door contacts

(c) car door or gate electric contacts

(d) hinged car platform sill electric contacts

7.3.11.5 Electrical Equipment and Wiring

7.3.11.5.1 All electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

7.3.11.5.2 Electrical equipment shall be listed/certified and labeled/marked. CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 defines the scope and applicable requirements for this listing/certification. (07)

7.3.11.6 Installation of Capacitors or Devices to Make Electrical Protective Devices Inoperative. Requirement 2.26.7 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.7 Control and Operating Circuits. Requirements 3.26.6 and 2.26.9.3(a) and (b) apply to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.8 Recycling Operation for Multiple or Telescopic Plungers. Requirement 3.26.7 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.11.9 Pressure Switch. Requirement 3.26.8 applies to hydraulic dumbwaiters.

7.3.12 Layout Data

The information provided on layout data shall conform to 3.28, except as modified in 7.3.12.1 through 7.3.12.3.

7.3.12.1 Requirement 3.28.1(c) applies only where safeties are provided.

7.3.12.2 Requirement 3.28.1(d) does not apply.

7.3.12.3 Requirement 3.28.1(e) does not apply.

SECTION 7.4 MATERIAL LIFTS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Requirement 7.4 applies to material lifts without automatic transfer devices.

7.4.1 General Requirement

Material lifts shall be operated by authorized personnel only.

(07) ### 7.4.2 Classification

Material lifts without automatic transfer devices are classified as either Type A or Type B Material Lifts.

7.4.2.1 Type A Material Lifts shall be controlled from landing-mounted operated devices only. Car-mounted operating devices shall not be permitted. It is a materials-only device, and riders shall not be permitted.

7.4.2.2 Type B Material Lifts shall be permitted to carry one operator and be provided with in-car mounted operating devices, subject to the following limitations:

(a) Access to and usage of Type B Material Lifts is restricted to authorized personnel.

(b) The rated speed is not to exceed 0.15 m/s (30 ft/min).

(c) There is penetration of only one floor.

(d) Travel does not exceed 5 000 mm (200 in.).

(e) They are operated only by continuous-pressure control devices.

(f) They shall not be accessible to the general public.

(g) The upper limit of travel shall be

(1) level with the penetrated floor; or

(2) level with the top landing where no floor is penetrated.

(h) They are permitted to serve one or more intermediate landings, provided that these landings have doors as required in 7.4.14.

7.4.3 Construction of Hoistways and Hoistway Enclosures

The construction of hoistway enclosures shall conform to 2.1.

Where fire-resistive construction is not required, 2.1 does not apply for Type B Material Lifts. Type B Material Lifts shall conform to the following:

(a) Hoistway and top landing enclosures shall be provided in compliance with Table 7.4.3.

(b) Where openwork construction is permitted, it shall reject a 25 mm (1 in.) diameter ball and shall include toe boards at least 125 mm (5 in.) high.

(c) Enclosures shall not deflect more than 20 mm (0.75 in.) when a concentrated force of 340 N (75 lbf) is applied at the center of any panel.

(d) No section or part of a top landing enclosure shall be lower than the corresponding and adjacent part of the platform enclosure when the platform is at the top landing.

7.4.4 Pits

Pits for Type A Material Lifts and for Type B Material Lifts where the pit depth exceeds 600 mm (24 in.) shall conform to 2.2.

7.4.5 Location and Guarding of Counterweights (07)

Requirement 2.3 applies only when the car rated speed exceeds 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min).

Where the car rated speed is 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min) or less, counterweight guards conforming to 2.3.2 shall not be required provided that the installation conforms to either 7.4.5.1 or 7.4.5.2.

7.4.5.1 A chain loop or equivalent shall be hung from the bottom of the counterweight to the bottom of the car.

7.4.5.2 Lightweight chains, approximately 600 mm (24 in.) in length, shall be attached to the bottom of the counterweight. These chains shall be spaced at 150 mm (6 in.) intervals, except at the point of buffer (or bumper) engagement.

7.4.6 Vertical Clearances and Runbys for Cars and Counterweights

Requirement 2.4 does not apply.

7.4.6.1 For Type A Material Lifts, bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 7.4.6.1.1 through 7.4.6.1.4.

7.4.6.1.1 When the car reaches its maximum limit of downward travel, no part of the car or counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the pit or floor beneath the lowest landing or equipment located in the hoistway, except a buffer or bumper, and no part of the counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the overhead structure or equipment located in the hoistway, except a mechanical stop or buffer.

7.4.6.1.2 When the car reaches its maximum limit of upward travel, no part of the car or counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the overhead structure or equipment located in the hoistway, except a mechanical stop or buffer, and no part of the counterweight or any equipment attached thereto shall strike any part of the pit or floor beneath the lowest landing or equipment located in the hoistway, except a mechanical stop or buffer.

7.4.6.1.3 When complete or partial entry into the pit is required for maintenance or inspection and the car is resting on its fully compressed buffer or bumper where the distance from the underside of the car platform to the pit access door sill, when provided, is less than 460 mm (18 in.) or the pit floor is less than 920 mm (36 in.) a nonremovable means shall be provided to mechanically hold the car above the pit floor to provide

(07)

Table 7.4.3 Type B Material Lifts

Item	Minimum Requirements	Requirement Reference
Enclosures		7.4.3, 7.4.13
Hoistway [Note (1)]	Fully enclosed below top landing	
Sides: height	Open work	
construction		
Sides: height	2 030 mm (80 in.)	
Gate: height	Open work	
construction		
Top Landing [Note (1)]		7.4.3, 7.4.13
Sides: height	2 030 mm (80 in.)	
construction	Open work	
Gate: height	2 030 mm (80 in.)	
construction	Open work	
Car		7.5.1
Sides: height	2 030 mm (80 in.)	
construction	Open work	
Gates	None	
Clearances		7.4.14
Nonaccess side to car	20 mm (0.75 in.) min.	2.5.1.1
Car sill to door sill	13 mm (0.50 in.) min.	2.5.1.4
	32 mm (1.25 in.) max.	2.5.1.4
Car sill to hoistway	125 mm (5 in.) max.	2.5.1.5.1(b)
In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC	190 mm (7.5 in.) max.	2.5.1.5.1(a)
Landing/Car Controls	CPPB with emergency stop	7.5.12.2

NOTE:
(1) Non-fire-resistive construction.

an area in the pit for maintenance and inspection conforming to the following:

(a) It shall hold the car at a height of not less than 920 mm (36 in.) nor more than 2 030 mm (80 in.) above the pit floor and not less than 460 mm (18 in.) above the bottom landing sill or pit access door sill, as measured from the underside of the car platform.

(b) The means shall be so designed and constructed as to stop and hold the car at governor tripping speed with the rated load in the car.

(c) It shall not cause the stresses and deflections in the car frame and platform members and their connections to exceed the limits specified in 2.15.10 and 2.15.11.

(d) If the means does not automatically activate when the lowest hoistway door or pit access door is opened with the car not at the landing

(1) it shall be capable of being operated without complete bodily entry into the pit.

(2) a sign shall be conspicuously displayed inside the hoistway, that includes a warning that there is an insufficient bottom car clearance, and instructions for operating the device and that the power source be disconnected. The letters shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.) in height.

(e) A stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.7 shall be provided.

7.4.6.1.4 The minimum vertical distance for the refuge space on top of the car enclosure shall be not less than 1 070 mm (42 in.) between the top of the car enclosure and the overhead structure or other obstruction when the car has reached its maximum upward movement. If a 1 070 mm (42 in.) vertical distance is not available when the car has reached its maximum upward movement, a stopping device shall be provided and shall be functional when the car is under the control of the top-of-car operating device and shall be so located in the hoistway as to maintain the minimum vertical distance of 1 070 mm (42 in.).

7.4.6.2 For Type B Material Lifts, bottom and top car clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 7.4.6.2.1 through 7.4.6.2.3.

7.4.6.2.1 When the platform is at the bottom and does not have a minimum under-platform clearance of 920 mm (36 in.), a nonremovable means shall be provided conforming to 7.4.6.1.3(a) through (e).

7.4.6.2.2 Except as required by 7.4.6.2.3, the minimum overhead clearance when the platform is at the top landing shall be

(a) 600 mm (24 in.) over the highest anticipated load

(b) 2 000 mm (79 in.) over the empty platform

7.4.6.2.3 If a platform is equipped with a ceiling it shall be solid and capable of sustaining a load of 360 kg/m^2 (73 lb/ft^2) equally distributed, or 45 kg (100 lb) at any point; and the clearance shall conform to 7.4.6.1.4. A stop switch conforming to 7.5.12.2.7 shall be provided on the top of the car.

7.4.7 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

Horizontal car and counterweight clearances shall conform to 2.5, except as modified by 7.4.7.1 through 7.4.7.4.

7.4.7.1 Requirement 2.5.1.1 applies, except that for Type A Material Lifts the clearance between the car and hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.). For Type B Material Lifts the clearance between the car and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.).

7.4.7.2 Requirement 2.5.1.2 applies, except that the clearance between the car and the counterweight, and the counterweight and the hoistway enclosure shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

7.4.7.3 Requirements 2.5.1.4 and 2.5.1.5.1 apply, except where a counterbalanced car door is provided, the clearance shall be measured from the landing side of the car door sill rather than the car platform sill.

7.4.7.4 Beveling and Clearance Requirements for Type B Material Lifts

7.4.7.4.1 Where the door is recessed more than 15 mm (0.6 in.) the door frame header shall be beveled (see Nonmandatory Appendix K).

7.4.7.4.2 Any projections on the access side of the hoistway wall that are in excess of 6 mm (0.25 in.) shall be beveled.

7.4.7.4.3 Where beveling is required it shall be at an angle not less than 60 deg from horizontal (see Nonmandatory Appendix K).

7.4.8 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways

Protection of spaces below the hoistway shall conform to 2.6. Where safeties are required they shall conform to 7.5.4. Where buffers are required they shall conform to 7.5.8.

Type B Material Lifts shall conform to 7.4.8 or the floor shall be designed and constructed to safely support the maximum load that would be applied to it by a free-falling platform that is carrying its rated load.

(07) 7.4.9 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

Type A Material Lifts shall conform to 2.7. Requirement 2.7 does not apply to Type B Material Lifts.

7.4.10 Equipment in Hoistways and Machine Rooms

Electrical equipment, wiring, pipes, and ducts in hoistways and machine rooms shall conform to 2.8, except as modified by 7.4.10.1 and 7.4.10.2.

7.4.10.1 Type SF or equivalent wire is not required for the wiring to the hoistway door interlock from the hoistway riser.

7.4.10.2 Requirement 2.8.2.3 does not apply. Standard sprinkler protection conforming to NFPA 13 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable, shall be permitted to be installed in a material lift hoistway when all risers and returns are located outside the hoistway.

7.4.11 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations (07)

Requirement 2.9 applies to Type A Material Lifts. Type B Material Lifts shall conform to 2.9.1.1, 2.9.2.2, 2.9.3.2, 2.9.3.3, and 2.9.4.

7.4.12 Guarding of Equipment and Standard Railing (07)

Requirement 2.10.1 applies. Requirement 2.10.2 does not apply.

7.4.13 Protection of Hoistway Landing Openings

7.4.13.1 For Type B Material Lifts, where fire-resistive construction is not required, 7.4.13.1.1 through 7.4.13.1.3 shall apply.

7.4.13.1.1 Entrances to the platform shall be equipped with doors or gates with a minimum height of 2 030 mm (80 in.), constructed as required in 7.4.3(b), (c), and (d).

7.4.13.1.2 The clear entrance height to the platform shall be a minimum of 2 030 mm (80 in.).

7.4.13.1.3 Solid gates or doors shall have a vision panel in accordance with 2.11.7.1.

7.4.13.2 For Types A and B Material Lifts where fire-resistive construction is required, the protection of hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11, except as modified by 7.4.13.2.1 through 7.4.13.2.11.

7.4.13.2.1 Requirement 2.11.1 does not apply. All hoistway entrances shall guard the full height and width of the openings. Entrance opening size for Type A Material Lifts shall not exceed 2 290 mm (90 in.) in height and 1 220 mm (48 in.) in width and shall not exceed the height and width of the car entrance opening.

7.4.13.2.2 Requirement 2.11.2 does not apply. Only the following types of entrances shall be used with material lifts:

(a) horizontal slide

(b) swing single section only with manual load/unload material lifts

(c) vertical slide biparting counterbalanced

(d) vertical slide counterweighted single- or multi-section

(e) center-opening, two-section, horizontally swing only with manual load/unload material lifts, subject to the restrictions of 2.11.2.3.

7.4.13.2.4 Requirement 2.11.4 does not apply.

7.4.13.2.5 Requirement 2.11.6 does not apply. When the car is within the unlocking zone the material lift hoistway doors shall be openable by hand from within the car.

7.4.13.2.6 Requirement 2.11.7.1 applies, except that hoistway door vision panels are not required on Type A Material Lifts.

7.4.13.2.7 Requirement 2.11.7.2 does not apply.

7.4.13.2.8 Requirement 2.11.10.1 does not apply. For Type B Material Lifts, see 7.4.7.4.

7.4.13.2.9 Requirement 2.11.10.3 applies, except that car to landing bridging sills shall be permitted to be hinged on the lift and shall be permitted to form the bridge only when the hoistway doors are in the fully opened position.

7.4.13.2.10 Requirement 2.11.12 applies, except the pull straps required by 2.11.12.8 for Type A Material Lifts shall be mounted on the landing side of manually operated, vertically sliding doors.

7.4.13.2.11 Requirement 2.11.13.5 does not apply.

7.4.14 Hoistway Door Locking Devices and Electric Contacts, and Hoistway Access Switches

Hoistway door locking devices, hoistway door and car door or gate electric contacts, and hoistway access switches shall conform to 2.12, except as modified by 7.4.14.1 through 7.4.14.5.

7.4.14.1 Requirement 2.12.1.4 does not apply.

7.4.14.2 Requirement 2.12.5 does not apply.

7.4.14.3 Requirement 2.12.6 applies except that unlocking devices are required at only the lowest and top landings.

7.4.14.4 Requirement 2.12.7 applies only to Type A Material Lifts.

7.4.14.5 For Type B Material Lifts, the interlock or mechanical lock and electric contact shall not be readily accessible from inside the platform.

7.4.15 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors and Car Doors and Gates

When provided, power operation, power opening, and power closing of hoistway doors and car doors and gates shall conform to 2.13, except as modified by 7.4.15.1 through 7.4.15.6.

7.4.15.1 Requirement 2.13.3.2.4 does not apply to Type A Material Lifts.

7.4.15.2 *Requirement 2.13.3.3.2.* For Type A Material Lifts, a momentary pressure switch shall be provided at each landing.

7.4.15.3 *Requirement 2.13.3.4.* For Type A material lifts, in nonrestricted areas and restricted areas where the hoistway is accessible to personnel, all requirements of 2.13.3.4, except 2.13.3.4.2, apply. Requirement 2.13.3.4.4 applies, except that for Type A Material Lifts, a momentary pressure button will not be provided in the car.

7.4.15.4 Requirement 2.13.4 does not apply to Type A Material Lifts.

7.4.15.5 Requirement 2.13.6 does not apply to Type A Material Lifts.

7.4.15.6 For Type A Material Lifts, no door operating buttons shall be in the car.

7.4.16 Identification of Equipment

Requirement 2.29.1 applies.

SECTION 7.5
ELECTRIC MATERIAL LIFTS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Requirement 7.5 applies to electric material lifts without automatic transfer devices.

7.5.1 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

Car enclosures and car doors and gates shall conform to 2.14, except as modified by 7.5.1.1 through 7.5.1.3.

7.5.1.1 Car Enclosure

7.5.1.1.1 Requirement 2.14.1 applies, except

(a) for Type A Material Lifts, the enclosure width shall not exceed 1 220 mm (48 in.). The height of the enclosure walls shall not exceed 2 280 mm (90 in.).

(b) for Type B Material Lifts, the platform enclosure on nonaccess sides shall be 2 030 mm (80 in.) high, shall be permitted to be of openwork construction, and shall be in compliance with 7.4.3(b), (c), and (d).

7.5.1.1.2 Requirement 2.14.1.2 does not apply. The enclosure shall be securely fastened and so supported that it cannot loosen or become displaced in ordinary service, on the application of the car safety, or on buffer engagement.

7.5.1.1.3 Requirement 2.14.1.3 does not apply. The car enclosure shall be of such strength and so designed and supported that when subjected to a leaning or falling rated load on the car, the car enclosure walls will not deflect or deform to the extent that the running clearances are reduced below the minimum specified.

7.5.1.1.4 Requirement 2.14.1.4 does not apply. Where the car enclosure contains multiple compartments, the rated load shall be the sum of the rated loads of the individual compartments.

7.5.1.1.5 Requirement 2.14.1.5 does not apply.

7.5.1.1.6 Requirement 2.14.1.6 applies for Type A Material Lifts and for Type B Material Lifts where a car top is provided.

7.5.1.1.7 Requirement 2.14.1.7.1 does not apply.

7.5.1.1.8 Requirement 2.14.1.8 does not apply. Enclosures that incorporate glass in their construction are prohibited on material lifts.

7.5.1.1.9 Requirement 2.14.1.9 does not apply. Apparatus or equipment not used in connection with the function or use of the material lift shall not be installed inside of any material lift car, except for lift hooks, conveyor tracks, and support beams for freight handling.

7.5.1.1.10 Requirement 2.14.1.10 does not apply.

7.5.1.1.11 Requirement 2.14.2 does not apply.

7.5.1.1.12 Requirement 2.14.3.1 does not apply. Perforated construction shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter.

7.5.1.1.13 Requirement 2.14.3.3 does not apply. If ventilating grilles or louvers are provided in the enclosure, they shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter.

7.5.1.2 Car Doors and Gates

7.5.1.2.1 Requirement 2.14.4.1 applies to Type A Material Lifts. It also applies to Type B Material Lifts where car doors or gates are provided.

7.5.1.2.2 Requirement 2.14.4.2 does not apply. Each door or gate shall be equipped with a contact that will prevent operation of the driving machine, unless the door or gate panel(s) is in the closed position as defined in 2.14.4.11. Operation of the driving machine when a car door or gate is not in the closed position is permissible under any of the following conditions:

(*a*) by an inching, car leveling, or truck zoning device

(*b*) when a hoistway access switch is operated

7.5.1.2.3 Requirement 2.14.4.3 does not apply. Car doors shall be of the horizontally or vertically sliding type and shall be of solid, grill, or perforate construction. Perforated portions shall reject a ball 38 mm (1.5 in.) in diameter. Vertically sliding doors shall conform to 2.14.6.2.1 and 2.14.6.2.3. Balanced counterweighted vertically sliding doors shall be permitted to be either single or multiple section.

7.5.1.2.4 Requirement 2.14.4.4 does not apply. Car gates shall be of the horizontally sliding collapsible type or of the vertically sliding type. Horizontally sliding collapsible gates shall conform to 2.14.6.3.1, 2.14.6.3.2, and 2.14.6.3.4. Collapsible-type gates shall be permitted to be arranged to swing inward when in the fully opened (collapsed) position. Vertically sliding gates shall conform to 2.14.6.2.1 and 2.14.6.2.3, and shall be of a design that will reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter. Balanced counterweighted gates shall be permitted to be either single or multiple section.

7.5.1.2.5 Requirement 2.14.4.7 does not apply.

7.5.1.2.6 Requirement 2.14.4.8 does not apply. Weights used to close or balance doors or gates shall run in guides or be boxed in. Guides shall be of metal, and the bottom of the guides or boxes shall be so constructed as to retain the weights if the suspension member fails.

7.5.1.2.7 Requirement 2.14.4.10 does not apply. The operation of power-operated and power-opened or power-closed door or gates shall conform to 7.4.15.

7.5.1.2.8 Requirement 2.14.5 does not apply.

7.5.1.2.9 Requirement 2.14.6 does not apply. Gate handles of manually operated collapsible gates shall be provided with finger guards.

7.5.1.3 Car Illumination and Lighting Fixtures. Requirement 2.14.7 does not apply. Cars shall be provided with an electric light or lights providing a minimum of 27 lx (2.5 fc) at the car threshold and conforming to 2.14.7.4.

7.5.2 Car Frames and Platforms

Car frames and platforms shall conform to 2.15, except as modified by 7.5.2.1 through 7.5.2.7.

7.5.2.1 Requirement 2.15.5 does not apply. The platform shall be designed to withstand the forces developed under the loading conditions for which the lift is designed and installed.

7.5.2.2 Requirements 2.15.6.1.2 and 2.15.6.1.3 do not apply.

7.5.2.3 Requirement 2.15.8 does not apply.

7.5.2.4 Requirement 2.15.9.2 applies for Type A Material Lifts only, except the minimum allowance of 1 220 mm (48 in.) does not apply.

7.5.2.5 Requirement 2.15.9.3 does not apply.

7.5.2.6 Requirement 2.15.11 does not apply. For Type B Material Lifts the vertical deflection of the platform when the rated load is in any position on the platform shall not exceed 5 mm per 1 000 mm (0.25 in. per 50 in.) of platform length. The maximum allowable deflection shall be 50 mm (2 in.).

7.5.2.7 For Type B Material Lifts

(a) platform surfaces shall be skid-resistant

(b) all materials and freight carried on platforms, including wheeled vehicles, shall be blocked, locked, or otherwise positively located on the platform

7.5.3 Capacity and Loading

Capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16, except as modified by 7.5.3.1 through 7.5.3.4.

7.5.3.1 Requirement 2.16.1 does not apply.

7.5.3.2 Requirement 2.16.2 applies, except that for Type A Material Lifts the class of loading shall not include Industrial Truck Loading: Class C1 and C2.

7.5.3.3 Requirement 2.16.4 does not apply. Type A Material Lifts shall be restricted to handling of material only and shall not be used to carry persons. A sign conforming to 2.16.5 and reading "NO RIDERS PERMITTED" or equivalent verbiage shall be provided.

(07) **7.5.3.4** For Type B Material Lifts, 2.16.5 does not apply, except as modified by 7.5.3.4.1 through 7.5.3.4.3.

7.5.3.4.1 The following signs shall be provided:

(a) at each control station in the hall: MAXIMUM LOAD _____kg (lb) and NO RIDERS EXCEPT ONE OPERATOR OR FREIGHT HANDLER

(b) at the control station in the lift: NO RIDERS EXCEPT ONE OPERATOR OR FREIGHT HANDLER

(c) at each entrance or gate: AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY ON THIS MATERIAL LIFT

7.5.3.4.2 Signs shall comply with 2.16.5.2, except that the height of characters for the signs required by 7.5.3.4(a) shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.).

7.5.3.4.3 Signs for class of loading shall be provided in the lift and shall comply with 2.16.5.1.1.

7.5.3.5 Requirement 2.16.7 shall not apply. One-piece loads exceeding rated load shall not be carried on material lifts without automated transfer devices.

7.5.4 Car and Counterweight Safeties

Car and counterweight safeties shall conform to 2.17, except as modified by 7.5.4.1 through 7.5.4.4.

7.5.4.1 Requirement 2.17.3 does not apply. The safety device shall be capable of stopping and sustaining the entire car with its rated load from governor tripping speed, within the maximum stopping distances as determined in 8.2.6 and Table 2.17.3.

7.5.4.2 Requirement 2.17.7 applies, except the rated speed shall be modified to read 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.5.4.3 Requirement 2.17.8 applies, except that Type A safeties shall be permitted to be used regardless of the rated speed. Safeties actuated by broken or slack suspension ropes are permitted only for material lifts having a rated speed of 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min) or less.

7.5.4.4 Requirement 2.17.9 applies, except as modified by 7.5.4. The application of safeties shall conform to 2.17.9.1, 2.17.9.2, and 2.17.9.3. The forces providing the stopping action shall conform to 2.17.9.4 or 7.5.4.4.1.

7.5.4.4.1 Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used, the application of safety stopping forces shall not cause deformation of the guide-rail sections upon whose dimensional stability the stopping capability of the safeties is dependent.

7.5.5 Speed Governors

Speed governors shall conform to 2.18, except as modified by 7.5.5.1 through 7.5.5.3.

7.5.5.1 Requirement 2.18.1 applies, except the rated speed shall be modified to read 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.5.5.2 Requirement 2.18.4 applies, except the rated speed shall be modified from 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) to 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.5.5.3 Requirement 2.18.5 applies, except as modified by 7.5.5.3.1.

7.5.5.3.1 When the suspension ropes are less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.), the diameter of the governor rope shall be permitted to be less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.), but not less than the diameter of the suspension ropes.

7.5.6 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

Suspension ropes and their connections shall conform to 2.20, except as modified by 7.5.6.1 through 7.5.6.6.

7.5.6.1 Requirement 2.20.1 does not apply. Cars and counterweights for material lifts shall be suspended by iron or steelwire hoisting ropes or chains. Ropes that have previously been installed and used on another installation shall not be reused. Chains, where used, shall be roller, block, or multiple-link silent type.

7.5.6.2 Chain Data

(a) The crosshead data plate required by 2.20.2.1 shall bear the following chain data:

(1) number of chains

(2) type of chain

(3) standard chain number

(4) the manufacturer's rated breaking strength per chain in pounds (lb)

(b) A metal data tag shall be securely attached to one of the chain fastenings. A new tag shall be installed at each chain renewal. The material and marking of the chain data tag shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than

1.5 mm ($\frac{1}{16}$ in.). This data tag shall bear the following chain data:

(1) type of chain

(2) standard chain number

(3) the manufacturer's rated breaking strength per chain in pounds (lb)

(4) month and year the chains were installed

(5) name of the person or firm who installed the chains

(6) name of the manufacturer of the chains

7.5.6.3 Requirement 2.20.3 applies, except as modified by the following:

(a) The applicable safety factor to be applied is that of a freight elevator.

(b) Where chains are provided, the factor of safety shall be equal to 1.25 times the safety factor calculated for wire ropes.

7.5.6.4 Requirement 2.20.4 does not apply. The minimum number of hoisting ropes or chains used shall be two.

7.5.6.5 Requirement 2.20.5 applies, except where only two ropes are provided, single-bar-type equalizers shall be permitted to be used.

7.5.6.6 Requirement 2.20.9 applies. The fastening of car and counterweight ends of suspension chains shall be such as to develop at least 80% of the rated breaking strength of the strongest chain used in such fastenings.

7.5.7 Counterweights

Counterweights for Type A Material Lifts shall conform to 2.21.

7.5.8 Buffers and Bumpers

Buffers and bumpers for Type A Material Lifts shall conform to 2.22, except as modified by 7.5.8.1 through 7.5.8.5.

7.5.8.1 *Requirement 2.22.1.1.1.* Spring buffers or their equivalent shall be permitted to be used where the rated speed does not exceed 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min).

7.5.8.2 *Requirement 2.22.1.1.2.* Oil buffers or their equivalent shall be used where the rated speed is in excess of 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min).

7.5.8.3 *Requirement 2.22.3.1.* Table 7.9.2.13 shall be used in place of Table 2.22.3.1.

7.5.8.4 *Requirement 2.22.4.1.* Table 7.9.2.14 shall be used in place of Table 2.22.4.1.

7.5.8.5 Solid bumpers are permitted where the rated speed does not exceed 0.25 m/s (50 ft/min).

7.5.9 Car and Counterweight Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings

Car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, and fastenings shall conform to 2.23, except as modified by 7.5.9.1 and 7.5.9.2.

7.5.9.1 Use of Common Guide Rails. The same set of guide rails shall be permitted to be used for both the car and counterweight.

7.5.9.2 Guide-Rail Sections. Requirements 2.23.3(a), (b)(1), 2.23.9.1, and 2.23.9.3 do not apply. Guide rails, supports, joints, fishplates, and fastenings that are not covered by 2.23 shall be permitted to be used, provided that the strengths, stresses, and deflections are consistent with 2.23 for the loads imposed.

Where guide-rail sections other than those specified in 2.23.3(a) are used

(a) requirements 2.23.7.2.1(a), (b), (e), and 2.23.10.2 do not apply

(b) the allowable deflection of the guide rail shall be limited to prevent the safety device from disengaging the rail during the application of the load

7.5.10 Driving Machine and Sheaves

The driving means shall be one of the following types:

(a) Traction and winding drum machines conforming to 2.24, except as modified by the following:

(1) Requirement 2.24.2.2 does not apply. Sheaves and drums shall have a pitch diameter of not less than 30 times the diameter of the rope.

(b) Chain drive machines conforming to the following:

(1) Friction gearing, clutch mechanisms, or couplings shall not be used for connecting the sprockets to the main drive gear.

(2) The driving machine shall be equipped with electrically released, mechanically applied brakes conforming to 2.24.8. The operation of the brake shall conform to 2.26.8.

(3) The driving machine chains and sprockets shall be of steel with all particulars of design and dimensions meeting ANSI B29.1.

(c) Indirect drive machines conforming to 2.24.9.

(d) Rack and pinion drive machines conforming to 4.1.13. The safeties on rack-and-pinion drive machines shall conform to either 4.1.9 or 7.5.4.

(e) Screw-column drive machines conforming to 4.2.15.

(f) For Type B Material Lifts the following shall apply:

(1) No part of the driving machine shall be located directly above the platform area.

(2) Provision shall be made to allow manual lowering in the event of power failure

7.5.11 Terminal Stopping Devices

7.5.11.1 For Type A Material Lifts, the terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25, except as modified by 7.5.11.1.1 through 7.5.11.1.3.

7.5.11.1.1 Requirement 2.25.3.3 does not apply. Final terminal stopping devices shall be provided in the hoistway and shall be directly operated by the movement of the car.

7.5.11.1.2 Requirement 2.25.3.5 does not apply. Where final terminal stopping switches are located on and operated by the driving machine, they shall conform to 2.25.3.5.

7.5.11.1.3 Requirement 2.25.4 does not apply.

7.5.11.2 For Type B Material Lifts the terminal stopping devices shall conform to 7.5.11.2.1 through 7.5.11.2.4.

7.5.11.2.1 A normal terminal stopping device (electrical switch) shall be provided at the top and bottom landings; it shall positively and automatically stop the lift at the landings.

7.5.11.2.2 Mechanical limits shall be provided at the top and bottom end of travel. The top and bottom limit shall be permitted to exceed the normal terminal stopping device by 100 mm (4 in.).

7.5.11.2.3 Where a mechanical limit at the top of travel cannot be provided (because of the design of the hoisting machine), a final terminal stopping device (electrical switch) shall be provided that shall, after an overtravel of 50 mm (2 in.), cause the power to be removed from the hoisting machine automatically and independently of the functioning of the device required in 7.5.11.2.1.

7.5.11.2.4 Normal and final terminal stopping devices shall be operated directly by the movement of the lift, and shall not be accessible from the landings.

7.5.12 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

7.5.12.1 Type A material lift operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except as modified by 7.5.12.1.1 through 7.5.12.1.24.

7.5.12.1.1 Requirement 2.26.1.2 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.2 Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply. One-piece loads greater than the rated load are not permitted.

7.5.12.1.3 Requirement 2.26.1.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.4 Requirement 2.26.1.6 applies, except that the devices shall be located at the landing.

7.5.12.1.5 Requirement 2.26.2.5 does not apply. An emergency stop switch (switches) conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided to stop operation of the material lift, and the door and gate operation (if power operated). The emergency stop switch shall be located in the car adjacent to each entrance in a position that shall be accessible to a person standing at the floor adjacent to the car entrance.

7.5.12.1.6 Requirement 2.26.2.6 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.7 Requirement 2.26.2.10 applies only where a speed governor is provided.

7.5.12.1.8 Requirement 2.26.2.11 does not apply. Final terminal stopping devices conforming to 7.5.11 shall be provided for every electric material lift.

7.5.12.1.9 Requirement 2.26.2.13 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.10 Requirement 2.26.2.15 does not apply. Car door or gate electric contacts conforming to 7.5.1.2.2 shall be provided.

7.5.12.1.11 Requirement 2.26.2.16 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.12 Requirement 2.26.2.17 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.13 Requirement 2.26.2.20 applies, except when a closed door or gate or closed hoistway door prevents the device from encroaching into the hoistway.

7.5.12.1.14 Requirement 2.26.2.21 does not apply. A stop switch conforming to 7.5.12.1.5 shall be provided in the car.

7.5.12.1.15 Requirement 2.26.3 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.16 Requirement 2.26.4.3 does not apply. The following switches shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs.

(a) stop switch in pit (see 2.26.2.7)
(b) stop switch on top-of-car (see 2.26.2.8)
(c) car safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.12)
(d) speed-governor overspeed switch (see 2.26.2.10)
(e) final terminal stopping device (see 7.5.11)
(f) hoistway door locking devices for power material lifts (see 7.4.14)

7.5.12.1.17 Requirement 2.26.4.4 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.18 Requirement 2.26.4.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.19 Requirement 2.26.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.20 Requirement 2.26.6 applies for polyphase motors. When single-phase AC motors are provided, they shall come to a complete stop before electrically reversing direction.

7.5.12.1.21 Requirements 2.26.9.3(c), (d), and (e) do not apply.

7.5.12.1.22 Requirement 2.26.9.4 does not apply. When a single ground or failure as specified in 2.26.9.3(a) or (b) occurs the car shall not be permitted to restart.

7.5.12.1.23 Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply.

7.5.12.1.24 Operating devices that initiate motion of the car shall not be located in the car.

7.5.12.2 Type B Material Lift operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except as modified by 7.5.12.2.1 through 7.5.12.2.32.

7.5.12.2.1 Requirement 2.26.1.2 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.2 Requirement 2.26.1.3 does not apply. One-piece loads greater than the rated load are not permitted.

7.5.12.2.3 Requirement 2.26.1.4 does not apply. Where top of car inspection operation is provided 2.26.1.4.2 applies.

7.5.12.2.4 Requirement 2.26.1.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.5 Requirement 2.26.2.5 does not apply. Each control station shall be provided with an emergency stop switch (switches) conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c). And it shall cause the power to be removed from the driving machine when operated.

7.5.12.2.6 Requirement 2.26.2.6 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.7 Requirement 2.26.2.8 applies only where a car top is provided.

7.5.12.2.8 Requirement 2.26.2.10 applies only where a speed governor is provided.

7.5.12.2.9 Requirement 2.26.2.11 does not apply. Final terminal stopping devices conforming to 7.5.11 shall be provided for every electric material lift.

7.5.12.2.10 Requirement 2.26.2.12 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.11 Requirement 2.26.2.13 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.12 Requirement 2.26.2.15 does not apply. Car door or gate electric contacts conforming to 7.5.1.2.2 shall be provided.

7.5.12.2.13 Requirement 2.26.2.16 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.14 Requirement 2.26.2.17 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.15 Requirement 2.26.2.20 applies, except when a closed door or gate or closed hoistway door prevents the device from encroaching into the hoistway.

7.5.12.2.16 Requirement 2.26.2.21 does not apply. A stop switch conforming to 7.5.12.2.5 shall be provided in the car.

7.5.12.2.17 Requirement 2.26.2.24 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.18 Requirement 2.26.3 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.19 Requirement 2.26.4.3 does not apply. The following switches shall have contacts that are positively opened mechanically; their opening shall not be solely dependent on springs:

(*a*) stop switch in pit (see 2.26.2.7)
(*b*) stop switch on top-of-car (see 2.26.2.8)
(*c*) car safety mechanism switch (see 2.26.2.12)
(*d*) speed-governor overspeed switch (see 2.26.2.10)
(*e*) final terminal stopping device (see 7.5.11)
(*f*) hoistway door locking devices for power material lifts (see 7.4.14)

7.5.12.2.20 Requirement 2.26.4.4 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.21 Requirement 2.26.4.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.22 Requirement 2.26.5 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.23 Requirement 2.26.6 applies for polyphase motors. When single-phase AC motors are provided, they shall come to a complete stop before electrically reversing direction.

7.5.12.2.24 Requirements 2.26.9.3(c), (d), and (e) do not apply.

7.5.12.2.25 Requirement 2.26.9.4 does not apply. When a single ground or failure as specified in 2.26.9.3(a) or (b) occurs the car shall not be permitted to restart.

7.5.12.2.26 Requirement 2.26.11 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.27 Requirement 2.26.12 does not apply.

7.5.12.2.28 All operating devices shall be of the continuous-pressure type (CPPB in Table 7.4.3).

7.5.12.2.29 A control station located at a landing shall be in the vicinity of, and in full view of, the material lift entrance.

7.5.12.2.30 Controls and equipment shall be protected against unauthorized use.

7.5.12.2.31 The center of the car control station shall be located at a vertical height between 1 500 mm (59 in.) and 1 700 mm (66 in.) from the platform surface and horizontally at least 1 000 mm (39 in.) from the car sill. In the case of front and rear entrances with a car depth of less than 2 000 mm (79 in.), the car control station shall be located horizontally at the center of the side enclosure.

7.5.12.2.32 No landing control devices, except emergency stop switch(es), shall override a car control device that is in operation. Means shall be provided within the car that shall render inoperative landing control devices.

7.5.13 Layout Data

Layouts shall conform to 2.28.

7.5.14 Welding

Requirement 8.8 applies, except for tack welding and other nonload-carrying welds.

SECTION 7.6 HYDRAULIC MATERIAL LIFTS WITHOUT AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Requirement 7.6 applies to hydraulic material lifts without automatic transfer devices.

7.6.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 3.1 through 3.13 and 3.29, except as modified by 7.4.3 through 7.4.16.

7.6.2 Mechanical Equipment

Mechanical equipment shall conform to 7.5.

7.6.3 Hydraulic Driving Machines

Driving machines shall conform to 3.18, except as modified by 7.6.3.1.

7.6.3.1 Requirement 3.23.2 applies, except as modified in 7.6.3.1.1 and 7.6.3.1.2.

7.6.3.1.1 Roped-hydraulic elevators shall be suspended with not less than two wire ropes or chains in conformance with 2.15.13 and 7.5.6.

7.6.3.1.2 Sheaves used to transfer load from the driving machine to the car frame through wire ropes or chain shall conform to 7.5.10.

7.6.4 Valves, Pressure Pipings, and Fittings

Valves, pressure piping, and fittings shall conform to 3.19, except as modified by 7.6.4.1 and 7.6.4.2.

7.6.4.1 Where cylinders are equipped with an overspeed valve in conformance with 3.19.4.7, the requirement of 3.19.3.3.1(a) does not apply.

7.6.4.2 For Type B Material Lifts, 3.19.4.4 does not apply.

7.6.5 Counterweight Ropes, Rope Connections, and Sheaves

Counterweight ropes, rope connections, and sheaves shall conform to 3.20, except as modified by 7.6.5.1 and 7.6.5.2.

7.6.5.1 Requirement 3.20 does not apply. Ropes and rope connections shall conform to 7.5.6.

7.6.5.2 Requirement 3.21.2 does not apply. Sheaves for counterweights shall conform to 7.5.10.

7.6.6 Hydraulic Machines and Tanks

Hydraulic machines and tanks shall conform to 3.24.

For Type B Material Lifts, the machines and tanks shall be enclosed and access shall be through a panel or door, that shall normally be locked.

7.6.7 Terminal Stopping Device

Terminal stopping devices shall conform to 7.5.11.

7.6.8 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

Operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 3.26, except as modified by 7.5.12.

7.6.9 Layout Data

Layout data shall conform to 7.5.13 and 3.28.1(g), (h), and (j).

SECTION 7.7 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

7.7.1 General

A flashing light and an audible signal shall be actuated on the start of the door opening prior to transfer. Where used in nonrestricted areas, the automatic transfer device shall be so designed that the kinetic energy of the load during discharge shall not exceed 40 J (30 ft-lbf) and the speed shall not exceed 0.5 m/s (1.5 ft/s). The automatic transfer device shall stop the load at the completion of a discharge operation.

7.7.2 Clearances

Where the transfer of load is in a nonrestricted area, there shall be a clearance of not less than 1 220 mm (48 in.) between the end of the transferred load and any fixed obstruction in line with the end of the load. Where the automatic transfer device is designed to carry out multiple cart transfers, the 1 220 mm (48 in.) clearance space shall be measured from the leading edge of the first cart to be ejected, once the multiple transfer operation has been completed.

7.7.3 Guarding

In nonrestricted areas, discharge shall not take place unless the area is clear or a protective device or suitable guarding is provided. Guarding shall be by one of the following methods:

(a) railings or suitable barriers to prevent persons from entering the path of the transferring load.

(b) mechanical or electrical devices designed to prevent or stop transfer if a person or object is in the path of the transferring load.

(c) providing a table or a raised section not less than 460 mm (18 in.) above the floor and of such dimensions that the load does not overhang the table or raised section. The distance between the car platform sill and the nearest edge of the table shall not exceed 150 mm (6 in.).

7.7.4 Floor Level

Where the automatic transfer device transfers the load directly on the landing floor, the maximum variation in over all floor level within the emerging single or multiple loads tracking area shall not exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.).

SECTION 7.8 POWER DUMBWAITERS WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

7.8.1 Requirements

Power dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall conform to 7.1 through 7.3, except as modified in 7.8.1.1 through 7.8.1.4.

7.8.1.1 Requirement 7.1.12.1.3 does not apply. All hoistway doors shall be equipped with interlocks conforming to 7.1.12.1.2.

7.8.1.2 *Requirement 7.2.2.4.* The transfer device on the floor of the dumbwaiter shall be permitted to serve as a platform. Open areas in the floor shall be covered with solid flooring, grille, or perforated metal, and openings in such material shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

7.8.1.3 *Requirement 7.2.1.* Where the placement of the load is controlled and secured in transit, 7.2.1 does not apply. Where a car enclosure is provided, 7.2.1 applies.

7.8.1.4 *Requirement 7.2.1.1.2.* The effective inside height of the car above or below the transfer device shall not exceed 1 220 mm (48 in.).

7.8.2 Safety Devices

Where the gross load (i.e., car, transfer device, rated load, gates, operating devices, etc.) exceeds 700 kg (1,500 lb), or the rated speed is greater than or equal to 1 m/s (200 ft/min), car safeties conforming to 2.17 shall be provided and comply with 7.9.2.7, 7.9.2.8, and 7.9.2.9.

7.8.3 Emergency Stop Switch

An emergency stop switch (switches) conforming to 2.26.2.5(a), (b), and (c) shall be provided to stop operation of the dumbwaiter and stop the door operation and transfer device operation. A stop switch shall be located in the car adjacent to each entrance in a position that is accessible to a person standing at the floor adjacent to the car entrance.

7.8.4 Structural Capacity Load

Dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices that have a net inside platform area of 0.35 m^2 (3.75 ft^2) or more shall be rated for a lifting load of not less than 135 kg (300 lb).

SECTION 7.9 ELECTRIC MATERIAL LIFTS WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Requirement 7.9 applies to electric material lifts with automatic transfer devices.

7.9.1 Hoistways, Hoistway Enclosures, and Related Construction

Hoistways, hoistway enclosures, and related construction shall conform to 2.1 through 2.13, and 2.29, except as modified by 7.9.1.1 through 7.9.1.10.

7.9.1.1 *Requirement 2.1.1.1.* Cutouts are permitted in doors for the accommodation of the automatic transfer device. Cutouts shall be of minimum area to accommodate the transfer mechanism, and if not substantially filled with a fire-resistive automatic transfer device when the hoistway doors are in the fully closed position, the cutout area shall be covered by a shield that will automatically seal the cutout area and maintain the fire-protection rating of the hoistway entrance assembly. **(07)**

7.9.1.2 *Requirements 2.5.1.4 and 2.5.1.5.1.* Where a counterbalanced car door is provided, the clearance between the landing side of the car door sill and the hoistway edge of any landing sill shall be not more than 125 mm (5 in.).

7.9.1.3 Requirement 2.11.1 does not apply. All hoistway landing openings shall be provided with doors that shall guard the full height and width of the openings.

7.9.1.4 *Requirement 2.11.2.2.* Only the following types of entrances shall be used with material lifts with automatic transfer devices:

(a) power-operated horizontal slide, single- or multi-section

(b) power-operated vertical slide, biparting counterbalanced

(c) power-operated vertical slide, counterweighted, single- or multi-section

7.9.1.5 *Requirement 2.11.5.* The automatic transfer mechanism or stationary track shall not project into a hoistway beyond the line of the landing sill unless solid type guide shoes are provided on the car.

7.9.1.6 *Requirement 2.11.7.* Hoistway door vision panels are not required on material lifts with automatic transfer devices.

7.9.1.7 *Requirement 2.12.3.1.* In restricted areas only and when access to the hoistway doors is blocked by a permanently floor-mounted automatic transfer device, the hoistway doors shall close and lock before the car has traveled not more than 455 mm (18 in.) away from the landing.

7.9.1.8 *Requirement 2.12.6.1.* Hoistway door unlocking devices are required at only the top and bottom terminal landings.

7.9.1.9 *Requirement 2.13.3.4*

(a) In nonrestricted areas, all the requirements of 2.13.3.4 shall apply, except for 2.13.3.4.2 and 2.13.3.4.4.

(b) In restricted areas, 2.13.3.4 does not apply where the hoistway entrance is blocked by a permanently floor-mounted automatic transfer device. In restricted areas, where the hoistway entrance is accessible to personnel, 2.13.3.4 shall apply, except 2.13.3.4.2 and 2.13.3.4.4, which do not apply.

7.9.1.10 Requirement 2.13.4.2.4 does not apply.

7.9.2 Machinery and Equipment

The machinery and equipment shall conform to 2.14 through 2.28, 8.8, and 8.9, except as modified by 7.9.2.1 through 7.9.2.20.

7.9.2.1 *Requirement 2.14.1.5.* Top emergency exits are not required.

7.9.2.2 *Requirement 2.14.3.1.* Grille or perforated construction shall be permitted to be used for the full height and top of car enclosure. The car enclosure shall be the same height as the hoistway entrance. The 1 825 mm (72 in.) minimum height limitation shall not apply.

7.9.2.3 *Requirement 2.14.6.2.* When car doors or gates are provided and where the car entrance height exceeds 1 825 mm (72 in.), the doors or gates shall extend from the car floor to a height of not less than 1 825 mm (72 in.). Where the car entrance height is 1 825 mm (72 in.) or less, the car doors or gates shall extend to the full height of the car entrance.

7.9.2.4 *Requirement 2.15.5.* The transfer device on the floor of the material lift shall be permitted to serve as a platform. Open areas in the platform shall be covered with solid flooring, grille, or perforated metal. Also, any openings in such material shall reject a ball 50 mm (2 in.) in diameter.

7.9.2.5 *Requirement 2.16.2.* The rated load of the material lifts shall be based on the weight of the maximum load to be handled or on 240 kg/m^2 (50 lb/ft^2) of inside net platform area, whichever is greater.

7.9.2.6 *Requirement 2.16.4.* Material lifts with transfer devices located in nonrestrictive areas that are not obscured (see 7.11) shall carry materials only and shall not carry persons. Signs conforming to 2.16.5 and reading "NO PERSONS PERMITTED" or an equivalent warning shall be provided within the car enclosure and on the landing side of each entrance door.

7.9.2.7 *Requirement 2.17.4.* Counterweight safeties, where required for material lifts with automatic transfer devices, shall conform to the requirements for car safeties, except as modified by 7.9.2.6, 7.9.2.9, and 7.9.2.10.

Table 7.9.2.13 Minimum Spring Buffer Strokes

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
1.00 or less (200 or less)	40 (1.5)
1.01–1.25 (201–250)	65 (2.5)
1.26–1.50 (251–300)	100 (4.0)

Table 7.9.2.14 Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes

Rated Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stroke, mm (in.)
1.50 (300)	70 (2.75)
1.60 (325)	90 (3.50)
1.75 (350)	110 (4.25)
2.00 (400)	160 (6.25)
2.25 (450)	210 (8.25)
2.50 (500)	280 (11.00)
2.75 (550)	350 (13.75)
3.00 (600)	430 (17.00)
3.50 (700)	630 (24.75)
4.00 (800)	845 (33.25)
4.50 (900)	1 110 (43.75)
5.00 (1,000)	1 410 (55.50)

7.9.2.8 *Requirement 2.17.7.* The rated speed shall be modified to read 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.9.2.9 *Requirement 2.17.8.1.* Type A safeties are permitted for material lifts having a rated speed of 1 m/s (200 ft/min) or less. Safeties actuated by broken or slack suspension ropes are permitted for material lifts having a rated speed of 0.50 m/s (100 ft/min) or less.

7.9.2.10 *Requirement 2.18.1.* The rated speed shall be modified to read 1 m/s (200 ft/min).

7.9.2.11 Requirement 2.19 does not apply.

7.9.2.12 *Requirement 2.22.1.1.* Spring buffers or their equivalent shall be permitted to be used where the rated speed does not exceed 1.5 m/s (300 ft/min).

7.9.2.13 *Requirement 2.22.3.1.* Table 7.9.2.13 shall be used in place of Table 2.22.3.1.

7.9.2.14 *Requirement 2.22.4.1.* Table 7.9.2.14 shall be used in place of 2.22.4.1.

7.9.2.15 *Requirement 2.26.1.* Car-mounted operating devices shall not be permitted unless required for maintenance. Where furnished for such purposes, operating devices shall consist of key-operated switches or be mounted behind a key-locked cabinet. The key shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

7.9.2.16 Requirement 2.26.1.4 does not apply, except where the gross weight (i.e., car, transfer device, rated load, operating devices, etc.) exceeds 680 kg (1,500 lb) a top of car operating device conforming to 2.26.1.4.2 shall be provided.

7.9.2.17 Requirement 2.26.1.5 does not apply.

7.9.2.18 *Requirement 2.26.2.5.* An emergency stop switch (switches) conforming to 2.26.2.5 shall be provided to stop operation of the material lifts, the door operation, and automatic transfer device operation. The emergency stop switch shall be located in the car adjacent to each entrance in a position that shall be accessible to a person standing at the floor adjacent to the car entrance. If a permanently mounted automatic transfer device, located at the landing, blocks the entrance to the car, an emergency stop switch shall be located at that landing in a position accessible to a person standing near that landing in addition to the emergency stop switch in the car.

7.9.2.19 Requirement 2.27 does not apply.

7.9.2.20 Requirement 8.8 applies, except for tack welds and other nonload-carrying welds.

SECTION 7.10 HYDRAULIC MATERIAL LIFTS WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSFER DEVICES

Hydraulic material lifts shall conform to 3.1, 3.18 through 3.20, 3.23 through 3.26, and 3.28, except as modified by 7.9.1, 7.9.2, and 7.11.

SECTION 7.11 MATERIAL LIFTS WITH OBSCURED TRANSFER DEVICES

Any material lift that contains an automatic transfer device not readily visible to the public (e.g., material lifts handling self-propelled carts or with the automatic transfer device mounted fully below the floor with slot operation) shall conform to the requirements of Part 2 or Part 3 of this Code, and shall be classified as a passenger elevator or a freight elevator permitted to carry passengers. Such elevators are permitted to have dual control systems, one for material handling and the other for public use. The material handling system shall be locked out of operation when the material lift is in public use. When operating as a material lift, the operation shall conform to 7.9.

Part 8
General Requirements

SCOPE

Part 8 contains general requirements for *new and existing equipment*.

NOTE: Requirements 8.1, 8.6, 8.7, 8.9, 8.10, and 8.11 apply to both new and existing installations.

SECTION 8.1
SECURITY

(07) 8.1.1 General

Key(s) used to access or operate elevator, escalator, moving walk, dumbwaiter, and material lift equipment shall conform to the following:

(a) Keys used to open any other lock in the building shall not access or operate the devices classified as Security Group 1, 2, 3, or 4.

(b) The same key shall be permitted to access or operate all of the devices within only one assigned group (see 8.1.2, 8.1.3, 8.1.4, or 8.1.5), and not those in any other group except as indicated in 8.1.1(c).

(c) The keys for Group 1 devices shall also be permitted to operate Group 2, 3, and 4 devices. The keys for Group 2 devices shall be permitted to operate Group 3 and 4 devices.

(d) Keys shall be kept on the premises in a location readily accessible to the personnel in the assigned group, but not where they are accessible to the general public.

(e) Elevator personnel shall have access to all assigned groups.

(07) (05S) 8.1.2 Group 1: Restricted

Group 1 covers access or operation of equipment restricted to elevator personnel, except as noted.

NOTE: See the following:

(a) Requirement 2.2.4.4(e), pit access doors.

(b) Requirement 2.7.3.4.6(c), hoistway access doors.

(c) Requirement 2.7.5.1.4, equipment access panels.

(d) Requirement 2.7.6.3.2(b), motor controller cabinet door(s) or panel(s).

(e) Requirement 2.7.6.4.3(b), access to the means to move the car from outside the hoistway.

(f) Requirement 2.7.6.4.3(d), access to removable means to move the car from outside the hoistway.

(g) Requirement 2.7.6.5.2(b), inspection and test panel enclosure.

(h) Requirement 3.19.4.4, access to a manual lowering valve.

(i) Requirement 3.19.4.5, access to pressure gauge fittings.

(j) Requirement 2.11.1.2(h), emergency access doors. (Shall also be made available to emergency personnel during an emergency.)

(k) Requirement 2.12.6.2.4, hoistway door unlocking device. (Shall also be made available to emergency personnel during an emergency.)

(l) Requirement 2.12.7.2.2, hoistway access switch.

(m) Requirement 2.12.7.3.3, hoistway access enabling switch or its locked cover.

(n) Requirement 2.26.1.4.3(b), in-car inspection operation transfer switch.

(o) Requirement 2.26.2.21, in-car stop switch or its locked cover.

(p) Requirement 4.2.5.2, screw machine controllers located away from hoistway, machine room, or machinery space.

(q) Requirement 4.2.5.5, screw machine access panels.

(r) Requirement 5.1.10.1(b), inclined elevator hoistway access switch.

(s) Requirement 5.1.11.1.2(d), inclined elevator uphill end emergency exit.

(t) Requirement 5.7.8.3, hoistway door unlocking device.

(u) Requirement 7.1.12.4, power and hand dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices hoistway access switch.

(v) Requirement 7.9.2.15, electric material lifts with automatic transfer devices car-mounted operating devices.

8.1.3 Group 2: Authorized Personnel (07) (05S)

Group 2 covers access or operation of equipment by authorized and elevator personnel.

NOTE: See the following:

(a) Requirement 2.7.3.4.2, machine room and control room access doors.

(b) Requirements 2.7.3.4.3 and 2.7.3.4.4, machinery spaces and control spaces as specified.

(c) Requirement 2.11.1.4, access openings for cleaning of car and hoistway enclosures.

(d) Requirement 2.14.2.6(b), access openings for cleaning of car and hoistway enclosure.

(e) Requirement 2.14.7.2.1(b), car light control switch or its locked cover.

(f) Requirement 3.19.4.1, access to manually operated shutoff valve.

(g) Requirement 5.6.1.25.2(b), rooftop elevator keyed operation switch.

(h) Requirement 6.1.6.2.1(d), escalator starting switch.

(i) Requirement 6.1.7.3.3, escalator side access door to interior.

(j) Requirement 6.2.6.2.1(d), moving walk starting switch.

(k) Requirement 6.2.7.3.3, moving walk side access door to interior.

8.1.4 Group 3: Emergency Operation (07)

Group 3 covers access or operation of equipment by emergency, authorized, and elevator personnel.

NOTE: See the following:

(a) Requirements 2.27.2.4.1 and 2.27.8, emergency or standby power access selector switch.

(b) Requirements 2.27.3.1.1 and 2.27.8, Phase I emergency recall operation switch.
(c) Requirements 2.27.3.3 and 2.27.8, Phase II emergency in-car operation switch.
(d) Side emergency exit doors on existing equipment.

8.1.5 Group 4: Other

Group 4 covers access or operation of equipment not classified as Group 1, 2, or 3.

NOTE: See the following:
(a) Requirement 5.3.1.18.3, private residence elevator key-operated switch for exterior operation.
(b) Requirement 5.3.1.18.3, private residence inclined elevator keyed operation switch.

SECTION 8.2
DESIGN DATA AND FORMULAS

Requirement 8.2 contains certain design data, formulas, and charts for the designer. It is not intended to limit design. More detailed design and calculation methods shall be permitted to be used, provided that the stresses and deflections required by other sections of this Code are not exceeded.

8.2.1 Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators

The following formulas shall be used for determining the minimum rated load of passenger elevators (see also 2.16.1).

8.2.1.1 For an elevator having an inside net platform area of not more than 4.65 m^2 (50 ft^2)

(SI Units)

$$W = 35A^2 + 325A$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 0.667A^2 + 66.7A$$

8.2.1.2 For an elevator having an inside net platform area of more than 4.65 m^2 (50 ft^2)

(SI Units)

$$W = 2.45A^2 + 610A - 620$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 0.0467A^2 + 125A - 1{,}367$$

where
A = inside net platform area, m^2 (ft^2) as specified in Fig. 8.2.1.2
W = minimum rated load, kg (lb)

Figure 8.2.1.2 gives the minimum rated loads for various inside net platform areas.

8.2.2 Electric Elevator Car Frame and Platform Stresses and Deflections

8.2.2.1 General Requirements. The stresses and deflections in side-post-type car frame and platform members shall be based on the data and formulas listed in 8.2.2.

All stresses and their resultant deflections, not only those based on the data and formulas listed in this Section, shall be considered when side-post-type car frames are located off the platform centerline by more than one-eighth of the distance from the front to the back of the platform.

For cars with corner-post, underslung-type, or other special car frame and platform construction, the formulas and specified methods of calculation of loads and the resulting stresses and deflections do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

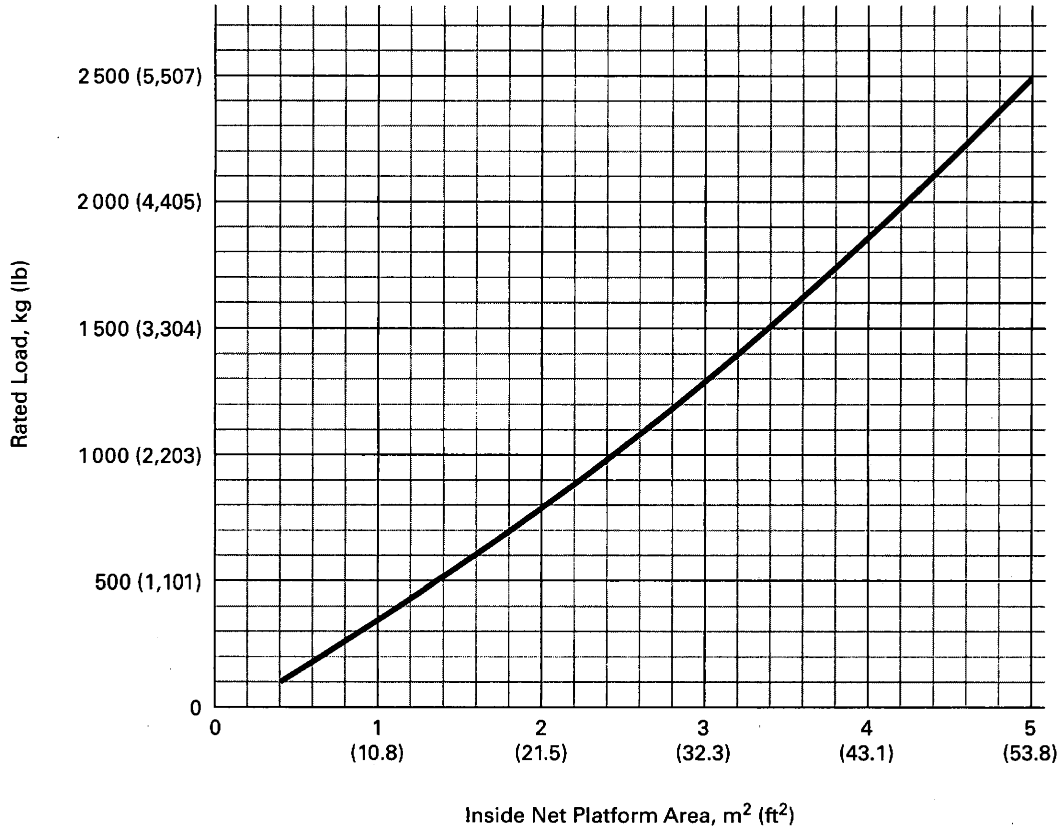
The maximum allowable stresses and deflections of members of all car frames and platforms shall be not more than those permitted by 2.15.10 and 2.15.11.

8.2.2.1.1 Formula Symbols. The symbols used in the formulas in 8.2.2 shall have the following meaning:
A = net area of section, m^2 ($in.^2$)
B = inside clear width of car, mm (in.)
C = net weight of complete elevator car, kg (lb)
D = distance between guide rails, mm (in.)
E = modulus of elasticity of material used, MPa (psi)
G = load supported by crosshead with the maximum load for the class of loading in car at rest at top terminal landing, kgf (lbf)
H = vertical center distance between upper and lower guide shoes (or rollers), mm (in.)
I = moment of inertia of member, gross section, mm^4 ($in.^4$)
K = turning moment as determined by class of loading, N·mm (lbf-in.)
L = free length of uprights (distance from lowest fastening in crosshead to top fastening in plank), mm (in.)
R = least radius of gyration of section, mm (in.)
W = rated load, kg (lb)
Z = combined section moduli of plank members, gross section, mm^3 ($in.^3$)
Z_U = section modulus of one upright, gross section, mm^3 ($in.^3$)

8.2.2.2 Car Frame Crosshead. The stresses in the car frame crosshead shall be based on the total load supported by the crosshead with the car and the maximum load for the class of loading in the car when at rest at the top terminal landing.

8.2.2.3 Car Frame Plank (Normal). The stresses in the car frame plank when the stringers are supported directly on the plank members shall be based on the

Fig. 8.2.1.2 Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators



sum of five-eighths of the platform weight uniformly distributed plus the concentrated loads due to the tension in the compensation means and the traveling cables with car at top of its travel plus the loading specified in 8.2.2.3(a) or (b).

(a) For passenger and Class A freight loading, five-eighths of the rated load uniformly distributed.

(b) For Classes B and C freight loading, the loading as specified in 8.2.2.6.

8.2.2.4 Car Frame Plank (Buffer Engagement). In calculating the stress resulting from oil-buffer engagement, one-half the sum of the weight of the car and its rated load shall be considered as being concentrated at each end of the plank with the buffer force applied at the middle. The buffer force shall be considered to be that required to produce gravity retardation with rated load in the car.

The following formula shall be used to determine the stress resulting from buffer engagement:

(SI Units)

$$\text{Stress (MPa)} = 9.807\,\frac{D\,(C + W)}{2Z}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Stress (psi)} = \frac{D\,(C + W)}{2Z}$$

Where more than one oil buffer is used, the formula shall be modified to suit the location of the buffers.

NOTE (see 8.2.2.4): Symbols used in the preceding formula are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.2.5 Car Frame Uprights (Stiles). The total stress in each car frame upright due to tension and bending, and the slenderness ratio of each upright and its moment of inertia, shall be determined in accordance with the following formulas.

8.2.2.5.1 Stress Due to Bending and Tension

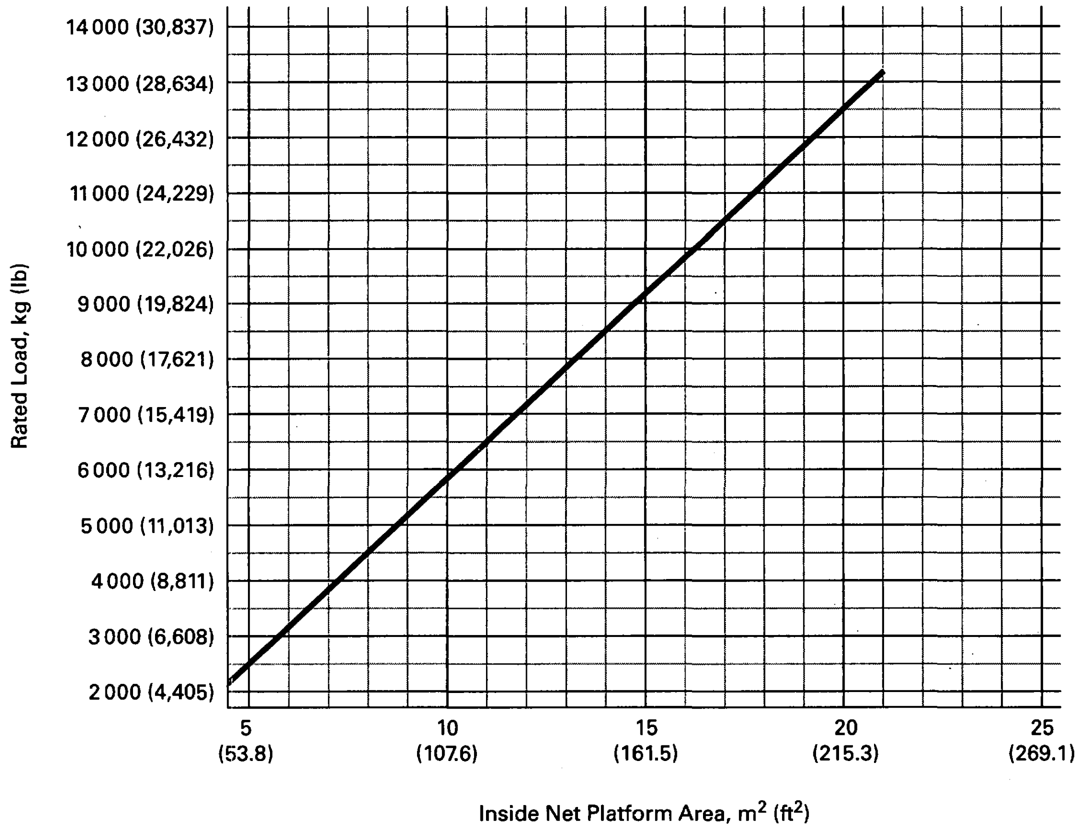
(SI Units)

$$\text{Total stress (MPa)} = \frac{KL}{4HZ_U} + \frac{9.807G}{2A}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\text{Total stress (psi)} = \frac{KL}{4HZ_U} + \frac{G}{2A}$$

Fig. 8.2.1.2 Minimum Rated Load for Passenger Elevators (Cont'd)



Where $KL/4HZ_u$ is the bending stress in each upright in the plane of the frame due to live load W on the platform for the class of loading A, B, or C for which the elevator is to be used (see 2.16.2.2); $G/2A$ is the tensile strength in each upright, and K is determined by the following formulas [see Fig. 8.2.2.5.1]:

(a) For Class A freight loading or passenger loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807\left(\frac{WB}{8}\right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$K = \frac{WB}{8}$$

(b) For Class B freight loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807\ W\left(\frac{B}{2} - 1.219\right) \text{ or } K = 9.807\left(\frac{WB}{8}\right)$$

whichever is greater.

(Imperial Units)

$$K = W\left(\frac{B}{2} - 48\right) \text{ or } K = \frac{WB}{8}$$

whichever is greater.

(c) For Class C freight loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807\left(\frac{WB}{4}\right)$$

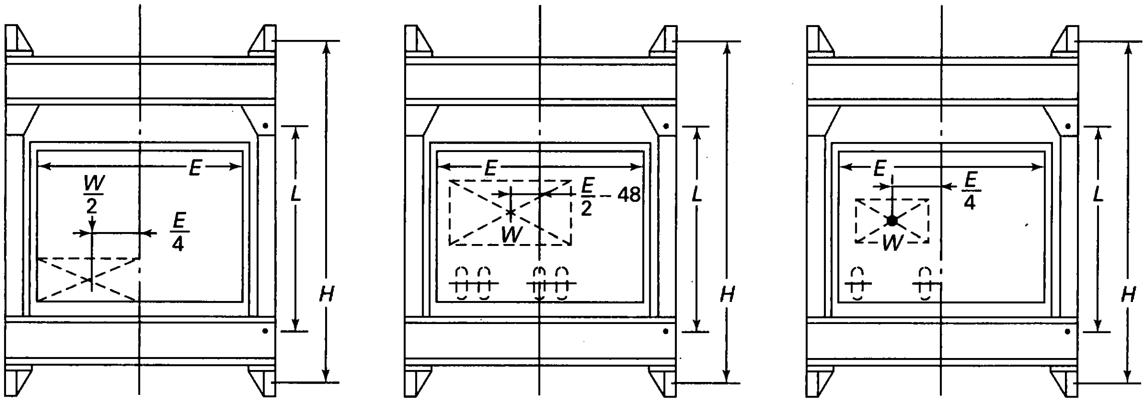
(Imperial Units)

$$K = \frac{WB}{4}$$

NOTE (8.2.2.5.1): Symbols used in the preceding formulas are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.2.5.2 Slenderness Ratio. The slenderness ratio L/R for uprights subject to compressions other than those resulting from safety and buffer action shall not exceed 120. Where the upper side-brace connections on passenger elevator car frame uprights are located at a point less than two-thirds of L from the bottom, (top fastening

Fig. 8.2.2.5.1 Turning Moment Based on Class of Loading



$K = \frac{WE}{8}$
Class A Freight Loading or Passenger Loading

$K = W\left(\frac{E}{2} - 48\right)$
Class B Freight Loading

$K = \frac{WE}{4}$
Class C Freight Loading

GENERAL NOTE: See 8.2.2.5.1 for formulas in SI Units.

in car frame plank) a slenderness ratio of L/R not exceeding 160 is permissible ($L/R \leq 160$).

NOTE (8.2.2.5.2): Symbols used in the above formulas are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.2.5.3 Moment of Inertia. The moment of inertia of each upright shall be not less than determined by the following formula:

(SI Units)

$$I = \frac{KL^3}{457.2EH}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$I = \frac{KL^3}{18EH}$$

NOTE (8.2.2.5.3): Symbols used in the preceding formula are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.2.6 Freight Elevator Platform. The calculation for stresses in the platform members of freight elevators shall be based on the following concentrated loads assumed to occupy the position that will produce the maximum stress:

(a) for Class A Loading, 25% of the rated load

(b) for Class B Loading, 75% of the rated load or 15 400 kg (34,000 lb), whichever is less, divided into two equal parts 1 525 mm (60 in.) apart

(c) for Class C1 Loading, with a load rating of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or less, 80% of the rated load divided into two equal parts, 765 mm (30 in.) apart

(d) for Class C2 Loading, with a load rating of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or less, 80% of the rated load or of the loaded truck weight, whichever is greater, divided into two equal parts, 765 mm (30 in.) apart

(e) for Class C1 or C2 Loading, with a rated load in excess of 9 000 kg (20,000 lb), 80% of the 9 000 kg (20,000 lb) or of the maximum loaded truck weight, whichever is greater, divided into two equal parts, 765 mm (30 in.) apart

(f) for Class C3 Loading, determined on the basis of the actual loading conditions but not less than that required for Class A loading

8.2.2.7 Hoisting Rope Hitch Plates and Shapes. The stresses in hoisting rope hitch plates and shapes shall be based on the total applied rope load with the car and its rated load at rest at the top terminal landing.

8.2.3 Impact on Buffer Supports

8.2.3.1 Buffer Reaction and Impact for Oil Buffer Supports. The following formulas give the buffer reaction and the impact on the car and counterweight oil buffer supports resulting from buffer engagement [see 2.1.2.3(a) or 3.22.1.2.1]:

(a) Buffer Reaction

(SI Units)

$$R = W\left(9.807 + \frac{v^2}{2S}\right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$R = W\left(1 + \frac{v^2}{64.4S}\right)$$

(b) Impact

$$P = 2R$$

8.2.3.2 Buffer Reaction and Impact for Spring Buffer Supports. The following formulas give the buffer reaction and the impact on the supports of car and counterweight spring buffers that do not fully compress under the conditions outlined in 2.1.2.3(a):

(a) Buffer reaction

(SI Units)

$$R = 2W\left(9.807 + \frac{V^2}{2S}\right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$R = 2W\left(1 + \frac{V^2}{64.4S}\right)$$

(b) Impact

$$P = R$$

where

P = impact, N (lbf)
R = buffer reaction, N (lbf)
S = buffer stroke, m (ft)
V = speed at impact (for electric), m/s (ft/s); operating speed in the down direction (for hydraulic), m/s (ft/s)
W = weight of car plus rated load or weight of counterweight, kg (lb)

8.2.4 Gravity Stopping Distances

The following formula gives the value of the stopping distance based on gravity retardation from any initial velocity (see 2.4.6, 2.4.8, 2.4.9, and 2.22.4.1):

(SI Units)

$$S = 51V^2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S = \frac{V^2}{19{,}320}$$

where

S = free fall (gravity stopping distance), mm (in.)
V = initial velocity, m/s (ft/min)

Figure 8.2.4 shows the gravity stopping distances from various initial velocities.

8.2.5 Governor Tripping Speeds

Figure 8.2.5 gives the maximum governor tripping speeds for various rated speeds (see 2.18.2.1).

8.2.6 Stopping Distances for Car and Counterweight Safeties

The following formulas shall be used to determine the maximum and minimum stopping distances for Type B car and counterweight safeties (see 2.17.3):

(SI Units)

$$S = \frac{V^2}{6.870} + 0.2560$$

$$S' = \frac{V^2}{19.63}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S = \frac{V^2}{81{,}144} + 0.84$$

$$S' = \frac{V^2}{231{,}840}$$

where

S = maximum stopping distance, m (ft)
S' = minimum stopping distance, m (ft)
V = governor tripping speed, m/s (ft/min)

Figure 8.2.6 shows the maximum and minimum stopping distances from various governor tripping speeds.

8.2.7 Factors of Safety for Suspension Wire Ropes for Power Elevators

Figure 8.2.7 shows the minimum factors of safety for suspension wire ropes of power elevators for various rope speeds (see 2.20.3).

8.2.8 Hydraulic Jack and Piping

8.2.8.1 Plunger Design. Plungers shall be designed and constructed in accordance with one of the following formulas (8.2.8.1.1 through 8.2.8.1.4).

8.2.8.1.1 Plungers Not Subject to Eccentric Loading

(a) Where slenderness ratio of plunger is less than 120

(SI Units)

$$\frac{W}{A} = 9.377 \times 10^7 - 3.344 \times 10^3\,(L/R)^2$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\frac{W}{A} = 13{,}600 - 0.485\,(L/R)^2$$

(b) Where slenderness ratio of plunger is greater than 120

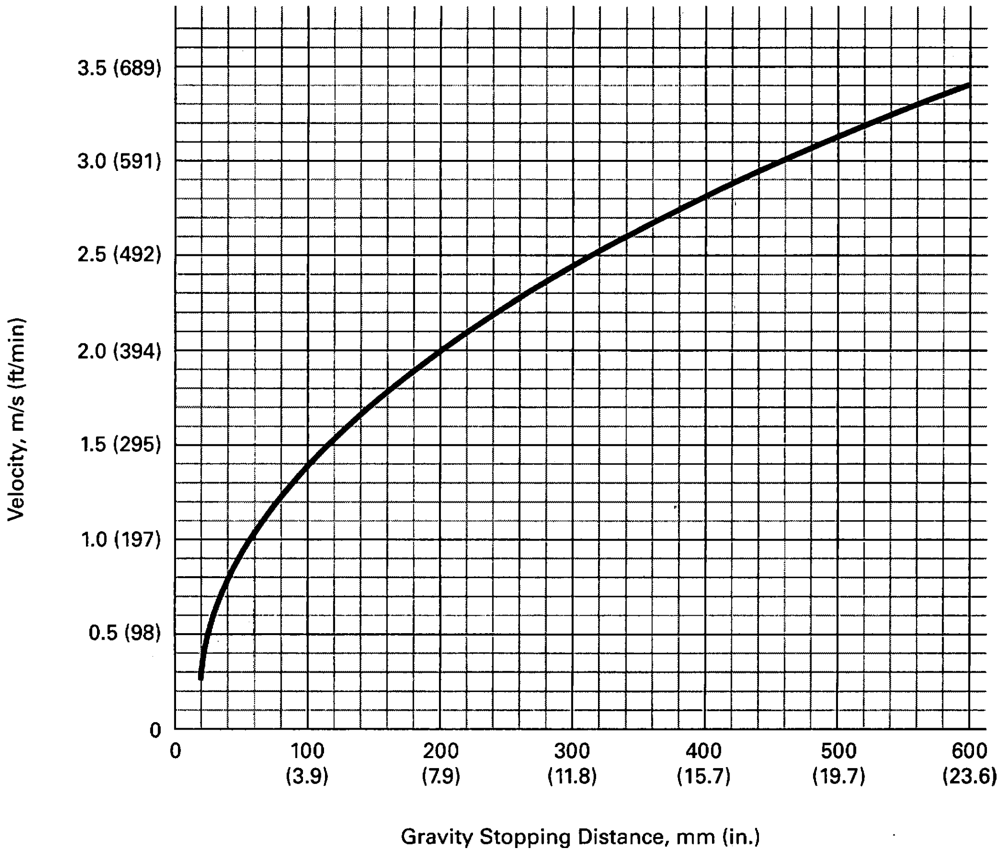
(SI Units)

$$\frac{W}{A} = \frac{6.550 \times 10^{11}}{(L/R)^2}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\frac{W}{A} = \frac{95{,}000{,}000}{(L/R)^2}$$

Fig. 8.2.4 Gravity Stopping Distances



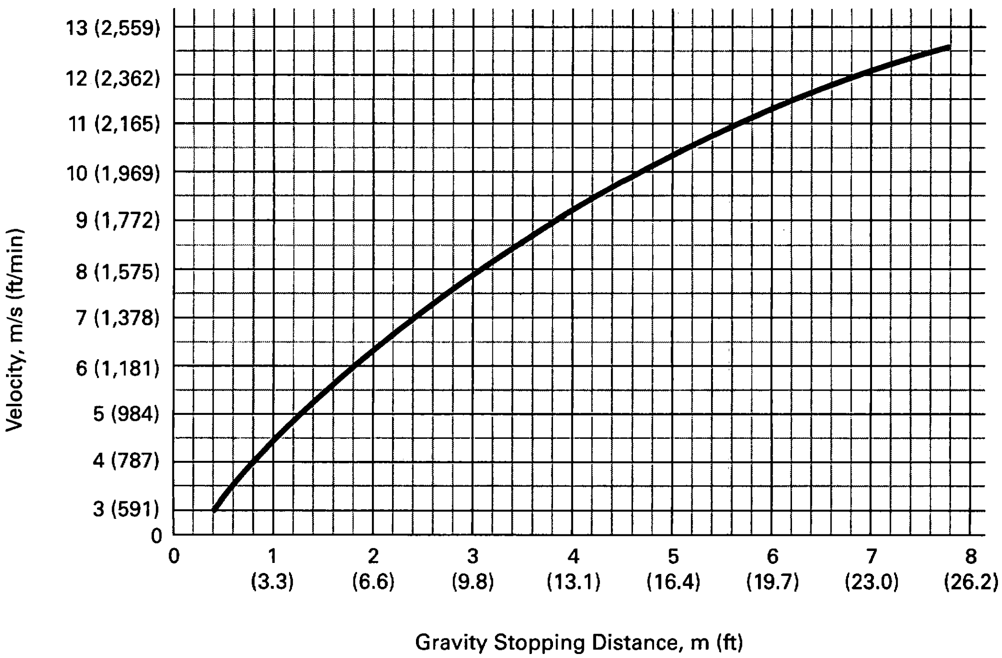


Fig. 8.2.5 Maximum Governor Tripping Speeds

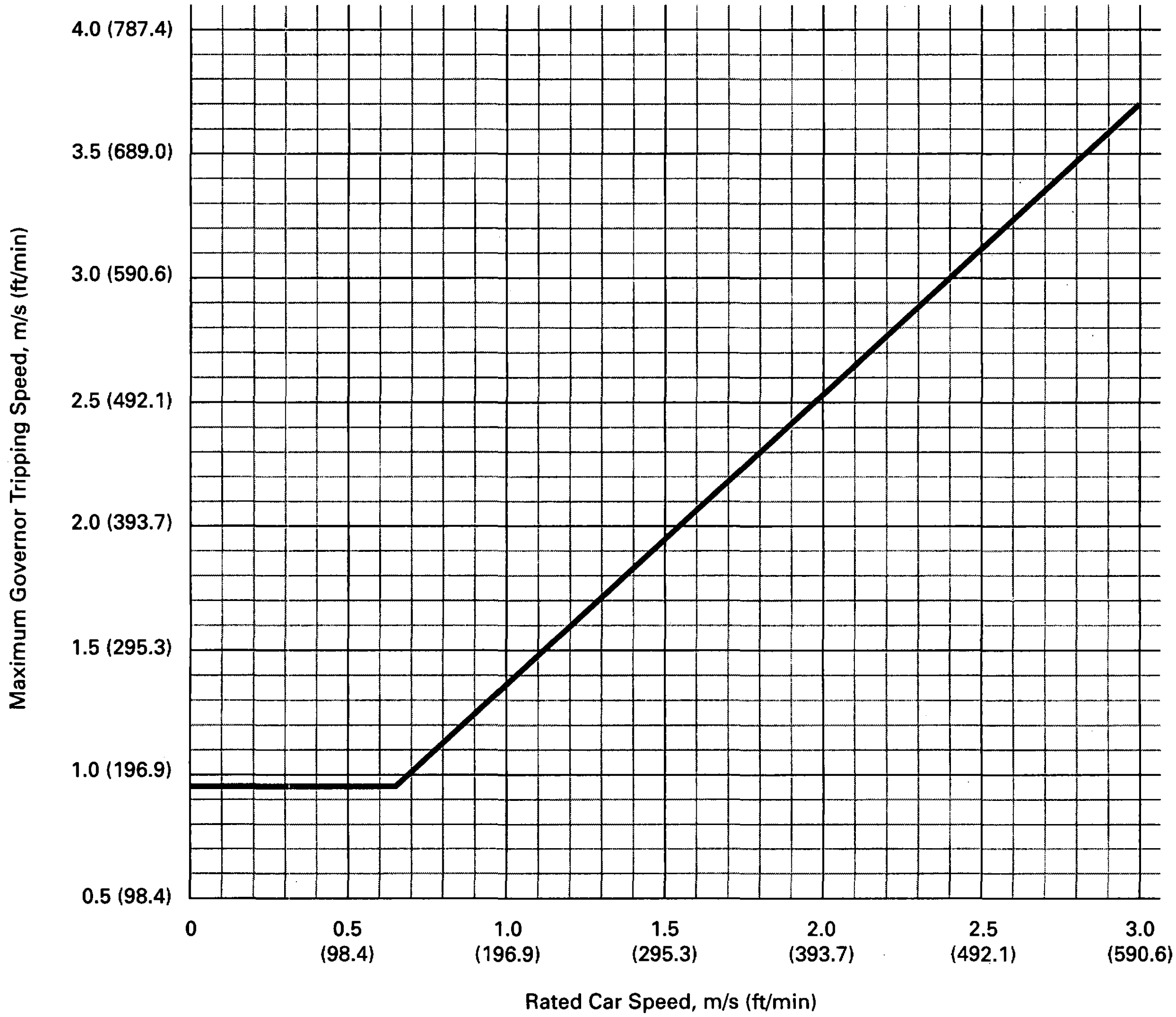


Fig. 8.2.5 Maximum Governor Tripping Speeds (Cont'd)

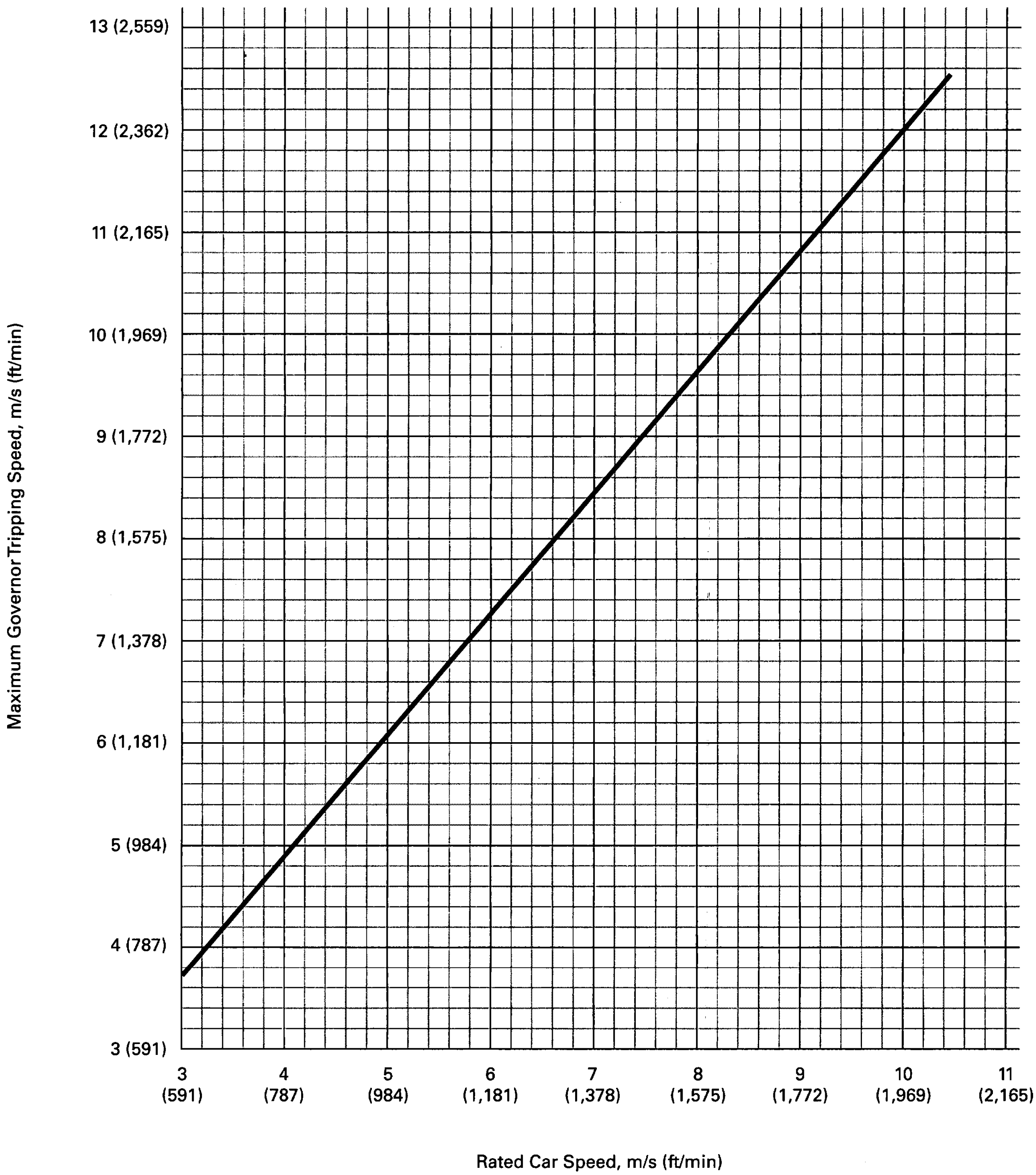


Fig. 8.2.6 Stopping Distances for Type B Car and Counterweight Safeties

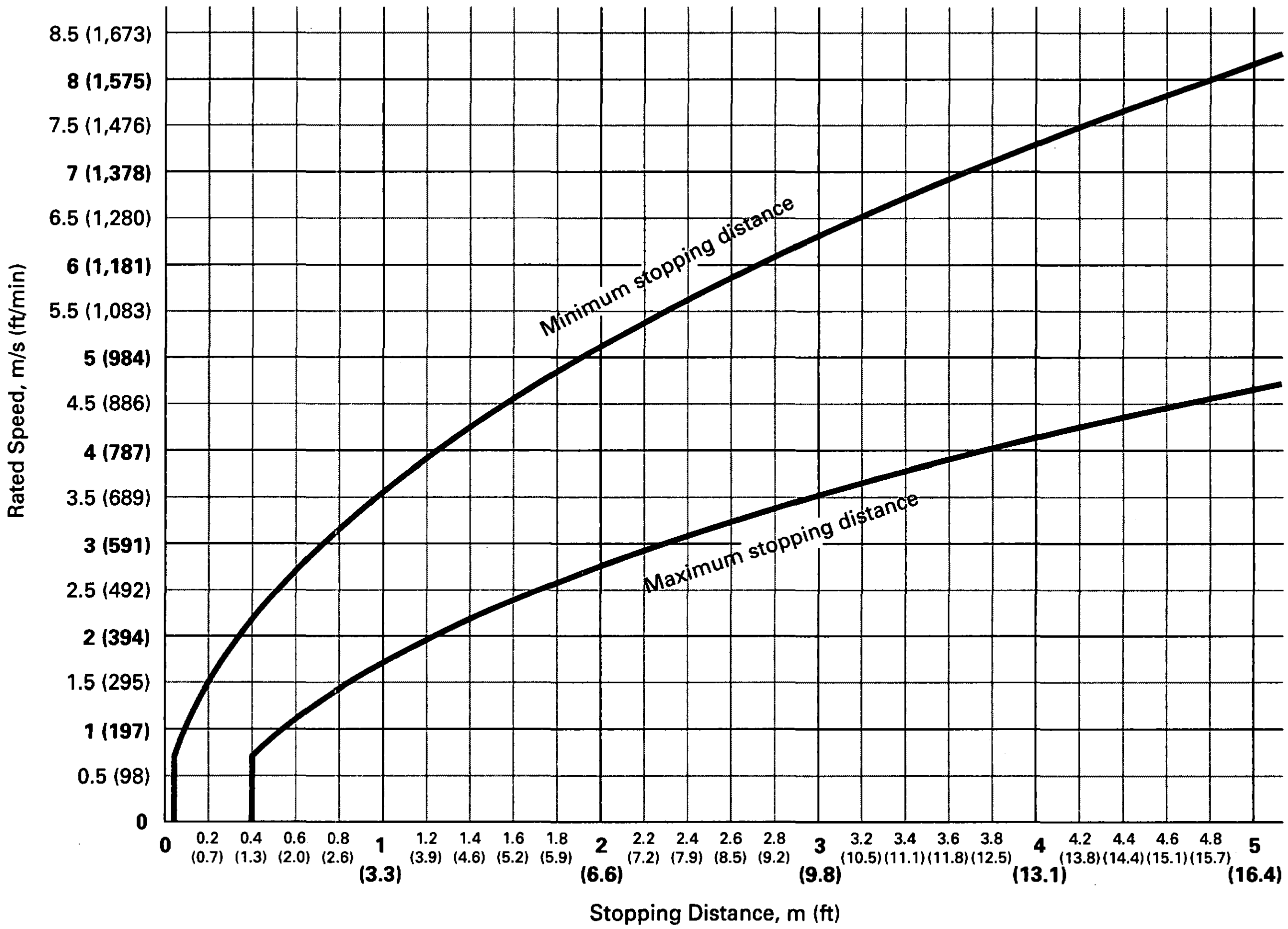


Fig. 8.2.6 Stopping Distances for Type B Car and Counterwieght Safeties (Cont'd)

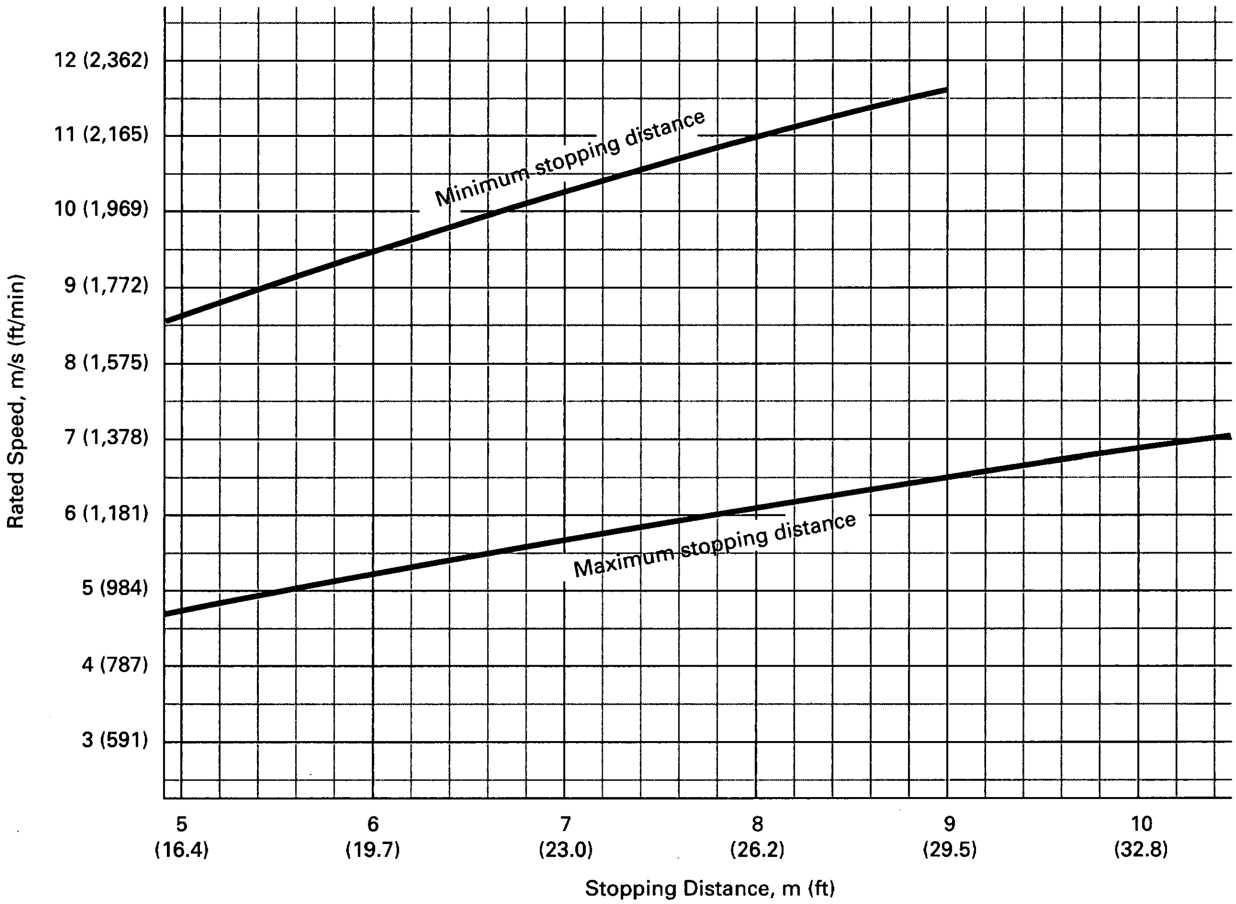


Fig. 8.2.6 Stopping Distances for Type B Car and Counterweight Safeties (Cont'd)

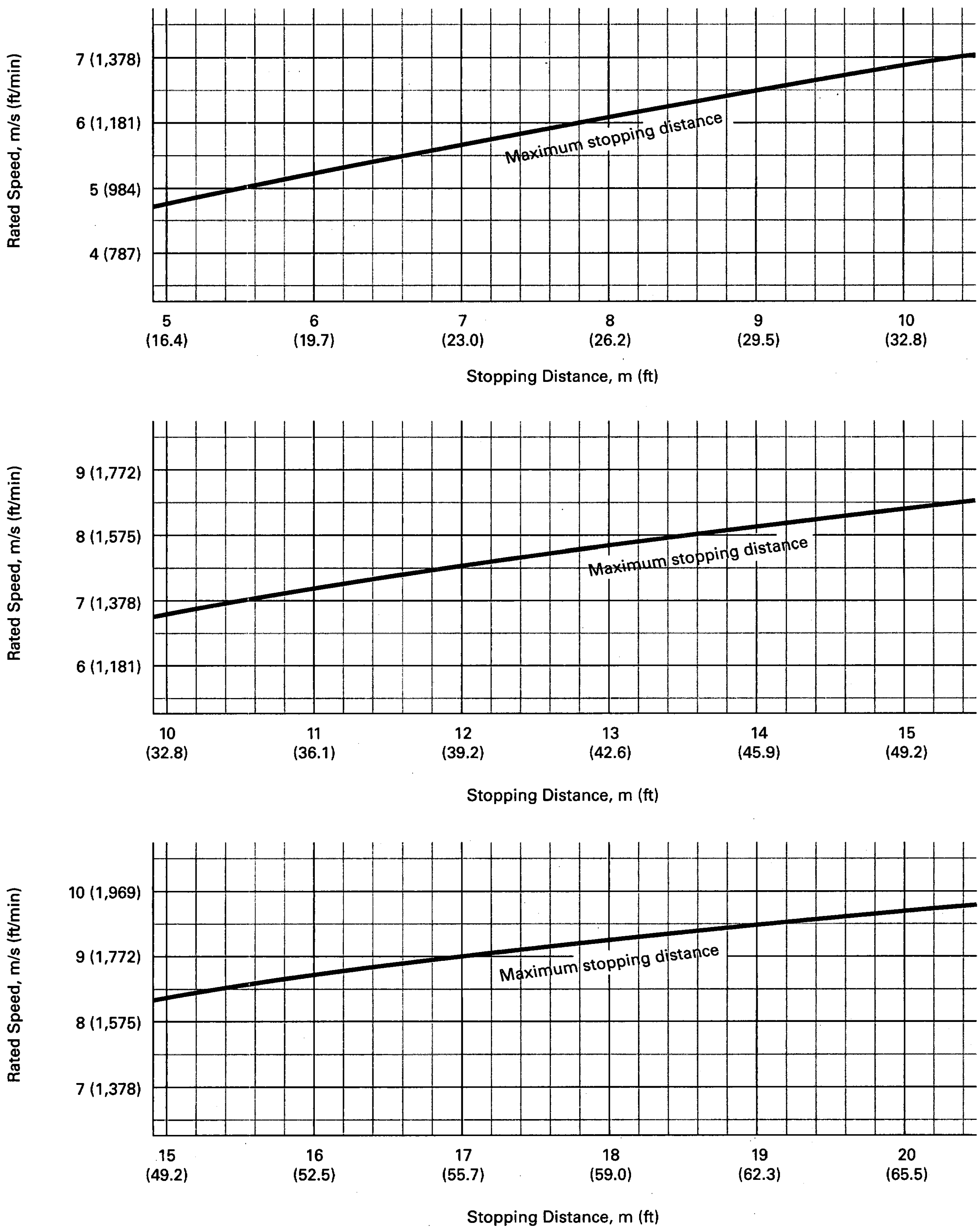
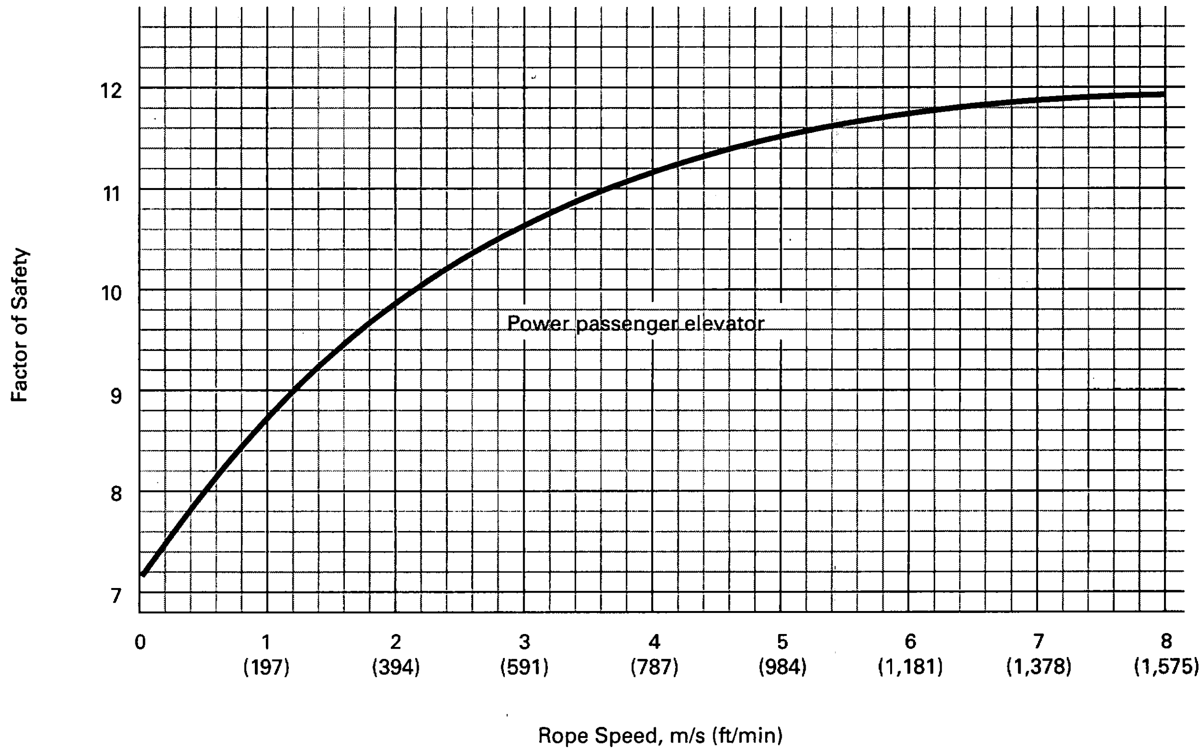
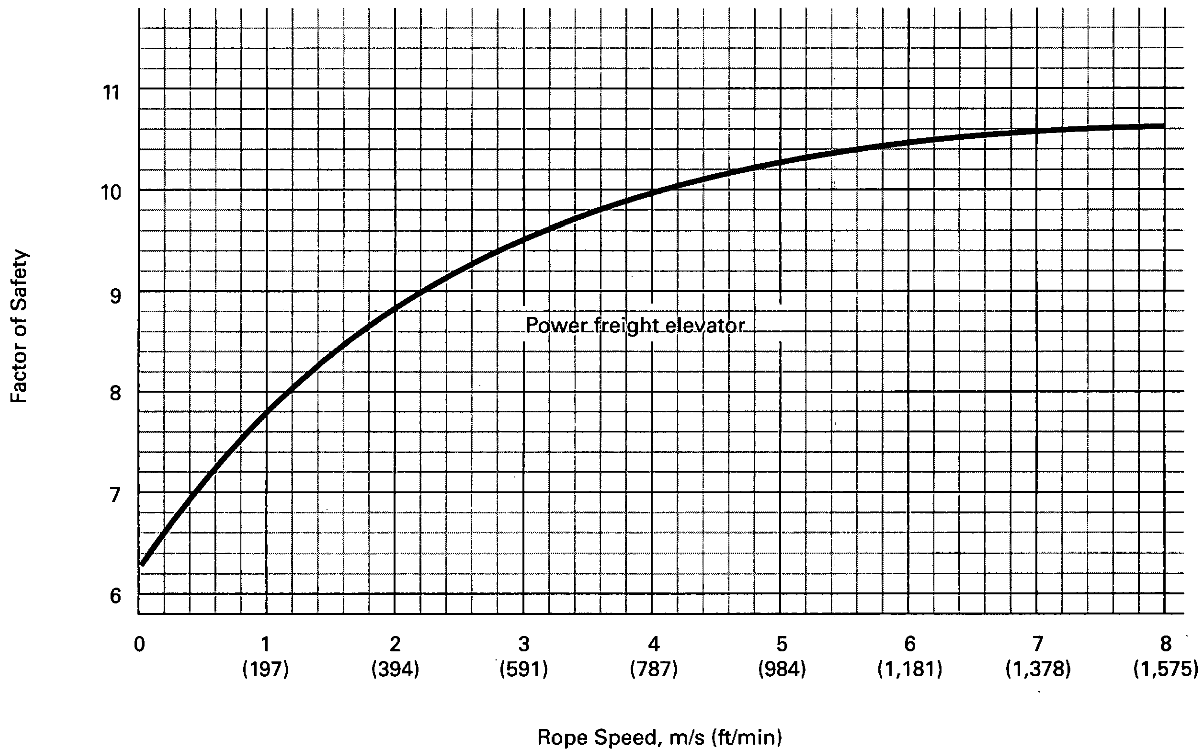


Fig. 8.2.7 Minimum Factors of Safety of Suspension Wire Ropes of Power Passenger and Freight Elevators





Formulas are for steel where

A = net sectional area of plunger (area of metal), m^2 ($in.^2$)

L = maximum free length of plunger, mm (in.). Where a plunger-follower guide conforming to 3.18.2.7 is used, L shall be taken as one-half the amount that the free length would be if no follower guide were provided.

R = radius of gyration of plunger section, mm (in.)

W = allowable gross weight to be sustained by plunger, N (lbf). Where a counterweight is provided, the weight of the counterweight plus the unbalanced weight of the counterweight ropes shall be permitted to be deducted in determining W. In determining W, one-half of the weight of the plunger shall be included except where a plunger-follower guide conforming to 3.18.2.7 is used, in which case, three-fourths of the plunger weight shall be included.

W/A = fiber stress, kPa (psi)

NOTE [8.2.8.1.1(a) and (b)]: Figure 8.2.8.1.1 has been calculated from the formulas given in 8.2.8.1.1 for the more usual pipe sizes and pipe schedules and indicate allowable gross loads directly.

(c) Plungers having a free length of 7.6 m (25 ft) or less shall be permitted to be accepted without further examination for strength and elastic stability, provided all of the following conditions exist:

(1) the working pressure is 2 070 kPa (300 psi) or less

(2) the plunger is 100 mm (4 in.) nominal pipe size or larger

(3) pipe not lighter than schedule 40 is used, and not more than 1.6 mm (0.063 in.) of metal has been removed from the wall thickness in machining

(d) Plungers With Varying Cross Section. For plungers with varying cross section, the stress shall be calculated for a factor of safety of at least 3 using accepted methods for elastic stability.

8.2.8.1.2 Plungers Subject to Eccentric Loading. For plungers subject to bending, the stresses due to bending as determined by the following formulas shall be subtracted from the stresses W/A as determined by the applicable formula in 8.2.8.1.1.

(SI Units)

$$S = \left(\frac{W_b e}{Z}\right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S = \frac{W_b e}{Z}$$

where

e = eccentricity of W_b, mm (in.)

S = stress due to bending, MPa (psi)

W_b = maximum eccentric load, N (lbf). Where any or all of this load is caused by moving wheel loads imposed on the edge of the platform, the total of such loads shall be doubled for impact (see 8.2.2.6).

Z = section modulus of plunger section, mm^3 ($in.^3$)

8.2.8.1.3 Plungers Subjected to External Pressure. For plungers subjected to external pressure, the working pressure shall be not more than that indicated by the following formulas.

(a) Where the ratio of t/D is less than 0.023:

(SI Units)

$$p = 2\,296\left[1 - \sqrt{1 - 1\,600\left(\frac{t}{D}\right)^2}\right]$$

(Imperial Units)

$$p = 333\left[1 - \sqrt{1 - 1{,}600\left(\frac{t}{D}\right)^2}\right]$$

(b) Where the ratio of t/D is greater than 0.023:

(SI Units)

$$p = 199\,200\,\frac{t}{D} - 3\,185$$

(Imperial Units)

$$p = 28{,}890\,\frac{t}{D} - 462$$

where

D = external finished diameter, mm (in.)

p = working pressure, kPa (psi)

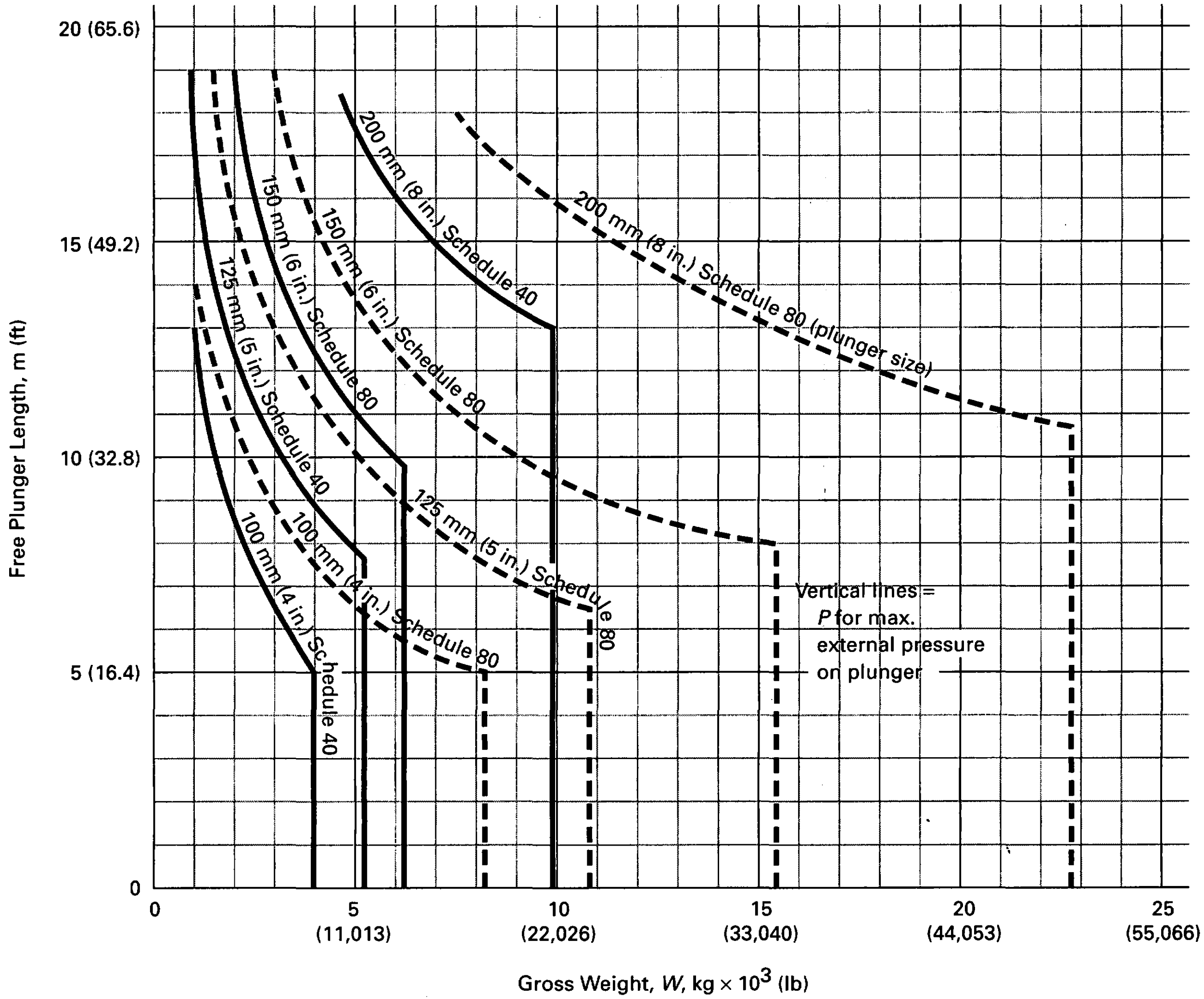
t = finished wall thickness, mm (in.)

8.2.8.1.4 Telescoping Plungers. Telescoping plungers shall have each plunger section internally guided. If more than two movable sections are used, plunger follower guides shall be provided for each plunger section. In the formulas in 8.2.8.1.1(a) and 8.2.8.1.1(b), the values of A and R shall be for the smallest plunger section. When plunger follower guides are used, the value of L shall be the maximum free length of the smallest section in millimeters (inches). When plunger follower guides are not used, the value of L shall be taken as 1.4 times the maximum free length of the smallest plunger section.

8.2.8.2 Cylinder Design. Cylinders shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pd}{2S} + C$$

Fig. 8.2.8.1.1 Allowable Gross Loads



GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Curves are based upon the removal of not more than 1.5 mm (0.0625 in.) from the wall thickness in machining.

(b) Curves stop at 18 m (59 ft) for convenience only. For plunger sizes or lengths not shown on this chart, see the applicable formula in 8.2.8.1.1.

where

C = depth of the thread or groove, mm (in.)
d = internal diameter, mm (in.)
p = working pressure, kPa (psi)
S = allowable stress, kPa (psi) (see 8.2.8.5.2)
t = minimum thickness of wall, mm (in.)

8.2.8.3 Cylinder and Plunger Heads. Heads of cylinders and heads of plungers subject to fluid pressure shall be designed and constructed in accordance with one of the following applicable formulas:

(a) Flat unreinforced heads

$$t = d\sqrt{\frac{p}{4S}}$$

(b) Dished seamless hemispherical heads, concave to pressure

$$t = \frac{5pr}{6S}$$

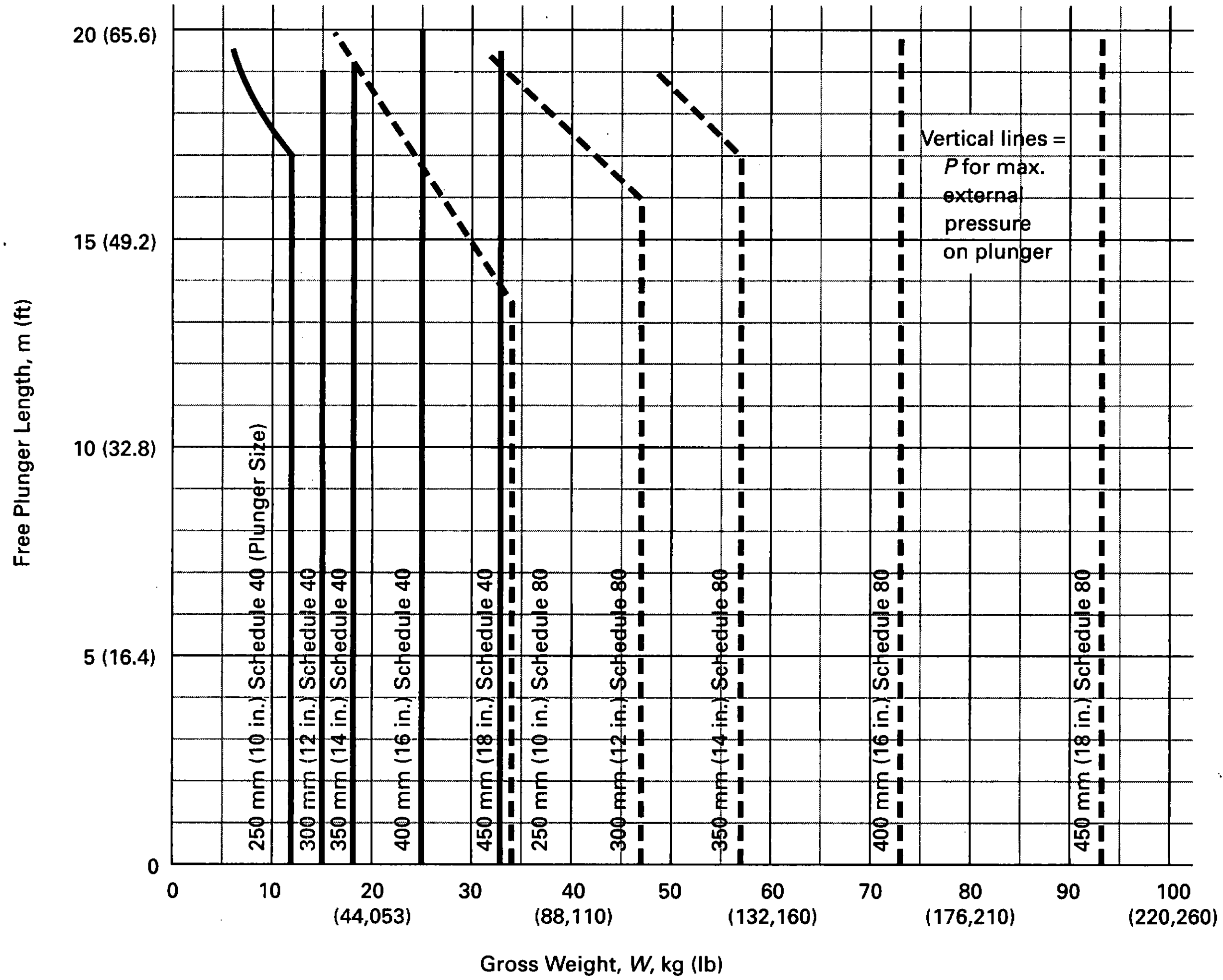
(c) Dished seamless ellipsoidal heads, concave to pressure (ellipsoidal heads in which one-half of the minor axis equals one-quarter the inside diameter of skirt),

$$t = \frac{5pD}{6S}$$

where

D = inside diameter of skirt, mm (in.)

Fig. 8.2.8.1.1 Allowable Gross Loads (Cont'd)



GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Curves are based upon the removal of not more than 1.5 mm (0.0625 in.) from the wall thickness in machining.

(b) Curves stop at 18 m (59 ft) for convenience only. For plunger sizes or lengths not shown on this chart, see the applicable formula in 8.2.8.1.1.

d = diameter of head between supporting edges, mm (in.)

p = working pressure, kPa (psi)

r = radius to which head is dished, measured on concave side (not greater than d), mm (in.)

S = allowable stress, kPa (psi) (see 8.2.8.5.2)

t = minimum thickness of head, mm (in.)

8.2.8.4 Wall Thickness of Pressure Piping. The minimum wall thickness of pipe shall be 1.65 mm plus C or as determined by the following:

$$t = \frac{pD}{2eS} + C$$

or

$$\left(t - C = \frac{pD}{2eS}\right)$$

where

C = 1.3 mm (0.05 in.) for threaded pipe up to 9.5 mm ($\frac{3}{8}$ in.) pipe size, the depth of the thread in millimeters for threaded pipe over 9.5 mm ($\frac{3}{8}$ in.) pipe size, the depth of groove in millimeters for grooved pipe, or 0.000 for other pipe or unreduced thickness

D = the outside diameter of pipe, mm (in.)

e = the joint efficiency: 1 for seamless pipe; 0.85 for electric resistance welded pipe

p = the maximum working pressure, kPa (psi)

t = the minimum wall thickness, mm (in.)

S = the allowable stress, based on a factor of safety in accordance with 8.2.8.5.2, kPa (psi)

Steel pipes and fittings used for gauge ports need not comply with this formula, but shall be a minimum of

Schedule 80 pipe and maximum length of 75 mm (3 in.), except as permitted by 3.19.2.4.

8.2.8.5 Factor of Safety

8.2.8.5.1 Except as required in 3.19.3.3.1(b), the minimum factor of safety for components subject to fluid pressure shall be as follows:

$$F = \frac{5.04}{E - 2.8} + 2.7$$

where

E = percent elongation in 50 mm (2 in.) gauge length as per ASTM Standard E 8 expressed as a whole number (e.g., 20% = 20 and 5% = 5). The minimum allowable E shall be 5.

F = minimum factor of safety based on 0.2% proof stress yield point. The minimum allowable F shall be 3.

8.2.8.5.2 The allowable stress to be used in 8.2.8.2 through 8.2.8.4 shall be determined as follows:

$$S = \frac{Y.P.}{F}$$

where

F = minimum factor of safety based on 0.2% proof stress yield point as determined in 8.2.8.5.1

S = allowable stress kPa (psi)

$Y.P.$ = yield point, based on 0.2% proof stress yield point, kPa (psi)

8.2.8.6 Plunger Gripper Application Pressure. The maximum pressure to be applied by the plunger gripper to avoid local buckling should be calculated as follows for steel:

(SI Units)

$$P_{\max} = 2.9 \times 10^5 \left(\frac{t}{D}\right)^3$$

(Imperial Units)

$$P_{\max} = 4.2 \times 10^7 \left(\frac{t}{D}\right)^3$$

where

D = outside diameter of plunger, mm (in.)

$P_{\max}$ = maximum pressure, MPa (psi)

t = minimum wall thickness, mm (in.)

8.2.9 Hydraulic Elevator Car Frame and Platform Stresses and Deflections

8.2.9.1 General Requirements. The stresses and deflections in side-post-type car frame and platform members shall be based on the data and formulas listed in 8.2.9.

All stresses and their resultant deflections, not only those based on the data and formulas in this Section, shall be considered when side-post-type car frames are located off the platform center line by more than one-eighth of the distance from the front to the back of the platform.

For cars and corner-post, sub-post, or other special car frame and platform construction, the formulas and specified methods of calculation of loads and the resulting stresses and deflections do not generally apply and shall be modified to suit the specific conditions and requirements in each case.

The maximum allowable stresses and deflections of members of all car frames and platforms shall be not more than those permitted by 3.15.2.

8.2.9.1.1 Maximum Stresses in Car Frame Uprights. The maximum stresses in car frame uprights that are normally subject to compression shall be such that the quantity $[(f_a / F_a) + (f_b / F_b)]$ does not exceed unity

where

F_a = allowable axial compressive unit stress [not exceeding $117\,200 - 3.344\,(L/R)^2$ in SI units and $17{,}000 - 0.485\,(L/R)^2$ in Imperial units]

f_a = actual axial compressive unit stress based on gross section

F_b = allowable bending unit stress [113 MPa (16,500 psi), if area basis is gross section or 138 MPa (20,000 psi) if area basis is net section]

f_b = actual bending unit stress

L = free length of uprights (distance from lowest fastening in crosshead to top fastening in plank), mm (in.)

R = least radius of gyration of section, mm (in.)

8.2.9.1.2 Car Frame Crosshead. The stresses in the car frame crosshead shall be based on the total load, if any, supported by the crosshead.

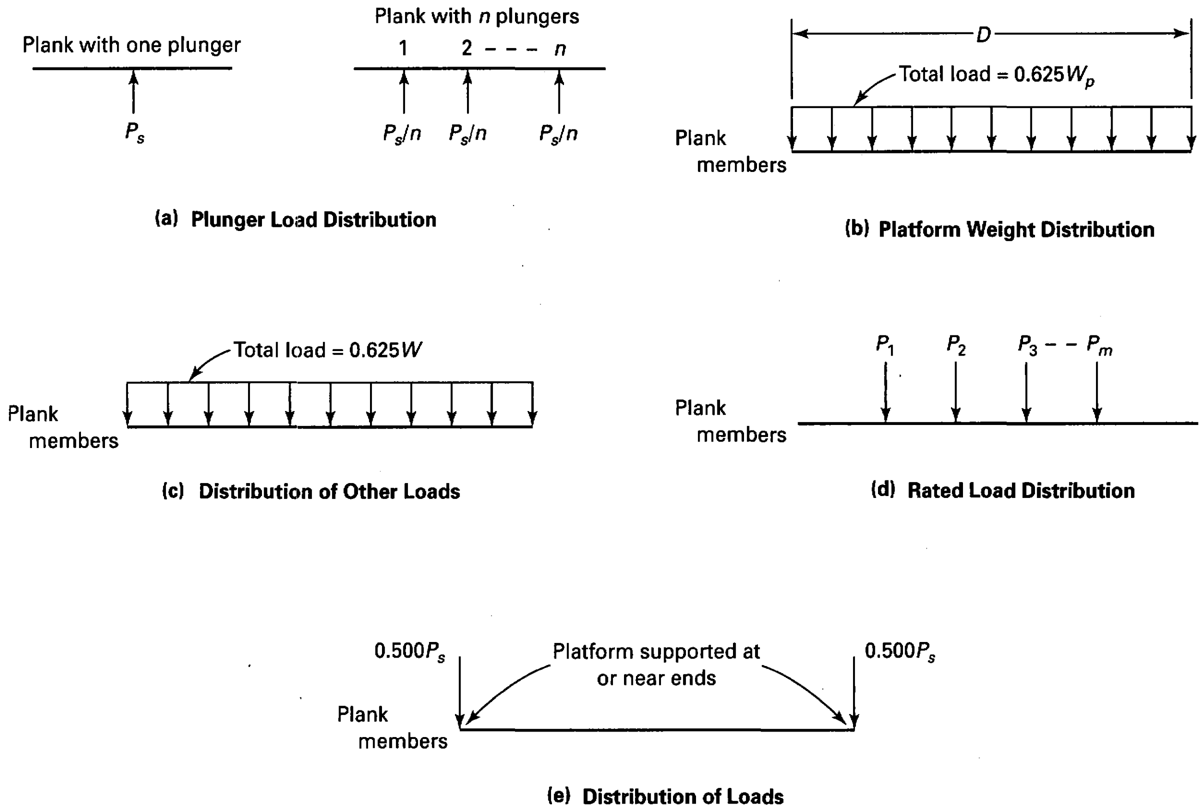
The crosshead members(s) and connection between the crosshead and upright (stile) shall be designed to resist the bending moment, shear and axial forces transferred between the upright and the crosshead.

8.2.9.1.3 Car Frame Plank. The bending stresses in the car frame planks due to the normal loading shall be based on the following loads:

(a) concentrated load(s) located at their point of application equal to the total maximum static load on all the driving members lifting the car divided by the number of lifting members [see Fig. 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (a)]

(b) five-eighths of the platform weight uniformly distributed over the length of the planks when the platform members are supported directly by the plank members [see Fig. 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (b)]

Fig. 8.2.9.1.3 Load Distribution



D = distance between guide rails, m (in.)
W = rated load, kg (lb) (passenger or Class A freight)
W_p = platform weight, kg (lb)
P_1, P_2, P_3, P_m = balance of loads acting on the plank members located at their respective points of application. Such loads typically include the weights of cab and doors, carframe members and guide shoes, traveling cables, electrical devices, door devices, and the balance of load distributions of the platform weight and rated load not distributed to the plank members.
P_s = total maximum static load on all the driving members, kg (lb)

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) 1 mm = 1 in./25.4 (1 in. = 25.4 mm);
(b) 1 kg = 1 lb/0.454 (1 lb = 0.454 kg).

(c) the duty load distribution is as follows:

(1) for passenger and Class A freight loading, five-eighths of the rated load uniformly distributed over the length of the planks when the platform members are supported directly by the plank members [see Fig. 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (c)]

(2) for Classes B and C freight loading, the loading in conformance with 8.2.2.6

(d) the balance of loads shall be taken as acting at their respective point(s) of application [see Fig. 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (d)]

(e) where the platform members are only supported directly by the planks at or adjacent to the ends of the planks, 8.2.9.1.3(b) and 8.2.9.1.3(c)(1) do not apply, and concentrated loads equal to one-half of the total maximum static load on all the driving members shall be applied at each end of the planks [see Fig. 8.2.9.1.3, sketch (e)]

8.2.9.1.4 Car Frame Uprights (Stiles). The stresses in each car frame upright due to compression and bending and the slenderness ratio of each upright and its moment of inertia shall be determined in accordance with the following formulas:

(a) Stresses Due to Bending

$$f_b = \frac{KL}{4HZ_U}$$

where

f_b = the bending stress in each upright in the plane of the frame due to the live load W on the platform for the class of loading A, B, or C for which the elevator is to be used (see 2.16.2.2 and 3.16)

K = turning moment in N·m (lbf-in.) as determined by the class of loading (see Fig. 8.2.2.5.1) by the following formulas

(1) For Class A freight loading or passenger loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807\left(\frac{WB}{8}\right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$K = \frac{WB}{8}$$

(2) For Class B freight loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807\ W\left(\frac{B}{2} - 1.219\right) \text{ or } K = 9.807\left(\frac{WB}{8}\right)$$

whichever is greater

(Imperial Units)

$$K = W\left(\frac{B}{2} - 48\right) \text{ or } K = \frac{WB}{8}$$

whichever is greater.

(3) For Class C freight loading

(SI Units)

$$K = 9.807\left(\frac{WB}{4}\right)$$

(Imperial Units)

$$K = \frac{WB}{4}$$

NOTE [8.2.9.1.4(a)]: Symbols used in the above formulas are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

(b) Stresses Due to Compression

f_a = compressive stress in each upright

(c) Slenderness Ratio. The slenderness ratio L/R for uprights subject to compressions other than those resulting from buffer or safety action shall not exceed 120. Where the upper side-brace connections on passenger elevator car frame uprights are located at a point less than two-thirds of L from the bottom (top fastening in car frame plank), a slenderness ratio of L/R not exceeding 160 is permissible.

(d) Moment of Inertia. The moment of inertia of each upright shall be not less than determined by the following formula:

(SI Units)

$$I = \frac{KL^3}{457.2EH}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$I = \frac{KL^3}{18EH}$$

NOTE [8.2.9.1.4(d)]: Symbols used in the above formula are defined in 8.2.2.1.1.

8.2.10 Minimum Oil Buffer Strokes: Inclined Elevators

The following formula shall be used to determine the minimum stroke of oil buffers used for inclined elevators (see 5.1.17.4):

(SI Units)

$$S_{min} = 269.5v^2 \cos\theta$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S_{min} = \frac{v^2 \cos\theta}{3{,}652}$$

where

S_{min} = minimum oil buffer stroke, mm (in.)

v = rated car speed, m/s (ft/min)

θ = angle of inclination from horizontal (degrees)

8.2.11 Stopping Distances for Car and Counterweight Safeties for Inclined Elevators

The following formulas shall be used to determine the maximum and minimum stopping distances for Type B car and counterweight safeties used on inclined elevators (see 5.1.14.2):

(SI Units)

$$S_{min} = 203.77v_g^2 \cos\theta$$

$$S_{max} = 1.43S_{min} + 254$$

(Imperial Units)

$$S_{min} = \frac{v_g^2 \cos\theta}{4{,}830}$$

$$S_{max} = 1.43S_{min} + 10$$

where

S_{min} = minimum stopping distance, mm (in.)
S_{max} = maximum stopping distance, mm (in.)
v_g = governor tripping speed, m/s (ft/min)
θ = angle of inclination from horizontal (degrees)

8.2.12 Material Lifts With Automatic Transfer Devices, Design Data, and Formulas

The design data and formulas in 8.2 as they apply to freight elevators shall apply to material lifts with automatic transfer devices. Where vehicle loading is used, Class B loading shall apply.

SECTION 8.3 ENGINEERING TESTS, TYPE TESTS, AND CERTIFICATION

Requirement 8.3 covers:

(a) type of tests and certification of

(1) car and counterweight oil buffers, as required in 2.22.4.7 (see also 8.3.1 and 8.3.2)

(2) hoistway door interlocks, hoistway door combination mechanical locks, electric contacts, and hoistway-door electric contacts, as required in 2.12.4 (see also 8.3.1 and 8.3.3)

(3) car door or gate electric contacts, and car door interlocks as required in 2.14.4.2 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.3)

(ED) *(4)* entrance fire tests as required by 2.11 (see 8.3.4)

(5) hydraulic control valves as required in 3.19.4.6 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.5)

(6) escalator brakes, as required in 6.1.5.3 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.6)

(b) engineering tests of

(1) car enclosure wall materials, as required in 2.14.2.1.1(b) (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.7)

(2) test method for evaluating room, fire growth, contribution of textile wall covering, as required in 8.7.2.14 (see 8.3.7 and 8.3.8)

(3) hydraulic overspeed valves, as required in 3.19.4.7 (see 8.3.9)

(4) safety nut and speed-limiting device of screw column elevators, as required in 4.2.11.2 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.10)

(5) escalator steps, as required in 6.1.3.5.5 and moving walk pallets, as required by 6.2.3.5.4 (see 8.3.1 and 8.3.11)

8.3.1 General Requirements for Tests and Certification

8.3.1.1 General

(a) Type Tests (see 1.3) shall be carried out when required.

(b) Engineering Tests (see 1.3) shall be carried out when required.

(c) The tests shall be permitted to be made by laboratories other than the certifying organization or manufacturers, but the responsibility shall remain with the original certifying organization.

8.3.1.2 Application for Certification

8.3.1.2.1 The application for engineering or type tests shall be made by the component manufacturer, equipment manufacturer, installer, or importer.

8.3.1.2.2 The application shall include

(a) the manufacturer's name and the equipment or component designation or model

(b) two sets of assembly and detail drawings showing details as specified in 8.3

(c) a description of the elevator component or equipment, and its field of application, along with calculated performance features

8.3.1.3 Certification and Test Records

8.3.1.3.1 A certificate shall be issued for a component or equipment that has been successfully tested. The certificate shall include

(a) the name of applicant (see 8.3.1.2.1)

(b) the name of the manufacturer

(c) the manufacturer's designation of the type or model tested

(d) the certifying organization's label/mark and the method of affixing the label/mark to each component or each piece of equipment subsequently manufactured, where required

(e) the method of testing, the test report, and a list of the instruments used (Note: this may be attached to the certificate)

(f) the conditions for use of the certificate and label/mark

(g) a statement to the effect that the component or equipment tested has met the specified test requirements

(h) any other information required in ASME A17.1 or CSA B44

(i) the edition of the Code under which the component was tested and certified

8.3.1.3.2 The certificate shall be valid until recalled by the certifying organization or until the applicable requirements in ASME A17.1 or CSA B44 are changed unless otherwise stated (see 8.3.1.4).

8.3.1.3.3 The drawings and other documents submitted by the applicant (see 8.3.1.2), together with the original test records, data, performance curves, and certificate shall be filed, as a permanent record for future reference.

8.3.1.3.4 The applicant shall be permitted to examine and copy the test records upon request.

8.3.1.4 Changes to Listed/Certified Components or Equipment

8.3.1.4.1 Where any change is made in the design of the component or equipment after certification, including changes resulting from the revisions in applicable code requirements, revised drawings showing such changes shall be filed with the original or other certifying organization. The certifying organization shall issue to the applicant a revised certificate, based upon the previous test results or any new tests that are needed, depending on the nature of the changes.

8.3.1.4.2 Changes in the design that do not affect the performance of the component or equipment shall be permitted to be made without the approval of the certifying organization. The certifying organization shall be apprised in writing of the change.

8.3.1.5 Testing Instruments. The precision of the instruments shall allow measurements to be made, unless otherwise specified, within the following tolerances:

(*a*) ±1% — masses, forces, distances, time, speeds, and hydraulic pressure

(*b*) ±2% — accelerations, retardations, and flow rating

(*c*) ±5% — voltages and currents

(*d*) ±10% — temperatures

8.3.2 Type Tests of Car and Counterweight Oil Buffers

8.3.2.1 Application for Certification

8.3.2.1.1 The application required in 8.3.1.2 shall include information on the expected maximum impact speed, maximum and minimum total loads, and complete data for the oil porting in relation to the effective buffer stroke.

8.3.2.1.2 The drawings required in 8.3.1.2.2(b) shall show

(*a*) the exact construction of the buffer

(*b*) all dimensions of each part

(*c*) all pertinent information concerning materials, clearances, and tolerances

(*d*) the data as marked on the buffer marking plate required by 2.22.4.11

8.3.2.2 Test Sample. Tests shall be made on a buffer of each type or design to be installed. Each buffer shall conform to the documents submitted and have the following oil portings:

(*a*) the porting having the range of the maximum loads for which the buffer is designed

(*b*) the porting having the range of the minimum loads for which the buffer is designed

8.3.2.3 Testing Equipment. The testing equipment shall be of such design as to perform the tests specified herein and to determine that the buffer conforms to all the requirements of 2.22 for oil buffers and shall also conform to 8.3.2.3.1 through 8.3.2.3.3.

8.3.2.3.1 Calibration of Test Weight. The required drop test load shall be accurate to within ±1%.

8.3.2.3.2 Guiding of Test Weight. The test weight shall be so guided as to ensure that when dropped onto the buffer, its travel shall be substantially vertical.

8.3.2.3.3 Test Instruments. The instruments used to measure the test results shall conform to the following requirements:

(*a*) The instruments shall be of the recording type.

(*b*) The instruments shall provide data, for the plotting of the buffer performance curves showing time intervals, travel of test weight, velocity of test weight, and retardation of test weight during the buffer stroke, that shall be accurate to within the following tolerances:

(*1*) The timing device shall record time in increments of not more than $\frac{1}{60}$ s during the entire buffer stroke.

(*2*) Time increments and total time shall be recorded with an error of less than ±0.5%.

(*3*) The position of the test weight at each time interval shall be recorded with an error of less than ±0.1%.

(*4*) Time, travel, velocity, and retardation shall be determined by means of a device that will provide the accuracy specified.

8.3.2.4 Installation of Buffer and Preparations for Tests

8.3.2.4.1 Foundation and Location of Buffer. A buffer of the spring-return type shall be placed on a foundation designed to withstand without appreciable deformation the forces resulting from the buffer compression on the drop tests. The buffer shall be installed in a vertical position and located centrally with relation to the drop-test weight.

8.3.2.4.2 Securing of Buffer. The buffer shall be secured by bolts in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings or by equivalent means to:

(*a*) the foundation for buffers of the spring-return type

(*b*) the underside of the center of the test drop-weight for buffers of the gravity-return type

The centerline of the buffer, when secured in place, shall be vertical to within 0.25 mm (0.01 in.) in the stroke of the buffer.

8.3.2.4.3 Special Adjustments. The buffer test shall be on a production model or a buffer identical to the model to be produced. Modifications or special adjustments for the purpose of meeting the test requirements are prohibited.

8.3.2.4.4 Filling Buffer With Oil. The buffer, after being installed, shall be filled with oil to a level at or between the manufacturer's gauge line or lines. The oil shall conform to 2.22.4.9 and the data specified on the buffer marking plate.

After filling with oil, the procedure outlined below shall be followed to ensure that a constant oil level has been established.

(a) The buffer shall be fully compressed at slow speed, and shall then be allowed to return to its fully extended position and remain there for at least 10 min. The oil level shall then be checked.

(b) If the oil level as previously determined has changed, due to the elimination of entrapped air or due to the retention of air under pressure within the buffer, the change in level shall be noted and the procedure repeated until a constant oil level is obtained when the buffer is in its extended position.

(c) If the oil level tends to remain above the level to which it was filled, the air vents, if provided, should be checked for obstructions.

(d) When a constant oil level has been established, the level shall be adjusted to the manufacturer's lowest gauge line, and the exact level noted and recorded before making the drop tests hereinafter specified.

8.3.2.5 Buffer Tests. Each oil buffer with oil portings as submitted shall be subjected to tests for retardation, strength, oil leakage, plunger return, and lateral plunger movement, as hereinafter specified.

8.3.2.5.1 Retardation Tests. The following drop tests shall be made for each buffer porting specified in 8.3.2.2, from a height such that the striking velocity of the falling weight will be equal to 115% of the rated car speed for which the buffer is designed:

(a) three drop tests with a total test weight equal to the manufacturer's rated maximum load for which the porting is designed [see 8.3.2.2(a)]

(b) one drop test with a total test weight equal to the manufacturer's rated minimum load for which the porting is designed [see 2.7.2.2]

Following each drop test, the buffer shall be held its fully compressed position for a period of 5 min, and shall then be allowed to return free to its fully extended position and stand for 30 min to permit return of the oil to the reservoir and to permit escape of any air entrained in the oil.

On each of these tests, the average retardation of the test weight, during the stroke of the buffer, shall not exceed 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2), and any retardation peak having a duration of more than 0.04 s shall not exceed 24.5 m/s^2 (80.5 ft/s^2).

On completion of the drop tests, no part of the buffer shall show any permanent deformation or injury.

8.3.2.5.2 Strength Tests

(a) Two drop tests shall be made as follows:

(1) One drop test shall be made with the porting as specified in 8.3.2.2(a), with a total test weight equal to 120% of the manufacturer's rated maximum load, from a height such that the maximum velocity attained by the falling weight during the buffer compression shall be equal to 125% of the rated car speed for which the buffer is rated. In this test, the retardation shall be noted and shall be permitted to exceed the values specified in 8.3.2.5.1.

Immediately following this test, the buffer shall be examined externally for visible deformation or injury. If no damage is apparent, the buffer shall then be fully compressed at low speed and then released to determine if it will return freely to its extended position.

(2) After the buffer has been examined externally and has returned freely to its extended position, a second drop test shall be made from the same height and with the same load as specified in 8.3.2.5.1(a). During this test, the retardation shall not exceed the corresponding retardation developed in the test specified in 8.3.2.5.1(a) by more than 5%.

(b) If for given stroke of buffer having more than one porting, the construction of the buffer varies for the different portings, then a strength test similar to that specified in 8.3.2.5.2(a)(1) shall also be made for the porting having the range at minimum loads for which the porting is designed as specified in 8.3.2.2(b).

Following each drop test, the buffer shall be held in its fully compressed position for a period of 5 min, and shall then be allowed to freely return to its fully extended position and stand for 30 min to permit return of the oil to the reservoir and to permit the escape of any air entrained in the oil.

8.3.2.5.3 Oil Leakage Tests. Tests for oil leakage shall be made concurrently with the retardation tests specified in 8.3.2.5.1, and the drop test specified in 8.3.2.5.2(a)(2), to determine the loss of oil during these tests. The oil level shall be noted after the buffer has returned to its fully extended position following each drop test, and after the time interval specified in 8.3.2.5.1.

The drop in oil level, as indicated by these measurements, shall show no loss of oil exceeding 5 mm/m (0.06 in./ft) of buffer stroke, but in no case shall the loss be such as to lower the oil level below the bottom of the plunger or below the highest metering orifice, whichever is higher.

Where the volume of oil above the porting is small when the buffer is filled to its normal working level, the laboratory shall be permitted to make additional tests for oil leakage.

8.3.2.5.4 Plunger Return Test. During the drop tests specified in 8.3.2.5.1 and 8.3.2.5.2, the time required for the buffer plunger to return to its fully extended position, measured from the instant the test weight is raised clear of the buffer until the plunger has returned to its fully extended position, shall be noted. This time shall be not more than 90 s.

Should the plunger fail to return to its fully extended position, or should the time required for it to return to its fully extended position exceed the time specified, the manufacturer shall either submit a duplicate buffer or install a new pressure cylinder and piston, following which the plunger-return test shall be repeated. Should the buffer again fail to meet the plunger-return test requirements, it shall be rejected.

Buffers of the spring-return type shall be tested for plunger return with a 20 kg (45 lb) test weight resting on top of the plunger during the test. The plunger shall be depressed 50 mm (2 in.) and when released, the plunger, while supporting the test weight, shall return to its fully extended position within 30 s.

8.3.2.5.5 Tests for Lateral Movement. The following tests shall be made for lateral movement.

(a) Spring-Return-Type Buffers. The lateral movement at the top of the fully extended plunger shall be accurately measured, the upper end of the plunger being moved by hand from its extreme right to its extreme left position. One-half of the total movement measured shall be considered as being the true lateral movement at the top of the plunger and shall not exceed 5 mm/m (0.06 in./ft) of buffer stroke.

(b) Gravity-Return-Type Buffers. A similar test for lateral movement shall be made. The measurement shall be taken at the lower end of the buffer cylinder when the buffer plunger is fully extended and braced to prevent lateral movement. One-half of the total movement measured shall not exceed 5 mm/m (0.06 in./ft) of buffer stroke.

8.3.2.6 Certification

8.3.2.6.1 After the buffer has been subjected to all of the specified tests, and all test records and data indicate that it conforms to 2.22, and to the requirements of 8.3.2, the laboratory shall issue a test report and a certificate to the manufacturer.

8.3.2.6.2 The certificate shall conform to 8.3.1.3.1 and shall include the following:

(a) the maximum impact speed

(b) the maximum total load

(c) the minimum total load

(d) specification of the fluid

(e) a statement to the effect that the buffer having the particular stroke and portings tested has met the requirements of 2.22 and 8.3.2 for the maximum and minimum loads as stated in the certificate

8.3.2.6.3 When the test results are not satisfactory with the minimum and maximum total loads appearing in the application, the laboratory shall be permitted to, in agreement with the applicant, establish the acceptable limits.

8.3.3 Type Tests of Interlocks, Combination Mechanical Locks and Electric Contacts, and Door or Gate Electric Contacts

8.3.3.1 General. This Section specifies the type test of hoistway door interlocks, car door interlocks, combination mechanical locks and electric contacts, and hoistway door and car door or gate electric contacts.

8.3.3.2 Examination Before Test. Prior to testing, the certifying organization shall examine each device submitted to ascertain that it conforms to the applicable requirements in Part 2.

8.3.3.3 General Requirements

8.3.3.3.1 Connections for and Test of Electrical Parts. During the tests specified by 8.3.3.4.1, 8.3.3.4.3, and 8.3.3.4.4, the devices shall have their electrical parts connected in a noninductive electrical circuit having a constant resistance and in which a current of twice the rated current at rated voltage is flowing. The electric circuit shall be closed, but shall not be broken at the contact within the device on each cycle of operation during the tests.

8.3.3.3.2 Retesting of Electric Contacts Previously Tested. If the electric contact of a device submitted for test has already been tested as part of another device, and has successfully met the test requirements (see 8.3.3), the electrical tests of the contact need not be repeated.

8.3.3.3.3 Tests of Retiring Cams or Equivalent Devices. Tests of retiring cams or equivalent devices used to operate interlocks shall not be required.

8.3.3.3.4 Tests of Hoistway Door (Runway Door) Combination Mechanical Locks and Electric Contacts. The testing equipment shall actuate the mechanical locking members of hoistway door (runway door) combination mechanical locks and electric contacts to unlock at each cycle of operation during the tests specified by 8.3.3.4.1, 8.3.3.4.3, and 8.3.3.4.4.

8.3.3.4 Required Tests and Procedure. Each device submitted shall be subjected to and shall successfully pass the following tests.

8.3.3.4.1 Endurance Test. The device, lubricated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, shall complete 960 000 cycles of operation without failure of any kind, without excessive wearing or loosening of parts, or without undue burning or pitting of the contacts (see 8.3.3.3.1). For private residence elevators the number of cycles shall be reduced to 25 000.

8.3.3.4.2 Current Interruption Test. After completion of the test specified by 8.3.3.4.1, the device used therein shall satisfactorily complete the following additional tests, to check that the ability to break a live circuit is adequate.

The tests shall be carried out with the locking device located in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings. If several positions are indicated, the test shall be made in the position that the laboratory judges to be the most unfavorable.

The sample tested shall be provided with covers and electrical wiring in accordance with the manufacturer's drawings.

(a) AC rated locking devices shall have their electrical parts connected to an inductive circuit with a power factor of 0.7 ± 0.05 in which a current of 11 times the rated current, at 110% of rated voltage, is flowing. The AC locking devices shall open and close 50 times, at normal speed, and at intervals of 5 s to 10 s, with the contact remaining closed for at least 0.5 s.

(b) DC rated locking devices shall have their electrical parts connected to an inductive circuit in which the current reaches 95% of the steady state value of 110% of the rated current in 0.3 s maximum, at 110% of rated voltage. The DC locking devices shall open and close 20 times, at normal speed, and at intervals of 5 s to 10 s, with the contact remaining closed for at least 0.5 s.

(c) The test results are considered satisfactory if no evidence of insulation breakdown due to arcing or tracking occurs and if no deterioration occurs that could adversely affect safety.

8.3.3.4.3 Test Without Lubricant. After completion of the test specified by 8.3.3.4.2, the device used therein shall be used for this test.

The device, except self-lubricating bearings and bearings of a type not requiring frequent replenishment of lubricant, shall then be taken apart and freed of lubricant by washing in nonflammable liquids having cleansing characteristics.

After reassembling, the device shall, without other than the usual initial adjustment (i.e., without adjustment especially made to meet the conditions of the particular test) and without further attention, complete 25 000 cycles or 20 000 cycles for private residence elevator of operation without failure of any kind, without excessive wearing or loosening of parts, and without undue burning or pitting of contacts.

8.3.3.4.4 Test in Moist Atmosphere. After completion of the test specified by 8.3.3.4.3, the device used therein shall be used for this test.

The device shall be subjected continuously, in an unventilated enclosure, to an atmosphere saturated with a range of 3.5% to 5% solution of sodium chloride for 72 consecutive hours. During this period, it shall be operated for only 10 consecutive cycles at the end of each of the first two 24 h periods and shall be allowed to stand exposed to the air for 24 h, and shall not fail in a manner that creates an unsafe condition.

The device shall again be lubricated and shall, without adjustment and without further attention, complete 15 000 cycles or 10 000 cycles for private residence elevator of operation without failure of any kind.

8.3.3.4.5 Misalignment Test

(a) All Types of Doors. The device shall operate effectively when the car cam or other equivalent operating device used in making the test has been displaced horizontally from its normal position (the position in which it was when the device was installed) successively as follows:

(1) in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(a) backward 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) forward 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(2) in a direction parallel to the plane of the door opening

(a) to the right 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) to the left 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) Horizontally Sliding Doors. The device shall operate effectively

(1) when the bottom of the door has been displaced horizontally from its normal position in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(a) backward 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(b) forward 6 mm (0.25 in.)

(2) when the top of the door has been displaced horizontally from its normal position in a direction perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(a) backward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(b) forward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(c) Swinging Doors. The device shall operate effectively when the strike edge of the door has been displaced

(1) perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(a) forward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(b) backward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(2) parallel to the plane of the door opening

(a) 3 mm (0.125 in.) to the right

(b) 3 mm (0.125 in.) to the left

(c) 3 mm (0.125 in.) up

(d) 3 mm (0.125 in.) down

(d) Vertically Sliding Doors. The device shall operate effectively when the door has been displaced

(1) perpendicular to the plane of the door opening

(a) forward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(b) backward 3 mm (0.125 in.)

(2) parallel to the plane of the door opening:

(a) 3 mm (0.125 in.) to the right

(b) 3 mm (0.125 in.) to the left

8.3.3.4.6 Insulation Test. The insulation of the electrical parts shall withstand a test with a root-mean square (effective) voltage of twice the rated voltage plus 1 000 V, 60 HZ, applied for 1 min.

8.3.3.4.7 Force and Movement Test. When testing devices of a type that are released by retiring cam (see

2.12.2.5), measurements shall be made of the force required to release the device and of the movement of the element engaged by the cam, with the device mounted in its normal position as specified by the manufacturer, before and after the test specified by 8.3.3.4.1.

The force and movement recorded in each test shall be, respectively

(a) the maximum force, measured in a horizontal plane, that must be applied to that member of the device that is directly actuated by the cam to release the door-locking member of the device from locking engagement

(b) the distance, projected on a horizontal plane, that the member of the device directly actuated by the cam travels from its position when the lock is fully engaged to its position when the locking member is released from engagement

The force and movement markings required by 2.12.4.3(f) shall be not less than the average of these recorded values.

8.3.3.4.8 Static Test. After completion of the endurance test in 8.3.3.4.1, a type test shall be made consisting of a static force applied over a period of 300 s with the force increasing incrementally. The force shall be applied in the opening direction of the door and at a location as near to the locking element as possible, but not to exceed 300 mm (12 in.). The force shall be 1 000 N (225 lb) in the case of a locking device intended for use with sliding doors, and 3 000 N (675 lb) or 670 N (150 lb) for private residence elevator applied at right angles to the panel evenly distributed over an area 5 cm^2 (0.78 $in.^2$) in round or square section in thecase of a locking device intended for use with swinging doors.

8.3.3.4.9 Examination of Electrical Spacings. The electrical spacings shall comply with CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5, Section 16.

8.3.3.4.10 Examination of Operation. Verify that there is at least 7 mm (0.28 in.) engagement of the locking elements before the hoistway door interlock contact closes.

8.3.3.4.11 Testing of Bridging Means. The electrical contact bridging means shall be tested to verify conformance to 2.12.2.4.1.

8.3.4 Entrance Fire Type Tests

8.3.4.1 Test of Entrance Assemblies, Horizontally Sliding and Swinging Types and Vertically Sliding Types

8.3.4.1.1 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the fire protection rating of entrances and doors shall be determined in accordance with the requirements specified in the NBCC. Requirement 8.3.4.1.2 does not apply.

8.3.4.1.2 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, test of elevator horizontal slide-type and swing-type entrance assemblies and tests of elevator and dumbwaiter vertical slide-type entrance assemblies shall be conducted in accordance with UL 10B, or NFPA 252.

Test entrance assemblies shall be constructed in accordance with 2.11.

8.3.5 Type Tests for Hydraulic Control Valves

8.3.5.1 Application for Certification. The application required in 8.3.1.2 shall include information regarding

(a) the component rated pressure

(b) the flow rating

(c) the fluid specification

(d) the operating temperature range of fluid

(e) the coil voltage and current

8.3.5.2 Test Sample. Tests shall be conducted on a representative sample in the sequence as stated in 8.3.5.3.

8.3.5.3 Test Procedure

8.3.5.3.1 Endurance Test. Test samples shall be subject to 100 000 operating cycles (100 000 up and 100 000 down) at the component rated pressure and within the fluid specifications and temperature range stipulated by the manufacturer. Each operating cycle shall be not less than 5 s nor more than 24 s.

8.3.5.3.2 Seat Leakage

(a) The hydraulic pressure shall be maintained at 1.5 times the component rated pressure for a period sufficient to establish the rate of leakage, but not less than 1 h nor more than 24 h. The test shall be started at the maximum stipulated fluid temperature for which the valve is designed. The fluid temperature shall be permitted to gradually decrease during the test to 20°C (68°F).

(b) The test shall be repeated using a pressure of 750 kPa (110 psi).

(c) Total leakage from output to input during either test shall not exceed the flow rate of the valve divided by one million.

8.3.5.3.3 External Leakage. The hydraulic pressure shall be maintained at twice the component rated pressure for a period of 10 min to establish the rate of leakage. The rate of leakage shall not exceed 10% of the rated flow of the valve.

8.3.5.3.4 Valve Body Strength Test. For elongations greater than or equal to 10%, the pressure chambers of the valve shall be subjected to a hydraulic pressure five times the component rated pressure.

For elongations of less than 10%, the test value shall be 1.5 times the value indicated by 8.2.8.5 multiplied by the component rated pressure.

To test the strength, this hydraulic pressure shall be maintained for a period of 5 min. During the test, the valve body shall not rupture.

NOTES (8.3.5.3.4):

(1) In order to obtain and maintain the test pressure, it is permissible to substitute alternate sealing material; and to tighten bolts during the test.

(2) It is not expected that the valve will be able to perform its function during or after the valve body strength test.

8.3.5.3.5 Electrical Test. Valves shall be tested to the electrical requirements of CSA C22.2 No. 139, Clause 6.

8.3.6 Escalator Brake Type Test

8.3.6.1 General. Where required by 6.1.5.3.3, escalators shall be subjected to such tests as are necessary to certify that

(a) the escalator brakes can be adjusted to conform to 6.1.5.3

(b) the relationship that exists between the range of brake settings and stopping distances complies with 6.1.5.3.1

8.3.6.2 Measuring the Stopping Distances. The stopping distance shall be measured by the movement of a step along its path of travel after a stop has been initiated.

8.3.6.3 Location of Tests. The tests shall be permitted to be made in the manufacturer's plant or on an escalator installation.

8.3.6.4 Extension of Type Test. Provided that design loads of the brake are not exceeded, it is permissible to simulate on the test escalator, by means of alternative loads, a number of heights and widths, for the purpose of certification of an escalator type (design), provided that those escalators for the additional widths and heights utilize the same motor and machine.

8.3.7 Vertical Burn Engineering Test

In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, napped, tufted, woven, looped, and similar materials [see 2.14.2.1.2(b)] shall be subjected to the engineering tests specified in 8.3.7.1 through 8.3.7.6.

8.3.7.1 Conditioning. Specimens shall be conditioned to 21°C ± 2°C (70°F ± 5°F) and at 50% ± 5% relative humidity until moisture equilibrium is reached, or for 24 h. Only one specimen at a time shall be removed from the conditioning environment immediately before subjecting it to the flame.

8.3.7.2 Specimen Configuration. Materials shall be tested either as a section cut from a fabricated part as installed in the car or as a specimen simulating a cut section, such as a specimen cut from a flat sheet of the material or a model of the fabricated part. The specimen shall be cut from any location in a fabricated part; however, fabricated units, such as sandwich panels, shall not be separated for test. The specimen shall be no thicker than the minimum thickness to be qualified for use in the car. In the case of fabrics, both the warp and fill direction of the weave shall be tested to determine the most critical flammability conditions. The specimen shall be mounted in a metal frame so that the two long edges and the upper edge are held securely. The exposed area of the specimen shall be at least 51 mm (2 in.) wide and 305 mm (12 in.) long, unless the actual size used in the car is smaller. The edge to which the burner flame is applied must not consist of the finished or protected edge of the specimen but shall be representative of the actual cross section of the material or part installed in the car.

8.3.7.3 Apparatus. Except as provided in 8.3.7.4, tests shall be conducted in a draft-free cabinet in accordance with FED-STD 191A, Method 5903.1, or other approved equivalent methods. Specimens that are too large for the cabinet shall be tested under similar draft-free conditions. **(ED)**

8.3.7.4 Test. A minimum of three specimens shall be tested and the results averaged. For fabric, the direction of weave corresponding to the most critical flammability conditions shall be parallel to the longest dimension. Each specimen shall be supported vertically. The specimen shall be exposed to a Bunsen or Tirrill burner with a nominal 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) I.D. tube adjusted to give a flame of 38 mm (1.5 in.) in height. The minimum flame temperature measured by a calibrated thermocouple pyrometer in the center of the flame shall be 840°C (1,545°F). The lower edge of the specimen must be 19 mm (0.75 in.) above the top edge of the burner.

The flame shall be applied to the centerline of the lower edge of the specimen. The flame shall be applied for 12 s and then removed. Flame time, burn length, and flaming time of drippings, if any, shall be recorded. The burn length determined in accordance with 8.3.7.5 shall be measured to the nearest 2.5 mm (0.1 in.).

8.3.7.5 Burn Length. Burn length is the distance from the original edge to the farthest evidence of damage to the test specimen due to flame impingement, including areas of partial or complete consumption, charring, or embrittlement, but not including areas sooted, stained, warped, or discolored, and not areas where material has shrunk or melted away from the heat source.

8.3.7.6 Acceptance Criteria

(a) The average burn length shall not exceed 203 mm (8 in.).

(b) The average flame time after removal of the flame source shall not exceed 15 s.

(c) Drippings from the test specimen shall not continue to flame for more than 5 s.

8.3.8 Test Method for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile Wall Covering

Textile wall covering shall be tested and meet the acceptance criteria of the NFPA 265, Fire Test for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile Wall Covering, when tested using the product mounting system, including adhesive, of actual use.

8.3.9 Engineering Tests for Hydraulic Overspeed Valves

8.3.9.1 General. The overspeed valve test shall be based on the marking required by 3.19.4.7.2 and specifications provided by the valve manufacturer.

8.3.9.2 Test Samples. Tests shall be conducted on a representative sample of the overspeed valve.

8.3.9.3 Test Procedure

8.3.9.3.1 Endurance Test. The test sample shall be subjected to 1 000 closing cycles at the component rated pressure, maximum flow rate, and within the fluid specifications and temperature range stipulated by the manufacturer. Additionally, the sample shall be subjected to 100 operating cycles at the minimum flow rate and pressure, to ensure range coverage.

8.3.9.3.2 Seat Leakage Test. The hydraulic pressure shall be maintained at 1.5 times the component rated pressure for a period sufficient to establish the rate of leakage, but not less than 1 h and not more than 24 h. Total leakage of the valve from input to output during the test period shall not exceed the flow rate of the valve divided by one million.

8.3.9.3.3 Valve Body Strength Test. For elongations greater than or equal to 10%, the valve shall be subjected to a hydraulic pressure 7.5 times the component rated pressure. For elongations of less than 10%, the test valve shall be 2.25 times the value indicated by 8.2.8.5 multiplied by the component rated pressure. The strength test for this hydraulic pressure shall be maintained for a period of 5 min. During the test, the valve body shall not rupture.

NOTES:
(1) In order to obtain and maintain the test pressure, it is permissible to substitute alternate sealing material; and tighten bolts during the test.
(2) It is not expected that the valve will be able to perform its function during or after the valve body strength test.

8.3.10 Engineering Tests: Safety Nut and Speed Limiting Devices of Screw-Column Elevators

8.3.10.1 General. This Section specifies the engineering tests of safety nuts and speed-limiting devices that are permitted as alternate safety devices on screw-column elevators driven by alternating current squirrel cage motors and having a down speed of not more than 0.38 m/s (75 ft/min).

8.3.10.2 Test of Safety Nut. The test shall be made in either the manufacturer's plant, in a testing laboratory, or in the field by suspending the elevator car with rated load a distance above the safety nut of at least 13 mm (0.5 in.) and allowing it to drop (free-fall) until the entire load rests on the safety nut. The test shall be witnessed by, and the test results certified by, a testing laboratory or registered professional engineer. After the test, the screw column, screw supports, safety nut, guide rails, and car frame shall be inspected to determine that there has been no damage. A test on a given capacity elevator shall be accepted for all similarly designed elevators by that manufacturer for the same or lesser capacity (rated load).

8.3.10.3 Test of Speed Limiting Device. The test shall be made either in the manufacturer's plant, in a testing laboratory, or in the field by suspending the elevator car with rated load a distance of at least 4 572 mm (15 ft) above the lower limit of normal travel and allowing it to drop (free-fall) until the descent is controlled by the speed-limiting device. The elevator car shall be allowed to continue its descent until brought to rest by the car buffer or bumper. The test shall be instrumented so that a graph of velocity versus distance can be plotted. The test shall be witnessed by, and the test results certified by, a testing laboratory or a registered professional engineer. After the test, the screw column, screw-column supports, speed-limiting device, guide rails, car buffer or bumper, and car frame shall be inspected to determine that there has been no damage. A test on a given capacity elevator shall be accepted for all similarly designed elevators by that manufacturer for the same or lesser capacity (rated load).

8.3.11 Step and Pallet Fatigue Engineering Test

Step fatigue tests required in 6.1.3.5.7 and pallet fatigue tests required by 6.2.3.5.4 shall be performed as indicated in 8.3.11.1 through 8.3.11.6.

8.3.11.1 The test shall be made at either the manufacturer's facility or at a testing laboratory.

8.3.11.2 Escalator steps shall be mounted in an arrangement that duplicates the conditions on the escalator incline and their attachment to the step chain. Moving walk pallets shall be mounted in an arrangement that duplicates the condition of a horizontal moving walk and their attachment to the pallet chain.

8.3.11.3 The steps shall be subjected to a load varying from 450 N (100 lbf) to 3 000 N (650 lbf) at a frequency of 10 Hz ± 5 for 5 000 000 cycles. An undisturbed harmonic force flow shall be achieved.

8.3.11.4 The load shall be applied normal to the tread surface to a plate 25 mm (1 in.) thick, 200 mm (8 in.) wide, and 300 mm (12 in.) long, located at the center of the step or pallet, with the 300 mm (12 in.) dimension in the direction of step travel.

8.3.11.5 The step or pallet shall have no fractures or permanent tread surface deflection exceeding 4 mm (0.16 in.) following the completion of the test. The deflection of 4 mm (0.16 in.) does not include any set or wear in the supporting wheels.

8.3.11.6 This test is to be performed on each step or pallet width.

SECTION 8.4 ELEVATOR SAFETY REQUIREMENTS FOR SEISMIC RISK ZONE 2 OR GREATER

Requirement 8.4 applies to all elevators with counterweights, and direct-plunger hydraulic elevators where applicable, where such elevators are installed in buildings that are designed and built to the requirements of, and located in, seismic risk zone 2 or greater as defined by the building code (see 3.1).

Where the applicable building code does not make reference to seismic risk zones, the ground motion parameters shown in 8.4.13 shall be used.

The elevator safety requirements contained in 8.4 shall be in addition to the requirements in the other parts of the Code unless otherwise specified.

8.4.1 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances

8.4.1.1 Between Car and Counterweight and Counterweight Screen. The following clearances shall supersede those specified in 2.5.1.2.

8.4.1.1.1 The clearance between the car and the counterweight assembly shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.), except that where the counterweight is enclosed by double U-brackets or where single U-brackets are provided and are located within the space between the car and its counterweight, the clearance shall be not less than 100 mm (4 in.).

8.4.1.1.2 The clearance between the counterweight assembly and the hoistway enclosure or separator beams shall be not less than 50 mm (2 in.).

8.4.1.1.3 The running clearance between the counterweight assembly and the nearest obstruction, including counterweight screens, shall be not less than 25 mm (1 in.).

8.4.2 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations

8.4.2.1 Beams and Supports. Overhead beams and supports including hitch-plate blocking beams shall be anchored to prevent overturning and displacement as a result of a seismic force acting in a horizontal direction of not less than that required to produce an acceleration of:

(a) gravity (zone 3 or greater)

(b) ½ gravity (zone 2)

8.4.2.2 Overhead Beams and Floors. Fastening devices including bolts used to secure machines, control panels, motor-generator units, machine beams, support beams, and sheaves, including compensating sheave assemblies, to the building structure shall conform to 8.4.2.3. Requirement 2.9.3.1.2 shall not apply in seismic risk zone 2 or greater.

8.4.2.3 Fastenings and Stresses

8.4.2.3.1 Fastening devices (except for guide-rail brackets, see 8.4.8.4) including bolts used to attach equipment to the supporting structure, which are of the rigid type or are not subject to impact loads, shall be designed to withstand seismic forces acting simultaneously of not less than those required to produce an acceleration of:

(a) gravity horizontally and ½ gravity vertically (zone 3 or greater); or

(b) ½ gravity horizontally and ¼ gravity vertically (zone 2).

8.4.2.3.2 Fastenings subject to impact loads shall be designed to withstand forces double those required for rigid fastenings.

8.4.2.3.3 Maximum combined stresses in fastenings and their parts due to the specified seismic forces shall not exceed 88% of the yield strength of the material used.

8.4.3 Guarding of Equipment

8.4.3.1 Rope Retainers

8.4.3.1.1 Rope retainers shall be provided on deflecting and secondary sheaves, driving machine sheaves and drums, compensating sheaves, governor sheaves, governor tension sheaves, and suspension sheaves on cars and counterweights to inhibit the displacement of ropes, except as specified in 8.4.3.1.4.

8.4.3.1.2 The retainer shall be continuous over not less than two-thirds of the arc of contact between the rope and its sheave or drum and shall be so located that not more than one-sixth of the arc of contact is exposed at each end of the retainer.

8.4.3.1.3 For double-wrap traction applications, the arc of contact for drums and secondary sheaves shall be that length of arc that is uninterrupted by the entry/exit of the ropes leading to/from the car or counterweight (see Fig. 8.4.3.1.3).

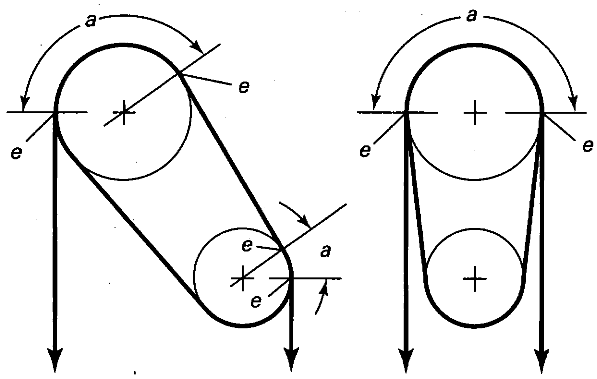
8.4.3.1.4 Rope restraints shall be permitted to be used in lieu of continuous guards, provided they conform to the following:

(a) Where the arc of contact is 30 deg or less and one rope restraint, located at the midpoint of the arc of contact, is provided.

(b) Where the arc of contact exceeds 30 deg and restraints are provided at intervals not exceeding 30 deg of arc along the arc of contact and a restraint is located at each end of the arc of contact.

8.4.3.2 Guarding of Snag Points. Snag points created by rail brackets, rail clip bolts, fishplates, vanes, and similar devices shall be provided with guards to prevent snagging of the following:

Fig. 8.4.3.1.3 Arc of Contact



a = uninterrupted arc length
e = main entry/exit points

(*a*) the counterweight end of compensating ropes or chains where located 760 mm (30 in.) or less from a counterweight rail bracket

(*b*) compensating chains where any portion of their loop below the mid-point of the elevator travel is located 915 mm (36 in.) or less horizontally from a snag point

(*c*) governor ropes where located 500 mm (20 in.) or less from a snag point

(*d*) suspension ropes where located 300 mm (12 in.) or less from a snag point

(*e*) traveling cables where any portion of their loop below the mid-point of the elevator travel is located 915 mm (36 in.) or less horizontally from a snag point

8.4.4 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

8.4.4.1 Top Emergency Exits

8.4.4.1.1 The requirements specified in 2.14.1.5 shall apply except that the emergency exit shall be so arranged that it can be opened from within the car by means of a keyed spring-return cylinder-type lock having not less than a five-pin or five-disk combination and opened from the top of the car without the use of a key.

The key required to open the emergency exit lock shall be kept on the premises in a location readily accessible to authorized persons, but not where it is available to the public. No other key to the building shall unlock the emergency exit lock except that where hoistway access switches conforming to 2.12.7 are provided, the key used to operate the access switches shall be permitted to also unlock the top emergency exit. This key shall be Group 1 Security (see 8.1).

8.4.4.1.2 The top emergency exit shall be provided with a car door electric contact conforming to 2.14.1.5.1(f) and so located as to be inaccessible from the inside of the car. The opening of the electrical contact shall limit the car speed to not more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min).

8.4.5 Car Frames and Platforms

8.4.5.1 Guiding Members and Position Restraints. Upper and lower position restraints attached to the car frame shall be provided. The distance between the upper and lower position restraints shall be not less than the height of the car frame. Separate position restraints are not required where such restraints are an integral part of the guiding member.

8.4.5.2 Design of Car Frames, Guiding Members, and Position Restraints

8.4.5.2.1 Position restraints and their attachments to car frames shall be designed to withstand a seismic force acting horizontally on the weight of the car plus 40% of its rated capacity of not less than that required to produce an acceleration of:

(*a*) $\frac{1}{2}$ gravity (zone 3 or greater)

(*b*) $\frac{1}{4}$ gravity (zone 2)

8.4.5.2.2 When the car is centrally located between its guide rails and the platform is level, the clearance between each running face of the guide rail and the position restraint shall not exceed 5 mm (0.187 in.) and the depth of engagement with the rail shall be not less than the dimension of the side running face of the rail.

8.4.6 Car and Counterweight Safeties

8.4.6.1 Compensating Rope Sheave Assembly. Where compensating ropes are used with a tension sheave assembly, means shall be provided to prevent the tension sheave assembly from being dislocated from its normal operating position when subjected to seismic forces acting either separately or simultaneously of not less than those required to produce an acceleration of:

(*a*) gravity horizontally and $\frac{1}{2}$ gravity vertically (zone 3 or greater)

(*b*) $\frac{1}{4}$ gravity horizontally and $\frac{1}{4}$ gravity vertically (zone 2)

Compensating rope sheaves shall be provided with a compensating rope sheaves switch or switches conforming to 2.26.2.3.

8.4.7 Counterweights

8.4.7.1 Design

8.4.7.1.1 The counterweight frame and its weight sections shall be so designed and arranged as to limit the guide-rail force at the lower position restraint to not more than two-thirds of the total seismic force due to the weight or effective weight of the counterweight assembly when it is subjected to a horizontal seismic force of not less than that required to produce an acceleration of:

(a) ½ gravity (zone 3 or greater)
(b) ¼ gravity (zone 2)

8.4.7.1.2 For counterweight assemblies with weight sections that occupy two-thirds or more of the frame height, 8.4.8.9 applies and Figs. 8.4.8.2-1 through 8.4.8.2-7 shall be permitted to be used in sizing the guide-rail system.

8.4.7.1.3 For counterweight assemblies with weight sections that occupy less than two-thirds of the frame height, the guide-rail force at the lower position restraint must be calculated. The effective weight, W_e, of the counterweight shall be calculated as shown in 8.4.7.1.3(a) and (b), or the adjusted weight of 8.4.8.2, whichever is greater, shall be used in conjunction with Figs. 8.4.8.2-1 through 8.4.8.2-7 in sizing the guide-rail system.

(a) three times calculated lower position restraint (zone 3 or greater)
(b) six times calculated lower position restraint (zone 2)

EXAMPLES:
(1) A 500 lb counterweight frame (12 ft long) with 8,500 lb of weight sections occupying two-thirds of the frame space height and using 15 lb guide rails may have (for zone 3 or greater) a 12.5 ft bracket spacing and no intermediate tie brackets.
(2) A 500 lb counterweight frame (12 ft long) with 8,500 lb of weight sections occupying one-fourth of the frame space height and using 15 lb guide rails will have (for zone 3 or greater) a lower position restraint force of approximately 3,844 lb. Using an effective weight of 11,532 lb in conjunction with Fig. 8.4.8.2-4 requires this ¼ full 9,000 lb counterweight assembly to use one intermediate tie bracket for the same 12.5 ft bracket spacing as selected in Example (1).

8.4.7.1.4 The clearance between the counterweight frame and the face of the counterweight guide rail measured at a point one-half the vertical distance between the upper and lower guiding members shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 in.).

8.4.7.2 Guiding Members and Position Restraints

8.4.7.2.1 Upper and lower position restraints attached to the counterweight frame shall be provided. The distance between the upper and lower position restraints shall be not less than the height of the counterweight frame. Separate position restraints are not required where such restraints are an integral part of guiding member.

8.4.7.2.2 Position restraints and their attachments to counterweight frames shall be designed to withstand a seismic force acting horizontally upon the counterweight assembly of not less than that required to produce an acceleration of:

(a) ½ gravity (zone 3 or greater)
(b) ¼ gravity (zone 2)

8.4.7.2.3 When the counterweight is centrally located between its guide rails, the clearance between each running face of the guide rail and the position restraint shall not exceed 5 mm (0.187 in.) and the depth of engagement with the rail shall be not less than the dimension of the side running face of the rail.

8.4.8 Car and Counterweight Guide Rail Systems

8.4.8.1 General. The car and counterweight guide-rail systems shall meet the requirements of 8.4.8 or the applicable requirements of 2.23 (excluding 2.23.4.3 and Table 2.23.4.3.3), whichever are more stringent.

8.4.8.2 Seismic Load Application

8.4.8.2.1 The weight of a car plus 40% of its rated capacity, or the weight of a counterweight, per pair of guide rails shall not exceed the maximums specified in Figs. 8.4.8.2-1 through 8.4.8.2-7 for the size of rail and the bracket spacing used.

8.4.8.2.2 Where the ratio of the distance between the upper and lower car or counterweight position restraints to the distance between adjacent brackets is 0.65 or less, an adjusted weight shall be used to determine the required rail size for the bracket spacing used. The adjusted weight shall be determined by multiplying the actual weight by a load factor Q obtained from Fig. 8.4.8.2-8 as follows:

$$W_a = QW$$

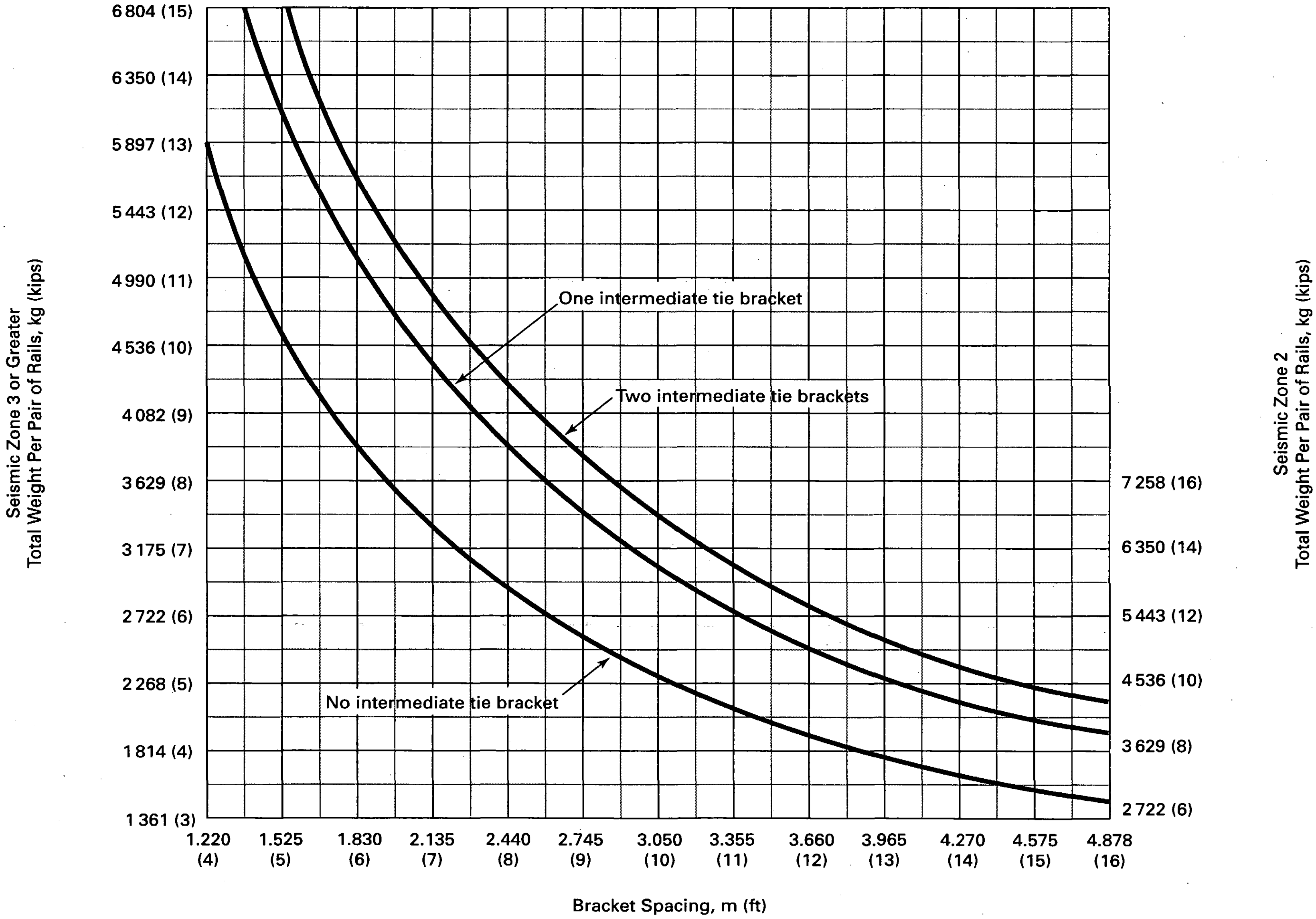
where
Q = load factor (see Fig. 8.4.8.2-8)
W = actual weight of the counterweight or of the car plus 40% of its rated capacity, kg (lb)
W_a = adjusted weight, kg (lb)

8.4.8.2.3 Where the guide rail is reinforced or a rail of larger size is used, the bracket spacing shall be permitted to exceed the values specified in Figs. 8.4.8.2-1 through 8.4.8.2-7 for a given car weight plus 40% of its rated capacity, or counterweight, provided the variation conforms to 8.4.12.

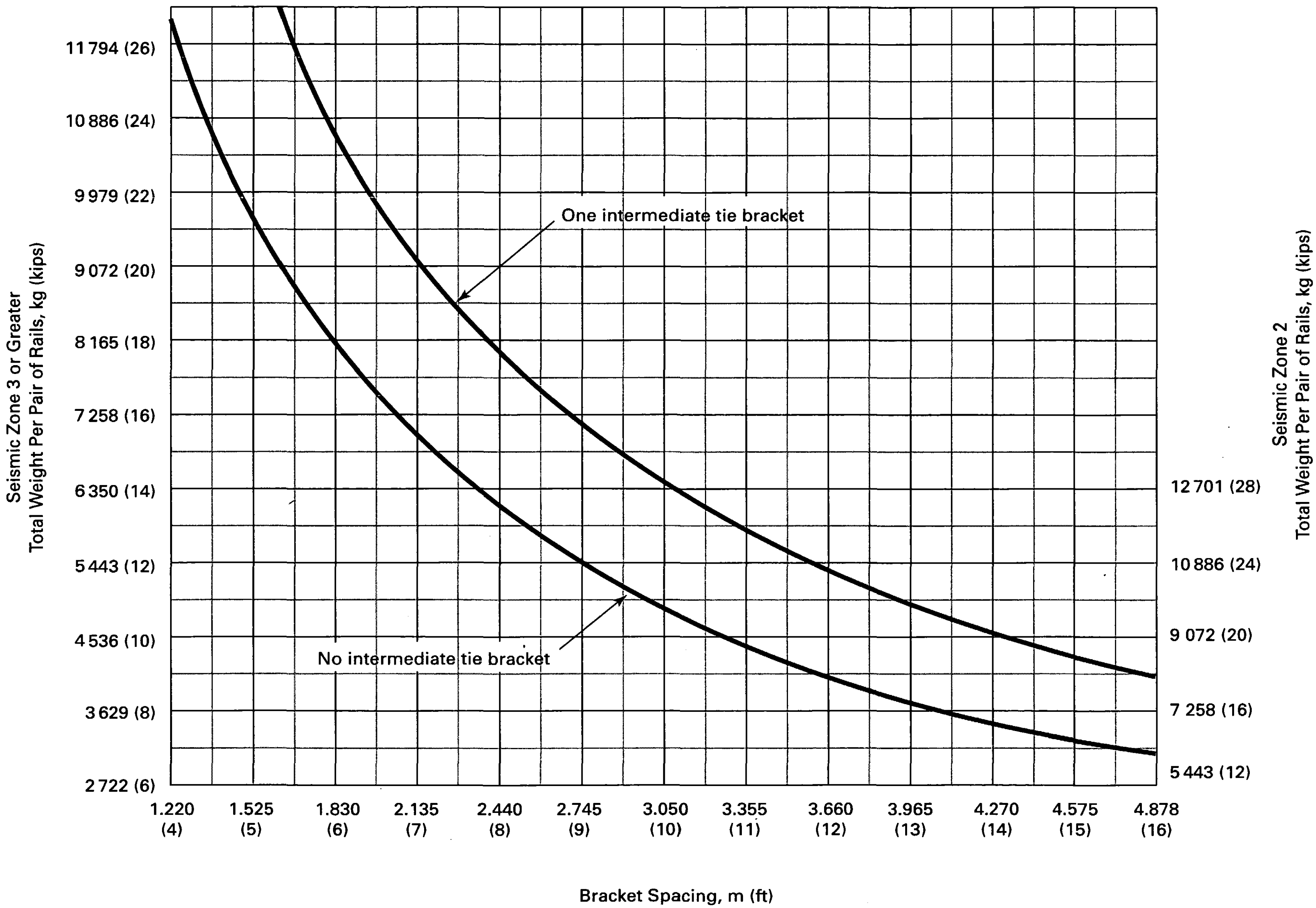
EXAMPLES:
(1) *SI Units.* 5 543 kg counterweight, or car weight plus 40% rated capacity, at a bracket spacing of 4.88 m requires for zone 3 or greater:
(a) a 27.5 kg/m rail without reinforcement; or
(b) a 22.5 kg/m rail with reinforcement having a combined moment of inertia of 3.33 E + 06 mm^4 and a combined section modulus of 5.26 E + 04 mm^3 about an axis parallel to the base (axis x-x).
(2) *Imperial Units.* 12,000 lb counterweight, or car weight plus 40% rated capacity, at a bracket spacing of 16 ft requires for zone 3 or greater:
(a) an 18.5 lb rail without reinforcement; or
(b) a 15 lb rail with reinforcement having a combined moment of inertia of 8 in.^{4} and a combined section modulus of 3.21 in.^{3} about an axis parallel to the base (axis x-x).

8.4.8.2.4 For counterweight systems, intermediate tie brackets conforming to 8.4.8.7 and approximately

Fig. 8.4.8.2-1 12 kg/m (8 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing



(07) **Fig. 8.4.8.2-2 16.5 kg/m (11 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing**



(07)

Fig. 8.4.8.2-3 18 kg/m (12 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

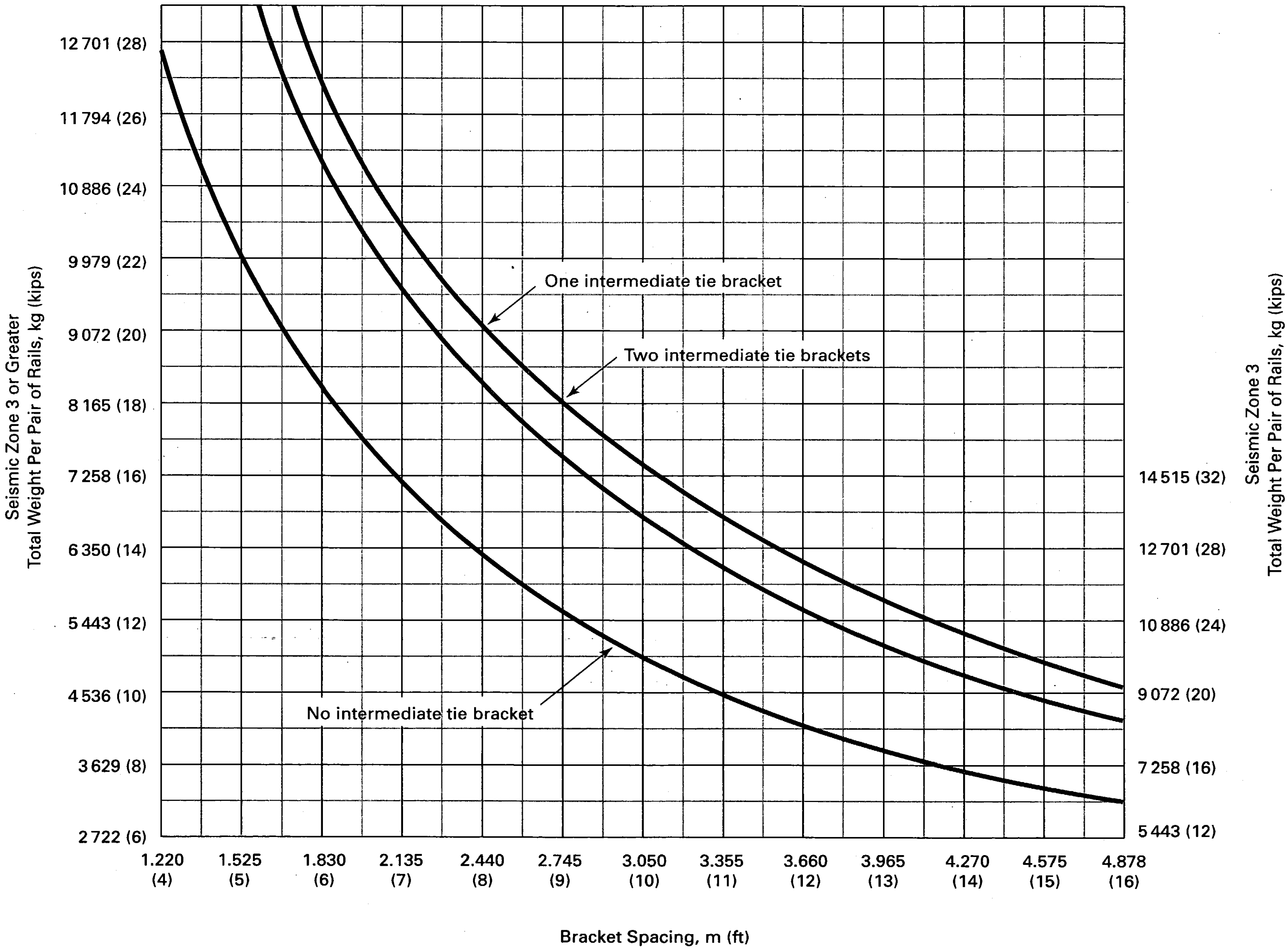


Fig. 8.4.8.2-4 22.5 kg/m (15 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing (07)

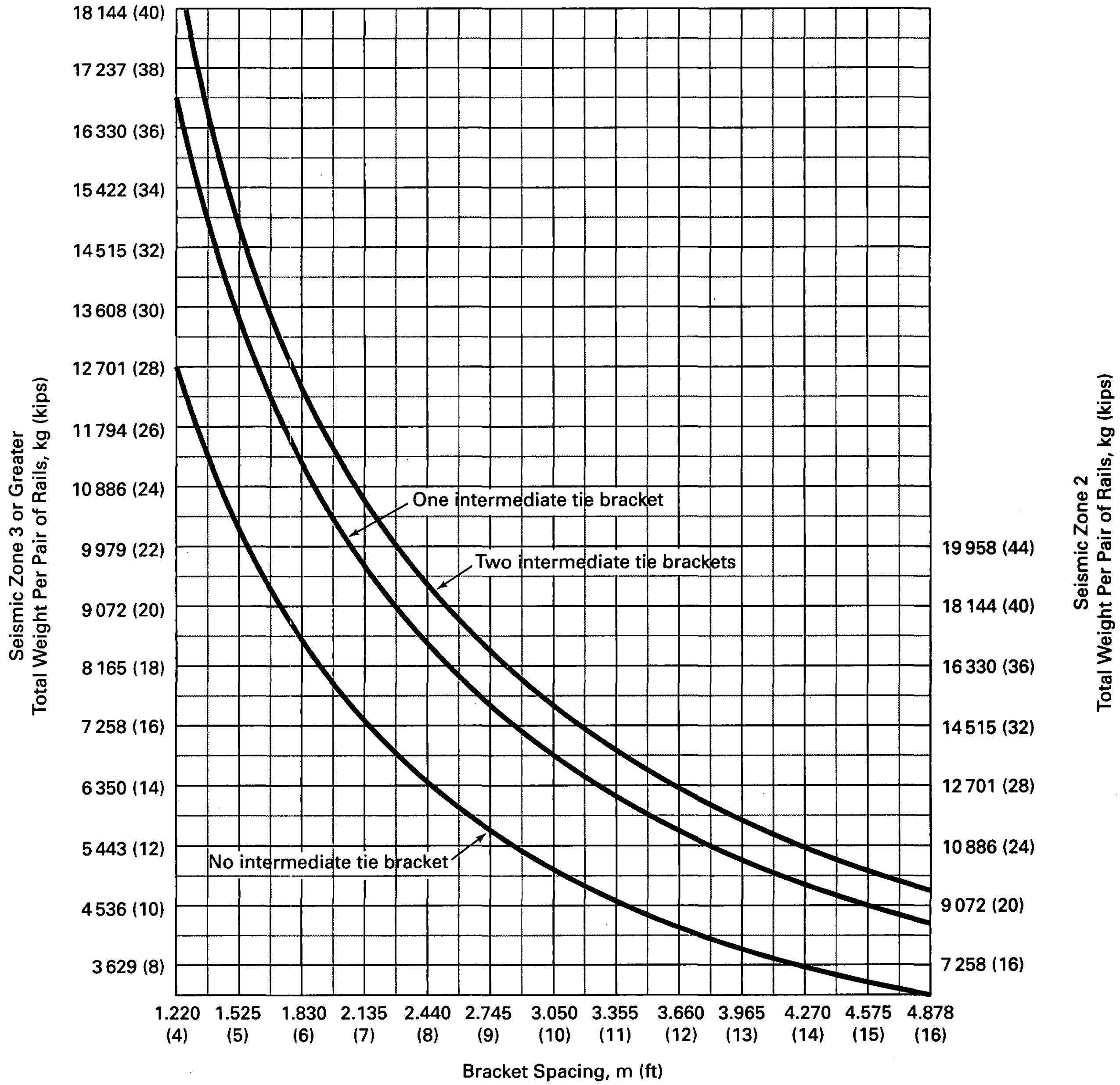


Fig. 8.4.8.2-5 27.5 kg/m (18.5 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

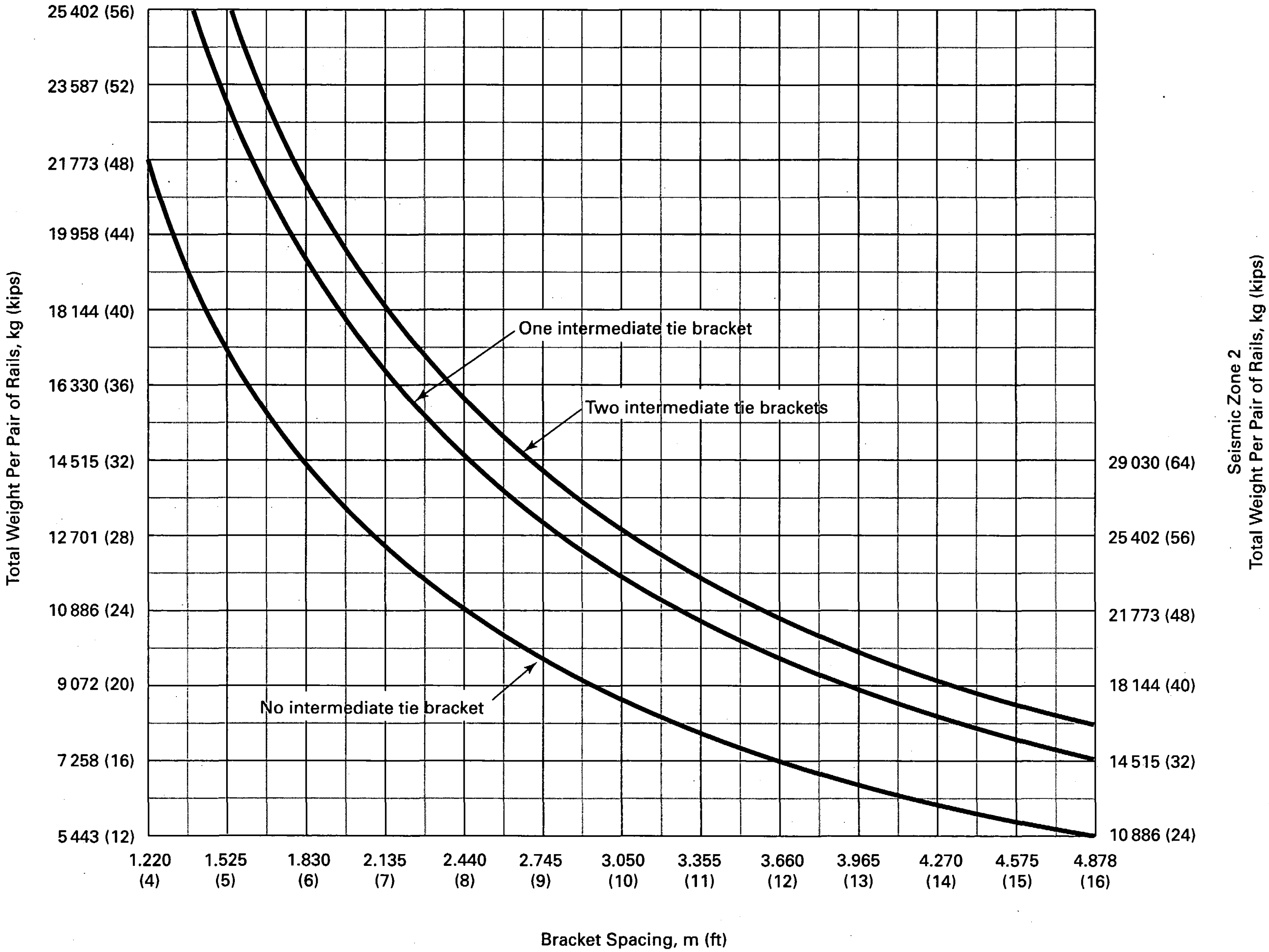
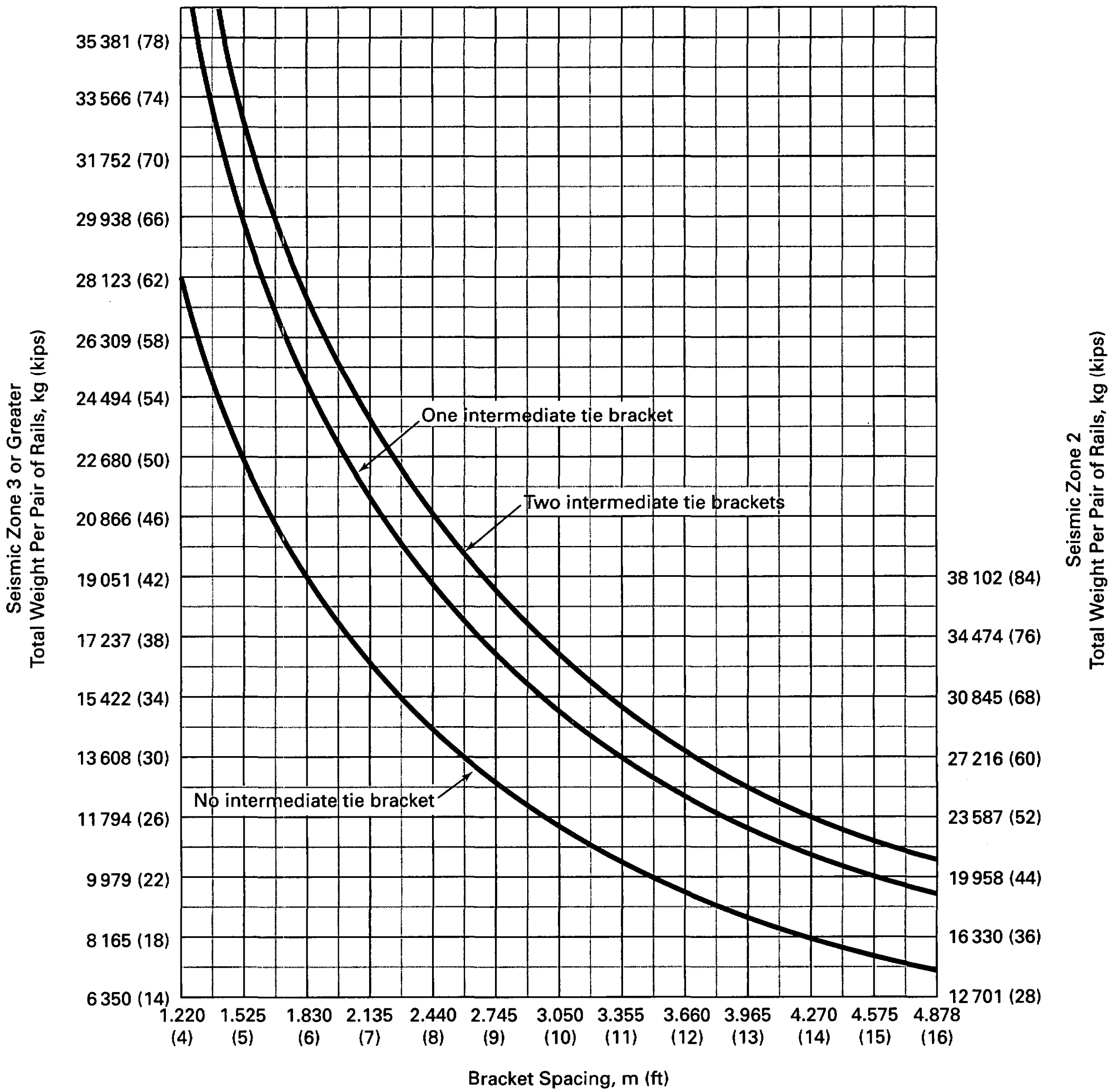


Fig. 8.4.8.2-6 33.5 kg/m (22.5 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing (07)



(07)

Fig. 8.4.8.2-7 44.5 kg/m (30 lb/ft) Guide-Rail Bracket Spacing

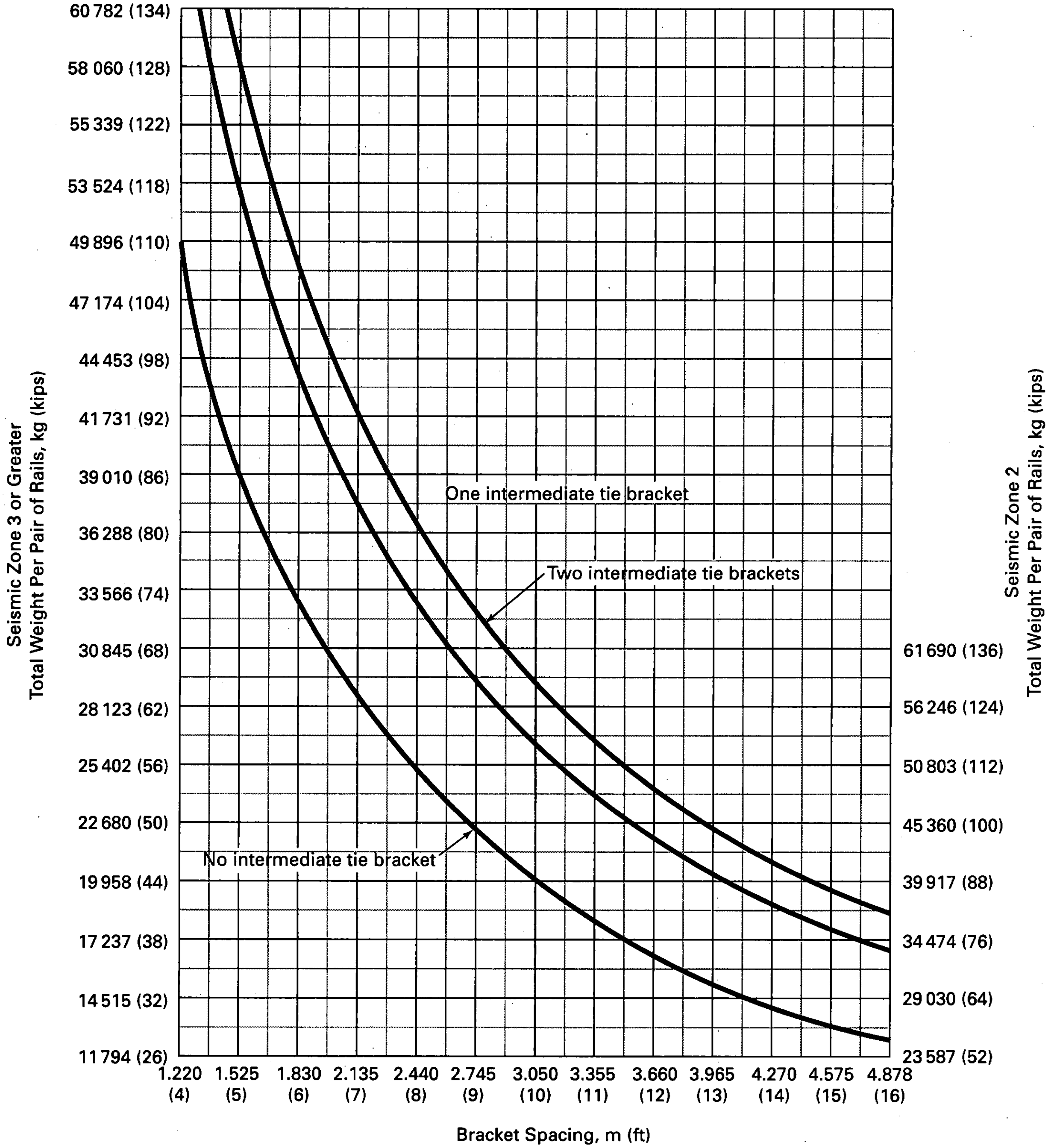
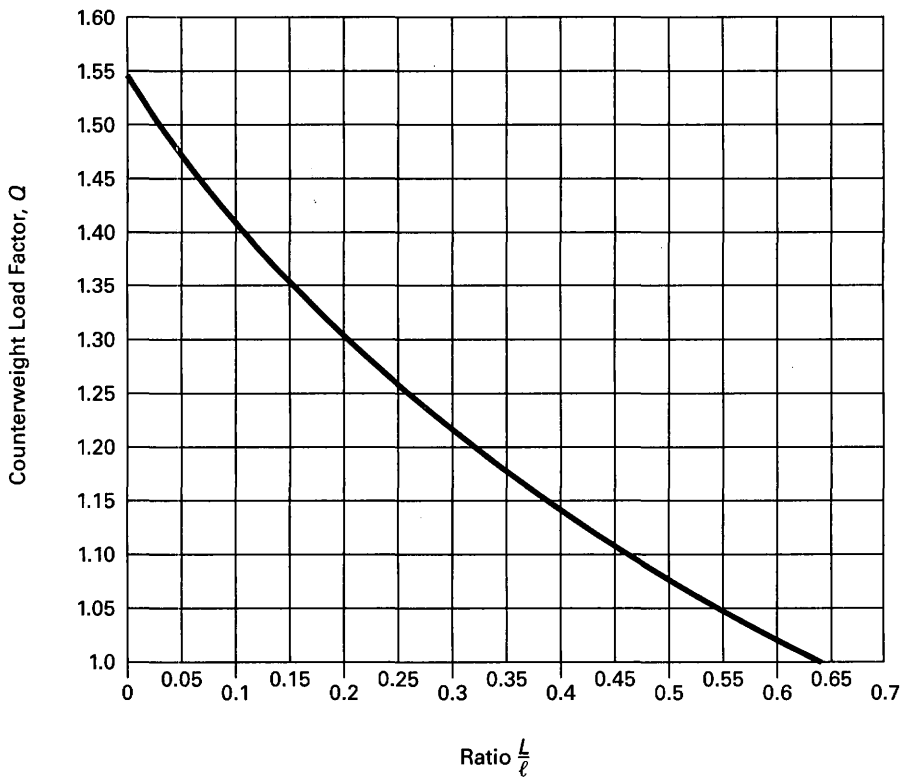


Fig. 8.4.8.2-8 Car and Counterweight Load Factor



L = distance between upper and lower counterweight position restraints, mm (in.)
ℓ = distance between guide brackets, mm (in.)
W = actual weight of counterweight, kg (lb)
W_a = adjusted weight of counterweight, kg (lb)

For ratios of $L/\ell < 0.65$, the adjusted counterweight $W_a = QW$ is to be used in determining bracket spacing and the number of intermediate tie brackets required.

EXAMPLE (Per 15 lb Guide Rail):
(SI Units)
For ratio $L/\ell = 0.15$, and actual weight of counterweight = 3 630 kg
$Q = 1.35$
$W_a = 1.35\ (3{,}630) = 4\,900$ kg
From Fig. 8.4.8.2-4 zone 3 or greater
Required bracket spacing = 3 200 mm (no tie bracket)
or = up to 4 215 mm (one tie bracket)
or = up to 4 675 mm (two tie brackets)

(Imperial Units)
For ratio $L/\ell = 0.15$, and actual weight of counterweight = 8,000 lb
$Q = 1.35$
W_a 1= 1.35 (8,000) = 10 800 kg
From Fig. 8.4.8.2-4 zone 3 or greater
Required bracket spacing = 10 ft 6 in. (no tie bracket)
or = up to 13 ft 10 in. (one tie bracket)
or = up to 15 ft 4 in. (two tie brackets)

equally spaced between main brackets shall be provided between guide rails as required by Figs. 8.4.8.2-1 through 8.4.8.2-7. Intermediate tie brackets are not required to be fastened to the building structure.

8.4.8.2.5 The total weight of the counterweight assembly shall not exceed the maximum specified in Table 2.23.4.3.1 for a given rail size.

8.4.8.3 Guide Rail Stress. The stresses in a guide rail, or in a rail and its reinforcement, due to seismic loads shall not exceed 88% of the minimum yield stress of the material used. Stress determinations shall be based upon a seismic force acting horizontally on the car plus 40% of its rated capacity, that required to produce an acceleration of:

(a) ½ gravity (zone 3 or greater); or

(b) ¼ gravity (zone 2).

8.4.8.4 Brackets, Fastenings, and Supports. Guide-rail brackets and their fastenings and supports, such as building beams and walls, shall be capable of withstanding the horizontal forces imposed by the seismic loads specified in Table 8.4.8.7, with a total deflection at the point of support not to exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.).

8.4.8.5 Type and Strength of Rail Joints. Metal guide rails shall be joined together by fishplates as specified in 8.4.8.6 and shall be designed to withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.1 and 8.4.8.3 without exceeding the stress and deflection limitations.

8.4.8.6 Design and Construction Rail Joints

8.4.8.6.1 The joints of metal guide rails shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) The ends of the rails shall be accurately machined with a tongue and matching groove centrally located in the web.

(b) The backs of the rail flanges shall be accurately machined, in relation to the rail guiding surfaces, to a uniform distance front to back of the rails to form a flat surface for the fishplates.

(c) The ends of each rail shall be bolted to the fishplates with not less than four bolts.

(d) The width of the fishplate shall be not less than the width of the back of the rail.

(e) The section modulus and the moment of inertia of the fishplate shall be not less than that of the rail.

(f) The diameter of the bolts for each size of guide rails shall be not less than specified in Table 2.23.7.2.1.

(g) The diameter of bolt holes shall not exceed the diameter of the bolts by more than 2 mm (0.08 in.) for guide rails nor 3 mm (0.125 in.) for fishplates.

(h) The threaded portion of the bolts shall not occur in the shear plane of the guide-rail fishplate assembly.

8.4.8.6.2 Joints of different design and construction to those specified shall be permitted to be used, provided they are equivalent in strength and will adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment.

8.4.8.7 Design and Strength of Brackets and Supports. Guide-rail brackets including intermediate tie brackets, where provided, shall be designed to withstand the forces imposed by the car plus 40% of its rated load, or the counterweight, when subjected to a seismic force of not less than that required to produce an acceleration of

(a) ½ gravity horizontally (zone 3 or greater)

(b) ¼ gravity horizontally (zone 2)

The stresses and deflections shall not exceed those specified in Table 8.4.8.7.

NOTE (8.4.8.7): Since the specific designs of the rail brackets, their reinforcements where provided, and the method of attachment to the building structure will vary between designs, the maximum stresses and deflections shall be analyzed to suit the specific design.

8.4.8.8 Type of Fastenings. Guide rails shall be secured to their brackets by clips, welds, or bolts. Bolts used for fastening shall be of such strength as to withstand the forces specified in 2.23.5.2 and 2.23.9.1, plus 8.4.8.4 and 8.4.8.7.

Welding, where used, shall conform to 2.15.7.3.

8.4.8.9 Information on Elevator Layouts. The following information regarding horizontal seismic forces imposed on the guide-rail faces by the lower position restraints of the car or counterweight is required on elevator layout drawings. The forces are to be determined as specified in 8.4.8.9.1 and 8.4.8.9.2 (see Fig. 8.4.8.9).

8.4.8.9.1 Force normal to the x-x axis of the guide rail:

(a) Where $L \geq \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7):

(SI Units)

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{3}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{6}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = \frac{W}{3} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = \frac{W}{6} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

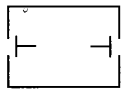
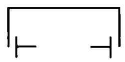
(b) Where $L < \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7):

(SI Units)

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{2}\right)\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{4}\right)\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

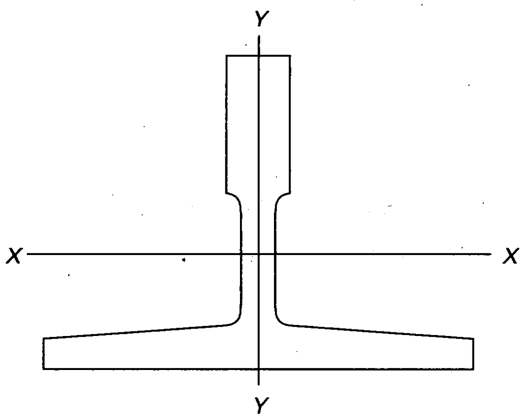
Table 8.4.8.7 Stresses and Deflections of Guide-Rail Brackets and Supports

Guide-Rail Bracket	L	Bracket Type	Vertical Location	Typical Figure	Bracket Moment of Inertia, mm^4 (in.^{4})	Zone ≥ 3 Bracket Design Load, P [Notes (1) and (2)]: N	Zone ≥ 3 Bracket Design Load, P [Notes (1) and (2)]: lb	Allowable: Bend Stress, MPa (psi)	Allowable: Deflection, mm (in.)
Main (car and counterweight)	≥ Rail span ℓ	Any	Building supports	. . .	. . .	$9.807\left(\frac{W}{3}\right)$	$\frac{W}{3}$	$0.88Fyp$	2.54 (0.10)
	< Rail span ℓ					$9.807\,\frac{W}{2}\left[1-\frac{L}{3\ell}\right]$	$\frac{W}{2}\left[1-\frac{L}{3\ell}\right]$		
Intermediate tie (counter-weight)	. . .	Double "U" bracket	Mid-span		I_d	$9.807\left(\frac{W}{6}\right)$	$\frac{W}{6}$		. . .
			⅓ span						
		Single "U" bracket	Mid-span		$2I_d$				
			⅓ span						

F_{yp} = minimum yield stress of material, MPa (psi)
I_d = moment of inertia of single "U" intermediate, tie bracket, mm^4 (in.^{4}), in a double "U" bracket arrangement
L = vertical distance between the upper and lower position restraints required by 8.4.5.1 and 8.4.7.2, mm (in.)
e = distance (rail span) between adjacent main guide rail brackets mm (in.)
W = maximum weight of car with 40% rated cpacity or counterweight, kg (lb)
P = horizontal seismic load, N (lb)

NOTES:
(1) For hydraulic elevator main bracket design load (car) add ¼ the weight of the plunger (zone 3 or greater).
(2) For Zone 2, multiply design load "P" by 0.5.

Fig. 8.4.8.9 Guide-Rail Axes



(Imperial Units)

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = \frac{W}{2}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) \quad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = \frac{W}{4}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) \quad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

8.4.8.9.2 Where normal to the y-y axis:

(a) Where $L \geq \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7):

(SI Units)

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{6}\right) \quad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{12}\right) \quad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = \frac{W}{6} \quad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = \frac{W}{12} \quad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(b) Where $L < \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7):

(SI Units)

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{4}\right)\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) \quad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{8}\right)\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) \quad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = \frac{W}{4}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) \quad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = \frac{W}{8}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) \quad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

where

F = seismic force, N (lbf)

W = total weight of car plus 40% of its rated load, or the total weight of the counterweight, kg (lb)

8.4.9 Driving Machines and Sheaves

8.4.9.1 Seismic Requirements for Driving Machine and Sheaves. All integral parts of driving machines together with their supports shall be capable of withstanding the inertia effect of their masses without permanent deformation when subjected seismic forces acting separately of not less than those required to produce an acceleration of

(a) gravity horizontally and ½ gravity vertically (zone 3 or greater)

(b) ½ gravity horizontally and ¼ gravity vertically (zone 2)

8.4.10 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices

8.4.10.1 Operation of Elevators Under Earthquake Emergency Conditions. Earthquake emergency operation shall be provided for seismic risk zone 2 or greater conforming to 8.4.10.

Earthquake emergency operation is not required for risk zone 2, provided the car and counterweight guide-rail systems, guiding members, and position restraints conform to the requirements for zone 3 or greater in 8.4.5, 8.4.7, and 8.4.8.

8.4.10.1.1 Earthquake Equipment (See Also Fig. 8.4.10.1.1)

(a) All traction elevators operating at a rated speed of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) or more and having counterweights located in the same hoistway shall be provided with the following:

(1) seismic zone 3 or greater: a minimum of one seismic switch per building

(2) seismic zone 2 or greater:

(a) a displacement switch for each elevator

(b) an identified momentary reset button or switch for each elevator, located in the control panel in the elevator machine room [see 8.4.10.1.3(i)]

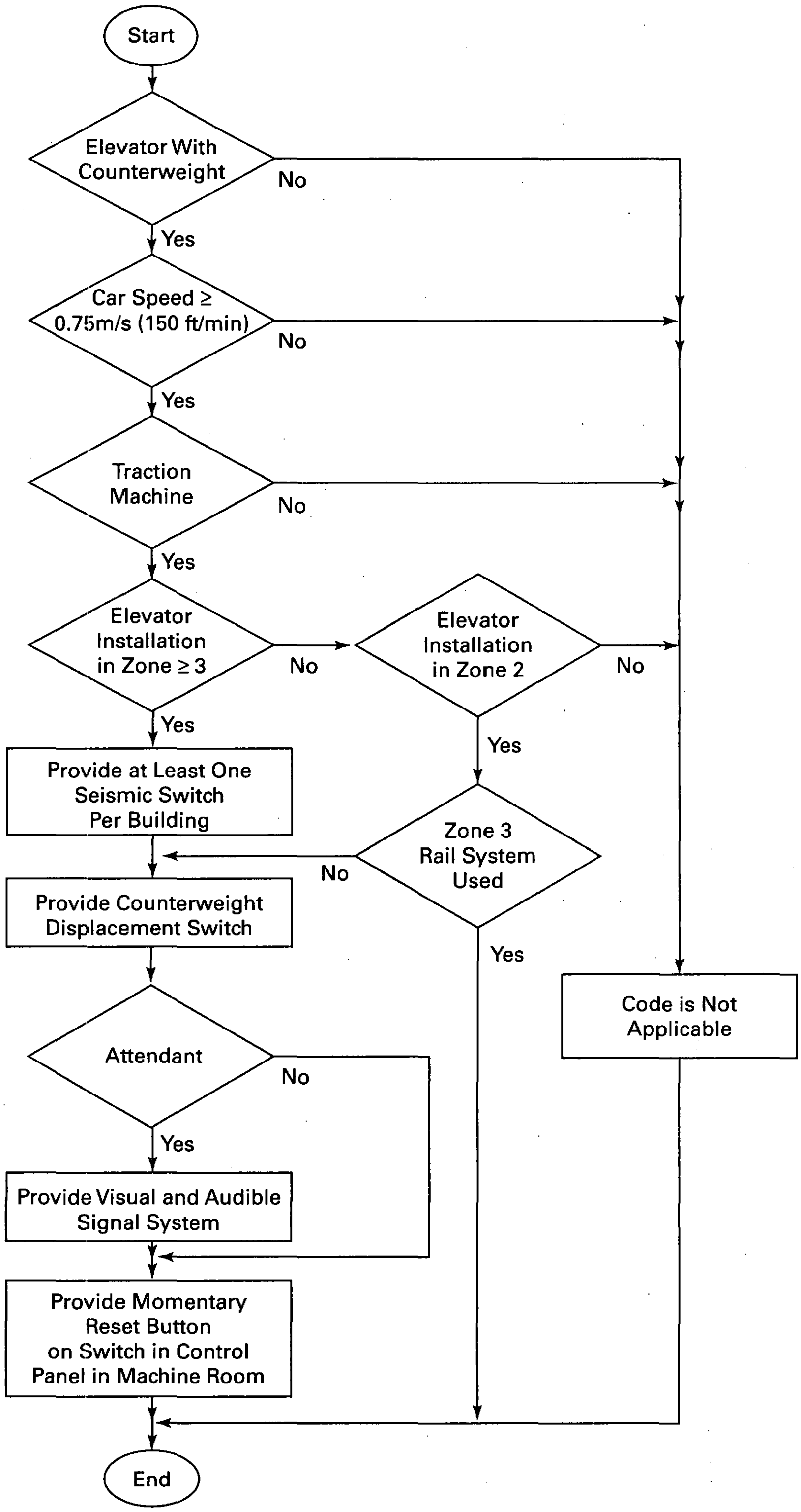
(b) For attendant-operated elevators and automatic elevators on designated attendant service, a signal system consisting of both visual and audible types activated by either the seismic switch or the displacement switch shall be provided to alert the attendant that the car is under earthquake emergency control and that the attendant is to return the car to the nearest available floor. The audible signal required by 2.27.3.1.6(h) shall be permitted to be used for this purpose in lieu of a separate audible signal.

8.4.10.1.2 Equipment Specifications

(a) Earthquake protective devices shall be of the fail-safe type.

(b) Seismic switch shall activate upon excitation in a vertical direction of not more than 0.15 times gravity acceleration, 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/s^2). The frequency

Fig. 8.4.10.1.1 Earthquake Elevator Equipment Requirements Diagrammatic Representation



response of the switch shall be 1 Hz to 10 Hz.

Where the seismic switch is used exclusively to control the elevators, it shall be located in the elevator machine room and, where possible, shall be mounted adjacent to a vertical load-bearing building structural member.

(c) A displacement switch shall be activated by the derailment of the counterweight at any point in the hoistway to provide information to the control system that the counterweight has left its guides.

(d) Earthquake protective devices with exposed live electrical parts in the hoistway shall operate at not more than 24 V root mean square alternating current or 24 V direct current above or below ground potential and shall not be capable of supplying more than 0.5 A when short-circuited.

8.4.10.1.3 Elevator Operation (See Fig. 8.4.10.1.3)

(a) Upon activation of a seismic switch, all elevators with traction machines, counterweights, and selective, collective, or group automatic operation that are in motion shall proceed to the nearest available floor, open their doors, and shut down; except that where Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation is in effect, door operation shall conform to 2.27.3.3.

(b) When the counterweight displacement switch is activated, the elevator, if in motion, shall initiate an emergency stop and then proceed away from the counterweight at a speed of not more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) to the nearest available floor, open the doors, and shut down; except that where Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation is in effect, door operation shall conform to 2.27.3.3.

(c) Elevators with power-operated doors, upon reaching a landing shall cause their doors to open and remain open; except that where Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation is in effect, door operation shall conform to 2.27.3.3.

(d) Upon activation of an earthquake protective device, an elevator standing at a floor with its doors open shall remain at the floor. If its doors are closed, it shall open its doors. Where Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation is in effect, door operation shall conform to 2.27.3.3.

(e) An elevator not in operation when an earthquake protective device is activated shall remain at the landing.

(f) An elevator shall be permitted to be operated at a speed of not more than 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min), provided the counterweight displacement switch is of the continuously monitoring type and is not activated.

(g) Continuous activation of a displacement switch shall

(1) prevent operation of the car, except from the inspection station located on top of the car

(2) prevent operation of the car by means of the emergency service key described in 2.27.3.1 and 2.27.3.3, hospital emergency service key, and other similar types of operation

(h) Elevators stopped by an earthquake protective device with a volatile-type memory shall remain idle in the event of a power failure. Subsequent restoration of power shall not cancel the status of the earthquake protective devices nor the slow speed status of the elevator system if such existed prior to the loss of power.

(i) An elevator shall be permitted to be returned to normal service by means of the momentary reset button or switch [see 8.4.10.1.1(a)(2)], provided the displacement switch is not activated.

(j) Electrical protective devices required by 2.26.2 shall not be rendered inoperative nor bypassed by earthquake protective devices

8.4.10.1.4 Maintenance of Equipment. Earthquake protective devices shall be arranged to be checked for satisfactory operation and shall be calibrated at intervals specified by the manufacturer.

8.4.11 Hydraulic Elevators

8.4.11.1 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Where buildings are designed with expansion joints, the machine room and the hoistway shall be located on the same side of an expansion joint.

8.4.11.2 Overspeed Valve and Plunger Gripper. **(07)**
Hydraulic elevators not provided with car safeties complying with 3.17.2 shall be provided with

(a) an overspeed valve(s) conforming to 3.19.4.7, or

(b) a plunger gripper(s) conforming to 3.17.3, except as modified by 8.4.11.2(b)(1) and (2).

(1) Requirement 3.17.3.2 applies as modified. The primary actuation shall be mechanical or hydraulic. Electrical means are permitted as a secondary actuation means.

(2) The plunger gripper shall be capable of withstanding inertia effects of the elevator masses without operational failure when subjected to seismic forces acting separately, of not less than those required to produce an acceleration as follows:

(a) for Zone 3 or greater

(1) gravity horizontally acting on the mass of the plunger

(2) ½ gravity vertically acting on the mass of the plunger with the mass of the car at rated load

(b) for Zone 2

(1) ½ gravity horizontally acting on the mass of the plunger

(2) ¼ gravity vertically acting on the mass of the plunger with the mass of the car at rated load

8.4.11.3 Pipe Supports. Piping supports to restrain transverse motion shall be provided near changes in direction and particularly near valves and joints and shall comply with 8.4.2.3.

Horizontal spans shall be supported at intervals not to exceed those specified in Table 8.4.11.3.

Fig. 8.4.10.1.3 Earthquake Emergency Operation Diagrammatic Representation

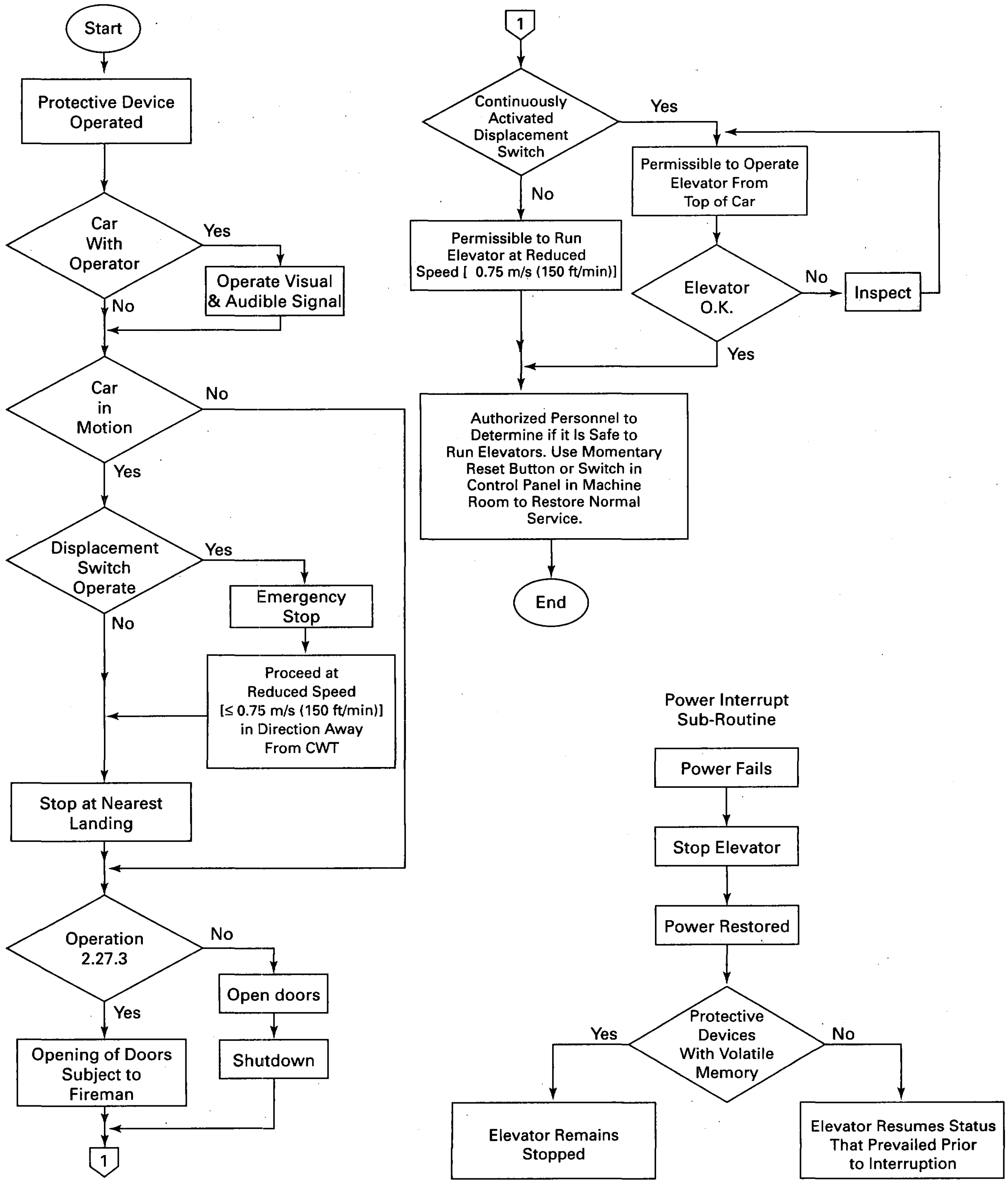


Table 8.4.11.3 Pipe Support Spacing

Nominal Pipe Size, in.	Maximum Spacing Between Supports, mm (in.)
1.0	1 525 (60)
1.5	2 300 (90)
2.0	2 600 (102)
2.5	2 750 (108)
3.0	3 000 (120)
4.0	3 500 (138)

(a) Spacing is based on a natural frequency limit of 20 Hz. The pipe is presumed to have oil in it and, for an added margin of safety, the oil is assumed to weigh 900 kg/m^3 (56 lb/ft^3) at 15.6°C (60°F).

(b) Maximum combined bending and shear stress is limited to 71.8 kPa (1,500 psi).

(c) Maximum sag at the center of the span is limited to 2.5 mm (0.1 in.).

(d) For pipe sizes other than shown, the maximum spacing between supports shall be determined by the following formula:

(SI Units)

$$\ell = 0.01163\left(\frac{EI}{9.807W}\right)^{1/4}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$\ell = 0.192\left(\frac{EI}{W}\right)^{1/4}$$

where

E = modulus of elasticity for steel [2,068 × 10^6 MPa (30 × 10^6 psi)]

I = moment of inertia or pipe, mm^4 ($in.^4$)

ℓ = maximum spacing between supports, m (ft)

W = weight per foot of pipe with oil at 15.6°C (60°F), kg/m (lb/ft)

$$0.192 = constant = \left[\frac{\pi}{40}\left(\frac{32.2}{144}\right)^{1/2}\right]^{1/2}$$

8.4.11.4 Counterweights. Where counterweights are provided, they shall conform to 8.4.7.

8.4.11.5 Guide Rails, Guide-Rail Supports, and Fastenings. Guide rails, guide-rail supports, and their fastenings shall conform to the following, whichever is more restrictive:

(a) Where car safeties are provided, 3.17.2 shall apply.

(b) Seismic load application:

(1) Requirement 8.4.8 shall apply.

(2) The load on the car side of direct-plunger hydraulic elevators shall be as determined by 8.4.8.3(a) and (b).

(3) Requirement 8.4.8.9 shall not apply.

8.4.11.6 Support of Tanks. Means shall be provided to prevent the tank from being overturned or displaced. Such means shall comply with 8.4.2.3.

8.4.11.7 Information on Elevator Layouts. The following information regarding horizontal seismic forces imposed on the guide-rail faces by the lower position restraints of the car or counterweight is required on elevator layout drawings. The forces are to be determined as specified in 8.4.11.7.1 and 8.4.11.7.2.

8.4.11.7.1 Force normal to x-x axis of the rail (see 8.4.8.9):

(a) Where $L \geq \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7):

(SI Units)

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{3} + \frac{W_p}{4}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{6} + \frac{W_p}{8}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = \frac{W}{3} + \frac{W_p}{4} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = \frac{W}{6} + \frac{W_p}{8} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(b) Where $L < \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7):

(SI Units)

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = 9.807\left[\frac{W}{2}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) + \frac{W_p}{4}\right] \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = 9.807\left[\frac{W}{4}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) + \frac{W_p}{8}\right] \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = \frac{W}{2}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) + \frac{W_p}{4} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{x\text{-}x} = \frac{W}{4}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) + \frac{W_p}{8} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

8.4.11.7.2 Force normal to y-y axis of the rail (see 8.4.8.9):

(a) Where $L \geq \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7):

(SI Units)

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{6} + \frac{W_p}{8}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = 9.807\left(\frac{W}{12} + \frac{W_p}{16}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = \frac{W}{6} + \frac{W_p}{8} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = \frac{W}{12} + \frac{W_p}{16} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(b) Where $L < \ell$ (see Table 8.4.8.7):

(SI Units)

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = 9.807\left[\frac{W}{4}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) + \frac{W_p}{8}\right] \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = 9.807\left[\frac{W}{8}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) + \frac{W_p}{16}\right] \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = \frac{W}{4}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) + \frac{W_p}{8} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$F_{y\text{-}y} = \frac{W}{8}\left(1 - \frac{L}{3\ell}\right) + \frac{W_p}{16} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

where

F = seismic force, N (lbf)

W = total weight of car plus 40% of rated capacity kg (lb)

W_p = plunger weight, kg (lb)

Where counterweights are provided, the horizontal seismic forces imposed on the guide rails by the lower position restraints shall be determined by the formulas in 8.4.8.9.1 and 8.4.8.9.2.

8.4.12 Design Data and Formulas for Elevators

8.4.12.1 Maximum Weight Per Pair of Guide Rails. The following formulas shall be used to determine the maximum allowable weight per pair of guide rails.

8.4.12.1.1 Force Normal to *x-x* Axis of Rail (See 8.4.8.9)

(a) No intermediate tie brackets (car and counterweight rails):

(1) Traction elevators (or hydraulic elevator counterweight rails, where provided):

(SI Units)

$$W = 504.5\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 1\,009\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 717{,}671\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 1{,}435{,}342\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(2) Hydraulic elevators (car guide rails only):

(SI Units)

$$W' = 168\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W' = 239{,}224\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell}$$

where

$$W' = \frac{W}{3} + \frac{W_p}{4} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W' = \frac{W}{6} + \frac{W_p}{8} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(b) One intermediate tie bracket located midway between main counterweighted guide-rail brackets:

(SI Units)

$$W = 669\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 1\,338\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 951{,}991\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 1{,}903{,}982\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(c) Two intermediate tie brackets approximately equally spaced between main counterweighted guide-rail brackets:

(SI Units)

$$W = 740.6\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 1\,481\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 1{,}053{,}495\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 2{,}106{,}990\,\frac{Z_x}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

8.4.12.1.2 Force Normal to *y-y* Axis of Rail (See 8.4.8.9)

(a) No intermediate tie brackets (car and counterweight rails):

(1) Traction elevators (or hydraulic elevator counterweight rails, where provided):

(SI Units)

$$W = 1\,009\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 2\,018\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 1{,}435{,}342\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 2{,}870{,}684\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(2) Hydraulic elevators (car guide rails only):

(SI Units)

$$W' = 336\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W' = 478{,}448\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell}$$

where

$$W' = \frac{W}{3} + \frac{W_p}{4} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W' = \frac{W}{6} + \frac{W_p}{8} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(b) One intermediate tie bracket located midway between main counterweighted guide-rail brackets:

(SI Units)

$$W = 1\,338.5\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 2\,677\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 1{,}903{,}982\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 3{,}807{,}962\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(c) Two intermediate tie brackets approximately equally spaced between main counterweighted guide-rail brackets:

(SI Units)

$$W = 1\,481\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 2\,962\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$W = 2{,}106{,}990\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$W = 4{,}213{,}963\,\frac{Z_y}{\ell} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

where

ℓ = distance between main car or counterweight guide-rail brackets, mm (in.)

W = weight of car plus 40% rated capacity, or counterweight, kg (lb)

W' = maximum weight per pair of car guide rails (hydraulic elevators), kg (lb)

W_p = weight of hydraulic plunger, kg (lb)

Z_x = section modulus of rail about x-x axis, mm^3 (in.^{3})

Z_y = section modulus of rail about y-y axis, mm^3 (in.^{3})

8.4.12.2 Required Moment of Inertia of Guide Rails. The following formulas shall be used to determine the minimum allowable moment of inertia of guide rails.

8.4.12.2.1 Force Normal to *x-x* Axis of Rail (See 8.4.8.9)

(a) Traction elevators (or hydraulic elevator counterweight rails, where provided):

(SI Units)

$$I_x = 9.807\left(\frac{W\ell^3}{249\Delta E}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$I_x = 9.807\left(\frac{W\ell^3}{498\Delta E}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$I_x = \frac{W\ell^3}{249\Delta E} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$I_x = \frac{W\ell^3}{498\Delta E} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(b) Hydraulic elevators (car guide rails only):

(SI Units)

$$I_x = 9.807\left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E}\left(\frac{W}{249} + \frac{W_p}{267}\right)\right] \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$I_x = 9.807\left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E}\left(\frac{W}{498} + \frac{W_p}{534}\right)\right] \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$I_x = \frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E}\left(\frac{W}{249} + \frac{W_p}{267}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$I_x = \frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E}\left(\frac{W}{498} + \frac{W_p}{534}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

8.4.12.2.2 Force Normal to *y-y* Axis of Rail (See 8.4.8.9)

(a) Traction elevators (or hydraulic elevator counterweight rails, where provided):

(SI Units)

$$I_y = 9.807\left(\frac{W\ell^3}{498\Delta E}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$I_y = 9.807\left(\frac{W\ell^3}{996\Delta E}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

Table 8.4.12.2.2 Maximum Allowable Deflection

Rail Size, kg (lb)	Δ, Max., mm (in.)
12.0 (8.0)	20 (0.75)
16.5 (11.0)	25 (1.00)
18.0 (12.0)	32 (1.25)
22.5 (15.0)	38 (1.50)
27.5 (18.5)	38 (1.50)
33.5 (22.5)	38 (1.50)
45.0 (30.0)	45 (1.75)

(Imperial Units)

$$I_y = \frac{W\ell^3}{498\Delta E} \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$I_y = \frac{W\ell^3}{996\Delta E} \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(*b*) Hydraulic elevators (car guide rails only):

(SI Units)

$$I_y = 9.807\left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E}\left(\frac{W}{498} + \frac{W_p}{534}\right)\right] \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$I_y = 9.807\left[\frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E}\left(\frac{W}{996} + \frac{W_p}{1\,068}\right)\right] \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

(Imperial Units)

$$I_y = \frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E}\left(\frac{W}{498} + \frac{W_p}{534}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone} \geq 3\text{)}$$

$$I_y = \frac{\ell^3}{\Delta E}\left(\frac{W}{996} + \frac{W_p}{1{,}068}\right) \qquad \text{(Zone 2)}$$

where

ℓ = distance between main car and counterweight guide-rail brackets, mm (in.)

E = modulus of elasticity for steel = 2.068×10^5 MPa (30×10^6 psi)

I_x = moment of inertia of rail about x-x axis, mm^4 ($in.^4$)

I_y = moment of inertia of rail about y-y axis, mm^4 ($in.^4$)

W = weight of car plus 40% rated capacity, or counterweight, kg (lb)

W_p = weight of hydraulic plunger, kg (lb)

Δ = maximum allowable deflection at center of rail span, mm (in.), based on Table 8.4.12.2.2.

8.4.13 Ground Motion Parameters

8.4.13.1 For application to building codes of the United States:

Zone(s)	Affected Peak Velocity Acceleration, A_v
0 and 1	$A_v < 0.10$
2	$0.10 \leq A_v < 0.20$
3 and 4	$0.20 \leq A_v$

where

A_v = affected peak velocity acceleration

Z_v = peak horizontal ground acceleration

8.4.13.2 Where required, in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, the following values of Z_v (velocity-related seismic zone) will determine the applicable seismic zone. **(07)**

Zone(s)	Velocity-Related Seismic Zone, Z_v
2	$2 \leq Z_v < 4$
≥ 3	$Z_v \geq 4$

NOTE: For Z_v values, see "Design Data for Selected Locations in Canada," in NBCC-1995, Appendix C.

SECTION 8.5
ESCALATOR AND MOVING WALK SAFETY REQUIREMENT FOR SEISMIC RISK ZONE 2 OR GREATER

Requirement 8.5 applies to all escalators and moving walks, where installed in buildings that are designed and built to the requirements of, and located in, seismic risk zone 2 or greater as defined by the building code (see 1.3).

Where the applicable building code does not make reference to seismic risk zones, the ground motion parameters shown in 8.4.13 shall be used.

The escalator and moving walk safety requirements contained in 8.5 shall be in addition to the requirements in the other parts of the Code unless otherwise specified.

8.5.1 Balustrade Construction

Balustrades shall be designed to resist a lateral load of 730 N/m (50 lbf/ft) applied to the top of the handrail. In balustrades where glass is part of the structural system the design shall include provision for the application of 0.5 gravity in both principle directions and the required lateral load to verify that the glass does not exceed the material deflection limit or stress limit.

8.5.2 Truss Members

All members of escalators and moving walk trusses together with their supports shall be capable of withstanding the inertia effect of their masses without permanent deformation when subjected to seismic forces active separately in vertical and horizontal directions.

8.5.2.1 Lateral forces shall be applied in horizontal directions that result in the most critical loadings as calculated in conformance with the AISC Specifications for Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings. The most critical loading shall be based on the total dead load of the escalator including cladding plus 25% of the rated load in accordance with 6.1.3.9. The horizontal seismic force shall be considered to be not less than:

$$F_p = ZIC_p(W_p + W_r)$$

where

C_p = horizontal force factor
F_p = total horizontal force
I = importance factor
W_p = dead load including cladding
W_r = 25% of the rated load calculated per 6.1.3.9
Z = seismic zone factor

8.5.2.1.1 The seismic zone shall be taken from the NHRP maps.

NOTE: When local building codes are more stringent, higher values may be applicable:
(a) For zone 2, Z = 0.25.
(b) For zone 3 or 4, Z = 0.5.
Where the applicable building code does not make reference to seismic risk zones, the ground motion parameters shown in 8.4.13 shall be used.

8.5.2.1.2 The escalator or moving walk is considered a nonbuilding structure component. The value of I shall be considered to be 1.0 unless the building is specified as an essential facility in which case a value of 1.25 shall be used.

8.5.2.1.3 The value of C_p shall be 0.75 when any portion of an escalator is located above grade and 0.50 when an escalator is located below grade.

NOTE: When more than six stories above grade other values of C_p may apply and should be determined based upon the fundamental period of the building.

8.5.2.2 Vertical forces shall be split equally between the two end supports. The total vertical force shall be $(1 \pm 0.25) \times (W_p + W_r)$ for zone 2 and $(1 \pm 0.50) \times (W_p + W_r)$ for zone 3 or greater. W_p and W_r are defined in 8.5.2.1.

8.5.2.3 Truss Calculations. The members in the truss shall be calculated by the Allowable Stress Method of the AISC Specification for Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings. The allowable stress as stipulated by the various sections is required to be used in lieu of yield stress. (See AISC example D1 for tension, E2 for compression, and F4 for shear stress. There are multiple rules for bending depending on type of section; therefore, examples are not listed.) Truss analysis, whether verified by computer or hand calculations, shall consider axial stresses of either compression or tension, combined axial compressive and bending stress, and combined axial tension and bending stress. There is no requirement for the escalator truss to be considered as a structural member of the building.

8.5.3 Supporting Connections Between the Truss and the Building

8.5.3.1 The end supports shall provide lateral restraint for forces in both principle horizontal directions imposed by seismic forces on the truss. Vertical restraint is not required since per formula downward force will be 0.50 $(W_p + W_r)$ or greater (see 8.5.2.1). Calculations shall be permitted to be based on either rigid or flexible restraints. Where suitable flexible restraints are used, forces resulting from movement of building structure members are not considered as being applied to the truss.

8.5.3.2 The design connections shall account for maximum design story drift.

8.5.3.2.1 Where seismic restraint is provided at one end, the design shall account for the forces developed by building movement in a manner that restricts transfer of these forces to the truss. All other supports shall be free to slide in the longitudinal direction. Where seismic restraint, that allows some degree of longitudinal and transverse motion, is provided at both ends, additional means shall be provided to prevent the upper end of the truss from slipping off the building support. All other supports shall be free to slide in the longitudinal direction sufficiently to accommodate the remainder of the design story drift.

8.5.3.2.2 At the sliding end or ends, the width or widths of the beam seat shall be capable of accommodating, without damage, at least 1.5 times story drift as obtained by either of the following:

(a) through engineering calculations

(b) by using the maximum code allowed story drift per the NEHRP 1997 Table for Allowable Story Drifts. This table allows story drifts of 0.0375 h_{sx} where h_{sx} is the building story height.

8.5.4 Earthquake Protective Devices

Earthquake protective devices shall be of the fail-safe type.

A minimum of one seismic switch shall be provided in every building in which an escalator or moving walk is installed.

(a) The seismic switch shall conform to 8.4.10.1.2(b).

(b) Activation of the seismic switch(es) shall remove power from the escalator driving machine motor and brake.

(c) Where a seismic switch(es) is used exclusively to control the escalator or moving walk, it shall be located in a machine room, machinery space, and where possible shall be mounted adjacent to a vertical load-bearing member. Should no vertical load-bearing member be in close proximity, it shall be permitted to locate the seismic switch at the nearest accessible vertical load-bearing member at approximately the same horizontal level as the upper machinery space or machine room.

SECTION 8.6 MAINTENANCE, REPAIR, AND REPLACEMENT (07)

Requirement 8.6 applies to maintenance, repairs, and replacements. Requirements 8.6.1 through 8.6.10 apply in jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC. Requirement 8.6.12 applies in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC.

NOTE: See 8.7 for alteration requirements.

8.6.1 General Requirements

8.6.1.1 Maintenance, Repair, and Replacement

8.6.1.1.1 Equipment covered within the scope of this Code shall be maintained in accordance with 8.6.

8.6.1.1.2 Maintenance, repairs, and replacements shall conform to 8.6 and the

(a) Code at the time of the installation

(b) Code requirements at the time of any alteration

(c) ASME A17.3 if adopted by the authority having jurisdiction

8.6.1.1.3 It is not the intent of 8.6 to require changes to the equipment to meet the design, nameplate or performance standard other than those specified in 8.6.1.1.2, unless specifically stated in 8.6.

8.6.1.2 General Maintenance Requirements

8.6.1.2.1 A written Maintenance Control Program shall be in place to maintain the equipment in compliance with the requirements of 8.6.

(a) The Maintenance Control Program shall consist of but not be limited to

(1) examinations, maintenance, and tests of equipment at scheduled intervals in order to ensure that the installation conforms to the requirements of 8.6. The maintenance procedures and intervals shall be based on

(a) equipment age, condition, and accumulated wear

(b) design and inherent quality of the equipment

(c) usage

(d) environmental conditions

(e) improved technology

(07) *(f)* the manufacturer's recommendations for any SIL rated devices or circuits

(2) cleaning, lubricating, and adjusting applicable components at regular intervals and repairing or replacing all worn or defective components where necessary to maintain the installation in compliance with the requirements of 8.6.

(b) The instructions for locating the Maintenance Control Program shall be provided in or on the controller along with instructions on how to report any corrective action that might be necessary to the responsible party.

(c) The maintenance records required by 8.6.1.4 shall be kept at a central location.

(d) The Maintenance Control Program shall be accessible to the elevator personnel and shall document compliance with 8.6.

(07) *(e)* Procedures for tests, periodic inspections, maintenance, replacements, adjustments, and repairs for all SIL rated E/E/PES electrical protective devices and circuits shall be incorporated into and made part of the Maintenance Control Program. See 2.26.4.3.2, 2.26.9.4(b), 2.26.9.5.1(b), and 2.26.9.6.1(b).

(f) Where unique or product-specific procedures or methods are required to inspect or test equipment, such procedures or methods shall be included in the Maintenance Control Program. (07)

8.6.1.2.2 Where a defective part directly affecting the safety of the operation is identified, the equipment shall be taken out of service until the defective part has been adjusted, repaired, or replaced.

8.6.1.3 Maintenance Personnel. Maintenance, repairs, and replacements shall be performed only by elevator personnel (see 1.3).

8.6.1.4 Maintenance Records

8.6.1.4.1 Maintenance records shall document compliance with 8.6 of the Code and shall include records on the following activities:

(a) description of maintenance task performed and dates

(b) description and dates of examinations, tests, adjustments, repairs, and replacements

(c) description and dates of call backs (trouble calls) or reports that are reported to elevator personnel by any means, including corrective action taken

(d) written record of the findings on the firefighter's service operation required by 8.6.11.1 (ED)

8.6.1.4.2 Record Availability. The maintenance records shall be available to the elevator personnel.

8.6.1.5 Code Data Plate

8.6.1.5.1 A data plate that indicates the Code and edition in effect at the time of installation and any alteration (see 8.7.1.8) shall be provided. The data plate shall also specify the Code and edition in effect at the time of any alteration and the applicable requirements of 8.7.

8.6.1.5.2 The Code data plate shall comply with 8.9.

8.6.1.6 General Maintenance Methods and Procedures

8.6.1.6.1 Making Safety Devices Inoperative or Ineffective. No person shall at any time make inoperative or ineffective any device on which safety of users is dependent, including any electrical protective device, except where necessary during tests, inspections (see 8.10 and 8.11), maintenance, repair, and replacement, provided that the installation is first removed from normal operation.

Such devices shall be restored to their normal operating condition in conformity with the applicable requirements prior to returning the equipment to service (see 2.26.7 and 8.6.1.6).

8.6.1.6.2 Lubrication. All parts of the machinery and equipment requiring lubrication shall be lubricated with lubricants equivalent to the type and grade recommended by the manufacturer.

Alternative lubricants shall be permitted when intended lubrication effects are achieved.

All excess lubricant shall be cleaned from the equipment. Containers used to catch leakage shall not be allowed to overflow.

(05S) **8.6.1.6.3 Controllers, Wiring, and Wiring Diagrams**

(a) Up-to-date wiring diagrams detailing circuits of all electrical protective devices (see 2.26.2) and critical operating circuits (see 2.26.3) shall be available in the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room as appropriate to the installation.

(b) The interiors of controllers and their components shall be cleaned when necessary to minimize the accumulation of foreign matter that can interfere with the operation of the equipment.

(c) Temporary wiring and insulators or blocks in the armatures or poles of magnetically operated switches, contactors, or relays on equipment in service are prohibited.

(07) *(d)* When jumpers are used during maintenance, repairs, or testing, all jumpers shall be removed and the equipment tested prior to returning it to service. Jumpers shall not be stored in machine rooms, control rooms, hoistways, machinery spaces, control spaces, escalator/moving walk wellways, or pits (see also 8.6.1.6.1).

NOTE [8.6.1.6.3(d)]: See "Elevator Industry Field Employees' Safety Handbook" for jumper control procedures.

(e) Control and operating circuits and devices shall be maintained in compliance with applicable Code requirements (see 8.6.1.1.2).

8.6.1.6.4 Painting. Care shall be used in the painting of the equipment to make certain that it does not interfere with the proper functioning of any component. Painted components shall be tested for proper operation upon completion of painting.

(05S) **8.6.1.6.5 Fire Extinguishers.** In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, Class "ABC" fire extinguishers shall be provided in elevator electrical machine rooms, control rooms, and control spaces outside the hoistway intended for full bodily entry, and walk-in machinery and control rooms for escalators and moving walks; and they shall be located convenient to the access door.

8.6.1.6.6 Workmanship. Care should be taken during operations such as torquing, drilling, cutting, and welding to ensure that no component of the assembly is damaged or weakened. Rotating parts shall be properly aligned.

8.6.1.6.7 Signs and Data Plates. Required signs and data plates that are damaged or missing shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.2 Repairs

See 8.6.2.1 through 8.6.2.5 for general requirements for repairs.

8.6.2.1 Repair Parts. Repairs shall be made with parts of at least equivalent material, strength, and design (see 8.6.3.1).

8.6.2.2 Welding and Design. Welding and design of welding shall conform to 8.7.1.4 and 8.7.1.5.

8.6.2.3 Repair of Speed Governors. Where a repair is made to a speed governor that affects the tripping linkage or speed adjustment mechanism, the governor shall be checked in conformance with 8.11.2.3.2.

Where a repair is made to the governor jaws or associated parts that affect the pull-through force, the governor pull-through force shall be checked in conformance with 8.11.2.3.2(b). A test tag shall be attached, indicating the date the pull-through test was performed.

8.6.2.4 Repair of Releasing Carrier. When a repair is made to a releasing carrier, the governor rope pull-out and pull-through forces shall be verified in conformance with 8.11.2.3.2(b).

8.6.2.5 Repair of Ropes. Suspension, governor, and compensating ropes shall not be lengthened or repaired by splicing (see 8.7.2.21).

8.6.3 Replacements

8.6.3.1 Replacement Parts. Replacements shall be made with parts of at least equivalent material, strength, and design.

8.6.3.2 Replacement of a Single Suspension Rope. If one rope of a set is worn or damaged and requires replacement, the entire set of ropes shall be replaced, except, where one rope has been damaged during installation or acceptance testing prior to being subjected to elevator service, it shall be permissible to replace a single damaged rope with a new rope, provided that the requirements of 8.6.3.2.1 through 8.6.3.2.6 are met.

8.6.3.2.1 The wire rope data for the replacement rope must correspond to the wire rope data specified in 2.20.2.2(a), (b), (c), (f), and (g) for the other ropes.

8.6.3.2.2 The replacement rope shall be provided with a wire rope data tag conforming to 2.20.2.2.

8.6.3.2.3 The suspension ropes, including the damaged rope, shall not have been shortened since their original installation.

8.6.3.2.4 The diameter of any of the remaining ropes shall not be less than the nominal diameter minus 0.4 mm (0.015 in.).

8.6.3.2.5 The tension of the new replacement rope shall be checked and adjusted as necessary at semimonthly intervals over a period of not less than two months after installation. If proper equalization of rope tension cannot be maintained after 6 months, the entire set of hoist ropes shall be replaced.

8.6.3.2.6 The replacement rope shall be provided with the same type of suspension-rope fastening used with the other ropes.

8.6.3.3 Replacement of Ropes Other Than Governor Ropes

8.6.3.3.1 Replacement of all ropes, except governor ropes (see 8.6.3.4), shall conform to the following:

(a) Replacement ropes shall be as specified by the original elevator manufacturer or be at least equivalent in strength, weight, and design.

(b) Ropes that have been previously used in another installation shall not be reused.

(c) When replacing suspension, compensating, and car or drum counterweight ropes, all ropes in a set shall be replaced, except as permitted by 8.6.3.2.

(d) The ropes in the set shall be new, all from the same manufacturer, and of the same material, grade, construction, and diameter.

(e) Data tags conforming to 2.20.2.2 shall be applied.

(f) Suspension, car, and drum counterweight rope fastenings shall conform to 2.20.9.

8.6.3.3.2 Rope Fastenings and Hitchplates. Replacement of rope fastenings and hitchplates shall conform to the following:

(a) When the suspension-rope fastenings are replaced with an alternate means that conforms to 2.20.9, existing hitch plates that cause interference between the replacement fastening shall have the replacement fastening staggered, or the hitch plates shall be replaced with a design that provides clearance between replacement shackles.

(b) Replacement hitch plates shall conform to 2.15.13.

(c) Replacement fastenings shall be permitted to be installed on the car only, the counterweight only, at either of the dead-end hitches, or at both attachment points.

(d) Rope fastenings at the drum connection of winding-drum machines shall comply with 8.6.4.10.2.

8.6.3.3.3 Runby and Clearances After Reroping or Shortening. The minimum car and counterweight clearances specified in 2.4.6 and 2.4.9 shall be maintained when new suspension ropes are installed or when existing suspension ropes are shortened.

The minimum clearances shall be maintained by any of the following methods (see 8.6.4.11).

(a) Limit the length that the ropes are shortened.

(b) Provide blocking at the car or counterweight strike plate. The blocking shall be of sufficient strength and secured in place to withstand the reactions of buffer engagement as specified in 8.2.3. If wood blocks are used to directly engage the buffer, a steel plate shall be fastened to the engaging surface or shall be located between that block and the next block to distribute the load upon buffer engagements.

(c) Provide blocking under the car and/or counterweight buffer of sufficient strength and secured in place to withstand the reactions of buffer engagement as described in 8.2.3.

8.6.3.4 Replacement of Governor or Safety Rope

8.6.3.4.1 Governor ropes shall be of the same size, material, and construction as the rope specified by the governor manufacturer, except that a rope of the same size but of different material or construction shall be permitted to be installed in conformance with 8.7.2.19.

8.6.3.4.2 The replaced governor ropes shall comply with 2.18.5.

8.6.3.4.3 After a governor rope is replaced, the governor pull-through force shall be checked as specified in 8.11.2.3.2(b).

8.6.3.4.4 A test tag indicating the date when the pull-through test was performed shall be attached.

8.6.3.4.5 The safety rope shall comply with 2.17.12.4 and 2.17.12.5.

8.6.3.5 Belts and Chains. If one belt or chain of a set is worn or stretched beyond that specified in the manufacturer's recommendation, or is damaged so as to require replacement, the entire set shall be replaced.

Spockets and toothed sheaves shall also be replaced if worn beyond that specified in the manufacturer's recommendations.

8.6.3.6 Replacement of Speed Governor. When a speed governor is replaced, it shall conform to 2.18. When a releasing carrier is provided, it shall conform to 2.17.15. The governor rope shall be of the type and size specified by the governor manufacturer.

The governor shall be checked in conformance with 8.11.2.3.2. Drum-operated safeties that require continuous tension in the governor rope to achieve full safety application shall be checked as specified in 8.11.2.3.1 and 8.7.2.19.

8.6.3.7 Listed/Certified Devices

8.6.3.7.1 Where a listed/certified device is replaced, the replacement shall be subject to the applicable engineering or type test as specified in 8.3, or the requirements of CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5. Hoistway door interlocks, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contact, and door or gate electric contact, shall conform to the type tests specified in 2.12.4.1. The device shall be labeled by the certifying organization (see 8.6.1.1). In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, door panels, frames, and entrances hardware shall be provided with the instructions required by 2.11.18.

(07) **8.6.3.7.2** Where a component in a listed/certified device is replaced, the replacement component shall be subject to the requirements of the applicable edition of CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5 and/or the engineering or type test in 8.3. Hoistway door interlocks, hoistway door combination mechanical lock and electric contact, and door or gate electric contact, shall conform to the type tests specified in 2.12.4.1. The component shall be included in the original manufacturer's listed/certified device documentation or as a listed/certified replacement component (see 8.6.1.1).

Each replacement component shall be plainly marked for identification in accordance with the certifying organization's procedures. In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, door panels, frames, and entrances hardware shall be provided with the instructions required by 2.11.18.

NOTE (8.6.3.7): Devices that may fall under this requirement are included but not limited to hoistway door locking devices and electric contacts, car door contacts and interlocks, hydraulic control valves, escalator steps, fire doors, and electrical equipment.

8.6.3.8 Replacement of Door Reopening Device. Where a reopening device for power-operated car doors or gates is replaced, it shall conform to 8.7.2.13.

8.6.3.9 Replacement of Releasing Carrier. Where a replacement is made to a releasing carrier, the governor rope pull-out and pull-through forces shall be verified in conformance with 8.11.2.3.2(b).

8.6.3.10 Replacement of Hydraulic Jack, Plunger, Cylinder, Tanks, and Anticreep Leveling Device

8.6.3.10.1 A hydraulic jack replacement shall be classified as an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.3.23.1.

8.6.3.10.2 A plunger replacement shall be classified as an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.3.23.2.

8.6.3.10.3 A cylinder replacement shall be classified as an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.3.23.3.

8.6.3.10.4 A tank replacement shall be classified as an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.3.29.

8.6.3.10.5 An anticreep leveling device replacement shall be classified as an alteration and shall comply with 8.7.3.31.3.

8.6.3.11 Replacement of Valves and Piping. Where any valves, pipings, or fittings are replaced, replacements shall conform to 3.19 with the exception of 3.19.4.6. Replacement control valves must conform to the Code under which it was installed.

8.6.4 Maintenance of Electric Elevators

The maintenance of electric elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.4.

8.6.4.1 Suspension and Compensating Wire Ropes

8.6.4.1.1 Suspension and compensating ropes shall be kept lightly lubricated and clean so that they can be visually inspected.

8.6.4.1.2 Precautions shall be taken in lubricating suspension wire ropes to prevent the loss of traction. Lubrication shall be in accordance with instructions on the rope data tag [see 2.20.2.2(j)], if provided.

8.6.4.1.3 Equal tension shall be maintained (07)
between individual ropes in each set. When suspension-rope tension is checked or adjusted, an anti-rotation device conforming to the requirements of 2.20.9.8 shall be permitted.

8.6.4.2 Governor Wire Ropes

8.6.4.2.1 The ropes shall be kept clean.

8.6.4.2.2 Governor wire ropes shall not be lubricated after installation. If lubricants have been applied to governor ropes, they shall be replaced, or the lubricant removed, and the governor and safety shall be tested as specified in 8.11.2.3.2(b) and 8.11.2.2.2.

8.6.4.3 Lubrication of Guide Rails

8.6.4.3.1 The lubrication of guide rails shall be in accordance with the requirements on the crosshead data plate (see 2.17.16), where provided.

8.6.4.3.2 Where a data plate is not provided, the lubrication of guide rails shall conform to the following:

(a) Guide rails, except those of elevators equipped with roller or other types of guiding members not requiring lubrication, shall be kept lubricated.

(b) Where sliding-type safeties are used, the guide-rail lubricants, or prelubricated or impregnated guide-shoe gibs, where used, shall be of a type recommended by the manufacturer of the safety (see 8.6.1.2.3).

8.6.4.3.3 If lubricants other than those recommended by the manufacturer are used, a safety test conforming to 8.11.2.3.1 shall be made to demonstrate that the safety will function as required by 2.17.3.

8.6.4.3.4 Rails shall be kept clean and free of lint and dirt accumulation and excessive lubricant. Means shall be provided at the base of the rails to collect excess lubricant.

8.6.4.3.5 Rust-preventive compounds such as paint, mixtures of graphite and oil, and similar coatings shall not be applied to the guiding surfaces, unless recommended by the manufacturer of the safety. Once applied, the safety shall be checked as specified in 8.11.2.3.1.

8.6.4.4 Oil Buffers

8.6.4.4.1 The oil level shall be maintained at the level indicated by the manufacturer. The grade of oil to be used shall be as indicated on the buffer marking plate, where required (see 2.22.4.10 and 2.22.4.11).

8.6.4.4.2 Buffer plungers shall be kept clean and shall not be coated or painted with a substance that will interfere with their operation.

8.6.4.4.3 Buffer oil shall not be stored in the pit or hoistway or on top of the car.

8.6.4.5 Safety Mechanisms

8.6.4.5.1 Safety mechanisms shall be kept lubricated and free of rust and dirt that can interfere with the operation of the safety.

8.6.4.5.2 The required clearance between the safety jaws and the rail shall be maintained.

8.6.4.6 Brakes

8.6.4.6.1 The driving-machine brake shall be maintained to ensure proper operations, including, but not limited to the following:

(*a*) residual pads (antimagnetic pads)
(*b*) lining and running clearances
(*c*) pins and levers
(*d*) springs
(*e*) sleeves and guide bushings
(*f*) discs and drums
(*g*) brake coil and plunger

8.6.4.6.2 If any part of the driving machine brake is changed or adjusted that can affect the holding capacity or decelerating capacity of the brake when required (see 2.24.8.3), it shall be adjusted and checked by means that will verify its proper function and holding capacity.

8.6.4.7 Cleaning of Hoistways and Pits

8.6.4.7.1 Hoistways and pits shall be kept free of dirt and rubbish and shall not be used for storage purposes.

8.6.4.7.2 Landing blocks and pipe stands shall be permitted to be stored in the pit, provided that they do not interfere with the operation of the elevator and do not present a hazard for persons working in the pit.

8.6.4.7.3 Pit access doors shall be kept closed and locked.

8.6.4.7.4 Water and oil shall not be allowed to accumulate on pit floors. See also 8.6.10.3.

(05S) **8.6.4.8 Machinery Spaces, Machine Rooms, Control Spaces, and Control Rooms**

8.6.4.8.1 Floors and machinery and control spaces shall be kept free of water, dirt, rubbish, oil, and grease.

8.6.4.8.2 Articles or materials not necessary for the maintenance or operation of the elevator shall not be stored in machinery spaces, machine rooms, control spaces, and control rooms.

8.6.4.8.3 Flammable liquids having a flashpoint of less than 44°C (110°F) shall not be kept in such rooms or spaces.

8.6.4.8.4 Access doors shall be kept closed and locked.

8.6.4.8.5 Machinery spaces and control spaces (05S) located in the hoistway shall not be used for storage purposes (see also 8.6.4.7.1).

8.6.4.9 Cleaning of Top of Cars. The tops of cars shall be kept free of oil, water, dirt, and rubbish, and shall not be used for storing lubricants, spare parts, tools, or other items.

8.6.4.10 Refastening or Resocketing of Car-Hoisting Ropes on Winding-Drum Machines

8.6.4.10.1 General. The hoisting ropes of elevators having winding-drum driving-machines with 1:1 roping, if of the babbitted rope socket type, shall be resocketed, or for other type of fastenings, replaced or moved on the rope to a point above the existing fastening at the car ends at intervals no longer than

(*a*) 1 year, for machines located over the hoistway.

(*b*) 2 years, for machines located below or at the side of the hoistway.

(*c*) where auxiliary rope-fastening devices conforming to 2.20.10 are installed, refastening at the periods specified is not required, provided that, where such devices are installed, all hoisting ropes shall be refastened on the failure or indication of failure of any rope fastening.

(*d*) where the elevator is equipped with a drum counterweight, the fastenings shall be examined for fatigue or damage at the socket. Where fatigue or damage is detected, the ropes shall be refastened in conformance with 8.6.4.10.2.

8.6.4.10.2 Procedure. In resocketing babbitted rope sockets or replacing other types of fastenings, a sufficient length shall be cut from the end of the rope to remove damaged or fatigued portions. The fastenings shall conform to 2.20.9. Where the drum ends of the ropes extend beyond their clamps or sockets, means shall be provided to prevent the rope ends from coming out of the inside of the drum and to prevent interference with other parts of the machine.

8.6.4.10.3 Tags. A legible metal tag shall be securely attached to one of the wire rope fastenings after each resocketing or changing to other types of fastenings and shall bear the following information:

(*a*) the name of the person or firm who performed the resocketing or changing of other types of fastenings and

(b) the date on which the rope was resocketed or other types of fastening changed

The material and marking of the tags shall conform to 2.16.3.3, except that the height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 1.5 mm (0.0625 in.).

8.6.4.11 Runby

8.6.4.11.1 The car and counterweight runby shall be permitted to be reduced (see 2.4.2), provided the car or counterweight does not strike the buffer, the top car clearances are not reduced below that required at the time of installation or alteration, and the final terminal-stopping device is still operational (see also 8.6.3.3.3).

8.6.4.11.2 Where spring-return oil buffers are provided and compression was permitted with the car at the terminals (see 2.4.2 and 2.22.4.8), the buffer compression shall not exceed 25% of the buffer stroke.

8.6.4.12 Governors

8.6.4.12.1 Governors shall be examined to ensure that all seals are intact and operated by hand to determine that all moving parts, including the rope-grip jaws and switches, operate freely.

8.6.4.12.2 Governors, governor ropes, and all sheaves shall be free from contaminants or obstructions, or both, that interfere with operation or function, including the accumulation of rope lubricant or materials, or both, in the grooves of governors or sheaves.

8.6.4.13 Door Systems

8.6.4.13.1 General. All landing and car-door or gate mechanical and electrical components shall be maintained to ensure safe and proper operation including but not limited to, the following:

(a) hoistway door interlocks or mechanical locks and electric contacts

(b) car door electric contacts or car door interlocks, where required

(c) door reopening devices

(d) vision panels and grilles, where required

(e) hoistway door unlocking devices and escutcheons

(f) hangers, tracks, door rollers, up-thrusts, and door safety retainers, where required

(g) astragals and resilient members, door space guards, and sight guards, where required

(h) sills and bottom guides, fastenings, condition, and engagement

(i) clutches, engaging vanes, retiring cams, and engaging rollers

(j) interconnecting means

(k) door closers, where required

(l) door restrictors, where required

8.6.4.13.2 Kinetic Energy and Force Limitation for Automatic Closing, Horizontal Sliding Car and Hoistway Doors or Gates. Where a power-operated horizontally sliding door is closed by momentary pressure or by automatic means, the closing kinetic energy and closing force shall be maintained to conform to 2.13.4 and 2.13.5.

8.6.4.14 Hoistway Access Switches. Hoistway access switches, where provided, shall be maintained.

8.6.4.15 Car Emergency System. Emergency operation of signaling devices (see 2.27), lighting (see 2.14.7), communication (see 2.27.1.1.2, 2.27.1.1.3, and 2.27.1.2) and ventilation (see 2.14.2.3), shall be maintained.

8.6.4.16 Stopping Accuracy. The elevator shall be maintained to provide a stopping accuracy at the landings during normal operation as appropriate for the type of control, in accordance with applicable Code requirements.

8.6.4.17 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. Devices for ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall be maintained.

8.6.4.18 Compensation Sheaves and Switches (07)

8.6.4.18.1 Suspension and compensation means shall be maintained to prevent the compensation sheave from reaching the upper or lower limit of travel and to prevent unintended actuation of compensation sheave switch(es) during normal operation.

8.6.5 Maintenance of Hydraulic Elevators

The maintenance of hydraulic elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3, and the applicable requirements of 8.6.4 and 8.6.5.

8.6.5.1 Pressure Tanks

8.6.5.1.1 Cleaning. Pressure tanks shall be thoroughly cleaned internally at least every 3 years and prior to the inspection and test required by 8.11.3.3.

8.6.5.1.2 Level. The liquid level in pressure tanks should be maintained at about two-thirds of the capacity of the tank.

8.6.5.2 Piston Rods. Piston rods of roped-hydraulic elevators shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to the inspection required by 8.11.3.3.

8.6.5.3 Water-Hydraulic Plungers. Plungers of water-hydraulic elevators shall be thoroughly cleaned to remove any buildup of rust and scale prior to the inspection required by 8.11.3.3.

8.6.5.4 Tank Levels. The level of oil in the oil tanks shall be checked and, where necessary, adjusted to comply with the prescribed minimum and maximum level.

8.6.5.5 Gland Packings and Seals

8.6.5.5.1 Examination and Maintenance. Where valves and cylinders use packing glands or seals, they shall be examined and maintained to prevent excessive loss of fluid.

8.6.5.5.2 Oil Leakage Collection. Oil leakage collected from the cylinder packing gland shall not exceed 20 L (5 gal) before removal. The container shall be covered and shall not be permitted to overflow.

8.6.5.6 Flexible Hoses and Fittings. Flexible hose and fittings assemblies installed between the check valve or control valve and the cylinder, and that are not equipped with an overspeed valve conforming to 3.19.4.7, shall be replaced not more than 6 years beyond the installation date. Existing hose assemblies that do not indicate an installation or replacement date shall be replaced. Replacements shall conform to 3.19.3.3.1(a) through (e) and 3.19.3.3.2.

8.6.5.7 Record of Oil Usage. For systems where the part of cylinder and/or piping is not exposed for visible inspection, a written record shall be kept of the quantity of hydraulic fluid added to the system and emptied from leakage collection containers and pans. The written record shall be kept in the machine room. When the quantity of hydraulic fluid loss cannot be accounted for, the test specified in 8.11.3.2.1 and 8.11.3.2.2 shall be made.

8.6.5.8 Safety Bulkhead. Hydraulic cylinders installed below ground shall conform to 3.18.3.4, or the elevator shall conform to 8.6.5.8(a) or 8.6.5.8(b):

(a) the elevator shall be provided with car safeties conforming to 3.17.1 and guide rails, guide-rail supports, and fastenings conforming to 3.23.1; or

(b) the elevator shall be provided with a plunger gripper conforming to 3.17.3. The plunger gripper shall grip the plunger when the applicable maximum governor tripping speed in Table 2.18.2.1 is achieved.

8.6.5.9 Relief-Valve Setting. The relief-valve adjustment shall be examined to ensure that the seal is intact. If the relief-valve seal is not intact, checks shall be conducted in accordance with 8.11.3.2.1.

8.6.5.10 Runby and Clearances After Reroping or Shortening. The minimum car and counterweight clearances and runby shall be maintained in compliance with the applicable code when replacement suspension ropes are installed or when existing suspension ropes are shortened.

8.6.5.11 Cylinder Corrosion Protection and Monitoring

8.6.5.11.1 Corrosion Protection Monitoring. Where monitored cylinder corrosion protection is required, the monitoring means shall be examined and maintained.

8.6.5.11.2 Corrosion Protection Loss. If the monitoring means detects that loss of corrosion protection has occurred, the means of corrosion protection shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.5.12 Anticreep and Low Oil Protection. The anticreep function and low oil protection shall be maintained to operate in compliance with the applicable code.

8.6.6 Maintenance of Elevators With Other Types of Driving Machines

8.6.6.1 Rack and Pinion Elevators. The maintenance of rack-and-pinion elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6. Where the car and/or counterweight safeties are sealed to prevent field adjustment and examination, they shall be returned to the manufacturer for replacement of components and calibration at the interval recommended by the manufacturer. A data plate shall be installed to show the date that the next maintenance/calibration is due.

8.6.6.2 Screw-Column Elevators. The maintenance of screw-column elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.6.3 Hand Elevators. The maintenance of hand elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7 Maintenance of Special Application Elevators

8.6.7.1 Inclined Elevators. The maintenance of inclined elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7.2 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators. The maintenance of limited-use/limited-application elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7.3 Private Residence Elevators. The maintenance of private residence elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7.4 Private Residence Inclined Elevators. The maintenance of private residence inclined elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7.5 Power Sidewalk Elevators. The maintenance of power sidewalk elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7.6 Rooftop Elevators. The maintenance of rooftop elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7.7 Special Purpose Personnel Elevators. The maintenance of special-purpose personnel elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7.8 Shipboard Elevators. The maintenance of shipboard elevators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.7.9 Mine Elevators

8.6.7.9.1 Rails on mine elevators shall be kept free of rust and scale, that will prevent proper operation of the car (or counterweight) safety device.

8.6.7.9.2 Oil buffers that are installed on elevators where water can accumulate in the pit shall be checked every 60 days for accumulation of water.

8.6.7.9.3 The mine elevator hoistway shall be maintained to minimize the entry of water and formation of ice, that would interfere with the operation of the elevator.

8.6.7.10 Elevators Used for Construction. The maintenance of elevators used for construction shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.8 Maintenance of Escalator

The maintenance of escalators shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and 8.6.8.

8.6.8.1 Handrails. Handrails shall operate at the speed specified in the applicable codes. Cracked or damaged handrails that present a pinching effect shall be repaired or replaced. Splicing of handrails shall be done in such a manner that the joint is free of pinching effect.

8.6.8.2 Step-to-Skirt Clearance. Clearances shall be maintained in compliance with the applicable codes. Alternatively, the clearance on either side of the steps and between the steps and the adjacent skirt guard shall not exceed 4 mm (0.16 in.) and the sum of the clearances on both sides shall not exceed 7 mm (0.28 in.).

NOTE: The allowable clearances are applicable as follows:

(a) ASME A17.1-1955 through A17.1d-1970; not more than 4.8 mm (0.1875 in.) with a total of both sides not more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.), except where skirt obstruction devices are installed at the lower entrance for escalators installed under the ASME A17.1-1965 through A17.1d-1970.

(b) ASME A17.1-1971 through A17.1-1979 editions: not more than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.) on each side.

(c) ASME A17.1-1980 through A17.1c-1999 and ASME A17.3: not more than 4.8 mm (0.1875 in.) on each side.

(d) For equipment installed under ASME A17.1d-2000 and later editions, the clearance (loaded gap) not more than 5 mm (0.2 in.) when 110 N (25 lbf) force is laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. See 6.1.3.3.5.

NOTE (on CSA B44 Requirements): The allowable clearances are applicable as follows:

(a) B44-1960 through B44S3-1982 — not more than 4.8 mm (0.1875 in.) on each side. Sum of both sides not more than 6.4 mm (0.25 in.).

(b) B44-1985 through B44S2-1998 — Not more than 5 mm (0.197 in.) on each side. Sum of both sides not more than 6 mm (0.236 in.).

(c) For equipment installed under CSA B44-00 — not more than 4 mm (0.157 in.) on each side. Sum of both sides not more than 7 mm (0.28 in.)

(d) For equipment installed under CSA B44-00 Update 1 and later editions — clearance (loaded gap) shall be not more than 5 mm (0.2 in.) when 110 N (25 lbf) force is laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. See 6.1.3.3.5.

8.6.8.3 Step/Skirt Performance Index

8.6.8.3.1 The step/skirt performance index, when the escalator is subjected to the test specified in 8.11.4.2.19, shall be the maximum value of the recorded instantaneous step/skirt index $e^y/(e^y + 1)$, where

(SI Units)

e = 2.7183

$y = -3.77 + 2.37\ (\mu) + 0.37\ (L_g)$

μ = the sliding coefficient of friction of a polycarbonate test specimen on the skirt panel at the measurement point calculated when subjected to a 110 N normal load. The coefficient of friction shall be measured without addition of any field-applied lubricant.

L_g = the clearance between the step and the adjacent skirt panel when 110 N is applied from the step to skirt panel, mm

The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N by more than ±11 N. The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 1 940 mm^2 and not more than 3 870 mm^2.

(Imperial Units)

e = 2.7183

$y = -3.77 + 2.37\ (\mu) + 9.3\ (L_g)$

μ = the sliding coefficient of friction of a polycarbonate test specimen on the skirt panel at the measurement point calculated when subjected to a 25 lbf normal load. The coefficient of friction shall be measured without addition of any field-applied lubricant.

L_g = the clearance between the step and the adjacent skirt panel when 25 lbf is applied from the step to skirt panel, in.

The applied load shall not deviate from 25 lbf by more than ±2.5 lbf. The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 3 in.^{2} and not more than 6 in.^{2}

8.6.8.3.2 The step/skirt performance index polycarbonate test specimen shall conform to the following specifications:

(a) Material: Polycarbonate without fillers

(b) Color: Natural, no pigments

(c) Finish: Glossy (roughness less than 0.8 μm (32 μin.)

(d) Area in contact with skirt panel: 2 900 ± 325 mm^2 (4.5 ± 0.5 in.^{2}) and at least 0.8 mm (0.03 in.) thick

(e) Specification: GE Lexan 100 series or equivalent polycarbonate

8.6.8.3.3 The escalator step/skirt performance index shall be one of the following, whichever is applicable:

(a) ≤ 0.15

(b) ≤ 0.25 for escalators installed under ASME A17.1a-2002 and later editions and when a skirt deflector device complying with the requirements of 6.1.3.3.7 is provided

(c) ≤ 0.4 for escalators installed under ASME A17.1-2000 and earlier editions and a skirt deflector device is provided

8.6.8.4 Combplates

8.6.8.4.1 Combs with any broken teeth shall be repaired or replaced. Where two adjacent teeth are missing, the escalator shall be removed from operation.

8.6.8.4.2 Combs shall be adjusted and maintained in mesh with the slots in the step surface so that the points of the teeth are always below the upper surface of the treads.

8.6.8.4.3 For units installed under A17.1b-1992 and later editions of the Code, comb-step impact devices shall be adjusted to operate in compliance with the forces specified in 6.1.6.3.13.

8.6.8.5 Escalator Skirt Panels. The exposed surface of the skirt panels adjacent to the steps, if not made from, shall be treated with, a friction-reducing material. Damaged skirt or dynamic skirt panels shall be replaced or repaired.

8.6.8.6 Steps

8.6.8.6.1 Steps with broken treads shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.6.2 Steps with dented or damaged risers shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.6.3 Steps that are worn or damaged and that do not provide proper engagement with the combplates shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.6.4 The width or depth of the slots in the tread surface of steps that do not meet the applicable Code requirements shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.7 Rollers, Tracks, and Chains. Rollers, tracks, and chains shall be examined, repaired, or replaced when necessary to ensure required clearances.

8.6.8.8 Signs. Caution signs shall be provided in compliance with 6.1.6.9. Damaged or missing signs shall be replaced. Additional signs, if provided, shall comply with 6.1.6.9.

8.6.8.9 Guards at Ceiling Intersections. Damaged or missing guards shall be repaired or replaced in compliance with 6.1.3.3.9.

8.6.8.10 Antislide Devices. Damaged or missing antislide devices shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.11 Handrail Guards. Damaged or missing hand or finger guards shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.8.12 Brakes. Brakes shall be maintained in compliance with the applicable requirements of 8.6.4.6, and adjusted to the torque shown on the data plate, where provided.

8.6.8.13 Cleaning. The interiors of escalators and their components shall be cleaned to prevent an accumulation of oil, grease, lint, dirt, and refuse. The frequency of the cleaning will depend on service and conditions, but an examination to determine if cleaning is necessary shall be required at least once a year.

8.6.8.14 Entrance and Egress Ends. Escalator landing plates shall be properly secured in place. Landing plates shall be kept free of tripping hazards and maintained to provide a secure foothold. All required entrance and exit safety zones shall be kept free from obstructions.

8.6.9 Maintenance of Moving Walks

The maintenance of moving walks shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and 8.6.9.

8.6.9.1 Handrails. Handrails shall operate at the speed specified in applicable codes. Cracked or damaged handrails that present a pinching effect shall be repaired or replaced. Splicing of handrails shall be done in such a manner that the joint is free of pinching effect.

8.6.9.2 Combplates

8.6.9.2.1 Combs with any broken teeth shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.2.2 Combs shall be adjusted and maintained in mesh with the slots in the treadway surface so that the points of the teeth are always below the upper surface of the treads.

8.6.9.2.3 For units installed under A17.1b–1992 and later editions of the Code, comb-pallet impact devices shall be adjusted to operate in compliance with the forces specified in 6.2.6.3.11.

8.6.9.3 Pallets

8.6.9.3.1 Pallets with broken treads shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.3.2 Intermeshing moving walk pallets that are damaged at the mesh shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.3.3 Pallets that are worn or damaged and that do not provide proper engagement with the combplates shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.3.4 The width or depth of the slots in the tread surface of pallets that do not meet the applicable Code requirements shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.4 Rollers, Tracks, and Chains. Rollers, tracks, and chains shall be examined, repaired, or replaced when necessary to ensure required clearances.

8.6.9.5 Belt-Type Treadway. Belt-type treadways that are damaged or worn in such a manner that the treadway does not provide a continuous unbroken treadway surface or proper engagement with the combplates shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.6 Signs. Caution signs shall be provided in compliance with 6.2.6.8. Damaged or missing signs shall be replaced. Additional signs, if provided, shall comply with 6.2.6.8.

8.6.9.7 Guards at Ceiling Intersections. Damaged or missing guards shall be repaired or replaced in compliance with 6.2.3.3.7.

8.6.9.8 Antislide Devices. Damaged or missing antislide devices shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.9 Handrail Guards. Damaged or missing hand or finger guards shall be repaired or replaced.

8.6.9.10 Brakes. Brakes shall be maintained in compliance with the applicable requirements of 8.6.4.6, and adjusted to the torque shown on the data plate, where provided.

8.6.9.11 Cleaning. The interiors of moving walks, and their components shall be cleaned to prevent an accumulation of oil, grease, lint, dirt, and refuse. The frequency of the cleaning will depend on service and conditions, but an examination to determine if cleaning is necessary shall be required at least once a year.

8.6.9.12 Entrance and Egress Ends. Moving walk landing plates shall be properly secured in place. Landing plates shall be kept free of tripping hazards and maintained to provide a secure foothold. All required entrance and exit safety zones shall be kept free from obstructions.

8.6.9.13 Clearances. The clearance between each side of the treadway and the adjacent skirt panels, when provided, shall be maintained in compliance with 6.2.3.3.6. The clearance between the top surface of the treadway and the underside of the balustrade shall be maintained in compliance with 6.2.3.3.5 for skirtless balustrades.

8.6.10 Maintenance of Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts

8.6.10.1 Dumbwaiters Without Automatic Transfer Devices. The maintenance of dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.10.2 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices. The maintenance of material lifts and dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall conform to 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirements of 8.6.

8.6.11 Special Provisions

8.6.11.1 Firefighters' Emergency Operation. All elevators provided with firefighters' emergency operation shall be subjected monthly to Phase I recall by use of the key switch, and a minimum of one-floor operation on Phase II, except in jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC. Deficiencies shall be corrected. A record of findings shall be available to elevator personnel and the authority having jurisdiction.

8.6.11.2 Access Keys. Keys required for access, operation, inspection, maintenance, repair, and emergency access shall be made available only to personnel in the assigned security level, in accordance with 8.1.

8.6.11.3 Cleaning of a Car and Hoistway Transparent Enclosure

8.6.11.3.1 The cleaning of the exterior of transparent car enclosures or transparent hoistway enclosures from inside the hoistway shall be performed only by authorized personnel (see 1.3) trained in compliance with the procedures specified in 8.6.11.3.2 and 8.6.11.3.3.

8.6.11.3.2 A written cleaning procedure shall be made and kept on the premises where the elevator is located and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction.

8.6.11.3.3 The procedure shall identify the hazards and detail the safety precautions to be utilized.

8.6.11.3.4 All personnel assigned to cleaning shall be given a copy of these procedures and all necessary training to assure that they understand and comply with the procedures.

8.6.11.3.5 A record of authorized personnel trained as specified in 8.6.11.3.4 shall be kept on the premises where the elevator is located and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction.

8.6.11.4 Emergency Evacuation Procedures for Elevators

8.6.11.4.1 The evacuation of passengers from stalled elevators shall be performed only by authorized, elevator and emergency personnel (see 1.3) in compliance with the procedures specified in 8.6.11.4.2 through 8.6.11.4.6.

8.6.11.4.2 A written emergency evacuation procedure shall be made and kept on the premises where an elevator is located.

8.6.11.4.3 The procedure shall identify the hazards. The procedure shall also detail the safety precautions utilized in evacuating passengers from a stalled elevator.

8.6.11.4.4 All authorized personnel who are assigned to assist in evacuating passengers from a stalled elevator, and all persons who use special purpose personnel elevators, shall be given a copy of these procedures and all necessary training to assure that they understand and comply with the procedures.

8.6.11.4.5 These procedures shall be available to authorized elevator and emergency personnel.

8.6.11.4.6 A record of authorized personnel trained, and all persons who use special purpose personnel elevators, as specified in 8.6.11.4.4, shall be kept on the premises where the elevator is located and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction.

NOTE (8.6.11.4): See ASME A17.4, *Guide for Emergency Personnel.*

8.6.11.5 Escalator or Moving Walk Startup

8.6.11.5.1 Escalators and moving walks shall be started only by authorized personnel (see 1.3) trained in compliance with the procedures specified in 8.6.11.5.2 through 8.6.11.5.5.

8.6.11.5.2 The following procedure shall be utilized when starting an escalator or moving walk:

(a) Prior to starting the unit, observe the steps or pallets and both landing areas to ensure no persons are on the unit or about to board. Run the unit away from the landing.

(b) Verify correct operation of the starting switch.

(c) Verify correct operation of the stop buttons.

(d) Verify correct operation of each stop button cover alarm, if furnished.

(e) Visually examine the steps or treadway for damaged or missing components; combplates for broken or missing teeth; skirt or dynamic skirt panels and balustrades for damage.

(f) Verify that both handrails travel at substantially the same speed as the steps or the treadway, are free from damage or pinch points, and that entry guards are in place.

(g) Visually verify that all steps, pallets, or the treadway is properly positioned.

(h) Verify that ceiling intersection guards, anti-slide devices, deck barricades, and caution signs are securely in place.

(i) Verify that demarcation lighting is illuminated, if furnished.

(j) Check for uniform lighting on steps/tread not contrasting with surrounding areas.

(k) Verify that the safety zone is clear of obstacles and that the landing area and adjacent floor area are free from foreign matter and slipping or tripping hazards.

(l) Check for any unusual noise or vibration during operation. If any of these conditions is unsatisfactory, the unit shall be placed out of service. Barricade the landing areas and notify the responsible party of the problem.

8.6.11.5.3 Escalators and moving walks subject to 24-h operation shall be checked daily by authorized personnel.

8.6.11.5.4 A record of authorized personnel trained as specified in 8.6.11.5.2 shall be kept on the premises where the escalator(s) or moving walk(s) or both is located and shall be available to the authority having jurisdiction.

8.6.11.6 Operating Instructions for Means Specified in 2.7.5.1.1 or 2.7.5.2.1. A written procedure for operating the means shall be provided and kept on the premises where the elevator is located (see 2.7.5.1.2 or 2.7.5.2.1). (05S)

8.6.11.7 Egress and Reentry Procedure From Working Areas in 2.7.5.1.3 or 2.7.5.2.3. A written procedure to outline the method for egress and reentry shall be provided and kept on the premises where the elevator is located (see 2.7.5.1.3 or 2.7.5.2.3). (05S)

8.6.11.8 Operating Instructions for Retractable Platforms. A written procedure to outline the method for the use of retractable platforms shall be provided and kept on the premises where the elevator is located (see 2.7.5.3.1). (05S)

8.6.12 Maintenance of Elevators, Dumbwaiters, Escalators, and Moving Walks (07)

8.6.12.1 Scope

8.6.12.1.1 Requirement 8.6.12 applies to all existing installations and all new installations that have been placed in service. It provides the minimum standards for these installations. However, it is not the intent of this Section to require the alteration or replacement of equipment to meet design, nameplate, and performance standards not required by an earlier edition of this Code that was in force at the time the equipment was installed.

8.6.12.1.2 Requirement 8.6.12 applies also to the maintenance of other devices, analogous in design and usage, that are covered by this Code, such as material lifts.

8.6.12.2 General Maintenance Requirements

8.6.12.2.1 Maintenance Required. Each elevator, dumbwaiter, and escalator installation shall be maintained in accordance with the requirements of 8.6.12.2.1 and the original manufacturer's recommendations. The maintenance shall include

(a) inspections, examinations, and tests, at required or scheduled intervals, of all parts and functions of an

installation in order to ensure, to a reasonable degree, that the installation is in a safe operating condition

(b) cleaning, lubricating, and adjusting applicable components at regular intervals, and repairing or replacing all worn or defective components where necessary, to prevent the device from becoming unsafe for operation

(c) repairing or replacing damaged or broken parts affecting the safe operation

8.6.12.2.2 Maintenance Intervals. The maintenance required in 8.6.12.2.1 shall be carried out at intervals established on the basis of

(a) the age and inherent quality of the equipment

(b) the frequency and method of usage

(c) the original manufacturer's recommendations or a professional engineer's recommendation

8.6.12.2.3 Actions Respecting Defective Parts. Where a part directly affecting the safety of the operation is found to be defective, it shall be immediately adjusted, repaired, or replaced.

8.6.12.2.4 Maintenance Mechanics. Persons performing maintenance, including repair and replacement work, shall have training, be experienced, and be qualified.

NOTE: Maintenance mechanics should

(a) understand the operational and safety functions of all components of the installation maintained in order to appreciate all safety hazards for maintenance personnel and for the general public that might be created during any maintenance procedure

(b) be able to reasonably assess compatibility of replacement components

(c) be able to carry out the work required in this Section

8.6.12.2.5 Log Book. A log pertaining to all maintenance activities specified in 8.6.12 shall be maintained on site at all times by the maintenance contractor. The log shall contain, as a minimum, but not be limited to, detailed records of all tests, inspections, and other maintenance duties referred to in this Section that have been performed in the previous five years (see 8.6.12.4.1.1). For records kept in an electronic format, a hard copy shall be placed in the job site log within a maximum of three months of the initial recording.

8.6.12.2.6 Wiring Diagrams. Up-to-date wiring diagrams detailing circuits of all electrical protective devices and primary directional circuits shall be available in the machine room at all times.

8.6.12.3 Maintenance Procedure Applicable to All Installations

8.6.12.3.1 Making Safety-Related Devices Inoperative

8.6.12.3.1.1 No person shall at any time make inoperative any component on which safety of users is dependent, nor shall any electrical protective device be made inoperative, except where necessary during testing, inspections, and maintenance.

8.6.12.3.1.2 During such tests, inspections, and maintenance, the installation shall not be made available to the public. Immediately upon completion, the installation shall be restored to its normal operating condition in conformity with the applicable requirements.

8.6.12.3.1.3 Substitution of any wire or current-carrying device for the proper fuse or circuit breaker in an elevator circuit shall not be permitted.

8.6.12.3.2 Hoistways, Pits, and Machine Rooms

8.6.12.3.2.1 Hoistways, trusses, and pits shall be kept clean and dry. Accumulation of rubbish in elevator pits and the use of these areas for storage shall not be permitted.

8.6.12.3.2.2 The machine room floor shall be kept clean and free from oil or grease. Articles or materials that are not necessary for the maintenance or operation of the elevator shall not be stored in the machine room. Flammable liquids having a flashpoint of less than 44°C (111°F) shall not be kept in the machine room.

8.6.12.3.2.3 Access doors shall be kept closed and locked, except during periods when a qualified person is in the machine room or secondary sheave space.

8.6.12.3.2.4 Care shall be used in the painting of the equipment to ensure that the paint does not interfere with the proper function of the equipment. Brakes, governors, car-safety parts, and buffer parts shall be tested for proper operation after completion of painting.

8.6.12.3.3 Top of Cars. The top of cars shall be kept free of oil or grease and shall not be used for storing lubricants, tools, or other material.

8.6.12.3.4 Cleaning of Car and Hoistway Transparent Enclosures. If the requirements of 2.11.1.4 or 2.14.2.6 are not met, cleaning of transparent enclosures on the exterior of an elevator car or on the interior of an elevator hoistway shall be done under the direct supervision of a maintenance mechanic who shall be present at the site of the cleaning.

8.6.12.3.5 Lubrication

8.6.12.3.5.1 General. All parts of the machinery and equipment requiring lubrication shall be maintained with lubricants of a grade and quantity recommended by the manufacturer.

8.6.12.3.5.2 Lubrication of Suspension Wire Ropes. Precautions shall be taken in lubricating suspension wire ropes to prevent loss of traction [see 2.20.2.2(j)].

8.6.12.3.5.3 Lubrication of Governor Wire Ropes. Governor wire ropes shall not be lubricated unless recommended by the manufacturer of the governor [see 2.18.9(e)].

8.6.12.3.5.4 Lubrication of Guide Rails

8.6.12.3.5.4.1 Guide rails shall be lubricated only on elevators equipped with guiding members requiring lubrication. Rail lubricants or coatings shall comply with 2.17.16. Means shall be provided at the base of the rails to collect excess lubricant.

8.6.12.3.5.4.2 Rails shall be kept clean and free of excess lubricant, lint, and dirt accumulation. Where necessary, a nonflammable or high-flashpoint solvent shall be used for cleaning the rails.

8.6.12.3.5.4.3 Rust-preventive compounds such as paint, lubricants such as graphite or oil, and similar coatings shall not be applied unless recommended by the manufacturer.

NOTE: Rust-preventive compounds or improper lubricants can interfere with and, in many cases, prevent proper operation of the safety devices. Such substances can even cause complete failure of the safeties. If it is considered necessary for any reason to use any of these substances, the manufacturer of the elevator should be consulted before their application.

8.6.12.3.6 Car and Counterweight Safeties Mechanism. All moving parts of car and counterweight safeties mechanism shall be kept clean and free of rust and dirt and shall be lubricated at frequent intervals.

NOTE: This is especially important where the equipment is exposed to water or corrosive vapors or excessively damp conditions, as corrosion or rusting of the parts can prevent operation of the safety.

8.6.12.3.7 Hydraulic Components

8.6.12.3.7.1 Plungers of water-hydraulic elevators and dumbwaiters shall be thoroughly cleaned periodically to remove any buildup of rust or scale.

8.6.12.3.7.2 Where valves and cylinders use packing glands, the packing glands shall be periodically checked and tightened or replaced as necessary to prevent excessive loss of the fluid.

8.6.12.3.7.3 Oil leakage collected from the cylinder packing gland shall not exceed 20 L (5.28 US gal) before removal.

8.6.12.3.7.4 The level of oil in the oil tanks shall be checked and, where necessary, adjusted to comply with the prescribed minimum and maximum level.

8.6.12.3.8 Oil Buffers

8.6.12.3.8.1 The oil shall be maintained at the level indicated by the manufacturer.

8.6.12.3.8.2 Buffer plungers shall be kept clean and shall not be coated or painted with a substance that will interfere with their operation.

8.6.12.3.9 Controller Contactors and Relays. Controller components shall be kept clean and free from dirt, and, where necessary, shall be lubricated as recommended by the manufacturer.

8.6.12.4 Repairs and Replacement

8.6.12.4.1 Replacement Parts and Quality of Work

8.6.12.4.1.1 Replacement Parts or Components. Unless otherwise required in 8.6.12.5, any repair and replacement of damaged or worn parts or components shall be with parts of material and strength equivalent to or better than the original manufacturer's design. Any change in the design of components other than those specified in 8.6.12.5 or 8.7, that might affect the safe operation of the equipment shall be certified for use by a professional engineer. A copy of the certification shall be retained by the contractor and recorded in the log book.

8.6.12.4.1.2 Quality of Work. Repair and replacement shall be done in a competent manner. Care should be taken during operations such as torquing, drilling, cutting, and welding to ensure that no component of the assembly is damaged or weakened so as to affect the safe operation of the equipment. Rotating parts shall be properly aligned within the manufacturer's design tolerances.

8.6.12.4.2 Refastening or Resocketing of Car-Hoisting Ropes on Winding-Drum Machines

8.6.12.4.2.1 The hoisting ropes of elevators or dumbwaiters that have winding-drum driving machines with 1:1 roping, if of the babbitted rope socket type, shall be resocketed, or other types of fastenings replaced or moved on the rope to a point above the existing fastening at the car ends, at intervals no longer than

(*a*) 1 year, for machines located over the hoistway

(*b*) 2 years, for machines located below or at the side of the hoistway

8.6.12.4.2.2 When resocketing babbitted rope sockets or replacing other types of fastenings, a sufficient length shall be cut from the end of the rope to remove damaged or fatigued portions. The fastenings shall conform to the requirements of 2.20.9.4.

8.6.12.4.2.3 A legible metal tag shall be securely attached to one of the wire rope fastenings after each resocketing or each change to other types of fastenings and shall bear the following information:

(*a*) the name of the person or firm who performed the resocketing or changed the types of fastenings

(*b*) the date on which the rope was resocketed or the types of fastening were changed

8.6.12.4.3 Procedure for Replacement of Governor Ropes

8.6.12.4.3.1 Replacement governor ropes shall be of the same size, material, and construction as the rope originally furnished by the elevator manufacturer. Related tests shall be performed.

8.6.12.4.3.2 A new rope data tag conforming to 2.20.2.2 shall be installed at each rope renewal, and the date of the rope replacement and the data from the tag shall be recorded in the log book for the device.

8.6.12.4.4 Procedure for Replacement of All Ropes Other Than Governor Ropes

8.6.12.4.4.1 Replacement ropes shall be specified by the original elevator manufacturer or be at least equivalent in strength and design to the original ropes.

8.6.12.4.4.2 When replacing suspension, compensating, and car or drum counterweight ropes, all ropes in a set shall be replaced. The ropes in the set shall all be from the same manufacturer and of the same material, grade, construction, and diameter.

8.6.12.4.4.3 A new rope data tag conforming to 2.20.2.2 shall be installed at each rope renewal, and the date of the rope replacement and the data from the tag shall be recorded in the log book for the device.

8.6.12.4.4.4 For runby and clearances, refer to 8.6.3.3.3.

8.6.12.4.5 Procedure for Replacement of Belts or Chain Sets. If one belt or entire chain of a set is worn or stretched beyond the manufacturer's service recommendation or is damaged so as to require replacement, the entire set shall be replaced. Sprockets and toothed sheaves shall also be replaced if worn beyond the manufacturer's service recommendation.

8.6.12.5 Replacement of Specific Elevator Components

8.6.12.5.1 General. Replacement of elevator components specified in 8.6.12.5.2 to 8.6.12.5.7 shall constitute an alteration and shall comply with requirements specified therein and also with the applicable requirements in 8.7.1.3.

8.6.12.5.2 Replacement of Driving Machine. Where a driving machine is replaced, the installation shall conform to the requirements specified in 8.7.2.25.1(a).

8.6.12.5.3 Replacement of Controller

8.6.12.5.3.1 Elevator Controller. Where an elevator controller is replaced it shall conform to the requirements specified in 8.7.2.27.4(a) or 8.7.3.31.5(a), whichever is applicable.

8.6.12.5.3.2 Door Controller. When a controller for operation of the hoistway doors, car doors, or gates is replaced, the replacement controller and wiring shall conform to the requirements of 2.26.4.1 and 2.26.4.2.

SECTION 8.7
ALTERATIONS

Requirement 8.7 applies to alterations.

NOTES:
(1) See Nonmandatory Appendix L for an index of the requirements for alterations.
(2) See 8.6 for maintenance, repair, and replacement requirements.

8.7.1 General Requirements

8.7.1.1 Applicability of Alteration Requirements. When any alteration is performed, regardless of any other requirements of 8.7, the installation, as a minimum, shall conform to the following applicable Code requirements:

(a) the Code at the time of installation

(b) the Code requirements for the alteration at the time of any alteration

(c) ASME A17.3 if adopted by the authority having jurisdiction

8.7.1.2 Items Not Covered in 8.7. Where an alteration not specifically covered in 8.7 is made, it shall not diminish the level of safety below that which existed prior to the alteration. See also 1.2.

8.7.1.3 Testing. Where alterations are made, acceptance inspections and tests shall be conducted as required by 8.10.2.3 for electric elevators, 8.10.3.3 for hydraulic elevators, or 8.10.4.2 for escalators and moving walks.

8.7.1.4 Welding. Welding of parts on which the support of the car, counterweight, escalator, or moving walk depends, including driving machines, escalator, or moving walks, trusses, girders, and tracks, shall conform to 8.8 and 8.7.1.5.

8.7.1.5 Design. Design shall be verified by a licensed professional engineer for welding, repair, cutting, or splicing of members upon which the support of the car, counterweight, escalator, or moving walks, trusses, girders, and tracks depends.

8.7.1.6 Temporary Wiring. During alterations, temporary wiring shall be permitted. The electrical protective devices of cars in normal operation shall not be rendered inoperative or ineffective.

8.7.1.7 Repairs and Replacements. Repairs and replacements shall conform to 8.6.2 and 8.6.3. In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, repairs and replacements carried out as a part of an alteration shall conform to the requirements of 8.6.12.4, except that replacements in 8.6.12.5 shall be deemed to be alterations. (07)

8.7.1.8 Code Data Plate. A data plate shall be provided as required by 8.6.1.5. In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, the data plate required by 8.9.1 shall include the (07) code and edition in effect at the time of alteration and the requirements in 8.7 that were applicable to the alteration.

8.7.2 Alterations to Electric Elevators

8.7.2.1 Hoistway Enclosures

8.7.2.1.1 Hoistway Enclosure Walls. Where alterations are made to any portion of a hoistway enclosure wall, that portion which is altered shall conform to the following:

(a) Requirement 2.1.1.
(b) Requirement 2.1.5.
(c) Requirement 2.1.6.
(d) Requirement 2.5.
(e) Requirement 2.7.3.4.2.
(f) Requirement 2.8.
(g) Requirement 8.7.2.10, where the portion of the wall that is altered includes an entrance assembly.
(h) Where a hoistway is altered so as to create a single blind hoistway, entrances and emergency doors shall be provided as required by 2.11.1.

8.7.2.1.2 Addition of Elevator to Existing Hoistway. Where an elevator is added to an existing hoistway, the number of elevators in that multiple hoistway shall be in accordance with the requirements of the building code. The horizontal clearances for the added elevator and the clearances between the added car and adjacent cars shall conform to 2.5.

(ED) **8.7.2.1.3 Construction at Top of Hoistway.** Any alteration to the construction at the top of the hoistway shall conform to 2.1.2.1 and 2.1.3. See also 8.7.2.4.

(ED) **8.7.2.1.4 Construction at Bottom of Hoistway.** Any alteration to the construction at the bottom of the hoistway shall conform to 2.1.2.2, 2.1.2.3, and 2.2. See also 8.7.2.4.

8.7.2.1.5 Control of Smoke and Hot Gases. Alterations to a hoistway that affect the means used to prevent the accumulation of smoke and hot gases in case of fire shall conform to 2.1.4.

8.7.2.2 Pits. Alterations made to the pit shall conform to 2.2 and 2.1.2.3. See also 8.7.2.4.

8.7.2.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights. Where new counterweights are installed or where counterweights are relocated, their location, guarding, and clearances shall conform to 2.3 and 2.5.1.2. The installation shall also conform to 2.6.

8.7.2.4 Vertical Car and Counterweight Clearances and Runbys. No alteration shall reduce any clearance or runby below that required by 2.4. Existing clearances shall be permitted to be maintained, except as required by 8.7.2.17.1, 8.7.2.17.2, and 8.7.2.25.2.

8.7.2.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. No alteration shall reduce any clearance below that required by 2.5. Existing clearances shall be permitted to be maintained, except as required by 8.7.2.17.2.

8.7.2.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways. Where alterations are made to an elevator or the building such that any space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the affected installation shall conform to 2.6.

8.7.2.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces

8.7.2.7.1 Enclosures. Where an alteration consists of the construction of a new machine room or machinery space enclosure, it shall conform to 2.7. Electrical equipment clearances shall conform to NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable. Where alterations are made to any portion of a machinery room or machinery space, that portion which is altered shall conform to 2.7.

8.7.2.7.2 Means of Access. Any alteration that affects the safe and convenient means of access to a machine room or machinery space shall conform to 2.7.3.1, 2.7.3.2, and 2.7.3.3 to the extent existing conditions permit.

8.7.2.7.3 Access Doors and Openings. Where an alteration is made to any access door or opening, it shall conform to 2.7.3.4. Where an alteration is made to an access door in an overhead machinery space, a stop switch shall be provided conforming to 2.7.3.5.

8.7.2.7.4 Headroom. No alteration shall reduce the headroom below that required by 2.7.4, or the existing headroom, whichever is less.

8.7.2.7.5 Windows and Skylights. Alterations made to windows and skylights shall conform to 2.1.5.

8.7.2.7.6 Lighting. No alteration shall be made that diminishes the lighting of a machine room or machinery space below that required by 2.7.9.1. (ED)

8.7.2.7.7 Ventilation. No alteration shall be made that diminishes the ventilation of a machine room or machinery space below that required by 2.7.9.2. (ED)

8.7.2.8 Electrical Equipment, Wiring, Pipes, and Ducts in Hoistways and Machine Rooms. The installation of any new, or the alteration of existing, electrical equipment, wiring, raceways, cables, pipes, or ducts shall conform to the applicable requirements of 2.8.

8.7.2.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports, and Foundations. Where new machinery and sheave beams, supports, foundations, or supporting floors are installed, relocated, or where alterations increase the original building design reactions by more than 5%, they shall conform to 2.9, and the adequacy of the affected building structure to support the loads shall be verified by a licensed professional engineer.

8.7.2.10 Entrances and Hoistway Openings

8.7.2.10.1 General Requirements

(a) Where all new hoistway entrances are installed, they shall conform to 2.11, 2.12, and 2.13.

(b) Where one or more, but not all, new hoistway entrances are installed, they shall conform to 2.11.2 through 2.11.8 and 8.7.2.10.5. The entire installation shall also conform to 2.11.6, 2.12, and 2.13.

(c) Where an alteration is made to any hoistway entrance, it shall conform to 2.11.3, 2.11.5, 2.11.7, 2.11.8, and 8.7.2.10.5. The entire installation shall also conform to 2.12 and 2.13.

(d) Where an emergency door is added or altered, it shall conform to 2.11.1 and 8.7.2.10.5.

(e) Where access openings for cleaning are installed, they shall conform to 2.11.1.4 and 8.7.2.10.5.

8.7.2.10.2 Horizontal Slide-Type Entrances. In addition to the requirements of 8.7.2.10.1, where any new horizontal slide-type entrance is installed, it shall conform to 2.11.11.

New components that are installed as part of an alteration to an entrance shall conform as follows:

(a) Landing sills shall conform to 2.11.10.1, 2.11.11.1, and 2.11.11.6.

(b) Hanger tracks and track supports shall conform to 2.11.11.2.

(c) Entrance frames shall conform to 2.11.11.3. An applied frame shall be permitted to be fastened to an existing frame, provided that the combination of the new and existing frames conforms to 2.11.11.3, 2.11.11.5.1, 2.11.11.5.2, and 2.11.11.5.3.

(d) Hangers shall conform to 2.11.11.4.

(e) Panels shall comply with 2.11.11.5, 2.11.11.6, and 2.11.11.7, except that the overlap required by 2.11.11.5.1 shall be not less than 13 mm (0.5 in.).

(f) Door safety retainers shall conform to 2.11.11.8.

8.7.2.10.3 Vertical Slide-Type Entrances. In addition to the requirements of 8.7.2.10.1, where any new vertical slide-type entrance is installed, it shall conform to 2.11.12.

New components that are installed as part of an alteration to an entrance shall conform as follows:

(a) Landing sills shall conform to 2.11.10.3 and 2.11.12.1.

(b) Entrance frames shall conform to 2.11.12.2.

(c) Rails shall conform to 2.11.12.3.

(d) Panels shall conform to 2.11.12.3 through 2.11.12.6, and 2.11.12.8.

(e) Guides shall conform to 2.11.12.5.

(f) Sill guards shall conform to 2.11.12.7.

(g) Pull straps shall conform to 2.11.12.8.

8.7.2.10.4 Swing-Type Entrances. In addition to the requirements of 8.7.2.10.1, where any new swing-type entrance is installed, it shall conform to 2.11.13.

New components that are installed as part of alteration to an entrance shall conform as follows:

(a) Landing sills shall conform to 2.11.10.1, 2.11.10.3, and 2.11.13.1.

(b) Entrance frames shall conform to 2.11.13.2 and 2.11.13.4.

(c) Panels shall conform to 2.11.13.3, 2.11.13.4, and 2.11.13.5.

(d) Hinges shall conform to 2.11.13.4.

8.7.2.10.5 Marking of Entrance Assemblies

(a) In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC the following shall apply:

(1) When an entrance or door panel is altered, it shall have the fire protection rating not less than that of the existing entrance assembly

(2) it shall be labeled in accordance with NBCC

(b) In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC the following shall apply:

(1) In fire-resistive construction, new hoistway entrances or door panels shall conform to 2.11.14 through 2.11.18, except for the following:

(a) existing metal frames

(b) existing tracks, sills, and sill supports

(c) applied frames

8.7.2.11 Hoistway Door Locking Devices, Access Switches, and Parking Devices

8.7.2.11.1 Interlocks. Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway door interlocks, the installation shall conform to 2.12.1, 2.12.2, 2.12.4 through 2.12.7, and 2.24.8.3.

8.7.2.11.2 Mechanical Locks and Electric Contacts. Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway-door combination mechanical locks and electric contacts, the installation shall conform to 2.12.1, 2.12.3, 2.12.4, 2.12.6, and 2.24.8.

8.7.2.11.3 Parking Devices. Where an alternation is performed to an elevator operated from within the car only, an elevator parking device shall be provided conforming to the following requirements:

(a) At every elevator landing that is equipped with an unlocking device, if

(1) the doors are not automatically unlocked when the car is within the unlocking zone

(2) the doors are not operable from the landing by a door open button or floor button

(b) Parking devices shall be permitted to be provided at other landings.

(c) Parking devices shall be located at a height not greater than 2 108 mm (83 in.) above the floor.

(d) Parking devices shall conform to the following requirements:

(1) they shall be mechanically or electrically operated

(2) they shall be designed and installed so that friction or sticking or the breaking of any spring used in

the device will not permit opening or unlocking a door when the car is outside the landing zone of that floor

(3) springs, where used, shall be of the restrained compression type, which will prevent separation of the parts in case the spring breaks

8.7.2.11.4 Access Switches and Unlocking Devices. Where the alteration consists of the installation of hoistway access switches and/or hoistway-door unlocking devices, the installation shall conform to

(a) requirements 2.12.6 and 2.24.8.3 for unlocking devices

(b) requirements 2.12.7, 2.24.8, and 2.26.1.4 for access switches

8.7.2.11.5 Restricted Opening of Hoistway Doors or Car Doors of Passenger Elevators. Where a device that restricts the opening of hoistway doors or car doors is altered or installed, the device shall conform to 2.12.5.

8.7.2.12 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors. Where the alteration consists of the addition of, or alteration to, power opening or power closing of hoistway doors, the installation shall conform to 8.7.2.10.1, 8.7.2.10.2, 8.7.2.10.3, and 8.7.2.10.5.

8.7.2.13 Door Reopening Device. Where a reopening device for power-operated car doors or gates is altered or added, the following requirements shall apply:

(a) requirement 2.13.4

(b) requirement 2.13.5

(c) when firefighters' emergency operation is provided, door reopening devices and door closing on Phase I and Phase II shall comply with the requirements applicable at the time of installation of the firefighters' emergency operation

8.7.2.14 Car Enclosures, Car Doors and Gates, and Car Illumination

8.7.2.14.1 Where an alteration consists of the installation of a new car, the installation shall conform to 2.14, 2.15, and 2.17 (see also 8.7.2.15.1).

8.7.2.14.2 The following requirements shall be conformed to where alterations are made to existing cars:

(a) Car enclosures shall conform to 2.14.1.2.

(b) Where an alteration is made to a top emergency exit, or where a new one is installed, it shall conform to 2.14.1.5.

(c) Where an alteration consists of the installation of glass in an elevator car, it shall conform to 2.14.1.8.

(d) Any equipment added to an elevator car shall conform to 2.14.1.9.

(e) All side emergency exits shall be permanently fixed in the closed position. The corresponding side emergency exit on an adjacent car shall also be fixed in the closed position.

(f) Any alteration to passenger car ventilation shall conform to 2.14.2.3.

(g) Any alteration to car illumination or lighting fixtures shall conform to 2.14.7.

(h) Where partitions are installed in elevator cars for the purpose of reducing the inside net platform areas for passenger use, they shall conform to 2.16.1.2. Where conditions do not permit symmetrical loading, guide rails, car frames, and platforms shall be capable of sustaining the resulting stresses and deflections.

8.7.2.14.3 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, where any alteration is made to the car enclosure, other than as specified in 8.7.2.14.2, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Where an existing metal enclosure is retained and new material, other than metal, is installed, the car enclosure shall conform to the 2.14.2.1.1.

(b) Where an existing enclosure other than as specified in 8.7.2.14.3(a) is retained and new material is installed, the new material and adhesive shall conform to the following requirements, based on the tests conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 84, UL 723, or NFPA 255:

(1) flame spread rating of 0 to 25

(2) smoke development of 0 to 450

If the material or combination of materials installed exceeds 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) in thickness, the car enclosure shall conform to 2.14.2.1.1.

(c) Napped, tufted, woven, looped, and similar materials shall conform to 2.14.2.1.1 and 2.14.2.1.2; or 8.7.2.14.3(b), 8.3.7, and 8.3.8. Adhesives shall conform to 8.7.2.14.3(b).

(d) Floor covering, underlayment, and its adhesive shall have a critical radiant flux of not less than 0.45 W/cm^2 as measured by ASTM E 648.

(e) Handrails, operating devices, ventilating devices, signal fixtures, audio and visual communications devices, and their housings are not required to conform to 8.7.2.14.3(a) through (d).

8.7.2.14.4 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, where any alteration is made to the car enclosure, car doors, or car gates, other than as specified in 8.7.2.14.2, the installation shall conform to 2.14, except that existing car enclosure materials exposed to the hoistway are not required to conform to the flame spread ratings. The existing flame spread rating shall not be diminished.

8.7.2.15 Car Frames and Platforms

8.7.2.15.1 Alterations to Car Frames and Platforms. Where alterations are made to a car frame or platform, the frame and platform shall conform to 2.15. Where roller or similar-type guide shoes are installed, that allow a definite limited movement of the car with respect to the guide rails, the clearance between the safety jaws and rails of the car shall be such that the safety jaws cannot touch the rails when the car frame is pressed against the rail faces with sufficient force to take up all movement of the roller guides.

(07) **8.7.2.15.2 Increase or Decrease in Deadweight of Car.** Where an alteration results in an increase or decrease in the deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase or decrease the sum of the deadweight and rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) requirement 2.15, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone plus 75 mm (3 in.)

(b) requirement 2.16

(c) requirement 2.17

(d) requirement 2.18

(e) requirement 2.20

(f) requirement 2.21, except as covered by 8.7.2.22.2

(g) requirement 2.22, except for 2.22.4.7, provided that conformance with

(1) requirement 2.22.4.10 is established otherwise

(2) requirement 2.22.4.5(b) can be established by other means such as adding a buffer switch conforming to 2.26.2.22

(h) requirement 2.23

(i) requirement 2.24, except 2.24.1

(j) requirement 8.7.2.9

8.7.2.16 Capacity, Loading, and Classification

8.7.2.16.1 Change in Type of Service. Where an alteration consists of a change in type of service from freight to passenger or passenger to freight, the installation shall conform to:

(a) requirements 2.11.1 through 2.11.3, and 2.11.5 through 2.11.8

(b) requirements 2.12 and 2.13

(c) requirement 2.22, except 2.22.4.5(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11

(d) requirements 2.14 and 2.15, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone, plus 75 mm (3 in.)

(e) requirement 2.17, except that where gradual wedge-clamp and drum-operated flexible guide-clamp safeties are reused, the stopping distances shall conform to the requirements of the Code at the time of installation [see ASME A17.2, Table 2.29.2(c)]

(f) requirement 2.18, except that the pitch diameters of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7

(g) requirements 2.16, 2.20, 2.24 through 2.27, except 2.24.1

(h) requirement 2.19

8.7.2.16.2 Change in Class of Loading. Where the class of loading of a freight elevator is changed, it shall conform to 2.16.2 (see also 8.7.2.16.4).

8.7.2.16.3 Carrying of Passengers on Freight Elevators. Where the alteration consists of a change in type of service from a freight elevator to a freight elevator permitted to carry passengers, the elevator shall conform to 2.16.4.

8.7.2.16.4 Increase in Rated Load. Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Car doors or gates shall be provided at all car entrances. Where new car doors or gates are installed, they shall conform to 2.14.4, 2.14.5, and 2.14.6.

(b) Requirement 2.15, except the car platform guard (apron) shall conform to 2.15.9 only to the extent the existing pit shall permit, but in no case less than the leveling or truck zone, plus 75 mm (3 in.).

(c) Requirement 2.16.

(d) Requirement 2.17.

(e) Requirement 2.18, except that the pitch diameters of existing governor sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7.

(f) Requirement 2.19.

(g) Requirement 2.20.

(h) Requirement 2.21, except as covered by 8.7.2.22.2.

(i) Requirement 2.22, except 2.22.4.5(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11.

(j) Requirement 2.23.

(k) Requirement 2.24.

(l) Requirements 2.26.1.4 and 2.26.1.5.

(m) Requirement 2.26.5.

(n) Requirement 8.7.2.9.

8.7.2.17 Change in Rise or Rated Speed (ED)

8.7.2.17.1 Increase or Decrease in Rise. Where an alteration involves an increase or decrease in the rise without any change in the location of the driving machine, the following requirements shall be conformed to: (ED)

(a) The terminal stopping devices shall be relocated to conform to 2.25.

(b) Where the increase in rise is less than 4 570 mm (180 in.), an existing winding-drum machine shall be permitted to be retained, provided the drum is of sufficient dimensions to serve the increased rise with not less than one full turn of wire rope remaining on the winding drum when the car or counterweight has reached its extreme limits of travel.

(c) The bottom and top clearances and runbys for cars and counterweights shall conform to 2.4, except as follows:

(1) Where the increase in rise is at the upper end of the hoistway, the existing bottom car clearance and car and counterweight runby are not required to conform

to 2.4. However, if existing clearances are less than as required by 2.4, they shall not be decreased by the change in rise.

(2) Where the increase in rise is at the lower end of the hoistway, the existing overhead car and counterweight clearances are not required to conform to 2.4. However, if existing clearances are less than as required by 2.4, they shall not be decreased by the change in rise.

(3) Where the decrease in rise is at the lowest end of the rise, the installation shall conform to 2.2.4, 2.2.5, and 2.2.6.

8.7.2.17.2 Increase in Rated Speed

(a) Increase in the rated speed of a winding-drum machine is prohibited, except as permitted in 8.7.2.17.2(c).

(b) Where the alteration involves an increase in the rated speed, except as specified in 8.7.2.17.2(c), the following requirements shall be conformed to:

(1) The bottom runbys and the top clearances for cars and counterweights shall conform to 2.4.2 through 2.4.11.

(2) Horizontal clearances shall conform to 2.5.

(3) The car and counterweight buffers shall conform to 2.22, except that existing buffers, where retained, are not required to conform to 2.22.4.5(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11.

(4) Car doors or gates shall be provided at all car entrances. Where new car doors or gates are installed, they shall conform to 2.14.

(ED) *(5)* The car safety, the counterweight safety (where provided), and the governor shall conform to 2.17 and 2.18, except that the pitch diameters of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7. Where the new rated speed is greater than 3.5 m/s (700 ft/min), compensating rope tie-down shall be provided in compliance with 2.21.4.2.

(6) The capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16.

(7) The driving machine and sheaves shall conform to 2.24.

(8) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.

(9) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26, except that 2.26.4.1 through 2.26.4.3 shall apply only to the electrical wiring and equipment altered. Requirement 2.26.4.4 does not apply.

(10) Suspension ropes and rope connection shall conform to 2.20.

(11) Car overspeed protection and unintended car movement protection shall conform to 2.19.

(c) Where the increase in rated speed does not exceed 10% and does not exceed 0.20 m/s (40 ft/min), and is a result of a power supply change, and the new motor speed cannot match the existing motor speed, the installation is not required to conform to 8.7.2.17.2(b), except that the new rated speed shall not

(1) exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) for Type A safeties

(2) exceed 1 m/s (200 ft/min) when spring buffers are provided

Governors shall be adjusted to conform to 2.18.2.1 and 2.18.2.2 (see also 8.7.2.27.3).

8.7.2.17.3 Decrease in Rated Speed. Conformance with the following requirements shall be required when the alteration involves a decrease in the rated speed.

(a) Where the bottom runbys and the top clearances for cars and counterweights are less than as required by 2.4, they shall not be decreased by the speed reduction.

(b) The tripping speed of the car speed governor and the counterweight speed governor, where provided, shall be adjusted to conform to 2.18.2 for the new rated car speed.

(c) The capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16.

(d) Capacity and data plates shall conform to 2.16.3, except the information required by 2.16.3.2.2(d) shall include the name of the company doing the alteration and the year of the alteration.

(e) New electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.2, and 2.26.4.3.

8.7.2.18 Car and Counterweight Safeties

8.7.2.18.1 Where the alteration consists of the installation of new car safeties, the car safeties, car speed governor, and car guide rails shall conform to 2.17, 2.18, and 2.23, except as noted in 8.7.2.19.

8.7.2.18.2 Where the alteration consists of the installation of new counterweight safeties, the counterweight safeties, counterweight speed governor, and counterweight guide rails shall conform to 2.17, 2.18, and 2.23, except as noted in 8.7.2.19.

8.7.2.18.3 Where any alterations are made to existing car or counterweight safeties, the affected safeties, governors, and guide rails shall conform to 2.17.1 through 2.17.9, 2.17.15, 2.18, and 2.23, except as noted in 8.7.2.19.

8.7.2.18.4 Where existing rail reactions are not increased by the installation of new safeties, the existing hoistway construction for bracket support need not be modified.

8.7.2.19 Speed Governors and Governor Ropes. Where any alteration is made to a speed governor, or where a new governor is installed, it shall conform to 2.18. Where there is a releasing carrier, it shall conform to 2.17.15.

Governor ropes of a different material, or construction than originally specified by the governor manufacturer shall be permitted, provided that

(a) there is conformance with 2.18.6 and 2.18.7, except that the pitch diameters of existing governor sheaves and tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7

(b) a test is made of the car or counterweight safety and speed governor with the new rope to demonstrate that the safety will function as required by 2.17.3

8.7.2.20 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. The requirements of 2.19 shall be conformed to where a device for protection against ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement is altered or installed.

8.7.2.21 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

8.7.2.21.1 Change in Ropes. Where the material, grade, number, or diameter of ropes is changed, the new ropes and their fastenings shall conform to 2.20. When existing sheaves are retained using ropes different from those originally specified, the original elevator manufacturer or a licensed professional engineer shall certify the sheave material to be satisfactory for the revised application.

8.7.2.21.2 Addition of Rope Equalizers. Where rope equalizers are installed, they shall conform to 2.20.5.

8.7.2.21.3 Addition of Auxiliary Rope-Fastening Devices. Where auxiliary rope-fastening devices are installed, they shall conform to 2.20.

8.7.2.22 Counterweights

8.7.2.22.1 Where alterations are made to any part of a counterweight assembly, except guiding members, the installation shall conform to 2.21, except as specified by 8.7.2.22.2. See also 8.7.2.3.

8.7.2.22.2 Rod-type counterweights shall be permitted to be retained, provided they are equipped with a minimum of two suspension rods and two tie rods. The two suspension rods shall conform to 2.21.2.1 and 2.21.2.3 and shall be provided with locknuts and cotter pins at each end. The tie rods shall conform to 2.21.1.2. Means shall be provided on each side of the counterweight to maintain the distance between the top and bottom guide weights in the event the counterweight lands on the buffer.

8.7.2.22.3 Where roller or similar-type guide shoes are installed, that allow a definite limited movement of the counterweight with respect to the guide rails, the clearance between the safety jaws and rails of the counterweight shall be such that the safety jaws cannot touch the rails when the counterweight frame is pressed against the rail faces with sufficient force to take up all movement of the roller guides.

(07) **8.7.2.23 Car and Counterweight Buffers and Bumpers.** Where alterations are made to car and counterweight buffers or bumpers, they shall conform to 2.22. The buffers are not required to conform to 2.22.4.7 if

(a) the buffer's load rating and properties defining method of absorbing and dissipating energy has not been altered

(b) the load rating of the buffer can be established by other means such as using original design data, original type testing data, marking plate, etc.

(c) the conformance with 2.22.4.5(b) can be established by other means such as adding a buffer switch conforming to 2.26.2.22

8.7.2.24 Guide Rails, Supports, and Fastenings. Where alterations are made to car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to 2.23. Guide rails, supports, fastenings, and joints of different design and construction than those provided for in 2.23 shall be permitted to be retained provided they are in accordance with sound engineering practice and will adequately maintain the accuracy of the rail alignment.

8.7.2.25 Driving Machines and Sheaves

8.7.2.25.1 Alterations to Driving Machines and Sheaves

(a) Where a driving machine is installed as part of an alteration, the installation shall conform to 2.7.2.3, 2.9, 2.10.1, 2.19, 2.20, 2.24, and 2.26.8. Requirement 2.7.2.2 applies to the extent existing installations permit. (ED)

(b) Where alterations are made to driving machine components, the affected components shall conform to 2.24.2 through 2.24.9 and 2.26.8.

(c) Where an alteration consists of a change in the driving-machine sheave, the suspension ropes and their connections shall conform to 2.20. The sheave shall conform to 2.24.2, 2.24.3, and 2.24.4.

8.7.2.25.2 Change in Location of Driving Machine

(a) Where the location of the driving machine is changed with no increase or decrease in rise, the installation shall conform to 2.7.2.2, 2.9, 2.10.1, and 2.24.2.3. (ED)

(b) Where the location of the driving machine is changed with an increase or decrease in rise, the entire installation shall conform to Part 2, except for the following: (ED)

(1) requirement 2.5 (see also 8.7.2.5).

(2) requirement 2.11 (see also 8.7.2.10).

(3) where the increase in rise is at the upper end of the hoistway, the existing bottom car clearance and car and counterweight runby are not required to conform to 2.4. However, if existing clearances are less than as required by 2.4, they shall not be decreased by the change in rise.

8.7.2.26 Terminal Stopping Devices. Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device, the installation shall conform to 2.25.

8.7.2.27 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

8.7.2.27.1 Top-of-Car Operating Devices. Where there is an alteration to or addition of a top-of-car operating device, it shall conform to 2.26.1.4.

8.7.2.27.2 Car Leveling or Truck Zoning Devices. Where there is an alteration to or addition of a car leveling device, or a truck zoning device, it shall conform to 2.26.1.6.

8.7.2.27.3 Change in Power Supply. Where an alteration consists of a change in power supply at the mainline terminals of the elevator controller, involving one of the following, whichever is applicable:

(a) change in voltage, frequency, or number of phases

(b) change from direct to alternating current or vice versa

(c) change to a combination of direct and alternating current

Electrical equipment shall conform to 2.26.1.1, 2.26.1.2, 2.26.1.3, 2.26.1.4, 2.26.1.6, 2.26.2, 2.26.6, 2.26.7, 2.26.9, and 2.26.10. All new and modified equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.2, and 2.26.4.3.

Brakes shall conform to 2.24.8 and 2.26.8.

Winding-drum machines shall be provided with final terminal stopping devices conforming to 2.25.3.5 [see also 8.7.2.17.2(b)].

8.7.2.27.4 Controllers

(a) Where a controller is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 2.25, 2.26.1.4, 2.26.1.5, 2.26.4 through 2.26.9, 2.27.2 through 2.27.8.

(b) Where a controller for the operation of hoistway doors, car doors, or car gates is installed as part of an alteration, all new and modified equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.1 and 2.26.4.2.

8.7.2.27.5 Change in Type of Motion Control. Where there is a change in the type of motion control, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11.1 through 2.11.13, 2.12, and 2.13.

(b) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to 2.14, except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) requirements 2.14.1.3, 2.14.1.5.1, and 2.14.1.8

(2) requirements 2.14.2.1, 2.14.2.3, and 2.14.2.4

(3) requirement 2.14.3

(4) requirements 2.14.4.3 and 2.14.4.6

(c) The car safety, the counterweight safety (where provided), and the governor shall conform to 2.17 and 2.18, except that the pitch diameter of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7.

(d) The capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16.

(e) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.

(f) The operating devices and control equipment shall confrom to 2.26. The requirements of 2.26.4.2, 2.26.4.3, and 2.26.4.4 shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(g) In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, emergency operation and signaling devices shall be provided and shall conform to 2.27. In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, emergency operation and signaling devices where required by NBCC shall be provided and shall conform to 2.27.

(h) Car overspeed protection and unintended movement protection shall conform to 2.19.

8.7.2.27.6 Change in Type of Operation Control. Where there is a change in the type of operation control, the installation shall conform to the following: (07)

(a) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11.1 through 2.11.13, 2.12, and 2.13.

(b) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to 2.14, except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) requirements 2.14.1.3, 2.14.1.5.1, and 2.14.1.8

(2) requirements 2.14.2.1, 2.14.2.3, and 2.14.2.4

(3) requirement 2.14.3

(4) requirement 2.14.4.3 and 2.14.4.6

(c) The car safety, the counterweight safety (where provided), and the governor shall conform to 2.17 and 2.18, except that the pitch diameter of speed governor sheaves and governor tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7.

(d) The capacity and loading shall conform to 2.16.

(e) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to 2.25.

(f) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 2.26. The requirements of 2.26.4.2, 2.26.4.3, and 2.26.4.4 shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(g) Emergency operation and signaling devices shall be provided and shall conform to 2.27.

8.7.2.27.7 On passenger elevators equipped with nonperforated car enclosures, the emergency stop switch, including all markings, shall be permitted to be removed if an in-car stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.21 is provided.

8.7.2.27.8 Electrical Protective Devices. Where there is an alteration to or addition of an electrical protective device, it shall conform to 2.26.2 for that device. (07)

8.7.2.28 Emergency Operations and Signaling Devices. Where an alteration is made to car emergency signaling devices, the alteration shall conform to 2.27.1.

Where an alteration is made to, or consists of the addition of, an emergency or standby power system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of 2.27.2.

Where an alteration is made to firefighters' emergency operation, the installation shall conform to 2.27.3 through 2.27.8.

Where the alteration consists of the addition of an elevator to a group, all elevators in that group shall conform to 2.27.

8.7.3 Alterations to Hydraulic Elevators

8.7.3.1 Hoistway Enclosures. Alterations to hoistway enclosures shall conform to 8.7.2.1.

8.7.3.2 Pits. Alterations made to the pit shall conform to 2.1.2.3 and 2.2. See also 8.7.3.4.

8.7.3.3 Location and Guarding of Counterweights. Where new counterweights are installed, they shall conform to 2.3 and 2.5.1.2. The installation shall also conform to 3.5.

8.7.3.4 Vertical Car and Counterweight Clearances and Runbys. No alteration shall reduce any clearance or runby below that required by 3.4. Existing clearances shall be permitted to be maintained, except as required by 8.7.3.22.1, 8.7.3.22.2, and 8.7.3.23.5.

8.7.3.5 Horizontal Car and Counterweight Clearances. No alteration shall reduce any clearance below that required by 2.5. Existing clearances shall be permitted to be maintained, except as required by 8.7.3.22.1, 8.7.3.22.2, and 8.7.3.23.5.

8.7.3.6 Protection of Spaces Below Hoistways. Where alterations are made to an elevator or the building, such that any space below the hoistway is not permanently secured against access, the affected installation shall conform to 3.6.

8.7.3.7 Machine Rooms and Machinery Spaces. Alterations to machine rooms and machinery spaces shall conform to 8.7.2.7.2 through 8.7.2.7.7. Where an alteration consists of the construction of a new machine room or machinery space enclosure, it shall conform to 2.7 and 3.7. Electrical equipment clearances shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9). Where alterations are made to any portion of a machinery room or machinery space, the portion that is altered shall conform to 2.7 and 3.7.

8.7.3.8 Electrical Wiring, Pipes, and Ducts in Hoistways and Machine Rooms. The installation of any new, or the alteration of existing, electrical equipment, wiring, raceways, cables, pipes, or ducts shall conform to the applicable requirements of 2.8.

8.7.3.9 Machinery and Sheave Beams, Supports and Foundations. Where new machinery and sheave beams, supports, foundations, or supporting floors are installed, or where alterations increase the original building design reactions by more than 5%, they shall conform to 2.9, and the adequacy of the affected building structure to support the loads shall be verified by a licensed professional engineer.

8.7.3.10 Hoistway Entrances and Openings. Alterations to hoistway entrances shall conform to 8.7.2.10, except that emergency doors meeting the requirements of 2.11.1 are only required to be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway where required by 8.7.2.10 and

(a) for all elevators where car or counterweight safeties are used

(b) for elevators where safeties are not used, emergency doors are not required on elevators where a manually operated valve is provided that will permit lowering the car at a reduced speed in case of power failure or similar emergency

8.7.3.11 Hoistway Door Locking Devices. Alterations to hoistway door locking devices, access switches, parking devices, and unlocking devices shall conform to 8.7.2.11, except that conformance with 2.24.8 is not required.

8.7.3.12 Power Operation of Hoistway Doors. Where the alteration consists of the addition of, or alteration to, power opening or power closing of hoistway doors, the installation shall conform to 8.7.2.10.1, 8.7.2.10.2, 8.7.2.10.3, 8.7.2.10.5, and 8.7.3.10.

8.7.3.13 Car Enclosures. Where alterations are made to car enclosures, they shall conform to 8.7.2.14.

8.7.3.14 Car Frames and Platforms. Where alterations are made to a car frame or platform, the frame and platform shall conform to 3.15.

If safeties are used and if roller or similar-type guide shoes are installed, that allow a definite limited movement of the car with respect to the guide rails, the clearance between the safety jaws and rails of the car shall be such that the safety jaws cannot touch the rails when the car frame is pressed against the rail faces with sufficient force to take up all movement of the roller guides.

8.7.3.15 Safeties

8.7.3.15.1 Where the alteration consists of the installation of car safeties, the car safeties and car guide rails shall conform to 3.17.1, 3.23, and 3.28.

8.7.3.15.2 Where the alteration consists of the installation of counterweight safeties, the counterweight safeties and counterweight guide rails shall conform to 3.17.2, 3.23, and 3.28.

8.7.3.15.3 Where any alterations are made to existing car or counterweight safeties, the affected safeties and guide rails shall conform to 3.17, 3.23, and 3.28, except for cross-referenced 2.17.10 through 2.17.14, 2.17.16, and 2.21.4.2. **(ED)**

8.7.3.16 Governors and Governor Ropes. Where alterations are made to governors or where they are added, they shall conform to 8.7.2.19.

8.7.3.17 Change in Type of Service. Where an alteration consists of a change in type of service from freight to passenger or passenger to freight, the installation shall conform to:

(a) requirements 2.11.1, 2.11.2, 2.11.3, and 2.11.5 through 2.11.8, except that emergency doors meeting the requirements of 2.11.1 are only required to be installed in the blind portion of the hoistway

(1) for all elevators where car or counterweight safeties are used

(2) for elevators where safeties are not used, emergency doors are not required on elevators where a manually operated valve is provided that will permit lowering the car at a reduced speed in case of power failure or similar emergency

(b) requirements 2.12 and 2.13

(c) requirements 2.22 and 3.22.2, except 2.22.4.5(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11

(d) requirements 3.14, 3.15, 3.17, 3.21, and 3.23

(e) requirement 2.18, where governors are provided, except that the pitch diameters of existing governor sheaves and tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7

(f) requirements 3.16, 3.18, 3.19, 3.20, 3.24, 3.25, 3.26, and 3.27

8.7.3.18 Change in Class of Loading. Where the class of loading of a freight elevator is changed, it shall conform to 2.16.2 as modified by 3.16.

(ED) **8.7.3.19 Carrying of Passengers on Freight Elevators.** Where the alteration consists of a change in type of service from a freight elevator to a freight elevator permitted to carry passengers, the elevator shall conform to 3.16.4.

8.7.3.20 Increase in Rated Load. Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load, the installation shall conform to 2.26.1.4, 2.26.1.5, 2.26.5, 3.14 through 3.17, 3.20, and 3.21 through 3.23 (see also 8.7.3.23.4).

8.7.3.21 Increase in Deadweight of Car. Where an alteration results in an increase in the deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase the sum of the deadweight and rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to 3.14 through 3.17, 3.20, and 3.21 through 3.23 (see also 8.7.3.23.4).

(ED) **8.7.3.22 Change in Rise or Rated Speed**

(ED) **8.7.3.22.1 Increase or Decrease in Rise.** Where an alteration involves an increase or decrease in the rise without any change in the location of the driving machine, it shall conform to the following:

(a) The terminal stopping devices shall be relocated to conform to 3.25.

(b) Where the increase in rise is at the lower end of the hoistway, bottom car and counterweight clearances and runbys shall conform to 3.4.1, 3.4.2, and 3.4.3, and existing top car and counterweight clearances and runbys that are less than as required by 3.4 shall not be decreased.

(c) Where the increase in rise is at the upper end of the hoistway, top car and counterweight clearances, runbys, and refuge spaces shall conform to 3.4, and existing bottom car and counterweight clearances and runbys that are less than as required by 3.4 shall not be decreased.

(d) The plunger shall conform to 3.18.2.

(e) Where the decrease is at the lower end of the rise, the installation shall conform to 2.2.4, 2.2.5, and 2.2.6.

8.7.3.22.2 Increase in Rated Speed. Where an alteration increases the rated speed, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) Requirement 2.5.

(b) Requirement 3.4.

(c) Requirements 3.21 and 3.22.2, except that existing buffers, where retained, are not required to conform to referenced 2.22.4.5(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11.

(d) Car doors or gates shall be provided at all car entrances. Where new car doors or gates are installed, they shall conform to the applicable requirements of 3.14.

(e) Car and counterweight safeties and governors, where provided, shall conform to 3.17, except that the pitch diameters of existing governor sheaves and tension sheaves are not required to conform to 2.18.7.

(f) Requirement 3.16.

(g) Requirement 3.25.

(h) Requirements 3.26.1 through 3.26.6.

(i) Requirement 3.20.

8.7.3.22.3 Decrease in Rated Speed. When the alteration involves a decrease in the rated speed, it shall conform to the following:

(a) If the bottom runbys and the top clearances for cars and counterweights are less than as required by 3.4, they shall not be decreased by the speed reduction.

(b) The tripping speed of the car speed governor and the counterweight speed governor, where provided, shall be adjusted to conform to 2.18.2 for the new rated car speed.

(c) The capacity and loading shall conform to 3.16.

(d) Capacity and data plates shall conform to 3.16.3(b), except the information required by 2.16.3.2.2(d) shall include the name of the company doing the alteration and the year of the alteration.

(e) New electrical equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.1 and 2.26.4.2.

8.7.3.23 Hydraulic Equipment

8.7.3.23.1 Hydraulic Jack. Where a hydraulic jack is installed, altered, or replaced, it shall conform to 3.18. (07)

(07) **8.7.3.23.2 Plungers.** Where a new plunger is installed or an existing plunger is altered, it shall conform to 3.18.1.2 and 3.18.2.

(07) **8.7.3.23.3 Cylinders.** Where a cylinder is installed, replaced, altered, or sleeved, it shall conform to 3.18.3. If the plunger is not equipped with a stop ring conforming to 3.18.4.1, the installation shall also conform to 3.18.1.2 and 3.18.2.

8.7.3.23.4 Increase in Working Pressure. Where an alteration increases the working pressure by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to 3.18, 3.19, and 3.24.1 through 3.24.4. Requirements 3.18.3.8 and 3.19.4.6 do not apply to existing equipment.

8.7.3.23.5 Change in Location of Hydraulic Jack. Where location of the hydraulic jack is changed, the installation shall conform to Part 3.

8.7.3.23.6 Relocation of Hydraulic Machine (Power Unit). Where the hydraulic machine is relocated so that the top of the cylinder is above the top of the storage tank, the installation shall conform to 3.26.8.

8.7.3.23.7 Plunger Gripper. Where the alteration consists of the addition of a plunger gripper, the following conditions must be met:

(*a*) the plunger gripper must comply with 3.17.3

(*b*) requirement 3.1.1(b) shall apply

(*c*) when buffers are compressed solid or to a fixed stop in accordance with 3.22.1, the plunger gripper shall not strike the car structure

8.7.3.24 Valves, Pressure Piping, and Fittings. Where an existing control valve is replaced with a valve of a different type, it shall conform to 3.19. Where relief or check valves or the supply piping or fittings are replaced as part of an alteration, the components replaced shall conform to the applicable requirements of 3.19. Where electrically operated control valves are installed in place of existing mechanically operated control valves, for rated speeds of more than 0.5 m/s (100 ft/min), existing terminal stopping devices consisting of an automatic stop valve independent of the normal control valve and operated by the movement of the car as it approaches the terminals, where provided, shall be permitted to be retained.

8.7.3.25 Suspension Ropes and Their Connections

8.7.3.25.1 Change in Ropes. Where the material, grade, number, or diameter of ropes is changed, the new ropes and their fastenings shall conform to 3.20. When existing sheaves are retained using ropes different from those originally specified, the original elevator manufacturer or a licensed professional engineer shall certify the sheave material to be satisfactory for the revised application.

8.7.3.25.2 Addition of Rope Equalizers. Where rope equalizers are installed, they shall conform to 2.20.5.

8.7.3.26 Counterweights. Where alterations are made to counterweights, they shall conform to 8.7.2.22 and 3.21. Where counterweights are added to a previously uncounterweighted elevator, it shall conform to 3.4, 3.6, 3.14, 3.15, 3.17.2, 3.18, 3.20, and 3.21. See also 8.7.3.3.

8.7.3.27 Car Buffers and Bumpers. Where alterations are made to car buffers or bumpers, the installation shall conform to 3.21 and 3.22.2. Existing buffers are not required to conform to 2.22.4.5(b), 2.22.4.7, 2.22.4.10, and 2.22.4.11.

8.7.3.28 Guide Rails, Supports, and Fastenings. Where alterations are made to car and counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5%, the installation shall conform to 3.23 and 3.28.

8.7.3.29 Tanks. Where a tank is installed as part of an alteration or altered, the tank shall conform to 3.24.

8.7.3.30 Terminal Stopping Devices. Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device, the installation shall conform to 3.25.

8.7.3.31 Operating Devices and Control Equipment

8.7.3.31.1 Top-of-Car Operating Devices. Where there is an alteration to, or addition of, a top-of-car operating device, it shall conform to 3.26.2.

8.7.3.31.2 Car Leveling or Truck Zoning Devices. Where there is an alteration to, or addition of, a car leveling device or a truck zoning device, it shall conform to 3.26.3.2.

8.7.3.31.3 Anticreep Leveling Device. Where there is an alteration of an anticreep leveling device, it shall conform to 3.26.3.1.

8.7.3.31.4 Change in Power Supply. Where an alteration consists of a change in power supply at the mainline terminals of the elevator controller involving

(*a*) change in voltage, frequency, or number of phases;

(*b*) change from direct current to alternating current, or vice versa; or

(*c*) change to a combination of direct or alternating current.

Electrical equipment shall conform to 3.26.1, 3.26.4, 3.26.5, and 3.26.6 (not including 2.26.4.4).

8.7.3.31.5 Controllers

(*a*) Where a controller is installed without any change in the type of operation control or motion control as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 2.26.1.4, 2.26.1.5, 2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.2, 2.26.4.3, 2.26.5, 2.26.7, 3.26.2, 3.26.3, 3.26.5, 3.26.7, 3.26.10, and 3.25.

(b) Where a controller for the operation of hoistway doors, car doors, or car gates is installed as part of an alteration, all new and modified equipment and wiring shall conform to 2.26.4.1 and 2.26.4.2.

8.7.3.31.6 Change in Type of Motion Control. Where there is a change in the type of motion control, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to 3.25.

(b) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 3.26. The requirements of 2.26.4.2 and 2.26.4.4 do not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(c) Emergency operation and signaling devices shall conform to 3.27.

8.7.3.31.7 Change in Type of Operation Control. Where there is a change in the type of operation control, the installation shall conform to the following:

(a) The protection of the hoistway landing openings shall conform to 2.11.1 through 2.11.13 as modified by 3.11.1, and conform to 3.12.1 and 3.13.

(b) Car enclosures and car doors or gates shall conform to 3.14, except that where existing car enclosures and/or car doors or gates are retained, conformance with the following requirements is not required:

(1) requirements 2.14.1.3, 2.14.1.5.1, and 2.14.1.8

(2) requirements 2.14.2.1, 2.14.2.3, and 2.14.2.4

(3) requirement 2.14.3

(4) requirements 2.14.4.3 and 2.14.4.6

(c) The capacity and loading shall conform to 3.16.

(d) The terminal stopping devices shall conform to 3.25.

(e) The operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 3.26. The requirements of 2.26.4.2, 2.26.4.3, and 2.26.4.4 shall not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the alteration.

(f) Emergency operation and signaling devices shall be provided and shall conform to 3.27.

8.7.3.31.8 Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices

(a) Where an alteration is made to car emergency signaling devices, the installation shall conform to 2.27.1.

(b) Where an alteration is made to, or consists of the addition of, an emergency or standby power system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of 2.27.2.

(c) Where an alteration is made to firefighters' emergency operation, the installation shall conform to 3.27.

8.7.3.31.9 Auxiliary Power Lowering Operation. Where auxiliary power lowering operation is installed or altered, it shall conform to 3.26.10.

8.7.3.31.10 In-Car Stop Switch. On passenger elevators equipped with nonperforated car enclosures, the emergency stop switch, including all markings, shall be permitted to be removed if an in-car stop switch conforming to 2.26.2.21, 2.26.4.3, 2.26.9.3(a), and 3.26.4.2 is provided.

8.7.3.31.11 Electrical Protective Devices. Where there is an alteration to or addition of an electrical protection device, it shall conform to 3.26.4 for that device. **(07)**

8.7.4 Alterations to Elevators With Other Types of Driving Machines

8.7.4.1 Rack and Pinion Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a rack-and-pinion elevator, the entire installation shall comply with 4.1.

8.7.4.2 Screw-Column Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a screw-column elevator, the entire installation shall comply with 4.2.

8.7.4.3 Hand Elevators

8.7.4.3.1 Hoistway Enclosures and Machinery Space. Where an alteration is made to any portion of a hoistway enclosure or machinery space, the altered portion shall conform to 4.3.1 and 4.3.4.

8.7.4.3.2 Top Car and Counterweight Clearances. No alteration shall reduce any clearances or runby below that required by 4.3.3 or below the minimum clearances as originally installed.

8.7.4.3.3 Hoistway Entrances. Where new entrances are installed, the new entrances shall conform to 4.3.6, 4.3.7, and 4.3.8.

8.7.4.3.4 Car Enclosures. Where an alteration is made to a car enclosure, it shall conform to 4.3.9 and 4.3.11.

8.7.4.3.5 Car Frame and Platform. Where an alteration is made to a car frame or platform, the frame or platform shall conform to 4.3.11, 4.3.12, 4.3.13, and 4.3.16.

8.7.4.3.6 Capacity and Loading. No alteration shall reduce the rated load below that required by 4.3.14.1 and 4.3.14.2. Where the alteration involves an increase in rated load, the driving machine sheave shall comply with 4.3.19.1, 4.3.19.2, and 4.3.16.

8.7.4.3.7 Increase in Rise. Where the alteration involves an increase in the total rise to exceed 4 600 mm (15 ft), it shall conform to 4.3.3.1, 4.3.3.2, 4.3.15, and 4.3.16. **(ED)**

8.7.4.3.8 Guide Rails and Fastenings. Where an alteration involves the installation of guide rails, the guide rails and fastenings shall comply with 4.3.18.1, 4.3.18.2, and 4.3.18.3.

8.7.4.3.9 Overhead Beams and Supports. Where the alteration involves a change in the arrangement of or load on the overhead beams and sheaves, the new arrangement shall conform to 4.3.5.1 and 4.3.5.2, except that wood shall be permitted to be retained if it is structurally sound.

8.7.4.3.10 Power Attachments. No alteration shall implement the use of a power other than hand power.

8.7.5 Alterations to Special Application Elevators

8.7.5.1 Inclined Elevators. Where any alteration is made to an inclined elevator, the entire installation shall comply with 5.1.

8.7.5.2 Limited Use/Limited Application Elevators. Reserved.

8.7.5.3 Private Residence Elevators. Reserved.

8.7.5.4 Private Residence Inclined Elevators. Reserved.

8.7.5.5 Power Sidewalk Elevators

8.7.5.5.1 Changes in Electrical Wiring or Electrical Equipment. Where electrical wiring or equipment is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.8.

8.7.5.5.2 Sidewalk Door. Where a sidewalk door is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.11.2, 5.5.1.11.3, and 5.5.1.11.4.

8.7.5.5.3 Change in Car Enclosure, Car Doors, and Gates. Where the car enclosure, car door, or car gate is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.14.

8.7.5.5.4 Bow Irons and Stanchions. Where the bow iron and stanchion is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.15.2.

8.7.5.5.5 Increase in Rated Load. Where the alteration consists of an increase in rated load, the bottom and top clearances and runbys shall conform to 5.5.1.16, 5.5.1.18, 5.5.1.21, and 5.5.1.25.4.

8.7.5.5.6 Increase in Rated Speed. Where the alteration consists of an increase in rated speed, the capacity and loading shall conform to 5.5.1.15, 5.5.1.16, 5.5.1.19, and 5.5.1.22.

8.7.5.5.7 Existing Driving Machine. Where the driving machine is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 5.5.1.8, 5.5.1.9, 5.5.1.23, and 5.5.1.25.

8.7.5.5.8 Change in Type of Operating Devices and/or Control Equipment. Where the alteration consists of a change in the existing type of operation or control equipment, or both, the new operating devices and control equipment shall conform to 5.5.1.8 and 5.5.1.25.

8.7.5.6 Rooftop Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a rooftop elevator, the entire installation shall comply with 5.6.

8.7.5.7 Special Purpose Personnel Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a special purpose personnel elevator, the entire installation shall comply with 5.7.

8.7.5.8 Shipboard Elevators. Where any alteration is made to a shipboard elevator, the entire installation shall comply with 5.8.

8.7.5.9 Mine Elevators

8.7.5.9.1 General Requirements. Where any alteration is made to a mine elevator, the alteration shall conform to the requirements of 8.7.1 and 8.7.2, except as modified by 5.9.

8.7.5.9.2 Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection. Ascending car overspeed and unintended car movement protection shall be provided and shall conform to 2.19.

8.7.5.9.3 Car Top Protection. The car top access panel size requirements in 5.9.14.1(b) do not apply where the existing car top is retained. The dimensions of the existing car top access panel shall not be reduced by the alteration.

8.7.6 Alterations to Escalators and Moving Walks

8.7.6.1 Escalators

8.7.6.1.1 General Requirements. A change in component parts that are interchangeable in form, fit, and function is not considered an alteration and need not comply with the requirements in this Section. See 8.6.3.1. **(07)**

The addition of a component or a device that was not part of the original design is an alteration and must conform to the requirements of 8.7.6.1 for that device or component.

When multiple driving machines per escalator are utilized, operating and safety devices required by 8.7.6.1 shall simultaneously control all driving machines.

The requirements of 6.1.3.6.5 do not apply to existing escalators that were not required to comply with this requirement at the time of the original installation.

8.7.6.1.2 Relocation of Escalator. Where an escalator is relocated, it shall comply with 6.1. The requirements of 6.1.7.4.2 do not apply to electrical equipment unchanged by the relocation. The requirements of 6.1.3.6.5 do not apply to existing escalators that were not required to comply with this requirement at the time of the original installation.

8.7.6.1.3 Protection of Floor Openings. Any alteration to the floor openings in escalators shall comply with 6.1.1.1.

8.7.6.1.4 Protection of Trusses and Machinery Spaces Against Fire. Any alteration to the sides and/or undersides of escalator trusses and machinery spaces shall conform to 6.1.2.1.

(07) **8.7.6.1.5 Construction Requirements**

(a) *Angle of Inclination.* No alteration of an escalator shall change the angle of inclination, as originally designed, by more than 1 deg.

(b) *Geometry.* Any alteration to the geometry of the escalator components shall conform to 6.1.3.2.

(c) *Balustrades.* Any alteration to the balustrades shall conform to 6.1.3.3 for the altered components.

(d) *Skirt Deflector Devices.* Any alteration or addition of skirt deflector devices shall conform to 6.1.3.3.10

NOTE [8.7.6.1.5(c)]: The balustrade does not include the handrail.

NOTE [8.7.6.1.5(d)]: The vertical dimensions on existing skirt panels may not allow full compliance. See 1.2.

8.7.6.1.6 Handrails. Any alteration to the handrails or handrail system shall require conformance with 6.1.3.2.2, 6.1.3.4.1 through 6.1.3.4.4, 6.1.3.4.6, 6.1.6.3.12, and 6.1.6.4.

8.7.6.1.7 Step System

(a) Any alteration to the step system shall require conformance with 6.1.3.3.5, 6.1.3.5 [except as specified in 8.7.6.1.7(b)], 6.1.3.6, 6.1.3.8, 6.1.3.9.4, 6.1.3.10.4, 6.1.3.11, 6.1.6.3.3, 6.1.6.3.9, 6.1.6.3.11, 6.1.6.3.14, and 6.1.6.5.

(b) Steps having a width less than 560 mm (22 in.) shall not be reduced in width by the alteration.

8.7.6.1.8 Combplates. Any alteration of the combplates shall require conformance with 6.1.6.3.13.

(07) **8.7.6.1.9 Trusses and Girders.** Any alterations or welding, cutting, and splicing of the truss or girder shall conform to 8.7.1.4. Alterations shall result in the escalator's conforming to 6.1.3.7, 6.1.3.9.1, and 6.1.3.10.1.

The installation of a new escalator into an existing truss shall conform to all of the requirements of 6.1.

8.7.6.1.10 Step Wheel Tracks. Any alteration to the tracks shall result in the escalator's conforming with 6.1.3.8, 6.1.3.9.4, 6.1.3.10.1, and 8.7.1.4.

8.7.6.1.11 Rated Load and Speed. Any alteration that increases the rated load or rated speed or both shall result in the escalator's conforming with 6.1.

8.7.6.1.12 Driving Machine, Motor, and Brake

(a) *Driving Machine.* An alteration to the driving machine shall result in the escalator's conforming to 6.1.3.9.2, 6.1.3.10.3, 6.1.4.1, 6.1.5.1, 6.1.5.2, 6.1.5.3.1, 6.1.5.3.2, 6.1.6.3.4, and 6.1.6.3.8.

(b) *Driving Motor.* An alteration to the drive motor shall result in the escalator's conforming to 6.1.3.9.2, 6.1.3.10.3, 6.1.4.1, 6.1.5.2, 6.1.5.3.1, 6.1.5.3.2, 6.1.6.3.2, 6.1.6.3.8, and 6.1.6.3.10.

(c) *Machine Brake.* An alteration to the machine brake shall result in the escalator's conforming to 6.1.3.9.3, 6.1.3.10.2, and 6.1.5.3.1.

8.7.6.1.13 Operating and Safety Devices. Any alteration to or addition of operating and or safety devices shall conform to 6.1.6 for that device.

8.7.6.1.14 Lighting, Access, and Electrical Work. An alteration to or addition of lighting, access, or electrical work shall conform with the specific requirements within 6.1.7 for that change.

8.7.6.1.15 Entrance and Egress. Any alteration to the entrance or egress end shall comply with 6.1.3.6.1 through 6.1.3.6.4.

8.7.6.1.16 Controller. Where a controller is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 6.1.6.10 through 6.1.6.15, and 6.1.7.4.

8.7.6.2 Moving Walks

8.7.6.2.1 General Requirements. A change in component parts that are interchangeable in form, fit, and function is not considered an alteration and need not comply with the requirements in this Section. See 8.6.3.1. (07)

The addition of a component or a device that was not part of the original design is an alteration and must conform to the requirements of 8.7.6.2 for that device or component.

When multiple driving machines per moving walk are utilized, operating and safety devices required by 8.7.6.2 shall simultaneously control all driving machines.

8.7.6.2.2 Relocation of Moving Walk. Where a moving walk is relocated, it shall comply with 6.2.

8.7.6.2.3 Protection of Floor Openings. Any alteration to the floor openings for moving walks shall comply with 6.2.1.1.

8.7.6.2.4 Protection of Trusses and Machinery Spaces Against Fire. Any alteration to the sides or undersides, or both, of moving walk trusses and machinery spaces shall conform to 6.2.2.1.

8.7.6.2.5 Construction Requirements

(a) *Angle of Inclination.* Alteration of a moving walk that increases the angle of inclination shall require conformance with 6.2.

(b) *Geometry.* Any alteration to the geometry of the moving walk components shall require conformance with 6.2.3.2.

(c) *Balustrades.* Any alteration to the balustrades shall require conformance with 6.2.3.3.

NOTE [8.7.6.2.5(c)]: The balustrade does not include the handrail.

8.7.6.2.6 Handrails. An alteration to the handrails or handrail system shall require conformance with 6.2.3.2.3, 6.2.3.4, 6.2.6.3.10, and 6.2.6.4.

8.7.6.2.7 Treadway System

(a) An alteration to the treadway system shall require conformance with 6.2.3.2.3, 6.2.3.3.5, 6.2.3.3.6, 6.2.3.5, 6.2.3.6 [except as specified in 8.7.6.2.7(b)], 6.2.3.8, 6.2.3.9, 6.2.3.10, 6.2.3.11, 6.2.3.12.4, 6.2.3.12.5, 6.2.3.13, 6.2.6.3.3, 6.2.6.5, and 6.2.6.3.9.

(*b*) The minimum width of the moving walk shall be permitted to be less than that required by 6.2.3.7. The existing width, if less than required by 6.2.3.7, shall not be decreased by the alteration.

8.7.6.2.8 Combplates. An alteration of the combplates shall require conformance with 6.2.3.8 and 6.2.6.3.11.

8.7.6.2.9 Trusses and Girders. Any alterations or welding, cutting, and splicing of the truss or girder shall conform to 8.7.1.4. Alterations shall result in the moving walk's conforming to 6.2.3.9, 6.2.3.10.1, and 6.2.3.12.1. The installation of a new moving walk into an existing truss shall conform to all of the requirements of 6.2.

8.7.6.2.10 Track System. Any alteration to the tracks shall result in the moving walk's conforming to 6.2.3.9, 6.2.3.10, 6.2.3.11.1, and 8.7.1.4.

8.7.6.2.11 Rated Load and Speed. Any alteration that increases the rated load or rated speed or both shall result in the moving walk's conforming to 6.2.

8.7.6.2.12 Driving Machine, Motor, and Brake

(*a*) *Driving Machine.* An alteration to the driving machine shall result in the moving walk's conforming to 6.2.3.10.2, 6.2.3.11.2, 6.2.3.11.3, 6.2.3.13, 6.2.3.14, 6.2.3.15, 6.2.4, 6.2.5.1, 6.2.5.3.1, 6.2.5.3.2, 6.2.6.3.4, and 6.2.6.3.8.

(*b*) *Drive Motor.* An alteration to the drive motor shall result in the moving walk's conforming to 6.2.3.10.2, 6.2.3.11.2, 6.2.3.11.3, 6.2.4, 6.2.5.2, 6.2.5.3.1, 6.2.6.3.2, 6.2.6.3.7, and 6.2.6.3.8.

(*c*) *Machine Brake.* An alteration to the machine brake shall result in the moving walk's conforming to 6.2.3.10.3, 6.2.3.11.2, 6.2.3.12.3, 6.2.5.3.1, and 6.2.5.3.2.

8.7.6.2.13 Operating and Safety Devices. An alteration to or addition of operating and/or safety devices shall conform with the specific requirements within 6.2.6 for that device.

8.7.6.2.14 Lighting, Access, and Electrical Work. An alteration to or addition of lighting, access, or electrical work shall conform with the specific requirements within 6.2.7 for that change.

8.7.6.2.15 Controller. Where a controller is installed as part of an alteration, it shall conform to 6.2.6.9 through 6.2.6.14, and 6.2.7.4.

8.7.7 Alterations to Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts

8.7.7.1 Dumbwaiters and Material Lifts Without Automatic Transfer Devices

8.7.7.1.1 General. When any alteration is made to a dumbwaiter or material lift, all work performed as part of the alteration shall comply with 7.1 through 7.6.

8.7.7.1.2 Increase in Rated Load. Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load, the installation shall conform to either of the following:

(*a*) requirement 7.2, except 7.2.1 for hand and electric dumbwaiters

(*b*) requirement 7.3, except 7.3.4.1 for hydraulic dumbwaiters

8.7.7.2 Addition of Automatic Transfer Device. Where an automatic transfer device is installed on an existing elevator or dumbwaiter, the resultant combination of material lift or dumbwaiter with automatic transfer device shall conform to Part 7.

8.7.7.3 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices

8.7.7.3.1 Where any alteration is made to a material lift or dumbwaiter with an automatic transfer device, the entire installation shall comply with 7.7 through 7.10.

8.7.7.3.2 Where an automatic transfer device is removed from a material lift and is not replaced, the installation shall conform to 7.4, Material Lift Without Transfer Device.

8.7.7.3.3 Where a material lift is altered to be an elevator, it shall comply with Part 2 or Part 3.

8.7.7.3.4 Where a material lift or dumbwaiter with an automatic transfer device is altered to a dumbwaiter, it shall comply with 7.1 through 7.3.

SECTION 8.8 WELDING

8.8.1 Qualification of Welders

Where required elsewhere in this Code, welding of parts, except for tack welds later incorporated into finished welds, shall be undertaken

(*a*) by welders qualified in accordance with the requirements of Section 5 of ANSI/AWS D1.1, whereby the welders shall be qualified by the manufacturer or contractor; a professional consulting engineer; or a recognized testing laboratory; or

(*b*) by a fabricator qualified to the requirements of CSA W47.1, whichever is applicable (see Part 9).

8.8.2 Welding Steel

Where required elsewhere in this Code, welding shall conform to either of the following, whichever is applicable (see Part 9):

(*a*) the design and procedure requirements of the applicable section of ANSI/AWS D1.1 or ANSI/AWS D1.3

(*b*) the design and procedure requirements of CSA W59

8.8.3 Welding Metals Other Than Steel

Where required elsewhere in this Code, welding of materials other than steel shall be done in accordance with the latest AWS or CSA requirements applicable to the specific materials used.

SECTION 8.9 CODE DATA PLATE

Requirement 8.9 contains requirements for all new and existing equipment within the Scope of this Code.

8.9.1 Required Information

Data plate shall be provided and maintained that shall indicate the Code to be used for inspections and tests (see 8.10.1.2). The data plate shall indicate the Code and edition in effect at the time of installation. The data plate shall also indicate the Code in effect at the time of any alteration and indicate the applicable requirements of 8.7.

(07) 8.9.2 Location

The data plate shall be in plain view, securely attached to the main line disconnect or on the controller. An additional data plate shall be installed in the vicinity of the starting switch on the exterior of escalators and moving walks.

8.9.3 Material and Construction

The data plate shall be of such material and construction that the letters and figures stamped, etched, cast, or otherwise applied to the face shall remain permanently and readily legible. The height of the letters and figures shall be not less than 3.2 mm (0.125 in.).

SECTION 8.10 ACCEPTANCE INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

Requirement 8.10 covers acceptance inspections and tests of new or altered installations.

NOTE: Compliance with certain requirements is verifiable through review of design documents, engineering, or type tests.

8.10.1 General Requirements for Acceptance Inspections and Tests

8.10.1.1 Persons Authorized to Make Acceptance Inspections and Tests

8.10.1.1.1 The acceptance inspection shall be made by an inspector employed by the authority having jurisdiction, or by a person authorized by the authority having jurisdiction.

8.10.1.1.2 The person installing or altering the equipment shall perform all of the tests required by 8.10.2 through 8.10.5 in the presence of the inspector specified in 8.10.1.1.1.

8.10.1.1.3 The inspector shall meet the qualification requirements of the ASME QEI-1. Inspectors and inspection supervisors shall be certified by an organization accredited by ASME in accordance with the requirements of ASME QEI-1. Requirement 8.10.1.1.3 does not apply in Canadian jurisdictions.

8.10.1.2 Applicability of Inspection and Test Requirements. Inspections and tests required by 8.10.2 through 8.10.5 are to determine that the equipment conforms with the following applicable requirements:

(*a*) the Code at the time of installation

(*b*) the Code effective as applicable to and for each alteration

(*c*) the ASME A17.3 Code if adopted by the authority having jurisdiction

NOTES (8.10.1.2):

(1) The appropriate ASME A17.2 Inspectors' Manual (see Preface, ASME Elevator Publications) is a guide for inspections and tests.

(2) References to "Items" and "Divisions" of the Inspectors' Manual, and to the requirements of this Code, are indicated in parentheses as a convenient reference to the applicable testing procedures and requirements.

8.10.1.3 Making Safety Devices Inoperative or Ineffective. No person shall at any time make any required safety device or electrical protective device inoperative or ineffective, except where necessary during tests and inspections. Such devices shall be restored to their normal operating condition in conformity with the applicable requirements prior to returning the equipment to service (see 2.26.7).

8.10.1.4 Unique or Product-Specific Procedures or Methods. Where unique or product-specific procedures or methods are required to inspect or test equipment, such procedures or methods shall be provided by the manufacturer or installer. (07)

8.10.2 Acceptance Inspection and Tests of Electric Elevators

8.10.2.1 Inspection and Tests Required. New installations shall be inspected and tested as required by 8.10.2.2 before being placed in service.

Altered installations shall be inspected as specified in 8.10.2.3.1. Altered installations shall be tested as specified in 8.10.2.3.2 before being placed back in service.

8.10.2.2 Inspection and Test Requirements for New Installations

8.10.2.2.1 Inside Car

(*a*) Door Reopening Device (2.13.5) (Item 1.1)

(*b*) Stop Switches (Item 1.2)

(*1*) emergency stop switch (2.26.2.5)

(*2*) in-car stop switch (2.26.2.21)

(*c*) Operating Control Devices (Item 1.3)

(1) operating devices (2.26.1.1, 2.26.1.2, and 2.26.1.6)

(2) in-car inspection (2.26.1.4.3)

(3) inspection operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5)

(d) Car Floor and Landing Sill (Item 1.4)

(1) car floor (2.15.5)

(2) clearance (2.5.1.4 and 2.5.1.5)

(3) landing sill guard, illumination, and hinging (2.11.10)

(4) car hinged sills (2.15.16)

(e) Car Lighting (2.14.7) (Item 1.5)

(1) normal illumination (2.14.7)

(2) auxiliary lighting system (2.14.7.1.3)

(f) Car Emergency Signal (2.27.1 and 2.11.1.3) (Item 1.6)

(g) Car Door or Gate (Item 1.7)

(1) closed position (2.14.4.11)

(2) contact or interlock (2.14.4.2, 2.26.2.15, 2.26.2.28)

(3) car landing door clearances (2.14.4.5)

(4) car door guides (2.14.4.6)

(5) passenger car door (2.14.5)

(6) freight car door or gate (2.14.6)

(h) Door Closing Force Test (2.13.4) (Item 1.8)

(i) Power Closing of Doors or Gates (2.13.3) (Item 1.9): Test Closing Time Per Data Plate (2.13.4.2.4)

(j) Power Opening of Doors or Gates (Item 1.10)

(07) *(1) Power Opening of Doors (2.13.2).* Determine that power opening of car and hoistway doors only occurs when the car is at rest at the landing, or in the landing zone, except in the case of static control, check that the power shall not be applied until the car is within 300 mm (12 in.) of the landing.

(07) *(2) Leveling Zone and Leveling Speed (2.16.1.6.3).* Check that the leveling zone does not exceed the maximum allowable distance. Check that the leveling speed does not exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). In addition, for static control elevators, the person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the leveling speed with the doors open is limited to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) and that the speed limiting (or speed monitor) means is independent of the normal means of controlling this speed (2.26.1.6.6).

(3) Inner Landing Zone (2.26.1.6.7). For static control elevators, check that the zone in which the car can move with the doors open is not more than 75 mm (3 in.) above or below the landing [Item 1.10.2(c)].

(k) Car Vision Panels and Glass Car Doors (Item 1.11)

(1) vision panel (2.14.2.5)

(2) glass doors (2.14.5.8)

(3) access panels (2.14.2.6)

(l) car Enclosure (Item 1.12)

(1) enclosure and lining materials (2.14.2.1 and 2.14.3.1)

(2) equipment prohibited inside car (2.14.1.9)

(3) classes of loading (2.16.2.2)

(4) passengers on freight elevators (2.16.4)

(5) identification in cars (2.29.1)

(m) Emergency Exit (Item 1.13)

(1) car top (2.14.1.5)

(2) car side (2.14.1.10)

(n) Ventilation (2.14.2.3 and 2.14.3.3) (Item 1.14)

(o) Signs and Operating Device Symbols (2.26.12) (Item 1.15)

(p) Rated Load, Platform Area, and Data Plate (Item 1.16)

(1) rated load and platform area (2.16.1 and 2.16.2)

(2) capacity and data plates (2.16.3)

(3) signs in freight elevators (2.16.5 and 2.16.7)

(q) Emergency or Standby Power Operation (Item 1.17). Operation of elevators equipped with emergency or standby power shall be inspected and tested for conformance with the applicable requirements (2.16.8 and 2.27.2).

(r) Restricted Opening of Car or Hoistway Doors (2.12.5) (Item 1.18)

(s) Car Ride (2.23, 2.23.6, and 2.15.2) (Item 1.19)

(t) Door Monitoring Systems (2.26.5)

(u) Stopping Accuracy (2.26.11)

(v) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.2.2.2)

(w) Working Areas in the Car (2.7.5.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(x) Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device (2.26.2.35)

8.10.2.2.2 Machine Room/Spaces, Control Room/Spaces **(07)**

NOTE: A machinery space outside the hoistway containing an electric driving machine and a motor controller is a machine room (2.7).

(a) Location of Rooms/Spaces (2.7.6.1 and 2.7.6.2)

(b) Location of Equipment (2.7.6.3)

(c) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)

(d) Means of Access (Item 2.1)

(1) access (2.7.3.1 through 2.7.3.4)

(2) door fire-protection rating (2.7.1.1)

(e) Headroom (2.7.4) (Item 2.2)

(f) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4)

(g) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5)

(h) Lighting and Receptacles (Item 2.3)

(1) lighting (2.7.9.1)

(2) receptacles (NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable)

(i) Enclosure of Machine Room/Spaces, Control Room/Spaces (Item 2.4)

(1) floors (2.1.3 and 2.7.1.3)

(2) enclosure (2.7.1 and 2.8.1)

(j) Housekeeping (2.8.1) (Item 2.5)

(k) Ventilation and Heating (2.7.9.2) (Item 2.6)

(l) Fire Extinguisher (8.6.1.6.5) (Item 2.7)

(m) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (2.8) (Item 2.8)

(n) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment (2.10.1) (Item 2.9)

(o) Numbering of Elevators, Machines, and Disconnect Switches [2.29.1(a) through (f)] (Item 2.10)

(p) Maintenance Path and Maintenance Clearance (2.7.2)

(q) Stop Switch (2.7.3.5 and 2.26.2.24)

(r) Disconnecting Means and Control (2.26.4.1 and NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable) (Item 2.11)

(s) Controller Wiring, Fuses, Grounding, etc. (Item 2.12)

(1) wiring (2.26.4.1)

(2) fuses (2.26.4.1)

(3) grounding (2.26.1 and NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable)

(4) phase-protection (2.26.6)

(5) certification (2.26.4.2)

(6) clearances (NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable)

(7) capacitors or devices (2.26.7)

(t) Control Circuits, Including Static Control (Item 2.15). The person or firm installing the elevator shall demonstrate or document conformance with the following:

(1) general (2.26.9.1, 2.26.9.2, and 2.26.9.8)

(2) redundancy and its checking (2.26.9.3 and 2.26.9.4)

(3) static control without motor generator sets (2.26.9.5 and 2.26.9.6)

(4) installation of Capacitors or Other Devices to Make Electrical Protective Devices Ineffective (2.26.6)

(u) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3) (Item 2.16)

(v) Braking System. For passenger elevators and all freight elevators, the brake shall be tested for compliance with applicable requirements. Place the load as shown in Table 8.11.2.3.4 in the car and run it to the lowest landing by normal operating means. The driving machine shall safely lower, stop, and hold the car with this load. Freight elevators of class C-2 loading shall sustain and level the elevator car. (2.16.6) (Item 2.17)

(1) braking system (2.24.8.2.2)

(2) electromechanical brake (2.24.8.3)

(w) Drive Machines (2.24.1, 2.24.4, 2.24.5, and 2.24.9) (Item 2.18)

(x) Gears, Bearings, and Flexible Connections (2.24.6, 2.24.7, and 2.24.10) (Item 2.19)

(y) Winding Drum Machine (Item 2.20)

(1) where permitted (2.24.1)

(2) drum diameter (2.24.2.1 and 2.24.2.2)

(3) slack-rope device shall be tested by creating slack rope (2.26.2.1)

(4) spare rope turns (2.20.7)

(5) securing of ropes to drums (2.20.6)

(6) final terminal stopping devices (2.25.3.5)

(z) Belt- or Chain-Drive Machine (2.24.9) (Item 2.21)

(aa) Motor Generator (2.26.9.7) (Item 2.22)

(bb) Absorption of Regenerated Power (2.26.10) (Item 2.23)

(cc) Traction Sheaves (Item 2.25)

(1) diameter (2.24.2.1, 2.24.2.2, and 2.24.2.4)

(2) grooves (2.24.2.1)

(3) traction limits (2.24.2.3 and 2.16.6) shall be verified

(a) During an emergency stop initiated by any of the electrical protective devices listed in 2.26.2 (except 2.26.2.13), at the rated speed in the down direction, with passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted to carry passengers carrying 125% of their rated load, or with freight elevators carrying their rated load, cars shall stop and safely hold the load.

(b) Traction shall slip, or the hoist machine shall stall, if either the car or the counterweight bottoms on its buffer.

(dd) Secondary and Deflector Sheaves (2.24.2) (Item 2.26)

(ee) Rope Fastenings (2.9.3.3, 2.20.5, and 2.20.9) (Item 2.27)

(ff) Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 2.28). The following tests are performed with an empty car in the up direction and the car loaded with rated load or 125% of rated load in the down direction (see 2.16.8).

(1) Test normal terminal stopping device for conformance with 2.25.2 by making inoperative the normal stopping means. The final terminal stopping device and the emergency terminal speed-limiting device shall remain operative.

(2) Test emergency terminal speed-limiting device for conformance with 2.25.4.1.

(3) For static control elevators, see 2.25.4.2. [See also 8.10.2.2.3(g) and (h).]

(gg) Operating Devices

(1) inspection operation (2.26.1.4.4)

(2) inspection operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5)

(3) additional operation devices (2.26.1.3)

(hh) Governor, Overspeed Switch, and Seal (Item 2.13)

(1) The tripping speed of the governor and the speed at which the governor overspeed switch operates shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.18.2 and 2.18.4.

(2) The governor rope pull-through and pull-out forces shall be tested to determine conformance with

2.17.15 and 2.18.6. If adjustments are made to the governor it shall be sealed immediately following the test.

(3) The adjustable means shall be sealed (2.18.3).

(4) A marking plate conforming to 2.18.9 shall be attached at the governor.

(5) Access and securing of car, if applicable (2.7.6.3.4)

(ii) Car and Counterweight Safeties (Item 2.29)

(1) General Requirements for Types A, B, and C Safeties. The following requirements apply to the acceptance tests of Types A, B, and C safeties (Item 2.29):

(a) Car safeties shall be tested with rated load in the car. In making the test of car safeties, the load shall be centered on each quarter of the platform symmetrically with respect to the centerlines of the platform. Counterweight safeties, where provided, shall be tested with no load in the car.

(b) The tripping speed of the governor shall be measured by means of a tachometer and, if necessary, adjusted to conform to 2.18.2.

(c) If adjustments to the tripping speed are made, the governor shall be sealed immediately following the test. Governors shall be sealed, as required by 2.18.3.

(d) The operation of the governor overspeed and the car safety-mechanism switch shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.18.4 and 2.17.7.

(e) After the safety has stopped the car, the level of the car platform shall be checked to determine conformance with 2.17.9.2.

(f) A metal tag with the rule number, test date, and name of the person/firm performing the test shall be attached to the releasing carrier or where the governor rope attaches to the safety.

(2) Type A Governor-Operated Safeties

(a) Type A governor-operated safeties shall be tested by operating the car at its rated speed in the down direction and tripping the governor jaws by hand. A test shall also be made of the inertia application of the safety to determine conformance with 2.17.8.1, by attaching the proper weight to the return run of the governor rope. The manufacturer shall inform the person making the test of the weight necessary to be added to the governor rope when making the inertia application test. This weight shall be that necessary to reproduce inertia operation of the safety at not more than $\frac{9}{10}$ gravity. The inertia application test shall be made with the car stationary, and the weight, when released, shall move the safety parts into contact with the rails. See Nonmandatory Appendix M, Fig. M-1, for location of weight to be attached to the governor rope when making the inertia test. Inertia application of the safety on the Type A auxiliary safety plank of Type C safeties is not required.

(b) If means other than inertia application of the safety is provided, such means shall be tested in an appropriate manner to ensure that the safety will apply without appreciable delay under free-fall condition and that the safety application is independent of the location of the break in the hoisting ropes.

(3) Type A Safeties Without Governors. Type A safeties without governors that are operated only as a result of the breaking or slackening of the suspension ropes shall be tested by obtaining the necessary slack rope to cause it to function.

(4) Types B and C Safeties

(a) Types B and C safeties shall be subjected to an overspeed test, with the suspension ropes attached, by gradually increasing the speed of the car until the governor causes application of the safety.

Safeties of elevators equipped with AC driving-machine motors, where the car with its rated load does not cause sufficient overspeed when the machine brake is released to trip the governor jaws, shall be tested by operating the car at its rated speed in the down direction and tripping governor jaws by hand; see 8.10.2.2.2(bb)(1)(b) for test of governor tripping speed.

(b) The overspeed switch on the governor shall be inoperative during the overspeed test. In order to ensure that the safety will retard the car with the minimum assistance from the elevator driving machine and minimize the development of slack rope and fallback of the counterweight, the switch on the car operated by the car safety mechanism shall, for the duration of the test, be temporarily adjusted to open as close as possible to the position at which the car safety mechanism is in the fully applied position.

(c) The stopping distances for Type B safeties shall conform to 2.17.3, and shall be determined by measuring the length of the marks made by the safety jaws or wedges on both sides of each car guide rail, deducting the length of the safety jaw or wedge used, and taking the average of the four readings.

(d) For Type B safeties, the movement of the governor rope to operate the safety mechanism shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.17.11.

(e) For Type C safeties, the stopping distance shall be equal to the stroke of the buffer located between the lower member of the car frame and the auxiliary safety plank, and shall conform to 2.17.8.2. After the safety has stopped the car, the level of the auxiliary safety plank shall be checked to determine conformance with 2.17.8.2.6.

(f) For Type C safeties, the buffer compression switch and oil level devices shall be tested to determine conformance with 2.17.8.2.7 and 2.17.8.2.8.

(jj) Ascending Car Overspeed, and Unintended Car Motion Protection

(1) Ascending Car Overspeed Protection. The means to prevent ascending car overspeed shall be inspected and tested with no load in the car to verify conformance with 2.19.1.2.

(2) Unintended Car Motion. The means to prevent unintended car motion shall be inspected and tested to verify conformance with 2.19.2.2.

(kk) Speed. The speed of the car shall be verified with and without rated load, in both directions (2.16.3.2).

(ll) Code Data Plate (8.9) (Item 2.14)

(mm) Emergency Brake (2.19.3)

(nn) Wiring Diagrams (8.6.1.6.3)

(oo) AC Drives From a DC Source (Item 2.24). The person or firm that installed the AC drive from a DC source shall demonstrate compliance with 2.26.9.6 (Item 2.24.3).

(07) **8.10.2.2.3 Top-of-Car**

(a) Top-of-Car Stop Switch (2.26.2.8) (Item 3.1)

(b) Car Top Light and Outlet (2.14.7.1.4) (Item 3.2)

(c) Top-of-Car Operating Device and Equipment (Item 3.3)

(1) top-of-car inspection operation (2.26.1.4.2)

(2) equipment on car top (2.14.1.7)

(3) inspection operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5)

(d) Top-of-Car Clearance and Refuge Space (Item 3.4)

(1) top-of-car clearance (2.4.6 through 2.4.8, and 2.4.10)

(2) refuge space and marking (2.4.12)

(3) guard rails (2.14.1.7.1)

(e) Top Counterweight Clearance (2.4.9) (Item 3.24)

(f) Car, Overhead, and Deflector Sheaves (2.24.2) (Item 3.25)

(g) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 3.5). Verify location and type of switches (2.25.2). [See also 8.10.2.2.2(y).]

(h) Final Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 3.6). Verify location and type of switches for conformance with 2.25.3 and 2.26.4.3.

(i) Broken Rope, Chain, or Tape Switch (Item 3.26). Verify for conformance with 2.25.2.3.2, 2.26.2.6, and 2.26.4.3.

(j) Car Leveling Devices (2.26.1.6) (Item 3.7)

(k) Data Plate (2.16.3.3 and 2.20.2) (Item 3.27)

(l) Top Emergency Exit (2.14.1.5 and 2.26.2.18) (Item 3.8)

(m) Counterweight and Counterweight Buffer (2.21 and 2.22) (Item 3.28)

(n) Counterweight Safeties (Item 3.29). Visually inspect counterweight safeties, including marking plate (2.17.4).

(o) Identification [2.29.1(g) and 2.29.2] (Item 3.9)

(p) Hoistway Construction (2.1) (Item 3.10)

(q) Hoistway Smoke Control (2.1.4) (Item 3.11)

(r) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (2.8) (Item 3.12)

(s) Windows, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks (2.1.5, 2.1.6, and 2.11.10.1) (Item 3.12)

(t) Hoistway Clearances (2.4 and 2.5) (Item 3.12)

(u) Multiple Hoistways (2.1.1.4) (Item 3.15)

(v) Traveling Cables and Junction Boxes (2.8.2 and NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable) (Item 3.16)

(w) Door and Gate Equipment (Item 3.17)

(1) hoistway doors (2.11, 2.12, and 2.13)

(2) emergency doors (2.11.1.2)

(3) hoistway door fire-protection rating marking or labels (2.1.1.1.3 and 2.11.15.1)

(4) door safety retainers, location, and function (2.11.11.8)

(5) door closed position (2.12.2.2 and 2.12.3.2)

(6) hoistway Door Hanger (2.11.11.5.8 and 2.11.12.4.8)

(7) hoistway Door Locking Device (2.12.2.3, 2.12.2.5, 2.12.3.3, 2.12.3.5, 2.26.2.14, and 2.26.4.3)

(x) Car Frame, Counterweight Guides and Stiles (2.15) (Item 3.18)

(y) Guide Rails and Equipment (2.23) (Item 3.19)

(1) rail section (2.23.3)

(2) bracket spacing (2.23.4)

(3) surfaces and lubrication (2.23.6 and 2.17.16)

(4) joints and fish plates (2.23.7)

(5) bracket supports (2.23.9)

(6) fastenings (2.23.10)

(z) Governor Rope (Item 3.20). Verify governor rope data tag complies with 2.18.5. Verify the governor rope is as specified on the speed governor marking plate (2.18.9). Verify clearance complies with 2.18.5 and 2.18.9(c).

(aa) Governor Releasing Carrier (2.17.15) (Item 3.21)

(bb) Wire Rope Fastening and Hitch Plate (Item 3.22)

(1) fastenings (2.20.9)

(2) car and counterweight hitch plate (2.17.13)

(3) overhead hitch plate (2.9.3.4)

(4) equalizers (2.20.5)

(cc) Suspension Rope (Item 3.23). Verify number and diameter and data tag (2.20.2 and 2.20.4)

(dd) Compensating Means (2.21.4) (Item 3.34)

(ee) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.2.2.2)

(ff) Working Areas on the Car Top (2.7.5.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(gg) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)

(hh) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)

(ii) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)

8.10.2.2.4 Outside Hoistway (07)

(a) Car Platform Guard (Item 4.1)

(1) apron (2.15.9)

(2) car head guards (2.15.9.4)

(b) Hoistway Doors (2.11) (Item 4.2)

(1) test of closed biparting doors (2.11.12.4.3 and 2.11.12.4.7)

(2) hoistway door (2.11) [see also 8.10.2.2.3(w)]

(c) Vision Panels (2.11.7) (Item 4.3)

(d) Hoistway Door Locking Devices (2.12.2.3, 2.12.2.5, 2.12.3.3, 2.12.3.5, 2.12.4.3, 2.26.2.14, and 2.26.4.3) [see also 8.10.2.2.3(w)] (Item 4.4)

(e) access to Hoistway (Item 4.5)

(1) access for maintenance (2.12.6 and 2.12.7)

(2) access for emergency (2.12.6)

(f) Power Closing of Hoistway Doors (2.13.1, 2.13.3, and 2.13.4) [See also 8.10.2.2.1(i)] (Item 4.6)

(g) Sequence Operation (2.13.6 and 2.13.3.4) (Item 4.7)

(h) Hoistway Enclosure (2.1.1) (Item 4.8)

(i) Emergency and access hoistway openings (Item 4.10)

(1) blind hoistway emergency door (2.11.1.2 and 2.11.1.3)

(2) access openings for cleaning (2.11.1.4)

(j) Separate Counterweight Hoistway (2.3.3) (Item 4.11)

(k) Standby or Emergency Power Selection Switch (Item 4.12) (2.27.2 and 8.1). [See also 8.10.2.2.1(q)]

(l) Location of Equipment (2.7.6.3)

(m) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4)

(n) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5), Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.1), and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5)

(o) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)

(07) **8.10.2.2.5 Pit**

(a) General (Item 5.1)

(1) pit floor (2.2.2.2)

(2) drains, sumps and pumps (2.2.2.3, 2.2.2.4, and 2.2.2.5)

(3) guards between pits (2.3.2 and 2.2.3)

(4) counterweight guards (2.3.2)

(5) access to pit (2.2.4)

(6) access to underside of car (2.2.8)

(7) illumination (2.2.5)

(8) stop switch (2.2.6 and 2.26.2.7)

(9) pit depth (2.2.7)

(10) wiring, pipes, and ducts (2.8)

(b) Bottom Clearance and Runby (Item 5.2)

(1) car bottom clearances (2.4.1)

(2) refuge space and marking (2.4.1.3, 2.4.1.4, and 2.4.1.6)

(3) car and counterweight runbys (2.4.2 and 2.4.4.)

(4) warning signs [2.4.4(b)]

(5) horizontal pit clearances (2.5.1.2 and 2.5.1.6)

(c) Car and Counterweight Buffer (Item 5.9). Marking plates shall be checked in accordance with 2.22.3.3 or 2.22.4.11 for proper application. No test shall be required on spring-type buffers. The following tests on oil-type buffers shall be performed (Item 5.9).

(1) The level of the oil shall be checked to determine that it is within the maximum and minimum allowable limits (see 2.22.4.6).

(2) Car and counterweight buffers shall be tested to determine conformance with the plunger return requirements of 2.22.4.5.

(3) The car oil buffer shall be tested by running the car with its rated load onto the buffer at rated speed, except as specified in 8.10.2.2.5(c)(4). The counterweight oil buffer shall be tested by running the counterweight onto its buffer at rated speed with no load in the car, except as specified in 8.10.2.2.5(c)(4).

(4) For reduced stroke buffers conforming to 2.22.4.1.2, these tests shall be made at the reduced striking speed.

(5) This acceptance test of the oil buffer is also required where Type C safety is used to assure adequate structure and pit bumper contact.

(6) In making these tests, the normal and emergency terminal stopping devices shall be made temporarily inoperative. The final terminal stopping devices shall remain operative and be temporarily relocated, if necessary, to permit full compression of the buffer during the test.

(d) Final Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.3). Verify location, operation, and type of switches for conformance with 2.25.3 and 2.26.4.3.

(e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.4). Verify location, operation and type of switches for conformance with 2.25.2 [see 8.10.2.2.2(y)].

(f) Traveling Cables (Item 5.6) (2.8.2 and NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable)

(g) Governor-Rope Tension Devices (2.18.7) (Item 5.6)

(h) Compensating Chains, Ropes, and Sheaves (Item 5.10)

(1) fastenings (2.21.4)

(2) sheave switches (2.26.2.3 and 2.26.4.3)

(3) tie-down (2.21.4.2)

(i) Car Frame and Platform (Item 5.7)

(1) frame (2.15.4 through 2.15.7, and 2.15.9)

(2) fire protection (2.15.8)

(j) Car Safeties and Guiding Members (Item 5.8)

(1) rope movement (2.17.11)

(2) marking plate (2.17.14)

(3) car guiding members (2.15.2)

(4) running clearances (2.17.10)

(k) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.2.2.2)

(l) Working Areas in the Pit (2.7.5.2)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement [2.7.5.2.1(a) or (b)]

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(m) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)

(n) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3) *(o)* Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment (2.10.1)

(p) Pit Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

8.10.2.2.6 Firefighters' Emergency Operation. Verify conformance with 2.27.3 through 2.27.8.

(07) **8.10.2.2.7 Working Platforms**

(a) Working Platforms (2.7.5.3 and 2.7.5.4)

(1) operating instructions (8.6.10.8)

(b) Retractable Stops (2.7.5.5)

(1) retractable stop electrical device (2.26.2.37)

(c) Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

(07) **8.10.2.2.8 Functional Safety of Electrical/Electronic/Programmable Electronic Systems (E/E/PES).** Verify that the E/E/PES electrical protective devices (2.26.4.3.2) and the E/E/PES control and operating circuits (2.26.9), where provided, are listed/certified and labeled/marked with a SIL equal to or greater than the values indicated for the devices in Table 2.26.4.3.2 and 2.26.9, as applicable.

The person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that all E/E/PES electrical protective devices operate as intended.

8.10.2.3 Inspection and Test Requirements for Altered Installations

8.10.2.3.1 Alterations shall be inspected for compliance with the applicable requirements specified in 8.7.

Check code data plate for compliance with 8.7.1.8.

8.10.2.3.2 Tests shall be performed when the following alterations are made:

(a) Where the alteration consists of the addition of power operation to the door system (see 8.7.2.12), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(h), (i), (j), and (t); 8.10.2.2.3(c)(3); 8.10.2.2.3(j) and (w); 8.10.2.2.4(b), and (d) through (g); and 8.10.2.2.6.

(b) Where alterations have been made to the car or counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5% (8.7.2.24), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(s); 8.10.2.2.2(bb) and (cc); and 8.10.2.2.3(t), (x), and (y).

(c) Where alterations have been made to car or counterweight oil buffers (8.7.2.23), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.5(b) and (c).

(d) Where an alteration results in the increase in deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase the sum of the deadweight and the rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5% (see 8.7.2.15.2), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(p) and (q); 8.10.2.2.2(o), (p), (q), (s), (t), (u), (v)(3), (y), (bb), (cc), and (dd); 8.10.2.2.3(k) and (x); and 8.10.2.2.5(c) and (i).

(e) Where the alteration consists of the installation of new car or counterweight safeties, or where alterations are made to existing safeties (see 8.7.2.18), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(aa) and (bb); 8.10.2.2.3(n), (y), and (aa); and 8.10.2.2.5(j).

(f) Where any alteration is made to a speed governor (see 8.7.2.19), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(aa), (bb)(1), (bb)(2), and (bb)(4); and 8.10.2.2.3(aa).

(g) Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load (see 8.7.2.16.4), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(p), and (q); 8.10.2.2.2(o) through (u), (v)(3), (y), (bb), (cc), and (dd); 8.10.2.2.3(k) and (x); and 8.10.2.2.5(c) and (i).

(h) Where alterations are made to a driving machine brake (see 8.7.2.25), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(o) and (v)(3).

(i) Where the location of the driving machine has been changed (8.7.2.25.2), for alterations as described in 8.7.2.25.2(a), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(d), (i), (n), and (v)(3). For alterations as described in 8.7.2.25.2(b), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.

(j) Where an alteration increases the rated speed (8.7.2.17.2), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(c), (p), and (s); 8.10.2.2.2(l), (m), (o), (t), (u), (v), (w), (y), (aa), (bb), (cc), and (dd); 8.10.2.2.3(d), (e), (g), (h), (i), (k), (m), (n), and (cc); 8.10.2.2.4(e); and 8.10.2.2.5(b) through (e) and (j).

(k) Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device (8.7.2.26), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(y); 8.10.2.2.3(g) and (h); and 8.10.2.2.5(c)(4), (d), and (e).

(l) Where an alteration is made to a standby or emergency power system (see 8.7.2.28), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(q) and 8.10.2.2.4(k).

(m) Where an alteration is made to firefighters' service operation (see 8.7.2.28), tests shall be conducted as specified in 8.10.2.2.6.

(n) Where an alteration increases or decreases the rise (see 8.7.2.17.1), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(x), and (y); 8.10.2.2.3(d) through (h), (t), (w), and (y); 8.10.2.2.4(b), (c), (e) through (h), and (j); and 8.10.2.2.5(a), (b), (d), (e), (g), and (h). (ED)

(o) Where an alteration is made such that a hoistway entrance is added (see 8.7.2.10.1), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(a), (c)(3), (h), (i), (j), (r), and (t); 8.10.2.2.2(z)(2); 8.10.2.2.3(c)(3)(w); 8.10.2.2.4(b) through (g), and (j); and 8.10.2.2.6.

(p) Where an alteration is made such that there is a change in class of loading (see 8.7.2.16.2), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(p); 8.10.2.2.2(o), (p), (v), (bb), and (cc); and 8.10.2.2.5(i)(1).

(q) Where an alteration is made that results in a freight elevator being permitted to carry passengers (see 8.7.2.16.3), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(a), (g), (i), (j), (l), (p), and (q); and 8.10.2.2.2(o), (u), (y), (bb), (cc)(2), and (dd).

(r) Where an alteration is made that results in a new drive machine (see 8.7.2.25.1), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(j), (n) through (s), (v), (w), (cc), and (dd); and 8.10.2.2.1(q).

(s) Where a controller is installed as part of an alteration without any change to the type of operation or control (see 8.7.2.27.4), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(c), (j), (q), and (t); 8.10.2.2.2(k), (l), (m), (t), (u), (y), (z), (cc), and (dd); and 8.10.2.2.6.

(t) Where an alteration is made that results in a change in the type of motion or operation control (8.7.2.27.5 and 8.7.2.27.6), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(l) and (m). All electrical protective devices shall be tested for proper operation.

(u) Where an alteration is made that results in a new replacement of a hoistway door, car door, or car gate controller without any change to the operation or control [see 8.7.2.27.4(b)], tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.1(i) and (j); and 8.10.2.2.2(l)(1), (l)(2), (l)(3), and (l)(5).

8.10.3 Acceptance Inspection and Tests of Hydraulic Elevators

8.10.3.1 Inspection and Tests Required. New installations shall be inspected and tested as required by 8.10.3.2 before being placed in service.

Altered installations shall be inspected as specified in 8.10.3.3.1. Altered installations shall be tested as specified in 8.10.3.3.2 before being placed back in service.

8.10.3.2 Inspection and Test Requirements for New Installations

(07) **8.10.3.2.1 Inside Car**

(a) Door Reopening Device [8.10.2.2.1(a)] (Item 1.1)

(b) Stop Switches [3.26.4 and 8.10.2.2.1(b)] (Item 1.2)

(c) Operating Control Devices [3.26.1 through 3.26.3, and 8.10.2.2.1(c)] (Item 1.3)

(d) Car Floor and Landing Sill [3.5, 3.11, 3.15, and 8.10.2.2.1(d)] (Item 1.4)

(e) Car Lighting [3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(e)] (Item 1.5)

(f) Car Emergency Signal [3.27 and 8.10.2.2.1(f)] (Item 1.6)

(g) Car Door or Gate [3.11 through 3.14, and 8.10.2.2.1(g)] (Item 1.7)

(h) Door Closing Force [3.13, 3.14, and 8.10.2.2.1(h)] (Item 1.8)

(i) Power Closing of Doors or Gates [3.13 and 8.10.2.2.1(i)] (Item 1.9)

(j) Power Opening of Doors or Gates [3.13, 3.26.3, and 8.10.2.2.1(j)] (Item 1.10)

(k) Car Vision Panels and Glass Car Doors [3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(k)] (Item 1.11)

(l) Car Enclosure [3.14, 8.9, and 8.10.2.2.1(l)] (Item 1.12)

(m) Emergency Exit [3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(m)] (Item 1.13)

(n) Ventilation [3.14 and 8.10.2.2.1(n)] (Item 1.14)

(o) Signs and Operating Device Symbols [3.4 and 8.10.2.2.1(o)] (Item 1.15)

(p) Rated Load, Platform Area, and Data Plate [3.16 and 8.10.2.2.1(p)] (Item 1.16)

(q) Emergency and Auxiliary Power

(1) standby or emergency power [3.27 and 8.10.2.2.1(q)]

(2) auxiliary power lowering (3.26.10)

(r) Restricted Opening of Car or Hoistway Doors [3.12 and 8.10.2.2.1(r)] (Item 1.18)

(s) Car Ride (3.15, 3.23, and 8.10.2.2.1(s)] (Item 1.19)

(t) Door Monitoring Systems [3.26.1 and 8.10.2.2.1(t)]

(u) Stopping Accuracy (3.26.1)

(v) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.3.2.2)

(w) Working Areas in the Car (3.7 and 2.7.5.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(x) Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device (3.26.1 and 2.26.2.35)

8.10.3.2.2 Machine Room/Spaces, Control Room/Spaces (07)

NOTE: A machinery space outside the hoistway containing a hydraulic machine and a motor controller is a machine room (3.7).

(a) Location of Rooms/Spaces (3.7.1)

(b) Location of Equipment (3.7.1)

(c) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)

(d) Means of Access [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(d)] (Item 2.1)

(e) Headroom [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(e)] (Item 2.2)

(f) Means Necessary for Tests (3.7.1)

(g) Inspection and Test Panel (3.7.1)

(h) Lighting and Receptacles [3.7.1, 3.8, and 8.10.2.2.2(h)] (Item 2.3)

(i) Enclosure of Machine Room/Spaces, Control Room/Spaces [3.1, 3.7.1, and 8.10.2.2.2(i)] (Item 2.4)

(j) Housekeeping [3.8 and 8.10.2.2.2(j)] (Item 2.5)

(k) Ventilation and Heating [3.7.1 and 8.10.2.2.2(k)] (Item 2.6)

(l) Fire Extinguisher (8.6.1.6.5) (Item 2.7)

(m) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (3.8) (Item 2.8)

(n) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment [3.10 and 8.10.2.2.2(n)] (Item 2.9)

(o) Numbering of Elevators, Machines, and Disconnect Switches [3.29 and 8.10.2.2.2(o)] (Item 2.10)

(p) Maintenance Path and Maintenance Clearance (3.7.1)

(q) Stop Switch (3.7.1 and 3.26.1)

(r) Disconnecting Means and Control (Item 2.11)

(1) general (2.26.4.1, 2.26.4.5, and 3.26.1, and NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable)

(2) closed position (3.26.3.1.4)

(3) auxiliary contacts (NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable)

(s) Controller Wiring, Fuses, Grounding, etc. (Item 2.12)

(1) wiring (2.26.4.1 and 3.26.1)

(2) certification (2.26.4.2 and 3.26.1)

(3) capacitors or devices (2.26.7 and 3.26.1)

(4) control and operating circuits (2.26.9 and 3.26.1)

(5) clearances (NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable)

(6) phase protection (3.26.5)

(7) low oil protection (3.26.9)

(8) grounding (2.26 and NFPA 70 or CSA-C22.1, as applicable)

(9) fuses (2.26.4.1)

(t) Hydraulic Machine (Power Unit) (3.24.1) (Item 2.30). The working pressure shall be checked and the pressure on the data plate verified (3.24.1.1).

(u) Relief Valves (Item 2.31). The relief valve shall be tested to determine conformance with 3.19.4.2.

(v) Control Valve (Item 2.32)

(1) electric requirements (3.19.7)

(2) certification (3.19.4.6)

(3) data plate (3.19.4.6.2)

(4) check valve (3.19.4.3)

(5) manual lowering valve (3.19.4.4)

(6) pressure gauge fitting (3.19.4.5)

(w) Tanks (Item 2.33)

(1) capacity (3.24.2.1)

(2) minimum level indication (3.24.2.2)

(3) atmospheric storage and discharge tanks (3.24.3)

(x) Flexible Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Assemblies (3.19.3.3) (Item 2.34)

(y) Supply Lines and Shutoff Valves (Item 2.35). Data from the pipe, fitting, and valve manufacturers shall be provided to verify that the pressured rating of all components complies with pressure rating requirements (Item 2.18.3).

(1) component ratings (3.19.1.2)

(2) component markings (3.19.1.4)

(3) visual inspection of field welding (3.19.6)

(4) pressure piping (3.19.2)

(5) below-ground installations (3.19.5)

(6) connections and fittings (3.19.3)

(z) Hydraulic Cylinders (Item 2.36). For plunger stops [Item 3.4.3(a)], verify that a stop ring has been provided as required by 3.18.4.1.

(aa) Pressure Switch (Item 2.37). Where cylinders are installed with the top of the cylinder above the top of the tank, a test shall be made to determine conformance to 3.26.8.

(bb) Recycling Operation (3.26.7). Where recycling operation is provided for multiple or telescoping plungers, tests shall be made for conformance with 3.26.7.

(cc) Static Control Elevator. The person or firm installing a static control elevator shall demonstrate conformance with 3.25.2.2.5(b).

(dd) Code Data Plate (8.9)

(ee) Operating Devices [8.10.2.2.2(gg)]

(1) Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

(2) Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5, 3.26.1, and 3.26.2)

(ff) Governor, Overspeed Switch, and Seal (3.17.1) (Item 2.13)

(1) access and securing of car, if applicable (2.7.6.3.4)

(gg) Wiring Diagrams (8.6.1.6.3)

8.10.3.2.3 Top-of-Car (07)

(a) Top-of-Car Stop Switch [3.26.4 and 8.10.2.2.3(a)] (Item 3.1)

(b) Car Top Light and Outlet [3.14 and 8.10.2.2.2(e)] (Item 3.2)

(c) Top-of-Car Operating Device [8.10.2.2.3(c)] (Item 3.3)

(1) operation (3.26.2)

(2) operation with open door circuits (2.26.1.5)

(d) Top-of-Car Clearance, Refuge Space (Item 3.4)

(1) top car clearance (3.4.4)

(2) car top minimum runby (3.4.2.2)

(3) top-of-car equipment (3.4.5)

(4) vertical clearance of underslung car frames (3.4.8)

(5) refuge space (3.4.7)

(e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (3.25.1) (Item 3.5)

(f) Terminal Speed Reducing Devices (3.25.2) (Item 3.6)

(g) Car Leveling and Anticreep Devices (Item 3.7)

(1) *Anticreep Operation.* A test of the anticreep leveling device shall be made to determine conformance to 3.26.3.1.

(2) leveling or truck zone operation (3.26.3.2)

(h) Crosshead Data Plate [3.16 and 8.10.2.2.3(k)] (Item 3.27)

(i) Top Emergency Exit [3.14 and 8.10.2.2.2(s)] (Item 3.8)

(j) Identification [8.10.2.2.3(o)]

(k) Hoistway Construction (3.1) (Item 3.10)

(l) Hoistway Smoke Control [3.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(q)] (Item 3.11)

(m) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (3.8)

(n) Windows, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks [3.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(s)] (Item 3.13)

(o) Hoistway Clearances (3.5) (Item 3.14)

(p) Multiple Hoistways [3.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(u)] (Item 3.15)

(q) Traveling Cables and Junction Boxes [3.8 and 8.10.2.2.3(v)] (Item 3.16)

(r) *Door and Gate Equipment.* Use procedure in 8.10.2.2.3(w). (3.11, 3.12, and 3.13) (Item 3.17)

(s) Car Frame and Stiles (3.15) (Item 3.18)

(t) Guide Rails, Fastenings, and Equipment (3.23) (Item 3.19)

(1) rail Section (3.23)

(2) bracket Spacing

(3) surfaces and Lubrication

(4) joints and Fish Plates

(5) bracket Supports

(6) fastenings

(7) guides

(u) *Governor, Safety, Ropes, and Counterweights (Item 3.20).* Use procedures in 8.10.2.2.2(aa) and (bb); and 8.10.2.2.3(m), (n), (z) through (cc); car and counterweight safeties (3.17.1 and 3.17.2).

(v) Governor Rope Releasing Carrier [3.17.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(aa)] (Item 3.21)

(w) Governor Rope [3.17.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(z)] (Item 3.20)

(x) Wire Rope Fastening and Hitch Plate [3.17.1 and 8.10.2.2.3(bb)] (Item 3.22)

(y) Suspension Rope (3.17.1, 3.18.1.2, 3.20, and 3.24.5) (Item 3.23)

(z) Slack Rope Device (3.17.1.1, 3.18.1.2.7, and 3.22.1.2) (Item 3.31)

(aa) Traveling Sheave (3.18.1.2.8 and 3.22.1.2) (Item 3.32)

(bb) Counterweight Ropes, Connections, and Sheaves (3.20 and 3.21) (Item 3.22)

(cc) *Car Speed [3.28.1(k)].* The speed of the car shall be verified with rated load and with no load, in both directions. (Item 3.30)

(dd) *Inertia Tests.* Conduct inertia tests for Type A safeties. See Nonmandatory Appendix M.

(ee) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.3.2.2)

(ff) Working Areas on the Car Top (3.7.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(gg) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)

(hh) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)

(ii) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)

(07) **8.10.3.2.4 Outside Hoistway**

(a) Car Platform Guard [8.10.2.2.4(a)] (Item 4.1)

(b) Hoistway Doors (8.10.2.2.4) (Item 4.2)

(c) Vision Panels (3.11) (Item 4.3)

(d) Hoistway Door Locking Devices [3.12 and 8.10.2.2.4(d)] (Item 4.4)

(e) Access to Hoistway [3.12 and 8.10.2.2.4(e)] (Item 4.5)

(f) Power Closing of Hoistway Doors [3.13 and 8.10.2.2.4(f)] (Item 4.6)

(g) Sequence Operation [3.13 and 8.10.2.2.4(g)] (Item 4.7)

(h) Hoistway Enclosure [3.1 and 8.10.2.2.4(h)] (Item 4.8)

(i) Emergency Doors in Blind Hoistways [3.11 and 8.10.2.2.4(i)] (Item 4.10)

(1) blind hoistway emergency door

(2) access openings for cleaning

(j) Standby or Emergency Power Selection Switch [3.26.10 and 8.10.2.2.4(k)] (Item 4.12)

(k) Location of Equipment (3.7.1)

(l) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4, 3.7.1.8, 3.7.1.9, and 3.7.1.10)

(m) Inspection and Test Panel (3.7.1 and 2.7.6.5), Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.1), and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5)

(n) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)

8.10.3.2.5 Pit (07)

(a) Pit Access, Lighting, Stop Switch, and Condition [3.2 and 8.10.2.2.5(a)(1) through (a)(8) and (a)(10)] (Item 5.1)

(b) Bottom Clearance, Runby, and Minimum Refuge Space (Item 5.2)

(1) bottom car clearance (3.4.1)

(2) minimum bottom car runby (3.4.2)

(3) maximum bottom car runby (3.4.3)

(c) Plunger and Cylinder (Item 5.11)

(1) hydraulic jack connections

(a) direct-acting elevators (3.18.1.1); and

(b) roped-hydraulic elevators (3.18.1.2)

(2) plunger

(a) plunger connections (3.18.2.3)

(b) plunger guides (3.18.2.7)

(3) cylinders

(a) clearance bottom of cylinder (3.18.3.3)

(b) collection of oil (3.18.3.7)

(c) corrosion protection: the person or firm installing monitored cathodic protection shall demonstrate conformance with 3.18.3.8.3(c)

(d) means for release of air or gas (3.18.3.9)

(4) welding visual inspection (3.18.5)

(d) Car Buffer (3.6.3, 3.6.4, and 3.22.1) (Item 5.12)

(e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (3.25.1) (Item 5.4)

(f) Traveling Cables (3.8; and NFPA 70, Article 620 or CSA-C22.1, Section 38, as applicable) (Item 5.6)

(g) Car Frame and Platform (3.15) (Item 5.7)

(h) Guiding Members (3.15 and 3.23) (Item 5.13)

(i) Supply Piping (Item 5.14)

(1) components and valves (3.19.1 and 3.19.4)
(2) field welding visual inspection (3.19.6)
(3) pressure piping (3.19.2)
(j) Car Safety (Item 5.8)
(k) Governor rope tension device (Item 5.6)
(l) Counterweight
(1) top clearance and bottom runby (3.4.6 and 3.22.2)
(2) guards (3.3)
(3) design (3.21)
(m) Protection of spaces below hoistway (3.6)
(n) A plunger gripper, where provided, shall be inspected and tested at rated load at not less than operating speed in the down direction. The means for the actuation of the gripper shall be verified by overspeeding the car or by alternative means. Where multiple means of actuation are provided, each means shall be individually tested. The date of this test shall be permanently marked on the marking plate [see 3.17.3.8(e)].
(o) *Overspeed Valve and Seal.* Overspeed valves, where provided, shall be inspected and tested to verify that they will stop the car, traveling down with rated load within the specified limits of 3.19.4.7.5(a), using a written procedure supplied by the valve manufacturer or installer.
(p) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.10.3.2.2)
(q) Working Areas in the Pit (3.7.1 and 2.7.5.2)
(1) means to prevent unexpected movement [2.7.5.2.1(a) or (b)]
(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)
(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)
(4) operating instructions for egress and re-entry procedure (8.6.10.7)
(r) Equipment Exposed to Weather (3.7.1)
(s) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)
(t) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)
(u) Pit Inspection Operation (3.26.2)

8.10.3.2.6 Firefighters' Emergency Operation (3.27). Verify conformance with 2.27.3 through 2.27.8 and 3.27.

(07) **8.10.3.2.7 Working Platforms**
(a) Working Platforms (3.7.1, 2.7.5.3, and 2.7.5.4)
(1) operating instructions (8.6.10.8)
(b) Retractable Stops (3.7.1 and 2.7.5.5)
(1) retractable stop electrical device (2.26.2.37)
(c) Inspection Operation (3.26.2)

8.10.3.3 Inspection and Test Requirements for Altered Installations

8.10.3.3.1 Alterations shall be inspected for compliance with the applicable requirements specified in 8.7.
Check code data plate for compliance with 8.7.1.8.

8.10.3.3.2 Tests shall be performed when the following alterations are made: (07)
(a) Where the alteration consists of the addition of power operation to the door system (8.7.3.12), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(a), (h), (i), (j), and (t); 8.10.2.2.3(g); 8.10.3.2.3(r); 8.10.2.2.4(b), (d) through (g); and 8.10.2.2.6.
(b) Where alterations have been made to the car or counterweight guide rails, guide-rail supports, or guide-rail fastenings, or where the stresses have been increased by more than 5% (8.7.3.28), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(s), 8.10.2.2.2(bb), if safeties are provided, 8.10.3.2.3(o), (s), and (t).
(c) Where alterations have been made to oil buffers (8.7.3.27), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.5(b), (d), and (l)(1).
(d) Where an alteration results in an increase in the deadweight of the car that is sufficient to increase the sum of the deadweight and the rated load, as originally installed, by more than 5% (8.7.3.21), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(u) and 8.10.2.2.2(bb) if safeties are provided; 8.10.2.2.5(c) if oil buffers are provided; and 8.10.3.2.1(q), 8.10.3.2.2(m), (n), (q), and (r), 8.10.3.2.3(h) and (cc).
(e) Where the alteration consists of the installation of new car or counterweight safeties, or where alterations are made to existing safeties (8.7.3.15), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(u) and 8.10.2.3.2(e).
(f) Where any alteration is made to a speed governor (8.7.3.16), tests shall be performed as specified by 8.10.2.3.2(f) and 8.10.3.2.3(u).
(g) Where an alteration involves an increase in the rated load (8.7.3.20), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(bb); and 8.10.3.2.3(u) if safeties are provided; and 8.10.2.2.5(c) if oil buffers are provided, and as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(p), (q)(1), 8.10.3.2.2(m), (n), (r), and 8.10.3.2.3(h) and (cc).
(h) Where an alteration consists of an increase in the working pressure by more than 5% (8.7.3.23.4), it shall be inspected as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(m), (n) through (t) and 8.10.3.2.5(c) and (i).
(i) Where the location of the driving machine has been changed (8.7.3.23.5), tests shall be performed as specified 8.10.3.2.
(j) Where an alteration increases the rated speed (8.7.3.22.2), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(a), (c), (g) through (k), (r), (s), and (t); 8.10.3.2.2(m), (n), (x), and (y); 8.10.3.2.3(c) through (h), (o), (u), (y), and (cc); and and 8.10.3.2.5(b), (d), and (l).
(k) Where an alteration is made to any terminal stopping device (see 8.7.3.30), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.3(e) and (f), and 8.10.3.2.5(e).
(l) Where an alteration is made to a standby or emergency power system [see 8.7.3.31.8(b)], tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(q) and 8.10.3.2.4(j).

(m) Where an alteration is made to firefighters' service operation [8.7.3.31.8(c)], tests shall be conducted as specified in 8.10.3.2.6.

(n) Where an alteration is made to the plunger or cylinder (8.7.3.23), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(m), (n), (o), (r), and (s), 8.10.3.2.3(d) and (cc); and 8.10.3.2.5(b) and (c).

(o) Where an existing control valve is replaced with a valve of a different type, or where relief or check valves or the supply piping and fittings are replaced (8.7.3.24), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(m), (n), (o), and (r); and 8.10.3.2.3(cc).

(p) Where an alteration consists of a change in operation control (8.7.3.31.7), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.1(a), (b), (c), (e) through (j), (q), (s), and (t); 8.10.3.2.2(j), (l), (t), (u), (x), and (y); 8.10.3.2.3(a), (c), (e), (f), (g), and (cc); 8.10.3.2.4(b) through (g), (i), (j); 8.10.3.2.5(a) and (e); and 8.10.3.2.6.

(q) Where an alteration is made that results in a new hoistway door, car door, or car gate controller without any change to the operation or control [8.7.3.31.5(b)], tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(l)(1), (2), (3), and (5).

(r) Where an alteration is made that results in a change in the type of motion control (8.7.2.27.5), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.3.2.2(l), (m), (t), and (u). All electrical protective devices shall be tested for proper operation.

(s) Where an alteration is made and results in a replacement of a new controller without any change to the type of operation control or motion (8.7.3.31.5), tests shall be performed as specified in 8.10.2.2.2(l), (m)(1), (m)(2), (m)(4), and (ee); and 8.10.2.2.1(t). All electrical protective devices shall be tested for proper operation.

8.10.4 Acceptance Inspection and Tests of Escalators and Moving Walks

8.10.4.1 Inspection and Test Requirements for New Installations. New installations shall be inspected and tested as required by 8.10.4.1 before being placed in service.

(07) **8.10.4.1.1 External Inspection and Tests**

(a) General Fire Protection Requirements (Items 7.1 and 9.1)

(1) The protection of floor and wall openings shall be inspected to determine conformance with 6.1.1 for escalators or 6.2.1 for moving walks.

(2) The protection of the trusses and machine space shall be inspected to determine conformance with 6.1.2 or 6.2.2.

(b) Geometry (Items 7.2 and 9.2)

(1) angle of inclination (6.1.3.1 or 6.2.3.1)

(2) width and clearances (6.1.3.2 or 6.2.3.2)

(3) interior low deck (6.1.3.3.4 or 6.2.3.3.4)

(c) Handrails (Items 7.3 and 9.3)

(1) *Speed (6.1.3.4.1 or 6.2.3.4.1).* Running tests shall be performed, in each direction, to determine conformance with 6.1.3.4.1 or 6.2.3.4.1.

(2) extension (6.1.3.4.2 or 6.2.3.4.2)

(3) guards (6.1.3.4.3 or 6.2.3.4.3)

(4) splice (6.1.3.4.4 or 6.2.3.4.4)

(5) height (6.1.3.4.5)

(6) clearance (6.1.3.4.6 or 6.2.3.4.5)

(7) the person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the handrail speed does not change when a retarding force, up to the maximum required by code, is applied opposite to the direction of travel (6.1.3.4.1 or 6.2.3.4.1)

(d) Entrance and Egress (Items 7.4 and 9.4)

(1) head room (6.1.3.12 or 6.2.3.16)

(2) egress and Safety Zone (6.1.3.6.4, 6.2.3.8.4, and 6.2.6.3.6)

(3) combplates [6.1.3.6.1(a) or 6.2.3.8.1(a)]

(e) Lighting (Items 7.5 and 9.5)

(1) illumination of steps (6.1.7.2 or 6.2.7.2)

(2) demarcation (6.1.6.7 or 6.2.6.7)

(f) Caution Signs (6.1.6.2, 6.1.6.9, or 6.2.6.8) (Items 7.6 and 9.6)

(g) Combplates (6.1.3.6 and 6.2.3.8.1) (Items 7.7 and 9.7)

(1) design

(2) adjustment

(3) replacement

(h) Deck Barricade (Items 7.8 and 9.8)

(1) antislide Devices (6.1.3.3.10)

(2) deck Barricades (6.1.3.3.11 or 6.2.3.3.8)

(i) Steps, Step Upthrust Device, and Treadway (Items 7.9 and 9.9)

(1) steps

(a) material and type (6.1.3.5.1)

(b) dimensions (6.1.3.5.2)

(c) clearance between steps (6.1.3.5.4)

(d) slotting of treads (6.1.3.5.4)

(e) slotting of risers (6.1.3.5.3)

(f) design load (6.1.3.9.4)

(g) flat steps (6.1.3.6.5)

(h) step upthrust device

(2) treadways

(a) belt type (6.2.3.6)

(b) pallet type (6.2.3.5)

(j) Operating and Safety Devices (Items 7.10 and 9.10)

(1) starting switches (6.1.6.2 or 6.2.6.2).

(2) emergency stop buttons (6.1.6.3.1 or 6.2.6.3.1).

(3) automatic start and stopping (6.1.6.1.1 or 6.2.6.1.1).

(4) *Tandem Operation (6.1.6.6 or 6.2.6.6).* When interlocked tandem operation is required, verify that an escalator or moving walk carrying passengers to an intermediate landing will stop when the escalator or

moving walk carrying passengers away from that landing stops. Also, verify that the units are interlocked to run in the same direction.

(k) Handrail Entry Device (6.1.6.3.12 or 6.2.6.3.10) (Items 8.13 and 10.13)

(l) Egress Restriction Device (6.1.6.3.7 or 6.2.6.3.6) (Items 7.13 and 9.13)

(m) Speed (Items 7.14 and 9.14). The rated speed shall be tested to determine conformance with 6.1.4.1 for escalators and 6.2.4 for moving walks.

(n) Balustrades (Items 7.15 and 9.15)

(1) construction (6.1.3.3.1 or 6.2.3.3.1)

(2) glass or plastic (6.1.3.3.3 or 6.2.3.3.3)

(3) change in width [6.1.3.3.1(c) or 6.2.3.3.1(d)]

(o) Ceiling Intersection Guards (6.1.3.3.9 or 6.2.3.3.7) (Items 7.16 and 9.16)

(p) Skirt Panels (Items 7.17 and 9.17)

(1) clearance between skirt and steps [6.1.3.3.5 or 6.2.3.3.5(a), and 6.2.3.3.6(a)]

(2) height above step [6.1.3.3.6(a) or 6.2.3.3.5(b), and 6.2.3.3.6(b)]

(3) deflection [6.1.3.3.6(b) or 6.2.3.3.6(c)]

(4) smoothness [6.1.3.3.6(c) or 6.2.3.3.6(d)]

(5) Clearance Between Step and Skirt (Loaded Gap)

(a) Loaded gap measurements shall be taken at intervals not exceeding 300 mm (12 in.) in the transition region (6.1.3.6.5) and before the steps are fully extended. These measurements shall be made independently on each side of the escalator.

(b) The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) (6.1.3.3.5) by more than ±11 N (2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over a round or square area no less than 1 940 mm^2 (3 in.^{2}) and no more than 3 870 mm^2 (6 in.^{2}).

(c) For the loaded gap measurements, the center of the applied load shall be between 25 mm (1 in.) and 100 mm (4 in.) below the nose line of the steps. The center of the applied load shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) from the nose of the step. See Fig. 8.11.4.2.19(e).

(q) Outdoor Protection (6.1.8.1, 6.1.8.2, 6.1.8.3, or 6.2.8.1, 6.2.8.2, and 6.2.8.3) (Items 7.18 and 9.18)

(r) Escalator and Moving Walk Well Guards (Floor Opening Protection) (6.1.3.6.6) (Items 7.4 and 9.4)

(s) Verification of Documentation for Type Tests, Certification, and Markings

(1) escalator brake test (6.1.5.3.3) (Items 8.4 and 10.4)

(2) step and pallet fatigue test (6.1.3.5.7 or 6.2.3.5.4) (Items 7.9 and 9.9)

(t) Step/Skirt Performance Index

(1) The escalator skirt shall not be cleaned, lubricated, or otherwise modified in preparation for testing. The escalator instantaneous step/skirt index measurements [6.1.3.3.7(a)] shall be recorded at intervals no larger than 150 mm (6 in.) from each side of two distinct steps along the inclined portion of the escalator, where the steps are fully extended. Test steps shall be separated by a minimum of eight steps.

(2) A load of 110 N (25 lbf) shall be laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ±11 N (2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over a round or square area no less than 1 940 mm^2 (3 in.^{2}) and no more than 3 870 mm^2 (6 in.^{2}).

(3) No vertical load exceeding 220 N (50 lbf) shall be applied to the test step and adjacent steps.

(4) The coefficient of friction shall be measured with the test specimen conforming to the requirements of 6.1.3.3.7(b) sliding in the direction of the step motion under a 110 N (25 lbf) normal force at the operating speed of the escalator and shall be measured with devices having sensitivity better than ±2.2 N (0.5 lbf). The direction of step motion shall be the direction of normal operation. If the escalator is operated in both directions, the down direction shall be used for the test.

(5) For both the coefficient of friction measurement and the loaded gap measurements, the center of the applied load shall be between 25 mm (1 in.) and 100 mm (4 in.) below the nose line of the steps. The center of the applied load shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) from the nose of the step. See Fig. 8.11.4.2.19(e).

(6) Verify that the step/skirt performance index conforms to the requirements in 6.1.3.3.7 (Item 1.17.2) and in jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC (8.6.8.3).

8.10.4.1.2 Internal Inspection and Tests (07)

(a) Machine Space (Items 8.1 and 10.1)

(1) access (6.1.7.3 or 6.2.7.3)

(2) lighting (6.1.7.1.1 or 6.2.7.1.1)

(3) receptacle (6.1.7.1.2 or 6.2.7.1.2) [NFPA 70 Section 620-21(b)]

(4) guards (6.1.7.3.4 or 6.2.7.3.4)

(b) Stop Switch. The machine space stop switches shall be tested for conformance to 6.1.6.3.5 or 6.2.6.3.5 (Items 8.2 and 10.2).

(c) Controller and Wiring. Controller and wiring shall be inspected (Items 8.3 and 10.3).

(1) wiring (6.1.7.4 or 6.2.7.4)

(2) control (6.1.6.10 through 6.1.6.13 or 6.2.6.9 through 6.2.6.11)

(d) Drive Machine and Brake. The drive machine and brakes shall be inspected and tested including test of the brake torque (6.1.5.3 and 6.2.5.3) (Items 8.4 and 10.4).

(1) connection of machine and drive shaft (6.1.5.1 and 6.1.5.3.2 or 6.2.5.1 and 6.2.5.3.2)

(2) drive motor (6.1.5.2 or 6.2.5.2)

(3) brake type (6.1.5.3 or 6.2.5.3)

(a) Verify that the brake torque complies with the value shown on the data plate or in the special instructions [see 6.1.5.3.1(d) for escalators and 6.2.5.3.1(d) for moving walks].

(b) Minimum no load stopping distance for moving walks and escalators with variable torque brakes.

(4) brake data plate [6.1.5.3.1(d)]

(5) main driveshaft brake (6.1.5.3.2)

(6) escalator brake certification (6.1.5.3.3)

(e) *Speed Governor.* The mechanical speed governor, if required, shall be tested by manually operating the trip mechanism. Check the tripping speed for compliance with 6.1.6.3.2 or 6.2.6.3.2. The means of adjustment shall be sealed and a tag indicating the date of the governor test, together with the name of the person or firm that performed the test, shall be attached to the governor in a permanent manner (6.1.6.3.2 and 6.2.6.3.2) (Items 8.5 and 10.5).

(f) *Broken Drive Chain Device.* Operation of the broken drive chain device, on the drive chain, shall be tested by manually operating the actuating mechanism (6.1.6.3.4, 6.1.5.3.2, 6.2.6.3.4, 6.2.5.3.2, 6.1.6.3.10, and 6.2.6.3.8) (Items 8.6 and 10.6).

(g) *Reversal Stop Switch.* The reversal stop switch (to prevent reversal when operating in the ascending direction) shall be tested by manually operating it to determine that it functions properly (6.1.6.3.8 or 6.2.6.3.7 and 6.2.6.3.8) (Items 8.7 and 10.7).

If the device cannot be manually operated, the person or firm installing the equipment shall provide a written check-out procedure and demonstrate the device complies with 6.1.6.3.8 or 6.2.6.3.7.

(h) *Broken Step Chain or Treadway Device.* The broken or slack step chain or treadway device shall be inspected and tested by manual operation (6.1.6.3.3 and 6.2.6.3.3) (Items 8.8 and 10.8).

(i) *Step Upthrust Device.* The operation of the step upthrust device shall be tested by manually causing the device to operate (6.1.6.3.9) (Item 8.9).

(j) *Missing Step or Pallet Device.* The missing step or pallet device shall be tested by removing a step or pallet and verifying that the device will properly function (6.1.6.5 or 6.2.6.5) (Items 8.10 and 10.10).

(k) *Step or Pallet Level Device.* The step or pallet level device shall be tested by simulating an out of level step or pallet and verifying that the device functions properly (6.1.6.3.11 or 6.2.6.3.9) (Items 8.11 and 10.11).

(l) *Steps, Pallet, Step or Pallet Chain, and Trusses.* The steps, pallet, step or pallet chain, trusses, tracks, and supports shall be visually inspected. Verify that the tracking system will prevent displacement of the step and pallets if the chain breaks (Items 8.12 and 10.12).

(1) steps and pallets (6.1.3.5 and 6.2.3.5)

(2) trusses and tracks

(a) trusses (6.1.3.7)

(b) tracks (6.1.3.8)

(c) welding (6.1.3.13)

(3) supports

(a) slider bed [6.2.3.9.1(a)]

(b) roller bed [6.2.3.9.1(b)]

(m) *Handrail Speed Monitor.* The handrails operating mechanism shall be visually inspected for condition and the handrail speed monitor device shall be tested (6.1.6.4 or 6.2.6.4) (Items 7.12, 8.13, 9.12, and 10.13).

(n) *Disconnected Motor Safety Device.* Operation of the device shall be checked and verified that it is of the manual reset type (6.1.6.3.10 or 6.2.6.3.8) (Item 8.6 or 10.6).

(o) *Heaters.* For outdoor escalators and moving walks that require heaters, test the heaters for condition and operation (6.1.8.2 and 6.2.8.2) (Items 8.3 and 10.3).

(p) Code Data Plate (8.9) (Items 8.14 and 10.14)

(q) *Comb-Step or Comb-Pallet Impact Device.* The comb-step or comb-pallet impact devices shall be tested in both the vertical and horizontal directions by placing a vertical and horizontal force on the comb-step or comb-pallet to cause operation of the device. The vertical and horizontal tests shall be independent of each other. The horizontal force shall be applied at the front edge center and both sides in the direction of travel. The vertical force shall be applied at the front edge center. Both the vertical and horizontal forces required to operate the device shall be recorded (6.1.6.3.13 and 6.2.6.3.11) (Items 7.7 and 9.7).

(r) Where a step lateral displacement device is required it shall be tested for conformance to 6.1.6.3.14.

(s) Operating and safety devices shall be tested and inspected to determine conformance with 6.1.6 for escalators and 6.2.6 for moving walks.

(t) *Skirt Obstruction Devices (Item 7.11).* The skirt switches shall be tested for conformance with 6.1.6.1(h) and 6.1.6.3.6.

(u) Inspection control devices shall be tested and inspected to determine conformance with the requirements of 6.1.6.2.2 for escalators and 6.2.6.2.2 for moving walks.

(v) *Response to Smoke Detectors (Items 8.15 and 10.15).* Where provided, smoke detector shutdown shall be tested for conformance with 6.1.6.8 and 6.2.6.7.

8.10.4.2 Inspection and Test Requirements for Altered Installations. Altered installations shall be inspected as specified in 8.10.4.2.1. Altered installations shall be tested as specified in 8.10.4.2.2 before being placed back in service.

8.10.4.2.1 Alterations shall be inspected for compliance with the applicable requirements specified in 8.7.

NOTE: For code data plate, see 8.7.1.7.

8.10.4.2.2 Tests shall be performed when the following alterations are made:

(a) Where alterations involve a change in the angle of inclination or geometry of balustrades, they shall be inspected for conformance with 8.7.6.1.5 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.5 for moving walks and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(c)(1), 8.10.4.1.1(m), and 8.10.4.1.1(n) (Items 7.2 and 7.15, or 9.2 and 9.15).

(b) Where the handrails have been altered, they shall be inspected for conformance with 8.7.6.1.6 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.6 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(c)(1) and 8.10.4.1.1(m) (Items 7.3 and 8.13, or 9.3 and 10.13).

(c) Where the step system or treadway system has been altered, it shall be inspected for conformance with 8.7.6.1.7 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.7 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(g), (i)(2), and (p), and 8.10.4.1.2(h) through (l) and (r) (Items 7.9 and 8.12, or 9.9 and 10.12).

(d) Where alterations involve the trusses, girders, or supporting structures, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.9 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.9 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.2(l) (Items 8.12 or 10.12).

(e) Where the step wheel tracks or track system is altered, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.10 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.10 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.2(l) (Items 7.9 and 8.13, or 9.9 and 10.12).

(f) Where alterations involve changes in the rated load and/or speed, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1 and 8.10.4.1.2 (Items 7.1 through 8.15 and 9.1 through 10.15).

(g) Where the driving machine motor or brake is altered, it shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.12 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.12 for moving walks and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(m) and (s), 8.10.4.1.2(d) and (n) (Items 7.14, 8.4, 8.6, 9.14, 10.4, and 10.6).

(h) Where the operating, safety, or electrical protective devices are altered or added, they shall be inspected and tested for conformance with 8.7.6.1.13 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.13 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(j) through (k), (m), and 8.10.4.1.2(c), (e) through (k), (m), (q), (r) (Items 7.7, 7.9, 7.10, 7.11, 7.12, 7.13, 8.2, 8.5, 8.7, 8.8, 8.9, 8.10, 8.11, 8.13, 8.14 or 9.7, 9.10, 9.12, 9.13, 10.2, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7, 10.8, 10.10, 10.11, 10.13, and 10.15).

(i) When an alteration consists of the alteration of a controller, it shall be inspected and tested for conformance to 8.7.6.1.16 for escalators and 8.7.6.2.15 for moving walks, and tested as specified in 8.10.4.1.1(j) through (k), and (m), and 8.10.4.1.2(a) through (k), (m), (n), (q) through (t). All required (8.6.1.1.2) operating and safety devices in 6.1.6 or 6.2.6 shall be tested.

8.10.5 Acceptance Inspection and Tests of Other Equipment

8.10.5.1 Sidewalk Elevator. Sidewalk elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 5.5. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.2 Private Residence Elevators. Private residence elevators shall be subject to acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 5.3 and 5.4. Any additional requirements for this equipment should also be checked during these inspections and tests. (07)

Before an inclined elevator is put into service, a test of the car safety shall be made with rated load in the car. Governor operation of instantaneous-type safeties shall be tested at rated speed by tripping the governor by hand. Where speed governors are located on the car or chassis, testing shall be performed by obtaining sufficient slack rope to cause the safety to function.

8.10.5.3 Hand Elevators. Hand elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 and 8.10.2.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 4.3. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

The driving-machine brake required by 4.3.19.2 shall be tested with both empty car and rated load in the car.

8.10.5.4 Dumbwaiters. Dumbwaiters shall be subject to acceptance inspection and testing in conformance with 7.1, 7.2, and 7.3. Items to be inspected shall be as specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3 unless not required in 7.1, 7.2, and 7.3. Inspections of dumbwaiter shall take place from outside the hoistway. Inspection from the car top of dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall be permitted only when top-of-car operating devices and car safeties are provided and the dumbwaiter has a rated load sufficient for the inspector and any tools and adequate horizontal and vertical clearance.

8.10.5.5 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices. Material lifts shall be subject to acceptance inspection and testing in conformance with 7.4 through 7.10. Items to be inspected shall be as specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3, unless not required in 7.4 through 7.10. Inspections of material lifts shall take place from outside the hoistway, and from within

(a) the machine room where a machine room is provided in conformance with 2.7.

(b) the pit where a pit is provided in conformance with 2.2 or devices required in 7.4.6.1(c) or 7.4.6.2(a) are provided.

(c) from the car top where top runby space conforming with 2.4, 7.4.6.1(d), 7.4.6.2(b), or 7.4.6.2(c), top-of-car operating device conforming with 2.26.1.4, and car safeties conforming with 2.17 or 7.5.4 are provided. Alterations shall be inspected for compliance with the applicable requirements specified in 8.7.7.3.

Inspection from the car top of material lifts with automatic transfer devices shall only be permitted when top-of-car operating devices and car safeties are provided and the material lift has a rated load sufficient for the inspector and any tools and adequate horizontal and vertical clearance.

Inspection from the car top of a dumbwaiter with an automatic transfer device is only permitted when top-of-car operating devices and car safeties conforming to 7.2.12.4 are provided.

8.10.5.6 Special Purpose Personnel Elevators. Special purpose personnel elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 5.7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.7 Inclined Elevators. Inclined elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 5.1. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.8 Shipboard Elevators. Shipboard elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 5.8. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.9 Screw-Column Elevators. Screw-column elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 4.2. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.10 Elevators Used for Construction. Elevators used for construction shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding test requirements of 5.10. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.11 Rooftop Elevators. Rooftop elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 5.6. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.12 Rack-and-Pinion Elevators. Rack-and-pinion elevators shall be subject to the acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 4.1. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.10.5.13 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators. Limited-use/limited-applications elevators shall be subject to the applicable acceptance inspections and tests specified in 8.10.1 through 8.10.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 5.2. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

SECTION 8.11
PERIODIC INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

Requirement 8.11 covers periodic inspections and tests of existing installations.

NOTE: Compliance with certain requirements is verifiable through review of design documents, engineering, or type tests.

8.11.1 General Requirements for Periodic Inspections and Tests

8.11.1.1 Persons Authorized to Make Periodic Inspections and Tests. The inspector shall meet the qualification requirements of the ASME QEI-1. Inspectors and inspection supervisors shall be certified by an organization accredited by ASME in accordance with the requirements of ASME QEI-1. This requirement does not apply to Canadian jurisdictions.

8.11.1.1.1 Periodic Inspections. Periodic inspections shall be made by an inspector employed by the authority having jurisdiction or by a person authorized by the authority having jurisdiction.

8.11.1.1.2 Periodic Tests

(a) Periodic tests shall be witnessed by an inspector employed by the authority having jurisdiction, or by persons authorized by the authority having jurisdiction.

(b) The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall have all of the tests required by 8.11.2, 8.11.3, 8.11.4, and 8.11.5 made by persons qualified to perform such service in the presence of the inspector specified in 8.11.1.1.2(a).

8.11.1.2 Applicability of Inspection and Test Requirements. Inspections and tests required by 8.11.2 through 8.11.5 are to determine that the existing equipment conforms with the following applicable Code requirements:

(a) the Code at the time of installation

(b) the Code effective as applicable to and for each alteration

(c) the ASME A17.3 Code, if adopted by the authority having jurisdiction

NOTES (8.11.1.2):
(1) The appropriate ASME A17.2 Inspectors' Manual (see Preface, ASME Elevator Publications) is a guide for inspections and tests.
(2) References to "Items" and "Divisions" of the Inspectors' Manual, and to the requirements of this Code, are indicated in parentheses as a convenient reference to the applicable testing procedures and requirements.

8.11.1.3 Periodic Inspection and Test Frequency. The frequency of periodic inspections and tests shall be established by the authority having jurisdiction.

NOTE: Recommended intervals for periodic inspections and tests can be found in Nonmandatory Appendix N.

8.11.1.4 Installation Placed Out of Service. Periodic inspections and tests shall not be required when an installation is placed "out of service":

(a) as defined by the authority having jurisdiction; or

(b) when an installation whose power feed lines have been disconnected from the mainline disconnect switch; and

(1) an electric elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift whose suspension ropes have been removed, whose car and counterweight rest at the bottom of the hoistway, and whose hoistway doors have been permanently barricaded or sealed in the closed position on the hoistway side;

(2) a hydraulic elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift whose car rests at the bottom of the hoistway; when provided with suspension ropes and counterweight, the suspension ropes have been removed and the counterweight rests at the bottom of the hoistway; whose pressure piping has been disassembled and a section removed from the premises and whose hoistway doors are permanently barricaded or sealed in the closed position on the hoistway side; or

(3) an escalator or moving walk whose entrances have been permanently barricaded.

8.11.1.5 Making Safety Devices Ineffective. No person shall at any time make any required safety device or electrical protective device ineffective, except where necessary during tests and inspections. Such devices shall be restored to their normal operating condition in conformity with the applicable requirements prior to returning the equipment to service (see 2.26.7).

(07) **8.11.1.6 Periodic Test Tags.** A metal tag with the applicable code requirement(s) and date(s) performed, and the name of the person or firm performing the test, shall be installed in the machine room or machine space for all periodic tests.

(07) **8.11.1.7 Unique or Product-Specific Procedures or Methods.** Where unique or product-specific procedures or methods are required to inspect or test equipment, such procedures or methods shall be provided by the manufacturer or installer [see 8.6.1.2.1(e)].

8.11.2 Periodic Inspection and Tests of Electric Elevators

All references to "Items" are to Items in ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

8.11.2.1 Periodic Inspection Requirements. Inspections shall include the following.

NOTE: For inspection frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.2.1.1 Inside Car (07)

(a) Door Reopening Device (Item 1.1)
(b) Stop Switches (Item 1.2)
(c) Operating Control Devices (Item 1.3)
(d) Car Floor and Landing Sill (Item 1.3)
(e) Car Lighting (Item 1.5)
(f) Car Emergency Signal (Item 1.6)
(g) Car Door or Gate (Item 1.7)
(h) Door Closing Force (Item 1.8)
(i) Power Closing of Doors or Gates (Item 1.9)
(j) Power Opening of Doors or Gates (Item 1.10)
(k) Car Vision Panels and Glass Car Doors (Item 1.11)
(l) Car Enclosure (Item 1.12)
(m) Emergency Exit (Item 1.13)
(n) Ventilation (Item 1.14)
(o) Signs and Operating Device Symbols (Item 1.15)
(p) Rated Load, Platform Area, and Data Plate (Item 1.16)
(q) Standby or Emergency Power Operation (Item 1.17)
(r) Restricted Opening of Car or Hoistway Doors (Item 1.18)
(s) Car Ride (Item 1.19)
(t) Door Monitoring Systems (2.26.5)
(u) Stopping Accuracy (2.26.11)
(v) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.2.1.2)
(w) Working Areas in the Car (2.7.5.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(x) Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device (2.26.2.35)

8.11.2.1.2 Machine Room/Spaces, Control Room/Spaces (07)

(a) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)
(b) Means of Access (Item 2.1)
(c) Headroom (Item 2.2)
(d) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4)
(e) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5)
(f) Lighting and Receptacles (Item 2.3)

(g) Enclosure of Machine Room/Spaces, Control Room/Spaces (Item 2.4)
(h) Housekeeping (Item 2.5)
(i) Ventilation (Item 2.6)
(j) Fire Extinguisher (Item 2.7)
(k) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Item 2.8)
(l) Guarding of Equipment (Item 2.9)
(m) Numbering of Elevators, Machines, and Disconnect Switches (Item 2.10)
(n) Maintenance Path and Maintenance Clearance (2.7.2)
(o) Stop Switch (2.7.3.5 and 2.26.2.24)
(p) Disconnecting Means and Control (Item 2.11)
(q) Controller Wiring, Fuses, Grounding, etc. (Item 2.12)
(r) Static Control (Item 2.15)
(s) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (Item 2.16)
(t) Drive Machine Brake (Item 2.17)
(u) Traction Drive Machines (Item 2.18)
(v) Gears, Bearings, and Flexible Connections (Item 2.19)
(w) Winding Drum Machine (Item 2.20)
(x) Belt- or Chain-Drive Machine (Item 2.21)
(y) Motor Generator (Item 2.22)
(z) Absorption of Regenerated Power (Item 2.23)
(aa) Traction Sheaves (Item 2.25)
(bb) Secondary and Deflector Sheaves (Item 2.26)
(cc) Rope Fastenings (Item 2.27)
(dd) Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 2.28)
(ee) Operating Devices
(ff) Governor, Overspeed Switch, and Seal (Item 2.13)
(gg) Car and Counterweight Safeties (Item 2.29)
(hh) Code Data Plate (8.6.1.3) (Item 2.14)
(ii) Emergency Brake (2.19.3)
(jj) AC Drives From a DC Source (Item 2.24)
(kk) Slack Rope Devices (Item 2.20)
(ll) Wiring Diagrams (8.6.1.6.3)

(07) **8.11.2.1.3 Top-of-Car**

(a) Top-of-Car Stop Switch (Item 3.1).
(b) Car Top Light and Outlet (Item 3.2).
(c) Top-of-Car Operating Device and Working Platforms (Item 3.3).
(d) Top-of-Car Clearance and Refuge Space (Item 3.4).
(e) Top Counterweight Clearance (Item 3.24).
(f) Car, Overhead, and Deflector Sheaves (Item 3.25).
(g) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 3.5).
(h) Final Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 3.6).
(i) Broken Rope, Chain, or Tape Switch (Item 3.26).
(j) Car Leveling Devices (Item 3.7).
(k) Crosshead Data Plate (Item 3.27).
(l) Top Emergency Exit (Item 3.8).
(m) Counterweight and Counterweight Buffer (Item 3.28).
(n) Counterweight Safeties (Item 3.29).

Table 8.11.2.1.3(cc)(1) Wire Suspension and Compensation Ropes

Types of Wire Rope	A [Note (1)]	B [Note (1)]	C [Note (1)]
6 × 19 class	24–30	8–12	12–20
8 × 19 class	32–40	10–16	16–24

GENERAL NOTE: 6 × 19 class rope has 6 strands with 16 to 26 wires per strand. 8 × 19 class rope has 8 strands with 16 to 26 wires per strand.

NOTE:
(1) The upper limits may be used when inspections are made monthly by a competent person.

(o) Floor and Emergency Identification Numbering (Item 3.9).
(p) Hoistway Construction (Item 3.10).
(q) Hoistway Smoke Control (Item 3.11).
(r) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Item 3.12).
(s) Windows, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks (Item 3.13).
(t) Hoistway Clearances (Item 3.14).
(u) Multiple Hoistways (Item 3.15).
(v) Traveling Cables and Junction Boxes (Item 3.16)
(w) Door and Gate Equipment (Item 3.17).
(x) Car Frame and Stiles (Item 3.18).
(y) Guide Rails Fastening and Equipment (Item 3.19).
(z) *Governor Rope (Item 3.20).* Governor ropes shall be inspected and replaced as specified in 8.11.2.1.3(cc)(1) and (cc)(3) for traction elevator suspension and compensating ropes.
(aa) Governor Releasing Carrier (Item 3.21).
(bb) Wire Rope Fastening and Hitch Plate (Item 3.22).
(cc) Wire Suspension and Compensating Ropes (Item 3.23).

(1) Wire suspension and compensating ropes shall be replaced

(a) if the broken wires are equally distributed among the strands, when the number of broken wires per rope lay in the worst section of the rope exceeds the values shown in column A of Table 8.11.2.1.3(cc)(1); or

(b) if the distribution of broken wires is unequal, and broken wires predominate in one or two strands, when the number of broken wires per rope lay in the worst section of the rope exceeds the values shown in column B of Table 8.11.2.1.3(cc)(1); or

(c) if four or five wires, side by side, are broken across the crown of any strand, when the number of broken wires per rope lay in the worst section of rope exceeds values shown in column C of Table 8.11.2.1.3(cc)(1); or

(d) if in the judgment of the inspector, any unfavorable condition, such as fretting corrosion (red dust or rouge), excessive wear of individual wires in the strands, unequal tension, poor sheave grooves, etc., exists, the

Table 8.11.2.1.3(cc)(3)

Nominal Size, in.	Maximum Reduced Diameter, in.
3/8	11/32
7/16	13/32
1/2	15/32
9/16	17/32
5/8	37/64
11/16	41/64
3/4	45/64
1	15/16

GENERAL NOTE: 1 in. = 25.4 mm

criteria for broken wires will be reduced by 50% of the values indicated in Table 8.11.2.1.3(cc)(1) for any of the three conditions described above; or

(e) if there is more than one valley break per rope lay.

(2) On winding drum machines, the ropes shall be replaced

(a) if the broken wires are equally distributed among the strands, when the number of broken wires per rope lay in the worst section of rope exceeds 12 to 18; or

(b) if wire breaks predominate in one or two strands, when the number of broken wires per rope lay in the worst section of rope exceeds 6 to 12; or

(c) if there is more than one valley break per rope lay.

(3) On any type of elevator, the suspension compensation and governor ropes shall be replaced when their actual diameter is reduced below the value shown in Table 8.11.2.1.3(cc)(3).

(dd) Compensation Ropes and Chains (Item 3.34).

(ee) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.2.1.2)

(ff) Working Areas on the Car Top (2.7.5.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(gg) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)

(hh) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)

(ii) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment (2.10.1)

(07) **8.11.2.1.4 Outside Hoistway**

(a) Car Platform Guard (Item 4.1)

(b) Hoistway Doors (Item 4.2)

(c) Vision Panels (Item 4.3)

(d) Hoistway Door Locking Devices (Item 4.4)

(e) Access to Hoistway (Item 4.5)

(f) Power Closing of Hoistway Doors (Item 4.6)

(g) Sequence Operation (Item 4.7)

(h) Hoistway Enclosure (Item 4.8)

(i) Elevator Parking Devices (Item 4.9)

(j) Emergency and Access Hoistway Openings (Item 4.10)

(k) Separate Counterweight Hoistway (Item 4.11)

(l) Standby Power Selection Switch (Item 4.12)

(m) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4)

(n) Inspection and Test Panel (2.7.6.5), Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.1), and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5)

(o) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)

8.11.2.1.5 Pit (07)

(a) Pit Access, Lighting, and Stop Switch and Condition (Item 5.1)

(b) Bottom Clearance and Runby (Item 5.2)

(c) Car and Counterweight Buffer (Item 5.9)

(d) Final Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.3)

(e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.4)

(f) Traveling Cables (Item 5.5)

(g) Governor-Rope Tension Devices (Item 5.6)

(h) Compensating Chains, Ropes, and Sheaves (Item 5.10)

(i) Car Frame and Platform (Item 5.7)

(j) Car Safeties and Guiding Members (Item 5.8)

(k) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.2.1.2)

(l) Working Areas in the Pit (2.7.5.2)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement [2.7.5.2.1(a) or (b)]

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(m) Equipment Exposure to Weather (2.7.6.6)

(n) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)

(o) Guarding of Exposed Auxiliary Equipment (2.10.1)

(p) Pit Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

8.11.2.1.6 Firefighters' Emergency

8.11.2.1.7 Working Platforms (07)

(a) Working Platforms (2.7.5.3 and 2.7.5.4)

(1) operating instructions (8.6.10.8)

(b) Retractable Stops (2.7.5.5)

(1) retractable stop electrical device (2.26.2.37)

(c) Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.4)

8.11.2.2 Periodic Test Requirements: Category 1

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.2.2.1 Oil Buffers. Car and counterweight buffers shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable plunger return requirements (Item 5.9.2.1).

8.11.2.2.2 Safeties

(ED) *(a) Examinations.* All working parts of car and counterweight safeties shall be examined to determine that they are in satisfactory operating condition and that they conform to the applicable requirements and 8.7.2.14 through 8.7.2.28 (see 2.17.10 and 2.17.11). Check the level of the oil in the oil buffer and the operation of the buffer compression switch on Type C safeties.

(b) Tests. Safeties shall be subjected to the following tests with no load in the car.

(1) Type A, B, or C governor-operated safeties shall be operated by tripping the governor by hand with the car operating at the slowest operating speed in the down direction.

In this test, the safety shall bring the car to rest promptly.

In the case of Type B safeties, the stopping distance is not required to conform to 2.17.3.

In the case of Type C safeties, full oil buffer compression is not required.

In the case of Type A, B, or C safeties employing rollers or dogs for application of the safety, the rollers or dogs are not required to operate their full travel [Item 2.29.2.1].

(2) Governor-operated wood guide-rail safeties shall be tested by tripping the governor by hand with the car at rest and moving the car in the down direction until it is brought to rest by the safety and the hoisting ropes slip on traction sheaves or become slack on winding drum sheaves (Item 2.29.2.1).

(3) Type A and wood guide-rail safeties without governors that are operated as a result of the breaking or slackening of the hoisting ropes shall be tested by obtaining the necessary slack rope to cause it to function (Item 2.29.2.1).

8.11.2.2.3 Governors. Governors shall be operated manually to determine that all parts, including those that impart the governor pull-through tension to the governor rope, operate freely [Item 2.13.2.1(a)].

8.11.2.2.4 Slack-Rope Devices on Winding Drum Machines. Slack-rope devices on winding drum machines shall be operated manually and tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 2.20.2.1).

8.11.2.2.5 Normal and Final Terminal Stopping Devices. Normal and final terminal stopping devices shall be inspected and tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (2.25) (Items 3.5.2.1 and 3.6.2.1).

(ED) **8.11.2.2.6 Firefighters' Emergency Operation.** Firefighters' emergency operation shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Part 6).

8.11.2.2.7 Standby or Emergency Power Operation. Operation of elevators equipped with standby or emergency power shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 1.17.2.1). Tests shall be performed with no load in the car.

8.11.2.2.8 Power Operation of Door System. The closing forces of power-operated hoistway door systems shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 1.10.2).

8.11.2.2.9 Broken Rope, Tape, or Chain Switch. Where a rope, tape, or chain is used to connect the motion of the car to the machine room normal limit, the switch that senses failure of this connection shall be tested for compliance with 2.26.2.6 (Item 3.26.1.1).

8.11.2.2.10 The person or firm maintaining the (07) equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that all E/E/PES electrical protective devices operate as intended.

8.11.2.2.11 Ascending Car Overspeed Protection and Unintended Car Motion Devices. (07) In jurisdictions enforcing NBCC

(a) Examinations. All working parts of ascending car overspeed protection and unintended car motion devices shall be examined to determine that they are in satisfactory operating condition and that they conform to the applicable requirements of 2.19.1.2(a) and 2.19.2.2(a).

(b) Tests. These devices shall be subjected to tests with no load in the car at the slowest operating speed in the up direction.

8.11.2.3 Periodic Test Requirements: Category 5

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.2.3.1 Car and Counterweight Safeties. Types (07) A, B, and C car safeties, except those operating on wood guide rails, and their governors, shall be tested with rated load in the car. Counterweight safety tests shall be made with no load in the car. Tests shall be made by tripping the governor by hand at the rated speed. The following operational conditions shall be checked (Item 2.29.2.1):

(a) Type B safeties shall stop the car with the rated load within the required range of stopping distances for which the governor is tripped (Item 2.29.2.1).

(b) For Type A safeties and Type A safety parts of Type C safeties, there shall be sufficient travel of the safety rollers or dogs remaining after the test to bring the car and its rated load to rest on safety application at governor tripping speed.

8.11.2.3.2 Governors (07)

(a) The tripping speed of the governor and the speed at which the governor overspeed switch, where provided, operates shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements and the

Table 8.11.2.3.4 Brake Test Loads

Class of Service	Not Permitted to Carry Passengers	Permitted to Carry Passengers
Passenger	Not applicable	125% rated load
Class A	Rated load	125% rated load
Class B	Rated load	125% rated load
Class C1	Rated load	125% rated load
Class C2	Up to 150% rated load	Up to 150% rated load
Class C3	Rated load	125% rated load
One Piece Load by 2.16.7	Rated load or one piece load, whichever is greater	125% rated load or one piece load, whichever is greater

adjustable means shall be sealed (Item 2.13.2.1).

(b) The governor rope pull-through and pull-out forces shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements, and the adjustment means shall be sealed (Item 2.13.2.1).

(c) After these tests in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC, a metal tag indicating the date of the governor tests, together with the name of the person or firm that performed the tests, shall be attached to the governor in a permanent manner.

(07) **8.11.2.3.3 Oil Buffers**

(a) Car oil buffers shall be tested to determine conformance with the applicable requirements by running the car with its rated load onto the buffer at rated speed, except as specified in 8.11.2.3.3(b) and (c) (Item 5.9.2.1). Counterweight oil buffers shall be tested by running the counterweight onto its buffer at rated speed with no load in the car, except as specified in 8.11.2.3.3(b) and (c) (Item 5.9.2.1).

(b) For reduced stroke buffers, this test shall be made at the reduced striking speed permitted (Item 5.9.2.1).

(c) This test is not required where a Type C safety is used (see 8.11.2.3.1).

(d) In making these tests, the normal and emergency terminal stopping devices shall be made temporarily inoperative. The final terminal stopping devices shall remain operative and be temporarily relocated, if necessary, to permit full compression of the buffer during the test.

8.11.2.3.4 Braking System. For passenger elevators and all freight elevators, the brake shall be tested for compliance with applicable requirements. Place the load as shown in Table 8.11.2.3.4 in the car and run it to the lowest landing by normal operating means. The driving machine shall safely lower, stop, and hold the car with this load. Freight elevators of class C-2 loading shall sustain and level the elevator car (Item 2.17.2.1).

8.11.2.3.5 Emergency and Standby Power Operation. Operation of elevators equipped with emergency or standby power shall be inspected and tested for conformance with the applicable requirements (Item 1.17.2.1). Passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted to carry passengers (see 2.16.4) shall be tested with 125% of rated load [see 2.16.8(f)].

8.11.2.3.6 Emergency Terminal Stopping and Speed Limiting Devices. Emergency terminal speed-limiting devices, where provided, shall be tested for conformance with applicable requirements (2.25.4) [Item 5.3.2.1].

For static control elevators, emergency terminal stopping devices, when provided, shall be tested for conformance with applicable requirements (2.25.4) (Item 2.28.2.1).

8.11.2.3.7 Power Opening of Doors. Determine that power opening of car and hoistway doors only occurs when the car is at rest at the landing, or in the landing zone, except, in the case of static control, check that power shall not be applied until the car is within 300 mm (12 in.) of the landing (Item 1.10.2).

8.11.2.3.8 Leveling Zone and Leveling Speed. Check that the leveling zone does not exceed the maximum allowable distance. Check that the leveling speed does not exceed 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min). For static control elevators, the person or firm installing or maintaining the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the leveling speed with the doors open is limited to a maximum of 0.75 m/s (150 ft/min) and that the speed limiting (or speed monitor) means is independent of the normal means of controlling this speed [Item 1.10.2(b)].

8.11.2.3.9 Inner Landing Zone. For static control elevators, check that the zone in which the car can move with the doors open is not more than 75 mm (3 in.) above or below the landing (Item 1.10.2.1).

8.11.2.3.10 Emergency Stopping Distance. Counterweight traction elevators shall be tested for traction drive limits to ensure that

(a) during an emergency stop initiated by any of the electrical protective device(s) listed in 2.26.2 (except 2.26.2.13), (except buffer switches for oil buffers used with Type C car safeties) at the rated speed in the down direction, with passenger elevators and freight elevators permitted to carry passengers carrying 125% of their

rated load, or with freight elevators carrying their rated load, cars shall stop and safely hold the load

(b) if either the car or the counterweight bottoms on its buffers or becomes otherwise immovable:

(1) the ropes shall slip in the drive sheave and not allow the car or counterweight to be raised; or

(2) the driving system shall stall and not allow the car or counterweight to be raised.

8.11.3 Periodic Inspection and Tests of Hydraulic Elevators

All references to "Items" are to Items in ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

8.11.3.1 Periodic Inspection Requirements. Inspections shall include the following.

NOTE: For inspection frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

(07) **8.11.3.1.1 Inside the Car**

(a) Door Reopening Device (Item 1.1)
(b) Stop Switches (Item 1.2)
(c) Operating Control Devices (Item 1.3)
(d) Sill and Car Floor (Item 1.4)
(e) Car Lighting and Receptacles (Item 1.5)
(f) Car Emergency Signal (Item 1.6)
(g) Car Door or Gate (Item 1.7)
(h) Door Closing Force (Item 1.8)
(i) Power Closing of Doors or Gates (Item 1.9)
(j) Power Opening of Doors or Gates (Item 1.10)
(k) Car Vision Panels and Glass Car Doors (Item 1.11)
(l) Car Enclosure (Item 1.12)
(m) Emergency Exit (Item 1.13)
(n) Ventilation (Item 1.14)
(o) Signs and Operating Device Symbols (Item 1.15)
(p) Rated Load, Platform Area, and Data Plate (Item 1.16)
(q) Standby Power Operation (Item 1.17)
(r) Restricted Opening of Car or Hoistway Doors (Item 1.18)
(s) Car Ride (Item 1.19)
(t) Door Monitoring System
(u) Stopping Accuracy
(v) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.3.1.2)
(w) Working Areas in the Car (3.7 and 2.7.5.1)

(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)

(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)

(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)

(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)

(x) Equipment Access Panel Electrical Device (3.26.1 and 2.26.2.35)

8.11.3.1.2 Machine Room/Spaces, Control Room/Spaces (07)

(a) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)
(b) Means of Access (Item 2.1)
(c) Headroom (Item 2.2)
(d) Means Necessary for Tests (3.7.1)
(e) Inspection and Test Panel (3.7.1)
(f) Lighting and Receptacles (Item 2.3)
(g) Enclosure of Machine Room/Spaces, Control Room/Spaces (Item 2.4)
(h) Housekeeping (Item 2.5)
(i) Ventilation and Heating (Item 2.6)
(j) Fire Extinguisher (Item 2.7)
(k) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Item 2.8)
(l) Guarding of Equipment (Item 2.9)
(m) Numbering of Elevators, Machines, and Disconnect Switches (Item 2.10)
(n) Maintenance Path and Maintenance Clearance (3.7.1)
(o) Stop Switch (3.7.1 and 3.26.1)
(p) Disconnecting Means and Control (Item 2.11)
(q) Controller Wiring, Fuses, Grounding, etc. (Item 2.12)
(r) Hydraulic Power Unit (Item 2.30)
(s) Relief Valves (Item 2.31)
(t) Control Valve (Item 2.32)
(u) Tanks (Item 2.33)
(v) Flexible Hydraulic Hose and Fitting Assemblies (Item 2.34)
(w) Supply Line and Shutoff Valve (Item 2.35)
(x) Hydraulic Cylinders and Hydraulic Fluid Loss Record (8.6.5.7) (Item 2.36)
(y) Pressure Switch (Item 2.37)
(z) Recycling Operation [8.10.3.2.2(u)]
(aa) Code Data Plate (8.6.1.3) (Item 2.14)
(bb) Governor, Overspeed Switch and Seal (Item 2.13)
(cc) Wiring Diagrams (8.6.1.6.3)

8.11.3.1.3 Top-of-Car (07)

(a) Top-Of-Car Stop Switch (Item 3.1)
(b) Car Top Light and Outlet (Item 3.2)
(c) Top-Of-Car Operating Device (Item 3.3)
(d) Top-Of-Car Clearance and Refuge Space (Item 3.4)
(e) Normal Terminal Stopping Device (Item 3.5)
(f) Terminal Speed Reducing Devices (Item 3.6)
(g) Car Leveling and Anticreep Devices (Item 3.7)
(h) Speed Test (Item 3.30)
(i) Top Emergency Exit (Item 3.8)
(j) Floor and Emergency Identification Numbering (Item 3.9)
(k) Hoistway Construction (Item 3.10)
(l) Hoistway Smoke Control (Item 3.11)
(m) Pipes, Wiring, and Ducts (Item 3.12)
(n) Windows, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks (Item 3.13)

(o) Hoistway Clearances (Item 3.14)
(p) Multiple Hoistways (Item 3.15)
(q) Traveling Cables and Junction Boxes (Item 3.16)
(r) Door and Gate Equipment (Item 3.17)
(s) Car Frame and Stiles (Item 3.18)
(t) Guide Rails Fastening and Equipment (Item 3.19)
(u) Governor Rope (Item 3.20)
(v) Governor Releasing Carrier (Item 3.21)
(w) Wire Rope Fastening and Hitch Plate (Item 3.22)
(x) Suspension Rope (Item 3.23)

NOTE: Suspension rope shall be inspected and replaced according to the criteria in 8.11.2.1.3(cc).

(y) Slack Rope Device (Item 3.31)
(z) Traveling Sheave (Item 3.32)
(aa) Counterweight and Counterweight Buffer (Item 3.28)
(bb) Crosshead Data Plate (Item 3.27)
(cc) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.3.1.2)
(dd) Working Areas on the Car Top (3.7.1)
(1) means to prevent unexpected movement (2.7.5.1.1)
(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)
(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)
(4) operating instructions for egress and reentry procedure (8.6.10.7)
(ee) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)
(ff) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)
(gg) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)

(07) **8.11.3.1.4 Outside the Hoistway**
(a) Car Platform Guard (Item 4.1)
(b) Hoistway Doors (Item 4.2)
(c) Vision Panels (Item 4.3)
(d) Hoistway Door Locking Device (Item 4.4)
(e) Access to Hoistway (Item 4.5)
(f) Power Closing of Hoistway Doors (Item 4.6)
(g) Sequence Operation (Item 4.7)
(h) Hoistway Enclosure (Item 4.8)
(i) Elevator Parking Device (Item 4.9)
(j) Emergency Doors in Blind Hoistways (Item 4.10)
(k) Standby or Emergency Power Selection Switch (Item 4.12)
(l) Means Necessary for Tests (2.7.6.4, 3.7.1.8, 3.7.1.9, and 3.7.1.10)
(m) Inspection and Test Panel (3.7.1 and 2.7.6.5), Inspection Operation (2.26.1.4.1), and Inspection Operation With Open Door Circuits (2.26.1.5)
(n) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)

(07) **8.11.3.1.5 Pit**
(a) Pit Access, Lighting and Stop Switch, and Condition (Item 5.1)
(b) Bottom Clearance, Runby, and Minimum Refuge Space (Item 5.2)
(c) Plunger and Cylinder (Item 5.11)
(d) Car Buffer (Item 5.12)
(e) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (Item 5.4)
(f) Traveling Cables (Item 5.5)
(g) Car Frame and Platform (Item 5.7)
(h) Car Safeties and Guiding Members (Item 5.8)
(i) Supply Piping (Item 5.14)
(j) Governor Rope Tension Device (Item 5.6)
(k) Machinery Space/Control Space (8.11.3.1.2)
(l) Working Areas in the Pit (3.7.1 and 2.7.5.2)
(1) means to prevent unexpected movement [2.7.5.2.1(a) or (b)]
(2) Unexpected Car Movement Device (2.26.2.34)
(3) operating instructions for Unexpected Car Movement Device (8.6.10.6)
(4) operating instructions for egress and re-entry procedure (8.6.10.7)
(m) Equipment Exposure to Weather (3.7.1)
(n) Machinery Supports and Fastenings (2.9.1 and 2.9.3)
(o) Guarding of Equipment (2.10.1)
(p) Pit Inspection Operation (3.26.2)

8.11.3.1.6 Firefighters' Service. See Items 6.3 and 6.4.

8.11.3.1.7 Working Platforms (07)
(a) Working Platforms (3.7.1, 2.7.5.3, and 2.7.5.4)
(1) operating instructions (8.6.10.8)
(b) Retractable Stops (3.7.1 and 2.7.5.5)
(1) retractable stop electrical device (2.26.2.37)
(c) Inspection Operation (3.26.2)

8.11.3.2 Periodic Test Requirements: Category 1

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.3.2.1 Relief Valve Setting and System Pressure Test. The relief valve setting shall be tested to determine that it will bypass the full output of the pump before the pressure exceeds 150% of the working pressure and that the system will withstand this pressure. It shall be sealed if the relief valve setting is altered or if the seal is broken (Item 2.31).

8.11.3.2.2 Hydraulic Cylinders and Pressure Piping. This test shall be performed after the relief valve setting and system pressure test in 8.11.3.2.1. (07)

(a) Cylinders and pressure piping that are exposed shall be visually inspected.

(b) Cylinders and pressure piping that are not exposed shall be tested for leakage, which cannot be accounted for by the visible inspection in 8.11.3.2.2(a) (Item 2.36.2).

The duration of this test shall be for a minimum of 15 min (Item 2.36.2).

8.11.3.2.3 Additional Tests. The following tests shall also be performed: (07)

(a) Normal Terminal Stopping Devices (8.11.2.2.5) (Item 3.5)

(b) Governors, Overspeed Switch, and Seals (8.11.2.2.3) (Item 2.13)

(c) Safeties (8.11.2.2.2) (Items 3.29 and 5.8)

(d) Oil Buffers (8.11.2.2.1)

(e) Firefighter's Emergency Operation (8.11.2.2.6) (Items 6.3 and 6.4)

(f) Standby Power Operation (8.11.2.2.7) (Item 1.17)

NOTE: Absorption of regenerated power (2.26.10) does not apply to hydraulic elevators.

(g) Power Operations of Door System (8.11.2.2.8) (Items 4.6 and 4.7)

(h) Emergency Terminal Speed Reducing Devices (3.25.2) (Item 3.6)

(i) Low Oil Protection Operation (3.26.9) (Item 2.23.2)

(07) **8.11.3.2.4 Flexible Hose and Fitting Assemblies.** Flexible hose and fitting assemblies shall be tested at the relief valve setting pressure for a minimum of 30 s. Any signs of leakage, slippage of hose fittings, damage to outer hose covering sufficient to expose reinforcement, or bulging, or distortions of the hose body is cause for replacement.

CAUTION: **If the motor protection or motor overloads trip during this test, DO NOT change the adjustment or jumper the overloads. Damage to the motor can result from running the motor without adequate overload protection.**

8.11.3.2.5 Pressure Switch. The pressure switch and its related circuits shall be tested for conformance with applicable requirements (3.26.8) (Item 2.37).

8.11.3.3 Periodic Test Requirements: Category 3

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

(07) **8.11.3.3.1 Unexposed Portions of Pistons.** Piston rods of roped water hydraulic elevators shall be exposed, thoroughly cleaned, and examined for wear or corrosion. The piston rods shall be replaced if at any place the diameter is less than the root diameter of the threads (Item 5.11).

8.11.3.3.2 Pressure Vessels. Pressure vessels shall be checked to determine conformance with the applicable requirements, thoroughly cleaned, internally examined, and then subjected to a hydrostatic test at 150% of the working pressure for 1 min (3.24.4) (Item 2.33).

8.11.3.4 Periodic Test Requirements: Category 5

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.3.4.1 Governors, safeties, and oil buffers, where provided, shall be inspected and tested as specified in 8.11.2.3.1, 8.11.2.3.2, and 8.11.2.3.3 at intervals specified by the authority having jurisdiction. Where activation is allowed or required both by overspeed and slack rope, the safety shall have both means of activation tested.

8.11.3.4.2 Coated ropes shall be required to have a magnetic flux test capable of detecting broken wires, in addition to a visual examination.

8.11.3.4.3 Wire rope fastenings shall be inspected in accordance with Item 3.23 of ASME A17.2. Fastenings on roped hydraulic elevators utilizing pistons that are hidden by cylinder head seals shall also be inspected, even if it is temporarily necessary to support the car by other means and disassemble the cylinder head.

8.11.3.4.4 A plunger gripper, where provided, shall be inspected and tested per 8.10.3.2.5(n).

8.11.3.4.5 Overspeed valves, where provided, shall be inspected and tested to verify that they will stop the car, traveling down with rated load, within the specified limits of 3.19.4.7.5(a) using a written procedure supplied by the valve manufacturer or the person or firm maintaining the equipment. If the seal has been altered or broken, the overspeed valve shall be resealed after successful test. (07)

8.11.4 Periodic Inspection and Tests of Escalators and Moving Walks

All references to "Items" are to Items in ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks.

8.11.4.1 Periodic Inspection and Test Requirements. Inspections shall include the following: (07)

NOTE: For inspection frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

(a) General Fire Protection (Items 7.1 and 9.1)

(b) Geometry (Items 7.2 and 9.2)

(c) Handrails (Items 7.3 and 9.3)

(d) Entrance and Egress (Items 7.4 and 9.4)

(e) Lighting (Items 7.5 and 9.5)

(f) Caution Signs (Items 7.6 and 9.6)

(g) Combplate (Items 7.7 and 9.7)

(h) Deck Barricade Guard and Antislide Devices (Items 7.8 and 9.8)

(i) Steps and Treadway (Items 7.9 and 9.9)

(j) Operating and Safety Devices (Items 7.10 and 9.10)

(k) Skirt Obstruction Devices (Item 7.11)

(l) Handrail Entry Device (Items 8.13 and 10.13)

(m) Egress Restriction Rolling Shutter Device (Items 7.13 and 9.13)

(n) Speed (Items 7.14 and 9.14)

(o) Balustrades (Items 7.15 and 9.15)

(p) Ceiling Intersection Guards (Items 7.16 and 9.16)

(q) Skirt Panels (Items 7.17 and 9.17)

(r) Outdoor Protection (Items 7.18 and 9.18)

(s) Machine Rooms, where provided — Access, Lighting, Receptacle, Condition, Controller, Wiring, and Condition

(t) Code Data Plate (2.23.2) (Items 8.14 and 10.14)

8.11.4.2 Periodic Inspection and Test Requirements: Category 1

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.4.2.1 Machine Space. The machine space access, lighting, receptacles, operation, and conditions shall be examined (Items 8.1 and 10.1).

8.11.4.2.2 Stop Switch. The machine space stop switches shall be tested (Items 8.2 and 10.2).

8.11.4.2.3 Controller and Wiring. Controller and wiring shall be examined (Items 8.3 and 10.3).

8.11.4.2.4 Drive Machine and Brake. The drive machine and brakes shall be examined and tested, including test of the brake torque (Items 8.4 and 10.4).

8.11.4.2.5 Speed Governor. The mechanical speed governor, if required, shall be tested by manually operating the trip mechanism (Items 8.5 and 10.5).

8.11.4.2.6 Broken Drive Chain Device. Operation of the broken drive chain device, on the drive chain, shall be tested by manually operating the actuating mechanism (Items 8.6 and 10.6).

8.11.4.2.7 Reversal Stop Switch. The reversal stop switch (to prevent reversal when operating in the ascending direction) shall be tested by manually operating it to determine that it functions properly (Items 8.7 and 10.7).

If the device cannot be manually operated, the person or firm maintaining the equipment shall provide a written check-out procedure and demonstrate the device complies with the requirements of the Code.

8.11.4.2.8 Broken Step Chain or Treadway Device. The broken or slack step chain or treadway device shall be tested by manual operation (Items 8.8 and 10.8).

8.11.4.2.9 Step Upthrust Device. The operation of the step upthrust device shall be tested by manually displacing the step, causing the device to operate (Items 7.9 and 8.9).

8.11.4.2.10 Missing Step or Pallet Device. The missing step or pallet device shall be tested by removing a step or pallet and verifying that the device will properly function (Items 8.10 and 10.10).

8.11.4.2.11 Step or Pallet Level Device. The step, or pallet level device shall be tested by simulating an out of level step or pallet and verifying that the device functions properly (Items 8.11 and 10.11).

8.11.4.2.12 Steps, Pallet, Step or Pallet Chain, and Trusses. The steps, pallet, step or pallet chain, and trusses shall be visually examined for structural defects, mechanical condition, and buildup of combustible materials (Items 8.12 and 10.12).

8.11.4.2.13 Handrail Safety Systems. The handrail operating system shall be visually examined for condition. The handrail entry device, and the stopped handrail or handrail speed monitoring device, shall be tested by disconnecting of handrail motion sensor (Items 8.13 and 10.13). (07)

The person or firm maintaining the equipment shall provide a written checkout procedure and demonstrate that the handrail speed does not change when a retarding force, up to the maximum required by code, is applied opposite to the direction of travel (Items 7.3 and 9.3).

8.11.4.2.14 Heaters. For outdoor escalators and moving walks that require heaters, test the heaters for condition and operation (Items 8.3 and 10.3).

8.11.4.2.15 Permissible Stretch in Escalator Chains. Escalators shall have periodic examination of the clearance between successive steps to detect wear or stretch of the step chains. The clearance shall not exceed 6 mm (0.25 in.) (Item 7.9).

8.11.4.2.16 Disconnected Motor Safety Device. Operation of the device shall be tested and verified (see 6.1.6.3.10 or 6.2.6.3.8) (Item 8.6 or 10.6).

8.11.4.2.17 Response to Smoke Detectors (6.1.6.8 or 6.2.6.7) (Items 8.15 and 10.15)

8.11.4.2.18 Comb-Step or Comb-Pallet Impact Device

8.11.4.2.19 Step/Skirt Performance Index

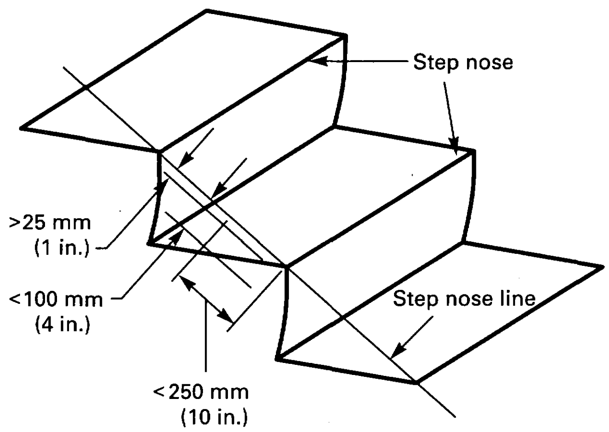
(a) The escalator skirt shall not be cleaned, lubricated, or otherwise modified in preparation for testing. The escalator instantaneous step/skirt index measurements [6.1.3.3.7(a)] shall be recorded at intervals no larger than 150 mm (6 in.) from each side of two distinct steps along the inclined portion of the escalator, where the steps are fully extended. Test steps shall be separated by a minimum of 8 steps.

(b) A load of 110 N (25 lbf) shall be laterally applied from the step to the adjacent skirt panel. The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ±11 N (2.5 lbf). The load shall be distributed over a round or square area not less than 1 940 mm^2 (3 in.^{2}) and not more than 3 870 mm^2 (6 in.^{2}).

(c) No vertical load exceeding 220 N (50 lbf) shall be applied to the test step and adjacent steps.

(d) The coefficient of friction shall be measured with the test specimen conforming to the requirements of 6.1.3.3.7(b) sliding in the direction of the step motion under a 110 N (25 lbf) normal force at the operating speed of the escalator and shall be measured with devices having sensitivity better than ±2.2 N (0.5 lbf). The direction of step motion shall be the direction of normal operation. If the escalator is operated in both directions, the down direction shall be used for the test.

Fig. 8.11.4.2.19(e)



(e) For both the coefficient of friction measurement and the loaded gap measurements, the center of the applied load shall be between 25 mm (1 in.) and 100 mm (4 in.) below the nose line of the steps. The center of the applied load shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) from the nose of the step. See Fig. 8.11.4.2.19(e).

(f) Verify that the step/skirt performance index conforms to the requirements in 6.1.3.3.7 and 8.6.8.3 (Item 7.17).

8.11.4.2.20 Clearance Between Step and Skirt (Loaded Gap). Escalators installed under ASME A17.1d–2000 shall be tested as follows (Item 7.17):

(a) Loaded gap measurements shall be taken at intervals not exceeding 300 mm (12 in.) in transition region (6.1.3.6.5) and before the steps are fully extended. These measurements shall be made independently on each side of the escalator.

(b) The applied load shall not deviate from 110 N (25 lbf) by more than ±11 N (2.5 lbf) (6.1.3.3.5). The load shall be distributed over a round or square area no less than 1 940 mm^2 (3 in.^{2}) and no more than 3 870 mm^2 (6 in.^{2}).

(c) For the loaded gap measurements, the center of the applied load shall be between 25 mm (1 in.) and 100 mm (4 in.) below the nose line of the steps. The center of the applied load shall be not more than 250 mm (10 in.) from the nose of the step. See Fig. 8.11.4.2.19(e).

8.11.4.2.21 Inspection control devices shall be tested and inspected to determine conformance with the requirements of 6.1.6.2.2 for escalators and 6.2.6.2.2 for moving walks.

8.11.4.2.22 Step Lateral Displacement Device (6.1.6.3.14). For curved escalators, manually test the device.

8.11.5 Periodic Inspection and Tests of Other Equipment

For recommended inspection and test frequency (see 8.11.1.3).

8.11.5.1 Sidewalk Elevator. Sidewalk elevators shall be subject to the applicable, periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 5.5. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.2 Private Residence Elevators. Private residence elevators should be subject to the periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3. (07)

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 5.3 and 5.4. Any additional requirements for this equipment should also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.3 Hand Elevators. Hand elevators shall be subject to the applicable, periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 4.3. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

The driving-machine brake required by 4.3.19.2 shall be tested with both empty car and rated load in the car.

8.11.5.4 Dumbwaiters. Dumbwaiters shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Part 7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

On winding drum machines, the slack-rope devices required by 2.26.2.1 shall be permitted to be tested as specified in Item 2.18 of the ASME A17.2, Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators, and Moving Walks. The driving-machine brake shall be tested to determine conformance with 7.2.10 (Item 2.18 of ASME A17.2).

8.11.5.5 Material Lifts and Dumbwaiters With Automatic Transfer Devices. Material lifts and dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3. The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Part 7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

The inspection and test requirement shall apply to the corresponding requirements in Part 7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.6 Special Purpose Personnel Elevators. Special purpose personnel elevators shall be subject to the applicable inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 5.7. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.7 Inclined Elevators. Inclined elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements in 5.1. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.8 Shipboard Elevators. Shipboard shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 5.8. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.9 Screw Column Elevators. Screw column elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 4.2. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.10 Rooftop Elevators. Rooftop elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 5.6. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.11 Rack-and-Pinion Elevators. Rack-and-pinion elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 4.1. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.12 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators. Limited-use/limited-applications elevators shall be subject to the applicable periodic inspections and tests specified in 8.11.2 and 8.11.3.

The inspection and test requirements shall apply to the corresponding requirements of 5.2. Any additional requirements for this equipment shall also be checked during these inspections and tests.

8.11.5.13 Elevators Used for Construction

8.11.5.13.1 Inspection Requirements. Inspections shall include the items specified in 8.11.2.1 for electric elevators and 8.11.3.1 for hydraulic elevators, except that the requirements of 5.10 shall apply where they are different from those in Part 2 and Part 3.

8.11.5.13.2 Periodic Test Requirements: Category 1. For electric elevators, test as specified in 8.11.2.2.1 through 8.11.2.2.5.

For hydraulic elevators, test as specified in 8.11.3.2.1, 8.11.3.2.2, 8.11.3.2.3(a) through (d), and 8.11.3.2.4.

Where permanent doors have been installed, test as specified in 8.11.2.2.8.

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.5.13.3 Periodic Inspection and Test Requirements: Category 3. For hydraulic elevators, test as specified in 8.11.3.3.

NOTE: For test frequency, see 8.11.1.3.

8.11.5.13.4 Periodic Test Requirements: Category 5. For electric elevators, test as specified in 8.11.2.3.1 through 8.11.2.3.4, and 8.11.2.3.6.

For hydraulic elevators, test as specified in 8.11.3.4.

SECTION 8.12
FLOOD RESISTANCES

8.12.1 Flood-Resistant Design and Construction

Where required by the building code, elevators shall comply with SEI/ASCE 24.

Part 9
Reference Codes, Standards, and Specifications

This Part covers the codes, standards, and specifications incorporated in this Code by reference and the specific editions that are applicable (see 9.1). This Part also lists the names and addresses of the organizations from which these documents may be procured (see 9.2).

Only that portion of the code, standard, or specification as specified by the requirements in this Code is applicable.

Section 9.1 Reference Documents (07)

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
16 CFR Part 1201-86	Architectural Glazing Standards and Related Materials	US GPO	US
30 CFR 75.1106	Code Federal Regulations	US GPO	US
ADAAG	Americans With Disability Act Accessibility Guidelines	US ATBCB	US
AGMA 218.01	Rating the Pitting Resistance and Bending Strength of Spur and Helical Involute Gear Teeth	AGMA	US
AISC Book No. S326, 1978	Specification for Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings	AISC	US
American Plywood Design Specification A3.3.1 (April 1978)	. . .	APA	US, Canada
ANSI A10.4 (latest edition)	Safety Requirements for Personnel Hoists	ANSI	US
ANSI A10.5 (latest edition)	Safety Requirements for Material Hoists	ANSI	US
ANSI A12.1-1973	Safety Requirements for Floor and Wall Openings, Railings and Toe Boards	ANSI	US
ANSI A14.3-1984	Safety Requirements for Fixed Ladders	ANSI	US, Canada
ANSI A58.1 (latest edition)	Building Code Requirements for Minimum Design Loads in Buildings and Other Structures	ANSI	US
ANSI/SIA A92 (latest edition)	Aerial Platforms	SIA	US
ANSI Z35.1-1972	Specifications for Accident Prevention Signs	ANSI	US
ANSI Z97.1-1984	Performance Specifications and Methods of Test for Safety Glazing Material Used in Buildings	ANSI	US
ANSI Z535.2 (latest edition)	Environment & Facility Safety Signs	ANSI	US, Canada
ANSI/ACI 318-83	Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete	ACI	US
ANSI/AWS D1.1 (latest edition	Structural Welding Code-Steel	AWS	US, Canada
ANSI/AWS D1.3 (latest edition)	Structural Welding Code-Sheet Steel	AWS	US, Canada
ANSI/ICC A117.1 (latest edition)	Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities	ICC	US
ANSI/RMA IP-20-1977	Specifications for Drives Using Classical Multiple V-belts (A, B, C, D, E Cross Sections)	RMA	US
ANSI/SAE SP-68	. . .	SAE	US
ANSI/UL 94 (latest edition)	Test of Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances	UL	US, Canada
ANSI/UL 268 (latest edition)	Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems	UL	US
ANSI/UL 723 (latest edition)	Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, Test for	UL	US, Canada

Section 9.1 Reference Documents (Cont'd)

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
ANSI/UL 1784-1995	Standard for Safety for Air Leakage Tests for Door Assemblies	UL	US
ANSI/Vol. Prod. Std. PS-1-74	Construction and Industrial Plywood	APA	US
ASME A17.2.1 (latest edition)	Inspectors' Manual for Electric Elevators	ASME	US
ASME A17.2.2 (latest edition)	Inspectors' Manual for Hydraulic Elevators	ASME	US
ASME A17.2.3 (latest edition)	Inspectors' Manual for Escalators and Moving Walks	ASME	US
ASME A17.3 (latest edition)	Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators	ASME	US
ASME A17.4 (latest edition)	Guide for Emergency Personnel	ASME	US
ASME A18.1 (latest edition)	Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts	ASME	US
ASME A90.1 (latest edition)	Safety Standards for Manlifts	ASME	US
ASME A120.1 (latest edition)	Safety Requirements for Powered Platforms for Building Maintenance	ASME	US
ASME B1.1 (latest edition)	Unified Inch Screw Threads	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B1.13M (latest edition)	Metric Screw Threads	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B1.20.1 (latest edition)	Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B1.20.3 (latest edition)	Dryseal Pipe Threads (Inch)	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B1.20.4-1976 (R1982)	Dryseal Pipe Threads (Metric Translation of B1.20.3)	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B20.1 (latest edition)	Safety Standards for Conveyors and Related Equipment	ASME	US
ASME B29.1-1975	Precision Power Transmission Roller Chains, Attachments, and Sprockets	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B29.2M-1982 (R1987)	Inverted Tooth (Silent) Chains and Sprockets	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B29.8-2002	Leaf Chains, Clevises, and Sheaves	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B29.15-1973 (R1987)	Heavy Duty Roller Type Conveyor Chains and Sprocket Teeth	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B29.100-2002	Precision Power Transmission, Double-Pitch Power Transmission, and Double-Pitch Conveyor Roller Chains, Attachments, and Sprockets	ASME	US, Canada
ASME B31.1 (latest edition)	Power Piping	ASME	US, Canada
ASME QEI-1 (latest edition)	Standard for the Qualification of Elevator Inspectors	ASME	US
ASME Y14.38 (latest edition)	Abbreviations and Acronyms	ASME	US
ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code Section VIII (latest edition)	. . .	ASME	US, Canada

Section 9.1 Reference Documents (Cont'd)

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
ASME Guide SI-1 (latest edition)	Orientation and Guide for Use of SI (Metric Units)	ASME	US
ASTM A 27-84a	Specifications for Mild and Medium-Strength Carbon Steel Castings for General Applications	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM A 36-84a	Specifications for Structural Steel	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM A 53 (latest edition)	Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc Coated, Welded and Seamless	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM A 106 (latest edition)	Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Rule 303.1a Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM A 283-84a	Specifications for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Threaded Standard Fasteners	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM A 307-84a	Specifications for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plate of Structural Quality	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM A 502-83a	Specifications for Steel Structural Rivets	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM A 668-85	Specifications for Carbon Allow Steel Forgings for General Industrial Use	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM D 97-85	Standard Test for Pour Point of Petroleum Oils	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM D 198-84	Static Tests of Timbers in Structural Sizes	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM D 245-81 (1986)	Establishing Structural Grades and Related Allowable Properties for Visually Graded Lumber	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM D 648	Standard Test Method for Deflection Temperature of Plastics Under Flextural Load in the Edgewise Position	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM D 2270-79	Calculating Viscosity Index from Kinematic Viscosity	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM E 8 (latest edition)	Standard Test Methods for Tension Testing of Metallic Materials	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM E 84 (latest edition)	Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials	ASTM	US, Canada
ASTM E 380 (latest edition)	Metric Practice Guide	ASTM	US
ASTM E 648-86	Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source	ASTM	US
B311-M1979	Safety Code for Manlifts	CSA	Canada
CABO One and Two Family Dwelling Code	. . .	ICC	US
CAN3-B354.1-M82 (same as CSA-B354)	Elevating Rolling Work Platforms	CSA	Canada

Section 9.1 Reference Documents (Cont'd)

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
CAN4-S104-M80 (R1985)	Fire Tests of Door Assemblies	CSA	Canada
CAN/CGSB-12.1-M90 (same as CAN2-12.1)	Glass, Safety, Tempered or Laminated	CGSB	Canada
CAN/CGSB-12.5-M86	Mirrors, Silvered	CGSB	Canada
CAN/CGSB-12.11-M90 (same as CAN2-12.11)	Glass, Wired, Safety	CGSB	Canada
CAN/CGSB-12.12-M90 (same as CAN2-12.12)	Glazing, Plastic Safety	CGSB	Canada
CAN/CSA-B72-M87 (R1998) (same as CSA-B72)	Installation Code for Lighting Protection Systems	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA G40.21-1972	Structural Quality Steels	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-S16.1-94	Limit States Design of Steel Structures	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-T515-97 (same as CAN3-T515-M85)	Requirements for Handset Telephones Intended for Use by the Hard of Hearing	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-Z185-M87 (R1997) (same as CSA-Z185)	Safety Code for Personnel Hoists	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-Z256-M87 (R1995) (same as CSA-Z256)	Safety Code for Material Hoists	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-Z271-98 (same as CSA-Z271)	Safety Code for Suspended Elevating Platforms	CSA	Canada
CAN/CSA-Z321-96 (same as CSA-Z321)	Signs and Symbols for the Workplace	CSA	US, Canada
CAN/ULC-S102.2-M88 (same as CAN/ULC-S102)	Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Flooring, Floor Covering, and Miscellaneous Materials and Assemblies	ULC	Canada
CEI IEC 61508 Parts 1 through 7 (first edition — 1998)	Functional Safety of Electrical/Electronic/Programmable Electronic Safety-Related Systems	ANSI	US, Canada
CSA A23.3-M84 (same as CAN3-A23.3)	Design of Concrete Structures for Buildings	CSA	Canada
CSA-B44.1/ASME A17.5 (latest edition)	Standard for Elevator and Escalator Electrical Equipment	ASME	US, Canada
CSA B167-96	Safety Standard for Maintenance and Inspection of Overhead Cranes, Gantry Cranes, Monorails, Hoists, and Trolleys	CSA	Canada
CSA B354 (latest edition)	Work Platform Standards	CSA	Canada
CSA B355-00	Lifts for Persons With Physical Disabilities	CSA	Canada
CSA B613-00	Private Residence Lifts for Persons With Physical Disabilities	CSA	Canada

Section 9.1 Reference Documents (Cont'd)

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
CSA C22.1-98	Canadian Electrical Code, Part I (18th edition), Safety Std. for Electrical Installations	CSA	Canada
CSA C22.2 No. 139-1982 (R1992)	Electrically Operated Valves	CSA	US, Canada
CSA C22.2 No. 141-M1985 (R1992)	Unit Equipment for Emergency Lighting	CSA	Canada
CSA 086.1-94	Engineering Design in Wood (Limit States Design)	CSA	Canada
CSA 0151-M1978 (same as CAN/CSA-0151-M78)	Canadian Softwood Plywood	CSA	Canada
CSA W47.1-1992 (R1998)	Certification of Companies for Fusion Welding of Steel Structures	CSA	Canada
CSA W59-M1989	Welded Steel Construction (Metal Arc Welding) (Metric Version)	CSA	US, Canada
CSA Z150-98	Safety Code on Mobile Cranes	CSA	Canada
CSA Z248-1975	Code for Tower Cranes	CSA	Canada
EN 12016: 1998	Electromagnetic Compatibility-Product Family Standard for Lifts, Escalator and Passenger Conveyors Immunity	BSI	US, Canada
FED-STD 191A Rev.5 (Dec-28-1989)	Federal Standard for Textile Test Methods	GSA	US
FEMA 302	NEHRP Recommended Provisions for Seismic Regulations for New Buildings and Other Structures, 1997 Edition, Part 1 — Provisions (FEMA 302)	FEMA	US
IBC (latest edition)	International Building Code	ICC	US
IEEE 45 (latest edition)	Recommended Practices for Electric Installations on Shipboard	IEEE	US, Canada
ISO/TS 14798-2000	Risk Assessment	ANSI	US, Canada
SOLAS	International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea, Regulation 3, 1974 Amendment		US
Mil Spec 83420	...	...	...
Mineral Resources 30 CFR Parts 1-199	Code of Federal Regulations MSHA	US GPO	US
NBCC	National Building Code of Canada	NRCC	Canada
NEMA 4	...	...	US
NFCC-1995	National Fire Code of Canada	NRCC	Canada
NFPA 13-1985	Installation of Sprinkler Systems	NFPA	US
NFPA 70 (latest edition)	National Electrical Code	NFPA	US

Section 9.1 Reference Documents (Cont'd)

Designation	Standard	Publisher	Applicable to
NFPA 72 (latest edition)	National Fire Alarm Code	NFPA	US
NFPA 80-1986	Fire Doors and Windows	NFPA	US, Canada
NFPA 99 (latest edition)	Standard for Health Care Facilities	NFPA	US
NFPA 101 (latest edition)	Life Safety Code	NFPA	US
NFPA 105 (latest edition)	Recommended Practice for the Installation of Smoke Control Door Assemblies	NFPA	US, Canada
NFPA 252-1984	Fire Tests of Door Assemblies	NFPA	US
NFPA 255 (latest edition)	Fire Test for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile Wall Covering	NFPA	US, Canada
NFPA 780 (latest edition)	Lightning Protection Code	NFPA	US
NFPA 1971-2000	Standard on Protective Ensemble for Structural Fire Fighting	NFPA	US
NFPA 5000 (latest edition)	Building Construction and Safety Code	NFPA	US
SAE J514-1992	Hydraulic Tube Fittings	SAE	US, Canada
SAE J517-1991	Hydraulic Hoses	SAE	US, Canada
SEI/ASCE 24	Flood Resistance Design and Construction	ASCE	US
UL 10B (latest edition)	Fire Test of Door Assemblies	UL	US
UL 104 (latest edition)	Standard for Elevator Door Locking Devices and Contacts	UL	US
UL 268 (3rd edition)	UL Standard for Safety Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems, Third Edition	UL	US
UL 924	Standard for Safety Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment	UL	US
UL 1037	Antitheft Alarms and Devices	UL	US
. . .	Elevator Industry Field Employees' Safety Handbook	Elevator World	US, Canada

Section 9.2 Procurement Information

(07)

Organization	Address and Phone Number
ACI	American Concrete Institute 38800 Country Club Drive Farmington Hills, MI 48331 Telephone: (248) 848-3700 http://www.aci-int.org
AGMA	American Gear Manufacturers Association 500 Montgomery Street Alexandria, VA 22314-1581 Telephone: (703) 684-0211 http://www.agma.org
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction, Inc. One East Wacker Drive Chicago, IL 60601-1802 Telephone: (312) 670-2400 http://www.aisc.org
ANSI	American National Standards Institute, Inc. 25 West 43rd Street New York, NY 10036 Telephone: (212) 642-4900 http://www.ansi.org
APA	American Plywood Association P.O. Box 11700 Tacoma, WA 98411-0700 Telephone: (253) 565-6600 http://www.apawood.org
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers 1801 Alexander Bell Drive Reston, VA 20191-4400 Telephone: (800) 548-2723 http://www.asce.org
ASME	The American Society of Mechanical Engineers Three Park Avenue New York, NY 10016 Telephone: (212) 591-8500 http://www.asme.org ASME Order Department 22 Law Drive Box 2300 Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300 Telephone: (201) 882-1167 (800) 843-2763
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials 100 Barr Harbor Drive P.O. Box C700 West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959 Telephone: (610) 832-9585 http://www.astm.org
AWS	American Welding Society 550 NW LeJeune Road Miami, FL 33126 Telephone: (800) 443-9353 http://www.aws.org
CSA	Canadian Standards Association 5060 Spectrum Way Mississauga, Ontario L4W 5N6, Canada Telephone: (416) 747-4044 (800) 463-6727 http://www.csa.ca
DOC	U.S. Department of Commerce Commodity Standards Division Available from Superintendent of Documents Government Printing Office Washington, DC 20402 Telephone: (202) 512-1800 (866) 512-1800 http://www.gpo.gov
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency Publication Distribution Facility 500 C Street SW Washington, DC 20472 Telephone: (202) 566-1600 http://www.fema.gov
GSA	General Services Administration Federal Supply Service 470 East L'Enfant Plaza, SW Washington, DC 20406 Telephone: (202) 619-8925 http://www.gsa.gov
ICC	International Code Council 5203 Leesburg Pike Suite 600 Falls Church, VA 22041 Telephone: (703) 931-4533 http://www.iccsafe.org
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. 445 Hoes Lane P.O. Box 1331 Piscataway, NJ 08854-1331 Telephone: (732) 981-0060 (800) 678-4333 http://www.ieee.org

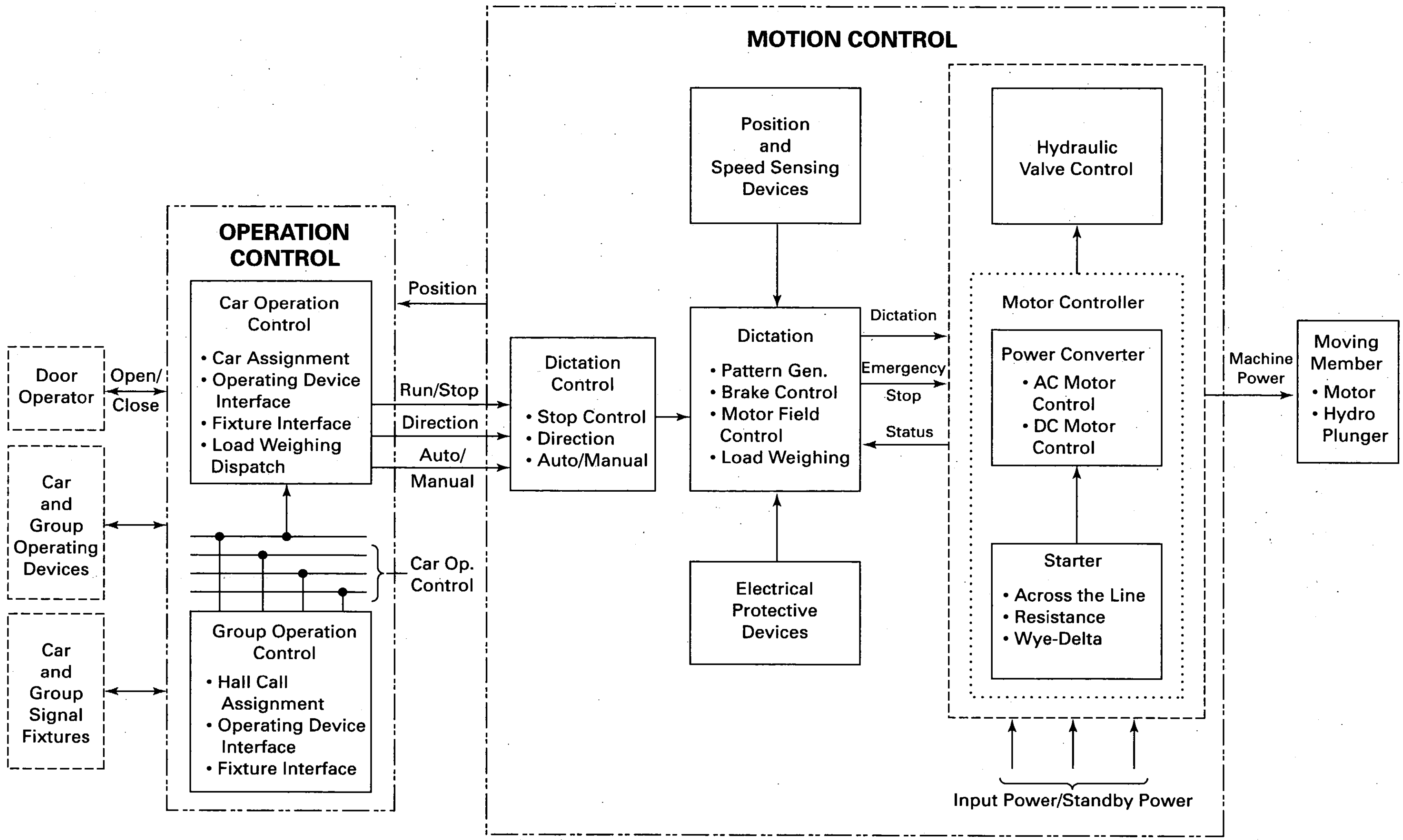
Section 9.2 Procurement Information (Cont'd)

Organization	Address and Phone Number
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association 1300 North 17th Street Rosslyn, VA 22209 Telephone: (703) 841-3200 Fax: (703) 841-3200 http://www.nema.org
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association 1 Batterymarch Park Quincy, MA 02269-7471 Telephone: (617) 770-3000 http://www.nfpa.org
NRCC	National Research Council of Canada Institute for Research in Construction Ottawa, Ontario, K1A0R6 Canada Telephone: (613) 993-2463 http://www.nrc.ca
RMA	Rubber Manufacturers Association 1400 K Street, NW Washington, DC 20005 Telephone: (202) 682-4800 http://www.rma.org
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers 400 Commonwealth Drive Warrendale, PA 15096-0001 Telephone: (724) 776-4841 http://www.sae.org
SIA	Scaffold Industry Association, Inc. 20335 Ventura Blvd., Suite 310 Woodland Hills, CA 91364 Telephone: (818) 610-0320 http://www.scaffold.org
UL	Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. 333 Pfingsten Road Northbrook, IL 60062-2096 Telephone: (847) 272-8800 http://www.ul.com
US ATBCB	United States Access Board 1331 F Street, NW Washington, DC 20004-1111 Telephone: (800) 872-2253 http://www.access-board.gov
US GPO	U.S. Government Printing Office Superintendent of Documents 732 N. Capitol Street, NW Washington, DC 20401 Telephone: (202) 512-0000 (866) 512-1800 http://www.gpoaccess.gov/index.html

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX A
CONTROL SYSTEM

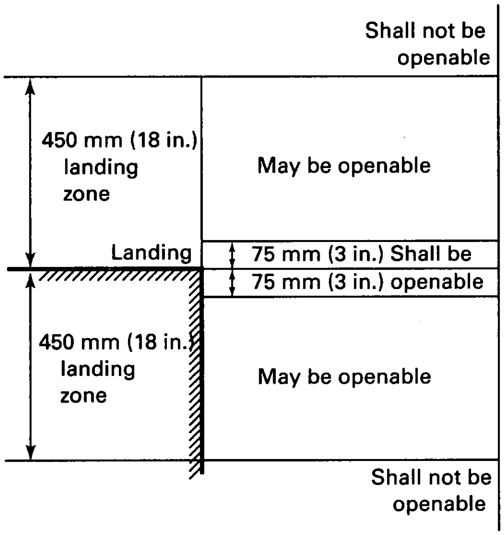
See Fig. A-1 on the following page.

Fig. A-1


MOTION CONTROL
Position and Speed Sensing Devices
Hydraulic Valve Control
OPERATION CONTROL
Car Operation Control
• Car Assignment
• Operating Device Interface
• Fixture Interface
• Load Weighing Dispatch
Position
Run/Stop
Direction
Auto/ Manual
Door Operator
Open/ Close
Car and Group Operating Devices
Car and Group Signal Fixtures
Car Op. Control
Group Operation Control
• Hall Call Assignment
• Operating Device Interface
• Fixture Interface
Dictation Control
• Stop Control
• Direction
• Auto/Manual
Dictation
• Pattern Gen.
• Brake Control
• Motor Field Control
• Load Weighing
Dictation
Emergency Stop
Status
Electrical Protective Devices
Motor Controller
Power Converter
• AC Motor Control
• DC Motor Control
Starter
• Across the Line
• Resistance
• Wye-Delta
Input Power/Standby Power
Machine Power
Moving Member
• Motor
• Hydro Plunger

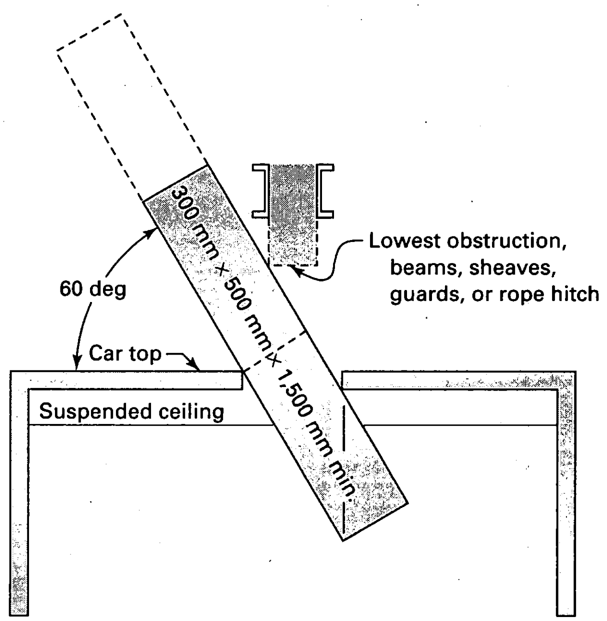
NONMANDATORY APPENDIX B
DOOR LANDING AND UNLOCKING ZONES

Fig. B-1 Unlocking Zone
(2.12.5)



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX C
LOCATION OF TOP EMERGENCY EXIT

Fig. C-1 Parallelepiped Volume Orientations [2.14.1.5.1(b)(2)]



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX D
RATED LOAD AND CAPACITY PLATES FOR PASSENGER ELEVATORS

Requirement 2.16.1 specifies the minimum rated load for passenger elevators in terms of kilograms (pounds). Requirement 2.16.3.2.1 requires that a capacity plate indicating the rated load in kilograms (pounds) be located inside the car.

When local ordinances require the elevator capacity to be also indicated in terms of persons, the number of persons should be calculated by dividing the rated load, if expressed in kilograms, by 72.5 or by 160 if expressed in pounds. The result (quotient) should be reduced to the next lowest whole number. As an example, if the result is 14.97, the capacity in terms of persons should be 14.

(07)

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX E
ELEVATOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PERSONS WITH PHYSICAL DISABILITIES IN JURISDICTIONS ENFORCING NBCC

INTRODUCTION

This Appendix was developed and approved by the CSA B44 Technical Committee. The ASME A17 Standards Committee, in the spirit of harmonization, authorized the publication of this Appendix.

This Appendix is not a mandatory part of this Code; however, it is provided for reference in order to comply with the requirements of the NBBC.

E-1 Scope

This Appendix contains requirements intended to make passenger elevators usable by persons with physical disabilities in jurisdictions enforcing NBCC. These requirements are in addition to, or modifications of, certain requirements specified elsewhere in this Standard.

E-2 Definitions

destination-oriented elevator system: an elevator system that provides lobby controls to select destination floors, lobby indicators designating which elevator to board, and a car indicator designating the floors at which the car will stop.

physical disability: a disability resulting in a mobility or sensory impairment.

E-3 Operation and Leveling

Elevator operation shall be automatic. Each car shall be equipped with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring and maintain the car at floor landings within a tolerance of 13 mm (0.5 in.) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.

E-4 Door Operation

Power-operated horizontally sliding car and landing doors opened and closed by automatic means shall be provided.

E-5 Door Size

The clear width of elevator doors shall comply with Table E-1.

E-6 Door Protective and Reopening Device

E-6.1 Doors shall be provided with a door-reopening device that will function to stop and reopen a car door and an adjacent landing door to at least 910 mm (36 in.), in case the car door is obstructed while closing. This reopening device shall also be capable of sensing an object or person in the path of a closing door at a nominal 125 mm ± 25 mm (5 in. ± 1 in.) and 735 mm ± 25 mm (29 in. ± 1 in.) above the floor without requiring contact for activation, although contact may occur before the door reverses.

E-6.2 Door-reopening devices shall remain effective for a period of not less than 20 s.

E-7 Door Timing for Hall and Car Calls

From the time the doors start to open, a minimum period of 5 s shall elapse before the doors start to close, if it is a hall call, and 3 s, if it is a car call. A reduction of this time shall be permitted after operation of the door close button.

E-8 Inside Dimensions of Elevator Cars

The inside dimensions of elevator cars shall comply with Table E-1.

E-9 Car Controls (Fig. E-1)

E-9.1 Feature. Car controls shall have the features as specified in Clauses E-9.2 to E-9.7.

E-9.2 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space of 760 mm × 1 220 mm (30 in. × 48 in.) minimum shall be provided at controls.

E-9.3 Height. Buttons with floor designations shall be located a maximum of 1 220 mm (48 in) above the floor or ground measured to the centreline of the buttons, except that when the elevator serves more than 16 openings and parallel approach is provided, the location of buttons with floor designations a maximum of 1 370 mm (54 in.) above the floor shall be permitted. Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm, shall be grouped at the bottom of the panel. Emergency control buttons shall have their centrelines 890 mm (35 in.) minimum above the floor or ground.

E-9.4 Buttons

E-9.4.1 Button Dimensions. Buttons shall be 19 mm (0.75 in.) minimum in their smallest dimension. Buttons or surrounding button collars shall be raised a minimum of 1.5 mm (0.06 in.).

Table E-1 Minimum Dimensions of Elevator Cars

Door Location	Door Clear Width, mm	Inside Car, Side to Side, mm	Inside Car, Back Wall to Front Return, mm	Inside Car, Wall to Inside Face of Door, mm
Centered	1 065	2 030	1 295	1 370
Side (off-center)	915[2]	1 725	1 295	1 370
Any	915[2]	1 370	2 030	2 030
Any	915[2]	1 525	1 525	1 525
Minimum Diameter of LU/LA (Limited Use/Limited Application) Elevators				
Any	815	1 065	1 370	Not specified

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) E-1 is based on Table 407.2.8 in ANSI/ICC A117.1, metric values only.
(b) A tolerance of −16 mm shall be permitted.

E-9.4.2 Button Arrangement. Except where provided in a standard telephone keypad arrangement, buttons shall be arranged with numbers in ascending order. When two or more columns of buttons are provided, they shall read from left to right.

E-9.4.3 Button Designations. Except where provided in a standard telephone keypad arrangement, control buttons shall be identified by tactile characters and visual characters complying with Clause E-20. Tactile characters and Braille shall be placed immediately to the left of the button to which they apply.

E-9.4.4 Control Button. The control button for the main entry floor, and control buttons other than remaining buttons with floor designations, shall be identified with tactile and visual symbols as shown in Table 2.26.12.1.

EXCEPTION: The location and size of Braille, where required, shall comply with Table 2.26.12.1. (English shown for reference only.)

E-9.4.5 Visible Indicators. Buttons with floor designations shall be provided with visible indicators to show that a call has been registered. The visible indication shall extinguish when the car arrives at the designated floor.

E-9.5 Telephone-Style Keypads. Telephone-style keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement. Call buttons shall be 19 mm (0.75 in.) minimum in their smallest dimension. Buttons shall be raised a minimum of 1.5 mm (0.06 in.). Braille shall not be required. Characters shall be 13 mm (0.5 in.) minimum in height and otherwise conform to Clause E-20.4. The number five key shall have a single raised dot. The dot shall be 3.00 mm to 3.05 mm (0.118 in. to 0.12 in.) base diameter and in other aspects conform to Table E-19.5. Characters shall be centred on the corresponding keypad button. A display shall be provided in the car with visible indicators to show registered car destinations. The visible indication shall extinguish when the call has been answered. A standard five-pointed star shall be used to indicate the main entry floor.

E-10 Car Position Indicators

E-10.1 General. In elevator cars, both audible and visible car floor location indicators shall be provided to identify the floor location of the car.

E-10.2 Visible. Indicators shall be located above the car control panel or above the door. Numerals shall be 16 mm (0.63 in.) minimum in height.

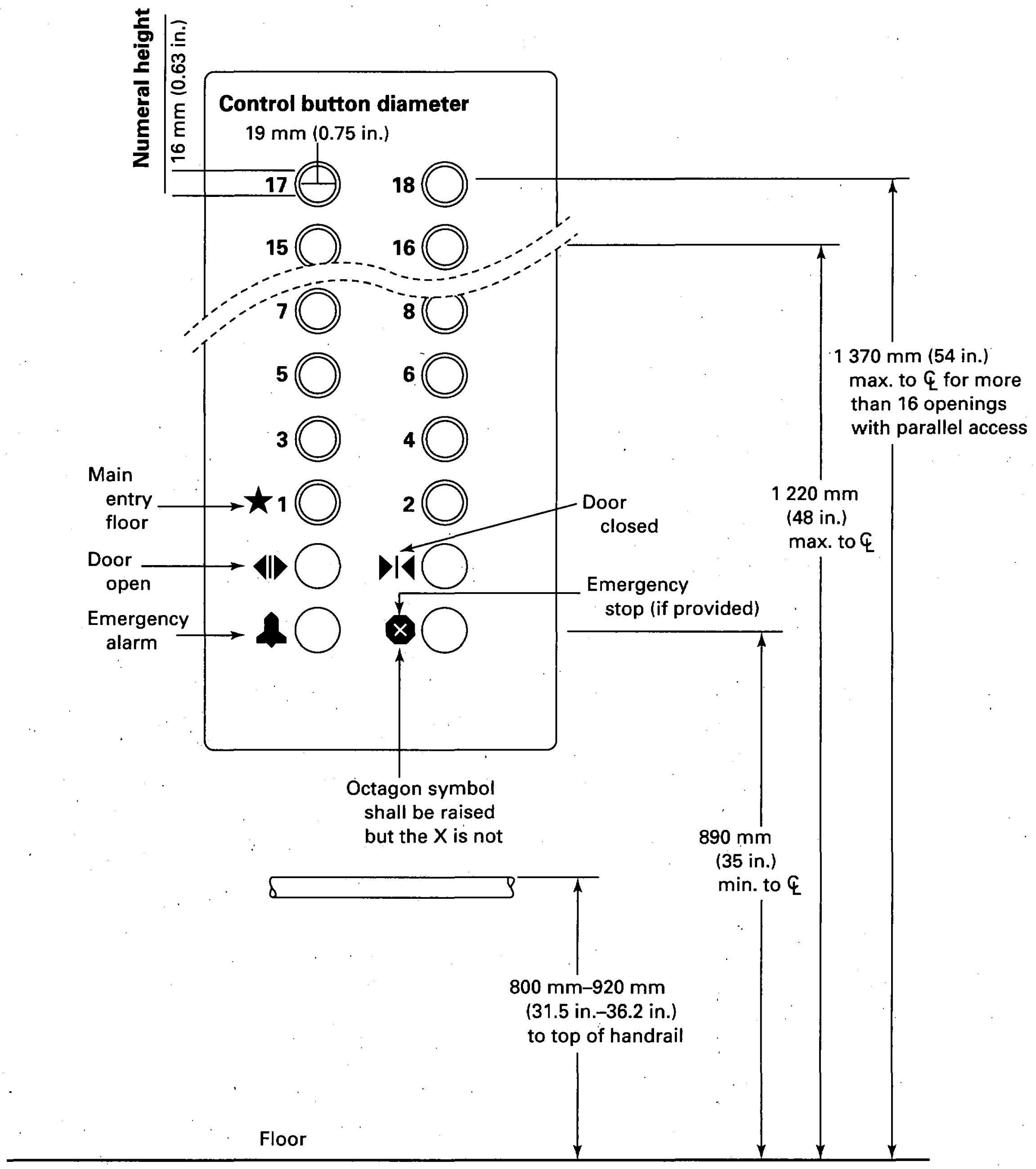
E-10.3 Audible. The audible signal shall be 10 dBA minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dBA maximum, measured at the annunciator. The signal shall be an automatic verbal announcement that announces the floor at which the car has stopped, except that for elevators that have a rated speed of 1 m/s (3.3 ft/s) or less, an audible signal with a frequency of 1 500 Hz maximum that sounds as the car passes or stops at a floor served by the elevator shall be permitted.

E-11 Emergency Communications

E-11.1 General. Emergency two-way communication systems between the elevator car and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with 2.27.1. The highest operable part of a two-way communication system shall be located a maximum of 1 220 mm (48 in.) from the floor. If the device is located in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 22.2 N (5 lbf) maximum.

E-11.2 Telephones. The device shall be identified by symbol. The identification shall be a phone located adjacent to the device or located on the compartment

Fig. E-1 Car Controls
(See para. E-9 and Table 2.26.12.1)



door if the device is located in a closed compartment. If the system uses a handset, the cord from the panel to the handset shall have a minimum length of 900 mm (35.5 in.). Telephones, where provided, shall be equipped with a receiver that generates a magnetic field in the area of the receiver cap, and the telephone shall have a volume control and shall comply with CSA/CAN3-T515.

E-11.3 Emergency Signalling Device. The car emergency signalling device shall not be limited to voice communication. If instructions for use are provided, essential information shall be presented in both tactile and visual form.

E-12 Floor Surfaces

Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall have a firm, stable, and skid-resistant surface that permits easy movement of wheelchairs. Carpet pile height shall be 13 mm (0.5 in.) maximum.

E-13 Handrails

Handrails shall be provided on all nonaccess walls. The top of the gripping surfaces of the handrails shall be at a height of 800 mm to 920 mm (31.5 in. to 36.2 in.), with a space of 35 mm to 45 mm (1.4 in. to 1.8 in.) between the handrails and wall.

E-14 Illumination Levels

The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, car threshold, and landing sill shall be 100 lx (10 fc) minimum.

E-15 Hall Buttons

E-15.1 Hall buttons in elevator lobbies and halls shall be located vertically between 890 mm and 1 220 mm (35 in. and 48 in.) above the floor, measured to the centerline of the respective button.

E-15.2 A clear floor space of 760 mm ± 1 220 mm (30 in. ± 48 in.) minimum shall be provided at hall buttons.

E-15.3 Hall buttons shall be 19 mm (0.75 in.) minimum in the smallest dimension.

E-15.4 Hall buttons shall have visual signals to indicate when each call is registered and when each call is answered.

E-15.5 The hall button that designates the UP direction shall be located above the button that designates the DOWN direction. Buttons or surrounding button collars shall be raised a minimum of 1.5 mm (0.06 in.). Objects located beneath hall buttons shall protrude 25 mm (1 in.) maximum.

E-16 Hall or In-Car Signals

E-16.1 General. A visible and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call and its direction of travel, except that signals in cars, visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call buttons, and complying with requirements of Clauses E-16.2 and E-16.3, shall be permitted.

E-16.2 Audible Signals. Audible signals shall sound once for the UP direction and twice for the DOWN direction, or shall have verbal annunciators that state the word UP or DOWN. Audible signals shall have a frequency of 1 500 Hz maximum. The audible signal or verbal annunciator shall be 10 dBA minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dBA maximum, measured at the hall call button.

E-16.3 Visible Signals

E-16.3.1 Height. Hall signal fixtures shall be 1 830 mm (72 in.) minimum above the floor or ground, measured to the centerline of the fixture.

E-16.3.2 Size. The visible signal elements shall be 60 mm (2.36 in.) minimum in the smallest dimension.

E-16.3.3 Visibility. Signals shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall button.

E-17 Floor/Car Designations

Raised character and Braille floor designations shall be provided on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances and shall be centred at 1 525 mm (60 in.) above the floor, measured from the baseline of the characters. A raised star placed immediately to the left of the floor designation shall also be provided on both jambs at the main entry level. Such characters shall be 50 mm (2 in.) high and shall comply with Clause E-20.2.

E-18 Destination-Oriented Elevators

E-18.1 General. Destination-oriented elevators shall comply with Clauses E-3 to E-8, E-11, E-12, E-14, E-17, and E-18.2 to E-18.6.

E-18.2 Call Buttons. Call buttons shall be 890 mm minimum and 1 220 mm maximum (35 in. minimum and 48 in. maximum) above the floor or ground, measured to the centerline of the buttons. A clear floor or ground space of 760 mm × 1 220 mm (30 in. × 48 in.) shall be provided. Call buttons shall be 19 mm (0.75 in.) minimum in their smallest dimension. Buttons shall be raised a minimum of 1.5 mm (0.06 in.). Objects beneath hall call buttons shall protrude 25 mm (1 in.) maximum into the clear floor or ground space. Destination-oriented elevator systems shall have a keypad or other means for the entry of destination information. Keypads, if provided, shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement, and buttons shall be identified by characters complying with Clause E-20.4. Characters shall be centered on the corresponding keypad button. The number five key shall have a single raised dot. The dot shall be 3.00 mm to 3.05 mm (0.118 in. to 0.12 in.) base diameter, and in other aspects comply with Table E-20.5. Destination-oriented elevator systems shall be provided with visual and audible signals that indicate which elevator car to enter. The audible signal shall be activated by pressing the function button. The function button shall be identified by the international symbol for accessibility (see Fig. E-20.7.2.1). The symbol shall be 16 mm (0.63 in.) in height. The function button shall be located immediately below the keypad arrangement or floor buttons. A display shall be provided in the car with visible indicators to show registered car destinations.

E-18.3 Hall Signals

E-18.3.1 General. A visible and audible signal shall be provided to indicate a car destination in accordance with Clause E-18.2. The audible tone and verbal announcement shall be the same as those given at the call button or call button keypad, if provided. Each elevator in a bank shall have audible and visible means for differentiation.

E-18.3.2 Visible Signals

E-18.3.2.1 Height. Hall signal fixtures shall be 1 830 mm (72 in.) minimum above the floor or ground, measured to the centerline of the fixture.

E-18.3.2.2 Size. The visible signal elements shall be 60 mm (2.36 in.) minimum in their smallest dimension.

E-18.3.2.3 Visibility. Signals shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hoistway entrance.

E-18.4 Car Controls. Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm, shall have centerlines that are 890 mm minimum and 1 220 mm maximum (35 in. minimum and 48 in. maximum) above the floor or ground. Buttons shall be 19 mm (0.75 in.) minimum in their smallest dimension. Buttons shall be raised a minimum of 1.5 mm (0.06 in.). A clear floor space of 760 mm × 1 220 mm (30 in. × 48 in.) minimum shall be provided at controls.

E-18.5 Car Position Indicators

E-18.5.1 General. In elevator cars, audible and visible car location indicators shall be provided.

E-18.5.2 Visible Indicators. Indicators shall be above the car control panel or above the door. Numerals shall be 16 mm (0.63 in.) high minimum. As the car passes or stops at a floor served by the elevator, the corresponding character shall illuminate. The visible indicators shall extinguish when the car arrives at the designated floor.

E-18.5.3 Audible Indicators. An automatic verbal announcement that announces the floor at which the car has stopped shall be provided. The announcement shall be 10 dBA minimum above ambient and 80 dBA maximum, measured at the annunciator.

E-18.6 Elevator Car Identification. In addition to the tactile signs required by Clause E-17, a tactile elevator car identification shall be placed immediately below the hoistway entrance floor designation. The characters shall be 50 mm (2 in.) high and shall comply with Clause E-20.2.

E-19 Limited-Use/Limited-Application Elevators

Limited-use/limited-application elevators shall comply with Clauses E-1, and E-3 to E-17.

E-20 Signs

E-20.1 General. Signs required to be tactile, visual, or both shall comply with Clauses E-20.2 to E-20.7.

E-20.2 Characters That Are Both Tactile and Visual

E-20.2.1 General. Characters required to be tactile shall comply with Clauses E-20.2.2 to E-20.2.6. Tactile characters shall be duplicated in Braille in accordancewith Clause E-20.5, except for tactile characters complying with Clause E-20.3, where separate visual characters with duplicate information complying with Clause E-20.4 are provided.

E-20.2.2 Finish and Contrast. Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background: either light characters shall appear on a dark background or dark characters shall appear on a light background.

E-20.2.3 Tactile Character Depth. Tactile characters shall be raised a minimum of 0.8 mm (0.03 in.) above their background.

E-20.2.4 Character Forms

E-20.2.4.1 Fonts. Fonts shall have characters complying with Clauses E-20.2.4.2 to E-20.2.4.7.

E-20.2.4.2 Case. Characters shall be uppercase.

E-20.2.4.3 Style. Characters shall be sans serif. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual form.

E-20.2.4.4 Width. Character width shall be 55% minimum and 110% maximum of the height of the character, with the width based on the uppercase letter "O" and the height based on the uppercase letter "I."

E-20.2.4.5 Stroke Thickness. Characters with rectangular cross-sections shall have a stroke thickness that is 10% minimum, and 15% maximum, of the height of the character, based on the uppercase letter "I." Characters with other cross sections shall have a stroke thickness at the base of the cross sections that is 10% minimum, and 30% maximum, of the height of the character, and a stroke thickness at the top of the cross sections that is 15% maximum of the height of the character, based on the uppercase letter "I."

E-20.2.4.6 Spacing. Where characters have rectangular cross sections, spacing between individual characters shall be 3 mm minimum to 10 mm maximum (0.118 in. minimum to 0.4 in. maximum). Where characters have other cross sections, spacing between individual characters shall be 2 mm minimum to 10 mm maximum (0.08 in. minimum to 0.4 in. maximum) at the base of the cross sections and 3 mm minimum to 10 mm maximum (0.118 in. minimum to 0.4 in. maximum) at the top of the cross sections. Spacing shall be measured between the baselines of separate lines of characters and shall be 135% minimum to 170% maximum of the character height.

E-20.2.4.7 Height. Character height, measured vertically from the baseline of the character, shall be

16 mm minimum (0.63 in. minimum), and 51 mm maximum (2 in. maximum), based on the uppercase letter "I."

E-20.2.5 Mounting Height. Characters shall be located 1 220 mm minimum and 1 525 mm maximum (48 in. minimum and 60 in. maximum) above the adjacent floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the characters, except for elevator car controls.

E-20.2.6 Mounting Location. Where a sign containing tactile characters is provided at a door, the sign shall be located alongside the door on the latch side. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors, the sign shall be located to the right of the right-hand door. Where there is no wall space on the latch side of a single door, or to the right side of double doors, signs shall be located on the nearest adjacent wall. Signs containing tactile characters shall be located so that a clear floor space of 455 mm × 455 mm (18 in. × 18 in.) minimum, centered on the sign, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 deg open position.

EXCEPTION: Signs shall be permitted on the push side of doors with closers and without hold-open devices.

E-20.3 Tactile Characters

E-20.3.1 General. Where tactile characters are required, and separate tactile and visual characters with duplicate information are provided, tactile characters shall comply with Clauses E-20.3.2 to E-20.3.5 and visual characters shall comply with Clause E-20.4. Tactile characters shall be duplicated in Braille in accordance with Clause E-20.5.

E-20.3.2 Tactile Character Depth. Tactile characters shall be raised a minimum of 0.8 mm (0.03 in.) above their background.

E-20.3.3 Character Forms

E-20.3.3.1 Fonts. Fonts shall have characters complying with Clauses E-20.3.3.2 to E-20.3.3.7.

E-20.3.3.2 Case. Characters shall be uppercase.

E-20.3.3.3 Style. Characters shall be sans serif. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual form.

E-20.3.3.4 Width. Character width shall be 55% minimum and 110% maximum of the height of the character, with the width based on the uppercase letter "O" and the height based on the uppercase letter "I."

E-20.3.3.5 Stroke Thickness. Characters shall have a stroke thickness that is 15% maximum of the height of the character, based on the uppercase letter "I."

E-20.3.3.6 Spacing. Spacing between individual characters shall be 3 mm minimum to 6 mm maximum (0.118 in. minimum to 0.24 in. maximum). Spacing shall be calculated by measuring the two closest points between each adjacent character within a message, excluding spaces between words. Spacing between the baseline of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135% minimum and 170% maximum of the character height.

E-20.3.3.7 Height. Character height, measured vertically from the baseline of the character, shall be 13 mm (0.5 in.) minimum, and 19 mm (0.75 in.) maximum, based on the uppercase letter "I."

E-20.3.4 Mounting Height. Characters shall be located 1 220 mm minimum and 1 525 mm maximum (48 in. minimum and 60 in. maximum) above the adjacent floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the characters, except for elevator car controls.

E-20.3.5 Mounting Location. Where a tactile sign is provided at a door, the sign shall be located alongside the door on the latch side. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors, the sign shall be located to the right of the right-hand door. Where there is no wall space on the latch side of a single door, or to the right side of double doors, signs shall be located on the nearest adjacent wall. Signs containing tactile characters shall be located so that a clear floor space of 455 mm × 455 mm (18 in. × 18 in.) minimum, centered on the sign, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 deg open position.

EXCEPTION: Door-mounted signs shall be permitted on the push side of doors with closers and without hold-open devices.

E-20.4 Visual Characters

E-20.4.1 General. Visual characters required to be accessible shall comply with Clauses E-20.4.2 and E-20.4.3.

E-20.4.2 Finish and Contrast. Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background: either light characters shall appear on a dark background or dark characters shall appear on a light background.

E-20.4.3 Character Forms

E-20.4.3.1 General. Fonts shall have characters complying with Clauses E-20.4.3.2 to E-20.4.3.7.

E-20.4.3.2 Case. Characters shall be uppercase and/or lowercase.

E-20.4.3.3 Style. Characters shall be conventional in form. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual form.

E-20.4.3.4 Width. Character width shall be 55% minimum and 110% maximum the height of the character, with the width based on the uppercase "O," and the height based on the uppercase "I."

E-20.4.3.5 Stroke Thickness. Characters shall have a stroke thickness that is 10% minimum, and 30%

maximum, the height of the character, based on the uppercase letter "I."

E-20.4.3.6 Spacing. Spacing between individual characters shall be 10% minimum and 35% maximum of character height. Spacing shall be calculated by measuring the two closest points between each adjacent character within a message, excluding spaces between words. Spacing between the baseline of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135% minimum and 170% maximum of the character height.

E-20.4.3.7 Height. Minimum character height, measured from the baseline of the character, shall comply with Clause E-9.4, based on the height of the characters above the finish floor of the viewing location and the minimum viewing distance. Character height shall be based on the uppercase letter "I." Minimum viewing distance shall be the horizontal distance where an obstruction prevents further approach toward the sign.

E-20.5 Braille

E-20.5.1 General. Tactile characters shall be accompanied by Grade II Braille complying with Clauses E-20.5.2 to E-20.5.4 and Table E-20.5. Braille dots shall have a domed or rounded shape.

E-20.5.2 Location. Braille shall be located below the corresponding text. If text is multi-lined, Braille shall be placed below the entire text. Braille shall be separated 10 mm (0.4 in.) minimum from any other tactile characters. Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated 5 mm (0.2 in.) minimum either directly below or adjacent to the corresponding raised characters or symbols.

E-20.5.3 Height. Braille shall be located 1 015 mm (40 in.) minimum, and 1 525 mm (60 in.) maximum, above the finish floor, measured from the baseline of the Braille cells, except for elevator car controls.

E-20.5.4 Braille Standard. Braille shall be in accordance with literary Braille, except the indication of an uppercase letter or letters shall only be used before the first word of sentences, proper nouns and names, individual letters of the alphabet, initials, or acronyms.

E-20.6 Identifying Pictograms

E-20.6.1 General. Where pictograms are required to be accessible, they shall comply with Clauses E-20.6.2 to E-20.6.4.

E-20.6.2 Pictogram Field. Pictograms shall have a field with a height of 150 mm (6 in.) minimum. Characters and/or Braille shall not be located in the pictogram field.

E-20.6.3 Finish and Contrast. Pictograms and their fields shall have a nonreflective finish. Pictograms shall contrast with their fields: either a light pictogram shall appear on a dark field or a dark pictogram shall appear on a light field.

E-20.6.4 Text Descriptors. Where text descriptors for pictograms are required, they shall be located directly below or adjacent to the pictogram and shall comply with Clause E-20.2.

E-20.7 Symbols of Accessibility

E-20.7.1 Finish and Contrast. Symbols of accessibility and their backgrounds shall have a non-glare finish. Symbols of accessibility shall contrast with their backgrounds: either a light symbol shall appear on a dark background or a dark symbol shall appear on a light background.

E-20.7.2 Symbols

E-20.7.2.1 International Symbol of Accessibility. Where the international symbol of accessibility is required, it shall be proportioned as shown in Fig. E-20.7.2.1.

E-20.7.2.2 International Symbol of a Text Telephone (TTY). Where the international symbol of text telephones (TTY) is required, it shall be proportioned as shown in Fig. E-20.7.2.2.

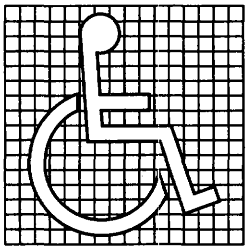
E-20.7.2.3 Assistive Listening Systems. Where assistive listening systems are required to be identified by the international symbol of access for hearing loss, it shall be proportioned as shown in Fig. E-20.7.2.3.

E-20.7.2.4 Volume-Controlled Telephones. Where telephones with volume controls are required to be identified, the identification symbol shall be a telephone handset with radiating sound waves, such as shown in Fig. E-20.7.2.4.

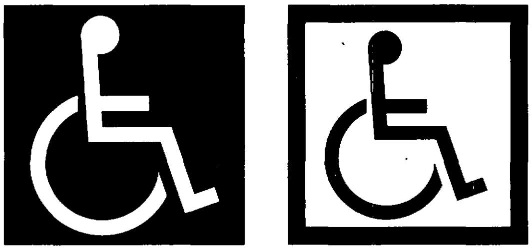
Table E-20.5 Measurement Range for Standard Sign Braille

Measurement Range	Minimum, mm	Maximum, mm
Dot base diameter	1.5	1.5
Distance between any two dots in same cell, center to center	2.3	2.5
Distance between corresponding dots in adjacent cells, center to center	6.1	7.6
Dot height	0.6	0.8
Distance between corresponding dots from one cell to the cell directly below, center to center	10.0	10.1

Fig. E-20.7.2.1 International Symbol of Accessibility



(a) Proportions



(b) Display Conditions

Fig. E-20.7.2.2 International TTY Symbol

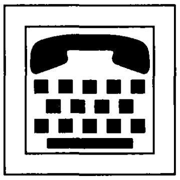


Fig. E-20.7.2.3 International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss

Fig. E-20.7.2.4 Volume-Controlled Telephone

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX F
ASCENDING CAR OVERSPEED AND UNINTENDED CAR MOVEMENT PROTECTION

See Table F-1 on the following page.

Table F-1 Traction Elevator Brake Type, Function, and Performance

Brake Type	Location	Normal Operation Function	Emergency Operation Function	Performance (Minimum Required)	
				Normal	Emergency
Driving machine brake (see 1.3 and 2.24.8.3)	Electric driving machine (see 1.3 and 2.24.8.1)	To hold car stationary at floor [Note (1)] [see 2.24.8.3(a) and (b), and 2.26.8]	Retard car during emergency stops [see 2.24.8.3(c), 2.26.8.3(c) and (d)]	Hold 125% rated load [Note (2)] [see 2.24.8.3(a)]	Retard empty car in up direction [see 2.24.8.3(c)]
Braking system (see 1.3 and 2.24.8.2)	Not specified	Note (1) (see 2.26.8)	Retard car during emergency stops, [see 2.24.8.2 and 2.26.8.3(c) and (d)]	Note (1)	Retard 125% rated load car in down direction from rated speed (see 2.24.8.2)
Emergency brake (see 1.3 and 2.19.3)	Electric driving machine, hoist ropes, compensation ropes, car, or counterweight (see 2.19.3.2)	Not permitted [see 2.19.3.2(c)]	Retard car during ascending car overspeed and unintended movement, independently of the braking system [see 2.19.1.2(b) and 2.19.2.2(b)]	Not applicable [see 2.19.3.2(c)]	Retard empty car in the up direction [see 2.19.3.2(a)] up to 110% of governor tripping speed [see 2.19.1.2(a)] Stop unintended motion: 125% rated load down or empty car up [see 2.19.2.2(b) and Note (2)]

GENERAL NOTE: See 1.3, 2.19, and 2.24.8.

NOTES:

(1) It is permitted that the braking system, or the driving machine brake function in normal retardation of the elevator car.

(2) For freight elevators not authorized to carry passengers, 100% rated load (see 2.16.8).

Fig. F-1 Ascending Car Overspeed Protection (2.19.1)

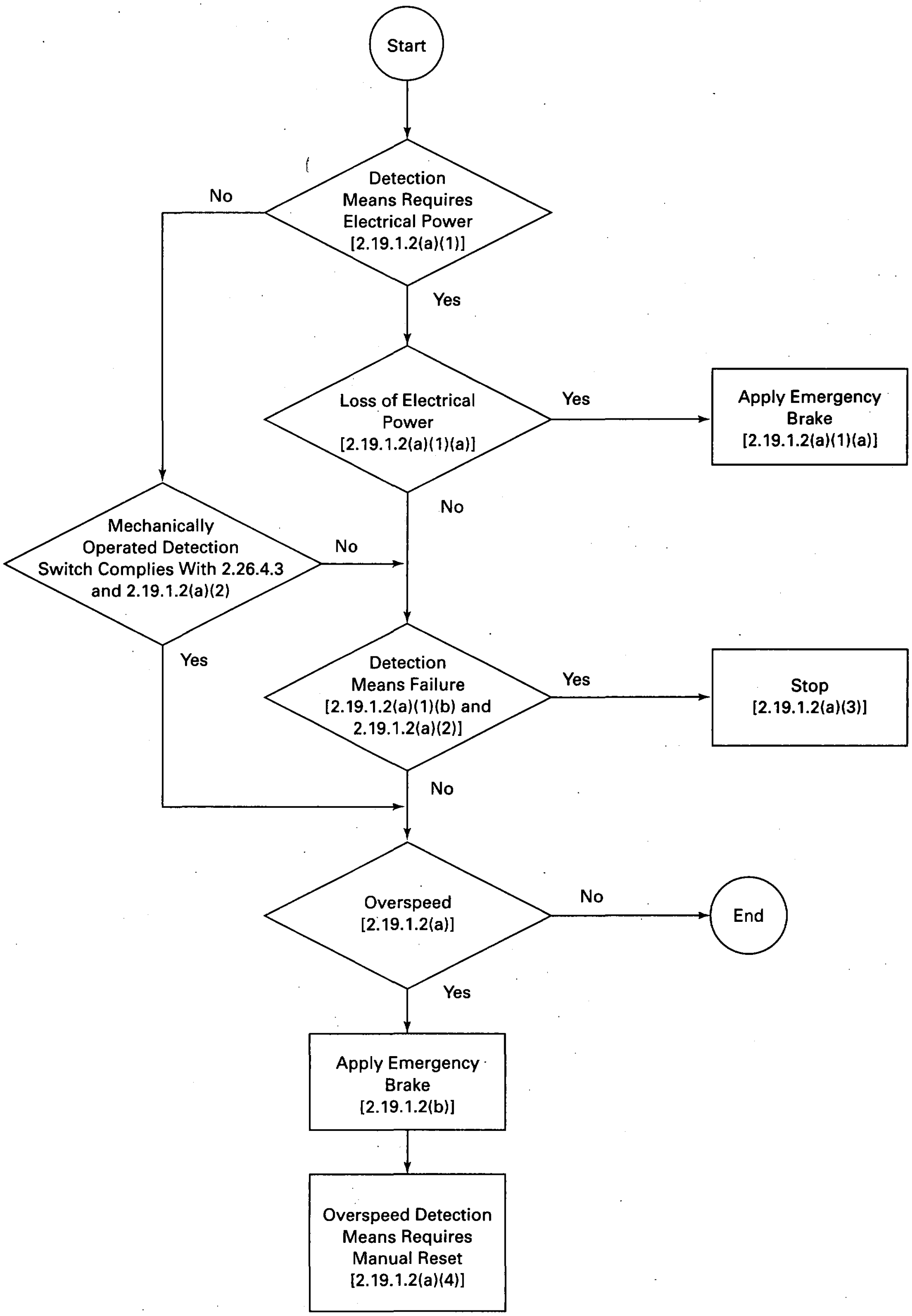
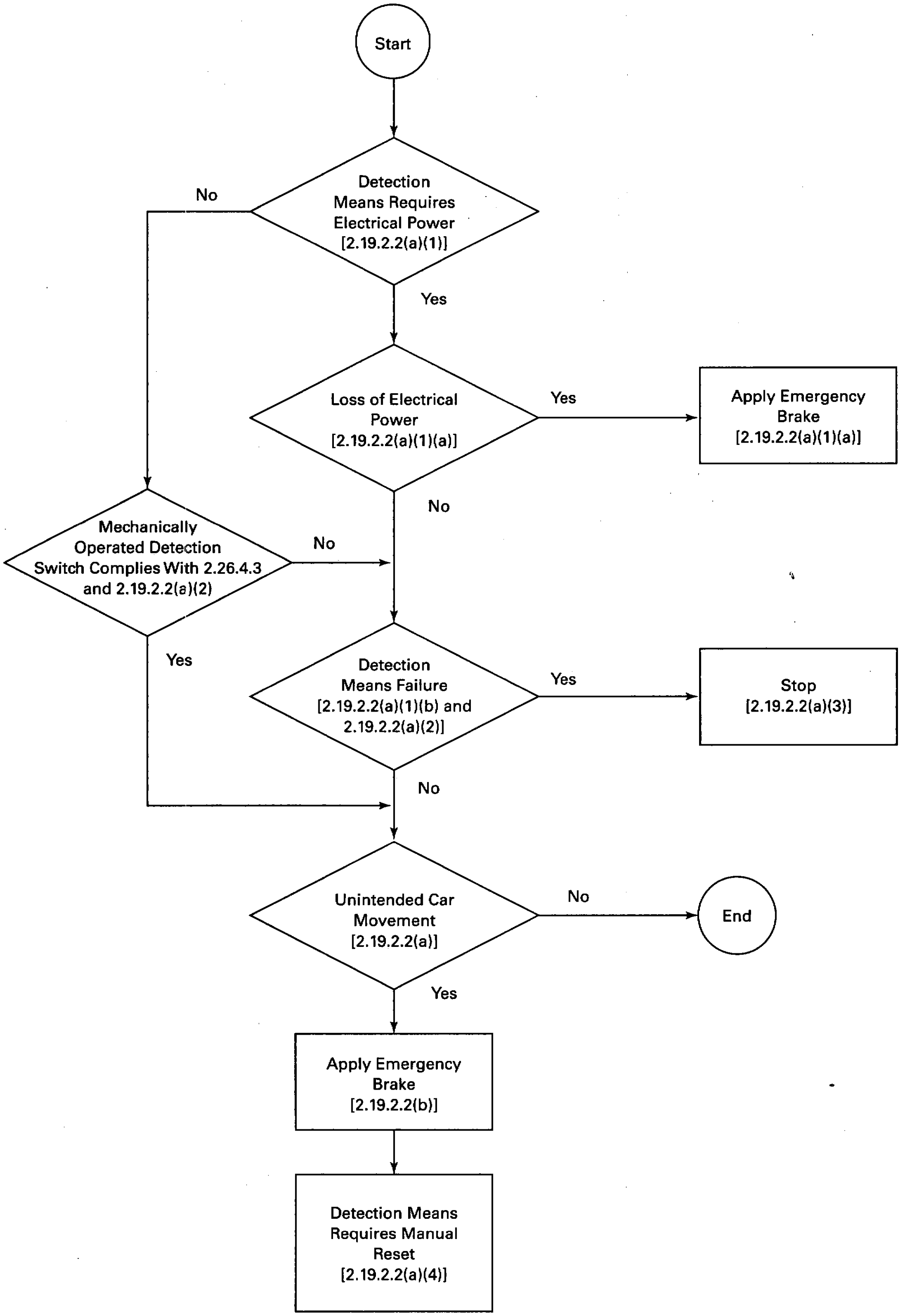


Fig. F-2 Unintended Car Movement Protection (2.19.2)



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX G
TOP OF CAR CLEARANCE (3.4.4)

Fig. G-1 Projection Lower Than Refuge Space (Car Shown at Maximum Upward Movement)

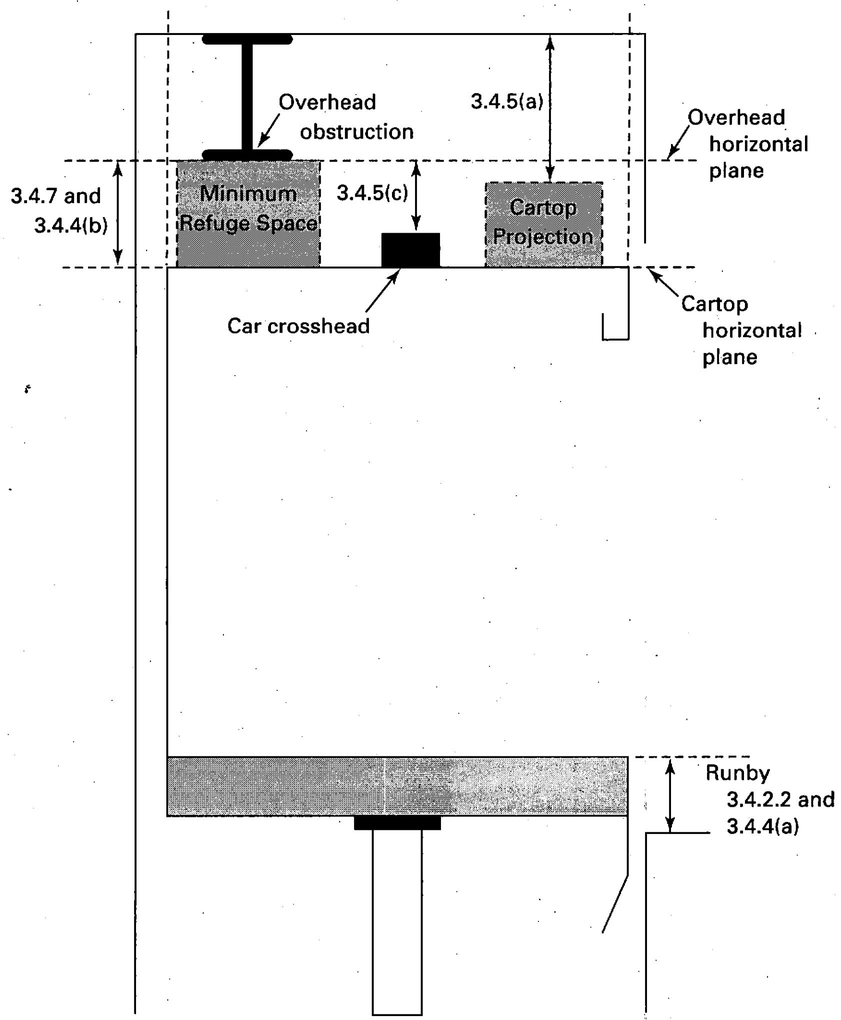
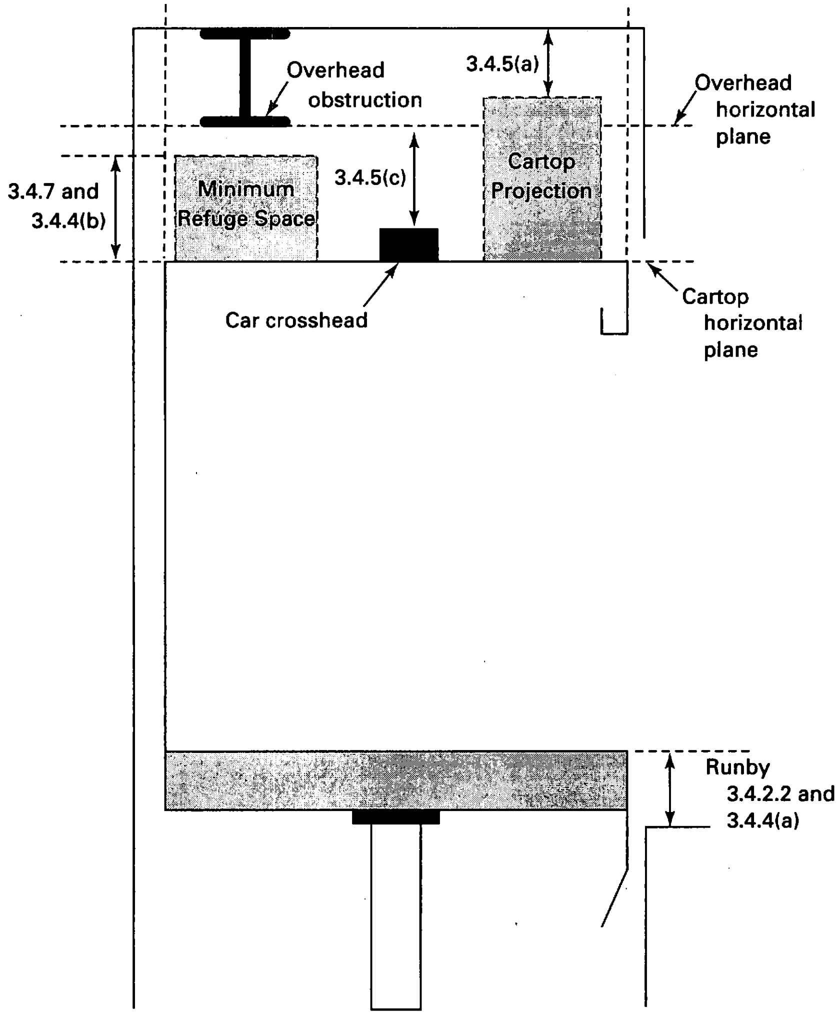
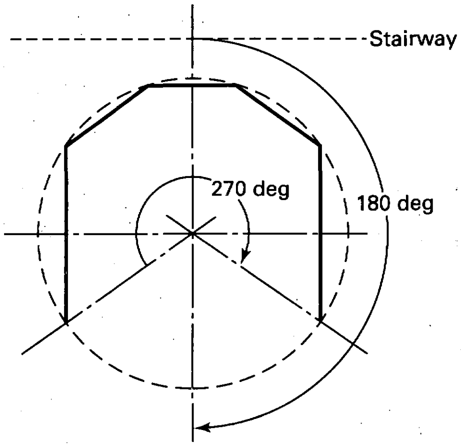


Fig. G-2 Projection Higher Than Refuge Space (Car Shown at Maximum Upward Movement)



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX H
PRIVATE RESIDENCE ELEVATOR GUARDING
(5.3.1.6.2)

Fig. H-1



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX I
ESCALATOR AND MOVING WALK DIAGRAMS

Fig. I-1 Relationship of Escalator Parts

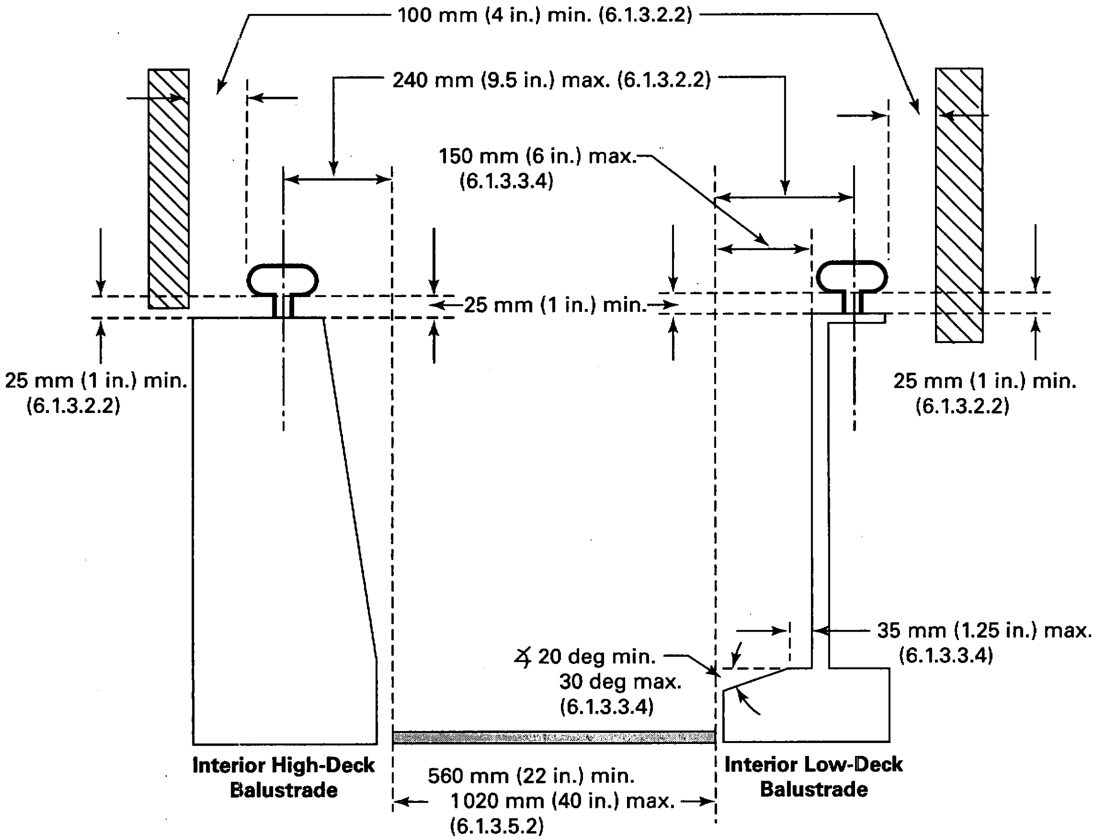


Fig. I-2 Handrail

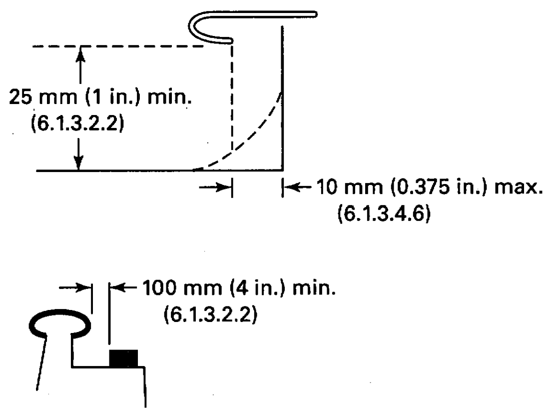
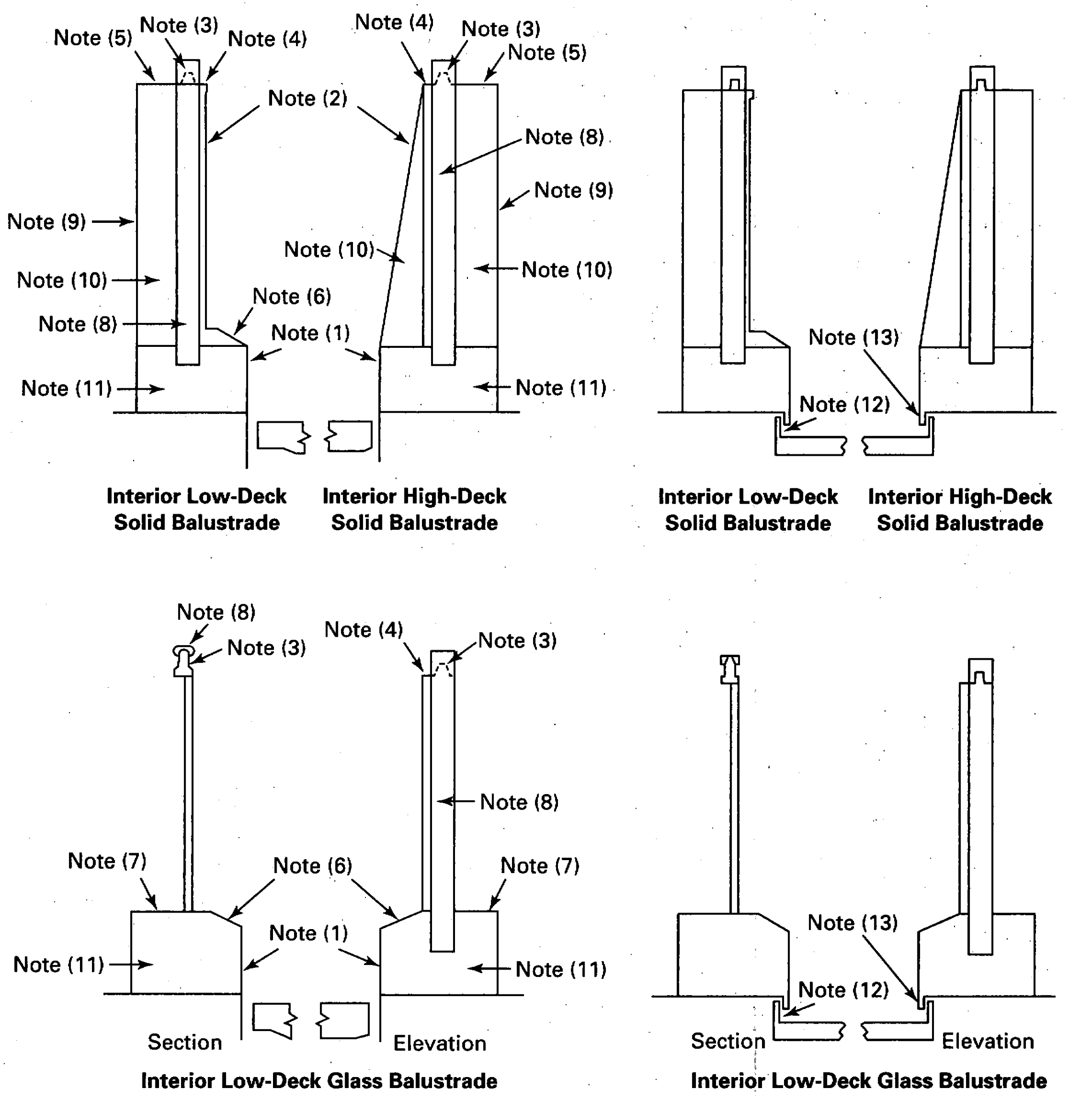


Fig. I-3 Escalator Nomenclature



NOTES:
(1) Skirt panel.
(2) Interior panel.
(3) Handrail stand.
(4) High-deck interior.
(5) High-deck exterior.
(6) Low-deck interior.
(7) Low-deck exterior.
(8) Handrail.
(9) Exterior panel.
(10) Newel.
(11) Newel base.
(12) Dynamic skirt panel.
(13) Dynamic skirt panel cover.

Fig. I-4 Skirt or Dynamic Skirt Panel: Step Nose (6.1.3.3.6)

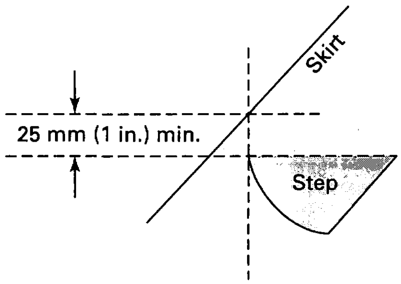


Fig. I-5 Ceiling or Soffit Guard (6.1.3.3.11)

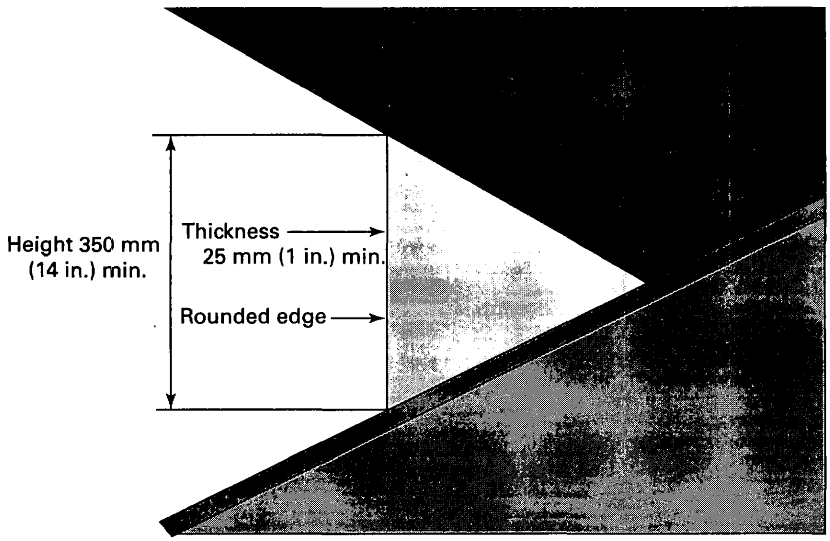


Fig. I-6 Antislide Device (6.1.3.3.12)

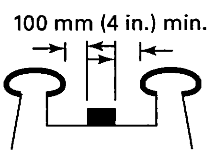


Fig. I-7 Escalator Step Tread

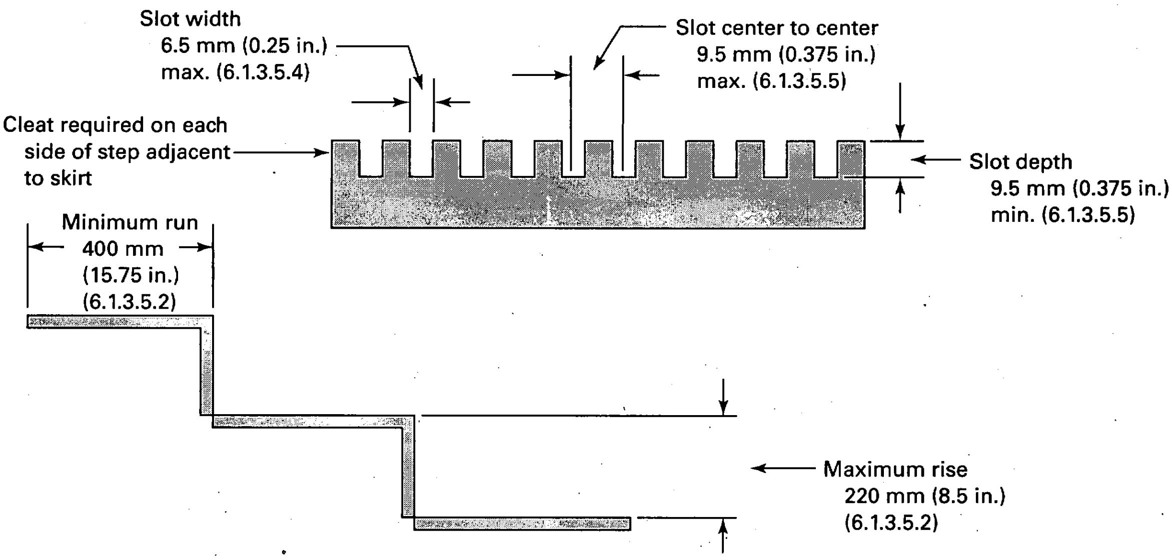


Fig. I-8 Cleated Riser (6.1.3.5.3)

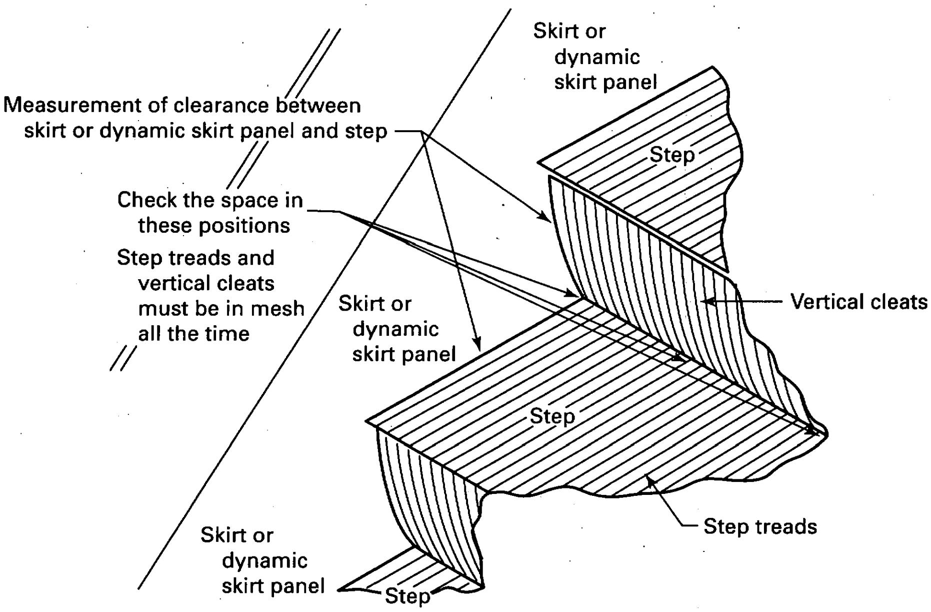


Fig. I-9 Moving Walk Geometry

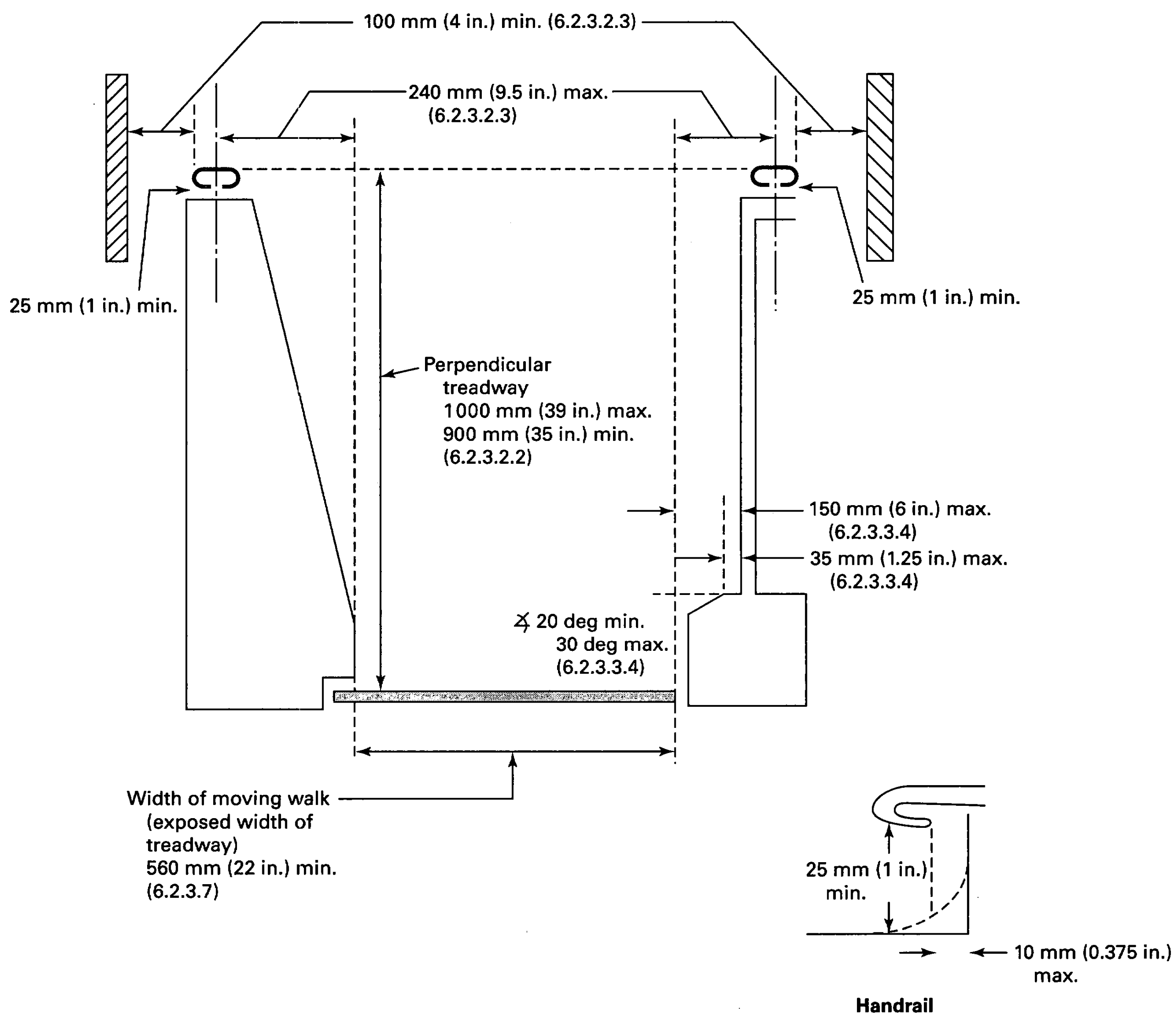


Fig. I-10 Moving Walk Treadway Slots

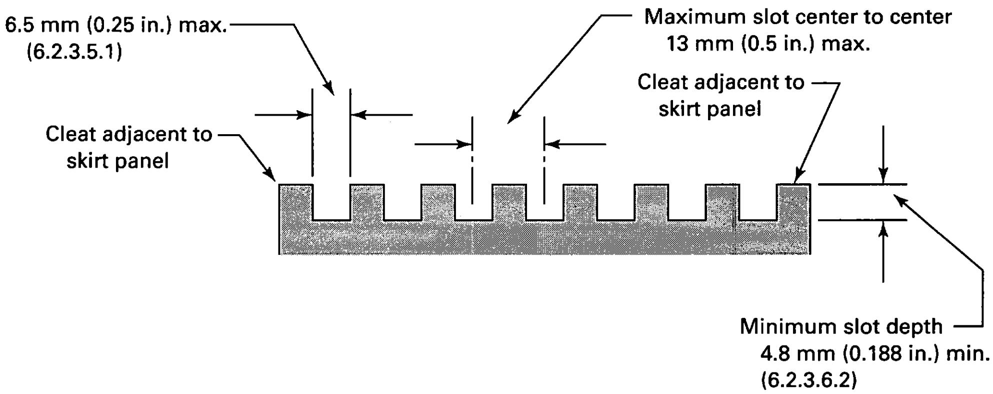
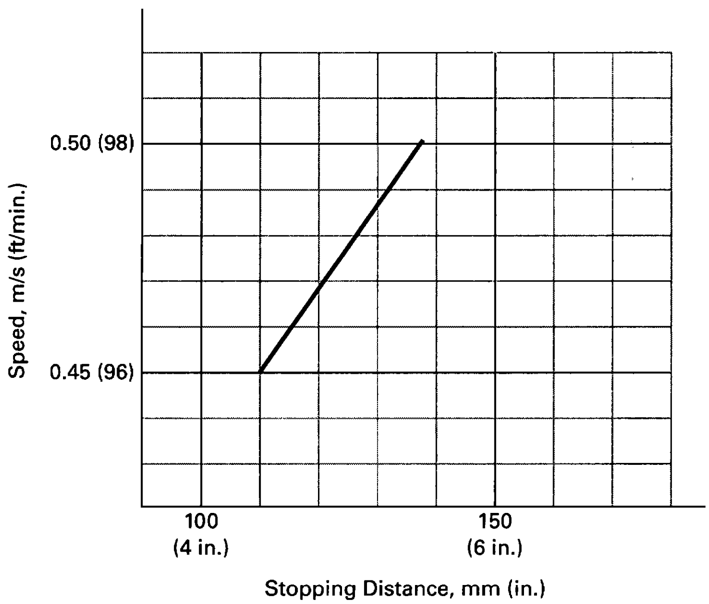


Fig. I-11 Stopping Distances Corresponding to a Deceleration Rate of 0.91 m/s^2 [6.1.5.3.1(c)]

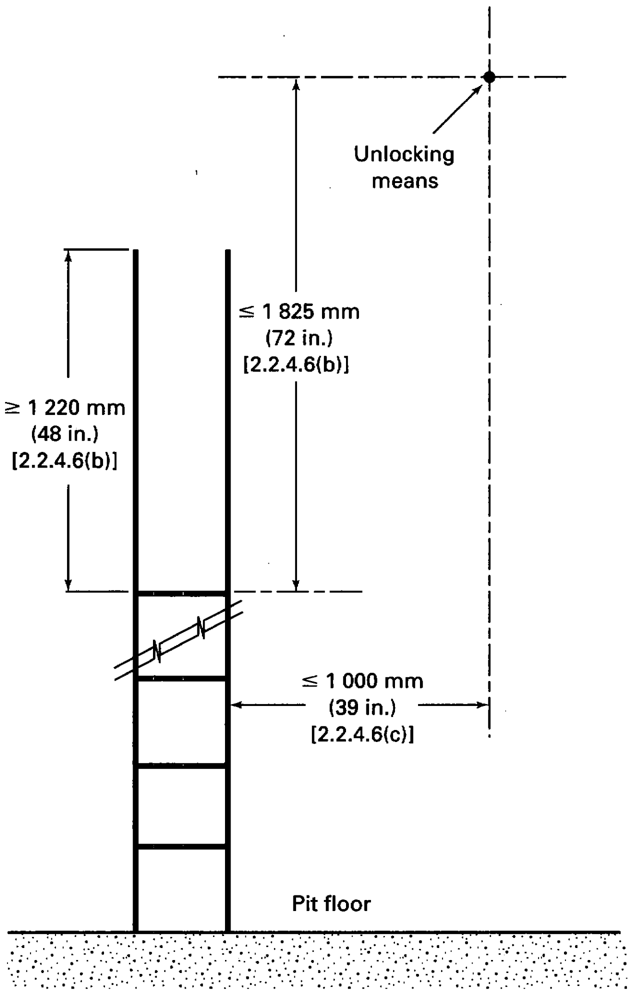


GENERAL NOTE: The above represents the stopping distance of an escalator under a constant deceleration of 0.91 m/s^2 (3 ft/s^2) and does not represent the total stopping distance of the escalator when it is stopped under no load.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX J RELATIONSHIP OF PIT LADDER TO HOISTWAY DOOR UNLOCKING MEANS

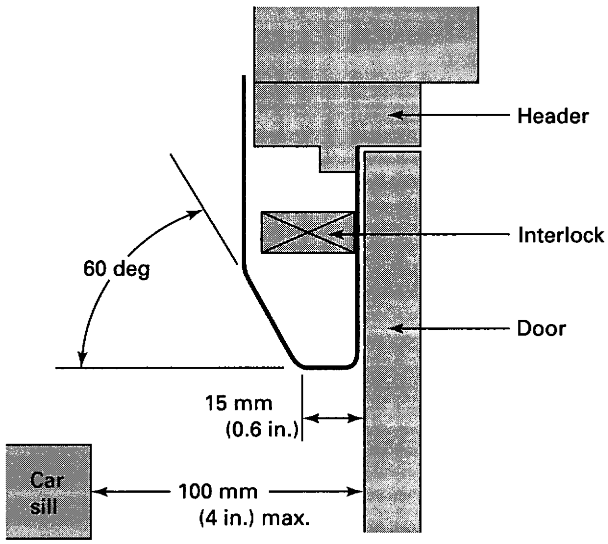
(07)

Fig. J-1



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX K
BEVELING AND CLEARANCE REQUIREMENTS (7.4.7.4)

Fig. K-1



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX L (07)
INDEX OF ALTERATION REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRIC ELEVATORS, HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS, ESCALATORS, AND MOVING WALKS

Item	Electric Elevators	Hydraulic Elevators	Escalators and Moving Walks
Access doors and openings	8.7.2.7.3	8.7.2.7.3	8.7.6.1.14, 8.7.6.2.14
Access, means	8.7.2.7.3	8.7.2.7.2	...
Access switch	8.7.2.11.4	8.7.3.11	...
Access to machine room and spaces	8.7.2.7.2, 8.7.2.7.3	8.7.2.7.2, 8.7.2.7.3	...
Addition of elevator to existing hoistway	8.7.2.1.2	8.7.2.1.2	...
Alteration requirements	8.7.1.1	8.7.1.1	8.7.1.1
Alternating current, change to direct	8.7.2.27.3	8.7.3.31.4	...
Anti-creep leveling device	...	8.7.3.31.3	...
Ascending car overspeed and unintended movement	8.7.2.20	...	...
Automatic stop valve	...	8.7.3.24	...
Automatic transfer device	8.7.7.2	8.7.7.2	...
Auxiliary power lowering operation	...	8.7.3.31.9	...
Balustrades	...	...	8.7.6.1.5(c), 8.7.6.2.5(c)
Beam, machinery and sheave	8.7.2.9	8.7.3.9	...
Brake	8.7.2.25.1	...	...
Buffer	8.7.2.23	8.7.3.27	...
Building structure	8.7.2.9	8.7.3.9	...
Bumper	8.7.2.23	8.7.3.27	...
Cable (rope)	8.7.2.21	8.7.3.25	...
Capacity	8.7.2.16	...	...
Car, decrease or increase in dead weight of	8.7.2.15.2	8.7.3.21	...
Car door or gate	8.7.2.14	8.7.3.13	...
Car enclosure	8.7.2.14, 8.7.2.27.7	8.7.3.13	...
Car frame	8.7.2.15.1	8.7.3.14	...
Car leveling device	8.7.2.27.2	8.7.3.31.2	...
Car platform	8.7.2.15.1	8.7.3.14	...
Car safeties	8.7.2.18	8.7.3.15	...
Check valve	...	8.7.3.24	...
Class of freight loading, change of	8.7.2.16.2	8.7.3.18	...
Clearance, after reroping	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7	...
Clearance, bottom and top	8.7.2.4	8.7.3.4	...
Clearance, horizontal	8.7.2.5	8.7.3.5	...
Combplates	...	...	8.7.6.1.8, 8.7.6.2.8
Construction at bottom of hoistway	8.7.2.1.4	8.7.2.1.4	...
Construction at top of hoistway	8.7.2.1.3	8.7.2.1.3	...
Construction requirements (escalators and moving walks)	...	...	8.7.6.1.5, 8.7.6.2.5
Contact, mechanical lock and	8.7.2.11.2	8.7.3.11	...
Control, change in type of motion	8.7.2.27.5	8.7.3.31.6	...
Control, change in type of operation	8.7.2.27.6	8.7.3.31.7	...
Control equipment	8.7.2.27	8.7.3.31	...
Control of smoke and hot gas	8.7.2.1.5	8.7.2.1.5	...
Control valve	...	8.7.3.24	...
Controller	8.7.2.27.4	8.7.3.31.5	...
Counterweight	8.7.2.22	8.7.3.26	...

Item	Electric Elevators	Hydraulic Elevators	Escalators and Moving Walks
Counterweight, location and guarding of	8.7.2.3	8.7.3.3	
Counterweight, rod type	8.7.2.22.2	...	...
Counterweight safeties	8.7.2.18	8.7.3.15	...
Cylinder	...	8.7.3.23.3	...
Data plate, code	8.7.1.8	8.7.1.8	8.7.1.8
Dead weight of car, increase or decrease in	8.7.2.15.2	8.7.3.21	...
Decrease in travel	8.7.2.17.1	8.7.3.22.1	...
Design	8.7.1.5	8.7.1.5	8.7.1.5
Direct current, change to alternating	8.7.2.27.3	8.7.3.31.4	...
Door, car	8.7.2.14	8.7.3.13	...
Door, hoistway	8.7.2.10.1	8.7.3.10	...
Door, machine room	8.7.2.7.3	8.7.2.7.3	...
Door, power operation of	8.7.2.12	8.7.3.12	...
Doors, Reopening Device	8.7.2.13	8.7.2.13	...
Doors, restricted opening	8.7.2.11.5	8.7.2.11.5	...
Driving machine	8.7.2.25.1	8.7.3.23	...
Driving machine, change in location of	8.7.2.25.2	8.7.3.23.4	...
Duct in hoistway or machine room	8.7.2.8	8.7.3.8	...
Dumbwaiter, addition of automatic transfer device	8.7.7.2	8.7.7.2	...
Dumbwaiters without automatic transfer devices	8.7.7	8.7.7	...
Egress, escalator	...	8.7.6.1.15	...
Electric contact, mechanical lock and	8.7.2.11.2	8.7.3.11	
Electric wiring	8.7.2.8	8.7.3.8	8.7.6.1.14, 8.7.6.2.14
Electrically operated control valve	...	8.7.3.24	...
Emergency door	8.7.2.10.1	8.7.2.10.1	...
Emergency operation	8.7.2.28	8.7.3.31.8	...
Emergency signaling device	8.7.2.28	8.7.3.31.8	...
Enclosure, car	8.7.2.14, 8.7.2.27.7	8.7.3.13	...
Enclosure, hoistway	8.7.2.1	8.7.3.1	...
Enclosure, machine room and machinery spaces	8.7.2.7	8.7.2.7	6.1.7, 6.2.7
Entrance, escalator and moving walk	...	...	8.7.6.1.15
Entrance, hoistway	8.7.2.10	8.7.3.10	...
Entrance, horizontal slide type	8.7.2.10.2	8.7.2.10.2	...
Entrance, swing type	8.7.2.10.4	8.7.2.10.4	...
Entrance, vertical slide type	8.7.2.10.3	8.7.2.10.3	...
Entrance assembly, marking of	8.7.2.10.5	8.7.2.10.5	...
Equipment, non elevator	8.7.2.8	8.7.2.8	...
Fastening, suspension rope	8.7.2.21	8.7.3.25	...
Final terminal stopping device	8.7.2.26	8.7.2.26	...
Firefighters' service	8.7.2.28	8.7.3.31.6	...
Fitting, hydraulic	...	8.7.3.24	...
Foundation	8.7.2.9	8.7.3.8	...
Frame, car	8.7.2.15.1	8.7.3.14	...
Freight elevator, change in class of loading	8.7.2.16.2	8.7.3.18	...
Freight elevator changed to passenger service	8.7.2.16.1	8.7.3.17	...
Freight elevator permitted to carry passengers	8.7.2.16.3	8.7.3.19	...
Frequency, change in	8.7.2.27.3	8.7.3.31.4	...
Gate, car	8.7.2.14	8.7.3.13	...
General requirements	8.7.1	8.7.1	8.7.6.1.1, 8.7.6.2.1
Geometry	...	...	8.7.6.1.5(b), 8.7.6.2.5(b)
Governor	8.7.2.19	8.7.3.16	...
Governor rope	8.7.2.19	8.7.3.16	...
Guide rail	8.7.2.24	8.7.3.28	...
Guide shoe, car	8.7.2.15.1	8.7.3.14	...
Guide shoe, counterweight	8.7.2.22	8.7.3.26	...

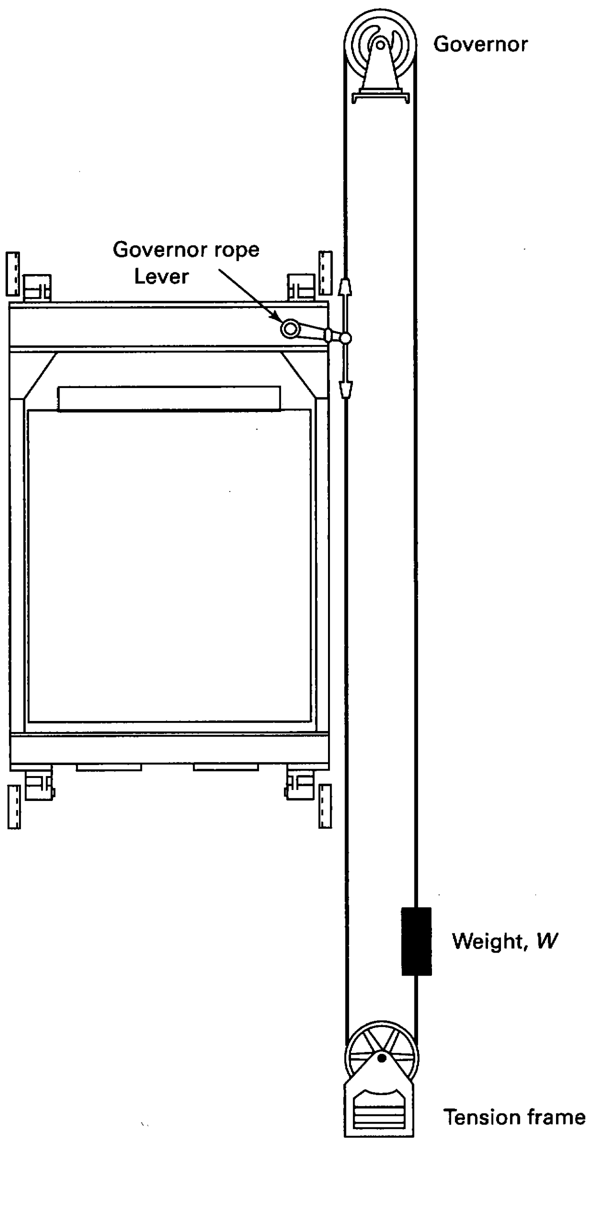
Item	Electric Elevators	Hydraulic Elevators	Escalators and Moving Walks
Hand elevators	...	8.7.4.3	...
Handrails (escalators and moving walks)	...	...	8.7.6.1.6, 8.7.6.2.6
Headroom, machine room	8.7.2.7.4	8.7.2.7.4	...
Hoistway, addition of elevator to	8.7.2.1.2	8.7.2.1.2	...
Hoistway, construction at bottom of	8.7.2.1.4	8.7.2.1.4	...
Hoistway, construction at top of	8.7.2.1.3	8.7.2.1.3	...
Hoistway, protection of space below	8.7.2.6	8.7.3.6	...
Hoistway door, power operation of	8.7.2.12	8.7.3.12	...
Hoistway door interlocks	8.7.2.11.1	8.7.3.11	...
Hoistway door locking device	8.7.2.11	8.7.3.11	...
Hoistway door unlocking device	8.7.2.11.4	8.7.3.11	...
Hoistway enclosure	8.7.2.1	8.7.3.1	...
Hoistway entrance	8.7.2.10	8.7.3.10	...
Horizontal slide type entrance	8.7.2.10.2	8.7.2.10.2	...
Illumination in car	8.7.2.14	8.7.3.13	...
Inclined elevators	8.7.5.1	8.7.5.1	...
Inclination, angle of	...	...	8.7.6.1.5(a), 8.7.6.2.5(a)
Increase in dead weight of car	8.7.2.15.2	8.7.3.21	...
Increase in rated load	8.7.2.16.4	8.7.3.20	...
Increase in rated speed	8.7.2.17.2	8.7.3.22.2	...
Increase in travel	8.7.2.17.1	8.7.3.22.1	...
Increase in working pressure	...	8.7.3.23.4	...
Inspection	8.7.1.3	8.7.1.3	...
Interlock	8.7.2.11.1	8.7.3.11	...
Jack, hydraulic	...	8.7.3.23	...
Labeling of entrance assembly	8.7.2.10.5	8.7.2.10.5	
Leveling device	8.7.2.27.2	8.7.3.31.2	...
Lighting in car	8.7.2.14.2(f)	8.7.3.13	...
Lighting of escalator and moving walk	...	...	8.7.6.1.14, 8.7.6.2.14
Lighting of machine room	8.7.2.7.6	8.7.2.7.6	...
Load, increase in	8.7.2.16.4	8.7.3.20	...
Loading, change in class of	8.7.2.16.2	8.7.3.18	...
Location of driving machine, change of	8.7.2.25.2	8.7.3.23.4	...
Location of hydraulic jack, change of	...	8.7.3.23.5	...
Location of hydraulic machine (power unit), change of	...	8.7.3.23.6	...
Lock and contact	8.7.2.11.2	8.7.3.11	...
Locking device, hoistway door	8.7.2.11	8.7.3.11	...
Machine room	8.7.2.7	8.7.3.7	...
Machinery and equipment	8.7.2	8.7.3	8.7.6.1.12, 8.7.6.2.12
Machinery space	8.7.2.7	8.7.3.7	...
Marking of entrance assembly	8.7.2.10.5	8.7.2.10.5	...
Material lift with automatic transfer device	8.7.7.3	8.7.7.3	...
Means of access to machine room	8.7.2.7.2	8.7.2.7.2	...
Mechanical lock and electric contact	8.7.2.11.2	8.7.3.11	...
Mechanically operated control valve	...	8.7.3.24	...
Motion control, change of	8.7.2.27.5	8.7.3.31.6	...
Moving walks	...	...	8.7.6.2
Normal terminal stopping device	8.7.2.26	8.7.3.30	...
Number of elevators per hoistway	8.7.2.1.2	8.7.2.1.2	...
Oil buffer	8.7.2.23	8.7.3.27	...
Operating device	8.7.2.27	8.7.3.31	...
Operating device, top of car	8.7.2.27.1	8.7.3.31.1	...
Operation control, change in type of	8.7.2.27.6	8.7.3.31.7	...

Item	Electric Elevators	Hydraulic Elevators	Escalators and Moving Walks
Parking device	8.7.2.11.3	8.7.3.11	...
Passenger elevator changed to freight service	8.7.2.16.1	8.7.3.17	...
Passengers, carrying of on freight elevators	8.7.2.16.3	8.7.3.19	...
Phase I and II operation	8.7.2.28	8.7.3.31.8	...
Phases, change in number of	8.7.2.27.3	8.7.3.31.4	...
Pipe in hoistway or machine room	8.7.2.8	8.7.3.8	...
Piping supply	...	8.7.3.24	...
Piston	...	8.7.3.23.2	...
Pit	8.7.2.2	8.7.3.2	...
Platform, car	8.7.2.15.1	8.7.3.14	...
Plunger	...	8.7.3.23.2	...
Power operation of hoistway door	8.7.2.12	8.7.3.12	...
Power supply, change in	8.7.2.27.3	8.7.3.31.4	...
Power unit (hydraulic machine)	...	8.7.3.23.6	...
Pressure tank	...	8.7.3.29	...
Pressure, working, increase of	...	8.7.3.23.4	...
Pressurization of hoistway	8.7.2.1.5	8.7.3.1	...
Protection of floor openings	...	...	8.7.6.1.3, 8.7.6.2.3
Protection of space below hoistway	8.7.2.6	8.7.3.6	
Protection of truss and machinery spaces against fire	...	...	8.7.6.1.4, 8.7.6.2.4
Rack and pinion	8.7.4.1	...	...
Rated load, increase in	8.7.2.16.4	8.7.3.20	8.7.6.1.11, 8.7.6.2.11
Rated speed, decrease in	8.7.2.17.3	8.7.3.22.3	...
Rated speed, increase in	8.7.2.17.2	8.7.3.22.2	...
Relief valve	...	8.7.3.24	...
Relocation of escalator	...	...	8.7.6.1.2
Relocation of hydraulic machine	...	8.7.3.23.6	...
Relocation of moving walk	...	...	8.7.6.2.2
Repair	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7	...
Replacement	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7
Reroping	8.7.2.21.1	8.7.3.25	...
Restricted opening of doors	8.7.2.11.5	8.7.2.11.5	...
Rise, increase or decrease in	8.7.2.17.1	8.7.3.22.1	...
Roller guide shoe, counterweight	8.7.2.22	8.7.2.22	...
Roof top elevators	8.7.5.6	8.7.5.6	...
Rope, change in material, grade, number, or diameter	8.7.2.21.1	8.7.3.25.1	...
Rope, governor	8.7.2.19	8.7.3.16	...
Rope, replacement of	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7	...
Rope, splicing of	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7	...
Rope, suspension	8.7.2.21.1	8.7.3.25	...
Rope equalizer	8.7.2.21.3	8.7.3.25.2	...
Runby	8.7.2.4	8.7.3.4	...
Runby, after reroping	8.7.2.4	8.7.3.4	...
Safeties	8.7.2.18	8.7.3.15	...
Safety devices	...	...	8.7.6.1.13, 8.7.6.2.13
Screw column elevators	8.7.4.2		
Service, change in type of	8.7.2.16.1	8.7.3.17	...
Sheave, driving machine	8.7.2.25.1	8.7.2.25.1	...
Sheave, governor	8.7.2.19	8.7.2.19	...
Sheave beam	8.7.2.9	8.7.3.8	...
Shipboard elevators	8.7.5.8	...	...
Shortening of suspension rope	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7	...
Sidewalk elevators	8.7.5.5	8.7.5.5	...
Signaling device	8.7.2.28	8.7.3.31.6	...
Skylight in machine room	8.7.2.7.5	8.7.3.7	...
Sleeving	...	8.7.3.23.3	...
Smoke, control of	8.7.2.1.5	8.7.2.1.5	...
Special purpose elevators	8.7.5.7	...	...

Item	Electric Elevators	Hydraulic Elevators	Escalators and Moving Walks
Speed, increase in	8.7.2.17.2	8.7.3.22.2	...
Speed governor	8.7.2.19	8.7.3.16	...
Spring buffer	8.7.2.27	8.7.3.27	...
Step system	...	...	8.7.6.1.7
Stop switch, in-car	8.7.2.14.5	8.7.3.13, 8.7.2.14.5	...
Stop valve	...	8.7.3.24	...
Stopping device, terminal	8.7.2.26	8.7.3.30	...
Storage and discharge tank	...	8.7.3.29	...
Supply piping	...	8.7.3.24	...
Support	8.7.2.9	8.7.3.9	...
Suspension rope	8.7.2.21.1	8.7.3.25	...
Suspension rope, replacement of	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7	...
Suspension rope, splicing of	8.7.1.7	8.7.1.7	...
Suspension rope equalizer	8.7.2.21.2	8.7.3.25.2	...
Swing type entrance	8.7.2.10.4	8.7.2.10.4	...
Tank	...	8.7.3.29	...
Temporary wiring	8.7.1.6	8.7.1.6	8.7.1.6
Terminal stopping device	8.7.2.26	8.7.3.30	...
Testing	8.7.1.3	8.7.1.3	8.7.1.3
Top of car operating device	8.7.2.27.1	8.7.3.31.1	
Track system	...	...	8.7.6.1.10, 8.7.6.2.10
Transfer devices, automatic	8.7.7.2	8.7.7.2	...
Travel, increase or decrease in	8.7.2.17.1	8.7.3.22.1	...
Treadway system			8.7.6.2.7
Truck zoning device	8.7.2.27.2	8.7.3.31.2	...
Trusses and girders	...	...	8.7.6.1.9, 8.7.6.2.9
Type of operation, change in	8.7.2.27.6	8.7.3.31.5	...
Type of service, change in	8.7.2.16.1	...	...
Unlocking device, hoistway door	8.7.2.11.4	8.7.3.11	...
Valve	...	8.7.3.24	...
Ventilation of machine room	8.7.2.7.7	8.7.2.7.7	...
Vertical slide type entrance	8.7.2.10.3	8.7.2.10.3	...
Voltage, change in	8.7.2.27.3	8.7.3.31.4	...
Walls, hoistway enclosure	8.7.2.1.1	8.7.3.1	...
Welding	8.7.1.4, 8.8	8.7.1.4, 8.8	8.7.1.4, 8.8
Window in machine room	8.7.2.7.5	8.7.2.7.5	...
Wire rope	8.7.2.21	8.7.3.25	...
Wiring	8.7.2.8	8.7.3.8	...
Wiring, temporary	8.7.1.6	8.7.1.6	8.7.1.6
Working pressure, increase in	...	8.7.3.23.4	...

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX M
INERTIA APPLICATION FOR TYPE A SAFETY DEVICE LOCATION OF TEST WEIGHT [8.10.2.2.2(bb)(2)]

Fig. M-1



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX N
RECOMMENDED INSPECTION AND TEST INTERVALS IN "MONTHS"

See Table N-1 on the following page.

Table N-1 Recommended Inspection and Test Intervals in "Months"

Reference Section	Equipment Type	Periodic Inspections		Periodic Tests: Category 1		Periodic Tests: Category 3		Periodic Tests: Category 5	
		Requirement	Interval	Requirement	Interval	Requirement	Interval	Requirement	Interval
8.11.2	Electric elevators	8.11.2.1	6	8.11.2.2	12	N/A	N/A	8.11.2.3	60
8.11.3	Hydraulic elevators	8.11.3.1	6	8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.3.4	60
8.11.4	Escalators and moving walks	8.11.4.1	6	8.11.4.2	12	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
8.11.5.1	Sidewalk elevators	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	6	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.2	Private residence elevators	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	12	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.3	Hand elevators	8.11.2.1	6	8.11.2.2	12	N/A	N/A	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.4	Dumbwaiters	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	12	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.5	Material lifts and dumbwaiters with automatic transfer devices	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	12	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.6	Special purpose personnel elevators	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	6	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.7	Inclined elevators	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	6	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.8	Shipboard elevators	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	6	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.9	Screw-column elevators	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	6	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.10	Rooftop elevators	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	6	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.12	Limited-use/limited-application elevators	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	6	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60
8.11.5.13	Elevators used for construction	8.11.2.1, 8.11.3.1	3	8.11.2.2, 8.11.3.2	12	8.11.3.3	36	8.11.2.3, 8.11.3.4	60

GENERAL NOTE: The intervals specified in this Table are recommended for periodic tests and inspections. Factors such as the environment, frequency and type of usage, quality of maintenance, etc., related to the equipment should be taken into account by the authority having jurisdiction prior to establishing the inspection and test intervals.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX P
PLUNGER GRIPPER STOPPING DISTANCES

Table P-1 Plunger Gripper Stopping Distances

Operating Speed in the Down Direction, m/s (ft/min)	Maximum Tripping Speed, m/s (ft/min)	Stopping Distances, mm (in.)	
		Min.	Max.
0–0.63 (0–125)	0.90 (175)	25 (1)	406 (16)
0.75 (150)	1.05 (210)	50 (2)	584 (23)
0.87 (175)	1.25 (250)	75 (3)	838 (33)
1.00 (200)	1.40 (280)	100 (4)	1 041 (41)
1.12 (225)	1.55 (308)	125 (5)	1 270 (50)
1.25 (250)	1.70 (337)	150 (6)	1 524 (60)
1.50 (300)	2.00 (395)	200 (8)	2 108 (83)

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum distance calculated using requirement 8.2.6 and substituting 0.1 gravity for deceleration in lieu of 0.35 gravity.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX Q
EXPLANATORY FIGURES FOR THE DEFINITIONS OF ELEVATOR MACHINERY SPACE, MACHINE ROOM, CONTROL SPACE, CONTROL ROOM, REMOTE MACHINE ROOM, OR REMOTE CONTROL ROOM

Table Q-1

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2"></th><th colspan="2">Location</th><th rowspan="2">Entry into the Space, Full or Partial</th><th colspan="2">Equipment Used Directly in Connection With the Elevator, Dumbwaiter, or Material Lift</th><th colspan="2">Equipment Contained Within</th></tr>
<tr><th>Inside or Outside the Hoistway</th><th>Attached to or Within the Hoistway</th><th>Mechanical Other Than Electric Driving Machine or Hydraulic Machine</th><th>Electrical Other Than Motor Controller</th><th>Electric Driving Machine or Hydraulic Machine</th><th>Motor Controller</th></tr>
<tr><td>Machinery Space [Note (1)]</td><td rowspan="2">Either</td><td rowspan="2">Either</td><td rowspan="2">Either</td><td rowspan="8">Permitted</td><td rowspan="8">Permitted</td><td>Permitted</td><td>Permitted</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control Sapce</td><td>Not permitted</td><td>Required</td></tr>
<tr><td>Machine Room [Note (1)]</td><td rowspan="6">Outside the hoistway</td><td rowspan="2">Attached to but not within</td><td rowspan="4">Full bodily entry required</td><td>Required</td><td>Permitted</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control Room</td><td>Not permitted</td><td>Required</td></tr>
<tr><td>Machine Room, Remote</td><td rowspan="4">No</td><td>Required</td><td>Permitted</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control Room, Remote</td><td>Not permitted</td><td>Required</td></tr>
<tr><td>Machinery Sapce, Remote</td><td>Either</td><td>Permitted</td><td>Permitted</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control Space, Remote</td><td>Either</td><td>Not permitted</td><td>Required</td></tr>
</table>

NOTE:
(1) A machinery space outside the hoistway containing an electric driving machine and a motor controller or a hydraulic machine and a motor controller is a machine room.

Fig. Q-1

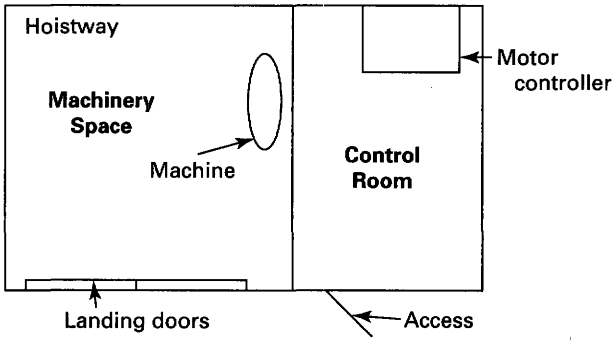


Fig. Q-3

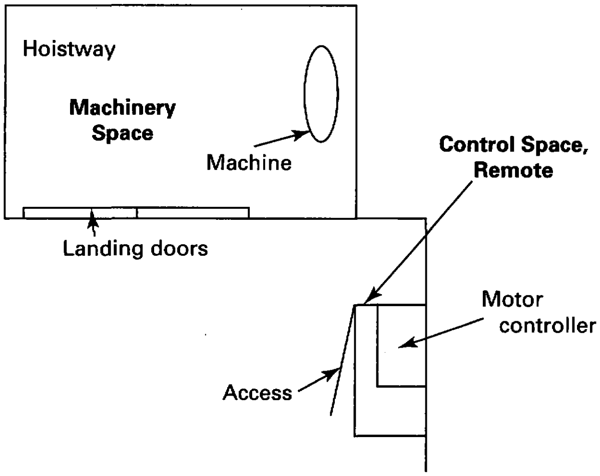


Fig. Q-2

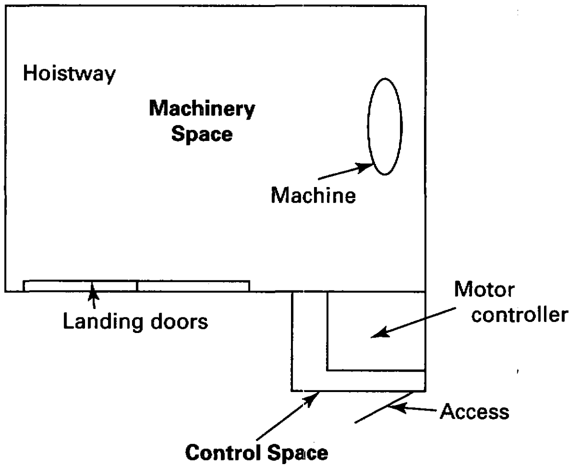


Fig. Q-4

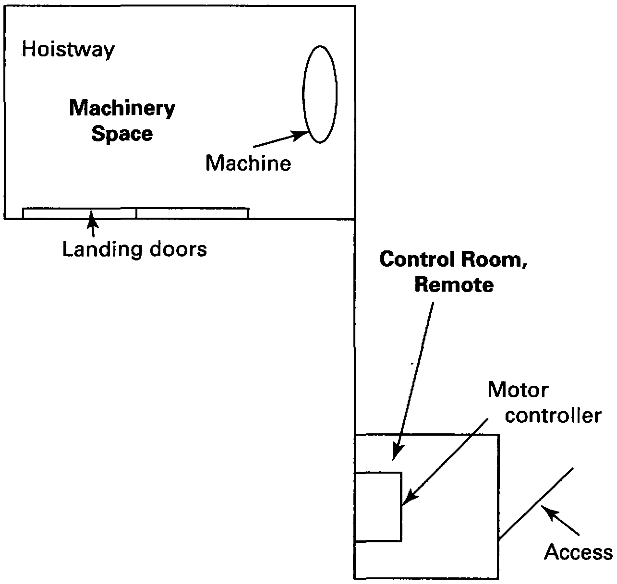


Fig. Q-5

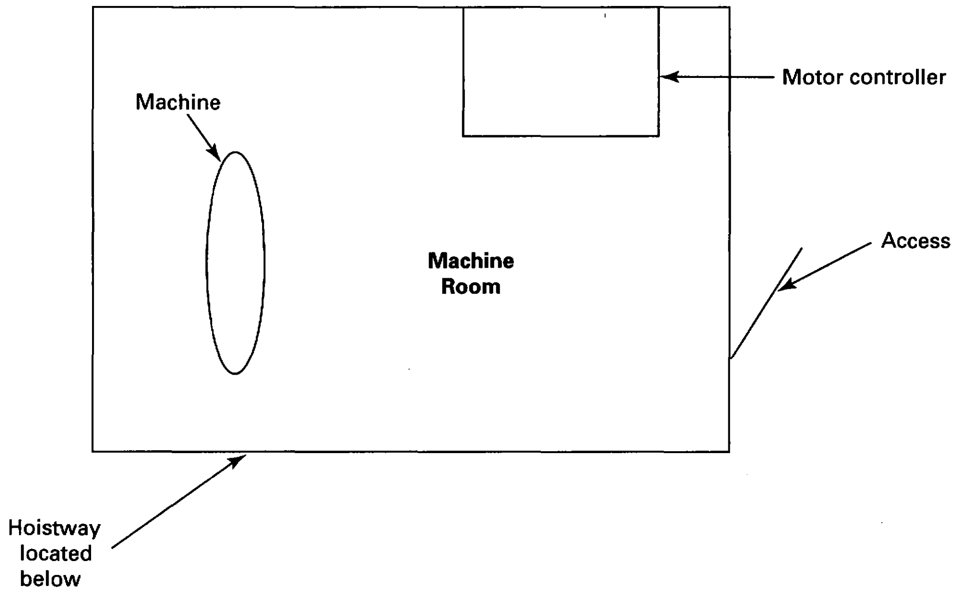
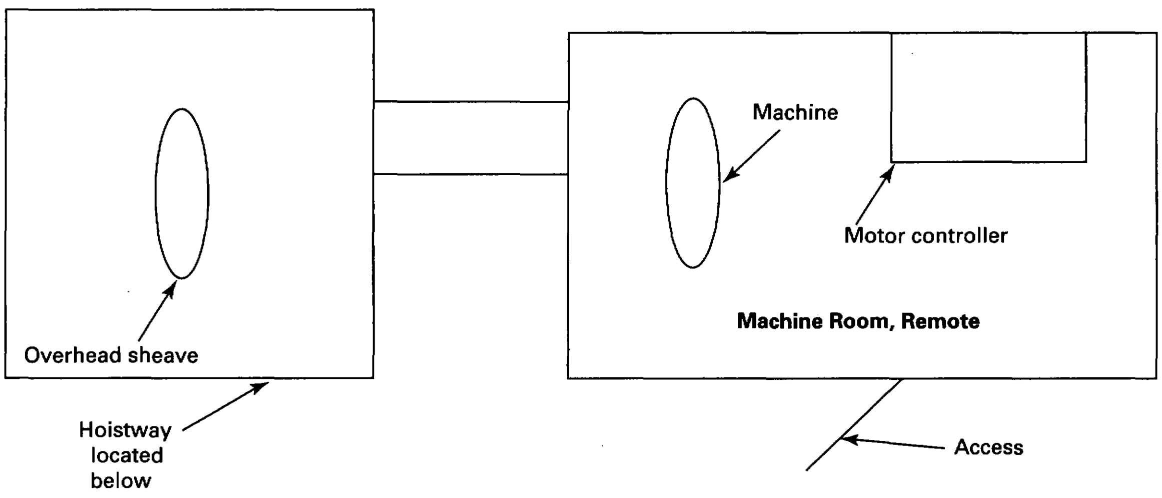

Motor controller
Machine
Machine Room
Access
Hoistway located below

Fig. Q-6


Machine
Motor controller
Overhead sheave
Machine Room, Remote
Hoistway located below
Access

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX R
INSPECTION OPERATION AND HOISTWAY ACCESS SWITCH OPERATION HIERARCHY

See Table R-1 on the following page.

Table R-1 Inspection Operation and Hoistway Access Switch Operation Hierarchy

											BYPASS Operation, 2.26.1.5		
Operation Modes Activated	**Top-of-Car, 2.26.1.4.2**	**In-Car, 2.26.1.4.3**	**Hoistway Access, 2.12.7.3**	**Machine Room, 2.26.1.4.4**	**Control Room, 2.26.1.4.4**	**Machinery Space Outside Hoistway, 2.26.1.4.4**	**Control Space Outside Hoistway, 2.26.1.4.4**	**Landing, 2.26.1.4.4**	**Pit, 2.26.1.4.4**	**Working Platform, 2.26.1.4.4**	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**Operation Modes Activated**
Top-of-Car	**Top-of-Car**	*Top-of-Car*	*Top-of-Car*	*Top-of-Car*	*Top-of-Car*	*Top-of-Car*	*Top-of-Car*	*Top-of-Car*	No Operation	No Operation	*Top-of-Car*	*Top-of-Car*	**Top-of-Car**
In-Car	*Top-of-Car*	**In-Car**	*In-Car*	*In-Car*	*In-Car*	*In-Car*	*In-Car*	*In-Car*	No Operation	No Operation	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**In-Car**
Hoistway Access	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**Hoistway Access**	*Hoistway Access*	*Hoistway Access*	*Hoistway Access*	*Hoistway Access*	*Hoistway Access*	No Operation	No Operation	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**Hoistway Access**
Machine Room	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	*Hoistway Access*	**Machine Room**	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**Machine Room**
Control Room	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	*Hoistway Access*	No Operation	**Control Room**	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**Control Room**
Machinery Space Outside Hoistway	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	*Hoistway Access*	No Operation	No Operation	**Machinery Space**	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**Machinery Space Outside Hoistway**
Control Space Outside Hoistway	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	*Hoistway Access*	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	**Control Space**	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**Control Space Outside Hoistway**
Landing	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	*Hoistway Access*	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	**Landing**	No Operation	No Operation	*Top-of-Car*	*In-Car*	**Landing**
Pit	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	***Pit***	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	***Pit***
Working Platform	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	No Operation	***Working Platform***	No Operation	No Operation	***Working Platform***

INDEX

References given are to the Part, Section, Requirement, Table, Figure, and Appendix designations.

Absorption of regenerated power, 2.26.10
  inspection and test of, 8.10.2.2.2(u)
Accelerating moving walk, Nonmandatory Appendix I
Acceptance Inspection and test (*see also* Inspection and test)
  definition of (inspection and test, acceptance), Section 1.3
Access door
  escalator, 6.1.7.3
  moving walk, 6.2.7.3
Access panel in car, 2.14.2.2
Access plate
  escalator, 6.1.7.3
  moving walk, 6.2.7.3
Access switch, hoistway, 2.12.7
Access to hoistway (*see* Hoistway, access to)
Access to machine room (*see* Machine room, access to)
Access to pit (*see* Pit, access to)
Adjustable shackle rod, 2.20.9.2
Air conditioning equipment (*see* Machine room, air conditioning equipment)
Alteration
  definition of, Section 1.3
  electric elevator, hoistway, 8.7.2
  electric elevator, inspection, 8.10.2.3.2
  hydraulic elevator, 8.7.3
  hydraulic elevator, inspection, 8.10.3.3.2
Alternate level, 2.27.3.2
Amusement device, 1.1.2
Angle of inclination
  escalator, 6.1.3.1
  moving walk, 6.2.3.1
Annual inspection and test (*see* Periodic inspection and test)
Annunciator, car
  definition of, Section 1.3
Anticreep leveling device, 3.26.3
  private residence elevator, hydraulic, 5.3.2.3
  dumbwaiter, 7.3.11.3
Antirotation device, 2.20.9.8
Antislide device, escalator, 6.1.3.3.10
Application of driving machine brake, 2.26.8
Applied frame entrance, Section 1.3
Approved
  definition of, Section 1.3
Apron, 2.15.9
Atmosphere storage and discharge tank, 3.24.3
Audible signaling device, 2.27.1
Authorized personnel
  definition of, Section 1.3
Automatic fire door, 2.11.6.3
Automatic recall, 2.27.3.1
Automatic transfer device, 7.7
  addition of, 8.7.7.2
  definition of, Section 1.3
  dumbwaiter with, 7.8
  material lift with, 7.9, 7.10
  obscured, 7.10
Automobile loading, 2.16.2.2
Auxiliary power, 2.14.2.3.2(b)
Auxiliary power, lighting, 2.14.7.1
Auxiliary rope fastening device, 2.20.10
  definition of (rope fastening device, auxiliary), Section 1.3

Babbiting, 2.20.9.6
Baggage stop, escalator, 6.1.3.3.10
Balustrade
  diagrams and nomenclature, Nonmandatory Appendix I
  escalator, 6.1.3.3
  moving walk, 6.2.3.3
Barricade, escalator deck, 6.1.3.3.11
Beam, machinery and sheave
  dumbwaiter, 7.1.9
  earthquake protection, 8.4.2
  electric elevator, 2.9
  elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.8
  hand elevator, 4.3.5
  hydraulic elevator, 3.9
  inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.9
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
  private residence elevator, 5.3.1.16.1
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.4
  rooftop elevator, 5.1.6.9
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.7
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.9
  special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.7
Belt, replacement of, 8.6.3.5

Belt drive
dumbwaiter, 7.2.10.4
electric elevator, 2.24.9
escalator, 6.1.5.1
moving walk, 6.2.3.14
Belt type treadway, moving walk, 6.2.3.6
Blind hoistway, 2.11.1.1, 2.11.1.2
Bolt, guide rail, 2.23.10
Bottom car clearance (*see* Clearance, bottom car)
Bottom runby (*see* Runby, bottom)
Bow iron
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.15.2
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.15.2
Bracket, guide rail (*see* Guide-rail bracket)
Brake
dumbwaiter, 7.2.10
electric elevator, 2.24.8.3
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.20.7
escalator, 6.1.5.3
hand elevator, 4.3.19.2
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.24
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
moving walk, 6.2.5.3
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.16.2(h)
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.23
screw-column elevator, 4.2.15
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1.7
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.23
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.18.7
Brake, application of
electric elevator, 2.26.8
Brake, five-year inspection and test of, 8.11.2.3.4
Broken drive-chain device
escalator, 6.1.6.3.4
moving walk, 6.2.6.3.4
Broken rope, tape, or chain switch, 2.26.2
Broken step-chain device, escalator, 6.1.6.3.3
Broken treadway device, moving walk, 6.2.6.3.3
Buffer
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.8
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.8.1
electric elevator, 2.22
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.18
hydraulic elevator, 3.22.1
inclined elevator, 5.1.17
inclined elevator, end loading, 5.1.22.3
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.22
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.3
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.14
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.11
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.21
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.13
screw-column elevator, 4.2.5
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.21
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.13
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.16
Buffer, inspection and test of
acceptance, 8.10.2.2.5(c)
annual, 8.11.2.2.1
five-year, 8.11.2.3.3
type test, 8.3.2
Buffer support, 2.6
Buffer support, impact on, 8.2.3
Buffer switch, 2.26.2
Building code
definition of, Section 1.3
list of, Part 9
Building structure (*see* Hoistway enclosure)
Bulkhead, safety, 3.18.3.4
definition of (safety bulkhead), Section 1.3
Bumper (*see also* Buffer), 2.22.2
definition of, Section 1.3
where permitted, 2.22.1.1

Cable (*see* Suspension means)
Capacitor
electric elevator, 2.26.7
escalator, 6.1.6.12
moving walk, 6.2.6.11
Capacity (*see* Rated load)
Capacity plate (*see also* Data plate *and* Marking plate)
dumbwaiter, 7.2.3.2
electric elevator, 2.16.3
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.23
freight elevator, 2.16.5
hand elevator, 4.3.14.2
hydraulic elevator, 3.16
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.16.2
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.20.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.8
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.16
screw-column elevator, 4.2.10
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.16
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.12.1
Car, elevator
definition of, Section 1.3
Car, material lift
definition of, Section 1.3
Car clearance, bottom (*see* Clearance, bottom car)
Car clearance, horizontal (*see also* Clearance, horizontal), 2.5
deflection of car enclosure, 2.14.1.3
Car clearance, top (*see* Clearance, top car)
Car counterweight, independent, 2.21.1.4

Car door [*see also* Door (car or hoistway)]
material for, 2.14.4.3
vertically sliding, 2.14.4.7
vertically sliding, freight, 2.14.6.2
vertically sliding, passenger, 2.14.5.3
Car door operation (*see* Hoistway door operation)
Car door or gate
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.1.2
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.1
electric elevator, 2.14
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.10.8
hydraulic elevator, 3.14
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.14
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.4
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.8.2
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.6
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.14
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.6
screw-column elevator, 4.2.8
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.14.2
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.12
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.10.5
Car door or gate, closed position, 2.14.4.11
Car door or gate, freight, 2.14.6
Car door or gate, general requirements, 2.14.4
Car door or gate, kinetic energy and force limitations, 2.13.4
Car door or gate, location of, 2.14.4.5
Car door or gate, passenger, 2.14.5
Car door or gate, power closed
definition of, Section 1.3
Car door or gate, power opening of, 2.13.2.1
Car door or gate, restricted opening of, 2.12.5
Car door or gate, sequence operation, 2.13.6
Car door or gate, strength of, 2.14.4.6
Car door or gate electric contact, 2.14.4.2
approval of, 2.12.6.2
definition of, Section 1.3
design requirements, 2.12.3.4
labeling, 2.12.4.3
location of, 2.12.3.5
type test of, 8.3.3
Car door or gate power closer
definition of, Section 1.3
Car door or gate reopening device, 2.13.5
Car enclosure
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.1.1
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.1
electric elevator, 2.14
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.10
hand elevator, 4.3.9
hydraulic elevator, 3.14
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.14
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.4
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.8.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.6
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.14
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.6
screw-column elevator, 4.2.8
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.14.1
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.6
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.10
Car enclosure, freight, 2.14.3
Car enclosure, general requirements, 2.14.1
Car enclosure, passenger, 2.14.2
Car enclosure material
freight elevator, 2.14.3.1
passenger elevator, 2.14.2.1
Car enclosure top, 2.14.1.6
equipment prohibited on, 2.14.1.7
inclined elevator, 5.1.11.2
maintenance of, 8.6.4.9
Car floor (*see* Car platform)
Car frame
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.2
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.2
earthquake protection, 8.4.5
electric elevator, 2.15
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.11
hand elevator, 4.3.11
hydraulic elevator, 3.15
inclined elevator, 5.1.12.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.15
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.9.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.7
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.5
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.6
screw-column elevator, 4.2.9
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.15
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.7
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.11
Car frame, design data and formulas
electric elevator, 8.2.2
hydraulic elevator, 8.2.9
Car gate (*see also* Car door or gate)
definition of, Section 1.3
type permitted, 2.14.4.4
vertically sliding, 2.14.4.7
vertically sliding, freight, 2.14.6.2

vertically sliding, passenger, 2.14.5.3
Car leveling device (*see* Leveling device)
Car lighting (*see* Lighting, car)
Car platform
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.2
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.2
electric elevator, 2.15
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.11
hand elevator, 4.3.11
hydraulic elevator, 3.15
inclined elevator, 5.1.12.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.15
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.9.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.7
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.15
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.7
screw-column elevator, 4.2.9
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.15
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.7
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.11
Car platform, design data and formulas
electric elevator, 8.2.2
hydraulic elevator, 8.2.9
Car platform, laminated
definition of, Section 1.3
Car platform area
dumbwaiter, 7.2.3.1
inside net, 2.16.1.1
reduction of, 2.16.1.2
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.12.2
Car platform frame
definition of, Section 1.3
Car platform guard, 2.15.9
Car safety (*see* Safeties)
Car safety mechanism
maintenance of, 8.6.4.5
switch, 2.18.4
Car sill (*see* Platform sill)
Car top (*see* Car enclosure top)
Carpeting on car enclosure walls, 2.14.2.1
test of, 8.3.7
Carrying of one piece loads, 2.16.7
Cart lift (*see* Material lift with automatic transfer device)
Caution sign
escalator, 6.1.6.9
moving walk, 6.2.6.9
Ceiling intersection guard
escalator, 6.1.3.3.9
moving walk, 6.2.3.3.7
Ceramic permanent magnet
definition of, Section 1.3
escalator brake, 6.1.5.3
Chain (*see also* Suspension means)
dumbwaiter, 7.2.6
escalator, 6.1.3.11
moving walk, 6.2.3.12
Chain, compensating (*see* Compensating rope and chain)
Chain, replacement of, 8.6.2
Chain drive, electric elevator, 2.24.9
Check valve, 3.19.3.3
Circuit, control and operating
electric elevator, 2.26.9
escalator, 6.1.6.10
moving walk, 6.2.6.9
Class A loading, 2.16.2.2
Class B loading, 2.16.2.2
Class C loading, 2.16.2.2
Clearance, bottom car
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.1.4
electric elevator, 2.4.1
hydraulic elevator, 3.4.1
inclined elevator, 5.1.5.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.4.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.2
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.4
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.2
screw-column elevator, 4.2.2.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.4
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.2
Clearance, horizontal
dumbwaiter, 7.1.5
earthquake protection, 8.4.1
electric elevator, 2.5
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.5
hydraulic elevator, 3.5
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.15
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.4
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.5
screw-column elevator, 4.2.3
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.5
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.5
Clearance, horizontal, deflection of car enclosure, 2.14.1.3
Clearance, machine room, 2.7.4
Clearance, top car
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.1.4
electric elevator, counterweighted, 2.4.6

electric elevator, uncounterweighted, 2.4.7
hand elevator, 4.3.3
hydraulic elevator, 3.4.4
inclined elevator, 5.1.5.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.4.3
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.2
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.3
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.4
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.2
screw-column elevator, 4.2.2.3
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.4
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.2
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.4.2
Clearance, top counterweight
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.1.4
electric elevator, 2.4.9
hydraulic elevator, 3.4.6
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.4
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.4
Clearance between balustrade and treadway
balustrades with skirt panels, 6.2.3.3.6
skirtless balustrades, 6.2.3.3.5
Closed position, car doors or gates, 2.14.4.11
Closing of hoistway door, 2.11.3
Code, reference, Part 9
Code data plate
dumbwaiter, electric, 8.9
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 8.9
electric elevator, 8.9
escalator, 8.9
hand elevator, 8.9
hydraulic elevator, 8.9
moving walk, 8.9
private residence elevator, 8.9
rack-and-pinion elevator, 8.9
rooftop elevator, 8.9
screw-column elevator, 8.9
sidewalk elevator, electric, 8.9
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 8.9
special purpose personnel elevator, 8.9
Comb-pallet impact device, moving walk, 6.2.6.3.11
Comb-step impact device, escalator, 6.1.6.3.13
Combination horizontal slide and swing type entrance, 2.11.13.5
Combplate
escalator, 6.1.3.6.1
moving walk, 6.2.3.8.1
Communication, 2.27.1
Compensating rope and chain
attachment to counterweight, 2.21.4
earthquake protection, 8.4.6.1
switch, 2.26.2
switch, definition of, Section 1.3
tie-down, 2.21.4.2
Component rated pressure
definition of, Section 1.3
Construction elevator, 5.10
Control, motion
definition of, Section 1.3
Control, operation
definition of, Section 1.3
Control system
definition of, Section 1.3
Control and operating circuit
electric elevator, 2.26.9
hydraulic elevator, 3.26.6
Control equipment
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.12
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.11
electric elevator, 2.26
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.21
hydraulic elevator, 3.26
inclined elevator, 5.1.20
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.26
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.18
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.15.1
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.25
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.17
screw-column elevator, 4.2.17
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.25
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.17.1
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.19
Control of smoke and hot gases, 2.1.4
Control room (*see* Machine room)
Control valves, hydraulic
test requirements, 8.3.5
Controller
definition of, Section 1.3
electric elevator, 8.7.2.27.4
guarding of, 2.10
hydraulic elevator, 8.7.3.31.5
maintenance of, 8.6.1.6.3
Controller, motion
definition of, Section 1.3
Controller, motor
definition of, Section 1.3
Controller, operation
definition of, Section 1.3
Conveyor, 1.1.2
Corrosion protection
hydraulic elevator cylinder, 3.18.3.8
hydraulic elevator piping, 3.19.5

Counterbalancing of cars, 2.21.3
Counterweight
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.7
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.7
earthquake protection, 8.4.7
electric elevator, 2.21
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.17
hand elevator, 4.3.17
hydraulic elevator, 3.21
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.21
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.13.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.10
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.20
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.12
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.20
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.12
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.15
Counterweight, guarding of
dumbwaiter, 7.1.3
electric elevator, 2.3.2
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.3.2
hydraulic elevator, 3.3
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.3
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.13.2
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.3
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1.2
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.3
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.3
Counterweight, location of
dumbwaiter, 7.1.3
electric elevator, 2.3.1
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.3.1
hydraulic elevator, 3.3
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.3
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.13.2
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.3
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1.2
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.3
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.3
Counterweight buffer (*see* Buffer)
Counterweight clearance, horizontal (*see* Clearance, horizontal)
Counterweight clearance, top (*see* Clearance, top counterweight)
Counterweight guide rail (*see* Guide rail)
Counterweight hoistway
electric elevator, 2.3.3
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.3.3
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.13.2(c)
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.3
Counterweight rope (*see* Rope and Suspension means)
Counterweight safety (*see* Safeties)
Counterweight safety required, 2.6
Counterweight screen (*see also* Counterweight, guarding of)
clearance, 2.5.1.2
Crane, 1.1.2
Crosshead (*see* Car frame)
Crosshead data plate, 2.20.2
Customary unit
applicability, Preface
Cylinder, 3.18.3
annual inspection of, 8.11.3.2.2
design data and formulas, 8.2.8.2
dumbwaiter, 7.3.5
maintenance of, 8.6.5.1, 8.6.5.2, 8.6.5.5, 8.6.5.6
rooftop elevator, 5.6.2.10
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.2.10
Cylinder head, 3.18.3
design data and formulas, 8.2.8.3

Data plate (*see also* Capacity plate, Marking plate, *and* Code data plate)
crosshead, 2.20.2
dumbwaiter, 7.2.3.2
electric elevator, 2.16.3
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.23
hydraulic elevator, 3.16
inclined elevator, 5.1.13.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.16.2
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.20.2
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.8
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.16
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
screw-column elevator, 4.2.10
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.16
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.12.1
Data tag
governor rope, 2.18.5.3
screw-column elevator safety nut, 4.2.12
suspension rope, 2.20.2
Deck barricade
escalator, 6.1.3.3.11
moving walk, 6.2.3.3.8
Definitions of terms used in code, Section 1.3
Design data and formulas, 8.2
Designated attendant
definition of, Section 1.3
Disconnect switch (*see* Power supply line disconnecting means)
Disconnected motor safety device
escalator, 6.1.6.3.10
moving walk, 6.2.6.3.8
Dispatching device
definition of, Section 1.3

Displacement switch, 8.4.10
definition of, Section 1.3
Door (car or hoistway)
definition of, Section 1.3
Door, car (*see* Car door or gate)
Door, hoistway (*see* Hoistway door *and* Hoistway entrance)
Door, machine room, 2.7.3.4
Door, pit, 2.2.4
Door closing force and kinetic energy, 2.13.4.1, 2.13.4.2.1, 2.13.4.2.2, 2.13.4.2.3
Door guide
car door or gate, 2.14.4.6
horizontal slide type entrance, 2.11.11.6
vertical slide type entrance, 2.11.12.5
Door operation (*see* Hoistway door operation)
Door or gate closer
definition of, Section 1.3
Door or gate power operator
definition of, Section 1.3
Door panel
car door, 2.14.5.6
interconnection of panels, 2.11.11.7
horizontal slide-type entrance, 2.11.11.5
swing-type entrance, 2.11.13.3
vertical slide-type entrance, 2.11.12.4
Door restrictor (*see* Unlocking zone)
Door track, 2.14.4.6
Double deck elevator, 2.14.1.4
Double swing entrance, 2.11.2.3
Drawings (*see* Layout, Information on)
Drip pan, escalator and moving walk, 8.6.8.14
Drive-chain device
escalator, 6.1.6.3.4
moving walk, 6.2.6.3.4
Driving machine
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.10
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.5
earthquake protection, 8.4.9
electric elevator, 2.24
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.20
escalator, 6.1.5
escalator, factor of safety, 6.1.3.10
hand elevator, 4.3.19
hydraulic, 3.18
inclined elevator, 5.1.19
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.24
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.7
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
moving walk, 6.2.5
private residence elevator, electric, 5.3.1.16
private residence elevator, hydraulic, 5.3.2.2
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.13
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.23
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.10
screw-column elevator, 4.2.15
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.23
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.10
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.18
Driving machine, belt, 2.24.9
Driving machine, chain, 2.24.9
Driving machine, connection to escalator gear reducer, 6.1.6.3.10
Driving machine, indirect
electric elevator, 2.24.9
Driving machine, operation with doors not closed, 2.12.4.2
Driving machine, operation with doors unlocked, 2.12.3.1
Driving-machine brake (*see* Brake)
Drum (*see* Winding drum)
Dumbwaiter, Part 7
alteration to, 8.7.7.1
definition of, Section 1.3
hydraulic, 7.3
hydraulic, maintenance of, 8.6.5, 8.6.9
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.4, 8.11.5.4
maintenance of, 8.6
undercounter, definition of, Section 1.3
Dumbwaiter with automatic transfer device, 7.8
alteration to, 8.7.7.3
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.5, 8.11.5.5
maintenance of, 8.6
Duplex safeties, 2.17.2

Earthquake protection, 8.4
Earthquake protection device, 8.4.10.1.1
definition of, Section 1.3
Electric contact, car door or gate (*see* Car door or gate electric contact)
Electric elevator
alteration to hoistway and related construction, 8.7.2
alteration to machinery and equipment, 8.7.2
hoistway and related construction, Part 2
inspection and test, acceptance, 8.10.2
inspection and test, periodic, 8.11.2.2
inspection and test, routine, 8.11.2.1
machinery and equipment, Part 2
maintenance of, 8.6
Electrical equipment (*see also* Wiring)
dumbwaiter, 7.3.11.5
electric elevator, 2.26.4
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.21.3
escalator, 6.1.7.4
hydraulic elevator, 3.8
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.26
moving walk, 6.2.7.4
private residence elevators, 5.3.1.18.4

Electrical heater, 2.8.3
Electrical protective device
  dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.12
  dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.11
  earthquake protection, 8.4.10.1.2
  electric elevator, 2.26.2
  elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.21.1
  escalator, 6.1.6.3
  hydraulic elevator, 3.26.4
  inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.26
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.13
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
  moving walk, 6.2.6.3
  private residence elevator, 5.3.1.18
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.15.1
  rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.25
  rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.17
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.17
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
  sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.25
  sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.17.1
  special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.19
Electrical protective device, making inoperative, 8.6.1.6.1
Elevator
  definition of, Section 1.3
Elevator car
  definition of (car, elevator), Section 1.3
Elevator pad, 2.14.2.1
Elevator used for construction, 5.10
  hydraulic, 5.10.2
  inspection and test of, 8.10.5.10, 8.11.5.13
Embedment medium, rope socket, 2.20.9.6
Emergency door
  electric elevator, 2.11.1
  elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.9.2
  hydraulic elevator, 3.11
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
  rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.5
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.1
Emergency exit, side (*see* Side emergency exit)
Emergency exit, top (*see* Top emergency exit)
Emergency in-car operation, 2.27.3.3
Emergency lighting, car, 2.14.7.1
Emergency operation (*see* Firefighters' service)
Emergency operation, earthquake, 8.4.10
Emergency power (*see also* Standby power), 2.27.2
Emergency recall operation, 2.27.3.1
Emergency signaling device
  electric elevator, 2.27.1
  elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.10.7
  hydraulic elevator, 3.11
  inclined elevator, 5.1.21.1
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.27
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.14
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
  private residence elevator, 5.3.1.19
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.16
  rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.26
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.1.8
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.18
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.26
  special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.21
Emergency stop button
  escalator, 6.1.6.3.1
  moving walk, 6.2.6.3.1
Emergency stop switch, in-car (*see also* Stop switch), 2.26.2
  connection to alarm, 2.27.1
  definition of, Section 1.3
Emergency terminal speed limiting device (*see also* Terminal stopping device)
  definition of (terminal speed limiting device, emergency), Section 1.3
  electric elevator, 2.25.4.1
  five-year inspection and test of, 8.11.2.3.6
  hydraulic elevator, 3.25.2
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.14.2
  with reduced stroke buffer, 2.22.4.1
Emergency terminal stopping device (*see also* Terminal stopping device), 2.25.4.2
Enclosure, Hoistway (*see* Hoistway enclosure)
Enclosure, Machine room (*see* Machine room)
End loading inclined elevator, 5.1.22
Enforcing authority (*see* Authority having jurisdiction)
Engineering and type test, 8.3
Entrance (*see also* Hoistway entrance)
  definition of, Section 1.3
Entrance, applied frame
  definition of (Applied frame entrance), Section 1.3
Entrance frame
  horizontal slide type entrance, 2.11.11.3
  swing type entrance, 2.11.13.2
  vertical slide type entrance, 2.11.12.2
Entrance locked out of service, 2.11.6
  definition of, Section 1.3
Equipment covered by A17.1 Code, 1.1.1
Equipment not covered by A17.1 Code, 1.1.2
Equipment permitted in machine room, 2.7.2.1
Equipment prohibited
  in car, 2.14.1.9
  in hoistway and machine room, 2.8.2
  in machine room, 2.7.2.1
  on top of car, 2.14.1.7
Escalator, 6.1
  alteration to, 8.7.6.1
  definition of, Section 1.3

diagram, Nonmandatory Appendix I
inspection and test, acceptance, 8.10.4
inspection and test, periodic, 8.11.4.2
inspection and test, routine, 8.11.4
maintenance of, 8.6.8
outdoor, 6.1.8
portable, 1.1.2
relocation of, 8.7.6.1.2
Escalator deck
definition of, Section 1.3
Escalator molding
definition of, Section 1.3
Escalator newel
definition of, Section 1.3
Escalator newel base
definition of, Section 1.3
Escalator panel, exterior
definition of, Section 1.3
Escalator panel, interior
definition of, Section 1.3
Escalator skirt
definition of, Section 1.3
Escalator, tandem operation
definition of, Section 1.3
Exception to code, Section 1.2
Existing installation
alteration to, 8.7
applicable requirements, 1.1.3
application of rules to, Preface
definition of (installation, existing), Section 1.3
inspection of, 8.10, 8.11

Factor of safety
definition of, Section 1.3
False car, 1.1.2
Fascia, 2.11.10.1
Fasteners, 2.24.4
Fatigue test, escalator step, 6.1.3.5.8
Final limit (*see* Final terminal stopping device)
Final terminal stopping device (*see also* Terminal stopping device)
annual inspection and test of, 8.11.2.2.5
definition of (terminal stopping device, final), Section 1.3
electric elevator, 2.25.3
hydraulic elevator, 3.25.3
screw-column elevator, 4.2.16.2
Finger guard
escalator, 6.1.3.4.3
moving walk, 6.2.3.4.3
Fire door, 2.11.6
Fire endurance
definition of, Section 1.3
Fire extinguisher, 8.6.1.6.5
Fire resistance
definition of, Section 1.3
Fire resistance rating (*see also* Flame spread rating)
hoistway enclosure, 2.1.1.1
hoistway entrance, 2.1.1.1
hoistway entrance, test of, 8.3.4
machine room, 2.7.1
Fire resistive
definition of, Section 1.3
Fire test of hoistway entrance, 8.3.4
Firefighters' service
annual inspection of, 8.11.2.2.6
automatic (nondesignated attendant) elevator, 2.27.3
corridor call station sign, Nonmandatory Appendix O
dual operation elevator, 2.27.5
earthquake protection, 8.4.10
hydraulic elevator, 3.27
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
inspection operation, 2.27.6
maintenance of, 8.6.10.1
multideck elevator, 2.27.3.5
non-automatic elevator, 2.27.4
operating procedures, 2.27.7
operating on standby power, 2.27.2
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.16
screw-column elevator, 4.2.18
switch key, 2.27.8
Fishplate, 2.23.7
Fittings, hydraulic elevator, 3.19
Five-year inspection and test (*see* Periodic inspection and test)
Flame spread rating (*see also* Fire resistance rating)
car enclosure, 2.14.2.1
car platform, 2.15.8
Flat step, 6.1.3.6.5
definition of, Section 1.3
Flexible hose and fittings, hydraulic elevator, 3.19.2.3
annual inspection of, 8.11.3.2.4
Floor, car (*see* Car platform)
Floor number, 2.29.2
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.22
Floor opening, protection of
escalator, 6.1.1
moving walk, 6.2.1
Floor over hoistway, 2.1.3
deflections, 2.9.5
stress, 2.9.4
Follower guide, plunger, 3.18.2.7
Force, door closing, 2.13.4.1, 2.13.4.2.1, 2.13.4.2.2, 2.13.4.2.3
Forklift truck loading, 2.16.2.2
Formulas and design data, 8.2
Foundations (*see* Beam, machinery and sheave)
Frame, car (*see* Car frame)
Frame, counterweight, 2.21.1.1
design of, 2.21.2

Freight elevator
definition of, Section 1.3
Freight elevator, carrying of passengers on, 2.16.4
Freight loading, 2.16.2.2
Furnace hoist, 1.1.2

Gage, oil buffer, 2.22.4.6
Gas spring return oil buffer, 2.22.4.5
definition of, Section 1.3
Gasketing material, hoistway entrances, 2.11.19
Gate, car (*see* Car gate; *see also* Car door or gate)
Gate, hoistway, hand elevator, 4.3.7
Gate, semiautomatic
definition of, Section 1.3
Gear reducer,
connection to escalator driving machine, 6.1.6.3.10
Gears, inspection of, 2.24.10
Glass
car door, 2.14.5.8
hoistway door, 2.11.7.2
in elevator car, 2.14.1.8
Glass balustrade
escalator, 6.1.3.3.3
moving walk, 6.2.3.3.3
Glass, maintenance of, 8.6.10.3
Governor
definition of (Speed governor), Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.2.5
electric elevator, 2.18
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.14
escalator, 6.1.6.3.2
hydraulic elevator, 3.17.1
inclined elevator, 5.1.14.3
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.18
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
moving walk, 6.2.6.3.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.11
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.9
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.18
rooftop elevator, hydarulic, 5.6.2.9
screw-column elevator, 4.2.11
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.18
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.9
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.13
Governor, factor of safety, 2.18.8
Governor, inspection and test of
acceptance, 8.10.2.2
annual, 8.11.2.2.3
five-year, 8.11.2.3.2
Governor, location of, 2.18.1
Governor, where required, 2.18.1
Governor overspeed switch, 2.18.4
Governor pull-through tension force
definition of, Section 1.3
Governor rope, 2.18.5
connection to safety, 2.17.12
gripping jaws, 2.18.6
lubrication of, 8.6.4.2
maximum permissible movement, 2.17.11
releasing carrier, 2.17.15
sheave, 2.18.7
Governor seal, 2.18.3
Governor tripping speed, 2.18.2
design data, 8.2.5
Gravity return oil buffer, 2.22.4.5
Gravity stopping distance, 8.2.4
Gripping jaw, governor rope, 2.18.6
Grooved pipe fittings, 3.19.2.2
Guard, pit (*see* Counterweight, guarding of)
Guard at ceiling intersection
escalator, 6.1.3.3.9
moving walk, 6.2.3.3.7
Guard between adjacent pits, 2.2.3
Guarding of exposed equipment, 2.10
Guide, door (*see* Door guide)
Guide rail
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.9
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.9
earthquake protection, 8.4.8
electric elevator, 2.23
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.19
hand elevator, 4.3.18
hydraulic elevator, 3.23
inclined elevator, 5.1.18
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.23
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.10
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.15
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.12
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.22
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.14
screw-column elevator, 4.2.14
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.22
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.14
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.17
Guide rail, door panel, 2.11.12.3
Guide rail, lubrication of, 2.17.16
Guide rail, maintenance of, 8.6.4.3
Guide-rail bracket
earthquake protection, 8.4.8.4
fastening to building structure, 2.23.9
fastening to guide rail, 2.23.10
spacing, 2.23.4
stresses and deflections, 2.23.5
Guide shoe
car, 2.15.2
car door or gate, 2.14.4.6

counterweight, 2.21.1.3
design of, 2.15.3
earthquake protection, 8.4.5

Hand and finger guard
escalator, 6.1.3.4.3
moving walk, 6.2.3.4.3
Hand dumbwaiter, Part 7
Hand elevator, 4.3
alteration to, 8.7.4.3
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.3, 8.11.5.3
maintenance of, 8.6
power attachment, 4.3.20
Handrail
escalator, 6.1.3.4
moving walk, 6.2.3.4
shipboard elevator, electric, 5.8.1.10
shipboard elevator, hydraulic, 5.8.2.3
shipboard elevator, rack-and-pinion, 5.8.3.2
speed monitoring device, escalator, 6.1.6.6.4
speed monitoring device, moving walk, 6.2.6.4
Handrail, location and clearance
escalator, 6.1.3.12
moving walk, 6.2.3.2
Handrail entry device, escalator, 6.1.6.3.12
Handrail entry device, moving walk, 6.2.6.3.10
Hanger
car door or gate, 2.14.4.6
horizontal slide type entrance, 2.11.11.4
tracks and supports, 2.11.11.2
Headroom
elevator car, 2.14.2.4
escalator, 6.1.3.12
moving walk, 6.2.3.15
Headroom in machine room, 2.7.4
Heater, 2.8.3
Hinge, swing type entrance, 2.11.13.4
Hinged platform sill, 2.15.16
History of code, Foreword
Hitch plate
car, 2.15.13
counterweight, 2.21.2.5
securing to structure, 2.9.3.3
Hoist, 1.1.2
Hoisting rope (*see* Rope and Suspension means)
Hoistway
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.1
electric elevator, Part 2
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1
hand elevator, 4.3.1
hydraulic elevator, 3.1
inclined elevator, 5.1.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.1
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.1
screw-column elevator, 4.2.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.1
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.1
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.1
Hoistway, access to
dumbwaiter, 7.1.12
electric elevator, 2.12.7
hydraulic elevator, 3.12
inclined elevator, 5.1.10
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.7.7
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.12
screw-column elevator, 4.2.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.8.3
Hoistway, construction at top and bottom of, 2.1.2
Hoistway, counterweight (*see* Counterweight hoistway)
Hoistway, maintenance of, 8.6.4.7
Hoistway, number of elevators permitted in, 2.1.1.4
Hoistway, partially enclosed, 2.1.1.3
Hoistway, pipes and ducts in, 2.8.2
Hoistway, protection of space below (*see* Protection of space below hoistway)
Hoistway access switch, 2.12.7
definition of, Section 1.3
Hoistway door [*see also* Door (car or hoistway) *and* Hoistway entrance]
closed position of, 2.12.3.2
closing of, 2.11.3
counterweight, 2.11.8
counterweighting or counterbalancing, 2.11.12.6
kinetic energy and force limitations, 2.13.4.1, 2.13.4.2.1, 2.13.4.2.2, 2.13.4.2.3
labeling, 2.11.15
location of, 2.11.4
locking out of service, 2.11.6
opening from hoistway side, 2.11.6
power closing, 2.13.3
power opening, 2.13.2.2
reopening device, 2.13.5
restricted opening of, 2.12.5
sequence operation, 2.13.6
Hoistway door electric contact, 2.12.3
approval of, 2.12.4.2
definition of, Section 1.3
labeling, 2.12.4.3

type test of, 8.3.3
Hoistway door lock and contact
approval of, 2.12.4.2
design requirements, 2.12.2.4
labeling, 2.12.4.3
location of, 2.12.2.6
type test of, 8.3.3
where permitted, 2.12.1
Hoistway door locking device
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.1.12
electric elevator, 2.12
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.21.2
hand elevator, 4.3.8
hydraulic elevator, 3.12
inclined elevator, 5.1.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.12
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.7.4
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.12
screw-column elevator, 4.2.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.12
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.9
Hoistway door locking device, type test of, 8.3.3
Hoistway door operation
dumbwaiter, 7.1.13
electric elevator, 2.13
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.21.2
hand elevator, 4.3.6.2
hydraulic elevator, 3.13
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.13
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.8.2(a)
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.13
screw-column elevator, 4.2.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.13
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.8.4
Hoistway door operation, annual test of, 8.11.2.2.8
Hoistway door safety
retainers, 2.11.11.8
Hoistway door unlocking device, 2.12.6
Hoistway door vision panel (*see* Vision panel, hoistway door)
Hoistway enclosure
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.1.1
electric elevator, 2.1
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.1.1
hand elevator, 4.3.1
hydraulic elevator, 3.1
inclined elevator, 5.1.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.1
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.1
screw-column elevator, 4.2.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.1
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.1.1
Hoistway enclosure, supporting of guide rail, 2.23.10
Hoistway entrance (*see also* Hoistway door)
definition of (entrance)
dumbwaiter, 7.1.11
electric elevator, 2.11
elevator used for construction, 15.10.1.9
hand elevator, 4.3.6
hydraulic elevator, 3.1
inclined elevator, 5.1.8
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.11
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.7
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.1
screw-column elevator, 4.2.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.11
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.8
Hoistway entrance, fire test of, 8.3.4
factory inspection, 2.11.16
labeling, 2.11.15
Hoistway entrance, freight elevator, 2.11.2.2
Hoistway entrance, gasketing of, 2.11.19
Hoistway entrance, installation instructions, 2.11.18
Hoistway entrance, minimum size, 2.11.1.2
Hoistway entrance, passenger elevator, 2.11.2.1
Hoistway gate
definition of, Section 1.3
Hoistway gate, hand elevator, 4.3.7
Hoistway landing sill (*see* Landing sill, hoistway)
Hoistway pressurization, 2.1.4
Hoistway protection in case of fire, 2.1.4
Hoistway unit system
definition of, Section 1.3
Hoistway unit system combination mechanical lock and electric contact (*see* Hoistway door lock and contact *and* Hoistway door locking device)
Hoistway unit system hoistway door interlock (*see* Interlock *and* Hoistway door locking device)
Hold handrail sign
escalator, 6.1.6.9
moving walk, 6.2.6.9
Horizontal clearance (*see* Clearance, horizontal)
Horizontal slide type entrance, 2.11.11
combination slide and swing, 2.11.13.5
location of, 2.11.4
Hose, flexible, hydraulic elevator, 3.19.2.3
annual inspection of, 8.11.3.2.4

Hydraulic elevator, Part 3
alteration to, 8.7.3
definition of, Section 1.3
elevator used for construction, 5.10.2
inspection and test, acceptance, 8.10.3
inspection and test, periodic, 8.11.3.2
inspection and test, routine, 8.11.3.1
maintenance of, 8.6.5, 8.6.9
roped, Part 3
Hydraulic jack
definition of, Section 1.3
Hydraulic machine
definition of, Section 1.3
Hydraulic material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.12

Illumination (*see* Lighting)
Impact on buffer support, 8.2.3
In-car stop switch, 2.26.2
Inching device (*see* Leveling device)
Inclined elevator, 5.1
alteration to, 8.7.5.1
definition of, Section 1.3
end loading, 5.1.22
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.7, 8.11.5.7
maintenance of, 8.6
private residence, 5.4
Inclined lift (*see* Stairway chairlift)
Inclined reciprocating conveyor, 1.1.2
Independent car counterweight, 2.21.1.4
Indirect plunger elevator (*see* Roped-hydraulic elevator)
Industrial truck, 1.1.2
Industrial truck loading, 2.16.2.2
Inertia application test, location of test weight, Nonmandatory Appendix M
Information on layout (*see* Layout, information on)
Initial inspection and test (*see* Acceptance inspection and test)
Inner loading zone
five-year test of, 8.11.2.3.9
Inside net platform area, 2.16.1
Inspection and test, 8.10, 8.11
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 8.10.5.4, 8.11.5.4
dumbwaiter with automatic transfer device, 8.10.5.5, 8.11.5.5
electric elevator, acceptance, 8.10.2
electric elevator, periodic, 8.11.2.2
electric elevator, routine, 8.11.2
elevator used for construction, 8.10.5.10, 8.11.5.13
escalator and moving walk, acceptance, 8.10.4
escalator and moving walk, periodic, 8.11.4.2
escalator and moving walk, routine, 8.11.4
hand elevator, 8.10.5.3, 8.11.5.3
hydraulic elevator, acceptance, 8.10.3
hydraulic elevator, routine, 8.11.3
hydraulic elevator, periodic, 8.11.3.2
inclined elevator, 8.10.5.7, 8.11.5.7
installation placed out of service, 8.11.1.4
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 8.10.5.13, 8.11.5.12
material lift with automatic transfer device, 8.10.5.5, 8.11.5.5
persons authorized to perform, 8.10.1.1(c), 8.11.1.1
private residence elevator, 8.10.5.2, 8.11.5.2
rack-and-pinion elevators, 8.10.5.12, 8.11.5.11
recommended procedures, 8.10.1.2, 8.11.1.2
rooftop elevators, 8.10.5.11, 8.11.5.10
screw-column elevators, 8.10.5.9, 8.11.5.9
shipboard elevators, 8.10.5.8, 8.11.5.8
sidewalk elevator, 8.10.5.1, 8.11.5.1
special purpose personnel elevator, 8.10.5.6, 8.11.5.6
Inspection operation
definition of, Section 1.3
electric elevator, 2.26.1.4
Inspector qualifications, 8.10.1.1(c), 8.11.1.1
Installation
definition of, Section 1.3
Installation placed out of service
definition of, Section 1.3
inspection and test, 8.11.1.4
Installation, existing
definition of, Section 1.3
Installation, new
definition of, Section 1.3
Instantaneous safety (*see* Type A safety)
Intercom, in car, 2.27.1
Interlock (*see also* Hoistway door locking device)
approval of, 2.12.4.2
definition of, Section 1.3
design of, 2.12.2.4
labeling, 2.12.4.3
location of, 2.12.2.6
multipanel entrance, 2.11.11.7
retiring cam, 2.12.2.5
type test of, 8.3.3
where required, 2.12.1
Interlock unlocking zone (*see* Unlocking zone)
Interpretation of code requirements, Preface
Interruption of power, 2.27.3.4

Jump of car or counterweight (*see* Compensating rope and chain)

Key, firefighters' service, 2.27.8
Key, hoistway access door, 2.7.3.4(d)
Key, pit access door, 2.2.4(g)
Kinetic energy of hoistway and car doors and gates, 2.13.4.1, 2.13.4.2.1, 2.13.4.2.2, 2.13.4.2.3

Labeled
definition of, Section 1.3
Labeling
hoistway door and car door locking devices, 2.12.4.3
hoistway entrance, 2.11.14
replacement devices, 8.6.3.7
Laminated car platform, 2.15.5
definition of (car platform, laminated), Section 1.3
Landing, elevator
definition of, Section 1.3
Landing, escalator
access plate, 6.1.7.3
floor space, 6.1.3.6.3
outdoor, 6.1.8.3
safety zone, 6.1.3.6.4
Landing, escalator or moving walk
definition of, Section 1.3
Landing, moving walk
access plate, 6.2.7.3
floor surface, 6.2.3.8.4
outdoor, 6.2.8.3
safety zone, 6.2.3.8.5
Landing sill, hoistway
clearance, 2.5.1.3
guard, 2.11.10.1
hinged, 2.11.10.3
horizontal slide type entrance, 2.11.11.1
lighting, 2.11.10.2
swing type entrance, 2.11.13.1
vertical slide type entrance, 2.11.12.1
Landing zone
definition of, Section 1.3
Layout, information on
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.13
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.12
electric elevator, 2.28
electric elevator, earthquake protection, 8.4.8.9
hand elevator, 4.3.21
hydraulic elevator, 3.28
hydraulic elevator, earthquake protection, 8.4.11.7
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.17
screw-column elevator, 4.2.19
sidewalk elevators, electric, 5.5.1.27
sidewalk elevators, hydraulic, 5.5.2.18
Leveling
definition of, Section 1.3
Leveling device
definition of, Section 1.3
Leveling device, anticreep, 3.26.3
Leveling zone
definition of, Section 1.3
operation in, 2.26.1.6
Lift bridge, 1.1.2
five-year test of, 8.11.2.3.8
Lighting, car
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.1.3
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.1
electric elevator, 2.14.7
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.10.3
hydraulic elevator, 3.14
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.14
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.8.3
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.6
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.14
screw-column elevator, 4.2.8
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1.6
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.14.3
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.10.3
Lighting, escalator step demarcation, 6.1.6.7
Lighting of landing, 2.11.10.2
escalator, 6.1.7.2
Lighting of machine room, 2.7.5
escalator, 6.1.7.1
moving walk, 6.2.7.1
Lighting of moving walk treadway, 6.2.7.2
Lighting of pit, 2.2.5
Lighting of step tread, escalator, 6.1.7.2
Limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2
Limit switch (*see* Terminal stopping device)
Line jack, 1.1.2
Listed
definition of, Section 1.3
Listing
hoistway door and car door locking devices, 2.12.4.3
replacement devices, 8.6.3.7
Load, rated (*see* Rated load)
Load rating
oil buffer, 2.22.4.10
spring buffer, 2.22.3.2
Loading
freight elevator, 2.16.2.2
passenger elevator, 2.16.1.1
special loading means, 2.16.9
Locked out of service, entrance, 2.11.6
definition of, Section 1.3
Locking device, hoistway door (*see* Hoistway door locking device)
Lubrication, 8.6.1.6.2
guide rail, 2.17.16

Machine and control rooms, remote, 2.7.8
definition of, Section 1.3
Machine final, 2.25.3.5
Machine room
dumbwaiter, 7.1.7
electric elevator, 2.7
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.7.1
hand elevator, 4.3.4

hydraulic elevator, 3.7
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.7
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.2
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.7
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.4
screw-column elevator, 4.2.5
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.7
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.4
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.18.9
Machine room, access to, 2.7.3
escalator, 6.1.7.3
moving walk, 6.2.7.3
Machine room, air conditioning equipment, 2.8.4
Machine room, equipment in, 2.7.2.1
Machine room, location of, 2.7.6
Machine room, maintenance of, 8.6.4.8
Machine room, pipes and ducts in, 2.8.2
Machine room, protection against fire
escalator, 6.1.2
moving walk, 6.2.2
Machine room, smoke detector in, 2.27.3.2
Machine room, underneath hoistway, 2.7.7
Machine room floor (*see* Floor over hoistway)
Machine, driving (*see also* Driving machine)
definition of, Section 1.3
Machinery and equipment
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3
electric elevator, Part 2
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.19
hydraulic elevator, 3.23
inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.23
limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.3
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.12
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.22
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.14
screw-column elevator, 4.2.14
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.22
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.14
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.17
Machinery beam (*see* Beam, machinery and sheave)
Machinery space (*see* Machine room)
Mainline disconnect switch (*see* Power supply line disconnecting means)
Maintenance, 8.6
Manlift, 1.1.2
Manual lowering valve, 3.19.4.4
Manual reset
definition of, Section 1.3
escalator, 6.1.6.14
moving walk, 6.2.6.13
Marking plate (*see also* Capacity plate *and* Data plate)
governor, 2.18.9
oil buffer, 2.22.4.11
rail lubricant, 2.17.16
safeties, 2.17.14
spring buffer, 2.22.3.3
Material for car enclosure and linings
freight car, 2.14.3.1
passenger car, 2.14.2.1
Material hoist, 1.1.2
Material lift with automatic transfer device, Part 7
alteration to, 8.7.7.3
electric, 7.9
hydraulic, 7.12
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.5, 8.11.5.5
maintenance of, 8.6
Mechanical lock and electric contact (*see* Hoistway door lock and contact)
Mechanical spring-return oil buffer
definition of, Section 1.3
Mechanized parking garage equipment, 1.1.2
Metric unit, Preface
Mine elevator, 1.1.2
Missing pallet device, moving walk, 6.2.6.5
Missing step device, escalator, 6.1.6.6.5
Mobile scaffold, 1.1.2
Modernization (*see* Alteration)
Modular escalator (*see* Escalator)
Module, definition of, Section 1.3
Motion control (*see* Control, motion)
Motor (*see also* Driving machine)
escalator, 6.1.5
moving walk, 6.2.5
Motor generator overspeed protection, 2.26.2
Motor generator running switch, 2.26.2
Motor generator set, test of, 8.10.2.2.2(m)
Motor vehicle loading, 2.16.2.2
Moving walk, 6.2
alteration to, 8.7.6.2
definition of, Section 1.3
diagram, Nonmandatory Appendix I
inspection and test, acceptance, 8.10.4
inspection and test, periodic, 8.11.4.2
inspection and test, routine, 8.11.4
maintenance of, 8.6.8
outdoor, 6.2.8
relocation of, 8.7.6.2.2
Multideck elevator, 2.14.1.4
definition of, Section 1.3
firefighters' service, 2.27
Multiple hoistway
clearance between cars, 2.5.1.3
number of elevators permitted in, 2.1.1.4

Multiple plunger, recycling operation, 3.26.7

National Electrical Code, Part 9
New technology, Preface
Next available landing
  definition of, Section 1.3
Nonmetallic sheave liner, 2.24.2
Nonstop switch
  definition of, Section 1.3
Nonvision wing (*see* sight guard)
Normal limit (*see* Normal terminal stopping device)
Normal terminal stopping device (*see also* Terminal stopping device)
  definition of (terminal stopping device, normal), Section 1.3
  electric elevator, 2.25.2
  hydraulic elevator, 3.25.1
Normal terminal stopping device, inspection and test of
  acceptance, 8.10.2.2.2(z)
  annual, 8.11.2.2.5
Nudging, 2.13.5
Numbering, emergency identification, 2.29.1
Numbering of disconnect switches, 2.26.4
Numbering of floors, 2.29.2

Observation elevator (*see also* Partially enclosed hoistway)
  definition of, Section 1.3
  separate counterweight hoistway for, 2.3.3
Occupied space below hoistway (*see* Protection of space below hoistway)
Oil buffer (*see also* Buffer), 2.22.4
  approval of, 2.22.4.7
  compressed with car at landing, 2.22.4.8
  definition of (buffer, oil), Section 1.3
  maintenance of, 8.6.4.4
  reduced stroke, 2.22.4.1
Oil buffer, inspection and test of
  acceptance, 8.10.2.2.5(c)
  annual, 8.11.2.2.1
  five-year, 8.11.2.3.3
  type test, 8.3.2
Oil buffer stroke, 2.22.4.1
  definition of (buffer, oil stroke), Section 1.3
  inclined elevator, 5.1.17.4
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
Oil leakage
  maintenance of, 8.6.5.1, 8.6.5.2, 8.6.5.5, 8.6.5.6
  means for collection of, 3.18.3.7
Oil level, oil buffer, 2.22.4.6
Operating circuit, 2.26.9
Operating device
  definition of, Section 1.3
  dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.12
  dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.11
  electric elevator, 2.26.1
  elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.21
  escalator, 6.1.6
  hydraulic elevator, 3.26
  inclined elevator, 5.1.20
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.26
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.13
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
  moving walk, 6.2.6
  private residence elevator, 5.3.1.18
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.15.1
  rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.25
  rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.17
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.17
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
  sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.25
  sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.17.1
  special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.19
Operating device symbols, 2.26.12
Operating speed in the down direction
  definition of, Section 1.3
Operation
  definition of (*see also* Operating device), Section 1.3
Operation, door (*see* Hoistway door operation)
Orchestra lift, 1.1.2
Overall length of guide rail, 2.23.8
Overhead beam (*see* Beam, machinery and sheave)
Overhead obstruction in hoistway
  electric elevator, 2.4.10
  hydraulic elevator, 3.4.5
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
Overhead structure
  definition of, Section 1.3
Overload, passenger, 2.16.8
Overspeed governor (*see* Governor)
Overspeed protection, motor generator, 2.26.2
Overspeed switch, governor, 2.18.4

Packing gland, cylinder, 3.18.3.5
Padded protective linings, 2.14.2.1
Painting, 8.6.1.6.4
  of governor, 2.18.3
Pallet, moving walk, 6.2.3.11
  definition of, Section 1.3
Pallet level device, moving walk, 6.2.6.3.9
Pallet type treadway, moving walk, 6.2.3.5
Panel, door (*see* Door panel)
Panel guide rail, 2.11.12.3
Panel sill, 2.11.12.7
Parking garage equipment, 1.1.2
Partially enclosed hoistway, 2.1.1.3
Partition for reducing platform area, 2.16.1.2
Passenger elevator
  carrying of freight on, 2.16.1.3

definition of, Section 1.3
Passenger overload, 2.16.8
Periodic inspection and test (*see also* Inspection and test)
definition of (inspection and test, periodic), Section 1.3
Personnel elevator, 5.7
Personnel hoist, 1.1.2
Phase I
definition of, Section 1.3
operation, 2.27.3.1
Phase II
definition of, Section 1.3
operation, 2.27.3.3
Phase reversal and failure protection
electric elevator, 2.26.6
hydraulic elevator, 3.26.5
residence elevator, 5.3.1.18.6
Pipe design and formulas, 8.2.8.4
Piping, hydraulic elevator, 3.19
dumbwaiter, 7.3.5
rooftop elevator, 5.6.2.11
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.2.11
Piston
definition of, Section 1.3
Pit
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.1.2
electric elevator, 2.2
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.2
hand elevator, 4.3.2
hydraulic elevator, 3.2
inclined elevator, 5.1.3
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.2
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.2
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.2
screw-column elevator, 4.2.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.2
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.2
Pit, access to, 2.2.4
Pit, maintenance of, 8.6.4.7
Pit, pipes and ducts in, 2.8.2
Pit door, 2.2.4
Pit floor, strength
electric elevator, 2.1.2.3
hydraulic elevator, 3.1.1
Pit guard (*see* Counterweight, guarding of)
Plans (*see* Layout, information on)
Platform, car (*see* Car platform)
Platform guard, 2.15.9
Platform sill
clearance, 2.5.1.3
hinged, 2.15.16
Plunger (ram), 3.18.2
connection to car, 3.18.1
definition of, Section 1.3
design data and formulas, 8.2.8.1
dumbwaiter, 7.3.5
rooftop elevator, 5.6.2.10
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.2.10
telescopic, recycling operation, 3.26.7
Plunger follower guide, 3.18.2.7
Plunger head, 3.18.3.6
design data and formulas, 8.2.8.3
Plunger return, oil buffer, 2.22.4.5
Plunger stop, 3.18.4
acceptance inspection of, 8.10.3.2.2(s)
Portable equipment, 1.1.2
Position indicator
definition of, Section 1.3
Power, interruption of, 2.27.3.4
Power attachment to hand elevator, 4.3.20
Power closing of doors, 2.13.3
annual test of, 8.11.2.2.8
Power dumbwaiter, Part 7
Power dumbwaiter with automatic transfer device, 7.8
Power opening of doors, 2.13.2
five-year test of, 8.11.2.3.7
Power sidewalk elevator (*see* sidewalk elevator)
Power supply line disconnecting means
electric elevator, 2.26.4
hydraulic elevator, 3.26
sprinkler activation, 2.8.2
Power transmission member, escalator, 6.1.3.10
Powered platform, 1.1.2
Pressure switch, hydraulic elevator, 3.26.8
three-year inspection of, 8.11.3.3.2
Pressure vessels, 3.24.4
three-year inspection of, 8.11.3.3.2
Pressurization of hoistway, 2.1.4
Private residence
definition of, Section 1.3
Private residence elevator, 5.3
definition of, Section 1.3
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.2, 8.11.5.2
maintenance of, 8.6
Prohibited equipment (*see* Equipment, prohibited)
Projection, recess, and setback in hoistway enclosure, 2.1.6
Projection of equipment into hoistway, 2.11.5
Protection of space below hoistway
dumbwaiter, 7.1.6
electric elevator, 2.6
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.6
hand elevator, 4.3.1
hydraulic elevator, 3.6
inclined elevator, 5.1.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.6
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1

private residence elevator, 5.3.1.14
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.6
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.3
screw-column elevator, 4.2.4
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1.3
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.6
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.3
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.6
Protective linings, 2.14.2.1
Pull strap, 2.11.12.8
Pump relief valve, 3.19.3.2
Pump, sump, 2.2.2
Purpose of code, Section 1.2

QEI, 8.10.1.1(c), 8.11.1.1
Qualification of inspectors, 8.10.1.1(c), 8.11.1.1

Rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1
alteration to, 8.7.4.1
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.12, 8.11.5.11
maintenance of, 8.6
shipboard, 5.8.3
Rail joint, 2.23.7
Rail lubricant, 2.17.16
Rail section, 2.23.3
Rated load
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.2.3.1
dumbwaiter with automatic transfer device, 7.8.4
electric elevator, 2.16
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.12
escalator, 6.1.3.9
hand elevator, 4.3.14.1
hydraulic elevator, 3.16
inclined elevator, 5.1.13
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
moving walk, 6.2.3.10
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.10.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.8
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.16
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.8
screw-column elevator, 4.2.10
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.16
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.12.2
Rated load, formula for calculation of, 8.2.1
Rated load, freight elevator, 2.16.2
Rated load, limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.16
Rated load, passenger elevator, 2.16.1.1
Rated load performance, definition of, Section 1.3
Rated speed
definition of, Section 1.3
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.12.3
escalator, 6.1.4
hydraulic elevator, test of, 8.10.3.2.3(cc)
inclined elevator, end loading, 5.1.22.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.16.4
moving walk, 6.2.4
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.10.2
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.25.4
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.25.4
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.12.2
winding drum elevator, 2.24.1
Recall of elevator, 2.27.3.1
Recess in hoistway enclosure, 2.1.6
Reciprocating conveyor, 1.1.2
Recycling for multiple or telescopic plungers, 3.26.7
definition of, Section 1.3
Reduced stroke oil buffer, 2.22.4.1
Refastening of ropes of winding drum machines, 8.6.4.10
Reference code, standard, and specification, Part 9
Refuge space, top-of-car
electric elevator, 2.4.12
hydraulic elevator, 3.4.7
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
screw-column elevator, 4.2.2.4
Regenerated power, absorption of, 2.26.10
Releasing carrier, governor rope, 2.17.15
Relief valve, pump, 3.19.3.2
annual inspection of, 8.11.3.2.1
Reopening device, 2.13.5
Repair, 8.6.2
Replacement (*see* Alteration)
Residence elevator, 5.3
Resin, thermosetting, 2.20.9.6
Resocketing of ropes, of winding drum machines, 8.6.4.10
Restricted area, definition of, Section 1.3
Restrictor, door (*see* Unlocking zone)
Retiring cam, 2.12.3.3
Reversal stop device
escalator, 6.1.6.3.8
moving walk, 6.2.6.3.7
Revision to code, Preface
Rise (*see* Travel)
Riser, escalator step, 6.1.3.5.3
Roller guide shoe
car, 2.15.2
counterweight, 2.21.1.3
design of, 2.15.3
earthquake protection, 8.4.5
Rolling shutter device
escalator, 6.1.6.3.7
moving walk, 6.2.6.3.6
Rooftop elevator, 5.6
alteration to, 8.7.5.6
definition of, Section 1.3

hydraulic, 5.5.2
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.11, 8.11.5.10
Rope (*see also* Suspension means)
factor of safety, design data, 8.2.7
hitch plate, securing to beam, 2.9.3.3
hitch plate, securing to car frame, 2.15.13
hitch plate, securing to counterweight, 2.21.2.5
refastening and resocketing, 8.6.4.10
Rope, car-counterweight
definition of, Section 1.3
Rope, compensating (*see also* Compensating rope and chain)
definition of, Section 1.3
Rope, counterweight
definition of, Section 1.3
Rope, governor (*see* Governor rope)
Rope, suspension
definition of, Section 1.3
Rope data tag, 2.20.2
Rope equalizer, 2.20.5
definition of, Section 1.3
Rope socket
tapered, 2.20.9.4
wedge, 2.20.9.5
Rope sprocket drive
definition of, Section 1.3
Roped-hydraulic driving machine
definition of, Section 1.3
Roped-hydraulic elevator, Part 3
definition of, Section 1.3
Routine inspection and test (*see also* Inspection and test)
definition of (inspection and test, routine), Section 1.3
Runby, bottom
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, 7.1.4
electric elevator, maximum, 2.4.4, 2.4.5
electric elevator, minimum, counterweighted, 2.4.2
electric elevator, minimum, uncounterweighted, 2.4.3
hand elevator, 4.3.3
hydraulic elevator, 3.4
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.4
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.1
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.4
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.2
screw-column elevator, 4.2.2.2
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.4
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.2
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.4.1
Runby, top
definition of, Section 1.3
hydraulic elevator, 3.4
screw-column elevator, 4.2.2.2
Runway
definition of, Section 1.3

Safe lift, 2.16.7
Safeties
definition of, Section 1.3
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.4
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.4.1
electric elevator, 2.17
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.13
hand elevator, 4.3.15
hydraulic elevator, 3.17.1
inclined elevator, 5.1.14
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.17
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
private residence elevator, 5.3.1.11
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.9
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.17
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.9
screw-column elevator, 4.2.11
screw-column elevator safety nut, 4.2.12
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.17
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.9
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.13
Safeties, counterweight, 2.17.4
Safeties, duplex, 2.17.2
Safeties, inspection and test of
acceptance, 8.10.2.2
annual, 8.11.2.2.2
five-year, 8.11.2.3.1
location of inertia application test weight, Nonmandatory Appendix M
Safeties, painting of, 8.6.1.6.4
Safeties, stopping distance for, 2.17.3
Safety bulkhead, 3.18.3.4
definition of, Section 1.3
Safety edge, 2.13.5
Safety mechanism switch, 2.18.4
Safety nut, screw-column elevator, 4.2.12
engineering test, 8.3.10
Safety valve, 8.4.11.2
Scope of code, Section 1.1
Screw column, 4.2.15
definition of, Section 1.3
Screw column elevator, 4.2
alteration to, 8.7.4.2
inspection and test of, 8.10.5.9, 8.11.5.9
maintenance of, 8.6
Seal, governor, 2.18.3
Seismic requirements, 8.4
Seismic switch, 8.4.10.1.1
definition of, Section 1.3
Selector, guarding of, 2.10
Sequence operation, 2.13.6

Setback in hoistway enclosure, 2.1.6
Shackle rod, 2.20.9.2
Shaft (*see* Hoistway)
Shafter, 1.1.2
Shall
  definition of, Section 1.3
Sheave (*see also* Driving machine)
  car frame, 2.15.12
  counterweight, 2.21.2.4
  driving machine, 2.24
  governor rope, 2.18.7
  grooving and minimum diameter, 2.24.2
Sheave beam (*see* Beam, machinery and sheave)
Shipboard elevator, 5.8
  alteration to, 8.7.5.8
  definition of, Section 1.3
  hydraulic, 5.8.2
  inspection and test of, 8.10.5.8, 8.11.5.8
  rack-and-pinion, 5.8.3
Shipper rope operating device, 2.26.1.1
Should
  definition of, Section 1.3
Shutoff valve, sprinkler, 2.8.2
Shutoff valve, supply line, 3.19.3.1
  acceptance inspection of, 8.10.3.2.2(q)
SI unit, Preface
Side emergency exit
  electric elevator, 2.14.1.10
  hydraulic elevator, 3.14
  inclined elevator, 5.1.11.1
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.6
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.8
Sidewalk elevator, 5.5
  alteration to, 8.7.5.5
  definition of, Section 1.3
  hydraulic, 5.5.2
  inspection and test of, 8.10.5.1, 8.11.5.1
  maintenance of, 8.6
Sight guard
  definition of, Section 1.3
Sign
  corridor call station, Nonmandatory Appendix O
  dumbwaiter door, 7.2.3.4
  dumbwaiter entrance, 7.1.11.3
  emergency door, 2.11.1.1, 2.11.1.2
  escalator, 6.1.6.9
  freight elevator, 2.16.5
  hand elevator, 4.3.6.3
  moving walk, 6.2.6.8
Signaling device (*see* Emergency signaling device)
Sill, platform (*see* Platform sill)
Single blind hoistway, 2.11.1.1, 2.11.1.2
Skip hoist, 1.1.2
Skirt obstruction device, escalator, 6.1.6.3.6
Skirt panel, escalator, 6.1.3.3.6
  clearance to step, 6.1.3.3.5
  maintenance of, 8.6.8.4
Skylight and window, 2.1.5
Slack rope device
  annual inspection of, 8.11.2.2.4
Slack rope switch, 2.26.2
  annual test of, 8.11.2.2.9
  definition of, Section 1.3
Sleeving, definition of, Section 1.3
Sling (*see* Car frame)
Smoke, control of, 2.1.4
Smoke detector, 2.27.3.2
  activating sprinkler, 2.8.2
  escalator, 6.1.6.8
  moving walk, 6.2.6.7
Special emergency service (*see* Firefighters' service)
Special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7
  alteration to, 8.7.5.7
  definition of, Section 1.3
  inspection and test of, 8.10.5.6, 8.11.5.6
  maintenance of, 8.6
Specification, reference, Part 9
Speed, rated (*see* Rated speed)
Speed governor (*see* Governor)
Splicing of suspension rope, 8.6.2.5
Spring buffer (*see also* Buffer), 2.22.3
  definition of (buffer, spring), Section 1.3
  where permitted, 2.22.1.1
Spring buffer stroke (*see also* Elevator), 2.22.3.1
  definition of (buffer, spring stroke), Section 1.3
Spring return oil buffer, 2.22.4.5
Sprinklers in hoistway and machine room, 2.8.2
Stage lift, 1.1.2
Stanchion
  rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.15.2
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.15.2
Standard, reference, Part 9
Standby lighting, car, 2.14.7.1
Standby power, 2.27.2
  connection to alarm, 2.27.1
Standby power, inspection and test of
  annual, 8.11.2.2.7
  five-year, 8.11.2.3.5
Starting switch
  escalator, 6.1.6.2.1
  moving walk, 6.2.6.2.1
Static switching
  definition of, Section 1.3
Step, escalator, 6.1.3.5
  clearance to skirt panel, 6.1.3.3.5
  demarcation light, 6.1.6.7
  factor of safety, 6.1.3.10
  level, 6.1.6.3.11
  lighting, 6.1.7.2
  missing, 6.1.6.5
  number of flat, 6.1.3.6.5
Step lateral displacement device, escalator, 6.1.6.3.14

Step level device, escalator, 6.1.6.3.11
Step upthrust device, escalator, 6.1.6.3.9
Step wheel track, escalator, 6.1.3.8
Stop motion switch, 2.25.3.5
Stop ring, 3.18.4
  acceptance inspection of, 8.10.3.2.5(c)
Stop switch, elevator (*see also* Emergency stop button)
  emergency, 2.26.2
  in-car, 2.26.2
  machinery space, 2.7.3.5
  pit, 2.2.6
  top-of-car, 2.26.2
Stop switch in machinery space
  escalator, 6.1.6.3.5
  moving walk, 6.2.6.3.5
Stopped handrail device
  escalator, 6.1.6.4
  moving walk, 6.2.6.4
Stopping distance
  car and counterweight safety, inclined elevator, 8.2.11
  gravity, 8.2.4
Stroke, oil buffer (*see* Oil buffer stroke)
Stroke, spring buffer (*see* Spring buffer stroke)
Sub-post car frame, 2.15.4
Sump and sump pump, 2.2.2
Supply line shutoff valve, 3.19.3.1
  acceptance inspection of, 8.10.3.2.2(q)
Supply piping, 3.19
  definition of, Section 1.3
  dumbwaiter, 7.3.5
  rooftop elevator, 5.6.2.11
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.2.11
Support, moving walk treadway, 6.2.3.9
Supports and foundations (*see* Beam, machinery and sheave)
Suspended ceiling, in elevator car, 2.14.1.5
Suspension means
  dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.6
  dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.6
  electric elevator, 2.20
  elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.16
  hand elevator, 4.3.16
  hydraulic elevator, 3.20
  inclined elevator, 5.1.16
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.20
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
  private residence elevator, 5.3.1.12
  private residence elevator, guarding of, 5.3.1.6
  rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.19
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.19
  special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.14
Suspension means, fastening, 2.20.9
Suspension means, splicing and replacing, 8.6.2.5
Suspension rope (*see* Rope and Suspension means)
Suspension rope equalizer, 2.20.5
Swing type entrance, 2.11.13
  combination slide and swing, 2.11.13.1
  double swing, 2.11.2.3
  location of, 2.11.4
Switch key, firefighters' service, 2.27.8
Switch, pressure, hydraulic elevator, 3.26.8
Symbol, operating device, 2.26.12

Tandem operation
  definition of, Section 1.3
  escalator, 6.1.6.6.6
  moving walk, 6.2.6.6
Tank, hydraulic elevator, 3.24
  dumbwaiter, 7.3.5
  earthquake protection, 8.4.11.6
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.2.11
  maintenance of, 8.6.5.1, 8.6.5.2, 8.6.5.5, 8.6.5.6
  rooftop elevator, 5.6.2.15
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.2.1
Tapered rope socket, 2.20.9.4
Telephone, in car, 2.27.1
Telescopic plunger, recycling operation, 3.26.7
Temporary elevator, 5.10
Terminal landing
  definition of, Section 1.3
Terminal stopping device
  dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.11
  dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.10
  electric elevator, 2.25
  elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.21.1
  hydraulic elevator, 3.25
  inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
  inclined elevator, end loading, 5.1.22.4
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, electric, 5.2.1.25
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, hydraulic, 5.2.2.12
  private residence elevator, electric, 5.3.1.17
  private residence elevator, hydraulic, 5.3.2.3
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.14
  rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.24
  rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.16
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.16
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.24
  special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.19
Terminal stopping device, emergency
  definition of, Section 1.3
Test, engineering and type, 8.3
Test and inspection (*see* Inspection and test), 8.10, 8.11
Thermosetting resin embedment medium, 2.20.9.5
Three-year inspection and test (*see* Periodic inspection and test)
Threshold comb
  definition of, Section 1.3

Threshold plate (*see* Combplate)
definition of, Section 1.3
Tie-down (*see* Compensating rope and chain)
Tie rod, 2.21.1.2
design of, 2.21.2
Tiering machine, 1.1.2
Tiller rope used for connection to safety, 2.17.12
Top car clearance (*see* Clearance, top car)
Top emergency exit
earthquake protection, 8.4.4.1
electric elevator, 2.14.1.5
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.10.4
hydraulic elevator, 3.14
inclined elevator, 5.1.11.1
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.14
material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.6
screw-column elevator, 4.2.8
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.10.4
Top-of-car operating device
dumbwaiter, electric, 7.2.12
dumbwaiter, hydraulic, 7.3.11.1
electric elevator, 2.26.1.4
hydraulic elevator, 3.26.2
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.26
rooftop elevator, electric, 5.6.1.25.3
rooftop elevator, hydraulic, 5.6.2.17.1
shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
sidewalk elevator, electric, 5.5.1.25.3
sidewalk elevator, hydraulic, 5.5.2.17.2, 5.5.2.17.3
Traction, 2.24.2.3
Traction elevator (*see* Electric elevator)
Transfer device (*see* Automatic transfer device)
Transom, 2.11.7
definition of, Section 1.3
Travel
definition of, Section 1.3
Travel, extreme limit of, 2.23.8
Traveling cable, 2.26.4
definition of, Section 1.3
inclined elevator, 5.1.7.1
Tread, escalator step, 6.1.3.5.5
Treadway
definition of, Section 1.3
Treadway, moving walk
belt type, 6.2.3.6
pallet type, 6.2.3.5
slope, 6.2.3.1
support, 6.2.3.9
Tripping speed, governor, 2.18.2
Truck zone
definition of, Section 1.3
operation in, 2.26.1.6
Truck zoning device, definition of, Section 1.3
Truss, escalator, 6.1.3.7
alteration of, 8.7.6.1.4
factor of safety, 6.1.3.10
protection against fire, 6.1.2
Type A safety (*see also* Safeties)
identification and classification, 2.17.5
limits of use, 2.17.8.1
location of inertia application test weight, Nonmandatory Appendix M
Type B safety (*see also* Safeties)
identification and classification, 2.17.5
stopping distance, design data, and formulas, 8.2.6
Type C safety (*see also* Safeties)
buffer switch, 2.26.2
identification and classification, 2.17.5
limits of use, 2.17.8.2
Type test, 8.3

Underslung car frame, 2.15.4
vertical clearances for, 2.4.8
Unlocking device, hoistway door, 2.12.6
Unlocking zone
definition of, Section 1.3
locking door out of service, 2.11.6
restricted opening of doors, 2.12.5

Valley break
definition of, Section 1.3
Valve, supply piping, and fitting, 3.19
dumbwaiter, 7.3.5
earthquake protection, 8.4.11.3
limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.5.2.8
maintenance of, 8.6.5.1, 8.6.5.2, 8.6.5.5, 8.6.5.6
rooftop elevator, 5.6.2.11
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.2.11
Ventilation
freight car, 2.14.3.3
hoistway, 2.1.4
machine room, 2.7.5
passenger car, 2.14.2.3
Vertical burn test, 8.3.7
Vertical clearance (*see* Clearance, vertical)
Vertical lifting cover
rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.11.4
sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.11.4
Vertical reciprocating conveyor, 1.1.2
Vertical slide type entrance, 2.11.12
Vertically sliding door or gate, 2.14.4.7
Vision panel, car, 2.14.2.5
Vision panel, hoistway door
electric elevator, 2.11.7.1
elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.9.3
inclined elevator, 5.1.8.1
Volatile memory, 8.4.10.1.3(h)
definition of, Section 1.3

Waiver, Section 1.2
Weatherproof
  definition of, Section 1.3
Weatherproofing
  inclined elevator, 5.1.7.2
  outdoor escalator, 6.1.8.1
  outdoor moving walk, 6.2.8.1
  rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.8
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.8
Wedge rope socket, 2.20.9.5
Welding
  alteration and repair, 8.6.2.2
  electric elevator, 8.8
  hydraulic elevator plungers and cylinders, 3.18.5
  hydraulic elevator valve, piping and fitting, 3.19.5
  inclined elevator, 5.1.1.2
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.30
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.2
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.18
  rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.27
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.20
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.28
Wharf ramp, 1.1.2
Width
  escalator, 6.1.3.2
  escalator step, 6.1.3.5.2
  moving walk, 6.2.3.7
  moving walk, definition of, Section 1.3
Winding drum machine (*see also* Driving machine)
  final terminal stopping device, 2.25.3.5
  limitation of use, 2.24.1
  material and grooving, 2.24.2.1
  refastening of ropes, 8.6.4.10
  securing of rope to, 2.20.6
  slack rope switch, 2.26.2
  spare rope turns on drum, 2.20.7
Window
  definition of, Section 1.3
Window and skylight, 2.1.5
Wire rope (*see* Rope and Suspension means)
Wiring (*see also* Electrical equipment)
  dumbwaiter, 7.1.8
  electric elevator, 2.8.1
  elevator used for construction, 5.10.1.21.3
  escalator, 6.1.7.4
  hydraulic elevator, 3.8
  inclined elevator, 5.1.1
  limited-use/limited-application elevator, 5.2.1.8
  material lift with automatic transfer device, 7.9.1
  moving walk, 6.2.7.4
  private residence elevator, 5.3.1.18.4
  rack-and-pinion elevator, 4.1.3
  rooftop elevator, 5.6.1.8
  screw-column elevator, 4.2.6
  shipboard elevator, 5.8.1
  sidewalk elevator, 5.5.1.8
  special purpose personnel elevator, 5.7.19
Working platform on top of car, 2.14.1.7
Working pressure, hydraulic elevator, 3.19.1.2
  acceptance inspection of, 8.10.3.2.2(m)
  definition of, Section 1.3

Yield strength
  definition of, Section 1.3

A17.1 Elevators and Escalators

INTERPRETATIONS
No. 28

July 2004–June 2006

THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS
THREE PARK AVENUE • NEW YORK, NY 10016

INTERPRETATIONS NO. 28

July 2004 through June 2006

INTRODUCTION

As a service to persons who use the A17.1 Code for enforcement or as a guide, the A17 Committee renders interpretations of the requirements upon request. The Preface to the Code explains the procedure for requesting interpretations.

This booklet includes the interpretations which were issued by the A17 Committee from July 2004 through June 2006. Subsequent interpretations will be included with each addenda and new edition of the Code.

APPLICABILITY OF INTERPRETATIONS

Each interpretation applies to the edition and supplements listed for that inquiry. Many of the Rules on which the interpretations have been made have been revised in later editions or supplements. Where such revisions have been made, the interpretations may no longer be applicable to the revised Rule.

ASME procedures provide for reconsideration of these interpretations when or if additional information is available which might affect any interpretation. Further, persons aggrieved by any interpretation may appeal to the cognizant ASME committee or subcommittee. ASME does not "approve," "certify," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity.

INTERPRETATIONS INDEX

A subject index of interpretations is included in this booklet on pages 59 through 73. This index includes all interpretations that have been issued on the A17.1 Code since 1972.

The interpretations are listed in order by the subjects (Part, Section, Rule, etc.). The "Edition" refers to the edition or addenda of the Code on which the interpretation was rendered, e.g., "85a" refers to A17.1a–1985.

The "Bk. No." refers to the interpretations booklet number in which the interpretation was published. The interpretations that were issued from 1972 through 1979 were published in a separate book which may be purchased from ASME. Subsequent interpretations were issued in separate booklets which have accompanied each edition and supplement of the A17.1 Code since 1981. These are listed below.

Books 2 through 13 have also been compiled in a separate publication which may be purchased from ASME.

Number	Dates Interpretations Were Issued	Edition or Supplement
1	1972 through 1979	. . .
2	June 1979 through September 1980	A17.1–1981
3	September 1980 through December 1981	A17.1a–1982
4	January 1982 through December 1982	A17.1b–1983
5	January 1983 through December 1983	A17.1–1984
6	January 1984 through September 1984	A17.1a–1985
7	October 1984 through April 1985	A17.1b–1985
8	May 1985 through October 1985	A17.1c–1986
9	November 1985 through April 1986	A17.1d–1986
10	May 1986 through October 1986	A17.1e–1987
11	November 1986 through April 1987	A17.1–1987
12	May 1987 through April 1988	A17.1a–1988
13	May 1988 through May 1989	A17.1b–1989
14	June 1989 through May 1990	A17.1–1990
15	June 1990 through May 1991	A17.1a–1991
16	June 1991 through May 1992	A17.1b–1992
17	June 1992 through May 1993	A17.1–1993
18	June 1993 through May 1994	A17.1a–1994
19	June 1994 through May 1995	A17.1b–1995
20	June 1995 through May 1996	A17.1–1996
21	June 1996 through May 1997	A17.1a–1997
22	June 1997 through May 1998	A17.1b–1998
23	June 1998 through March 2000	A17.1–2000
24	April 2000 through May 2001	A17.1a–2002
25	June 2001 through June 2002	A17.1b–2003
26	July 2002 through June 2003	A17.1–2004
27	July 2003 through June 2004	A17.1a–2005
28	July 2004 through June 2006	A17.1–2007

FORM AND ARRANGEMENT

Inquiry Number. The interpretations are listed in the order of the assigned serial numbers. The first two digits represent the year in which the interpretations were received.

Subject. The primary requirement and subject of the interpretation is listed for each inquiry.

Edition. For each interpretation, the edition and addenda, if any, on which the interpretation was rendered are listed.

Question. The questions are taken verbatim from the original inquiries except for editorial corrections necessary to improve clarity.

Answer. The answers are those approved by the A17 Committee, except for editorial corrections necessary to improve clarity.

Figures. Where the original inquiry included a plan or drawing that was essential for the understanding of the interpretation, a figure has been included.

Approval Dates. The date of approval by the A17 Committee is listed for each interpretation.

Inquiry: 02-26 (Reconsideration)

Subject: Requirement 2.2.4.2, Access to Pits

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1a–2002

Question: Requirement 2.2.4.2, regarding pit ladder width, states that "When unavoidable obstructions are encountered, the width shall be permitted to be decreased to less than 400 mm (16 in.)." Regarding the clear distance behind the pit ladder rungs, the requirement states that "When unavoidable obstructions are encountered, this distance may be reduced to 115 mm (4.5 in.)."

Are the following considered to be unavoidable obstructions:

(a) pit or hoistway wall/divider beams?
(b) elevator leveling devices, electrical raceways, ducts, conduit, pit switches, etc.?
(c) governor tension sheave?
(d) guide rail location or position?
(e) guide rail bracket?
(f) hoistway landing sill/struts?
(g) safety pickup arm?
(h) cab, platform, or sling components?

Answer: Yes, where the required dimensions cannot be provided.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: June 24, 2002

A17 Standards Committee Reaffirmation: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 02-33

Subject: Requirement 8.6.5.8, Safety Bulkhead

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1a–2002

Question: Requirement 8.6.5.8 indicates conformance to 3.18.3.4 or you shall provide the car with safeties conforming to 3.17.1. Does this requirement allow only these types of safeties, or could other types of safeties be utilized (i.e., 3.17.3, Plunger Gripper)?

Answer: At the time 8.6.5.8 was published in A17.1–2000, the Code required an installation to comply with 3.18.3.4 or provide safeties conforming to 3.17.1. While a plunger gripper could be considered to address the intended safety requirement, text at that time did not address the option. (See also Inquiry 96-79). A subsequent change (A17.1a–2005 addenda to A17.1–2004) has been accepted to allow use of a plunger gripper to satisfy this requirement as follows:

> **8.6.5.8 Safety Bulkhead.** Hydraulic cylinders installed below ground shall conform to 3.18.3.4, or the elevator shall conform to 8.6.5.8(a) or 8.6.5.8(b):
> *(a)* the elevator shall be provided with car safeties conforming to 3.17.1 and guide rails, guide rail supports, and fastenings conforming to 3.23.1; or
> *(b)* the elevator shall be provided with a plunger gripper conforming to 3.17.3. The plunger gripper shall grip the plunger when the applicable maximum governor tripping speed in Table 2.18.2.1 is achieved.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 03-11

Subject: Requirements 8.7.2 and 2.26.3, Alterations to Electric Elevators (Overlays)

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1a–2002

Background: Sometimes provided is a microprocessor-controlled overlay system to upgrade the dispatching for an existing relay logic elevator system, whose original controllers are retained. The features available on an overlay system include fire service, hospital service, emergency power, security, and remote monitoring.

Question (1): Is an overlay considered to be an alteration to the controller, and therefore required to comply with 8.7.2.27.4?

Answer (1): When an overlay does not result in a change in the type of operation control or change in type of motion control, it is not an alteration.

Question (2): Is the addition of an overlay considered to be a change in type of operation control, thereby triggering the requirements of 8.7.2.27.6?

Answer (2): See answer to Question (1). See also reply to Inquiry 93-15.

Question (3):

(a) If an overlay interfaces with the fire service circuitry on the existing controllers, does the entire installation have to comply with the requirements of 8.7.2.28?

(b) If relays are used on the overlay to bypass an EPD (in-car or emergency stop switch during Fire Phase I return operation), does this circuitry have to comply with the requirements of 2.26.3?

Answer (3):

(a) Yes.

(b) This is not addressed by the A17.1 Code.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 03-15 (Reconsideration)

Subject: Requirements 2.27.3.1.6(k) and 2.27.3.2.5, Phase I Emergency Recall Operation

Edition: A17.1–2000

Background: An elevator is placed on Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by a fire alarm initiating device at the designated level. Phase I recall to the alternate level is completed. At this point the Fire Recall key switch(es) is placed in the "ON" position and the elevator is brought to the designated level. The fire alarm initiating device at the designated level is not reset. The Phase II Fire Operation key switch is in the "OFF" position and the car is at the designated landing.

Question (1): The Fire Recall key switch(es) is placed in the "OFF" position.
(a) Does the elevator return to the alternate level?
(b) Does the elevator remain at the designated level?

Answer (1):
(a) Yes.
(b) No.

Question (2): Assuming only one Fire Recall switch, the Fire Recall key switch in the elevator lobby is rotated to the "RESET" then "OFF" position.
(a) Does the elevator return to the alternate level?
(b) Does the elevator remain at the designated level?

Answer (2):
(a) Yes.
(b) No.

A17 Committee Approval: October 1, 2003

A17 Standards Committee Reaffirmation: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 03-17

Subject: Requirements 2.27.3.2 and 8.4.10.1.3, Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by Fire Alarm Initiating Devices Seismic Operation of Elevators

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1a–2002

Background: A 40-story high-rise office building with 24 passenger elevators and three service elevators is a Seismic Zone 1 building. Elevators are being upgraded to conform to A17.1–2000 requirements.

It has been decided that a new safety feature be added to the elevators. It consists of a heat detector installed in the machine room, which is intended to supply an input signal to the seismic recall portion of the elevator controller. No seismic switches or displacement switches are installed in this Seismic Zone 1 building. The seismic recall feature is being installed strictly for this purpose.

The intent of this configuration is as follows:

(a) Phase I Emergency Recall is initiated and the elevators are in the process of being recalled.

(b) A fire has activated the heat sensor in the machine room.

(c) Phase I recall will be interrupted, and the elevator will stop at the first available landing, open its doors, and remove itself from service.

(d) This only affects elevators that are actively under Phase I recall.

Question: According to the Code, the activation of an elevator-related fire alarm initiating device shall cause all associated elevators to return nonstop to the designated or alternate level.

Does a configuration of the seismic recall controller, activated by a heat sensor in the machine room, which interrupts Phase I recall and directs the elevator to the nearest available landing, comply with the requirements of 2.27.3.2?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 03-19

Subject: Requirement 8.4.10.1.3 and Rule 2409.1(c), Emergency Operation and Signaling Devices

Edition: A17.1–2000 and A17.1–1996, respectively

Background: Following actuation of an earthquake protective device, the Code requires the car to proceed to a landing and open the doors, unless the car is on Fire Phase II operation, in which case the doors must conform to the requirements of Fire Phase II.

However, some feel that if the car is away from the designated or alternate fire return floor, and a Fire Phase I input is received from a smoke detector at a floor while the car is responding to the earthquake signal (e.g., a continuously actuated counterweight displacement switch), the doors should remain closed at the landing where the car stops unless opened with constant pressure on the door open button, due to the fact that the fire may be located at that landing.

Question (1): Does the Code require the door operation described in the paragraph above?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Does the Code permit the door operation described in the paragraph above?

Answer (2): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 03-51 (Reconsideration)

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.2.4(a), Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to an Alternate Level

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: Requirement 2.27.3.2.4(a) states, "the activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(a) or 2.27.3.2.2(a) that is located at the designated level, shall cause all elevators serving that level to be recalled to an alternate level, unless a 'FIRE RECALL' switch is already in the 'ON' position."

But what should happen in each of the following scenarios:

(a) Either the main or additional Phase I Emergency Recall switch is momentarily turned to the "ON" position (and then back to the "OFF" position), and the car goes into Phase I Emergency Recall operation. Then, with both Phase I switches in the "OFF" position, the main floor fire alarm initiating device is actuated.

(b) Either the main or additional Phase I Emergency Recall switch is turned to the "ON" position and remains in the "ON" position, and the car goes into Phase I recall operation. Then, with the Phase I switch still in the "ON" position, a fire alarm initiating device at the designated level is actuated. After that point, the Phase I switch is turned to the "OFF" position.

In either of these two scenarios, should the car remain at the designated level until the three-position Phase I switch is turned to the "RESET" position, or should it respond to the FAID?

Answer: Operation of the Phase I switch has initiated Phase I recall to the designated level. The fire alarm initiating device cannot initiate Phase I recall to the alternate level as Phase I is already in effect.

A17 Committee Approval: January 14, 2004

A17 Standards Committee Reaffirmation: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 03-58

Subject: Requirement 6.1.7.3.2, Fastening of Access Plates

Edition: A17.1–2000

Background: The Code states in 6.1.7.3.2 that "Access plates at the top and bottom landings shall be securely fastened." Some inspectors have been asking the installing contractors to "Bolt Down" these plates. Some manufacturers provide plates sitting flush with the floor and held in place by gravity. The means to lift the plate is either the installation of a lifting hook or a small hole in the front center of the plate that allows the mechanic to put a hook into in order to lift the plate.

Question (1): Do access plates, sitting flush with the floor, held in place by gravity only, meet the requirements of 6.1.7.3.2 for secure fastening?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Must such plates be bolted or locked in place to meet 6.1.7.3.2?

Answer (2): No. Any method to securely fasten the access plate is acceptable.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-09

Subject: Requirements 2.15.9.3 and 5.3.1.9.2(b), Platform Guards (Aprons)

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): In 2.15.9.3, with regards to the guard being bent back 60 deg and no more than 75 deg, is there a length required for the bent section?

Answer (1): This is not addressed in the Code.

Question (2): In 5.3.1.9.2(b), with regards to the 50 mm (2 in.), does this mean that the straight vertical face is 2 in. long or, the length is the depth of the zone where the door is unlocked plus 2 in.?

Answer (2): The length of the straight vertical face is the depth of the zone where the door is unlocked plus 2 in.

Question (3): Does the lowest point of travel mean sitting at first floor (lowest point of normal travel) or sitting on the bottom of the pit (lowest possible point of travel)?

Answer (3): Travel is defined. The lowest point of travel is the bottom terminal land.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-11

Subject: Requirement 2.13.4.2.3, Door Force

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): Does the term "from rest" mean from a motor stalled situation?

Answer (1): No, "from rest" is when the doors are stalled.

Question (2): Does the term "from rest" mean from an "OFF" to an "ON" activation of the closer?

Answer (2): No, see answer to Question (1).

Question (3): Does this requirement preclude the use of ramping current edges, which do not permit the door to stop but instantaneously reverse when an obstacle occurs within one-third and two-thirds of the travel?

Answer (3): No; however, compliance with 8.10.2.2.1(h) shall still be demonstrated.

Question (4): Does this requirement outline the only means and method of testing permitted by the inspection authority?

Answer (4): No, 2.13.4.2.3 specifies the maximum force and region of travel in which it is measured. See also 8.10.2.2.1(h) for inspection requirements and procedures that may be used via reference to the Inspections Guide.

Question (5): Are these requirements to identify means of testing?

Answer (5): No. See answer to Question (4).

Question (6): What do you tell an inspector who uses the requirements as the only means and method of testing?

Answer (6): See answers to above questions.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

In addition, the Committee notes that a technical revision (TN 05-00401) has been opened to further review this item.

Inquiry: 04-12

Subject: Requirements 2.17.17 and 2.22.4.10.3, Compensating Rope Tie-Down

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1a–2002

Question: Requirement 2.17.17 required compensating rope tie-down for rated speeds greater than 3.5 m/s (700 ft/min). However, this requirement was deleted in the 2002 Addenda, although it is still referenced in 2.22.4.10.3. Is compensating rope tie-down still required for rated speeds greater than 3.5 m/s (700 ft/min)? If so, where in the Code is this Requirement now being addressed?

Answer: Yes, tie-down compensation is required for speeds greater than 3.5 m/s (700 ft/min). The requirement for the tie-down compensation was moved from 2.17.17 in the A17.1–2000 edition to 2.21.4.2 in the A17.1a–2002 addenda.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-13

Subject: Requirements 3.4.2.2, 3.4.4, and 3.4.7, Top of Car Clearance for Hydraulic Elevator

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: In a proposed sloped roof project it is believed that the requirements for the required area of refuge have been exceeded. Does meeting and exceeding all minimum requirements of Part 3, requirements 3.4.2.2, 3.4.4, and 3.4.7, over only a portion of the car, comply with the intent of the Code for clearance versus the general definition of top-of-car clearance as defined in Part 1, Section 1.3?

Answer: No. There are no conflicts between the Code requirements stated and the definition. The lowest point of a sloped ceiling over the car enclosure establishes the lowest point of the overhead structure and is the height of the horizontal plane as stated in 3.4.7. The situation described does not meet the Code.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-14

Subject: Part 8, General Requirements, Scope

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1a–2002

Question (1): Does this part require *retroactive* system upgrades for elevators installed or modernized before the date of the standard publication if no work other than regular maintenance procedures are performed? Example: 8.6.5.8 safety bulkhead requirements for below-ground cylinders with no evidence of unexplained oil loss or other voluntary upgrading installed prior to 1971 would require unjustified renewal of cylinders or system alterations using a car safety device.

Answer (1): Yes. See 8.6.1.1.3.

Question (2): If the response is "yes," what is the purpose of A17.3–2002, paragraph 4.3.3(a)?

Answer (2): A17.3 is a stand-alone Code. See General paragraph of the A17.3 Preface.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-15

Subject: 6.1.3.5.6, Step Demarcation

Edition: A17.1b–2003, addenda to A17.1–2000

Question (1): Does "sides of the step" mean along both the step tread surface edge and the step riser surface edge?

Answer (1): The Code does not define the "sides of the step."

Question (2): If the demarcation runs along the side of the step tread surface and stops at the juncture between the tread and riser at the step side, is the demarcation in compliance with the rule?

Answer (2): See answer to Question (1).

Question (3): If the demarcation runs along the side of the step tread surface and continues down along the side of the step riser, is the demarcation in compliance with the rule?

Answer (3): See answer to Question (1).

Question (4): If the answer to Question (2) is "yes," will the rule be modified to clarify?

Answer (4): A technical revision has been issued to review this matter.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-16

Subject: Rule 110.10, Landing Sill Guards

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question (1): Does Rule 100.1b(2)(a) apply to the strength of these guard plates?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): If not, does A17.1 address the strength these guard plates shall withstand?

Answer (2): No, only the thickness is specified.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-18 (Reconsideration)

Subject: Requirement 2.1.6, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks in Hoistway Enclosure

Edition: A17.1–2000

Background: The rear wall of a new hoistway for an observation elevator includes a glass and aluminum window system. The window system is set into the wall toward the outside of the hoistway greater than 4 in. The bottom ledge is beveled at 75 deg with the horizontal. The window mullions project less than 4 in. away from the glass toward the inside of the hoistway.

Question (1): Is the window system a "recess" and therefore not permitted by 2.1.6.2(a), or does this window system comply with 2.1.6.2(d) as a "setback" assuming it is provided with a proper bevel at the bottom?

Answer (1): The intent of the terms "recess" versus "setback" is unclear, as the requirement was originally developed in the 1950s.

Question (2): Must the beveling of a setback begin at the edge of the hoistway wall or may it create a ledge up to 4 in.?

Answer (2): The entire horizontal surface of a setback must be beveled.

Question (3): Could you define a recess and a setback?

Answer (3): The terms are not defined in A17.1.

Question (4): Is either definition dependent upon the recess or setback extending the full width of the hoistway?

Answer (4): See answer to Question (3).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

A17 Standards Committee Reaffirmation: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 04-20

Subject: Requirement 2.14.7.1.3, Car Lighting

Edition: A17.1–2000

Background: It is our understanding that the purpose of auxiliary lighting is to enable the elevator passengers to see the emergency functions contained on a car operating panel ("ALARM" button, "STOP" button, two-way communication device) in the event of a power failure. Since these items are generally located at 35 in. and below, the light intensity may be enough to pass the Code requirement but not aid the passenger in an emergency situation.

Question (1): What exactly is the auxiliary lighting meant to illuminate?

Answer (1): The auxiliary lighting is meant to provide general illumination in the car by providing not less than 2 lx at the specified point of measurement.

Question (2): If the alarm button is located at 35 in., should the illumination be tested at that height instead of 48 in.?

Answer (2): No. See response to Question (1).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-21

Subject: Requirements 2.26.2.21, 2.26.2.33, 2.27.3.3.1(m), 2.27.3.3.7, and Section 8.1

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question: The in-car stop switch is required to be either key operated or behind a locked cover in or adjacent to the car-operating panel. It is a Group 1 security device. The firefighters' stop switch is located behind a locked cover at the top of a car-operating panel. A key for a Group 3 security device accesses the firefighters' panel. Elevator personnel have access to devices of both security groups. Can the requirements for the in-car stop switch be met by the provision of the firefighters' stop switch?

Answer: No, the in-car stop switch is rendered inoperative during Phase I, the firefighters' emergency stop switch is not. Security levels for the two switches are also different.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-22

Subject: Requirement 3.7, Hydraulic Elevator Machine Rooms

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): Does the Code require 18 in. clearance all around the hydraulic machine?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): If the answer to Question (1) above is "no," how and where would the 18 in. requirement for maintenance clearances in 2.7.2.2 apply to hydraulic machine rooms?

Answer (2): The 18 in. for maintenance clearance is determined per the design of the unit and the manufacturers recommendations of where maintenance access is needed.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 23, 2004

Inquiry: 04-23

Subject: Requirements 2.12.7 and 8.7.2.11.4, Hoistway Access Switches

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1a–2002

Background: When the car speed exceeds 150 ft/min, 2.12.7.1.1 requires hoistway access switches at the lowest landing for access to the pit (when a separate pit access door is not provided), and at the top landing for access to the top of the car. Also, for elevators with a speed of 150 ft/min or less, a hoistway access switch is required to be provided at the top landing when the distance from the top of the car to the landing sill exceeds 35 in. when the car platform is level with the landing immediately below the top landing. There seems to be an implied prohibition against providing the upper access switch at a location other than the top landing, although this was permitted in earlier editions of the A17.1 Code.

Question: If hoistway access switches are not required by the Code for a particular installation, but are provided voluntarily, is it permissible for the upper access switch to be located at the second landing, for example, rather than at the top landing, particularly on a modernization where this may have been the case to begin with?

Answer: For elevators that are not required to comply with 2.12.7.1, the landing location of the access switch is not specified in A17.1. Requirements 2.12.7.2 and 2.12.7.3 apply to all access switches. Requirement 8.7.2.11.4 applies only to the installation of access switches, not the alteration of access switches.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-24

Subject: Requirement 8.7.2.27.5, Change in Type of Motion Control; 8.7.2.27.6, Change in Type of Operation Control

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): When replacing a mechanical selector on existing elevator with a digital selector that does not change any controller functions, is this considered a change in either motion or operation control and covered by 8.7.2.27.5 or 8.7.2.27.6?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): If the answer is "yes," then does this installation have to meet the requirements of Section 2.27, the "emergency operation and signaling devices" including fire service?

Answer (2): See response to Question (1).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-25

Subject: Requirement 7.5, Electric Material Lifts Without ATD (Signage)

Edition: A17.1–2004

Background: There appears to be some contradiction or possibly duplication in the signs that must be provided on or within material lifts.

Requirement 7.5.3 indicates that all of Section 2.16 applies (including sign requirements) except as modified by 7.5.3.1 and 7.5.3.2, none of which alter 2.16.3 or 2.16.5. I would therefore assume all are required. Requirement 7.5.3.4 requires additional signs.

Table 04-25 summarizes my interpretation of the required signs, capacity, and data plates.

Table 04-25

		Material Lift							
		Type A Class of Loading			Type B Class of Loading				
No. (#)	Sign by Rule	A	B	C3	A	B	C1	C2	C3
1	2.16.3.1 — In-car capacity	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
2	2.16.3.1 — X-head data	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
3	2.16.5.1.1(a) — In-car Class A	X	...	...	X	...	...	...	...
4	2.16.5.1.1(b) — In-car Class B	...	X	...	...	X	...	...	...
5	2.16.5.1.1(c) — In-car Class C1	...	...	...	...	...	X	...	...
6	2.16.5.1.1(d) — In-car Class C2	...	...	...	...	...	...	X	...
7	2.16.5.1.1(e) — In-car Class C3	...	...	X	...	...	...	...	X
8	2.16.5.1.2 — In-car, no passengers	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
9	2.16.7.5 — In-car, one-piece load	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
10	7.5.3.3 — In-car, no riders	X	X	X	...	...	...	...	...
11	7.5.3.4(a) — In-car, maximum load	...	...	...	X	X	X	X	X
12	7.5.3.4(b) — Landings and car authorized personnel	...	...	...	X	X	X	X	X

Question (1): Does a Type B material lift require both a capacity plate and Maximum Load signs (#1 and #11 in Table 04-25)?

Answer (1): Yes.

Question (2): What is Maximum Load (#11)? I cannot find a definition.

Answer (2): Maximum load is only applicable on Class C2 loading. See 2.16.2.2.3(b) and 2.16.3.2.1(b).

Question (3): Does a Type B material lift require both a sign restricting passengers (#8) and signs limiting the lift to authorized personnel (#12)?

Answer (3): Yes.

Question (4): Does "at each entrance or gate" in #11 apply to inside or outside the car, or both?

Answer (4): Both.

Question (5): Does a Type A material lift require both a sign restricting passengers (#8) and sign restricting riders (#10)?

Answer (5): No riders sign is required.

Question (6): Are there any errors in Table 04-25 that I have provided? Please elaborate on where signs are required and where signs are not required.

Answer (6): It is beyond the scope of the committee to comment on the Table. See response to other questions.

Question (7): Sections 7.4, 7.5, and 7.6 do not contain a generic rule that says where the term "elevator" is used in a referenced requirement, it shall mean material lift as do Sections 7.1 and 7.2 for dumbwaiters. What does this mean in trying to apply the referenced rules?

Answer (7): The Code does not address this issue.

Question (8): Would it be correct to automatically make the "material lift" for "elevator" substitution and not apply rules specific to passenger elevators?

Answer (8): Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-27

Subject: Requirement 5.7.19, Operating Devices and Control Equipment

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1a–2002

Question: If inspection operation is not provided, does the controller need "car door bypass" and "hoistway door bypass" switches?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-28

Subject: Rules 211.3a(6) and 211.3c(1)(b); Requirements 2.27.3.1.6(f) and 2.27.3.3.1(b)

Edition: A17.1b–1995 and A17.1–1996 including through A17.1d–2000; A17.1–2000 including A17.1b–2003

Question: These Rules/Requirements state that all directional lanterns shall be extinguished and remain inoperative throughout Fire Phase I and II operation. However, it also states that position indicators in the car, at the designated level and at the central control station shall remain operative for fire department use. Since position indicators typically indicate direction as well as floor position, is it either required or permissible to keep the direction arrows, which are inherently part of the position indicator(s) that are located as specified in the referenced requirements, operative throughout fire service?

Answer: This is not addressed in the Code.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-29

Subject: Requirement 2.19.2, Protection Against Unintended Car Movement

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: Do the requirements of 2.19.2 apply when the elevator is parked at a landing under the following conditions?

(a) with the in-car inspection switch in the "ON" position?
(b) with the elevator on Independent Service?
(c) when the car is placed out of service and power is not turned off?
(d) when the car is on either "Phase I or II Firefighters' Emergency Operation"?
(e) when the elevator is on any of the following: automatic operation, hospital service, and car top inspection?

Answer:
(a) Yes.
(b) Yes.
(c) Yes.
(d) Yes.
(e) Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-30

Subject: Requirements 2.19.2.2(a)(4) and 2.19.1.2(a)(4), Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Movement Protection

Edition: A17.1–2000

Background: While testing a Rope Gripper (emergency brake), which when operated will stop an ascending overspeeding car or unintended movement from a landing, the controlling software for the unintended movement functioned in the following manner: The means to reset this device is done by manually removing power from the controller and turning the power back on.

Question: Does the term *manually reset* in 2.19.1.2(a)(4), where it states that "the detection means shall remain actuated until manually reset, and the car shall not start or run unless the detection means is reset," meet the requirement, when an unintentional loss of power resets the detection means?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-31

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.2.6, Heat Detectors

Edition: A17.1–2004

Background: Requirement 2.27.3.2.6 states that, when activated, heat detector [2.27.3.2.1(d)] in the machine room shall cause the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)] to illuminate intermittently only in a car(s) with equipment in that machine room.

Question (1): What are the required location(s) of the heat detectors that apparently should have been listed in 2.27.3.2.1(d) (e.g., machine room, hoistway, at each floor, etc.)?

Answer (1): There are no required locations for heat detectors in A17.1.

Question (2):
(a) Are these heat detectors required or permitted?
(b) Would a heat detector be required or permitted in a machine room without sprinklers?

Answer (2):
(a) Heat detectors are not required or prohibited.
(b) Heat detectors are not required or prohibited.

Question (3): Does the machine room heat detector that should have been listed in 2.27.3.2.1(d) necessarily cause the machine room sprinklers to activate, and if so, would not this also cause the main line power supply to be automatically disconnected, in accordance with 2.8.2.3.2, thereby preventing any type of response from the elevator?

Answer (3): This is outside the scope of A17.1.

Question (4): Assuming that the machine room heat detector that should have been listed in 2.27.3.2.1(d) does not cause the main line power supply to be automatically disconnected or the machine room sprinklers to activate, if this machine room heat detector activates but the smoke detector does not, aside from the requirement to flash the fire hat, how should the elevator respond (e.g., should it complete a Fire Phase I return, stop at the next floor and remain stopped, continue on normal operation, other)?

Answer (4): This is outside the scope of the current Code requirements.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-32

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.3.1

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1b–2003

Background: The second sentence of 2.27.3.3.1 reads as follows: "The door open and close buttons shall be labeled 'OPEN' and 'CLOSE.'"

Question (1): Does this mean the wording must be on the face of the button itself?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Can an applied label or engraved label be placed adjacent to the button on the car station?

Answer (2): Yes.

Question (3): Can the words be on the button bezel?

Answer (3): Yes.

Question (4): Usually ASME spells out what the character height of required wording is. Is there a requirement in the case of these "OPEN" and "CLOSE" labels?

Answer (4): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-33

Subject: Requirement 2.19.2, Protection Against Unintended Car Movement

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: Is protection against unintended car movement required to function on inspection operation?

Answer: Yes, see also Inquiry 04-29.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-34

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.3.1(c)

Edition: A17.1–2004

Background: This requirement states that door open and close buttons shall be provided for power-operated doors and located in the firefighters' operation panel.

Question (1): Now that the firefighters will be using the door open and close buttons behind the locked panel, are the standard, publicly accessible door open and close buttons in the car operating panel required to be disabled during Fire Phase II operation?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Now that the firefighters will be using the door open and close buttons behind the locked panel, are the standard, publicly accessible door open and close buttons in the car operating panel required to remain operative during Fire Phase II operation?

Answer (2): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-35

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.3.1(m)

Edition: A17.1–2004

Background: This requirement states that when the stop switch located in the firefighters' operating panel is turned to the "RUN" position from the "STOP" position, the car shall not move, except for leveling, until a call is entered.

Question (1): When the firefighters' stop switch is turned to the "RUN" position from the "STOP" position, if the car is within the leveling zone, is the car required to level into the floor?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Is the firefighters' stop switch required to be operative during all modes of operation? If the answer is "yes," please answer the following questions (assume that an individual who has access to the key for the firefighters' operation panel has that panel open in the following situations):

(a) If the firefighters' stop switch is activated during Fire Phase I recall, is it either permissible or required to resume Phase I recall when the switch is moved to the "RUN" position from the "STOP" position?

(b) If the firefighters' stop switch is moved from "STOP" to "RUN" during normal, automatic operation

(1) is its operation required to conform to the same operation as described in 2.27.3.3.1(m), or

(2) does the car return to the operation in effect at that time?

Answer (2): Yes.

(2)(a) Required.

(b)(1) No.

(b)(2) Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-36

Subject: Requirement 2.12.7.3, Hoistway Access Switches

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: Requirement 2.12.7.3 states, "The operation of the switch shall permit movement of the car with the hoistway door at this landing unlocked or not in the closed position, and with the car door or gate not in the closed position, subject to the requirements of 2.12.7.3.1 through 2.12.7.3.8." In the case of two openings at any floor where a hoistway access switch is installed, is it permissible to move the car on hoistway access with the car gate and/or hoistway door open at the entrance that does not have a hoistway access switch associated with it (e.g., if the top hoistway access switch is located adjacent to the front entrance, is it permissible to move the car with the rear car gate and/or top rear hoistway door open)?

Answer: No, see 2.12.7.2.1 and 2.12.7.3.1.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-37

Subject: Rule 211.3(a), Phase I Emergency Recall Operation

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question: For the following questions, assume the three-position Phase I key switch is located at the front entrance and the car is already stopped at the designated level with the rear doors open when a fire alarm initiating device at another floor is first actuated. Also assume that both front and rear doors are automatic power-operated horizontally-sliding doors.

(a) Is it permissible to close the rear doors before opening the front doors?

(b) Is it required to close the rear doors before opening the front doors?

(c) Is it permissible to render the rear door open button ineffective while the rear doors are in the process of closing [assume reduced kinetic energy during closing in accordance with Rule 112.4(a)]?

(d) Is it required to render the rear door open button ineffective while the rear doors are in the process of closing [assume reduced kinetic energy during closing in accordance with Rule 112.4(a)]?

Answer:

(a) Yes.

(b) No.

(c) No, see Rule 112.5.

(d) No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-38

Subject: Rule 211.3c(1)(g), Call Cancel Button

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question: This Rule states that when the call cancel button is activated, all registered calls shall be canceled and a traveling car shall stop at or before the next available landing.

In the case of a blind hoistway with "false floors" located at various points throughout for the purpose of position correction, is it permissible to stop the car at a false floor and wait there for the firefighter to enter a new car call? (Note: Assume there is no means by which to open the car door at these "false floors," and the car position indicator would most likely display an "X," or something else to that effect, when stopped at this location.)

Answer: Yes, see Inquiry 95-45.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-39

Subject: Requirement 5.3.1.8, Light in Car

Edition: A17.1–2004

Background: Requirement 5.3.1.8.3, Light in Car, requires a light in the car. It does not contain any language regarding the glass used in the light fixtures. Requirement 5.3.1.8.1, Car Enclosure, requires that glass used in elevator cars comply with 2.14.1.8. Requirement 2.14.1.8, Glass in Elevator Cars, provides requirements for panels of glass in enclosures and glass used to line walls or ceilings. It does not contain any language for glass in light fixtures. Requirement 2.14.7.3, Car Lighting Devices, requires glass used for lighting fixtures in electric elevators to comply with 2.14.1.8. Requirements 5.3.1.8.3 and 2.14.1.8 do not specifically cover glass in lighting fixtures and Section 5.3 does not refer to 2.14.7.3, which specifically provides requirements for glass in lighting fixtures.

Question: Are there requirements for the glass used in lighting fixtures on private residence elevators?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-40

Subject: Rule 210.4

Edition: A17.1–1996 including A17.1a–1997

Question: The scenario is an installation in which the elevator controller is provided with a separate stand alone isolation transformer. The controller is certified to the requirements of CSA-B44.1/ASME-A17.5.

(a) Is the stand alone isolation transformer required to have a separate certification, or

(b) Is the isolation transformer considered part of the controller and thus covered by the controller certification?

Answer:

(a) No. The transformer is not required to have a separate certification.

(b) At the manufacturer's option, the transformer can be considered separately or as part of the controller package for compliance with Rule 210.4(b).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-41

Subject: Requirement 210.4(b); Clause 20.1(a)(i)

Edition: A17.1–1996 including A17.1a–1997; CSA-B44.1/ASME A17.5–1996

Question: An installation where the required nameplate, indicating the respective device has been certified, was noted with CSA-B44.1 only. Does compliance with this rule and clause mean all labeling for electrical equipment must have "CSA-B44.1/ASME A17.5" reference on the label to indicate certification or can a label have "CSA-B44.1" or "ASME A17.5" as the reference identified on the label to meet the requirement?

Answer: A17.1 does not address the marking of the equipment. CAN/CSA-B44.1-96/ASME A17.5-1996 in 20.1(a)(i) requires that the equipment be marked with an indication of certification. Reference to "CSA-B44.1" and/or "ASME A17.5" is equivalent to referencing CAN/CSA-B44.1-96/ASME A17.5-1996. See also Inquiry 97-06.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-42

Subject: Requirement 2.27.2.4.5, Emergency Power Selector Switches

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1b–2003

Question: Requirement 2.27.2.4.5 requires that the emergency power selector switch positions corresponding to the elevator identification numbers must override the automatic power selection, and that operation of the selector switch must not cause power to be removed from any elevator until the elevator is stopped. However, it doesn't give any further details on the proper sequence of events for an elevator that was already moving through the hoistway when the selector switch was operated. For each of the following scenarios, assume that the previously selected car is not on designated attendant, inspection or Phase II In-Car Emergency operation, and that it is already in motion on emergency or standby power operation when the selector switch is turned to one of the positions other than "AUTO" and a new car is selected to run. Please indicate which of the following operations are permissible and which are not. For those operations that are not compliant, please specify the Code Requirement(s) being violated:

(a) The car that had been previously selected immediately makes an emergency stop (assuming it was moving away from the designated level), waits a few seconds, and then returns nonstop to the designated level. If the car had been traveling toward the designated level, it continues on to the designated level and stops there. The doors are then cycled.

(b) The car that had been previously selected immediately makes an emergency stop (assuming it was moving away from the designated level), and then immediately returns nonstop to the designated level. If the car had been traveling toward the designated level, it continues on to the designated level and stops there. The doors are then cycled.

(c) The car that had been previously selected reverses at or before the next available landing without opening its doors (assuming it was moving away from the designated level), and then returns nonstop to the designated level. If the car had been traveling toward the designated level, it continues on to the designated level and stops there. The doors are then cycled.

(d) The car that had been previously selected proceeds to the next available floor in the direction of travel and stops. The doors are then cycled.

In each of the above scenarios, please assume that the newly selected car would then proceed to operate on emergency or standby power operation, accepting car and hall calls as appropriate.

Answer:

(a) Not permitted, see 2.27.2.4.5.

(b) Not permitted, see 2.27.2.4.5.

(c) Permitted.

(d) Permitted.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-43

Subject: Rules 111.5(a) and (c) and Requirements 2.12.5.1 and 2.12.5.3, Restricted Opening of Hoistway Doors and/or Car Doors of Passenger Elevators

Edition: A17.1–1996 and A17.1–2004, respectively

Question (1): Is the use of electronics in the design of a door restrictor that meets these requirements prohibited by the Code?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Is the use of gravity-dependent mechanisms (with no dependence on electrical power), used to restrict the car door in the locking zone prohibited by the Code?

Answer (2): No.

Question (3): Is it prohibited by the Code for a door restrictor that uses electrical power that is not dependent on power that may be cut off from the door operator, to unrestrict the car door in the unlocking zone?

Answer (3): No.

Question (4): Is it permitted by the Code for a mechanical door restrictor to require periodic maintenance for adjustment to release the car door when in the unlocking zone?

Answer (4): Yes. Periodic maintenance is required for Code compliance. See 8.6.4.13.1(l).

Question (5): If the answer to the above is "yes," is it permitted by the Code for a door restrictor that will release the car door in the unlocking zone with primary power, to rely on a secondary electrical power source that requires periodic maintenance, such as a battery or generator, to release the car door while in the unlocking zone when the primary source of power has been lost?

Answer (5): Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-46

Subject: Requirement 2.7.2.2, Maintenance Clearance

Edition: A17.1–2000 through A17.1–2004

Question (1): Is it the purpose of 2.7.2.2.1 to provide the necessary path width for a technician to gain access to components to perform maintenance?

Answer (1): Yes, for components that require maintenance.

Question (2): Is it the purpose of 2.7.2.2.2 to provide a reaching distance where a technician may safely position him or herself to perform maintenance with tools if necessary?

Answer (2): Yes, the maintenance clearance [450 mm (18 in.) minimum] is determined based on component design and the manufacturers' recommendations of where maintenance access is needed. See Inquiry 04-22.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-47

Subject: Requirement 2.2.4.2, Access to Pits

Edition: A17.1–2000 through A17.1–2004

Background: Section 2.2.4.2 in part reads "...A clear distance of not less than 180 mm (7 in.) from the centerline of the rungs, cleats, or steps to the nearest permanent object in back of the ladder shall be provided. When unavoidable obstructions are encountered, the distance shall be permitted to be reduced to 115 mm (4.5 in.)..."

Question (1): Does the term "unavoidable obstruction" used in this section refer to elevator components identified in Inquiry 02-26 installed into the hoistway and pit during new construction?

Answer (1): Yes.

Question (2): Same question as (1) but for elevator components installed during an alteration?

Answer (2): Yes.

Question (3): Same question as (1) but for elevator components installed during a repair?

Answer (3): Yes.

Question (4): Does the term "permanent object" used in this section refer to building materials used to construct the pit including the pit walls, pit steel, and other pit structural materials?

Answer (4): Yes; however, the list is not all-inclusive.

Question (5): Is it permitted by this section of the Code for the ladder to be installed up to but not less than 4.5 in. from the center rung of the ladder to a permanent object when there is a risk that an unavoidable obstruction may interfere with the ladder if it were set to 7 in. from the pit wall?

Answer (5): Yes.

Question (6): Is it permitted by the Code for the pit ladder to be installed with less than 7 in. of clearance from the centerline of the rung to the wall behind the pit ladder when a new elevator is being installed in a newly constructed hoistway:
(a) in a newly constructed building?
(b) in an alteration or addition to an existing building?

Answer (6): Yes, when there are unavoidable obstructions.

Question (7): If the answer to Question (6)(a) or (6)(b) is "yes," then when would the 7 in. measurement ever be required in that circumstance?

Answer (7): When adequate clearance is available.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 04-48

Subject: Requirement 2.19, Ascending Car Overspeed and Unintended Car Movement Protection

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): Is the emergency brake conforming to 2.19.3 to be applied with unintended movement or overspeed in the up direction only?

Answer (1): No, the emergency brake is required to operate in either direction with unintended car movement and in the case of overspeed in the up direction.

Question (2): Is the emergency brake permitted to be applied if the overspeed is in the down direction?

Answer (2): The Code does not address this issue. The operation described is neither required nor prohibited. See Inquiry 02-34.

Question (3): Is the emergency brake permitted to be applied when normal stops are made, if resetting is not required?

Answer (3): The emergency brake is permitted to be activated during normal elevator stops as long as the emergency brake is applied to and released from a stationary braking surface [see 2.19.3.2(c)].

Question (4): Is the "Protection Against Unintended Car Movement," (2.19.2) as required by 2.26.2.30 also required for "Inspection Operation"(2.26.1.4 and 2.26.1.5)?

Answer (4): Yes, see also Inquiry 04-33.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-49

Subject: Requirements 2.26.9.3 and 2.26.9.4, Software System Failure

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1b–2003

Background: Requirement 2.26.9.3 requires that the occurrence of a "software system failure" shall not cause any of the unsafe conditions listed in (a) through (e). Requirement 2.26.9.4 requires that redundant devices used to satisfy 2.26.9.3 in the determination of the occurrence of a software system failure shall be checked prior to the start of the elevator from a landing, when on automatic operation and that the car not be permitted to restart if such a failure is detected. It goes on to further state that implementation of redundancy by a software system is permitted, provided that the removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake is not solely dependent on software-controlled means.

Question: Does this mean that it is permissible to use redundant software systems (i.e., two or more separate and independent processors) to implement the safety functions in 2.26.9.3(a) through (e) that do not directly involve removing power from the driving-machine motor and brake?

Answer: Yes, provided that 2.26.9.4 is met, i.e., "provided that the removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake is not solely dependent on software-controlled means."

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

Inquiry: 04-50

Subject: Requirements 2.19.3.2 and 2.24.8.2

Edition: A17.1–2000

Background: Requirement 2.19.3.2 states that the emergency brake is permitted to decelerate the car by acting on the brake drum or braking surface of the driving-machine brake, provided that the driving-machine brake is integral with or directly attached to the driving-machine sheave, and the emergency brake is independent of the driving-machine brake.

Question: If the driving-machine has two independent brake shoes or calipers (one to satisfy the requirement for a driving-machine brake in 2.24.8.2, and the other to satisfy the requirement for an emergency brake in 2.19.3) that are compliant with the above mechanical requirements, but both shoes/calipers are controlled by the same electrical circuit, is this implementation compliant?

Answer: The implementation described is not prohibited as long as the requirements of 2.19.1, 2.19.2, and 2.19.3 are met.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 27, 2005

A17 Standards Committee Reaffirmation: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-50a (Additional questions)

Question (1): How can the driving-machine brake and the emergency brake be controlled by the same circuit and still be independent?

Answer (1): It is the brakes that are required to be independent, not the control.

Question (2): What is the criteria being used to determine independence?

Answer (2): See answer to Question (1).

Question (3): What is the definition of electrical circuit being used to answer this question?

Answer (3): See answer to Question (1).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-51

Subject: Requirement 2.12.6.2.3, Unlocking Device

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question: According to 2.12.6.2.3, an unlocking device "shall not have identifying markings on its face." Can a label stating, "Warning — Authorized Users Only," or other similar warning labels be applied to the face of the unlocking device?

Answer: Yes, provided the marking does not identify that the device is for unlocking the hoistway door.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-52

Subject: Requirements 2.11.10.1.2 and 2.15.9

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question (1): On a landing sill guard, 2.11.10.1.2 calls for the guard to "have a straight vertical face extending below the sill." Does a horizontal groove the full width of the door opening which could be as much as 1 in. in height for the full width of the door opening comply? This groove would be used to guide the bottom of the landing door in lieu of a groove in the bottom of the sill.

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Similarly, for a platform guard or apron, 2.15.6.2.3 calls for the guard plate to "have a straight vertical face extending below the floor of the platform." Does similar horizontal groove used to guide the car door comply?

Answer (2): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-54

Subject: Requirement 3.18.3.8.2(b), Checking Corrosion Protection Compliance

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): This requirement requires for checking "ongoing" compliance. According to Roget's II Thesaurus, synonyms for "ongoing" are "without interruption, around-the-clock, ceaseless, constant, continuous, etc." Does this rule require that the protection means be monitored continually, 24 h a day, 7 days a week?

Answer (1): No. The requirement is for ongoing compliance of the protection, not ongoing checking.

Question (2): If not, how often does the Code require that the system be checked?

Answer (2): The A17.1 Code does not address the frequency.

Question (3): If monitoring is not continual, and the protection fails between checks, is this "ongoing" compliance?

Answer (3): The A17.1 Code does not address this issue.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 04-55

Subject: Requirement 3.26.8, Pressure Switch

Edition: A17.1–2004

Background: If any obstruction (such as a timber that got lodged in the shaft) stopped the downward movement of the elevator car, the cylinder could have a loss of positive pressure and subsequently the oil drained out of it by the lowering valves in the pump unit being open in a down direction call. If the obstruction became dislodged, there would now be a large amount of air inside of the cylinder that would allow the car to "free fall" for a distance due to the fact that there is now no oil (or a lack of some oil) in the plunger assembly. This would be the same affect as in a hydro where a car got hung up in the down direction, and the cylinder was not attached or retained to the car frame.

Question (1): Is this the only condition (loss of positive pressure as exampled above) the requirement is addressing with the low-pressure switch?

Answer (1): No, any condition in which a loss of pressure at the top of the cylinder occurs is covered.

Question (2): Furthermore, the pressure switch required under the item states that if the low pressure switch detects a lack of positive pressure, then the switch is to prevent operation of the valves.

(a) Am I correct in my understanding that the valves to be prevented from operating are only the lowering (down) valve or valves?

(b) Am I correct in my understanding that the requirement says nothing at all regarding UP valves or the ability of the pump to run?

(c) Am I correct in my understanding that with a low-pressure switch activated you can run UP, but NOT DOWN?

Answer (2): The answer to (a), (b), and (c) above is "yes."

Question (3): It is also my understanding that, if the pressure switch operates at a floor level within the unlocking zone, the automatic opening of the car door from a hall call or a normal floor stop **must** be disabled. Therefore, one can still open the car door from inside of the car using the door open button if it is in the unlocking zone. (You don't have to be able to do this, but you can and it is an option that the manufacturer can install on his control system.)

Is the following procedure an acceptable way to test the low-pressure switch and its desired affects?

(a) Bring the car to within the unlocking zone of a floor, open the emergency stop circuit or open the main line, close the main hydraulic line, and dump the pressure in the system using the manual lowering valve to first check that the switch works (electrical check to make sure it is open in this state).

(b) Re-energize the controller and neither the down valve or down leveling valve should be energized. You should also **not** get an automatic door open, or be able to open the door from a hall call if the car is at that floor.

(c) Repeat the test with the car in a down direction call between floors, and disconnect the switch while in motion [we already know that the switch works (opens on low pressure) due to the previous test]. At this point the car should stop due to loss of the DOWN valve.

Answer (3): This is not addressed by the Code.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-56

Subject: Requirement 8.7.2.27.6, Change in Type of Operation Control

Edition: A17.1-2000 including through A17.1b-2003

Question: The heading for this requirement reads, "Change in Type of Operation Control." However, the first sentence begins, "Where there is a change in the operation control...," omitting the words, "type of." While the heading implies that the requirements that follow apply only when there is a change in the type of operation control, the wording in that first sentence could be interpreted to mean that if anything involving the operation control is changed, those requirements are applicable.

For example, if a four-car group is split into two two-car groups, while this would be a change involving the operation control, the type of operation control is still group automatic. Do the requirements of 8.7.2.27.6 apply in this case?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-57

Subject: Rules 211.3c(3) and 211.3a(7)

Edition: A17.1–1987

Background: Rule 211.3c(3) is written as follows:

When the switch is in the "OFF" position, the elevator is not at the designated or alternate level and Phase I operation is in effect:

(a) The car shall operate in accordance with Rules 211.3a(4) and (5).

(b) The car shall return nonstop to the designated or alternate level and power-operated doors shall open.

Neither (a) or (b) specifically mandate actuation of the visual and audible signal system required in Rule 211.3a(7), which is stated to be for the purpose of alerting passengers that the car is returning nonstop to the designated level.

Taking a closer look at the referenced rules, Rule 211.3a(4) describes how different types of doors should behave in regards to closing: Rule 211.3a(4)(a) describes the requirements for elevators having automatic, power-operated horizontally sliding doors; Rule 211.3a(4)(b) describes the requirements for elevators having power-operated vertically sliding doors provided with automatic or momentary pressure closing operation; and Rule 211.3a(4)(c) describes the requirements for elevators having either power-operated doors provided with continuous pressure closing or manual doors. Of the three paragraphs in 211.3a(4), (c) is the only one that states that once the doors are closed, the elevator must conform to 211.3a. Rule 211.3a(5) only mandates which door reopening devices must be rendered inoperative, in turn requiring that power-operated, automatic doors must be closed with reduced kinetic energy.

Question: At any time during the Phase II to Phase I transition and return to the recall floor described in Rule 211.3c(3), is compliance with Rule 211.3a(7) required for elevators with any of the door types listed in Rule 211.3a(4)?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-58

Subject: Requirements 6.1.6.9.2 and 6.2.6.8.2, Additional Signs

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: Does a sign or signs complying with ANSI Z535.2 or CAN/CSA-Z321 between the newels comply with the referenced rule above?

Answer: Yes, provided the sign(s) are not located closer than 3 000 mm (118 in.) from the end of the newel in any horizontal direction.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 04-59

Subject: Section 3, Definition: hoistway, elevator, dumbwaiter or material lift

Edition: A17.1–1996

Background: The definition of a hoistway, "an opening through a building or structure for the travel of elevators, dumbwaiters, or material lifts, extending from the pit floor to the roof or floor above" indicates that the hoistway starts from the pit floor.

Question: Is the pit floor, which is noted as the starting point of the hoistway, considered the hoistway pit floor or the sump pit floor?

Answer: The hoistway pit floor.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 04-60

Subject: Rules 102.2(d) and 106.1b(3)

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question: If a sump pump is installed within a sump pit as required by Rule 106.1b(3), can the ejection piping and emergency shut off valve be installed within the hoistway?

Answer: Yes, as long as it is associated with the sump pump.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 05-01

Subject: Part 7, Rope Turns on a Dumbwaiter Winding Drum

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: A winding drum dumbwaiter machine has been installed with a drum that is too short in length to contain all the rope needed for the necessary travel plus the additional spare rope turn required by 2.20.7. When the dumbwaiter approaches the top landing, rope has begun to wrap over the first layer of rope on the drum. Is this permitted? If not, by what requirement?

Answer: No, 7.2.10.1 requires drum machines and sheaves for power dumbwaiters to conform to 2.24. Requirement 2.20.7 taken together with 2.24.2.1 makes it clear that ropes must be supported only in finished grooves.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 05-02

Subject: Section 8.1, Security

Edition: A17.1–2000

Background: The Independent Service switch is not mentioned in any of the security groupings 1 through 3. However, under the following definitions Independent Service is equated with authorized personnel.

"*designated attendant*: where elevator operation is controlled solely by authorized personnel (attendant service, independent, hospital service, and other similar operations)."

"*authorized personnel*: persons who have been instructed in the operation of the equipment and designated by the owner to use the equipment."

Question (1): Since the Independent Service switch is not mentioned under security groupings 1 through 3, must it fall under Group 4? (Equipment not classified as Group 1, 2, or 3)

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): By reading the definitions for *designated attendant*, is Independent Service permitted to be keyed under Group 2 Security?

Answer (2): Yes, if it is used only by authorized personnel.

Question (3): Is it permitted to combine the car light key switch listed under 8.1.3(d) and fan key switch, which is not listed in any grouping, under one key switch which is security Group 2?

Answer (3): Yes, if it is used only by authorized personnel.

Question (4): Is a toggle switch that is used for Independent Service operation of an elevator permitted to be placed behind a locked panel having a Group 2 key along with other toggle switches that are Group 2?

Answer (4): Yes, if it is used only by authorized personnel.

Question (5): Can a Group 3 device be placed behind a locked cover, which uses a Group 2 key to open the locked cover?

Answer (5): No.

Question (6): Requirements 8.1.2 through 8.1.5 use a "Note" to define types of access/operations. Is the "Note" an enforceable part of the requirement?

Answer (6): No. See Form and Arrangement paragraph in Preface.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 05-03

Subject: Requirements 2.4.2.1(b) and 8.6.4.11.1

Edition: A17.1–2000 through A17.1b–2003

Question: It has been claimed that the minimum 6 in. runby required by 2.4.2.1 does not apply because in complying with 2.4.2.1(b) "spring return oil buffers" are provided. As an example you have an electric elevator with a rated speed of 350 ft/min. The bottom car runby is 4 in., the claim is that compliance is met with 2.4.2.1(b) so no corrections are needed. Also, as this rule is referenced in 8.6.4.11.1 it would also apply to existing elevators. Prior to the violation the buffers were standard oil buffers, after the violation is pointed out the buffers become "spring-return type oil buffers" as referenced in 2.4.2.1(b) so they can compress the 6-in. runby by 25%. It is claimed that 2.22.4.8 permits them to eliminate both car and counterweight runby provided they don't compress the oil buffers by more than 25%. Is this claim correct?

Answer: Yes, 2.4.2.1(a) permits the reduction of runby where justified by practical difficulties. Requirement 2.4.2.1(b) permits the elimination of runby, provided that spring return oil buffers are used.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 05-04 (Reconsideration)

Subject: Rule 204.1(e)(1)(d)

Edition: A17.1b–1998

Question:

(a) Is it enough that the movable portion (which opens up and out through the Top Emergency Exit; or placed on top of the stationary portion of the suspended ceiling) of the suspended ceiling be secured (locked down with wing nuts) to the stationary portion of the suspended ceiling, while the car is in service?

(b) Must there be a chain (or other method) attached to the movable portion of the suspended ceiling, to restrain the movable portion from falling, when either service is required or in case of emergency access?

Answer: The movable portion of the suspended ceiling must be restrained from falling.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

A17 Standards Committee Reaffirmation: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-06

Subject: Requirement 8.6.4.10.1

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: In the case of underslung or overslung arrangements, should the fastening at the dead end hitch be considered the "car ends"?

Answer: The situation you have described is not 1:1 roping and therefore, 8.6.4.10.1 does not apply.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 05-07

Subject: Requirement 6.1.3.1.10.2

Edition: A17.1–2000

Background: Requirement 6.1.3.10.2 requires a minimum factor of safety of 8 for steel and bronze and 10 for cast iron and other materials for driving-machine parts. The electric driving machine is defined as including the driving-machine brake.

Question (1): How are the required factors of safety for the driving-machine brake supposed to be verified (e.g., design calculations, testing)?

Answer (1): The design factors of safety are verified through design calculations.

Question (2): Does the brake type test (8.3.6) require that the brake be tested to ensure the required factors of safety?

Answer (2): No. The type test confirms that the performance characteristics of the brake are capable of meeting the Code requirements for stopping.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-11

Subject: Requirement 8.6.8.8, Repair Criteria for Moving Walk

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): When a $\frac{1}{4}$ in. × $\frac{1}{2}$ in. section of the treadway surface has worn or is missing (but not in the ply of the belt), what is the repair and/or replacement criterion for that section of belt?

Answer (1): Any damage or worn treadway needs to be replaced or repaired in order to maintain a continuous unbroken treadway surface. The method to replace or repair is not addressed in the Code. See 6.2.3.6.2.

Question (2): Are there any allowances for small areas of missing material?

Answer (2): No. See response to Question (1).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-12

Subject: Requirement 5.3.1.7.2

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question: Where should the 3-in. dimension be measured from if the landing doors have recessed panels or have a glass panel that is recessed from the surface of the door?

Answer: The Code does not address this issue.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-14

Subject: Requirements 2.16.3.2.2(e) and 2.17.16

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1b-2003

Question (1): For a direct hydraulic elevator without rail safeties, must the crosshead data tag (or a separate data plate) include rail lubrication instructions or prohibition of lubrication?

Answer (1): Yes, 3.16.3 requires that 2.16.3 applies.

Question (2): Does the requirement for lubrication instructions in 2.16.3.2.2(e) only apply if the elevator has rail safeties?

Answer (2): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 05-15

Subject: Sections 7.4, 7.5, and 7.6

Edition: A17.1–2000, including through A17.1b–2003; and A17.1-2004

Question (1): A manual leveling device must use continuous-pressure controls according to 2.26.1.6.1. I do not see an equivalent inverse of this requirement.

(a) May a Type B Material Lift be equipped with leveling devices?

(b) If a Type B Material Lift [operated by continuous-pressure control devices according to 7.4.2(e)] is provided with a leveling feature, must the leveling devices be manually operated (leveling device, inching)?

Answer (1):

(a) Yes.

(b) Yes.

Question (2): Hydraulic anticreep feature described in 3.26.3.1 is a form of automatic leveling and the zone is permitted to be up to 450 mm according to 2.26.1.6.3.

(a) Must an automatic anticreep feature be provided on a hydraulic Type B Material Lift?

(b) May the anticreep zone be as much a 450 mm from the landing on hydraulic Type B Material Lifts?

(c) Does 3.26.3.1 conflict with 7.4.2(e)?

Answer (2):

(a) Yes, 7.6.8 requires conformance with Section 3.26.

(b) No, see 3.26.3.1.2.

(c) No.

Question (3): Requirement 3.26.4.2(a) is required by 7.6.8. This requirement references 2.26.2.5 to determine where an emergency stop switch is required. The emergency stop switch defined in 7.5.12.1.5 alters the one defined in 2.26.2.5 and defines where it is required.

(a) Would it be correct to substitute the reference to 2.26.2.5 with a reference to 7.5.12.2.5 in 3.26.4.2(a)?

(b) Must the automatic anticreep operation continue to operate after activation of an in-car or hall-station emergency stop switch?

Answer (3):

(a) No.

(b) Yes, see 3.26.3.1.5.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-16

Subject: Requirement 5.4.7.1

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: The inclined elevator to be installed uses a ladder-type track as its guiding means. The safety utilizes two separate arms that engage the cross members of the ladder style track to stop and sustain the elevator car.

For a ladder-type track used on a Private Residence Inclined Elevator, may the safety device engage the cross members of the guiding member to comply with 5.4.7.1, Safety Requirements, provided the requirements for the application and release of safeties are met?

Answer: No, the safety shall apply pressure to the guide rail(s).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 05-17

Subject: Requirement 8.7.2.17.1, Increase or Decrease in Travel

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1b–2003

Question: An existing building with a crossover floor wants to eliminate the top landing of the lower rise group. What are the requirements that account for safety as well as access to the area no longer served?

Answer: The elevator is required to comply with the requirements of 8.7.1.1.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-18

Subject: Requirement 8.7.2.27.5, Change in Type of Motion Control

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1b–2003

Question: Paragraph (e) requires conformance with Section 2.19. If the voluntary scope of work is limited to signal/motion control upgrading with existing machinery, counterweights, guide rails, etc., retained, how can there be compliance without extraordinary equipment changes that discourage these basic improvements (i.e., single speed AC or DC rheostatic to a VVVF-AC system)?

Answer: The ASME A17 Committee does not grant variances from the Code. See Section 1.2.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-19

Subject: Requirement 2.14.1.5.1, Top Emergency Exit

Edition: A17.1–2000 through A17.1–2004

Question (1): Is the closing of the exit cover an acceptable means of "manually resetting" the car top emergency exit electrical device?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): If not, is the elevator to be prevented from operating until the car top emergency exit electrical device is manually reset from the top of the car?

Answer (2): Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-20

Subject: Rule 201.4

Edition: A17.1–1996 including through A17.1a–1997

Question (1): What is the factor of safety at 1g or ½g (tie down used)?

Answer (1): Factors of Safety for the buffer components are specified in Rule 201.4c.

Question (2): Does this Rule address that when you reduce the buffer stroke you may ultimately reduce the overhead clearance?

Answer (2): No. Overhead runby is addressed under Section 107, Bottom and Top Clearances and Runbys for Elevator Cars and Counterweights, which addresses the use of the buffer stroke in the calculation of runby.

Question (3): Does this Rule cover the scenario of when the car crashes into the overhead (when ETS fails) and there is no overhead clearance (considering the jump of the car)?

Answer (3): The Code does not address the failure scenario you described. This would require failure of the Normal Stopping Means, Normal Terminal Stopping Means, and Emergency Terminal Stopping Means for the car to attain enough speed to jump above the required overhead clearance.

Question (4): Based upon the assumption that you can reduce the stroke of the buffer 33⅓% from the minimum stroke of the buffer per Rule 201.4a. This means you can reduce the stroke of the buffer 66⅔%. Is this correct?

Answer (4): For speeds 800 ft/min or more, the stroke used shall be not less than 33⅓% of the minimum stroke as specified in Rule 201.4a. However, for speeds less than 800 ft/min, the stroke used shall be not less than 50% of the stroke required by Rule 201.4a.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 18, 2005

Inquiry: 05-21

Subject: Rule 210.2e, Emergency Stop Switch

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question (1): What is meant by "positively opened mechanically"?

Answer (1): "Positively opened mechanically" means that the switch's operating lever or button, when moved to the "STOP" position, will cause the switch's contacts to open and remain open without dependency on a spring. See Inquiries 77-62 and 89-44 for additional information.

Question (2): Would the following meet the requirements of "positively opened mechanically":
(a) a toggle switch
(b) a toggle switch that is not opened until the toggle is moved from the run extreme limit of travel (e.g., 1-o'clock when viewing from the side) to the other stop extreme limit of travel (e.g., 5-o'clock position).

Answer (2):
(a) It is dependent on the construction of the toggle switch. A toggle switch that complies with the requirements of Rule 210.2e, in particular Rule 210.2e(4), would comply.
(b) See Answer (1) and (2)(a) above.

Question (3): If a toggle switch were used (as a pit switch for example), and the switch does not open until the toggle is moved from one extreme limit of travel to the other extreme limit of travel, then would simply marking one extreme limit of travel as "RUN" and the other extreme limit of travel of the switch as "STOP" meet the requirements of Rule 210.1e(3)?

Answer (3): Yes. See also Answers (1) and (2)(a) above.

Question (4): If the toggle switch described above has an intermediate position (half way down), and that position allows the car to run, does that position also need to be marked as "RUN" to comply with Rule 210.1e(3)?

Answer (4): Rule 210.2e requires that the "RUN" and "STOP" positions be indicated. It is required that the switch has only these two positions.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-22

Subject: Requirement 3.27.3

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1–2004

Question (1): Requirement 3.27.3 states, "If either of the devices specified in 3.27.1(a) or (c) is activated while the car is stationary at the recall level..." Does this statement imply we are to have a signal of a low oil condition prior to movement?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Does the allowance of a pump run timer to signal a low oil condition, mean the wording could also be read that the elevator was sitting at the floor as a result of a low oil return when Phase I operation was activated?

Answer (2): No. The car is already shut down per 3.26.9 and no further operation can occur.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-23

Subject: Requirement 2.1.6.2, Projections, Recesses, and Setbacks in Hoistway Enclosures

Edition: A17.1–2000 through A17.1–2004

Question (1): What are the definitions for the terms *projection, recess,* and *setback*?

Answer (1): The terms are not defined. See responses to Inquiry 04-18.

Question (2): Can setbacks only occur at the lowest level of the hoistway? How high can they be? How wide can they be?

Answer (2): These issues are not addressed in the Code. See response to Question (1).

Question (3): Where can recesses occur? How high can they be? Can there be one continuous recess the full rise of the hoistway? Can there be many recesses in a hoistway.

Answer (3): These issues are not addressed in the Code. See response to Question (1).

Question (4): If the hoistway extends out past the building from the general line of the hoistway and is not on a side for loading and unloading and returns back to the general line of the hoistway at the top of the hoistway creating a pocket as the hoistway would continue up for some distance: at this point, is this a setback or a recess?

Answer (4): See response to Question (1).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-24

Subject: Requirement 2.27.9, Elevator Corridor Call Station Pictograph

Edition: A17.1a–2005

Background: The pictograph for this requirement was formerly Appendix O. As an appendix, certain liberties could be taken in regard to size, shape, and material. Now that it has been adopted into the main body of the Code, the use of this pictograph is restricted to what is shown in Fig. 2.27.9.

Question (1): Requirement 2.27.9 states, "the sign shall include only the wording and graphics shown in Fig. 2.27.9." The area surrounding the pictograph is supposed to be white. If a sign were made of brass or stainless steel, would the bare metal be acceptable for the areas that are required to be white?

Answer (1): It was intended that the circles be white. The color surrounding the flame was not intended to be specified as white.

Question (2): Could the sign be an integral part (engraved, not applied) of the call station?

Answer (2): Yes.

Question (3): Can the wording be arranged so that the pictograph can appear on a call station that is narrower than the 5 in. width shown in Fig. 2.27.9?

Answer (3): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-26

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.3.7, Firefighters' Operation Panel

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question (1): Requirement 2.27.3.3.7 states that operating instructions shown in Fig. 2.27.7.2 shall be grouped together (with required switches) behind a locked cover. Can the instructions be placed on the front of the locked cover or elsewhere on the operating panel?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): If the answer to Question (1) is "no," then the public will not be able to see the part of Fig. 2.27.7.2 that applies to them: "When (helmet pictogram) Flashes, exit elevator." Must the entire instructions be reproduced on the front of the operating panel or can a portion of the instructions that applies to the public, "When (helmet pictogram) Flashes, exit elevator" be placed near the visual signal Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)?

Answer (2): The instruction is not intended for the public. It is intended for the firefighters.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-27

Subject: Rule 211.3b(1)

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question: Rule 211.3b(1) states, "The activation of a smoke detector in any elevator lobby, other than at the designated level, shall cause all cars that serve that lobby to return nonstop to the designated level." For the sake of safety, as well as simplicity, we have elected to also return all associated elevators of a group automatic operation, regardless of whether or not they all serve that particular lobby. Since nothing in this Code is stated to the contrary, is the described operation permissible?

Answer: This edition of the Code does not address this issue.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-28

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.3

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: Is it the requirement that after the Phase II switch is turned from "OFF" to "HOLD" to "ON" and then back to "HOLD," with the car at the recall level, that Phase II is active?

Answer: Yes.

A17 Standard Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-29

Subject: Rule 805.3d, Broken Drive Chain Device

Edition: A17.1–1996 including through A17.1b–1998

Question: Do handrail drive chains with a device used to apply the brake and remove electrical power from the driving machine and brake if a handrail drive chain breaks and being driven by the driving machine connected on the main drive shaft by a chain also require manual reset as another broken drive chain device?

Answer: The Code does not address this issue.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-31

Subject: Requirement 6.1.6.7, Step Demarcation Lights

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question: May a light source of equivalent luminescence and color, as such low-voltage incandescent lights or light-emitting diodes, be installed in lieu of "fluorescent light fixtures"?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-32

Subject: Requirements 5.3.1.16.2 and 5.3.2.2.1

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1a–2002

Question: Is there an intentional different requirement for minimum sheave diameters that are used in roped hydraulic systems and those used in traction/drum systems with respect to the rope-diameter-multipliers?

Answer: There is no difference, because 5.3.2.1 references 5.3.1.16.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-33

Subject: Requirements 2.26.9.3, 2.26.9.4, and 1.3 Definition of *Software System Failure*

Edition: A17.1–2004 including through A17.1a–2005

Question (1): The term *software* came into being to distinguish between the material components (i.e., hardware) of a computer/micro-processor and the stored program or the instruction content of the memory. If a complex programmable logic device (programmable logic array) is used to remove power from the driving-machine motor and brake, is it considered

(*a*) hardware (i.e., solid-state device), or

(*b*) a software system with host hardware?

Answer (1): It is considered a solid-state device, unless the programmable logic device is configured such that it executes memory resident software to perform the intended function.

Question (2): If the programmable logic array is a "software system with host hardware," do the 2.26.9.4 restrictions apply regarding the "implementation of redundancy by a software system (i.e., removal of power from the driving-machine motor and brake not be solely dependent on software-controlled means)"?

Answer (2): Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-34

Subject: Requirement 2.18.7

Edition: A17.1–2000 and A17.1–2004

Question: Is a governor tension sheave switch required whenever Type B car and counterweight safeties are used?

Answer: No. A governor tension switch is required whenever the governor rope retarding means is dependent solely on the traction relationship between the governor rope and governor sheave (i.e., jawless governor). See also Inquiry 05-37.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-35

Subject: Requirement 8.7.2.10.2

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): Does the sentence "New components that are installed shall conform as follows:" mean that the new components of only new horizontal entrances shall conform?

Answer (1): No. The intent was only for components installed as part of the alteration on existing entrances. See revised requirement in A17.1a–2005.

Question (2): Would new components installed on an existing entrance, such as new hanger tracks [see 8.7.2.10.2(b)] or new hangers [see 8.7.2.10.2(d)] require conformance?

Answer (2): Yes, if part of alteration.

Question (3): If new components are installed on an existing entrance, would the existing door panels be required to have top and bottom door safety retainers?

Answer (3): No. If door safety retainers are installed, it must comply with 8.7.2.10.2(f).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-36

Subject: Requirement 8.10.3.3.2(o)

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): If any portion of the supply line piping or fittings are replaced, do the test requirements specified in 8.10.3.3.2(o) apply?

Answer (1): Requirement 8.10.3.3.2(o) does not apply to replacements unless they are part of an alteration.

Question (2): If a hydraulic silencer (muffler) is replaced, do the test requirements specified in 8.10.3.3.2(o) apply?

Answer (2): See response to Question (1).

Question (3): If a grooved pipe fitting anywhere in the supply piping is replaced, do the test requirements specified in 8.10.3.3.2(o) apply?

Answer (3): See response to Question (1).

A17 Standard Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-37

Subject: Requirement 2.18.7.2

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question (1): By the reference to 2.18.6.1, is this limited to Type B safeties?

Answer (1): No. A governor tension switch is required whenever the governor rope retarding means is dependent solely on the traction relationship between the governor rope and governor sheave (i.e., jawless governor).

Question (2): Isn't the activation of every safety for an electric elevator safety dependent on the tension in the governor rope prior to the governor tripping? If the governor rope breaks then there is no tension in the rope then the governor will not track the car speed and the safeties cannot be activated.

Answer (2): Yes. See response to Question (1) above.

Question (3): Are the switches that activate as the governor tension sheave approaches its upper and lower limit of travel only required for "traction" governors and not governors with rope gripping means (e.g., jaws)?

Answer (3): Yes. See response to Question (1) above.

See also Inquiry 05-34.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-38

Subject: Requirement 8.6.9

Edition: A17.1–2000 including the A17.1a–2002

Question (1): Does a material lift (Type A) without automatic transfer devices require compliance with 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirement of Section 8.6?

Answer (1): Yes.

Question (2): Does a material lift (Type A) with automatic transfer devices require compliance with 8.6.1 through 8.6.3 and the applicable requirement of Section 8.6?

Answer (2): Yes.

Question (3): Does a hydraulic material lift (Type A) require compliance with 8.6.5.8?

Answer (3): Yes.

Question (4): Would the answers to Questions (1) through (3) above be any different if a Type B material lift was involved?

Answer (4): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-39

Subject: Rule 211.3b, Phase I Fire Alarm Activation

Edition: A17.1–1996 including A17.1a–1997

Question (1): The 1996 Rule 211.3b indicates the requirement for "system type smoke detectors" to be installed in the designated areas. The 1997 addenda revised the wording for this requirement to read "Fire alarm initiating devices..." A "fire alarm initiating device" could be either an automatic device such as a smoke/heat detector or a manual device such as a pull station. Does a manual pull station installed in an elevator lobby meet the requirements of this Rule?

Answer (1): This is outside the scope of A17.1.

Question (2): The 1996 Rule 211.3b states, that "smoke detectors are not required in elevator lobbies at unenclosed landings." The 1997 addenda revised the wording of this section to remove this exception. Does this mean that a fire alarm initiating device is required to be installed at a floor where an elevator opens to an exterior covered landing open to the outside?

Answer (2): Yes.

Question (3):
(a) Are smoke detectors allowed to be installed in elevator pits under any circumstances?
(b) Are they required to be installed in elevator hoistway with a sprinkler head located more than 2 ft above the pit floor?

Answer (3):
(a) This is outside the scope of A17.1.
(b) Yes, this was the intent; however, the requirement was inadvertently omitted in this edition. This omission was corrected in A17.1b–2003.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-40

Subject: Rules 211.3c(1)(g) and (i)

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question: It appears that according to Rule 211.3c(1)(g), when activated, the call cancel button shall cause all registered calls to be canceled and a traveling car to stop at or before the next available landing. Rule 211.3c(1)(i) requires a traveling car to stop at the next available landing for which a car call was registered, at which time all registered calls shall be canceled.

If a car is responding to a car call on Phase II operation, and the call cancel button is activated while the car is traveling, but then another car call is registered prior to the car stopping at or before the next landing, is the new car call required to be canceled either

(a) if the car stops before the next available landing (i.e., it does not stop at a floor); or

(b) if the car stops at the next available landing in response to the call cancel button having been activated previous to that call being registered but before the car actually stopped (assume the new car call is for a floor other than the next available landing)?

Answer:

(a) No.

(b) Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-41

Subject: Requirements 5.3.1.3 and 2.4.7(b)

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1b–2003

Question (1): Is the 6 in. of required car top clearance as described in 5.3.1.3 to be measured from the actual car top surface when there is other equipment mounted on the car top such as light fixtures and auxiliary controller boxes?

Answer (1): The 6 in. is measured from the actual car top or crosshead. See Definitions *clearance, top car, electric elevators* and *clearance, top car, hydraulic elevators*. If there is a machine or its controls on the car top, see 2.4.12.

Question (2): Is the 6 in. of required car top clearance as described in 5.3.1.3 to be measured from the highest point of any fixture mounted on and above the physical surface of the car top surface?

Answer (2): No. See response to Question (1).

Question (3): Does 2.4.7(b) apply to residential elevator car tops?

Answer (3): No.

Question (4): There seems to be some confusion regarding the wording of 2.4.7, A17.1–2000. The statement "The top of car clearance shall be not less than the greater of the following" is followed by two options (a) and (b). The words "greater of the following" do not seem clear. Is the intended meaning of this wording actually saying, "The car top clearance shall be not less than the highest point measured as described in the following two options" (a) or (b)?

Answer (4): Yes. The requirements of 2.4.7 are clear but do not apply to private residence elevators.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-42

Subject: Requirement 2.7.5.1 and Rule 101.5a

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1a–2002, and A17.1–1996, respectively

Question: Does either 2.7.5.1 or Rule 101.5a require the light control switch for the machine room to be located inside the machine room?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-44

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.1.6(e)

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1a–2002

Question: Does 2.27.3.1.6(e) prohibit the following scenario?

Scenario: Being used are door operators with torque-limiting or anti-stall provisions on horizontally sliding type entrances. Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is activated with the car at a landing and the car and hoistway doors open. The elevator has an electronic reopening device that is rendered inoperative and the doors begin to go closed at a reduced closing speed. While the doors are in the process of closing, they are blocked by holding them with a hand, or other body part, sufficient to cause the doors to stall. After a brief period of time, the doors reopen fully (or sometimes partially) and subsequently begin the closing cycle again. This close and reopening cycle will continue as long as the stall inducing obstruction remains.

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-46

Subject: Requirements 2.2.2.3 and 6.1.3.15

Edition: A17.1–2000 including A17.1b–2003

Question (1):
(a) What constitutes the permanent provisions mentioned in 2.2.2.3?
(b) What constitutes the permanent provisions mentioned in 6.1.3.15?

Answer (1):
(a) The requirement is performance based. It requires a means to continuously prevent the accumulation of ground water that does not require human intervention.
(b) The requirement is performance based. It requires a means to continuously prevent the accumulation of water that does not require human intervention.

Question (2): Are drains and sump pumps the only approved permanent provisions for:
(a) elevators?
(b) escalators?

Answer (2):
(a) Requirement 2.2.2.3 does not specify any approved permanent provisions.
(b) Requirement 6.1.3.15 does not specify any approved permanent provisions.

Question (3): Does either of the two above-referenced requirements permit a permanent provision to be achieved by the design and construction of the pit:
(a) for elevators?
(b) for escalators?

Answer (3):
(a) Yes, if it prevents the accumulation of groundwater.
(b) Yes, if it prevents the accumulation of water.

Question (4): Does every pit require either a drain or a sump pump:
(a) for elevators?
(b) for escalators?

Answer (4):
(a) No, except when firefighters' emergency operation is provided, see 2.2.2.5.
(b) No, see responses to Questions (2)(b) and (3)(b).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-48

Subject: Requirement 2.26.9.4

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question (1): Is it required that when any of the listed failures occurs and the car is running, that it be immediately taken out of service and not have to wait until the elevator has stopped at a landing?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Is it required that when any of the listed failures is detected and the car is running, that it be immediately taken out of service and not have to wait until the elevator has stopped at a landing?

Answer (2): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-49

Subject: Requirement 2.26.9.3(e)

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question (1): Does 2.26.9.3(e) require that any of the failures listed in 2.26.9.3 not render ineffective any hoistway door interlock or car door or gate electric contact anytime the bypass switch or access switch is in the "OFF" position, not just when the switch is turned from the "BYPASS" to the "OFF" position?

Answer (1): Requirement 2.26.9.3(e) applies anytime the switch is in the "OFF" position.

Question (2): Does this requirement apply to car door interlocks?

Answer (2): No.

Question (3): Does this requirement apply to hoistway door electric contacts?

Answer (3): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-50

Subject: Requirement 2.14.1.7.3

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question: Does an operation that automatically causes the car to run at a speed not exceeding inspection speed whenever a person has opened and then closed a hoistway door, where the car is not present, conflict with 2.14.1.7.3? A means would be provided for elevator personnel to return the car to automatic operation.

Answer: No. The operation described is not related to 2.14.1.7.3.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: September 21, 2005

Inquiry: 05-53

Subject: Requirement 2.7.5.2

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1–2004

Background: This requirement states that the temperature and humidity range for the elevator equipment in the machine room shall be permanently posted in the machine room.

Question (1): Where inside of the machine room may this information be posted?
(a) on the inside of one or all of the controllers?
(b) on the outside of one or all of the controllers?
(c) on or next to the disconnect?
(d) on the machine room door?
(e) on the machine room wall?
(f) anywhere inside of the machine room?

Answer (1): The Code does not specify the location where the information is posted in the machine room.

Question (2): Which of the following would be considered a means of "permanently" posting this information?
(a) a self-adhesive paper or film type of label with the lettering either typed or printed from a thermal transfer, laser, inkjet, or dot matrix printer?
(b) a self-adhesive plastic tape label with raised letters?
(c) a data tag or nameplate permanently attached, with the letters and symbols hot-stamped, silk-screened, etched, cast, or otherwise permanently applied to the face?

Answer (2): The Code does not specify the means of posting the information. "Permanent" refers to legible for the entire life cycle of the equipment.

Question (3): Are there any minimum requirements on the size of the label/data tag or lettering?

Answer (3): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-54

Subject: Requirements 2.27.3.3.1(c) and 2.27.3.3.7

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question (1): Does the Code require "DOOR OPEN" and "DOOR CLOSE" buttons to also be on the car operating panel, in addition to inside the fire operation cabinet?

Answer (1): This requirement does not require "DOOR OPEN" or "DOOR CLOSE" buttons that are publicly accessible. Other requirements may apply (e.g., A17.1, Section 2.13).

Question (2): Does the cover have to open automatically or is this an option?

Answer (2): This is an option.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-55

Subject: Rules 301.8 and 300.1

Edition: A17.1–1996

Background: All questions pertain to a roped-hydraulic elevator with governor-actuated car safeties.

Question (1): Is a roped-hydraulic elevator permitted to have the overspeed governor in the pit of the elevator hoistway?

Answer (1): The location of overspeed governors is not addressed by A17.1–1996, Rules 301.8 and 300.1 or their references; therefore, it is neither required nor prohibited.

Question (2): A roped-hydraulic elevator with the overspeed governor mounted in the pit has as the only means of access to the governor the normal pit access means — is it acceptable?

Answer (2): Access to overspeed governors is not addressed by A17.1–1996, Rules 301.8 and 300.1 or their references; therefore, it is neither required nor prohibited.

Question (3): If a roped-hydraulic elevator has the overspeed governor mounted in the overhead space of the hoistway, is a separate door required to gain access to the governor?

Answer (3): See answer to Question (2).

Question (4): If a roped-hydraulic elevator has the overspeed governor mounted in the overhead space of the hoistway, is it acceptable to access the governor from the elevator car top?

Answer (4): See answer to Question (2).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-56

Subject: Requirement 3.17, Car Safeties

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1b–2003

Question (1): Do 3.17.1 and 2.17 require all roped-hydraulic elevators to be equipped with overspeed governors?

Answer (1): Yes, for car safeties.

Question (2): Does A17.1b–2003 require the primary means of actuating the safeties on a roped-hydraulic elevator to be an overspeed governor?

Answer (2): Yes.

Question (3): For A17.1b–2003 compliance, are all roped–hydraulic elevators required to be equipped with overspeed governors?

Answer (3): Yes. See answer to Question (1).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-57

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.2.6

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question (1): The last sentence states, "When activated, heat detector [2.27.3.2.1(d)] in the machine room shall cause the visual signal...", etc. Should not the word "heat detector" be replaced with "fire alarm initiating device" so that a smoke detector installed in the machine room for the purpose of initiating Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, would cause the same action to occur?

Answer (1): No. See Inquiry 04-31.

Question (2): Should not the referenced part [2.27.3.2.1(d)] actually be [2.27.3.2.1(b)]?

Answer (2): No. Requirement 2.27.3.2.1(d) has been approved by the ASME A17 Standards Committee for publication in the next edition of A17.1.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-58

Subject: Rules 215.1 and 1200.6; Section 8.9 (Code Data Plate)

Edition: A17.1–1996; A17.1–2000; A17.1–2004

Background: These Rules/Requirements mandate that a Code Data Plate indicating the A17.1 Code to be used for inspections and tests be provided and securely attached either to the main line disconnect or on the controller in plain view. Furthermore, the data plate must be of such material and construction that the letters and figures are permanent and readily legible and the height of the letters must be not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.2 mm).

Question (1): If the Code Data Plate is mounted inside of the controller, does this comply with the requirement for the Code Data Plate to be in plain view?

Answer (1): Yes, if it is readily visible with the door open.

Question (2): Does a self-adhesive paper or film type of label with the lettering either typed or printed from a thermal transfer, laser, inkjet, or dot matrix printer comply with the material, construction, and lettering requirements?

Answer (2): There is insufficient information provided to respond.

Question (3): On an alteration, does a Code Data Plate that only lists the A17.1 Code in effect at the time of the alteration comply with this requirement (i.e., the A17.1 Code in effect at the time of the original installation is not listed; nor are the applicable Rules/Requirements from Table 1200/Appendix L listed)?

Answer (3): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-59

Subject: Requirement 2.14.2.2, Openings Prohibited

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): Does 2.14.2.2, last sentence ("Such panels, where provided, shall conform to....") apply to (f) only, or does it apply to (a) through (f)?

Answer (1): The last paragraph applies to (f) only.

Question (2): If it applies to (a) through (f), does the Code require car-operating panels to have an electric contact required by 2.14.1.10.2(g)?

Answer (2): See answer to Question (1).

Question (3): Was it intentional that 2.14.1.10.2(g)(1) and (2) are identical?

Answer (3): No, duplication was not intended.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-60

Subject: Requirement 2.19.3.2, Emergency Brake Requirements

Edition: A17.1–2004 including through A17.1S–2005

Question: Is it permitted to apply the emergency brake to a stationary or moving braking surface when on continuous pressure operation (e.g., continuous pressure inspection operation, inspection operation with open door circuits, or hoistway access operation)? In other words, can the driving-machine brake and emergency brake be applied simultaneously to a moving braking surface when on continuous pressure operation?

Answer: The Code does not address this issue. The operation described is neither required nor prohibited.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-61

Subject: Rule 103.2(a)(1), Counterweight Guards

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question (1): Does this Rule require that more than one compensating rope or chain must be used in order for the guard to be omitted?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Can the guard be omitted if only one compensating rope or chain is used?

Answer (2): Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-62

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.2.6

Edition: A17.1a–2005

Question: If the fire alarm initiating device that initiated Phase I Emergency Recall Operation becomes reset while the elevator is still on Phase I or Phase II Operation, may the intermittent illumination of the visual signal be reset immediately?

Answer: Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-63

Subject: Requirements 2.27.3.1.6(l) and 2.27.3.3.1(k)

Edition: A17.1a–2005

Background: Elevator control systems typically include a motor thermal protection device, which shuts down the elevator due to the motor overheating. The purpose of the device is to prevent damage to the motor from overheating and even possibly a motor fire.

Question: Is the operation of a motor thermal protection device permitted to prevent Phase I or Phase II operation until the device is reset?

Answer: Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-64

Subject: Requirement 3.18.3.8.2(a) and (c), and 3.18.3.8.3(b), Method of Monitoring Cylinder Corrosion Protection

Edition: A17.1–2000

Question (1): When a cylinder is installed in PVC or covered or encased in a corrosion protective material that completely surrounds the exterior surface as specified in 3.18.3.8.3(b), should the manufacturer or installer of this corrosive protective system be required to furnish instructions describing the recommended means of monitoring, maintaining, and checking ongoing compliance in accordance with the requirements of 3.18.3.8.2(a) and (c)?

Answer (1): Furnishing instructions is not addressed by A17.1–2000, Part 3. Requirements in Part 3 do not designate responsibility for compliance to any particular party.

Question (2): If any substance is added into the space between the cylinder and the material that completely covers and encases the exterior surface of the cylinder, should the manufacturer or installer of this added substance be required to furnish instructions describing the recommended means for monitoring, maintaining, and checking ongoing compliance in accordance with the requirements of 3.18.3.8.2(a) and (c)?

Answer (2): See answer to Question (1).

Question (3): If instructions, as referred above, are required, should they be permanently kept in the machine room, or other accessible place, for use by the maintenance personnel?

Answer (3): See answer to Question (1).

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-65

Subject: Requirements 2.27.1.2(b) and 2.27.1.1.3(h)

Edition: A17.1–2000 and A17.1–2004, respectively

Question (1): Does this mean that the in-car communication device can call 911?

Answer (1): The Code does not prohibit this, provided that the 911 centers conform to all applicable requirements of 2.27.1.

Question (2): Is the intent of the Code to have the communications means call an individual or company that is trained in elevator operations? If so, what level of training should the individual possess?

Answer (2): The call is required to go to authorized personnel who have been instructed on the appropriate response to be taken.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: January 25, 2006

Inquiry: 05-66

Subject: Requirement 1.1(e), Certification of Other Electrical Equipment

Edition: CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5–2004

Background: Requirement 2.26.4.2 limits application of A17.5 to testing of "drive-machine controllers, logic controllers, and operating devices accessory thereto for starting, stopping, regulating, controlling, or protecting electric motors, generators, or other equipment." There is no specific requirement for listing/certifying hoistway door, car door or gate, or retiring cam motors.

Requirement 2.26.4.1 requires electrical components to comply with NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code). According to NFPA 70, listing/certification of motors is not required.

ASME A17.5, requirement 1.1(e) states, "all other electrical equipment not listed/certified and labeled/marked according to another product safety standard or code."

Question (1): Do hoistway door motors, car door motors or gate motors, and retiring cam motors require listing/certification?

Answer (1): Yes, a listing/certification is required. See B44.1/A17.5-2004 Clause 1.1(e).

Question (2): If the answer to Question (1) is "yes," do both new and replacement hoistway door motors, car door motors or gate motors, and retiring cam motors require listing/certification?

Answer (2): For new equipment, see answer to Question (1). Replacement equipment must meet the requirements of A17.1, requirement 8.6.3.7.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-67

Subject: Rule 306.15, Low Oil Protection

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question: This Rule mandates that activation of the low oil means shall automatically bring the car down to the lowest landing and cycle the doors. If a fire recall signal is received before the car has cycled its doors, are the doors still required to cycle automatically when the car reaches the bottom floor, even though the bottom floor is not the fire recall floor (assume that the door open button remains operative as required)?

Answer: Yes.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-68

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.1.5, Illuminated Visual Signal(s) for "FIRE RECALL" Switch(es)

Edition: A17.1–2000 and A17.1–2004

Background: This Rule mandates that all "FIRE RECALL" switches must be provided with an illuminated visual signal to indicate when Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is in effect.

Question (1): Is it permitted for the Phase I visual signal to remain illuminated throughout fire service operation, even when Phase I is no longer in effect (i.e., in the situation where Phase I has been reset, but one or more of the cars in a group remain on Phase II operation)?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): In this scenario, assume that one or more cars in a group are away from the recall floor on Phase II operation, but Phase I is no longer in effect; the Phase I illuminated signal has been turned off and the remaining cars in the group have been returned to automatic operation. Must the Phase I visual signal(s) required by 2.27.3.1.5 illuminate when a car that is still on Phase II operation has its Phase II switch turned to the "OFF" position and the car therefore begins its recall to the designated level in conformance with 2.27.3.1.6(a) through (m)?

Answer (2): No, it shall not illuminate since the car does not revert to Phase I but remains on Phase II.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-69

Subject: Requirements 2.27.2.4.5, 2.27.3.1.6(l), and 2.27.3.4, Emergency Power Selector Switches and Fire Service

Edition: A17.1–2004

Background: Requirement 2.27.2.4.5 states that operation of the selector switch(es) shall not cause power to be removed from any elevator until the elevator is stopped. Requirement 2.27.3.4 mandates that restoration of electrical power following a power interruption shall not cause any elevator to be removed from Phase I Emergency Recall Operation or Phase II Emergency In-Car Operation. Additionally, 2.27.3.1.6(l) states that "Means used to remove elevators from normal operation, other than as specified in this Code, shall not prevent Phase I Emergency Recall Operation."

In this scenario, assume that a group is switched over to the emergency power generator due to loss of normal power, and the emergency power selector switch is set to override automatic power selection; then Fire Phase I is activated.

Question: Is the activation of Fire Phase I required to cause each car in the group to return to the fire recall floor one or more at a time (depending on the capability of the emergency power generator), regardless of the position of the emergency power selector switch(es)?

Answer: No, only the car(s) selected by the emergency power selector switch recalls.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 05-70

Subject: Requirement 2.27.4.2

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question (1): When activated, should a heat detector in the machine room illuminate a visual signal?

Answer (1): Yes, the visual signals in the car shall illuminate intermittently.

Question (2): Should the heat detector interrupt the power supply?

Answer (2): This issue is not addressed by the Code. See 2.8.2.3.2.

Question (3): When referring to 2.27.3.2.1(d), was the (d) a misprint?

Answer (3): No, see Inquiry 04-31. Requirement 2.27.3.2.1(d) has been approved by the ASME A17 Standards Committee for publication in the next edition of A17.1.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 06-03

Subject: Rule 302.3h(2)

Edition: A17.1–1996

Question: Interpretation of the term "coating" is requested. The subject elevator lost all fluid through its cylinder 5 years after installation. The cylinder was wrapped in a rubber-like tape and was inserted in a 27 ft deep hole. The cylinder was stabilized by filling the hole with the rock and concrete taken from the hole. It has been indicated that taping the cylinder satisfied the provisions of A17.1, Rule 302.3h(2) which states "a coating to protect the cylinder and piping from corrosion that will withstand the installation process;..."

Which interpretation is correct?

(a) "taping" is the same as "coating"

(b) "coating" refers to application of a material, like asphalt, applied by brushing on or spraying.

Answer: Any coating method that protects the cylinder and piping from corrosion and will withstand the installation process is acceptable.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 06-06

Subject: Requirement 2.27.3.3

Edition: A17.1–2000 With the 2003 Addenda

Background: Requirement 2.27.3.3.3 has specific requirements for the operation of doors when the Phase II in-car operation switch is returned to the "OFF" position when a car is at a landing other than the recall level. We have encountered a situation that we believe to be a violation and we request your help in determining if we are correct. The situation is as follows:

The fire alarm initiating device at the designated landing is activated. The elevator is recalled to the alternate recall level. The inspector enters the car and places the in-car Phase II switch into the "ON" position, but does not take the car away from the alternate recall level. While still at the alternate recall level, the in-car Phase II switch is returned to the "OFF" position. Then the doors immediately close and the elevator returns to the designated landing and opens the doors. Without an appreciable delay, the doors then close and the car is returned to the alternate recall level where it remains with the doors open. While all this is taking place, the fire alarm initiating device has remained in the same condition that precipitated the recall to the alternate recall level in the first place. No other fire alarm initiating devices have been activated.

Question: Is operation of the elevator described above permitted by 2.27.3?

Answer: No. The car shall not move since it is at the recall level with the doors open. Under this scenario, the doors shall not close in response to the Phase II key being moved to the "OFF" position.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 06-07

Subject: Sections 2.29 and 8.7

Edition: A17.1–2000 including through A17.1b–2003

Question (1): Do alterations to electric elevators require compliance with Section 2.29?

Answer (1): No.

Question (2): Do alterations to hydraulic elevators require compliance with Section 2.29?

Answer (2): No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 06-08

Subject: Requirements 6.1.6.3.2, 6.1.6.3.3, 6.1.6.3.4, 6.1.6.3.8, 6.1.6.3.10, 6.1.6.3.11, 6.1.6.3.13, 6.1.6.3.15, 6.1.6.3.16, 6.1.6.4, 6.1.6.5, 6.1.6.14; the Equivalent Requirements for Moving Walks; the Definition of *manual reset, escalator,* and *moving walk;* and Equivalent Rules in A17.1–1996 through A17.1d–2000

Edition: A17.1–2004, A17.1–2000 through A17.1b–2003, and A17.1–1996 through A17.1d–2000

Background: The escalator and moving walk Electrical Protective Devices (EPDs) as well as devices such as the Missing Step or Missing Pallet detectors, when activated, are required to "cause power to be removed from the driving-machine motor and brake," thereby effecting a stop of the operating equipment. Further, if a stop is effected by an EPD that has a manual reset requirement, then a means, not accessible to the general public, requiring personal intervention by an authorized person prior to restarting the escalator or moving walk is required to be performed "prior to restarting the escalator or moving walk."

In summary, manual reset safety, device activation effects a stop of the escalator or moving walk and a manual reset requirement is registered and must be performed prior to restarting the escalator or moving walk.

Question: Do these requirements along with the definition of manual reset, escalator and moving walk, require a manual reset upon the momentary activation of any of the prescribed manual reset safety devices while the escalator or moving walk is not operating and is at rest?

Answer: No. Manual reset is only required when the escalator operation is stopped by the activation of a manual reset safety device.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 06-09

Subject: Figure 2.27.9

Edition: A17.1a–2005 and A17.1S–2005

Background: The words "Use Exit" are underlined in Fig. 2.27.9. They are not underlined in the public review draft for A17.1a–2005. They are underlined in the public review draft for A17.1S–2005.

Question: Do the words "Use Exit" have to be underlined?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 06-13

Subject: Requirement 8.9.3, Code Data Plate

Edition: A17.1–2000; A17.1–2004 including through A17.1a–2005

Question: Does the following meet the requirements of 8.9.3 (assume letters and figures are at least 3.2 mm in height):

(a) a plate made of metal or durable plastic, which is printed with indelible ink or with engraved, etched, embossed, or raised lettering, and securely fastened using screws, rivets, or permanent adhesive?

(b) a self-adhesive, industrial strength, durable, film-type label, printed with indelible lettering, which is difficult to remove once applied?

(c) a self-adhesive, industrial strength, durable, film-type label, printed with indelible lettering, which is easily removed once applied?

(d) a type-written or computer-printed, paper-type label that is either self-adhesive or taped-on, which is easily removed once applied?

Answer: ASME does not "approve," "certify," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 06-14

Subject: Requirement 8.4, Elevator Safety Requirements for Seismic Risk Zone 2 or Greater

Edition: A17.1–2004 including A17.1a–2005

Background: Currently, A17.1a–2005, requirement 8.4.13 shows for building codes of the United States, if we know the Affected Peak Velocity Acceleration A_v, we can find the applicable seismic zone.

The 2000 or 2003 International Building Code, which is being adopted throughout the country, does not refer to seismic zones 0 through 4, nor is earthquake ground motion expressed in Affected Peak Velocity Acceleration A_v.

The 2000 or 2003 IBC uses the seismic design parameters as follows:

(a) Site class

(b) Seismic use group

(c) Seismic design category

(d) Component importance factor, I_p

(e) Seismicity: short period spectral response acceleration, S_s

(f) Seismicity: 1-second period spectral response acceleration, S_1

Question: How do these parameters relate to the elevator Code so that I can determine if the seismic requirements of A17.1a–2005, Section 8.4, must be met for a project following under 2000 or 2003 IBC guidelines?

Answer: The parameters you cite do not align or correlate with A17.1a–2005 requirements.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

Inquiry: 06-16

Subject: Requirement 2.20.3

Edition: A17.1–2004

Question: When determining the factor of safety for suspension ropes used with an elevator with Class C2 Industrial Truck Loading, is it required to include 150% of the rated load in the weight calculation?

Answer: No.

A17 Standards Committee Approval: May 10, 2006

INTERPRETATIONS INDEX

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1–2000 AND LATER EDITIONS			
1.3	05a	05-33	28
	00	01-53	25
2.1.2.1	00	01-61	25
2.1.3.1.1	00	01-61	25
2.1.6	00	04-18	28
2.1.6.2	04	05-23	28
2.2.2.3	03b	05-46	28
2.2.2.5	00	03-30	27
2.2.4.2	04	04-47	28
	02a	03-06	27
	02a	02-26	28
	00	01-57	25
2.3.2	00	02-07	25
2.4.2.1b	03b	05-03	28
2.4.7b	03b	05-41	28
2.4.12.1	00	02-04	25
2.7.2.2	04	04-46	28
2.7.5.1	02a	05-42	28
2.7.5.2	04	05-53	28
2.8.1.2	02a	03-16	27
	00	03-14	27
2.11.3.2	00	01-21	25
2.11.7.1	00	02-23	25
2.11.7.2	00	02-02	25
2.11.10.1.2	04	04-52	28
2.12.5	00	01-15	25
2.12.5.1	04	04-43	28
2.12.5.3	04	04-43	28
2.12.6.2.3	04	04-51	28
2.12.7	02a	04-23	28
2.12.7.1.2	00	03-36	27
2.12.7.3	00	04-36	28
2.12.7.3.3	02a	03-33	27
2.13.4.2.3	00	04-11	28
2.13.5	00	02-22	26
2.14.1.5.1	04	05-19	28
2.14.1.7.3	04	05-50	28
2.14.1.8	00	02-02	25
2.14.2.2	00	05-59	28
2.14.7.1	00	02-05	25
2.14.7.1.3	00	04-20	28
2.14.7.2	02a	03-50	27
2.15.6.4	00	02-40	26
2.15.7	00	03-39	27
2.15.9	04	04-52	28
2.15.9.3	00	04-09	28
2.16.3.2.2e	03b	05-14	28
2.17.3	00	01-60	25
2.17.5.2	02a	03-02	27
2.17.16	03b	05-14	28
2.17.17	02a	04-12	28
2.18.5.3	00	03-25	27
2.18.7	04	05-34	28
2.18.7.2	04	05-37	28
2.18.9	00	03-25	27
2.19	00	04-48	28
A17.1–2000 AND LATER EDITIONS (Cont'd)			
2.19 (Cont'd)			
	00	02-34	26
2.19.1.2a	00	04-30	28
2.19.2	00	04-33	28
	00	04-29	28
2.19.2.2a	00	04-30	28
2.19.3	00	02-24	26
	00	01-51	26
2.19.3.2	05s	05-60	28
	00	04-50	28
2.20.1	00	03-13	27
2.20.3	04	06-16	28
2.20.9.5	00	01-43	26
2.22.4.10.3	02a	04-12	28
2.23.6	02a	03-02	27
2.23.9.3	00	02-31	26
2.24.8.2	00	04-50	28
2.25.3.4	00	02-58	26
2.25.4.1.9	00	03-53	27
2.26.2.21	04	04-21	28
2.26.2.33	04	04-21	28
2.26.3	02	03-11	28
2.26.5	00	03-22	27
	00	03-12	26
2.26.6	00	01-40	25
2.26.9.3	05a	05-33	28
	03b	04-49	28
2.26.9.3e	04	05-49	28
2.26.9.4	05a	05-33	28
	04	05-48	28
	03b	04-49	28
	00	03-52	27
2.27.1.1.1	00	01-24	25
2.27.1.1.3	02a	03-16	27
2.27.1.1.3h	04	05-65	28
2.27.1.1.5	02a	03-16	27
2.27.1.2b	00	05-65	28
2.27.2	00	03-43	27
2.27.2.3	02a	03-32	27
2.27.2.4.3	00	01-21	25
2.27.2.4.5	04	05-69	28
	03b	04-42	28
2.27.3	00	02-55	26
2.27.3.1.5	04	05-68	28
2.27.3.1.6	03b	03-48	27
	02a	03-28	27
	00	03-34	27
	00	03-21	27
A17.1–2000 AND LATER EDITIONS (Cont'd)			
2.27.3.1.6 (Cont'd)			
	00	03-15	28
2.27.3.1.6e	02a	05-44	28
2.27.3.1.6f	03b	04-28	28
2.27.3.1.6l	05a	05-63	28
	04	05-69	28
2.27.3.2	02a	03-17	28
	00	02-08	25
2.27.3.2.3	00	02-48	26
2.27.3.2.4	00	03-51	28
2.27.3.2.5	00	03-15	28
2.27.3.2.6	05a	05-62	28
	04	05-57	28
	04	04-31	28
2.27.3.3	03b	06-06	28
	00	05-28	28
2.27.3.3.1	03b	04-32	28
	03b	03-48	27
	02a	03-28	27
2.27.3.3.1b	03	04-28	28
2.27.3.3.1c	04	05-54	28
	04	04-34	28
2.27.3.3.1k	05a	05-63	28
2.27.3.3.1m	04	04-35	28
	04	04-21	28
2.27.3.3.2	00	02-41	26
2.27.3.3.4	00	02-09	27
	00	01-18	25
2.27.3.3.7	04	05-54	28
	04	05-26	28
	04	04-21	28
2.27.3.4	04	05-69	28
2.27.4.2	04	05-70	28
2.27.5.3	00	02-10	25
2.27.9	05s	06-09	28
	05a	05-24	28
2.29	03b	06-07	28
3.1	00	01-61	25
3.4.2.2	00	04-13	28
3.4.4	00	04-13	28
3.4.7	00	04-13	28
3.7	00	04-22	28
3.17	03b	05-56	28
3.18.3.7	00	03-45	27
	00	02-03	25
3.18.3.8	00	02-49	26
3.18.3.8.2a	00	05-64	28
3.18.3.8.2b	00	05-64	28

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1–2000 AND LATER EDITIONS (Cont'd)			
3.18.3.8.2b (Cont'd)			
	00	04-54	28
3.18.3.8.2c	00	05-64	28
3.18.4.2	00	01-38	25
3.24.3.3	00	03-31	27
3.24.4.1	00	01-39	25
3.25.1	00	03-46	27
3.26.1	00	02-45	26
3.26.3	00	02-45	26
3.26.6.2	00	03-46	27
3.26.8	04	04-55	28
	02a	03-38	27
3.26.9	00	02-25	25
	00	01-33	25
	00	01-26	25
3.27	00	03-43	27
3.27.1	00	01-34	25
3.27.2	00	01-34	25
3.27.3	04	05-22	28
5.2.1.12	00	01-36	25
5.2.1.15	00	01-36	25
5.3.1.1	00	01-20	25
5.3.1.3	03b	05-41	28
5.3.1.7.2	04	05-12	28
5.3.1.7.4	00	03-40	27
5.3.1.8	04	04-39	28
5.3.1.9.2b	00	04-09	28
5.3.1.16	02a	02-39	26
5.3.1.16.2	02a	05-32	28
5.3.2.2.1	02a	05-32	28
5.4.7.1	00	05-16	28
5.7.19	02a	04-27	28
Part 6	00	01-27	25
6.1	02a	03-09	26
6.1.3.1.10.2	00	05-07	28
6.1.3.3.8	03b	03-42	27
6.1.3.5.6	03b	04-15	28
6.1.3.6.6	00	03-44	27
6.1.3.15	03b	05-46	28
6.1.6.3.2	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.3.3	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.3.4	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.3.8	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.3.10	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.3.13	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.3.15	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.3.16	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.4	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.5	04	06-08	28
6.1.6.7	00	05-31	28
	00	03-08	26
6.1.6.9.2	00	04-58	28
6.1.6.14	04	06-08	28
6.1.7.3.2	00	03-58	28
6.2.6.3.11	00	01-55	25
6.2.6.8.2	00	04-58	28

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1–2000 AND LATER EDITIONS (Cont'd)			
Part 7	00	05-01	28
7.4	04	05-15	28
7.5	04	05-15	28
	04	04-25	28
7.5.1.2	00	01-42	26
7.5.6.1	00	03-13	27
7.6	04	05-15	28
Part 8	02a	04-14	28
8.1	04	04-21	28
	02a	03-50	27
	00	05-02	28
8.1.1	00	03-49	27
8.3.3	00	03-40	27
8.4	05a	06-14	28
	00	03-24	27
8.4.4.1.2	00	01-48	25
8.4.10.1.3	03b	03-54	27
	02a	03-17	28
	00	03-19	28
8.6.1.4	00	03-03	26
8.6.1.6.5	00	02-13	27
8.6.3.6	00	02-14	25
8.6.3.8	00	03-10	27
8.6.4.10.1	00	05-06	28
8.6.4.11.1	03b	05-03	28
8.6.5.8	02a	02-33	28
	00	01-47	25
8.6.8.2	00	01-46	25
8.6.8.3	03b	03-37	27
	00	02-50	26
	00	01-46	25
8.6.8.4	00	02-12	25
8.6.8.8	00	05-11	28
8.6.9	02a	05-38	28
8.7	03b	06-07	28
	00	02-11	26
8.7.2	02	03-11	28
8.7.2.10.2	02a	02-56	26
	00	05-35	28
8.7.2.10.3	02a	02-56	26
8.7.2.10.4	02a	02-56	26
8.7.2.11.4	02a	04-23	28
8.7.2.13	02a	02-57	26
8.7.2.17.1	03b	05-17	28
8.7.2.25.1	00	03-18	27
8.7.2.27.5	03b	05-18	28
	00	04-24	28
8.7.2.27.6	03b	04-56	28
	00	04-24	28
8.9	04	05-58	28
8.9.3	05a	06-13	28
8.10.2.2.2	00	02-18	25
	00	01-60	25
8.10.3.3.2o	00	05-36	28
8.11.4.2.19	03b	03-37	27
8.11.4.2.20	03b	03-37	27

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1–2000 AND LATER EDITIONS (Cont'd)			
Part 8 (Cont'd)			
8.11.4.2.20 (Cont'd)			
	00	01-52	25
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS			
Preface	95b	96-79	21
Section 1	96	98-24	23
	95b	98-21	23
	95b	97-38	22
	92b	94-27	19
	92b	94-12	18
	86d	87-31	12
	86c	86-41	10
	84	86-46	11
	84	86-1	9
	84	85-46	9
	81	83-18	5
	76g	78-55	1
	76g	78-45	1
	76g	78-35	1
	76g	78-16	1
	76g	77-52	1
	75f	76-38	1
	74c	75-1	1
	71	84-13	5
Section 2	95b	96-79	21
	87	89-4	13
Section 3	99c	99-48	24
	99c	99-47	24
	96	04-59	28
	96	03-41	27
	94a	95-36	20
	92b	94-30	19
	92b	94-19	19
	91a	94-52	19
	90	96-62	21
	90	92-47	17
	90	91-28	17
	88a	90-23	14
	87	90-8	17
	86d	87-31	12
	86c	86-41	10
	84	86-46	11
	81	83-18	5
	78	79-39	2
	76g	78-16	1
	75f	76-54	1
	75f	76-38	1
	74c	75-2	1
Part I			
100.1	96	99-46	24
	93	94-61	19
	88a	89-13	13
	76g	78-27	1
100.1a	93	96-70	21

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)

Part I (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
100.1a (Cont'd)			
	90	96-62	21
	87	94-14	19
	81	84-58	6
	80b	81-64	3
	76g	78-50	1
	76g	78-14	1
	75f	76-32	1
	75f	76-12	1
	74c	75-3	1
	73b	74-1	1
	72a	73-1	1
	71	72-1	1
100.1b	93	95-1	19
	76b	78-57	1
	76g	77-55	1
	73b	74-2	1
100.1c	92b	93-64	19
	88a	90-30	15
	87	89-3	13
	87	89-1	13
	86d	87-35	12
	86c	87-16	12
	84	86-58	11
	81	84-86	7
	81	84-58	6
	80b	81-64	3
	80b	81-52	3
	72a	73-1	1
100.1d	78	79-21	1
	76g	78-18	1
	76g	77-55	1
	76g	77-19	1
	74c	75-7	1
	72a	73-2	1
100.2a	80b	82-34	4
	78	79-12	1
100.2b	80b	82-34	4
100.2c	78	84-51	6
100.3	96	99-45	24
	96	97-35	22
	82a	84-25	5
100.3a	81	82-43	4
	81	82-37	4
	79a	80-35	2
100.3b	89b	91-25	17
	81	83-13	4
100.3d	76g	77-10	1
100.3e	78	81-19	3
100.4	87	89-5	13
	81	83-2	4
	73b	74-4	1
100.4a	80b	82-20	4
100.4b	76g	77-10	1
100.4c	81	83-2	4

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)

Part I (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
100.4c (Cont'd)			
	78	84-45	6
	76g	77-10	1
	73b	74-5	1
100.4d	80b	81-48	3
100.4e	75f	76-32	1
100.5	93	95-34	20
	90	92-62	17
	83b	85-29	9
	80b	81-48	3
	76g	77-60	1
	76g	77-51	1
	75f	76-32	1
100.6	96	02-29	25
	96	98-16	23
	93	95-34	20
	90	93-32	18
	90	92-62	17
	85b	89-25	14
	84	86-24	10
	84	85-31	8
	81	84-108	7
	81	82-52	4
	78	81-34	3
	76g	77-19	1
	74c	75-6	1
	74c	75-5	1
	74c	75-4	1
	73b	74-6	1
	72a	73-4	1
	72a	73-3	1
	71	72-2	1
100.6b	96	98-03	22
	93	97-46	22
	90	93-53	18
	89b	95-9	19
100.7	84	85-12	7
101.1	90	96-62	21
	74c	75-7	1
101.1a	96	99-28	24
	88a	89-47	14
	86c	90-7	14
	76g	78-57	1
	74c	75-36	1
	73b	74-8	1
	73b	74-7	1
101.2	96	01-04	24
	94a	01-17	25
	93	95-38	20
	90	94-55	19
	84	89-21	14
	80b	82-10	3
101.2a	90	92-29	17
101.2b	86c	89-16	13

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)

Part I (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
101.2b (Cont'd)			
	84	86-55	11
101.3	96	02-53	27
	96	99-41	24
	93	94-42	19
	85b	86-13	9
101.3a	85a	86-19	10
	81	82-43	4
101.3b	96	99-41	24
	85a	88-14	13
101.3c	90	95-24	20
	85a	88-14	13
	85a	85-65	9
	82a	88-43	14
	82a	84-25	5
	79a	80-35	2
	76g	77-4	1
	74c	75-9	1
	74c	75-8	1
101.3d	99c	00-04	24
	85b	86-13	9
	83b	89-2	13
	82a	84-25	5
	74c	75-11	1
	74c	75-10	1
101.3e	92b	93-29	18
101.4	92b	93-73	18
	92b	92-69	18
	79a	80-44	2
	73b	74-9	1
101.5a	96	05-42	28
	93	95-20	20
	91a	92-79	17
	88a	92-8	17
	84	84-104	7
101.5b	96	03-29	27
	96	98-07	23
	90	92-24	17
	89b	91-22	16
	88a	92-8	17
	79a	80-36	2
	76g	77-54	1
	71	72-3	1
101.6	93	95-40	20
	89b	90-29	15
	88a	90-60	15
	87e	87-19	13
101.7	86c	87-13	12
	85a	85-47	9
101.8d	94a	96-28b	21
	94a	96-28a	21
102	76g	78-62	1
102.1	96	00-05	24
	92b	93-46	18
	90	92-42	17

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part I (Cont'd)			
102.1 (Cont'd)			
	88a	90-60	15
	87	89-28	14
	86c	86-40	10
	84	85-9	7
	76g	78-53	1
	76g	78-10	1
	71	72-4	1
102.1a	84	87-4	11
	81	84-2	5
	81	82-51	4
	72a	73-5	1
	71	84-72	6
102.1b	84	90-70	15
	81	84-2	5
	81	84-35	5
	76g	77-17	1
	76g	77-6	1
	74c	75-12	1
102.1c	76g	77-17	1
	74c	75-13	1
	73b	74-10	1
	72a	73-6	1
102.2	98b	02-06	25
	93	99-43	24
	90	94-55	19
	90	93-50	18
	90	92-37	17
	90	92-3	16
	89b	90-66	15
	88a	92-54	17
	88a	92-11	17
	87	91-27	16
	87	89-28	14
	87	88-26	13
	87e	88-33	13
	87e	87-50	12
	86c	86-56	11
	85a	87-8	11
	85a	86-47	11
	85a	86-6	10
	84	89-21	14
	84	87-4	11
	84	85-63	10
	84	85-16	7
	83b	85-2	7
	83b	84-65	6
	81	86-8	9
	81	83-35	5
	78	84-51	6
	78	84-46	6
	78	82-12	3
	78	81-55	3
	78	81-13	3
	76g	78-15	1
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part I (Cont'd)			
102.2 (Cont'd)			
	76g	77-54	1
	76g	77-16	1
	75f	76-76	1
	75f	76-58	1
	73b	74-13	1
	73b	74-12	1
	73b	74-11	1
102.2c	00d	01-14	25
	00d	01-11	25
	99c	99-38	24
	97a	01-03	26
	97a	00-17	24
	96	00-05	24
	96	98-10	23
	96	98-04	22
	96	97-28	22
	94a	96-16	21
	93	97-01	22
	93	94-70	19
	93	94-69	19
	92b	94-40	19
	92b	94-28	19
	92b	94-13	18
	92b	94-13a	25
	92b	93-66	19
	90	92-60	17
102.2d	96	04-60	28
	96	98-10	23
	96	97-28	22
	93	95-27	20
	93	95-26	20
102.4c	93	95-26	20
103	84	85-15	8
	45	82-47	4
103.1	72a	73-7	1
103.2a	96	05-61	28
103.2b	78	81-21	3
103.3	91a	92-74	17
	84	85-15	8
	78	81-21	3
104.1	86	93-71	18
	79a	81-9	3
	79a	81-7	3
	73b	74-14	1
105	78	82-7	3
	78	79-47	2
105.1	89b	91-25	17
105.2	82a	84-21	5
105.2a	78	82-7	3
105.2b	74c	75-14	1
105.3c	96	97-57	22
	93	96-61	22
105.4	96	97-57	22
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part I (Cont'd)			
105.4 (Cont'd)			
	81	83-4	4
105.5	96	97-57	22
	93	94-65	20
	87	88-35	13
	82a	84-21	5
	81	83-4	4
	74c	75-15	1
106.1	95b	96-44	21
	84	89-30	14
	80b	82-4	3
	80b	81-31	3
	78	84-51	6
106.1a	94a	95-31	20
106.1b	96	04-60	28
	96	03-27	27
	96	98-16	23
	96	97-56	22
	95b	96-60	21
	94a	96-08	20
	94a	95-12	20
	93	96-73	22
	93	95-33	21
	93	95-8	19
	93	94-44	19
	84	87-46	12
	78	79-7	1
	75f	76-36	1
	74c	75-16	1
	71	81-59	3
106.1d	96	01-23	25
	96	99-06	23
	96	97-15	22
	92b	93-46	18
	90	93-33	18
	87	88-39	13
	86	00-35	24
	84	86-15	9
	80b	81-31	3
106.1e	93	99-07	23
	84	84-104	7
	75f	76-73	1
106.1f	96	97-13	22
	94a	96-02	20
107.1	92b	93-10	18
	81	84-54	6
107.1a	96	98-14	23
	92b	93-10	17
	76g	77-39	1
107.1b	93	97-60	22
	92b	93-38	18
	89b	91-7	15
	82a	84-23	5
	81	86-32	10
	81	84-81	6

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)

Part I (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
107.1b (Cont'd)			
	81	84-73	6
	71	86-32	10
107.1d	81	84-54	6
107.1e	96	03-35	27
	92b	93-41	18
	92b	93-39	18
	81	84-54	6
107.1g	85a	85-42	9
107.1j	81	84-54	6
107.1k	96	97-24	22
	80b	81-41	3
	80b	81-24	3
108.1	90	91-54	16
108.1a	96	00-42	24
	84	87-45	12
108.1e	93	95-34	20
	90	99-10	23
	84	85-10	8
	80b	81-66	3
	79a	80-8	2
109.1	96	98-18	23
	89b	90-54	15
	80b	81-45	3
	78	79-24	1
110	88a	90-16	14
	78	79-28	2
110.1	87	88-41	13
	83b	84-84	6
	82a	84-22	6
	80b	82-27	4
	79a	80-38	2
	78	81-63	3
	78	81-34	3
	76g	78-57	1
110.1c	76g	78-65	1
110.2	96	03-20	27
110.2a	87	93-49	18
	87	88-30	13
110.2b	76g	77-43	1
	74c	75-17	1
110.2c	83b	84-78	6
110.3	97a	01-12	24
	93	95-7	19
	90	91-30	18
	85b	86-22	10
	76g	78-2	1
	74c	75-18	1
110.4	90	93-63	18
	82a	84-3	5
110.5	84	84-99	7
	82a	84-34	5
110.6	86c	86-52	11
	84	84-99	7
	81	84-37	6
110.6 (Cont'd)			
	80	91-49	16
	79a	80-30	2
	79a	80-2	2
	76g	78-70	1
	73b	74-17	1
	73b	74-16	1
	73b	74-15	1
110.7	96	03-20	27
	94a	95-30	20
	86d	87-35	12
	82a	84-53	6
	78	79-29	1
	76g	78-58	1
110.7a	90	91-56	20
110.7b	99c	00-19	24
	90	93-72	19
110.8	88a	90-32	15
110.10	96	04-16	28
110.10a	93	95-44	20
	92b	93-7	17
	90	99-10	23
	87	88-30	13
	84	84-99	7
	80b	81-66	3
	79a	80-8	2
	76g	78-17	1
110.11a	95b	96-68	21
110.11c	79a	81-6	3
	72a	73-8	1
110.11e	92b	94-2	19
	87	90-53	15
	87	88-31	13
	84	87-28	12
	81	83-42	5
	76g	78-64	1
	75f	76-12	1
110.11f	93	96-71	22
	87	89-15	13
110.11g	93	95-7	19
110.11h	93	96-71	27
	93	95-47	21
	93	95-39	21
110.12d	84	86-50	11
	80b	82-23	4
110.12h	84	86-35	10
110.14	79a	81-6	3
110.14b	72a	73-23	1
110.15a	93	94-48	20
110.16	82a	84-18	5
	72a	73-23	1
111.1b	79a	80-12	2
	75f	76-75	1
111.3a	00d	00-39	24
111.3b	81	87-29	12
111.3b (Cont'd)			
	76g	78-29	1
111.3c	90	91-52	19
111.4c	93	95-7	19
111.5	00d	01-15	25
	99c	00-30	25
111.5a	96	04-43	28
111.5c	96	04-43	28
	87	90-34	15
	87e	88-2	12
	81	87-29	12
	76g	78-48	1
111.6	92b	93-12	18
	83b	84-102	7
111.6a	93	96-23	22
	82a	85-40	8
111.6b	82a	85-40	8
111.7a	84	87-28	12
	83b	85-58	9
111.7b	83b	85-58	9
111.7c	87	89-39	14
111.8	80b	81-57	3
111.9	92b	93-46	18
	90	92-30	17
	80b	82-42	4
	80b	82-2	3
	73b	74-18	1
111.9a	85b	86-14	9
	85b	86-5	9
	78	79-26	1
111.9b	87	95-42	21
	78	79-26	1
	71	72-6	1
111.9c	96	98-11	23
	96	97-09	22
	90	92-41	17
	90	91-35	17
	89b	91-16	16
	89b	91-1	15
	87	88-36	13
	85b	86-14	9
	71	72-6	1
111.9d	85b	86-5	9
111.9e	76g	77-28	1
	76g	77-26	1
111.10	92b	93-46	18
	80b	82-42	4
	80b	82-2	3
	76g	77-28	1
	76g	77-17	1
	75f	76-71	1
	73b	74-18	1
	72a	73-10	1
111.12	94a	96-11	20
	94a	96-05	20

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part I (Cont'd)			
111.12 (Cont'd)			
	93	95-34	20
	90	93-55	18
	84	85-63	10
	84	85-10	8
	84	85-13	11
	84	85-12	7
	84	84-99	7
	81	85-28	8
	81	84-37	6
	80b	82-2	3
	80b	81-38	3
111.12a	94a	96-05	20
111.12b	94a	96-05	20
112	99c	00-16	24
	75f	76-79	1
112.1	96	97-08	22
112.2	96	97-08	22
112.2a	94a	96-17	21
	78	82-8	3
	76g	78-23	1
	74c	75-19	1
	72a	73-11	1
112.2b	75f	76-3	1
112.3	96	99-09	23
	96	97-08	22
	90	92-23	17
112.3b	99c	00-31	25
	78	81-60	3
112.3c	93	99-08	23
	83b	84-79	7
	79a	80-23	2
	76g	78-2	1
112.3d	93	94-54	19
	87	96-77	22
	76g	77-42	1
112.4	99c	00-38	25
	96	99-09	23
	93	98-15	23
	90	92-77	19
	85a	86-16	10
	81	83-28	5
	80b	82-21	4
	76g	78-59	1
	76g	77-59	1
	74c	75-20	1
112.5	96	02-17	27
	96	99-09	23
	93	99-08	23
	93	99-05	24
	93	96-78	22
	93	94-53	19
	93	94-23	19
	91c	92-63	17
	90	92-36	17

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part I (Cont'd)			
112.5 (Cont'd)			
	90	92-23	17
	87e	87-33	12
	84	85-43	9
	83b	84-111	7
	82a	84-20	6
	82a	84-14	5
	81	82-36	4
	79a	80-16	2
	76g	78-59	1
	76g	78-40	1
	76g	77-59	1
	74c	75-20	1
112.6	83b	84-95	7
112.6a	87	93-49	18
	83b	84-94	7
Part II			
200	86d	87-34	12
200.1	84	85-45	9
200.2	90	92-52	17
	84	86-42	10
200.2a	96	97-14	22
	79a	80-18	3
200.3	78	81-14	3
200.4a	81	83-7	4
	78	79-23	1
	76g	78-75	1
	74c	75-22	1
	74c	75-21	1
	73b	74-19	1
200.4c	87	88-4	13
	81	83-7	4
200.5	94a	95-37	20
	93	96-13	21
	81	83-7	4
200.5a	76g	78-75	1
	74c	75-22	1
200.5b	76g	78-75	1
200.8	78	83-14	4
200.9a	93	96-13	21
	93	95-32	20
200.9b	00d	00-40	24
	93	95-32	20
	79a	80-18	3
200.10	00d	00-40	24
	93	95-32	20
200.10a	88a	91-2	15
200.10c	93	95-32	20
201.1	91a	92-67	17
201.2	82a	84-50	7
201.3	91a	92-67	17
201.3b	96	98-18	23
	78	81-11	3
201.3c	86d	92-15	17

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part II (Cont'd)			
201.3c (Cont'd)			
	80b	81-51	3
201.4	97a	05-20	28
	76g	78-49	1
201.4a	96	98-18	23
	81	84-64	6
	80b	81-40	3
	75f	76-72	1
201.4b	81	84-64	6
201.4d	84	85-17	8
201.4e	89b	91-9	17
	85b	86-36	10
201.4g	83b	84-102	7
	76g	78-32	1
201.4h	82a	84-23	5
201.4k	85b	85-50	9
	83b	84-74	6
	80b	81-51	3
202	81	82-30	4
202.1	75f	76-49	1
202.1a	81	82-30	4
202.1b	76g	77-63	1
	75f	76-77	1
	75f	76-29	1
202.4	92b	93-60	18
	90	91-58	17
	84	85-64	9
203.2	90	92-22	17
	83b	84-109	7
203.3	83b	84-109	7
203.7	81	83-37	5
	76g	78-32	1
203.10	96	97-49	22
	81	83-37	5
203.11	96	97-49	22
203.13	91a	92-56	17
	65	92-55	17
204	79a	81-22	3
	78	79-28	2
204.1	81	82-22	4
204.1b	87	90-35	16
	87e	87-42	12
204.1c	93	96-65	22
	84	84-100	7
204.1e	98b	05-04	28
	93	96-66	22
	88a	89-17	13
	84	85-9	7
	83b	84-93	7
	81	83-29	5
	80b	82-19	4
	76g	78-71	1
	76g	77-47	1
	72a	73-12	1
204.1f	89b	93-24	18

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part II (Cont'd)			
204.1f (Cont'd)			
	84	84-100	7
204.1g	95b	96-39	21
	91a	93-62	18
	89b	90-64	16
204.1h	95b	96-54	21
	93	95-21	20
	89b	91-21	16
	87	90-35	16
	89b	90-6	14
	86d	87-35	12
	81	86-60	11
	79a	80-33	2
	76g	77-60	1
	72a	73-13	1
204.1i	90	93-65	19
	89b	91-21	16
	88a	90-25	15
	87e	87-55	13
	85a	89-11	13
	79a	81-22	3
	78	86-53	11
	76g	78-10	1
204.1j	96	02-20	26
204.2	82a	84-57	6
204.2a	86d	87-41	12
	86c	86-62	13
	85a	86-21	10
	85a	85-37	9
	82a	84-17	7
	81	85-7	8
	81	83-30	5
	81	83-11	4
	79a	81-22	3
	79a	80-42	2
	79	80-1	2
	78	79-25	1
	75f	76-39	1
	75f	76-33	1
	75f	76-2	1
	73b	74-21	1
	72a	73-14	1
204.2b	96	02-54	27
	96	02-19	25
	76g	78-1	1
	73b	74-22	1
204.2c	95b	96-63	21
	91a	93-62	18
	87	88-34	13
	87e	87-23	12
	86d	87-40	12
	86c	86-54	11
	85b	86-28	10
	73b	74-24	1

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part II (Cont'd)			
204.2c (Cont'd)			
	73b	74-23	1
204.2d	88a	89-32	14
	87	88-25	13
	87e	88-11	13
	82a	84-31	5
	81	84-7	5
	78	83-27	5
	55	82-46	4
204.2e	92b	93-74	18
204.3	82a	84-57	6
	81	82-22	4
204.4	81	83-12	4
	81	82-22	4
204.4e	82a	84-3	5
	76g	77-59	1
204.4h	85b	87-7	12
204.4m	84	85-38	11
	84	85-10	8
	84	85-13	11
	80b	82-27	4
	76g	78-37	1
	76g	78-21	1
204.5	94a	96-20	21
204.5a	80b	81-37	3
	73b	74-25	1
204.5b	87	93-49	18
204.5c	87	93-49	18
	87	88-30	13
204.5g	96	97-58	22
204.5i	94a	95-30	20
204.6a	90	91-34	16
204.6b	76g	77-42	1
204.6d	87	88-30	13
204.7	86d	87-25	14
204.7a	96	97-47	23
	90	93-21	18
	87e	87-54	12
	81	84-103	7
	76g	78-39	1
	76g	77-8	1
	76g	77-1	1
	75f	76-41	1
	74c	75-23	1
204.7b	84	85-24	8
204.7c	84	85-24	8
204.7d	93	96-18	22
	90	94-11	18
	76g	78-43	1
	76g	78-10	1
	76g	77-57	1
205	85b	86-2	11
205.1	90	98-17	23
	90	92-22	17
205.3	89b	91-17	17

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part II (Cont'd)			
205.3 (Cont'd)			
	80b	82-39	4
	76g	78-22	1
205.5	90	92-22	17
	81	84-106	7
205.5b	92b	93-27	18
205.6	93	94-35	19
	90	94-41	19
205.8a	90	92-22	17
	84	85-53	10
	76g	78-20	1
205.8b	85b	89-23	14
205.10	80b	82-39	4
205.11	80b	82-39	4
	76g	77-68	1
	21	97-64	22
205.12	92	93-42	19
	90	91-42	19
	76g	78-22	1
	75f	76-78	1
205.14	84	85-53	10
205.15	94a	95-23	20
	92b	94-31	19
	92b	94-5	18
	84	87-18	12
206	81	84-106	7
206.2	92b	93-40	19
	89b	91-4	15
206.3	00d	02-30	26
	93	95-51	20
	85b	86-23	10
206.4	00d	02-30	26
206.4a	90	92-80	17
	89b	91-4	15
	89b	90-63	15
	86d	89-8	13
206.4b	89b	91-4	15
	81	84-106	7
206.4c	96	01-16	25
	81	84-106	7
206.5	76g	77-11	1
	75f	76-70	1
206.5a	74c	75-24	1
206.5d	74c	75-25	1
206.6	90	93-69	19
206.6e	96	97-05	21
207	79a	80-34	2
	76g	78-60	1
207.1	81	82-25	4
	80b	81-68	3
	80b	81-50	3
	74c	75-27	1
	74c	75-26	1
207.1b	87e	87-27	12
207.2a	94a	97-19	22

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)
Part II (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
207.2a (Cont'd)			
	87e	87-52	12
207.2b	87e	87-52	12
	79a	80-45	2
	78	79-32	1
	78	79-11	1
207.3	73b	74-27	1
207.3b	92b	93-57	18
	55	87-38	13
207.4	94a	97-19	22
	87	93-49	18
	83b	84-95	7
	83b	84-94	7
	80b	81-36	3
	76g	78-42	1
	75f	76-56	1
	74c	75-28	1
207.5	87e	87-27	12
207.5a	92b	93-58	18
	84	90-28	15
207.7	89b	90-18	14
207.8	95b	96-37	21
	94a	95-52	20
	90	92-59	17
	90	91-45	17
	83b	81-30	6
	82a	84-6	5
	81	84-69	6
	81	83-32	5
	80b	81-30	3
	76g	78-22	1
208	76g	78-60	13
208.1	96	01-50	26
	83b	84-101	9
	83b	84-76	6
	79a	80-26	2
	78	82-54	4
208.1c	87	88-16	13
208.2	80b	82-18	3
	78	79-48	2
208.2d	96	98-05	22
	95b	96-64	21
	88a	89-40	14
208.3	93	03-23	27
	80b	82-18	3
	80b	81-53	3
	79a	80-45	2
	79a	80-31	2
	73b	74-28	1
	71	72-7	1
208.4	78	79-14	1
208.5	71	72-7	1
208.8	90	92-71	17
	89b	91-3	17

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)
Part II (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
208.8 (Cont'd)			
	87	91-13	17
208.9	88a	90-11	14
	83b	84-76	6
	76g	77-52	1
209.2	84	86-39	10
209.2a	96	97-32	22
	90	92-84	17
	84	84-98	7
	81	84-68	6
	81	84-38	6
209.2b	89b	90-47	15
	84	89-42	14
209.3	78	83-16	4
209.3a	80b	82-40	4
209.3b	96	02-46	26
	76g	78-77	1
209.3d	78	79-20	1
209.3e	87	02-35	26
209.4	96	01-41	25
	93	94-51	19
	90	92-44	17
	84	86-39	10
	82a	84-23	5
	81	83-21	5
	80b	81-40	3
210	92b	94-32	19
	76g	78-42	1
	75f	76-79	1
	45	82-47	4
210.1a	90	96-03	20
	80b	82-42	4
210.1d	96	02-28	25
	96	01-32	25
	96	99-18	23
	96	98-31	23
	96	98-11	23
	93	95-16	20
	90	91-35	17
	89b	90-18	14
	87	89-9	17
	81	94-34	19
	80b	82-42	4
	76g	77-3	1
	74c	75-29	1
	68b	77-3	1
210.1e	89b	91-20	16
	89b	91-6	16
	89b	90-39	15
	86d	87-36	12
	84	85-36	8
	83b	84-91	7
	80b	82-48	4
210.2	96	01-10	24
	96	99-54	23

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)
Part II (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
210.2 (Cont'd)			
	96	99-20	23
	92	94-3	19
	90	91-36	16
	88a	89-43	14
	87	89-44	14
	86d	87-39	12
	82a	84-40	6
	82a	84-39	6
	82a	84-9	5
	81	83-23	5
	79a	80-46	3
	78	85-62	9
	78	81-54	3
	78	79-17	1
	76g	78-23	1
	76g	78-10	1
	76g	77-62	1
	72a	73-11	1
210.2e	96	05-21	28
210.4	97a	04-40	28
	96	02-42	26
	96	01-31	25
	94a	96-24	20
	84	85-9	7
	76g	78-1	1
	76g	77-49	1
210.4b	98b	99-39	24
	97a	04-41	28
	95b	96-58	21
210.5	85a	86-6	10
	84	85-63	10
	82a	83-46	5
	76g	78-17	1
	76g	77-30	1
	74c	75-30	1
	73b	74-30	1
	73b	74-29	1
	72a	73-16	1
210.6	96	01-40	25
	96	00-10	24
	81	91-55	16
	76g	78-10	1
	75f	76-34	1
210.8	87	91-13	17
	83b	84-91	7
	81	83-21	5
	78	79-27	1
	71	72-8	1
210.9	87	88-13	12
	84	85-36	8
	81	83-10	4
	75f	76-80	1

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)
Part II (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
210.9 (Cont'd)			
	71	72-8	1
210.9d	89b	91-6	16
210.10	87	95-50	20
	79a	85-4	7
210.11	91a	92-81	17
	81	84-69	6
210.12	80b	82-50	4
210.13	95b	96-31	21
	92b	93-70	18
	82a	84-9	5
	81	82-24	4
210.14	96	99-53	24
	96	99-29	23
	96	98-31	23
	96	98-11	23
210.15	96	03-22	27
	96	03-12	26
	96	01-01	24
211	96	99-31	24
	90	93-51	18
211.1	90	92-40	17
	90	91-44	16
	90	91-39	16
	89b	91-5	16
	89b	90-67	15
	84	88-27	13
	81	83-24	5
	79a	84-60	6
	79a	84-30	5
	78	79-43	2
	78	79-2	1
	76g	78-72	1
	76g	77-41	1
	76g	77-34	1
	75f	76-48	1
	71	72-9	1
211.1a	96	01-24	25
	95b	96-43	21
	93	96-76	21
	92b	93-14	18
	90	96-52	21
211.1b	90	00-22	24
211.2	96	02-52	26
	94a	95-32	20
	89b	91-26	24
	87	95-50	20
	81	84-101	5
	79a	85-4	7
	76g	78-5	1
211.3	96	01-37	25
	93	94-68	19
	93	94-63	19
	93	94-58	19
	90	99-26	23

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)
Part II (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
211.3 (Cont'd)			
	90	97-41	22
	90	92-45	18
	90	92-32	17
	90	92-16	17
	90	92-13	17
	90	91-57	16
	89b	90-62	15
	89b	90-49	15
	87e	87-32	12
	86d	87-30	12
	81	87-11	12
	81	86-61	11
	81	84-42	6
	81	83-43	5
	78	84-43	6
	78	81-32	3
	76g	78-26	1
	76g	78-5	1
	76g	77-55	1
	76g	77-15	1
	71	83-15	5
211.3a	00d	03-56	27
	00d	01-49	25
	98b	00-24	24
	97a	01-35	25
	97a	98-09	24
	97a	98-09	23
	96	04-37	28
	96	04-28	28
	96	00-15	24
	96	99-16	23
	96	98-08	25
	96	98-08	23
	96	98-01	23
	94a	95-45	20
	93	99-08	23
	93	98-02	22
	93	94-23	19
	90	97-41	22
	90	92-78	17
	89b	92-1	16
	88a	94-17	18
	87	04-57	28
	87	89-24	14
	87	89-10	14
	87e	87-20	12
	86d	87-22	12
	85b	86-3	9
	84	85-5	7
	83b	90-3	14
	83b	86-45	10
	83b	85-19	7
	83b	84-111	7
	83b	84-110	7

A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)
Part II (Cont'd)

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
211.3a (Cont'd)			
	83b	84-90	7
	83b	84-89	7
	83b	84-82	7
	82a	84-75	6
	82a	84-41	6
	82a	84-27	5
	82a	84-19	5
	82a	84-16	5
	82a	84-10	5
	82a	84-5	5
	81	84-71	6
	81	84-32	18
	81	83-33	5
	81	83-25	5
	81	83-8	4
	81	83-6	4
	81	83-5	4
	81	82-36	4
	80b	82-21	4
	80b	82-15	4
	80b	81-70	3
	80a	81-33	3
	79a	81-16	3
	79a	81-15	3
	79a	80-21	2
	79a	80-16	2
	78	82-13	4
	78	81-23	3
	78	81-20	3
	78	81-18	3
	78	79-49	2
	78	79-40	2
	78	78-56	2
	78	79-4	1
	78	79-38	1
	76g	78-63	1
	76g	78-61	1
	76g	78-30	1
	76g	78-19	1
	76g	78-3	1
	76g	77-65	1
	76g	77-22	1
	75f	76-81	1
	75f	76-46	1
	75f	76-45	1
	75f	76-42	1
	75f	76-7	1
	75f	76-4	1
	74c	75-34	1
	74c	75-33	1
	74c	75-32	1
	74c	75-31	1
211.3b	00d	03-56	27
	98b	00-37	24

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part II (Cont'd)			
211.3b (Cont'd)			
	98b	00-24	24
	98b	99-24	23
	97a	05-39	28
	97a	03-47	28
	97a	00-33	25
	97a	98-09	24
	96	05-27	28
	96	99-16	23
	96	98-06	23
	95b	96-34	21
	93	97-59	23
	93	96-59	21
	93	95-28	20
	92b	94-43	19
	92b	94-8	18
	91a	93-75	19
	91a	93-4	17
	90	96-75	22
	90	96-46a	21
	90	94-1	19
	90	93-16	18
	90	92-78	17
	89b	92-1	16
	89b	91-8	15
	89b	90-48	15
	89b	90-46	15
	89b	90-38	15
	87	95-50	20
	86d	91-33	16
	86d	88-42	13
	86c	89-14	14
	86c	87-12	12
	86d	87-5	11
	86c	87-3	11
	85b	86-49	11
	84	85-23	9
	84	85-25	8
	84	85-18	7
	84	85-5	7
	84	84-105	7
	79a	80-24	2
	79a	80-23	2
	78	79-1	1
	76g	77-44	1
	75f	76-10	1
211.3c	96	05-40	28
	96	04-38	28
	96	00-15	24
	96	97-04	21
	94a	96-15	21
	93	95-4	19
	90	99-40	23
	90	92-4	16
	89b	90-68	15

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part II (Cont'd)			
211.3c (Cont'd)			
	89b	90-15	15
	87	04-57	28
	87	92-53	17
	87	88-26	13
	87	88-20	13
	87e	87-20	12
	86d	88-42	13
	86c	86-48	11
	85b	87-10	12
	85b	86-3	9
	85a	86-25	10
	85a	86-18	9
	85a	85-56	9
	85a	85-52	9
	85a	85-35	8
	84	86-10	9
	84	85-30	8
	84	85-27	8
	82a	84-33	5
	78	79-1	1
	76g	77-44	1
211.3d	96	02-01	25
	96	01-30	25
	89b	92-1	16
211.3e	85b	86-3	9
211.4	95b	99-04	23
	90	92-16	17
211.5	98b	00-32	24
	94a	95-15	20
	87	90-37	15
211.6	93	94-45	19
211.7	98b	00-24	24
	96	02-47	26
	96	99-21	23
211.8	89b	91-10	15
	89b	90-13	15
	87e	87-43	12
	85b	87-10	12
	85b	86-4	9
212	89b	89-27	14
	80b	81-42	3
	76g	78-60	1
	45	82-46	4
212.1	93	95-14	20
	76g	78-7	1
212.3	90	92-46	17
	81	83-31	5
	73b	74-31	1
	72a	73-17	1
212.8	81	83-20	5
	75f	76-69	1
212.9	85a	86-7	10
	79a	80-4	2

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part II (Cont'd)			
212.9 (Cont'd)			
	76g	78-52	1
212.9a	93	95-06	20
	90	93-48	18
	90	92-46	17
	90	91-15	15
	87	89-18	13
212.9b	95b	96-27	22
212.9c	93	95-2	19
	87	89-18	13
212.9e	98b	00-01	23
	96	98-19	23
212.9f	88a	90-21	14
	78	81-10	3
	78	79-15	1
212.9g	96	97-36	22
212.10	93	95-06	20
213.2	84	87-1	12
215.1	04	05-58	28
	96	97-66	23
Part III	95b	96-37	21
	80b	81-47	3
300.1	96	05-55	28
	78	79-41	1
	78	79-7	1
	73b	74-11	1
300.2	96	98-30	23
	94a	96-28b	21
	94a	96-28a	21
	90	92-29	17
	87e	87-19	13
	81	84-70	6
	78	84-61	6
	78	82-26	4
	76g	78-76	1
	76g	77-56	1
	76g	77-9	1
	75f	76-82	1
	74c	75-36	1
	71	80-28	2
300.3	96	03-26	27
	96	02-37	25
	79a	80-39	2
	79a	80-9	2
	78	81-39	3
300.3a	72a	73-19	1
300.3b	85a	85-67	9
	80b	81-35	3
300.3c	71	72-10	1
300.3d	79a	80-39	2
	76g	78-59	1
	76g	77-70	1
	71	72-11	1
300.3e	82a	84-35	6

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part III (Cont'd)			
300.3e (Cont'd)			
	76g	78-59	1
300.3f	80b	81-26	3
300.3h	83b	84-96	7
	82a	84-35	6
	80b	81-41	3
	79a	80-39	2
300.4	82a	84-52	6
	76g	78-31	1
300.6	93	96-61	22
300.7	96	03-27	27
	93	98-33	23
300.8a	96	03-07	26
	96	00-23	24
	92b	93-10	18
300.8b	94a	96-26	21
300.8d	99c	00-12	24
	93	98-12	23
300.8e	96	97-61	23
300.8g	96	97-24	22
	93	98-12	23
	93	94-57	20
301.1	84	85-45	9
301.1a	94a	95-37	20
301.3	97a	99-44	25
	96	97-45	22
	80b	81-35	3
301.4	92b	93-6	18
301.6	83b	84-67	6
301.7	93	94-59	19
	75f	76-72	1
301.8	99c	00-18	24
	96	05-55	28
	96	98-06	23
	95b	96-79	21
	90	91-37	16
301.10	95b	96-51	21
	90	92-34	17
	83b	84-67	6
302	96	98-24	23
	89b	91-24	17
302.1	76g	78-31	1
302.1a	81	86-34	12
	81	83-17	4
302.1b	99c	00-18	24
	90	91-50	18
302.2c	93	97-65	22
302.2d	87	88-3	13
302.2e	83b	84-88	7
	78	79-45	2
302.2g	88a	90-20	15
	86d	87-26	12
302.2h	78	81-39	3
302.3	87	88-3	13

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part III (Cont'd)			
302.3 (Cont'd)			
	76g	77-5	1
302.3c	93	97-65	22
	78	79-5	1
302.3d	88a	89-49	14
302.3e	78	79-8	1
	76g	78-17	1
	76g	77-69	1
302.3f	88a	89-49	14
	88a	90-19	15
302.3g	90	96-46c	21
302.3h	96	06-03	28
302.4a	98b	99-30	23
303	96	98-24	23
	87	88-29	13
303.1a	95b	97-43	22
303.1b	83b	85-3	7
303.1c	96	97-25	22
303.1d	90	91-37	16
	82a	83-38	5
	81	82-28	4
	80b	82-31	4
	76g	78-67	1
303.1f	91a	93-23	18
303.2	00d	02-15	25
303.2a	89b	90-17	15
	75f	76-83	1
303.2b	96	02-21	25
303.3	87	88-32	13
303.3a	89b	90-56	15
	87e	88-23	13
	86c	87-17	12
	81	84-83	7
	78	79-9	1
	76g	78-46	1
303.3b	86c	87-17	12
	79a	81-2	3
303.3c	96	98-29	23
	96	97-23	22
303.3d	85a	85-66	9
	80b	81-58	3
	78	81-61	3
303.4a	93	94-15	19
303.4e	96	97-02	21
304	96	98-24	23
	82a	83-38	5
304.3f	84	86-29	10
304.3i	81	83-41	5
305.1	96	97-20	23
305.1a	96	03-46	27
	96	97-33	22
	96	97-32	22
	80b	81-43	3
	74c	75-37	1

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part III (Cont'd)			
305.1a (Cont'd)			
	73b	74-33	1
305.2	90	91-37	16
	88a	90-9	14
	81	84-29	6
305.2b	96	97-20	23
	87	90-33	15
306.2	96	99-18	23
	96	98-31	23
	85a	85-61	10
306.3	84	87-47	12
	84	85-26	10
	84	85-39	8
	78	79-5	1
	76g	78-54	1
306.4	96	01-25	25
	92b	93-46	18
	84	87-47	12
	84	85-39	8
	76g	78-54	1
306.6	95b	99-36	24
	96	97-37	23
	76g	78-76	1
	76g	78-68	1
306.7	81	85-14	7
	76g	77-30	1
306.8	84	85-39	8
306.9	96	03-46	27
	96	97-20	23
	87	89-12	14
	84	85-36	8
306.11	89b	91-26	24
306.14	96	01-06	24
	92b	96-33	21
	90	92-31	17
	83b	84-97	7
	81	84-11	5
306.15	97a	01-12	24
	96	05-67	28
	96	97-44	22
308.1	95b	96-51	21
Part IV			
400.11	89b	94-6	19
401.3	80b	81-56	3
	75f	76-47	1
401.9	99c	00-26	25
402.4	76g	77-50	1
	75f	76-85	1
	75f	76-84	1
Part V	92b	95-22	20
	88a	90-22	15
	83b	84-101	9
	83b	85-8	7

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part V (Cont'd)			
	79a	80-20	2
	78	84-48	6
	76g	78-47	1
	76g	77-2	1
500.1	94a	96-10	20
500.2	94a	95-31	20
	90	92-25	17
	89b	90-65	15
	87	88-40	13
500.3	94a	96-10	20
500.4b	90	93-63	18
500.4d	91a	92-82	17
	90	92-50	17
500.8	79a	80-17	2
501.1	95b	96-45	21
501.5	92b	95-22	20
501.8	76g	78-74	1
501.9k	75f	76-20	1
503	85a	85-60	10
503.1	84	86-38	11
505.1	87	88-28	13
506.11	87	91-13	17
507.1	81	89-34	15
509.1	93	95-18	20
	92b	95-22	20
510.2	85b	86-12	11
514.1	96	98-06	23
514.4	93	95-13	20
Part VI			
600.5	93	94-46	19
600.6	93	94-46	19
Part VII	81	84-59	6
700.1	85b	86-43	12
	85b	85-51	9
	84	85-11	7
	83b	84-107	7
	81	83-39	5
	76g	77-45	1
700.2	98b	00-21	24
700.3	91a	93-8	18
700.4	81	83-39	5
700.4a	83b	84-107	7
700.11	98b	00-21	24
	85b	86-43	12

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part VII (Cont'd)			
700.11 (Cont'd)			
	84	85-11	7
700.12c	87	90-42	16
700.12d	87	90-42	16
701.1	83b	84-85	7
701.3g	87	88-37	13
701.5	98b	00-21	24
701.8a	87	89-19	14
701.10	91a	93-9	18
702.1	83b	84-85	7
702.2	72a	73-21	1
703.1	71	72-12	1
709.1	71	72-13	1
710.1	65	72-13	1
Part VIII	00d	03-09	26
	95b	01-28	25
	95b	96-44	21
	71	84-13	5
801.1	93	96-49	21
	88a	90-12	14
	88a	89-38	14
	75f	76-6	1
802.2	96	01-54	25
	93	00-28	24
	93	94-73	19
	85b	86-17	9
	84	86-30	10
802.3	94a	95-30	20
	89b	96-47	21
802.3a	93	94-73	19
	78	79-42	2
	76g	77-53	1
802.3b	93	94-73	19
	82a	84-26	5
802.3c	78	79-35	1
	74c	75-38	1
802.3d	93	94-73	19
802.3f	95b	96-42	21
	93	94-73	19
	92b	94-22	19
	89b	90-52	15
	87	90-26	15
	86c	87-2	11
	82a	84-44	6
802.3g	93	00-28	24
802.4c	96	01-54	25
	78	79-42	2
802.5	75f	76-67	1
802.5a	96	01-02	25
	94a	01-29	25
	81	82-53	4
802.5b	93	94-73	19
	90	93-3	17
802.5c	84	85-55	9

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part VIII (Cont'd)			
802.5c (Cont'd)			
	84	85-49	9
802.6	87e	88-6	12
802.6d	98b	00-08	24
802.6e	90	93-3	17
802.7	94a	95-46	20
802.8	94a	95-46	20
802.9a	90	91-47	16
802.10	92b	94-19	19
	71	72-15	1
	71	72-14	1
803.5	96	01-54	25
804.1	78	79-36	1
804.2	78	79-36	1
804.3	92b	94-18	19
	92b	93-11	18
	85b	86-26	14
	84	89-41	14
	80b	81-49	3
804.3a	93	95-11	19
	93	95-3	19
	91a	92-58	18
	91a	92-57	17
804.3b	91a	92-58	17
805	96	97-31	22
	90	96-48	21
805.1	93	95-19	20
	90	91-43	17
805.1a	90	93-25	18
805.1b	85b	86-26	14
	84	89-41	14
	80b	82-16	3
805.1c	76g	77-66	1
	74c	75-39	1
805.1g	92b	94-21	19
	82a	84-15	5
805.1h	95b	96-41	21
	95b	96-40	21
	93	95-19	20
	92b	94-22	19
	92b	94-18	19
	82a	85-34	9
805.1k	89b	90-50	15
	87e	88-8	12
805.1m	94a	96-09	20
	93	95-19	20
805.1q	95b	96-50	21
	88a	90-1	14
805.1s	94a	96-09	20
	90	91-46	17
805.1t	95b	98-27	23
805.1u	94a	96-06	21
805.3b	96	00-14	24
805.3d	98b	05-29	28

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part VIII (Cont'd)			
805.3d (Cont'd)			
	96	97-55	22
805.3f	96	02-27	25
805.3g	98b	00-08	24
805.3h	96	00-14	24
	96	97-54	22
	96	97-31	22
805.3i	99c	99-51	24
	99c	99-49	24
805.3j	96	00-14	24
805.3m	96	98-27	23
805.3n	97a	98-32	23
	97a	98-26	23
805.4	96	99-42	24
	96	97-62	22
805.6	96	00-25	24
	96	00-13	24
805.9b	96	97-40	22
805.11	97b	00-29	25
806.3	79a	80-22	2
Part IX			
901.1	96	97-07	22
902.1	90	92-48	17
	90	92-43	17
	89b	99-15	23
902.2	89b	90-5	14
902.3	94a	95-30	20
904.3a	96	99-22	23
	93	95-3	19
904.3b	90	97-21	22
905.2	99c	99-52	24
905.3	99c	99-50	24
	96	99-23	23
905.3k	97a	01-55	25
905.4	96	99-23	23
905.5	96	99-23	23
907.2	89b	90-5	14
Part X	94a	96-01a	21
	94a	95-29	20
	92	93-77	19
	92	93-76	19
	90	92-38	17
	86c	87-14	12
	85a	85-41	9
	78	82-45	4
1000.1	90	92-39	17
	90	92-28	17
	76g	78-26	1
1000.1a	90	97-51	23
1000.1b	94a	95-29	20
	90	97-51	23
	90	92-39	17
	90	92-28	17

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part X (Cont'd)			
1000.1b (Cont'd)			
	89b	90-58	15
	88a	89-33	14
1000.1c	88a	89-35	14
	79a	81-12	3
1000.2	93	94-56	19
	90	91-48	17
	86c	87-9	11
	76g	78-32	1
	76g	77-13	1
1000.2b	76g	78-22	1
	76g	78-20	1
1000.3	78	82-6	4
1000.4	76g	77-64	2
1001.1	76g	78-26	1
1001.2	87	89-26	14
	87e	88-1	12
1001.3	76g	77-67	1
1001.4	76g	78-79	1
	76g	78-32	1
	76g	77-67	1
	76g	77-13	1
	74c	75-40	1
1001.5	80b	81-40	3
1001.6c	81	82-28	4
	79a	80-10	2
1002	89b	99-34	23
	85a	85-60	10
1002.2	91a	92-64	17
1002.2b	84	86-51	11
1002.2f	90	92-59	17
	90	92-26	17
1002.2g	89b	91-26	24
	82a	84-6	5
1002.2h	85a	86-16	10
1002.3	96	97-29	22
	91a	92-64	17
1002.3a	00d	02-18	25
	96	01-59	27
	96	01-22	25
	96	97-53	23
	92b	93-30	18
	90	91-14	17
	79a	81-4	3
1002.3b	92b	93-56	18
	92b	93-30	18
	90	93-5	18
	90	91-48	17
1002.3c	92b	93-30	18
1002.3d	96	00-34	24
	96	97-30	22
	94a	97-19	22
	93	96-57	22
	81	84-69	6
1002.3e	89b	91-26	24

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part X (Cont'd)			
1002.3e (Cont'd)			
	89b	91-26	16
1002.3f	96	01-59	27
1002.4	80b	82-50	4
	80b	82-42	4
1003	96	97-29	22
	89b	99-34	23
1003.2	88a	89-37	14
1003.2a	96	97-53	23
1003.2d	00d	02-18	25
	96	00-20	25
	96	00-20	24
	90	91-14	17
	87e	88-1	12
1003.2e	89b	90-44	15
1003.2f	94a	96-74	21
	81	84-69	6
1003.3	91a	92-64	17
	89b	90-59	16
	87	92-10	17
	87	91-41	16
	87	90-35	16
	87e	88-9	12
1004.2	96	98-22	23
1005.2	90	91-51	17
1005.2a	82a	84-1	5
1005.2b	96	97-52	22
1005.3	82a	83-38	5
1005.3a	84	95-48	20
	84	96-12	20
1005.3b	96	98-24	23
1006	92b	93-61	19
	83b	84-67	6
1006.1	91a	92-64	17
1006.2a	96	99-32	23
1006.2g	95b	96-51	21
1006.3	00d	01-44	25
	96	99-27	23
	94a	96-26	21
	91a	92-64	17
	90	92-51	17
	90	91-38	20
	89b	90-59	16
1007.2e	90	97-51	23
1009.1	82a	84-26	5
1009.2b	82a	84-26	5
1010	90	92-19	17
1010.10	96	99-32	23
Part XI			
1100	83b	84-102	7
1100.5a	83b	84-74	6
1101	82a	85-40	8
1102	95b	96-32	21
1102.1	81	83-42	5
1103.1	75f	76-74	1
1104.3	85b	86-44	11

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part XII	95b	96-53	21
	94a	95-49	21
	93	97-12	22
	92b	93-20	18
	91a	93-35	18
	91a	93-34	19
	90	96-46b	21
	87	96-30	21
	81	84-59	6
	79a	96-01b	21
1200	88a	90-36	15
1200.1	96	99-37	23
	93	94-50	19
	91a	92-68	17
	89b	91-24	17
	87	90-24	14
	87	89-31	14
1200.1a	83b	84-87	7
	83b	84-77	7
	80b	81-28	3
	78	82-11	3
	75f	76-54	1
1200.1b	71	82-46	4
1200.2	92b	93-12	18
	89b	91-24	17
	88a	89-43	14
	87	90-24	14
	78	82-11	3
1200.2a	83b	84-77	7
1200.2b	80b	81-50	3
	79a	80-3	2
	76g	77-23	1
1200.2c	78	79-10	1
1200.2m	83b	84-87	7
1200.2t	84	85-48	9
1200.3	89b	90-59	16
	87	91-41	16
	80b	81-25	3
	79a	80-27	2
	76g	78-9	1
1200.4	89b	90-59	16
1200.4a	92b	93-12	18
1200.4c	90	91-31	17
1200.5	97a	99-03	23
	84	86-27	11
1200.6	04	05-58	28
1201	84	87-24	12
1201.1a	82a	84-36	6
	81	87-53	13
	80b	82-1	3
	72a	73-22	1
1201.2b	80b	81-28	3
	75f	76-54	1

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part XII (Cont'd)			
1201.2b (Cont'd)			
	72a	73-22	1
1201.2d	93	97-59	23
1201.3	87	89-20	14
1201.10	93	96-71	22
1201.10e	91a	92-73	17
1202	93	99-11b	23
	87	90-31	15
1202.4b	87	91-29	16
1202.5	90	92-33	17
	87	90-35	16
1202.7	96	02-43	27
	96	02-44	26
	92b	94-29	19
	87	92-10	17
1202.9a	93	95-14	20
	90	91-31	17
	87e	88-9	12
1202.10a	87	91-41	16
1202.12d	93	97-59	23
	88a	90-40	16
	87	91-40	16
	87	91-23	16
1202.12e	97a	98-28	23
1202.12f	91a	93-15	18
	90	96-03	20
1202.13	93	99-14	23
	92b	93-37	18
1202.14	89b	90-59	16
1202.14a	87	89-31	14
1203.1g	99c	01-58	26
1203.3	85a	86-7	10
1203.3c	94a	96-22	21
1203.4a	90	93-31	18
1203.5	96	97-26	22
	90	92-51	17
1203.7	85a	87-6	11
1203.8f	90	93-47	21
1203.8h	96	99-31	24
	87	87-18	13
1206.1c	89b	90-45	15
1206.1h	96	99-25	23
1206.1i	96	01-07	25
1206.2a	94a	95-43	20
	87	92-9	17
1206.2b	90	96-62	21
	87	92-9	17
1206.2f	90	92-17	17
1206.3	87	94-33	19
	87	89-45	14
1206.3a	96	99-19	24
	93	95-06	20
1206.5b	96	98-29	23

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part XII (Cont'd)			
1206.5b (Cont'd)			
	96	97-23	22
1206.6b	89b	90-52	15
1206.6c	00d	02-50	26
1206.7	87	90-4	14
1207	89b	91-11	16
1207.1	91a	92-68	17
1207.2	96	01-59	27
Part XIII	96	97-39	22
	96	97-25	22
1300	79a	80-34	2
1300.1	80b	81-68	3
	80b	81-50	3
1301.5	87	89-22	14
1301.6	83b	84-67	6
1302.1	91a	93-2	18
	87	88-3	13
	79a	80-11	2
1302.3	76g	77-5	1
1302.4	00d	02-15	25
	87	88-32	13
	86c	87-17	12
	79a	81-2	3
1303.1c	83b	84-67	6
1303.1d	00d	00-41	24
	83b	84-67	6
1306	87	88-24	13
1308.1	96	98-18	23
	96	97-45	22
	95b	96-55	21
1308.2	96	97-45	22
Part XIV	92b	94-30	19
1400.1	82a	84-34	5
1400.2	84	85-44	9
	76g	77-18	1
1402.2	76g	78-44	1
Part XV	96	01-50	26
	93	94-72	21
	90	92-35	18
1500	80b	82-9	3
1500.1	87	88-15	13
1500.3	93	96-69	21
	93	96-67	21
1500.3d	89b	90-61	16
1501.1	90	92-5	17
	80b	82-9	3
1501.2	93	96-23	22
	90	92-50	17
1502.1	79a	80-43	3
1502.1a	90	92-52	17
1502.5	96	97-50	22
1502.6a	79a	80-43	3
1502.9	91a	92-76	18

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part XV (Cont'd)			
1502.9 (Cont'd)			
	79a	81-17	3
1502.10a	89b	90-61	16
	82a	84-56	9
1502.10b	96	97-17a	23
1502.10i	96	98-13	23
1502.11	78	79-13	1
1502.11a	82a	84-56	9
1502.11e	89b	90-61	16
1502.11h	96	97-17b	23
1502.12	78	79-44	2
Part XVI	93	94-64	20
	87	88-17	13
Part XVII	91a	92-72	18
	90	91-53	17
	84	85-22	9
1705	81	83-19	4
1707	81	82-44	4
1710	81	83-19	4
	81	82-44	4
1712.1	90	92-2	16
Part XVIII			
1804.1	91a	92-66	17
Part XIX	90	93-52	18
	90	93-26	18
	84	85-33	8
1900.1a	88a	89-32	14
	84	91-18	16
Part XX	96	99-17	24
	90	93-52	18
	90	93-26	18
	90	92-49	17
	90	92-21	17
	89b	90-56	15
	84	85-22	9
2000	92b	93-36	18
	87e	88-21	13
	86b	86-33	11
	83b	84-66	6
2000.1	93	94-20	18
	84	88-22	14
	83b	84-55	7
2000.1a	91a	92-70	17
	91a	92-65	17
	89b	90-69	15
	87e	88-5	14
	87e	88-10	13
	83b	85-21	8
	83b	84-92	7
2000.1b	92b	93-54	19

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part XX (Cont'd)			
2000.1b (Cont'd)			
	92b	92-75	17
	91a	92-65	17
	87	91-12	16
	87e	88-10	13
	84	85-59	9
	83b	85-21	8
	83b	84-92	7
2000.1f	93	97-06	23
2000.3	88a	90-14	15
	85a	89-29	14
2000.3b	96	99-02	23
	90	94-10	18
2000.5	92b	94-26	19
	85a	89-29	14
2000.6d	96	02-16	25
	92b	93-19	18
2000.7	87e	88-10	13
	87e	88-7	13
2000.7a	96	01-09	25
	96	01-08	25
	93	94-25	19
	91a	93-22	18
	90	92-14	17
	90	92-6	17
	89b	90-41	15
	87	90-42	16
	87e	88-5	14
	84	88-22	14
	86d	87-21	13
2000.8	90	93-18	18
	89b	90-27	15
	88a	89-48	14
	86c	86-59	12
	85b	86-31	10
	84	87-48	12
	83b	84-80	7
2000.10	93	97-06	23
	91a	93-13	18
2000.10a	96	97-11	22
	90	92-18b	18
	90	92-18a	17
	87	96-35	21
	85a	86-9	10
2000.10b	85a	86-9	10
2001	92b	93-36	18
	87e	88-19	13
	83b	85-21	8
	83b	84-66	6
2001.1a	83b	85-21	8
2001.6b	83b	85-21	8
2001.6c	90	92-20	17
	87	88-12	13
	87e	87-51	12

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part XX (Cont'd)			
2001.6c (Cont'd)			
	83b	84-92	7
2001.6d	84	88-22	14
2001.8	88a	89-48	14
	87	90-10	15
	87	89-6	14
2001.10	91a	93-13	18
2001.10a	90	92-18b	18
	90	92-18a	17
	85a	86-9	10
2001.10b	93	96-72	23
	93	94-62	19
	87e	87-51	12
	85a	86-9	10
2002	83b	85-21	8
	83b	84-66	6
2002.5b	83b	85-21	8
2002.6	87e	87-44	12
	86d	87-37	12
	83b	85-21	8
2002.7a	83b	85-21	8
2002.8	88a	89-48	14
2002.10	91a	93-13	18
2002.10a	91a	93-13	18
	90	92-18a	17
Part XXI			
2100.1a	84	86-37	11
	83b	84-92	7
2100.7	85b	87-15	12
2100.8	86c	86-59	12
	83b	84-80	7
2100.10	91a	93-13	18
2101.10	91a	93-13	18
2102.6	86d	87-37	12
2102.9	94a	96-04	20
2102.10	91a	93-13	18
Part XXII			
2201.6	93	96-56	22
2202.2	93	96-56	22
2203.2	93	96-56	22
Part XXIV	95b	96-14	21
	93	94-67	21
2403.2	96	97-34	22
	93	94-49	19
2403.2c	96	97-67	22
2403.3	96	97-14	22
2403.4	98b	99-33	23
	93	94-47	19
2403.6	93	94-49	19
	93	94-24	19
2405	00d	00-36	24
2406.1	94a	95-25	20
2406.1b	96	99-01	23

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part XXIV (Cont'd)			
2406.1b (Cont'd)			
	94a	96-21	21
2409.1	98b	99-33	23
	96	00-11	24
	94a	96-29	21
	94a	95-25	20
	93	94-60	20
2409.1b	96	99-12	23
2409.1c	96	03-19	28
	96	00-43	24
2410	00d	00-36	24
2410.3	96	97-67	22
2410.6	96	01-56	25
	96	00-02	24
	94a	95-35	21

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Part XXIV (Cont'd)			
2410.6 (Cont'd)			
	93	94-66	20
2411.1	97a	99-13	23
2411.2	97a	99-13	23
Part XXV			
2500.1	96	99-45	24
2500.2	96	99-45	24
2500.7	96	98-14	23
2500.8	96	98-14	23
	95b	97-10	22
2500.12	96	01-36	25
2501.4	96	01-36	25
2501.5	95b	96-25	21
2501.13	95b	96-27	22
2501.15	95b	96-25	21
2502.1	96	98-06	23
2502.2	96	98-06	23
2502.4	95b	96-25	21
Appendix E	96	97-24	22

Subject	Edition	Inquiry	Bk. No.
A17.1d–2000 AND PRIOR PUBLICATIONS (Cont'd)			
Appendix E (Cont'd)			
	93	98-12	23
Appendix F			
F1309.2	84	85-54	9
F304.3	81	83-41	5
Appendix H			
Fig. H1	99c	00-06	24
	84	94-7	19
CAN/CSA B44.1/ASME A17.5-1991			
Clause 1	96	99-39	24
Clause 1.1	91	95-05	20
1.1e	04	05-66	28

(CSA) ISBN 1-55436-343-8
(ASME) ISBN 0-7918-3039-X
9 780791 830390
A09607